

The minitoc package*

Jean-Pierre F. Drucbert
<mailto:jean-pierre.drucbert@onera.fr>

29th June 2007

*This document corresponds to minitoc v55, dated 2007/06/29.

Summary

Table of contents	4
List of figures	17
List of tables	18
About this document	20
I User's Manual	22
1 The minitoc package	24
2 Frequently Asked Questions	55
3 Memento	79
4 Examples of documents	89
5 Messages	153
6 Jargon	207
7 Installation	243
8 Postface	248
Acknowledgments	258
II Implementation	261
9 Commented code of the minitoc package	263
10 Commented code of the mtcoff package	442
11 Commented code of the mtcmess package	458
12 Patch for the memoir class	459

Summary	3
13 Language definition (.mld) and object (.mlo) files	461
III Complements	555
Bibliography	557
Changes history	591
Index	625

Table of contents

Summary	2
Table of contents	4
List of figures	17
List of tables	18
About this document	20
 I User's Manual	 22
1 The minitoc package	24
1.1 Introduction	25
1.1.1 Important restrictions	26
1.1.2 Version	26
1.2 License	26
1.3 Using the minitoc package	27
1.3.1 Loading the package and creating the mini-tables	27
1.3.2 Preparing the mini-tables	27
1.3.3 Placing the mini-tables	29
1.3.4 Starred chapters, parts and sections	33
1.4 Typesetting of the mini-tables	34
1.4.1 Chapter-level mini-tables	34
1.4.2 Titles for chapter-level mini-tables	35
1.4.3 Part-level mini-tables	35
1.4.4 Titles for part-level mini-tables	37
1.4.5 Section-level mini-tables	37
1.4.6 Titles for section-level mini-tables	39
1.4.7 Position of the titles	39
1.4.7.1 For mini-tables at the part level	39
1.4.7.2 For mini-tables at the chapter level	39
1.4.7.3 For mini-tables at the section level	40
1.4.7.4 Summary of the positionning of titles	40
1.4.8 Line spacing in the mini-tables	40
1.4.9 Simplified commands for fonts	41
1.4.10 Simplified command for mini-table titles	41
1.4.11 Simplified command for mini-table depths	42

Table of contents 5

1.4.12	Simplified command for mini-table offsets	42
1.4.13	Languages for the titles	43
1.4.14	Altering the layout of the mini-tables	43
1.5	Special Features	45
1.5.1	Horizontal Rules	45
1.5.2	Page Numbers, Leaders	46
1.5.3	Features for parttocs and other mini-tables	46
1.5.3.1	Remark about page styles	48
1.5.4	The “Chapter 0” Problem (solved)	48
1.5.5	Special Entries in the TOC	49
1.6	The notoccite option	51
1.7	The listfiles and nolistfiles options	51
1.8	The hints option	51
1.9	Usage with MS-DOS	53
1.10	Why several L ^A T _E X runs are required ?	54
1.11	The mtcoff package	54
2	Frequently Asked Questions	55
2.0	Introduction	56
2.1	Avoiding a page break near the rules before and after a mini-table	57
2.2	Implementing others layouts for a mini-table	57
2.3	A “\” command in a contents line makes an error	57
2.4	Reordering chapters makes havoc	57
2.5	Extensions for the names of auxiliary files	57
2.6	Playing with the chapter number	58
2.7	Supported document classes	58
2.8	Compatibility with L ^A T _E X versions	59
2.9	Other mini-tables	59
2.10	Why so many auxiliary files ?	60
2.11	Mini-tables at levels other than chapter	60
2.12	Incompatibility with L ^A T _E X2.09	61
2.13	Documents resetting the chapter number at each part	61
2.14	The mini-tables have too much spaced lines	61
2.15	The secttocs are wrong	61
2.16	Removing the lines of dots	61
2.17	Using the hyperref package with minitoc	61
2.18	Problem while upgrading minitoc	62
2.19	A local TOC for the set of appendices	62
2.20	Use with the appendix package	63
2.21	Use with the tocloft package	63
2.22	Use with the memoir class	64
2.23	There are too many commands for fonts, titles, and depths	65
2.24	Compatibility with the $\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}$ document classes	65
2.25	Hiding some entries from the main table of contents	66
2.26	Defining your own .mld file	69
2.27	Use with the abstract package	69
2.28	Use with the sectsty package	69
2.29	Strange alignment in the minitocs	70
2.30	Useful precautions with starred sectionning commands	71

Table of contents

6

2.31	Use with packages for captions	71
2.32	Bad interaction minitoc/hyperref/memoir	71
2.33	Use with the varsects package	72
2.34	Initial font settings	72
2.35	Use with the KOMA-Script classes	74
2.36	Use with the jura class or the alphanum package	74
2.37	The .mld files and the babel package	74
2.38	Use with the fncychap package	74
2.39	Use with the quotchap package	74
2.40	Use with the romannum package	75
2.41	Use with the sfheaders package	75
2.42	Use with the alnumsec package	75
2.43	Use with the captcont package	75
2.44	Vertical spaces (gaps) for parttocs, partlofs, and partlots titles	75
2.45	Vertical spacing before the bottom rule of a minitable	76
2.46	Another interaction between the tocloft and minitoc packages	77
2.47	Use with the hangcaption package	78
2.48	Use with the flowfram package	78
3	Memento	79
4	Examples of documents	89
4.1	The mtc-2c.tex document file	90
4.2	The mtc-2nd.tex document file	91
4.3	The mtc-3co.tex document file	92
4.4	The mtc-add.tex document file	95
4.5	The mtc-ads.tex document file	100
4.6	The mtc-amm.tex document file	105
4.7	The mtc-apx.tex document file	106
4.8	The mtc-art.tex document file	106
4.9	The mtc-bk.tex document file	111
4.10	The mtc-bo.tex document file	117
4.11	The mtc-ch0.tex document file	122
4.12	The mtc-cri.tex document file	123
4.13	The mtc-fko.tex document file	124
4.14	The mtc-fo1.tex document file	125
4.15	The mtc-fo2.tex document file	126
4.16	The mtc-gap.tex document file	128
4.17	The mtc-hi1.tex document file	128
4.18	The mtc-hi2.tex document file	128
4.19	The mtc-hia.tex document file	128
4.20	The mtc-hir.tex document file	129
4.21	The mtc-hop.tex document file	130
4.22	The mtc-liv.tex document file	131
4.23	The mtc-mem.tex document file	135
4.24	The mtc-mm1.tex document file	136
4.25	The mtc-mu.tex document file	137
4.26	The mtc-nom.tex document file	139
4.27	The mtc-ocf.tex document file	140

Table of contents 7

4.28	The <code>mtc-ofs.tex</code> document file	141
4.29	The <code>mtc-sbf.tex</code> document file	143
4.30	The <code>mtc-scr.tex</code> document file	145
4.31	The <code>mtc-syn.tex</code> document file	146
4.32	The <code>mtc-tbi.tex</code> document file	147
4.33	The <code>mtc-tlc.tex</code> document file	149
4.34	The <code>mtc-tlo.tex</code> document file	150
4.35	The <code>mtc-tsfx.tex</code> document file	150
5	Messages	153
5.1	Introduction	153
5.2	Messages from the <code>minitoc</code> package	155
5.2.1	Informative messages	155
5.2.1.1	Informative messages for hints	163
5.2.2	Warning messages	167
5.2.2.1	Warning messages for hints	173
5.2.3	Error messages	189
5.3	Messages from the <code>mtcoff</code> package	203
5.3.1	Warning messages	203
5.4	Message from the <code>mtcpatchmem</code> package	206
6	Jargon	207
7	Installation	243
8	Postface	248
8.1	The origins	248
8.2	New design in 1993	249
8.3	Developments in 1994	249
8.4	No developments in 1995	249
8.5	Developments en 1996	250
8.6	Developments in 1997	250
8.7	Developments in 1998	250
8.8	Developments in 1999	250
8.9	Developments in 2000	250
8.10	Developments in 2001	251
8.11	Developments in 2002	251
8.12	Developments in 2003	251
8.13	Developments in 2004	251
8.14	Developments in 2005	252
8.15	Developments in 2006	254
8.16	Developments in 2007	254
	Acknowledgments	258
II	Implementation	261
9	Commented code of the <code>minitoc</code> package	263
9.1	Introduction	267

9.2	Identification code	267
9.3	A file descriptor to write	267
9.4	Indentation and skip	268
9.5	Tests and flags	269
9.5.1	Flags for the <code>hints</code> option	269
9.5.2	Use of section-level mini-lists of floats	270
9.5.3	Presence of some packages and classes	270
9.5.4	Flags for packages dealing with floats	271
9.5.5	Insertion of empty mini-tables	271
9.5.6	Presence or absence of some sectionning commands	271
9.5.7	Flags to check if some commands are used	272
9.5.8	Check if the document has exactly 2 parts	273
9.6	Preparation for the <code>notoccite</code> option	274
9.7	Preparation for the <code>tight</code> and <code>k-tight</code> options	274
9.8	Preparation to work with <code>hyperref</code>	275
9.9	Checking the presence of some packages	275
9.9.1	Check if the <code>sectsty</code> package is loaded, and when	275
9.9.2	Check if the <code>varsects</code> package is loaded, and when	275
9.9.3	Check if the <code>fncychap</code> package is loaded, and when	276
9.9.4	Check if the <code>hangcaption</code> package is loaded, and when	276
9.9.5	Check if the <code>quotchap</code> package is loaded, and when	276
9.9.6	Check if the <code>romannum</code> package is loaded, and when	276
9.9.7	Check if the <code>sfheaders</code> package is loaded, and when	277
9.9.8	Check if the <code>alnumsec</code> package is loaded, and when	277
9.9.9	Check if the <code>captcont</code> package is loaded, and when	277
9.9.10	Check if the <code>caption</code> package is loaded, and when	277
9.9.11	Check if the <code>caption2</code> package is loaded, and when	278
9.9.12	Check if the <code>ccaption</code> package is loaded, and when	278
9.9.13	Check if the <code>mcaption</code> package is loaded, and when	278
9.9.14	Check if the <code>float</code> package is loaded	278
9.9.15	Check if the <code>floatrow</code> package is loaded	278
9.9.16	Check if the <code>trivfloat</code> package is loaded	279
9.9.17	Check if the <code>rotfloat</code> package is loaded	279
9.10	Is the <code>memoir</code> class loaded ?	279
9.11	Testing the emptiness of a file	280
9.12	Internal macros to decrement <code>minitoc</code> counters	281
9.13	Patching the <code>\part</code> command	282
9.14	Adding an entry in the TOC for a starred part	282
9.15	Section level macros	283
9.16	Corrections for numbering	283
9.17	Patching the <code>\section</code> command	283
9.18	Adding an entry in the TOC for a starred section	284
9.19	Chapter level macros	284
9.20	Patching the <code>\chapter</code> command	284
9.21	Adding an entry in the TOC for a starred chapter	285
9.22	Miscellaneous declarations	285
9.23	Autoconfiguration of extensions	286
9.24	Detecting obsolete versions of \LaTeX	287
9.25	Adding a TOC entry without leaders nor page numbers	288

9.26	Default values for the page-number customizations	288
9.27	“Features” for the mini-tables	291
9.28	Fake tables of contents	293
9.29	Depth counters for minilofs and minilots	294
9.30	Chapter level commands	294
9.31	Starred parts, chapters or sections	295
9.32	Font commands for the mini-tables	297
9.33	Internal commands to position the mini-table titles	297
9.34	The mtc@verse environment	298
9.35	The \minitoc, \minilof, and \minilot commands	298
9.35.1	The \minitoc command	298
9.35.2	The \minilof command	301
9.35.3	The \minilot command	305
9.36	Patching the \chapter command, continued	308
9.37	The \addstarred . . . commands	308
9.38	TOC entries without leaders	309
9.39	Mini-tables with or without leaders	309
9.40	The \dominitoc command and its siblings	310
9.40.1	Analysis and splitting of the TOC file	313
9.41	Mini-lists of figures	317
9.41.1	Analysis and splitting of the list of figures file	318
9.42	Mini-lists of tables	320
9.42.1	Analysis and splitting of the list of tables file	320
9.43	Macro to write a contents line	323
9.44	Depth counters for partlofs and partlots	324
9.45	Part level commands	324
9.46	Fonts for the parttocs	325
9.47	Default titles for part-level mini-tables	326
9.48	The ptc@verse environment	327
9.49	The part level mini-tables : \parttoc, \partlof, and \partlot	328
9.49.1	The \parttoc command	328
9.49.2	The \partlof command	331
9.49.3	The \partlot command	334
9.50	Auxiliary commands for printing parttocs	337
9.51	Patching the \part command, continued	337
9.52	The \doparttoc command and its siblings	337
9.52.1	Processing macros for the parttocs	340
9.52.2	Processing macros for the partlofs	343
9.52.3	Processing macros for the partlots	346
9.53	Depth counters for sectlofs and sectlots	348
9.54	Section-level commands	348
9.55	Fonts commands for secttocs and co.	349
9.56	Internal macros for title positioning	349
9.57	The stc@verse environment	350
9.58	The \secttoc, \sectlof, and \sectlot commands	350
9.58.1	The \secttoc command	350
9.58.2	The \sectlof command	353
9.58.3	The \sectlot command	356
9.59	Auxiliary internal commands, section level	358

9.60	Patching the <code>\section</code> command (continued)	359
9.61	The <code>\dosecttoc</code> command and siblings	360
9.62	End of section-level commands	370
9.63	The <code>\mtcprepare</code> command	370
9.64	Necessary <code>\l@...</code> commands	371
9.65	The horizontal rules and their default values	371
9.66	The <code>\mtcset...</code> commands	372
9.66.1	Keywords for the <code>\mtcset...</code> commands	372
9.66.2	The <code>\mtcsetfont</code> command	374
9.66.3	The <code>\mtcsetttitlefont</code> command	378
9.66.4	The <code>\mtcsetttitle</code> command	380
9.66.5	The <code>\mtcsetformat</code> command	381
9.66.6	The <code>\mtcsetpagenumbers</code> command	385
9.66.7	The <code>\mtcsetrules</code> command	388
9.66.8	The <code>\mtcsetfeature</code> command	390
9.66.9	The <code>\mtcsetdepth</code> command	392
9.66.10	The <code>\mtcsetoffset</code> command	394
9.67	The <code>mtchideinmaintoc</code> environment and siblings	395
9.68	Fixing the “Glossary” entry in the TOC	397
9.69	Fixing the “Index” entry in the TOC	398
9.70	Fixing the “Nomenclature” entry in the TOC	400
9.71	The <code>\mtcselectlanguage</code> command	401
9.72	The <code>\mtcloadmlo</code> internal command	401
9.73	The “coffee breaks”	402
9.74	Initialization of counters	403
9.75	Declarations for simple options	403
9.75.1	Options <code>tight</code> and <code>loose</code> , <code>k-tight</code> and <code>k-loose</code>	403
9.75.2	Options <code>checkfiles</code> and <code>nocheckfiles</code>	403
9.75.3	Options <code>dotted</code> and <code>undotted</code>	403
9.75.4	Option <code>notoccite</code>	404
9.75.5	Option <code>shorttext</code>	404
9.76	The <code>insection</code> option	404
9.77	The <code>listfiles</code> and <code>nolistfiles</code> options	405
9.78	Language options	405
9.79	The <code>hints</code> option	409
9.79.1	First part : <code>\mtc@hints@begindoc</code>	410
9.79.1.1	Hint about the <code>alphanum</code> package	410
9.79.1.2	Hint about the <code>appendix</code> package	410
9.79.1.3	Hint about the <code>tocbibind</code> package	411
9.79.1.4	Hint about the KOMA-Script classes	411
9.79.1.5	Hint about the <code>tocloft</code> package	412
9.79.1.6	Hint about the <code>titletoc</code> package	412
9.79.1.7	Hint about the <code>placeins</code> package	412
9.79.1.8	Hint about the <code>memoir</code> class	414
9.79.1.9	Hint about the <code>amsart</code> and <code>amsproc</code> classes	414
9.79.1.10	Hint about the <code>amsbook</code> class	414
9.79.1.11	Hint about the <code>abstract</code> package	415
9.79.1.12	Hint about the <code>jura</code> class	415
9.79.1.13	Hint about the <code>flowfram</code> package	415
9.79.1.14	Hint about the alteration of the sectionning commands	416

9.79.1.14.1	Alteration of <code>\part</code>	416
9.79.1.14.2	Alteration of <code>\chapter</code>	417
9.79.1.14.3	Alteration of <code>\section</code>	417
9.79.1.15	Hint about the consistency of the calling sequences of the commands	418
9.79.2	Final part: <code>\mtc@hints@enddoc</code>	419
9.79.2.1	Hint about <code>\sect-lof lot</code> and the <code>insection</code> option	419
9.79.2.2	Final part of the consistency tests	419
9.79.2.3	Check if the main tables have been prepared (first part)	421
9.79.2.4	Check if the main tables have been prepared (second part)	423
9.79.2.5	Check the number of mini-tables, in case of short extensions	426
9.79.2.6	Final part of the hint about the <code>sectsty</code> package	427
9.79.2.7	Final part of the hint about the <code>varsects</code> package	427
9.79.2.8	Final part of the hint about the <code>fncychap</code> package	427
9.79.2.9	Final part of the hint about the <code>hangcaption</code> package	428
9.79.2.10	Final part of the hint about the <code>quotchap</code> package	428
9.79.2.11	Final part of the hint about the <code>romannum</code> package	428
9.79.2.12	Final part of the hint about the <code>sfheaders</code> package	429
9.79.2.13	Final part of the hint about the <code>alnumsec</code> package	429
9.79.2.14	Final part of the hint about the <code>captcont</code> package	429
9.79.2.15	Final part of the hint about the <code>caption</code> package	430
9.79.2.16	Final part of the hint about the <code>caption2</code> package	430
9.79.2.17	Final part of the hint about the <code>ccaption</code> package	430
9.79.2.18	Final part of the hint about the <code>mcaption</code> package	431
9.79.2.19	Final part of the hint about the <code>float</code> package	431
9.79.2.20	Final part of the hint about the <code>floatrow</code> package	431
9.79.2.21	Final part of the hint about the <code>trivfloat</code> package	432
9.79.2.22	Final part of the hint about the <code>rotfloat</code> package	432
9.79.2.23	Check if empty mini-tables have been detected	432
9.79.2.24	Check if obsolete commands have been used	434
9.79.2.25	Check if some hints have been written	435
9.80	Processing of options	436
9.80.1	Processing the <code>insection</code> option	436
9.80.2	Processing the <code>notoccite</code> option	437
9.80.3	Processing the <code>listfiles</code> option	437
9.80.4	Processing the <code>hints</code> option	438
9.80.5	Saving the sectioning commands	438
9.81	Trapping the undefined preparation and insertion commands	439
9.82	The <code>fminitoc.dtx</code> file	441
10	Commented code of the <code>mtcoff</code> package	442
10.1	Why <code>mtcoff</code> ?	443
10.2	Identification of the package	443
10.3	Faking counters and dimensions	444
10.4	Faking simple commands	447
10.5	Faking commands with one optional argument	448
10.6	Disabling the internal commands	449
10.7	Disabling the font commands	449
10.8	Disabling the <code>\mtcset...</code> commands	451

10.9	Disabling the new \l@... commands	451
10.10	Ignore the obsolete commands	451
10.11	Disabling the \mtcselectlanguage and \mtcloadmlo commands	451
10.12	Disabling the commands for the horizontal rules	452
10.13	Disabling the commands for the page numbers	452
10.14	Disabling the mini-table features commands	453
10.15	Disabling miscellaneous flags and commands	454
10.16	Caution for some commands	454
10.17	Disabling commands for “coffee”	456
10.18	Disabling the mtchideinmain... environments	456
10.19	Inhibition of the \mtc@[save restore]XXXdepth internal commands	456
10.20	Disabling the \mtcfixglossary command	456
10.21	Disabling the \mtcfixindex command	457
10.22	Disabling the \mtcfixnomenclature command	457
10.23	Disabling the \addstarred... commands	457
11	Commented code of the mtcmess package	458
12	Patch for the memoir class	459
13	Language definition (.mld) and object (.mlo) files	461
13.1	“Acadian” language : acadian.mld	466
13.2	“Acadien” language : acadien.mld	466
13.3	“Afrikaan” language : afrikaan.mld	466
13.4	“Afrikaans” language : afrikaans.mld	467
13.5	“Albanian” language : albanian.mld	467
13.6	“American” language : american.mld	467
13.7	“Arab” language : arab.mld	468
13.8	“Arab2” language : arab2.mld	468
13.9	“Arabi” language : arabi.mld	469
13.10	“Arabic” language : arabic.mld	469
13.11	“Armenian” language : armenian.mld	469
13.12	“Australian” language : australian.mld	470
13.13	“Austrian” language : austrian.mld	470
13.14	“Bahasa” language : bahasa.mld	470
13.15	“Bahasai” language : bahasai.mld	471
13.16	“Bahasam” language : bahasam.mld	471
13.17	“Bangla” language : bangla.mld	472
13.18	“Basque” language : basque.mld	472
13.19	“Bicig” language : bicig.mld	473
13.20	“Bicig2” language : bicig2.mld	474
13.21	“Bicig3” language : bicig3.mld	474
13.22	“Bithe” language : bithe.mld	475
13.23	“Brazil” language : brazil.mld	475
13.24	“Brazilian” language : brazilian.mld	476
13.25	“Breton” language : breton.mld	476
13.26	“British” language : british.mld	476
13.27	“Bulgarian” language : bulgarian.mld	477
13.28	“Bulgarianb” language : bulgarianb.mld	477
13.29	“Buryat” language : buryat.mld	478

13.30	“Buryat2” language : buryat2.mld	479
13.31	“Canadian” language : canadian.mld	479
13.32	“Canadien” language : canadien.mld	479
13.33	“Castillan” language : castillan.mld	480
13.34	“Castillian” language : castillian.mld	480
13.35	“Catalan” language : catalan.mld	480
13.36	“Chinese1” language : chinese1.mld and chinese1.mlo	481
13.37	“Chinese2” language : chinese2.mld and chinese2.mlo	481
13.38	“Croatian” language : croatian.mld	482
13.39	“Czech” language : czech.mld	482
13.40	“Danish” language : danish.mld	483
13.41	“Devanagari” language : devanagari.mld	483
13.42	“Dutch” language : dutch.mld	484
13.43	“English” language : english.mld	484
13.44	“English1” language : english1.mld	485
13.45	“English2” language : english2.mld	485
13.46	“Esperant” language : esperant.mld	486
13.47	“Esperanto” language : esperanto.mld	486
13.48	“Estonian” language : estonian.mld	487
13.49	“Ethiopia” language : ethiopia.mld	487
13.50	“Ethiopian” language : ethiopian.mld	488
13.51	“Ethiopian2” language : ethiopian2.mld	488
13.52	“Farsi1” language : farsi1.mld and farsi1.mlo	489
13.53	“Farsi2” language : farsi2.mld and farsi2.mlo	489
13.54	“Farsi3” language : farsi3.mld	490
13.55	“Finnish” language : finnish.mld	490
13.56	“Finnish2” language : finnish2.mld	491
13.57	“Francais” language : francais.mld	491
13.58	“French” language : french.mld	492
13.59	“French1” language : french1.mld	492
13.60	“French2” language : french2.mld	493
13.61	“Frenchb” language : frenchb.mld	494
13.62	“Frenchle” language : frenchle.mld	494
13.63	“Frenchpro” language : frenchpro.mld	494
13.64	“Galician” language : galician.mld	494
13.65	“German” language : german.mld	495
13.66	“Germanb” language : germanb.mld	496
13.67	“Germanb2” language : germanb2.mld	496
13.68	“Greek” language : greek.mld	497
13.69	“Greek-mono” language : greek-mono.mld	497
13.70	“Greek-polydemo” language : greek-polydemo.mld	498
13.71	“Greek-polykatha” language : greek-polykatha.mld	499
13.72	“Guarani” language : guarani.mld	500
13.73	“Hangul1” language : hangul1.mld and hangul1.mlo	501
13.74	“Hangul2” language : hangul2.mld and hangul2.mlo	501
13.75	“Hangul3” language : hangul3.mld and hangul3.mlo	502
13.76	“Hangul4” language : hangul4.mld and hangul4.mlo	502
13.77	“Hangul-u8” language : hangul-u8.mld and hangul-u8.mlo	503
13.78	“Hanja1” language : hanja1.mld and hanja1.mlo	503

13.79	“Hanja2” language : hanja2.mld and hanja2.mlo	504
13.80	“Hanja-u8” language : hanja-u8.mld and hanja-u8.mlo	504
13.81	“Hebrew” language : hebrew.mld	505
13.82	“Hebrew2” language : hebrew2.mld	506
13.83	“Hindi” language : hindi.mld	506
13.84	“Hindi-modern” language : hindi-modern.mld	507
13.85	“Hungarian” language : hungarian.mld	507
13.86	“Icelandic” language : icelandic.mld	508
13.87	“Indon” language : indon.mld	508
13.88	“Indonesian” language : indonesian.mld	508
13.89	“Interlingua” language : interlingua.mld	509
13.90	“Irish” language : irish.mld	509
13.91	“Italian” language : italian.mld	510
13.92	“Italian2” language : italian2.mld	510
13.93	“Japanese” language : japanese.mld and japanese.mlo	511
13.94	“Japanese2” language : japanese2.mld and japanese2.mlo	511
13.95	“Japanese3” language : japanese3.mld and japanese3.mlo	512
13.96	“Japanese4” language : japanese4.mld and japanese4.mlo	512
13.97	“Japanese5” language : japanese5.mld and japanese5.mlo	513
13.98	“Japanese6” language : japanese6.mld and japanese6.mlo	513
13.99	“Kannada” language : kannada.mld	514
13.100	“Khalka” language : khalkha.mld	514
13.101	“Latin” language : latin.mld	514
13.102	“Latin2” language : latin2.mld	515
13.103	“Latinc” language : latinc.mld	516
13.104	“Latinc2” language : latinc2.mld	516
13.105	“Latvian” language : latvian.mld	517
13.106	“Latvian2” language : latvian2.mld	517
13.107	“Letton” language : letton.mld	518
13.108	“Letton2” language : letton2.mld	518
13.109	“Lithuanian” language : lithuanian.mld	518
13.110	“Lithuanian2” language : lithuanian2.mld	519
13.111	“Lowersorbian” language : lowersorbian.mld	519
13.112	“Lsorbian” language : lsorbian.mld	520
13.113	“Magyar” language : magyar.mld	520
13.114	“Magyar2” language : magyar2.mld	521
13.115	“Magyar3” language : magyar3.mld	521
13.116	“Malay” language : malay.mld	522
13.117	“Malayalam-keli” language : malayalam-keli.mld	522
13.118	“Malayalam-omega” language : malayalam-omega.mld and malayalam-omega.mlo	522
13.119	“Malayalam-rachana” language : malayalam-rachana.mld	523
13.120	“Malayalam-rachana2” language : malayalam-rachana2.mld	523
13.121	“Manju” language : manju.mld	524
13.122	“Meyalu” language : meyalu.mld	524
13.123	“Mongol” language : mongol.mld	524
13.124	“Mongolb” language : mongolb.mld	525
13.125	“Mongolian” language : mongolian.mld	526
13.126	“Naustrian” language : naustrian.mld	526

13.127 “Newzealand” language : newzealand.mld	526
13.128 “Ngerman” language : ngerman.mld	527
13.129 “Ngermanb” language : ngermanb.mld	527
13.130 “Ngermanb2” language : ngermanb2.mld	528
13.131 “Norsk” language : norsk.mld	528
13.132 “Norsk2” language : norsk2.mld	529
13.133 “Nynorsk” language : nynorsk.mld	529
13.134 “Nynorsk2” language : nynorsk2.mld	530
13.135 “Polish” language : polish.mld	530
13.136 “Polish2” language : polish2.mld	531
13.137 “Polski” language : polski.mld	531
13.138 “Portuges” language : portuges.mld	532
13.139 “Portuguese” language : portuguese.mld	532
13.140 “Romanian” language : romanian.mld	533
13.141 “Romanian2” language : romanian2.mld	533
13.142 “Romanian3” language : romanian3.mld	534
13.143 “Russian” language : russian.mld	534
13.144 “Russian2m” language : russian2m.mld	535
13.145 “Russian2o” language : russian2o.mld	536
13.146 “Russianb” language : russianb.mld	537
13.147 “Russianc” language : russienc.mld	538
13.148 “Russian-cca” language : russian-cca.mld and russian-cca.mlo	538
13.149 “Russian-cca1” language : russian-cca1.mld and russian-cca1.mlo	539
13.150 “Russian-lh” language : russian-lh.mld and russian-lh.mlo	539
13.151 “Russian-lhcyralt” language : russian-lhcyralt.mld and russian-lhcyralt.mlo	539
13.152 “Russian-lhcyrkoi” language : russian-lhcyrkoi.mld and russian-lhcyrkoi.mlo	540
13.153 “Russian-lhcyrwin” language : russian-lhcyrwin.mld and russian-lhcyrwin.mlo	540
13.154 “Samin” language : samin.mld	541
13.155 “Scottish” language : scottish.mld	541
13.156 “Serbian” language : serbian.mld	542
13.157 “Serbianc” language : serbianc.mld	542
13.158 “Slovak” language : slovak.mld	543
13.159 “Slovene” language : slovene.mld	544
13.160 “Spanish” language : spanish.mld	544
13.161 “Spanish2” language : spanish2.mld	545
13.162 “Spanish3” language : spanish3.mld	545
13.163 “Spanish4” language : spanish4.mld	546
13.164 “Swedish” language : swedish.mld	546
13.165 “Swedish2” language : swedish2.mld	547
13.166 “Thai” language : thai.mld and thai.mlo	547
13.167 “Turkish” language : turkish.mld	548
13.168 “Uighur” language : uighur.mld	548
13.169 “Uighur2” language : uighur2.mld	548
13.170 “Uighur3” language : uighur3.mld	549
13.171 “UKenglish” language : UKenglish.mld	549
13.172 “Ukraineb” language : ukraineb.mld	549

Table of contents	16
13.173 “Ukrainian” language : ukrainian.mld	550
13.174 “Uppersorbian” language : uppersorbian.mld	550
13.175 “USenglish” language : USenglish.mld	551
13.176 “Usorbian” language : usorbian.mld	551
13.177 “Vietnam” language : vietnam.mld	551
13.178 “Vietnamese” language : vietnamese.mld	552
13.179 “Welsh” language : welsh.mld	552
13.180 “Xalx” language : xalx.mld	553
13.181 “Xalx2” language : xalx2.mld	553
13.182 “Xalx3” language : xalx3.mld	554
 III Complements	 555
Bibliography	557
Changes history	591
Index	625

List of figures

1.1	Float barriers	31
1.2	Layout of a ToC (LoF, LoT) entry	44
2.1	Three compilations for <code>minitoc</code>	58

List of tables

1.1	Commands for a <code>minitoc</code>	28
1.2	Commands for a <code>secttoc</code>	30
1.3	Commands for a <code>parttoc</code>	32
1.4	Adding an entry in the ToC for a starred part, chapter, or section	34
1.5	Fonts and titles for the mini-table commands	36
1.6	Fonts for the mini-table entries	37
1.7	Available languages	38
1.8	Horizontal rules	45
1.9	Page numbers	45
1.10	Features for mini-tables	47
1.11	Extensions of the auxiliary files	54
2.1	Kernings before minitable bottom rules	77
3.1	Package options	79
3.2	General commands	80
3.3	Commands : part level	81
3.4	Commands : chapter level	82
3.5	Commands : section level	83
3.6	Commands for horizontal rules	84
3.7	Commands for page numbers	84
3.8	Commands for mini-tables features	85
3.9	Preparation and insertion commands	86
3.10	Adjustment commands	86
3.11	Classes and packages needing some precautions with <code>minitoc</code>	87
3.12	Obsolete commands	88
5.1	Message identifiers	154
6.1	Category codes	213
6.2	Encoding schemes implemented in CJK	214
6.3	Standard document classes	215
6.4	Depths for sectionning commands	216
6.5	Various encodings	218
6.6	Most common font encodings	232
6.7	Most common font families	232
6.8	Most common font series	232
6.9	Most common font shapes	233

List of tables **19**

6.10	The five font parameters for some fonts	233
6.11	Author commands for fonts	233
6.12	Some systems derived from \TeX and \LaTeX	235
7.1	List of files (<code>minitoc.1</code>)	244
7.2	A TDS-compliant hierarchy for the <code>minitoc</code> files	245
9.1	Trick to detect the limitation to short extensions	286

About this document

This document is rather thick, but please, be not afraid: you do not need to read every page.

- The most useful chapters are in the first part (“User’s Manual”, page 23):
 - the chapter “The minitoc package”, page 24, describes the essential commands to use the package;
 - the chapter “Frequently Asked Questions”, page 55, may help you to solve some specific problems;
 - the “Memento” chapter, page 79, is a set of tables to be used as a remainder of the commands of this package;
 - the “Examples of documents” chapter, page 89, gives the code of some documents showing the basic usage of the minitoc package and some interesting situations;
 - the “Messages” chapter, page 153, is certainly boring, but it should be searched if you get some warning or error messages from the minitoc package, because it explains them and also the informative messages (table 5.1 on page 154 will help you to find the meaning of a message);
 - the “Jargon” chapter, page 207, attempts to explain most of the technical terms used here;
 - the “Installation” chapter, page 243, describes all the files included in the distribution of the package;
 - the “Postface” chapter, page 248, gives an abbreviated history of the package.
- The second part, “Implementation”, page 262, is much more technical; you can read it if you are interested in the details of the coding of the package. The chapter “Language definition (.mld) and object (.mlo) files”, page 461, may be useful if you are interested by some language.
- The third part, “Complements”, page 556, contains a bibliography, a detailed history of the package, and an index.

For this document, I have used:

- a short table of contents (summary), with the `\shorttoc` command from my `shorttoc` package [130], displaying only parts and chapters;

- a main table of contents (`\tableofcontents`), with a maximum depth (6);
- a main list of figures (`\listoffigures`) and a main list of tables (`\listoftables`);
- for each part, a table of contents displaying only the chapters (`\parttoc` with `parttocdepth` equal to 1);
- for each chapter, a complete table of contents (`\minitoc` with `minitocdepth` equal to 6);
- for each chapter, a list of figures (`\minilof`) and a list of tables (`\minilot`) when useful;
- customized parameters for the layout of the mini-tables; as the PDF version of the documentation uses hyperlinks, these mini-tables should help you to navigate in the document;
- some hyperlinks, placed in the right margin, contain a message identifier; the link points to the description of the message in the “Messages” chapter; try this one →
- the `calc` package [337] to make some computations with comfort;
- the `booktabs` package [139] to format the tables;
- the `doc` [257] and `docstrip` [225] packages to document the code.

I0001

Part I

User's Manual

Contents of the First Part

1	The minitoc package	24	6	Jargon	207
2	Frequently Asked Questions	55	7	Installation	243
3	Memento	79	8	Postface	248
4	Examples of documents	89		Acknowledgments	258
5	Messages	153			

Chapter 1

The minitoc package

Contents

1.1	Introduction	25
1.1.1	Important restrictions	26
1.1.2	Version	26
1.2	License	26
1.3	Using the minitoc package	27
1.3.1	Loading the package and creating the mini-tables	27
1.3.2	Preparing the mini-tables	27
1.3.3	Placing the mini-tables	29
1.3.4	Starred chapters, parts and sections	33
1.4	Typesetting of the mini-tables	34
1.4.1	Chapter-level mini-tables	34
1.4.2	Titles for chapter-level mini-tables	35
1.4.3	Part-level mini-tables	35
1.4.4	Titles for part-level mini-tables	37
1.4.5	Section-level mini-tables	37
1.4.6	Titles for section-level mini-tables	39
1.4.7	Position of the titles	39
1.4.7.1	For mini-tables at the part level	39
1.4.7.2	For mini-tables at the chapter level	39
1.4.7.3	For mini-tables at the section level	40
1.4.7.4	Summary of the positionning of titles	40
1.4.8	Line spacing in the mini-tables	40
1.4.9	Simplified commands for fonts	41
1.4.10	Simplified command for mini-table titles	41
1.4.11	Simplified command for mini-table depths	42
1.4.12	Simplified command for mini-table offsets	42
1.4.13	Languages for the titles	43
1.4.14	Altering the layout of the mini-tables	43
1.5	Special Features	45
1.5.1	Horizontal Rules	45
1.5.2	Page Numbers, Leaders	46
1.5.3	Features for parttocs and other mini-tables	46
1.5.3.1	Remark about page styles	48

1.5.4	The “Chapter 0” Problem (solved)	48
1.5.5	Special Entries in the TOC	49
1.6	The <code>notoccite</code> option	51
1.7	The <code>listfiles</code> and <code>nolistfiles</code> options	51
1.8	The <code>hints</code> option	51
1.9	Usage with MS-DOS	53
1.10	Why several \LaTeX runs are required?	54
1.11	The <code>mtcoff</code> package	54

Figures

1.1	Float barriers	31
1.2	Layout of a ToC (LoF, LoT) entry	44

Tables

1.1	Commands for a <code>minitoc</code>	28
1.2	Commands for a <code>secttoc</code>	30
1.3	Commands for a <code>parttoc</code>	32
1.4	Adding an entry in the ToC for a starred part, chapter, or section	34
1.5	Fonts and titles for the mini-table commands	36
1.6	Fonts for the mini-table entries	37
1.7	Available languages	38
1.8	Horizontal rules	45
1.9	Page numbers	45
1.10	Features for mini-tables	47
1.11	Extensions of the auxiliary files	54

1.1 Introduction

The minitoc package, initially written by Nigel WARD and Dan JURAFSKY, has been almost completely redesigned by Jean-Pierre F. DRUCBERT (ONERA/Centre de Toulouse). A summary of the evolution of this package is given in the chapter 8 on page 248. This package creates a mini-table of contents (a “minitoc”¹) at the beginning of each chapter of a document. It is also possible to have a mini-list of figures (a “minilof”) and a mini-list of tables (a “minilot”). The document class should of course define chapters (classes like `book` or `report` [220]) or sections (classes like `article`²) [220]. Thus, this package should not be used with document classes without standard sectionning commands (like `letter`). When the document class defines a “part” sectionning level (i.e., classes like `book`, `report` and `article`), you can create a “partial” table of contents (a “parttoc”) at the beginning of each part of a document. It is also possible to have a partial list of figures (a “partlof”) and a partial list of tables (a “partlot”). When the document class has no `\chapter` command but has a `\section` command, you may use

¹ The minitoc package introduces its own jargon, explained in this document. It should not be too difficult, however, to learn and use; it will be used here, of course.

² As the standard `proc` class [219], and the `ltxdoc` [103] and `ltnews` [194] classes, load the standard `article` class, these classes will be just considered as variants of the `article` class.

section level tables of contents (“secttocs”) at the beginning of each section; and you can also have section level lists of figures (“sectlofs”) or of tables (“sectlots”).

All these tables (“minitocs”, “partlots”, “sectlofs”, etc.) are collectively referenced as “mini-tables” (or sometimes “mini-lists”).

1.1.1 Important restrictions

Note: you cannot use chapter level and section level mini-tables in the same document. This restriction is intended to avoid documents with full of local tables of contents, lists of figures and tables at every sectioning level.



Note: the commands relative to the part level are defined only if the document class defines `\part`. The commands relative to the section level are defined only if the document class defines `\section` but does not define `\chapter`.



1.1.2 Version

The current version of this package is #55. You will find a resumed history of the package in the “Postface” chapter (chapter 8 on page 248) and a more detailed history in “Changes History”, page 591.

1.2 License

This package must be distributed and/or may be modified under the conditions of the **L^AT_EX Project Public License**, either version 1.3 of this license or (as convenient) any later version. The latest version of this license is in

<http://www.latex-project.org/lppl.txt>

and version 1.3 or later is part of all distributions of L^AT_EX version 2003/12/01 or later.

But please don't bother me about hacked versions; they will not be supported. However, suggestions for corrections and improvements are welcome.

1.3 Using the minitoc package

1.3.1 Loading the package and creating the mini-tables

`\usepackage` To use the minitoc package, you must insert a command:
`\minitoc`
`\chapter` `\usepackage[...options...]{minitoc}`

in the preamble of the document³. The mini-table of contents will be in the chapter, after the `\chapter` command, at the point of the `\minitoc` command. The `\minitoc` command may occur *almost anywhere*⁴ inside a chapter.

Of course, it is better to put it at the beginning of the chapter, eventually after some introductory material. But you can also decide to put it at the end of the chapter. You should use the same conventions in all chapters. If you want to add the mini-table of contents for a chapter, you must use the sequence given in table 1.1 on the next page.

For each mini-table of contents, an auxiliary file will be created with a name of the form *document.mtc* $\langle N \rangle$, where $\langle N \rangle$ is the absolute chapter number. “Absolute” means that this number is unique, and always increasing from the first chapter⁵. The suffix is *.mlf* $\langle N \rangle$ for mini-lists of figures and is *.mlt* $\langle N \rangle$ for mini-lists of tables. (If under MS-DOS or any operating system with short extensions to filenames, see section 1.9 on page 53 and section 2.5 on page 57). There are similar commands for mini-tables at the part or section level, depending on the document class.

1.3.2 Preparing the mini-tables

`\dominitoc` The commands⁶ `\dominitoc`, `\dominilof`, and `\dominilot` (for mini-tables at the
`\dominilof` chapter level), take respectively the *document.toc*, *document.lof*, and *document.lot*
`\dominilot` files, and cut slices from them to create the *document.mtc* $\langle N \rangle$, *document.mlf* $\langle N \rangle$, and
document.mlt $\langle N \rangle$ files.

³ This command must be placed *after* any modification done on the sectioning commands; if you modify sectioning commands after loading the minitoc package, this one might not work properly.

⁴ “Almost anywhere” means “in a normal place”, like between two paragraphs of normal text, or in a (wide enough) minipage, but not in a too strange position (like a marginal note or a footnote). Even a multicolumn or a floating environment can be used, but with care. But note that a minitoc can be rather long, if the chapter is complex and if you ask for details with a high value for `minitocdepth`.

⁵ The concept of an “absolute” counter for the mini-tables has solved some obscure problems, and also made obsolete some commands, like `\firstpartis`, `\firstchapteris`, and `\firstsectionis`.

⁶ The code of these `\do...` commands is directly derived from that of the `xr` package [101], by David P. CARLISLE, with his permission.

Table 1.1: Commands for a minitoc

\documentclass[...]{book}		
\usepackage[...options...]{minitoc}		
...		
\setlength{\mtcindent}{24pt}	default	
\renewcommand{\mtcoffset}{0pt}	default	
\mtcsetoffset{minitoc}{0pt}	default	
\setlength{\mtcskipamount}{\bigskipamount}	default	
...		
\setcounter{minitocdepth}{2}	default	
\renewcommand{\mtcfont}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}		default
\renewcommand{\mtcSfont}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}		default
or:		
\mtcsetdepth{minitoc}{2}		default
\mtcsetfont{minitoc}{*}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}		default
\mtcsetfont{minitoc}{section}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}		default
...		
\begin{document}		
...		
\dominitoc		
\dominilof		
\dominilot		
\tableofcontents	or \faketableofcontents	
\listoffigures	or \fakelistoffigures	
\listoftables	or \fakelistoftables	
...		
\chapter{...}		
\minitoc	if you want one	
\mtcskip		
\minilof	if you want one	
\mtcskip		
\minilot	if you want one	
...		

\dosecttoc The commands \dosecttoc, \dosectlof, and \dosectlot (for mini-tables at the section level) and \doparttoc, \dopartlof, and \dopartlot (for mini-tables at the part level) are analog.

\doparttoc

\dopartlof The \mtcprepare command invokes (and replaces) all these preparation commands when they are available with the document class and if the adequate contents file exists. This command accepts also an optional argument to set the default position of the title for *all* the mini-tables.

\dopartlot

\mtcprepare

\tableofcontents

\listoffigures

\listoftables

To obtain a satisfactory result (i.e., non empty), please note that all these commands must *imperatively be put before* any command analog to the \tableofcontents, \listoffigures, and \listoftables commands, or their \fake... siblings.

It is also *strongly* recommended to put these commands *before* any sectionning command producing an entry in the table of contents (for the \do...toc commands), and *before* any \caption-like command producing an entry in the list of figures (for the \do...lof



commands) or in the list of tables (for the `\do...lot`) commands; else disorder in the mini-tables might result.

1.3.3 Placing the mini-tables

`\mtcskip` The `\mtcskip` command may be used to add a vertical skip between two mini-tables. Its height is `\mtcskipamount` (equal to `\bigskipamount` by default). `\mtcskip` eliminates any immediate previous vertical skip, to not accumulate vertical space when a mini-table is empty and skipped by the `checkfiles` option.

`\secttoc` The section-level table of contents will be in the section, after the `\section` command, at the point of the `\secttoc` command. The `\secttoc` command may occur *almost anywhere* inside a section. It is often better to put it at the beginning of the section, or after some short introductory material. You should use the same conventions in all sections. If you want to add a section-level table of contents for a section, you must use the sequence given in Table 1.2 on the following page.

For each section-level table of contents, an auxiliary file will be created with a name of the form `document.stc<N>`, where `<N>` is the absolute section number. The suffix is `.slf<N>` for section-level lists of figures and is `.slt<N>` for section-level lists of tables. (If under MS-DOS or any operating system with short extensions to filenames, see section 1.9 on page 53 and section 2.5 on page 57).

`\usepackage` As floats (figures and tables) could drift⁷ somewhere outside the printing area of the text of the section, the `sectlofs` and `sectlots` can be rather strange. In order to have a better behaviour of these mini-tables, it may be useful to add the `insection` option in the `\usepackage` command:

W0056

```
\usepackage[insection]{minitoc}
```

if you want more consistent `sectlofs` and `sectlots`. The `insection` option loads the `placeins` package [11] with its `verbose` and `section` options. Sometimes, it might be necessary to use the `\FloatBarrier` command of this package to correctly place the figure or table and have a correct mini-table. The options `above` or `below` options should not be used, because they allow floats to drift above or below a `\FloatBarrier` (or a section limit): the barrier becomes “porous” upwards⁸ (↑) or downwards (↓), or both (↕). The `section` option makes a more “watertight” barrier (≡). This is illustrated by the figure 1.1 on page 31.

⁷ A float is like a ship in harbor. There is a place in the text which is the anchor location. The figure or “ship” can float around to various places relative to the anchor, but always downstream or downwind. A float with bad placement parameters is like a ship that slips its anchor and eventually crashes on the rocks at the end of a chapter.

Donald ARSENEAU

⁸ But a float can not drift upwards beyond the top of the current page.

Table 1.2: Commands for a secttoc

```

\documentclass[...]{article}
\usepackage[...options...]{minitoc}
...
\setlength{\stcindent}{24pt}      default
\renewcommand{\stcoffset}{0pt}    default
\mtcsetoffset{secttoc}{0pt}      default
...
\setcounter{secttocdepth}{2}      default
\renewcommand{\stcfont}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}    default
\renewcommand{\stcSSfont}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}  default
or:
\mtcsetdepth{secttoc}{2}          default
\mtcsetfont{secttoc}{*}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}    default
\mtcsetfont{secttoc}{subsection}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}  default
...
\begin{document}
...
\dosecttoc
\dosectlof
\dosectlot
\tableofcontents                  or \faketableofcontents
\listoffigures                    or \fakelistoffigures
\listoftables                     or \fakelistoftables
...
\section{...}
\secttoc                          if you want one
\sectlof                          if you want one
\sectlot                          if you want one
...

```

The `placeins` package, by Donald ARSENEAU, is available on CTAN archives; note that the file `placeins.sty` contains its own documentation, with a copy in `placeins.txt`. You need a version whose date is at least 2005/04/18.

Since version #45, this option also loads the `flafter` package (described in [226] and [260, page 286]) to force a float to appear *after* its reference. The `above` and `below` options of the `placeins` package are no more used, because they allowed the floats to move out of the section.

In all cases, it is *strongly* recommended to verify the position of the floats and, if necessary, to look at the messages of the `placeins` package in the `document.log` file. The placement of floats is a very complex problem, so some manual intervention may be necessary, like the use of the float package [238] or, better, of the floatrow package [223].



If you want to add the partial table of contents for a part, you must use the sequence given in Table 1.3 on page 32. For each partial table of contents, an auxiliary file will be created with a name of the form `document.ptc<N>`, where `<N>` is the absolute part number. The suffix is `.plf<N>` for partial lists of figures and is `.plt<N>` for partial lists of tables. (If under MS-DOS or any operating system with short extensions to filenames, see section 1.9 on page 53 and section 2.5 on page 57).

Figure 1.1: Float barriers

Table 1.3: Commands for a parttoc

\documentclass[...]{book}		
\usepackage[...options...]{minitoc}		
...		
\setlength{\ptcindent}{0pt}	default	
\renewcommand{\ptcoffset}{0pt}	default	
\mtcsetoffset{parttoc}{0pt}	default	
...		
\setcounter{parttocdepth}{2}	default	
\renewcommand{\ptcfont}{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}		default
\renewcommand{\ptcCfont}{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}		default
\renewcommand{\ptcSfont}{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}		default
or:		
\mtcsetdepth{parttoc}{2}		default
\mtcsetfont{parttoc}{*}{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}		default
\mtcsetfont{parttoc}{chapter}{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}		default
\mtcsetfont{parttoc}{section}{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}		default
...		
\begin{document}		
...		
\doparttoc		
\dopartlof		
\dopartlot		
\tableofcontents	or \faketableofcontents	
\listoffigures	or \fakelistoffigures	
\listoftables	or \fakelistoftables	
...		
\part{...}		
\parttoc	if you want one	
\partlof	if you want one	
\partlot	if you want one	
...		

Note: the user is responsible of asking or not asking a mini-table (mini-toc, -lof or -lot) for some chapter. Asking a minilof for a chapter without any figure would result in an empty and ugly mini-list of figures (i.e., the title and two horizontal rules). He is also responsible of requiring or not requiring a partial toc (lof or lot) for some part. Asking a partlof for a part without any figure would result in an empty and ugly part list of figures (i.e., the title alone on a page). Analogous remarks apply to section-level mini-tables (secttoc, sectlof, and sectlot) and to the part-level mini-tables (parttoc, partlof, and partlot).



But since version #35, empty mini-tables are just ignored and this problem should disappear in normal circumstances. Nevertheless, it is recommended to put no \minitoc command in a chapter without sections and no \minilof or \minilot command in a chapter without figures or tables. The checkfiles (see section 1.3.3 on page 29) package option (default) skips empty mini-tables (with a note in the document.log file); the nocheckfiles package option restores the old behaviour (empty mini-tables are displayed).

By default, the mini-tables and partial tables of contents contain only references higher and to sections and subsections. The counters parttocdepth, minitocdepth and secttocdepth,

similar to `tocdepth`, allow the user to modify this behaviour. Mini or partial lists of figures or tables are not affected by the value of these counters, but if there are depth counters for these lists (`lofdepth` and `lotdepth`), as done by the `subfigure` and `subfig` packages [114, 116] from Steven Douglas COCHRAN, new depth counters are created if necessary, with obvious names like `partlofdepth`, `partlotdepth`, `minilofdepth`, `minilotdepth`, `sectlofdepth`, and `sectlotdepth`.

1.3.4 Starred chapters, parts and sections

`\addcontentsline` **NOTE:** if using `\chapter*` and a
`\addstarredpart`
`\addstarredchapter` `\addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{...}`
`\addstarredsection`

command to add something in the table of contents, the numbering of the minitoc auxiliary files would be altered. To avoid that problem, a first method is to say:



```
\addstarredpart{...}
\addstarredchapter{...}
\addstarredsection{...}
```

These commands apply only for the level of a part-, mini- or sect-toc; for lower levels, the usual command is sufficient:

`\addcontentsline` `\addcontentsline{toc}{section}{...}`

So, to add a section-level entry in the global toc and in the minitoc of a starred chapter:

```
\chapter*{Title of chapter}
\addstarredchapter{Title of chapter}
\minitoc
\section*{First section}
\addcontentsline{toc}{section}{First section}
\section*{Second section}
\addcontentsline{toc}{section}{Second section}
```

`\adjustptc` There is sometimes a problem with mini-tables when you use `\chapter*` (or `\section*`):
`\adjustmtc` the minitocs appear in the wrong chapter. You can add a `\adjustmtc` (or `\adjuststc`
`\adjuststc` or `\adjustptc`) command at the end of the starred chapter (or section or part) to
increment the corresponding counter. Do not use commands like `\stepcounter{mtc}` or
`\addtocounter{mtc}{...}` (which should work, but it is cheating), because the `mtcoff`
package (see section 1.11 on page 54) knows what to do about `\adjustmtc` (and others),
but can do nothing about `\stepcounter` or `\addtocounter`, as they are a standard basic
commands of L^AT_EX, not minitoc specific commands. Syntax:

`\adjustptc[n]` `\adjustmtc[n]` `\adjuststc[n]`

where n is the increment (default: 1).

`\decrementptc`
`\decrementmtc`
`\decrementstc`
`\incrementptc`
`\incrementmtc`
`\incrementstc`
`\mtcaddpart`
`\mtcaddchapter`
`\mtcaddsection`

There are similar commands to *decrement* or *increment* by 1 these counters: `\decrementptc`, `\decrementmtc`, `\decrementstc`, `\incrementptc`, `\incrementmtc`, and `\incrementstc`; the same remarks as above apply. These commands have no argument. But a more clever way to solve this problem would be using commands similar to:

`\mtcaddchapter[title]`

This command adds an entry in the table of contents (and adjusts the counter, because it calls `\adjustmtc`). The table 1.4 summarizes these commands, that you put *after* `\chapter*`, etc. If the optional argument is omitted or empty or blank, no entry will be visible in the table of contents nor in the minitocs. If the optional argument is something invisible (like `~`, `\space` or `\quad`), the result will be strange but still logically correct. See also section 2.30 on page 71 for the problems with `\mtcaddpart`.



Table 1.4: Adding an entry in the ToC for a starred part, chapter, or section

Level	With title
part	<code>\mtcaddpart[title]</code>
chapter	<code>\mtcaddchapter[title]</code>
section	<code>\mtcaddsection[title]</code>

1.4 Typesetting of the mini-tables

The mini-tables are typeset in a verse-like environment, and can be split over several pages.

1.4.1 Chapter-level mini-tables

`\mtcfont`
`\mtcSfont`

The mini-table of contents is typeset in the `\mtcfont` font, which is `\small\rmfamily` by default. In fact, the font `\mtcfont` is selected at the beginning of a minitoc, minilof or minilot. More selective choices are made with the following fonts. Section entries are typeset in the `\mtcSfont` font, which is `\small\bfseries` by default.

`\mtcSSfont` For subsections, subsubsections, paragraphs and subparagraphs, the commands `\mtcSSfont`, `\mtcSSSfont`, `\mtcPfont` and `\mtcSPfont` are available (by default, `\small\rmfamily`) to enable the use of various fonts. Mini lists of figures and tables are typeset in the fonts `\mlffont` and `\mltfont`, which are `\small\rmfamily` by default. There are also `\mlfSfont` and `\mltSfont` for sub-figures and sub-tables entries. See tables 1.5 on the next page and 1.6 on page 37⁹.

`\mlfSfont`

`\mltSfont`

Note that the default choice of fonts is certainly not perfect and hence it is not definitive. A symptom of this imperfection is the presence of poor alignments in the mini-tables, if bold and non-bold fonts are mixed¹⁰ (the true length of 1em is not the same for the fonts). This can often be adjusted by changing some fonts.



1.4.2 Titles for chapter-level mini-tables

`\mtifont` Titles are typeset in the `\mtifont` (`\large\bfseries` by default) font and the text strings of the titles are defined by `\mtctitle`, `\mlftitle` and `\mltttitle`, which are the strings “Contents”, “Figures” and “Tables” by default. These title commands should be redefined by `\renewcommand` or `\mtcsettitle` for languages other than english.

`\mtctitle`

`\mlftitle`

`\mltttitle`

`\mtcsettitle`

`\mtcselectlanguage` The language definition files like `french.mld` and `english.mld` (the suffix `.mld` means “minitoc language definition (file)”) (and many others, see the list in table 1.7 on page 38 and section 1.4.13 on page 43) are available. You can easily prepare a similar file for a preferred language (see section 2.26 on page 69). You can change the language of these titles by using the `\mtcselectlanguage{language}` macro.

1.4.3 Part-level mini-tables

`\ptcfont` The partial table of contents is typeset in the `\ptcfont` font, which is defined as `\normalsize\rmfamily` by default. In fact, the font `\ptcfont` is selected at the beginning of a parttoc, partlof or partlot. More selective choices are made with the following fonts. Chapter entries are typeset in the `\ptcCfont` font, which is `\normalsize\bfseries` by default. Section entries are typeset in the `\ptcSfont` font, which is `\normalsize\rmfamily` by default.

`\ptcCfont`

`\ptcSfont`

`\ptcSSfont` For subsections, subsubsections, paragraphs and subparagraphs, the commands `\ptcSSfont`, `\ptcSSSfont`, `\ptcPfont`, and `\ptcSPfont` are available (by default, `\normalsize\rmfamily`) if you want to use various fonts.

`\ptcSSSfont`

`\ptcPfont`

`\ptcSPfont`

⁹ Thanks to Stefan ULRICH, who contributed these tables initially.

¹⁰ This appears, e.g., if you are using the Computer Modern Roman (CMR) fonts [202]. The symptom disappears if you do not use bold CMR fonts or if you use the TX fonts (txfonts package [312]), for instance, like in this document. See also section 2.29 on page 70.

Table 1.5: Fonts and titles for the mini-table commands

Command	Font default setting	Title string default setting	Title font default setting
For the <code>\part...</code> commands:			
<code>\parttoc</code>	<code>\ptcfont</code> <code>\normalsize\rmfamily*</code> <code>\small\rmfamily**</code>	<code>\ptctitle</code> Table of Contents [†]	<code>\ptifont</code> <code>\LARGE\bfseries*</code> <code>\Large\bfseries**</code>
<code>\partlof</code>	<code>\plffont</code> <code>\normalsize\rmfamily*</code> <code>\small\rmfamily**</code> <code>\plfSfont</code> <code>\normalsize\rmfamily*</code> <code>\small\rmfamily**</code>	<code>\plftitle</code> List of Figures [†]	<code>\ptifont</code> <code>\LARGE\bfseries*</code> <code>\Large\bfseries**</code>
<code>\partlot</code>	<code>\pltfont</code> <code>\normalsize\rmfamily*</code> <code>\small\rmfamily**</code> <code>\pltSfont</code> <code>\normalsize\rmfamily*</code> <code>\small\rmfamily**</code>	<code>\plttitle</code> List of Tables [†]	<code>\ptifont</code> <code>\LARGE\bfseries*</code> <code>\Large\bfseries**</code>
For the <code>\mini...</code> commands:			
<code>\minitoc</code>	<code>\mtcfont</code> <code>\small\rmfamily</code>	<code>\mtctitle</code> Contents [†]	<code>\mtifont</code> <code>\large\bfseries</code>
<code>\minilof</code>	<code>\mlffont</code> <code>\small\rmfamily</code> <code>\mlfSfont</code> <code>\small\rmfamily</code>	<code>\mlftitle</code> Figures [†]	<code>\mtifont</code> <code>\large\bfseries</code>
<code>\minilot</code>	<code>\mltfont</code> <code>\small\rmfamily</code> <code>\mltSfont</code> <code>\small\rmfamily</code>	<code>\mltttitle</code> Tables [†]	<code>\mtifont</code> <code>\large\bfseries</code>
For the <code>\sect...</code> commands:**			
<code>\secttoc</code>	<code>\stcfont</code> <code>\small\rmfamily</code>	<code>\stctitle</code> Contents [†]	<code>\stifont</code> <code>\Large\bfseries</code>
<code>\sectlof</code>	<code>\slffont</code> <code>\small\rmfamily</code> <code>\slfSfont</code> <code>\small\rmfamily</code>	<code>\slftitle</code> Figures [†]	<code>\stifont</code> <code>\Large\bfseries</code>
<code>\sectlot</code>	<code>\sltfont</code> <code>\small\rmfamily</code> <code>\sltSfont</code> <code>\small\rmfamily</code>	<code>\sltttitle</code> Tables [†]	<code>\stifont</code> <code>\Large\bfseries</code>

*for document classes with `\chapter` level (e.g., book, report).**for document classes with no `\chapter` level (e.g., article).[†]default for english; changed by the language definition files or `\renewcommand`.All these fonts use `\rmfamily`, `\upshape`, and `\mdseries` by default.

`\plffont` Partial lists of figures and tables are typeset in the fonts `\plffont` and `\pltfont`, which
`\pltfont` are `\normalsize\rmfamily` by default. There are also `\plfSfont` and `\pltSfont` for
`\plfSfont` sub-figures and sub-tables entries.
`\pltSfont`

Table 1.6: Fonts for the mini-table entries

Level	Font	default setting
For the <code>\parttoc</code> entries:		
Chapter*	<code>\ptcCfont*</code>	<code>\normalsize\bfseries*</code>
Section	<code>\ptcSfont</code>	<code>\normalsize\rmfamily*</code> <code>\small\bfseries**</code>
Subsection	<code>\ptcSSfont</code>	<i>(like <code>\ptcfont</code>)</i>
Subsubsection	<code>\ptcSSSfont</code>	<i>(like <code>\ptcfont</code>)</i>
Paragraph	<code>\ptcPfont</code>	<i>(like <code>\ptcfont</code>)</i>
Subparagraph	<code>\ptcSPfont</code>	<i>(like <code>\ptcfont</code>)</i>
For the <code>\minitoc</code> entries:*		
Section	<code>\mtcSfont</code>	<code>\small\bfseries</code>
Subsection	<code>\mtcSSfont</code>	<i>(like <code>\mtcfont</code>)</i>
Subsubsection	<code>\mtcSSSfont</code>	<i>(like <code>\mtcfont</code>)</i>
Paragraph	<code>\mtcPfont</code>	<i>(like <code>\mtcfont</code>)</i>
Subparagraph	<code>\mtcSPfont</code>	<i>(like <code>\mtcfont</code>)</i>
For the <code>\secttoc</code> entries:**		
Subsection	<code>\stcSSfont</code>	<code>\normalsize\bfseries</code>
Subsubsection	<code>\stcSSSfont</code>	<i>(like <code>\stcfont</code>)</i>
Paragraph	<code>\stcPfont</code>	<i>(like <code>\stcfont</code>)</i>
Subparagraph	<code>\stcSPfont</code>	<i>(like <code>\stcfont</code>)</i>

*for document classes with `\chapter` level (e.g., book, report).**for document classes with no `\chapter` level (e.g., article).

1.4.4 Titles for part-level mini-tables

<code>\ptifont</code>	Titles are typeset in the <code>\ptifont</code> (<code>\LARGE\bfseries</code> by default) font and the text strings of the titles are defined by <code>\ptctitle</code> , <code>\plftitle</code> and <code>\plttitle</code> , which are the strings “Table of Contents”, “List of Figures” and “List of Tables” by default. These title commands should be redefined by <code>\renewcommand</code> or <code>\mtcsettitle</code> for languages other than english.
<code>\ptctitle</code>	
<code>\plftitle</code>	
<code>\plttitle</code>	
<code>\mtcsettitle</code>	The language definition files like <code>french.mld</code> and <code>english.mld</code> (and many others; for a complete list, see table 1.7 on the next page) are available. Read also section 1.4.13 on page 43. You can easily prepare a similar file for a preferred language (see section 2.26 on page 69). You can change the language of these titles by using the <code>\mtcselectlanguage{language}</code> macro.
<code>\mtcselectlanguage</code>	

1.4.5 Section-level mini-tables

<code>\stcfont</code>	The section-level table of contents is typeset in the <code>\stcfont</code> font, which is defined as <code>\normalsize\rmfamily</code> by default. In fact, the font <code>\stcfont</code> is selected at the beginning of a <code>secttoc</code> , <code>sectlof</code> or <code>sectlot</code> .
<code>\stcSSfont</code>	
<code>\stcSSSfont</code>	

Table 1.7: Available languages

1. afrikaan (afrikaans)	29. english [†] (american, australian, british, canadian, newzealand, UKenglish, USenglish)	51. greek- polykatha ^{c,e}	84. lowersorbian (lsorbian)	111. russian2o ^{c,e}
2. albanian		52. guarani ^h	85. magyar (hungarian)	112. russian-cca ^{c,g,h}
3. arab (arabic) ^c		53. hangul1 ^{c,d,g}		113. russian-cca1 ^{c,g,h}
4. arab2 ^{a,c}		54. hangul2 ^{c,d,g}	86. magyar2	114. russian-lh ^{c,g,h}
5. arabi ^{c,j}		55. hangul3 ^{c,d,g}	87. magyar3	115. russian- lhcyralt ^{c,g,h}
6. armenian ^c	30. english1	56. hangul4 ^{c,d,g}	88. malayalam-keli ^c	116. russian- lhcyrkoi ^{c,g,h}
7. bahasai (bahasa, indon, indonesian) ^c	31. english2	57. hangul-u8 ^{c,e,f,g,h}	89. malayalam- omega ^{c,e,g,h}	117. russian- lhcyrwin ^{c,g,h}
8. bahasam (malay, meyalu) ^c	32. esperant (esperanto)	58. hanja1 ^{c,d,g}	90. malayalam- rachana ^c	118. samin
9. bangla ^c	33. estonian	59. hanja2 ^{c,d,g}	91. malayalam- rachana2 ^c	119. scottish
10. basque	34. ethiopia (ethiopian) ^c	60. hanja-u8 ^{c,e,f,g,h}	92. mongol ^c	120. serbian
11. bicig (uighur) ^{c,i}	35. ethiopian2 ^{c,e,h}	61. hebrew ^{c,h}	93. mongolb (mongolian) ^{c,f,h}	121. serbianc ^c
12. bicig2 (uighur2) ^{c,i}	36. farsi1 ^{c,f,g}	62. hebrew2 ^{c,h}	94. ngermanb (ngerman, naustrian)	122. slovak
13. bicig3 (uighur3) ^{c,i}	37. farsi2 ^{c,f,g}	63. hindi-modern ^c	95. ngermanb2	123. slovene
14. bithe (manju) ^c	38. farsi3 ^{c,j}	64. icelandic ^f	96. norsk	124. spanish (castillan, castillian)
15. brazil (brazilian)	39. finnish	65. interlingua	97. norsk2	125. spanish2
16. breton	40. finnish2	66. irish	98. nynorsk	126. spanish3 ^{e,f}
17. bulgarian ^c	41. french (frenchb, frenchle, frenchpro, francais, acadien, canadien)	67. italian	99. nynorsk2	127. spanish4
18. bulgarianb ^c		68. italian2	100. polish	128. swedish
19. buryat ^c	42. french1	69. japanese ^{c,d,g}	101. polish2 ^{c,e}	129. swedish2
20. buryat2 ^c	43. french2	70. japanese2 ^{c,d,g}	102. polski ^c	130. thai ^{c,d,f,g}
21. catalan	44. galician	71. japanese3 ^{c,d,g}	103. portuguese (portuges)	131. turkish
22. chinese1 ^{c,g}	45. german (austrian)	72. japanese4 ^{c,d,g}	104. romanian	132. ukrainian (ukraineb) ^{b,c}
23. chinese2 ^{c,g}	46. germanb	73. japanese5 ^{c,d,g}	105. romanian2	133. uppersorbian (usorbian)
24. croatian	47. germanb2	74. japanese6 ^{c,d,g}	106. romanian3	134. vietnam (vietnamese) ^{c,d}
25. czech	48. greek ^c	75. kannada ^c	107. russian ^{b,c}	135. welsh
26. danish	49. greek-mono ^{c,e}	76. latin	108. russianb ^{b,c}	136. xalx (khalkha) ^c
27. devanagari (hindi) ^c	50. greek- polydemo ^{c,e}	77. latin2	109. russianc ^{b,c}	137. xalx2 ^c
28. dutch		78. latinc	110. russian2m ^{c,e}	138. xalx3 ^c
		79. latinc2		
		80. latvian (letton) ^e		
		81. latvian2 (letton2) ^c		
		82. lithuanian		
		83. lithuanian2 ^{c,h}		

() The languages between parentheses are aliases of a main language and their .mld files will load the .mld file of that main language.

[†] The presence of the english.mld file is mandatory.

^a The arab(ic) and arab2 languages require the use of the ArabTeX package [214, 215] (by Klaus LAGALLY).

^b The russian language is not yet supported by the babel system [46, 47], but russianb [224] is supported if you use babel-3.6 or a higher version; russianc is an extra. Look also at other .mld files for russian.

^c Some languages may require specific fonts.

^d Requires the CJK package [233, 234].

^e Requires Lambda (Λ), the version of L^AT_EX for Omega (Ω).

^f Requires a 8-bits input encoding.

^g Uses also a .mlo file.

^h Requires a specific input encoding.

ⁱ The bicig language is also known as uighur.

^j The arabi and farsi3 languages require the use of the Arabi package [191].

More selective choices are made with the following fonts. Subsection entries are typeset in the `\stcSSfont` font, which is `\normalsize\bfseries` by default. Subsubsection entries are typeset in the `\stcSSSfont` font, which is `\normalsize\rmfamily` by default.

<code>\stcPfont</code>	For paragraphs and subparagraphs, the commands <code>\stcPfont</code> and <code>\stcSPfont</code> are
<code>\stcSPfont</code>	available (by default, <code>\normalsize\rmfamily</code>) if you want to use various fonts. Section-
<code>\slffont</code>	level lists of figures and tables are typeset in the fonts <code>\slffont</code> and <code>\sltfont</code> , which are
<code>\sltfont</code>	defined as <code>\normalsize\rmfamily</code> by default. There are also <code>\slfSfont</code> and <code>\sltSfont</code>
<code>\slfSfont</code>	for sub-figures and sub-tables entries.
<code>\sltSfont</code>	

1.4.6 Titles for section-level mini-tables

<code>\stifont</code>	Titles are typeset in the <code>\stifont</code> (<code>\normalsize\bfseries</code> by default) font and the text
<code>\stctitle</code>	strings of the titles are defined by <code>\stctitle</code> , <code>\slftitle</code> and <code>\sltttitle</code> , which are the
<code>\slftitle</code>	strings “Contents”, “Figures” and “Tables” by default. These title commands should be
<code>\sltttitle</code>	redefined by <code>\renewcommand</code> or <code>\mtcsettitle</code> for languages other than english.
<code>\mtcsettitle</code>	
<code>\mtcselectlanguage</code>	The language definition files like <code>french.mld</code> and <code>english.mld</code> (and also many others, as listed in table 1.7 on the preceding page and explained in section 1.4.13 on page 43) are available. You can easily prepare a similar file for your preferred language (see section 2.26 on page 69). You can change the language of these titles by using the <code>\mtcselectlanguage{language}</code> macro.

1.4.7 Position of the titles

1.4.7.1 For mini-tables at the part level

<code>\doparttoc</code>	By default, titles are on the left. The preparation commands <code>\doparttoc</code> , <code>\dopartlof</code> and
<code>\dopartlof</code>	<code>\dopartlot</code> accept an optional argument to change the default position of the corresponding
<code>\dopartlot</code>	title: [l] for left (default), [c] for center, [r] for right, or [e] (or [n]) for empty (no title).
<code>\parttoc</code>	The change is global for all the document. If you want to change the position of the title for
<code>\partlof</code>	only one parttoc (or partlof or partlot), just use such an optional argument with the command
<code>\partlot</code>	<code>\parttoc</code> (or <code>\partlof</code> or <code>\partlot</code>).

1.4.7.2 For mini-tables at the chapter level

<code>\dominitoc</code>	By default, titles are on the left. The preparation commands <code>\dominitoc</code> , <code>\dominilof</code> and
<code>\dominilof</code>	<code>\dominilot</code> accept an optional argument to change the default position of the corresponding
<code>\dominilot</code>	title: [l] for left (default), [c] for center, [r] for right, or [e] (or [n]) for “empty” (“no”
<code>\minitoc</code>	title). The change is global for all the document. If you want to change the position of the
<code>\minilof</code>	title for only one minitoc (or minilof or minilot), just use such an optional argument with the
<code>\minilot</code>	command <code>\minitoc</code> (or <code>\minilof</code> or <code>\minilot</code>).

1.4.7.3 For mini-tables at the section level

`\dosecttoc` By default, titles are on the left. The preparation commands `\dosecttoc`, `\dosectlof` and `\dosectlot` accept an optional argument to change the default position of the corresponding title: `[l]` for left (default), `[c]` for center, `[r]` for right, or `[e]` (or `[n]`) for empty (no title).
`\secttoc` The change is global for all the document. If you want to change the position of the title for only one secttoc (or sectlof or sectlot), just use such an optional argument with the command `\secttoc` (or `\sectlof` or `\sectlot`).

1.4.7.4 Summary of the positionning of titles

`\doparttoc` To summarize: by default, all titles are on the left. However, each one of the following preparation commands:
`\dopartlof`
`\dopartlot`
`\dominitoc` `\doparttoc`, `\dopartlof`, `\dopartlot`,
`\dominilof` `\dominitoc`, `\dominilof`, `\dominilot`,
`\dominilot` `\dosecttoc`, `\dosectlof`, `\dosectlot`,
`\dosecttoc` `\mtcprepare`
`\dosectlof`
`\dosectlot` accepts an optional argument to change the positionning of the title: `[l]` for left (default), `[c]` for center, `[r]` for right, `[e]` or `[n]` for empty (no title), for all the corresponding mini-tables (for all mini-tables in the case of `\mtcprepare`).

`\parttoc` The following insertion commands:

`\partlof`

`\partlot` `\parttoc`, `\partlof`, `\partlot`,

`\minitoc` `\minitoc`, `\minilof`, `\minilot`,

`\minilof` `\secttoc`, `\sectlof`, `\sectlot`

`\minilot`

`\secttoc` accept the same optional arguments, but these options change the positionning only for the title of the current mini-table.

`\sectlof`

`\sectlot`

1.4.8 Line spacing in the mini-tables

`\iftightmtc` With the commands `\tightmtctrue` (or the `tight` package option) and `\tightmtcfalse` (or the `loose` package option, which is the default), the mini-tables will have less (tight) or more (loose) space between contents lines.

`\tightmtctrue`

`\tightmtcfalse`

`\parskip` But with the KOMA-Script classes [207, 270, 308] (`scrartcl`, `scrbook` and `scrreprt`), it may sometimes be necessary to use the following options or commands, because we need to set `\parskip` to zero in place of `\parsep` to tighten the mini-table. The efficiency of the following options depends on the options given to these KOMA-Script classes (`parindent` option, `parskip` option and variants).

`\parsep`

`\ifktightmtc` For the KOMA-Script classes, with the commands `\ktightmtctrue` (or the `k-tight` package option) and `\ktightmtcfalse` (or the `k-loose` package option, which is the default), the mini-tables will have less (tight) or more (loose) space between contents lines.

1.4.9 Simplified commands for fonts

`\mtcsetfont` To simplify the redefinition of the fonts for mini-tables, there are two useful commands:
`\mtcsettitlefont`

```
\mtcsetfont{mini-table}{sectioning-level}{commands}
\mtcsettitlefont{mini-table}{commands}
```

For instance,

```
\mtcsetfont{minitoc}{subsection}%
{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}
```

```
\mtcsetfont{minilof}{subfigure}%
{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}
```

will redefine `\mtcSSfont` and `\mlfSfont` with the given font commands.

Note that `\mtcsetfont{parttoc}{*}{...}` allows also to redefine `\ptcfont`, etc.

Moreover,

```
\mtcsettitlefont{parttoc}{\Large\rmfamily\itshape\mdseries}
```

will redefine `\ptifont` (for titles in the `parttocs`, `partlofs` and `partlofs`) with the given font commands.

1.4.10 Simplified command for mini-table titles

`\mtcsettitle` To simplify the redefinition of the titles for mini-tables, the `\mtcsettitle` command is also available:

```
\mtcsettitle{mini-table}{title string}
```

For instance,

```
\mtcsettitle{minitoc}{Description of contents}
```

will redefine `\mtctitle` with the given string. This command checks that you redefine a title for a mini-table type available in your document class.

1.4.11 Simplified command for mini-table depths

`\mtcsetdepth` To simplify the redefinition of the depths for mini-tables, the `\mtcsetdepth` command is also available:

```
\mtcsetdepth{mini-table}{depth}
```

For instance,

```
\mtcsetdepth{minitoc}{4}
```

will set the counter `minitocdepth` with the given value. This command checks that you set a depth for a mini-table type available in your document class (and that it is possible to change its depth).

1.4.12 Simplified command for mini-table offsets

`\mtcsetoffset` To simplify the redefinition of the offsets for mini-tables, the `\mtcsetoffset` command is also available:

```
\mtcsetoffset{mini-table}{offset}
```

For instance,

```
\mtcsetoffset{minitoc}{-4em}
```

will set the macro `mtcoffset` with the given value. This command checks that you set a offset for a mini-table type available in your document class (and that it is possible to change its offset).

NOTE: the argument of `\mtcsetoffset` is *not* verified. It must be a length value, without shrink nor stretch part. A positive offset is towards the right, a negative one towards the left.



1.4.13 Languages for the titles

Most of the strings defined in the language definition files (`.mld`) were taken from the superb `babel` package [46, 47] of Johannes L. BRAAMS, some were adapted, others were made available by gentle users or taken from specific packages, like `ArabTeX` [214, 215], `Arabi` [191], `ArmTeX` (armenian) [121], `BangTeX` (bangla) [286], `CervanTeX` (spanish) [41]. `Devanāgarī` for `TeX` [288], `ethiop` [37], `guarani` [39], `malayalam` [4] and `omal` [5], `MonTeX` (mongol) [117, 120], `CJK` (chinese, corean-hangûl/hanja, japanese, thai) [233, 234], `PATeX` [281, 358] (polish), `SLATeX` [248] (swedish), `FarsiTeX` [136] (farsi or iranian), or `vietnam` [235] — `latvian` (letton), `greek-mono`, `greek-polydemo`, `greek-polykatha`, `polish2`, `russian2m`, `russian2o` and `spanish3` need *Lambda* (Λ), i.e., the Omega (Ω) version of `LATeX`, (see [210]), or even found by searching on the Web (`bulgarianb.mld` for upper cyrillic bulgarian, `japanese.mld` for japanese, `serbianc.mld` for cyrillic serbian). Other languages are welcome. See table 1.7 on page 38.

But for some oriental languages¹¹, the sources of the titles use some exotic encodings which are difficult to manipulate in a `.dtx` file, hence the `.mld` file is then just a wrapper which loads a special file, nicknamed a `.mlo` file¹², not generated by the `.dtx` file in the current version of minitoc package, but via `filecontents` environments in the `minitoc.ins` file, and playing with the “catcode” of the “delete” character.



1.4.14 Altering the layout of the mini-tables

The layout of a mini-table is described in the figure 1.2 on the following page (this figure is adapted from [363]), which defines some internal commands (these are not *dimensions*, but `LATeX` commands, created by `\newcommand`, modifiable via `\renewcommand`).

- `\@dotsep`, which is the separation between the dots in the dotted line. It is a pure number expressing *math units*; 18 math units make 1em (one quad), which is about the width of a “m” in the current font. As the real size of 1em is font dependent, the separation between the dots may vary if you use different fonts for different types of entries in the mini-tables.
- `\@pnumwidth`, is the width of the space reserved for the page number. It is a `LATeX` command containing the representation of a length (e.g., 1.55em).
- `\@tocrmarg`, is the distance (margin) between the right border of the table and the end of the dotted line. It should be larger than `\@pnumwidth`, and can be a rubber length (i.e., contain some glue, like 2.55em plus 1fil); if you specify the

¹¹Mainly for chinese, farsi, hangûl (korean), hanja (korean), japanese, malayalam-omega, thai and some variants of russian.

¹²The extension `.mlo` means *minitoc language object*.

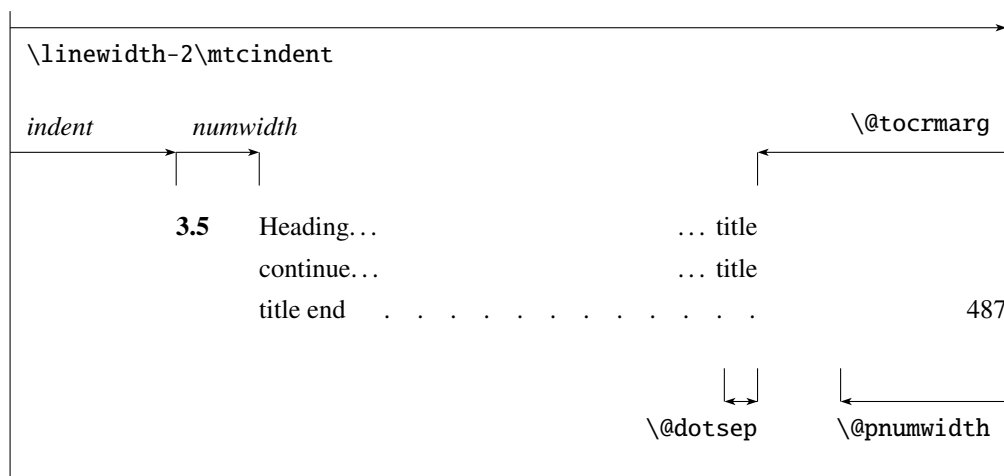


Figure 1.2: Layout of a ToC (LoF, LoT) entry

“... plus 1fil” portion, the text of the entry will be ragged on right; it is useful if you have long entries, and it can avoid most hyphenations.

$\backslash\text{mtcsetformat}$ As these commands are internal (their names contain the “@” character) and must have a local effect only on specific mini-tables, you should alter them indirectly via the $\backslash\text{mtcsetformat}$ command:

$\backslash\text{mtcsetformat}\{mini-table\}\{parameter\}\{value\}$

where *mini-table* is one of the `parttoc`, `partlof`, `partlot`, `minitoc`, `minilof`, `minilot`, `secttoc`, `sectlof` or `sectlot` keywords; *parameter* is one of the `dotinterval` (for $\backslash\text{@dotsep}$), `pagenumwidth` (for $\backslash\text{@pnumwidth}$), or `tocrightmargin` (for $\backslash\text{@tocrmarg}$) keywords; so:

$\backslash\text{mtcsetformat}\{\text{partlof}\}\{\text{tocrightmargin}\}\{2.55\text{em plus 1fil}\}$

will set the right margin to 2.55em plus 1fil in the lists of tables at the part level. The elasticity (plus 1fil) is useful if the table captions are long.

Note that the `tocrightmargin` (for $\backslash\text{@tocrmarg}$) parameter should obviously be greater than the `pagenumwidth` parameter (this appears in the figure 1.2).

If the `dotinterval` parameter (for $\backslash\text{@dotsep}$) is large enough (try 450, then increase or decrease), the dots of leaders will be so much spread out that they will disappear.

Table 1.8: Horizontal rules

				defaults for		
	rules in		no rules in	book	report	article
<code>\ptcrule</code>	parttocs	<code>\noptcrule</code>	parttocs	N	N	Y
<code>\plfrule</code>	partlofs	<code>\noplfrule</code>	partlofs	N	N	Y
<code>\pltrule</code>	partlots	<code>\nopltrule</code>	partlots	N	N	Y
<code>\mtcrule</code>	minitocs	<code>\nomtcrule</code>	minitocs	Y	Y	(NA)
<code>\mlfrule</code>	minilofs	<code>\nomlfrule</code>	minilofs	Y	Y	(NA)
<code>\mltrule</code>	minilots	<code>\nomltrule</code>	minilots	Y	Y	(NA)
<code>\stcrule</code>	secttocs	<code>\nostcrule</code>	secttocs	(NA)	(NA)	Y
<code>\slfrule</code>	sectlofs	<code>\noslfrule</code>	sectlofs	(NA)	(NA)	Y
<code>\sltrule</code>	sectlots	<code>\nosltrule</code>	sectlots	(NA)	(NA)	Y

(NA) = not available.

Table 1.9: Page numbers

Type	Page numbers (Default)	No page numbers
parttoc	<code>\ptcpagenumbers</code>	<code>\noptcpagenumbers</code>
minitoc	<code>\mtcpagenumbers</code>	<code>\nomtcpagenumbers</code>
secttoc	<code>\stcpagenumbers</code>	<code>\nostcpagenumbers</code>
partlof	<code>\plfpagenumbers</code>	<code>\noplfpagenumbers</code>
minilof	<code>\mlfpagenumbers</code>	<code>\nomlfpagenumbers</code>
sectlof	<code>\slfpagenumbers</code>	<code>\noslfpagenumbers</code>
partlot	<code>\pltpagenumbers</code>	<code>\nopltpagenumbers</code>
minilot	<code>\mltpagenumbers</code>	<code>\nomltpagenumbers</code>
sectlot	<code>\sltpagenumbers</code>	<code>\nosltpagenumbers</code>

1.5 Special Features

1.5.1 Horizontal Rules

`\mtcsetrules` By default, most of mini-tables have horizontal rules after their titles and at their ends. The exception is the “parttoc” in a book- or report-like document (i.e., when `\chapter` is defined). To activate or deactivate these rules, the commands of the table 1.8 are available. But you can also use the following command, which is simpler:

```
\mtcsetrules{mini-table|*}{on|off}
```

where *mini-table* is one of the `parttoc`, `partlof`, `partlot`, `minitoc`, `minilof`, `minilot`, `secttoc`, `sectlof`, or `sectlot` keywords; if the first argument is a star (*), all mini-tables are affected; the keywords `on` and `off` have the following synonyms¹³:

- `on`, `ON`, `yes`, `YES`, `y`, `Y`, `true`, `TRUE`, `t`, `T`, `vrai`, `VRAI`, `v`, `V`, `oui`, `OUI`, `o`, `O`, `+`, and `1`;
- `off`, `OFF`, `no`, `NO`, `n`, `N`, `false`, `FALSE`, `faux`, `FAUX`, `f`, `F`, `non`, `NON`, `-`, and `0`.

1.5.2 Page Numbers, Leaders

`\mtcsetpagenumbers` By default, the page numbers are listed in each `minitoc`, `minilof`, etc. Some authors want only the section titles (with the section numbers), but without page numbers. Hence the obvious declarations of table 1.9 on the page before are available. But you can also use the following command:

```
\mtcsetpagenumbers{mini-table|*}{on|off}
```

where *mini-table* is one of the `parttoc`, `partlof`, `partlot`, `minitoc`, `minilof`, `minilot`, `secttoc`, `sectlof`, or `sectlot` keywords; the keywords `on` and `off` have the following synonyms¹³:

- `on`, `ON`, `yes`, `YES`, `y`, `Y`, `true`, `TRUE`, `t`, `T`, `vrai`, `VRAI`, `v`, `V`, `oui`, `OUI`, `o`, `O`, `+`, and `1`;
- `off`, `OFF`, `no`, `NO`, `n`, `N`, `false`, `FALSE`, `faux`, `FAUX`, `f`, `F`, `non`, `NON`, `-`, and `0`.

If the first argument is a star (*), all mini-tables are affected.

In the mini-tables, they are leaders of dots between the section titles and the page numbers. The `undotted` package option removes these dots. The `dotted` package option is the default. See also section 1.4.14 on page 43.

1.5.3 Features for parttocs and other mini-tables

By default, a `parttoc` (or a `partlof` or a `partlot`), in a `book`- or `report`-class document, is preceded and followed by a `\cleardoublepage` (which acts like `\clearpage` in a one-side document), and has a page style of `empty`. Since version #32, you can modify this behaviour by redefining the commands of table 1.10 on the next page, whose meaning is often obvious. A feature defined as `\empty` does nothing.

¹³ `O` and `o` are the letter O, `0` is the zero digit.

Table 1.10: Features for mini-tables

Type	Command	Default
parttoc	\beforeparttoc	\cleardoublepage
parttoc	\afterparttoc	\cleardoublepage
parttoc	\openparttoc	\empty
parttoc	\closeparttoc	\empty
parttoc	\thispageparttocstyle	\thispagestyle{empty}
partlof	\beforepartlof	\cleardoublepage
partlof	\afterpartlof	\cleardoublepage
partlof	\openpartlof	\empty
partlof	\closepartlof	\empty
partlof	\thispagepartlofstyle	\thispagestyle{empty}
partlot	\beforepartlot	\cleardoublepage
partlot	\afterpartlot	\cleardoublepage
partlot	\openpartlot	\empty
partlot	\closepartlot	\empty
partlot	\thispagepartlotstyle	\thispagestyle{empty}
minitoc	\beforeminitoc	\empty
minitoc	\afterminitoc	\empty
minitoc	\openminitoc	\empty
minitoc	\closeminitoc	\empty
minitoc	\thispageminitocstyle	\empty
minilof	\beforeminilof	\empty
minilof	\afterminilof	\empty
minilof	\openminilof	\empty
minilof	\closeminilof	\empty
minilof	\thispageminilofstyle	\empty
minilot	\beforeminilot	\empty
minilot	\afterminilot	\empty
minilot	\openminilot	\empty
minilot	\closeminilot	\empty
minilot	\thispageminilotstyle	\empty
secttoc	\beforesecttoc	\empty
secttoc	\aftersecttoc	\empty
secttoc	\opensecttoc	\empty
secttoc	\closesecttoc	\empty
secttoc	\thispagesecttocstyle	\empty
sectlof	\beforesectlof	\empty
sectlof	\aftersectlof	\empty
sectlof	\opensectlof	\empty
sectlof	\closesectlof	\empty
sectlof	\thispagesectlofstyle	\empty
sectlot	\beforesectlot	\empty
sectlot	\aftersectlot	\empty
sectlot	\opensectlot	\empty
sectlot	\closesectlot	\empty
sectlot	\thispagesectlotstyle	\empty
\mtcsetfeature{ <i>mini-table</i> }{before after open close pagestyle}{ <i>command</i> }		
Modifies the features for a mini-table.		

`\mtcsetfeature` The command:

```
\mtcsetfeature{mini-table}{keyword}{commands}
```

allows you to redefine any of these commands. *mini-table* is one of the mini-table names: `parttoc...` `sectlot`. *keyword* is one of the followings: `before`, `after`, `open`, `close` or `pagestyle`. *commands* is either a sequence of commands like `\clearpage`, `\cleardoublepage`, `\thispagestyle{...}`, etc., either `\empty` (does nothing).

1.5.3.1 Remark about page styles¹⁴

`\mtcsetfeature` The default commands for part-level mini-tables page styles are defined as being simply
`\thispagestyle` a standard `\thispagestyle{empty}` command, because in document classes defining the
`\pagestyle` `\chapter` command (like `book` or `report`), the part-level mini-tables are on their own pages.
`\cleardoublepage` If the document is printed recto-verso, the first page is recto. Usually, these pages are not numbered and have no header and no footer. This behaviour is a consequence from the default definitions of the commands of table 1.10 on the preceding page. If you want an other behaviour, you can change these definitions. Note that, by default, only the *first* page of these mini-tables are in the `empty` page style. You can set the style of this first page by using `\thispagestyle` and set the style of the following pages by using `\pagestyle`, but you must not forget to reset the normal style after the mini-table. Look at this short theoretical example¹⁵:



```
\mtcsetfeature{parttoc}{before}%
  {\cleardoublepage}
\mtcsetfeature{parttoc}{pagestyle}%
  {\thispagestyle{empty}\pagestyle{myheadings}}
\mtcsetfeature{parttoc}{after}%
  {\cleardoublepage\pagestyle{headings}}
```

where we add a `\cleardoublepage` before each `parttoc`, then we set the `empty` page style for the first page of the `parttocs`, the `myheadings` page style for the following pages of the `parttocs`, and set `headings` page style for the pages after the mini-table, after a `\cleardoublepage`.

1.5.4 The “Chapter 0” Problem (solved)

Some documents do not begin with chapter number one, but with chapter number zero (or even a weirder number).

¹⁴This remark is taken and adapted from a draft of the second edition of the JMPL [24], by Benjamin BAYART, where he comments the minitoc package.

¹⁵This example shows that the third argument can be a *sequence* of commands: we set the style of the current page and the style of the following pages.

`\firstpartis` **Before version #23 (1994/11/08)** To make the minitoc package work with such documents, you must insert the command:

`\addtocounter` `\dominitoc` `\firstchapteris{⟨N⟩}`

`\firstchapteris` before the `\dominitoc` and analogous commands. `⟨N⟩` is the number of the first chapter. This command *does not* modify the numbering of chapters, you must use a

`\firstsectionis` `\addtocounter{chapter}{-1}`

command to get a first chapter numbered 0. The `\firstpartis` and `\firstsectionis` commands are similar for parts and sections with a non standard numbering.

Since version #23 (1994/11/08) These commands are now obsolete, as this problem has been solved (via the “absolute” numbering of the mini-table auxiliary files). Thus now they just produce harmless warnings.

W0003

W0004

W0005

1.5.5 Special Entries in the TOC

If you want to add entries in the Table of Contents for objects like the Table of Contents itself, the List of Figures, the List of Tables, the Bibliography or the Index, you should use the `tocbibind` package [366] by Peter R. WILSON (this package is available from the CTAN archives).



I0046

`\dominitoc` But these entries are considered as chapters (or sections in an article class document) when the `.toc` file is scanned to prepare the minitocs (the `\dominitoc` phase).

Note that the same problems appear if you use one of the `scrbook`, `scrreprt` or `scrartcl` KOMA-Script classes [207, 270, 308] with some options (`liststotoc`, `liststotocnumbered`, `bibtotoc`, `bibtotocnumbered`, and `idxTOTOC`). The solutions are the same ones.

I0043

`\mtcaddchapter` So you must add an `\mtcaddchapter` command, *without argument*, after each of the involved

`\tableofcontents` commands `\tableofcontents`, `\listoffigures`, and `\listoftables`.

`\listoffigures`

`\listoftables`

`\adjustmtc` For the bibliography, you should add a `\adjustmtc` command after the `\bibliography`

`\bibliography` command.

`\printglossary` For the glossary, it is a bit more complicated, you should add the following commands just

`\addcontentsline` after the `\printglossary` command:

`\mtcaddchapter` `\addcontentsline{lof}{xchapter}{}{}`

`\mtcfixglossary` `\addcontentsline{lot}{xchapter}{}{}`

`\mtcaddchapter`

But this can be done by:

```
\mtcfixglossary[chapter|section|part]
```

where the optional argument is the level for the glossary entry in the TOC. By default, if `\chapter` is defined, the `chapter` level is used, else the `section` level. If neither `\chapter` or `\section` are defined, the `part` level will be used if `\part` is defined; else an error is reported. It is *recommended* that you check the result and, if necessary, you adjust the optional argument.



<pre>\printindex \addcontentsline \mtcaddchapter \mtcfixindex</pre>	<p>For the index, it is like for the glossary, you should add the following commands just after the <code>\printindex</code> command:</p> <pre>\addcontentsline{lof}{xchapter}{} \addcontentsline{lot}{xchapter}{} \mtcaddchapter</pre>
---	---

But this can be done by:

```
\mtcfixindex[chapter|section|part]
```

where the optional argument is the level for the index entry in the TOC. By default, if `\chapter` is defined, the `chapter` level is used, else the `section` level. If neither `\chapter` or `\section` are defined, the `part` level will be used if `\part` is defined; else an error is reported. It is *recommended* that you check the result and, if necessary, you adjust the optional argument.



<pre>\printnomenclature \addcontentsline \mtcaddchapter \mtcfixnomenclature</pre>	<p>For the nomenclature ¹⁶, it is like for the glossary, you should add the following commands just after the <code>\printnomenclature</code> command:</p> <pre>\addcontentsline{lof}{xchapter}{} \addcontentsline{lot}{xchapter}{} \mtcaddchapter</pre>
---	---

But this can be done by:

```
\mtcfixnomenclature[chapter|section|part]
```

where the optional argument is the level for the nomenclature entry in the TOC. By default, if `\chapter` is defined, the `chapter` level is used, else the `section` level. If neither `\chapter` or `\section` are defined, the `part` level will be used if `\part` is defined; else an error is

reported. It is *recommended* that you check the result and, if necessary, you adjust the optional argument.



Of course, in documents where the TOC, LOF, LOT, bibliography and/or glossary (or index or nomenclature) are processed as starred sections, you must modify these additions to use section level commands.

And proceed *with extreme care*, tracking in the `document.log` file the insertion of `.mtc<N>` files (and siblings). They are some examples in the `mtc-add.tex` (see section 4.4 on page 95), `mtc-ads.tex` (see section 4.5 on page 100), and `mtc-nom.tex` (see section 4.26 on page 139) files distributed with minitoc. The `mtc-ads.tex` example shows how much that problem is difficult.



1.6 The notoccite option

`\cite` This option loads the notoccite package [10] (by Donald ARSENEAU). It avoids problems with `\cite` commands in sectioning commands or captions: if you then run `BIBTEX` using the `unsorted` style, or a similar style, these citations get numbered starting from the page in the table of contents where is the parasite citation, not the number they should have in the main text. The notoccite package prevents this. As minitoc prints TOCs, it is subject to the same problem. See also <http://www.tex.ac.uk/cgi-bin/texfaq2html?label=bibtocorder>.

1.7 The listfiles and nolistfiles options

The `listfiles` package option creates a list of the minitoc auxiliary files into the file `document.maf`¹⁷. This feature can help you to remove these auxiliary files which are no more necessary after the `LATEX` run. Under Unix or Linux, you can try:

```
cat document.maf | xargs -i -t \rm {}
```

1.8 The hints option


This package option detects some actions and the loading of some packages and classes known as interacting with minitoc, and also some frequent misuses and errors. This list of interacting packages and classes is, of course, not closed. If a known package is loaded, this option writes some hints in the `document.log` file and emits a warning. The hints written in the `document.log` file may suggest you to consult the present document or the `minitoc.bug` file. *Your advice about this option will be welcome*. This option is activated by default, but you can



¹⁶If you are using the `nomencl` package [351].

¹⁷This package option is now (since version #48) the default (list created).

inhibit it via the `nohints` option. The following (potential) problems are currently detected:

<code>\part</code>	• Alteration of some of the following commands ¹⁸ : <code>\part</code> , <code>\@part</code> , <code>\@spart</code> , <code>\chapter</code> , <code>\@chapter</code> , <code>\@schapter</code> , <code>\section</code> , <code>\@sect</code> , and <code>\@ssect</code> . Note that the <code>hyperref</code> (see section 2.17 on page 61) package alters these commands at <code>\begin{document}</code> , hence this problem might be reported if you use this package, but these alterations seem harmless. Note that the <code>hyperref</code> must be loaded <i>before</i> <code>minitoc</code> .	
<code>\@part</code>		
<code>\spart</code>		
<code>\@spart</code>		
<code>\chapter</code>		
<code>\@chapter</code>	• Presence of the following packages or classes, which need some precautions: <code>amsbook</code> (class), <code>memoir</code> (class), <code>appendix</code> , <code>placeins</code> (beware to its options and its release date (2005/04/18 at least)), <code>scrbook</code> (class), <code>scrreprt</code> (class), <code>scrartcl</code> (class), <code>tocbibind</code> , and <code>tocloft</code> .	
<code>\schapter</code>		
<code>\@schapter</code>		
<code>\section</code>		
<code>\@sect</code>		
<code>\@ssect</code>	• Presence of the following packages or classes, which, unfortunately, are <i>incompatible</i> with the <code>minitoc</code> package: <code>amsart</code> (class), <code>amsproc</code> (class), <code>alphanum</code> , <code>flowfram</code> ¹⁹ , <code>jura</code> (class), <code>titlesec</code> , and <code>titletoc</code> ²⁰ .	W0026 W0027 W0025 W0097 W0029 W0040
<code>\parttoc</code>	• Usage of <code>\parttoc</code> without calling <code>\doparttoc</code> , ... , usage of <code>\sectlot</code> without calling <code>\dosectlot</code> ; or the reverse.	
<code>\doparttoc</code>		
<code>\sectlot</code>		
<code>\dosectlot</code>	• Usage of <code>\parttoc</code> without calling <code>\[fake]tableofcontents</code> , ... , of <code>\sectlot</code> without calling <code>\[fake]listoftables</code> .	
<code>\tableofcontents</code>		
<code>\listoftables</code>	• Usage of <code>\sectlof</code> and/or <code>\sectlot</code> without using the <code>insection</code> package option of <code>minitoc</code> (or the <code>placeins</code> package without its <code>section</code> option).	W0056
<code>\sectlof</code>		
<code>\sectlot</code>	• If you are using short extensions (because of your operating system or the <code>shorttext</code> package option, see section 1.9 on the next page) and go beyond the limit of 99 parts, chapters or sections, the <code>hints</code> package option displays a warning.	W0053 W0054 W0055
<code>\mtcaddchapter</code>	• If the <code>abstract</code> package [364] (by Peter R. WILSON), is used with its <code>addtotoc</code> option, a “Abstract” entry is added to the table of contents, as a starred chapter if the document class defines <code>\chapter</code> , else as a starred section. This is detected and you should add a <code>\mtcaddchapter[]</code> or a <code>\mtcaddsection[]</code> command after your <code>abstract</code> environment.	I0040
<code>\mtcaddsection</code>		
	• If the <code>sectsty</code> package [249] (by Rowland McDONNELL) is used, it must be loaded <i>before</i> the <code>minitoc</code> package. The interaction has been pointed out by Bil KLEB.	W0037
	• If the <code>varsects</code> package [336] (by Daniel TAUPIN [†]) is used, it must be loaded <i>before</i> the <code>minitoc</code> package.	W0038
	• If the <code>fncychap</code> package [237] (by Ulf A. LINDGREN) is used, it must be loaded <i>before</i> the <code>minitoc</code> package.	W0086
	• If the <code>hangcaption</code> package [196] (by David M. JONES) is used, it must be loaded <i>before</i> the <code>minitoc</code> package.	W0092

¹⁸The commands containing the “@” character in their names are internal commands of \LaTeX , of a package or of a class; they are sometimes altered by another packages; reconsider then the loading order of the packages.

¹⁹This package has its own system for `minitocs`.

²⁰The `titlesec` package redefines the sectionning commands in a way completely alien to the standard \LaTeX way; hence `minitoc` and `titlesec-titletoc` are fundamentally *incompatible*, and it is very sad.

- If the quotchap package [338] (by Karsten TINNEFELD) is used, it must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. W0087
 - If the romannum package [372] (by Peter R. WILSON) is used, it must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. W0088
 - If the sfheaders package [239] (by Maurizio LORETI) is used, it must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. W0089
 - If the alnumsec package [212] (by Frank KÜSTER) is used, it must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. W0090
 - If the captcont package [115] (by Steven Douglas COCHRAN) is used, it must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. W0091
 - If one of the caption [325], caption2²¹ [323], (both written by Axel SOMMERFELDT), ccaption [368] (written by Peter R. WILSON), or mcaption [183] (written by Stephan HENNIG), packages is used, it must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. W0033
W0034
W0035
W0036
I0053
 - If one of the float [238], floatrow [223], trivfloat [375], or rotfloat [322] packages is used, you must remember that *you can not use* the minitoc facilities for preparing mini-tables of floats of the new defined types. I0053
 - If you try to insert empty mini-tables, the hints option gives a global warning (except if you used also the nocheckfiles option, see section 1.3.3 on page 29). I0006
- `\firstpartis` • If you use one of the obsolete commands (`\firstpartis`, `\firstchapteris`, or `\firstchapteris` `\firstsectionis`), a warning is issued for each use, of course, but also a global `\firstsectionis` hint as reminder. W0003
W0004
W0005
- If you invoke a same preparation command more than once, an informative hint is issued for each spurious invocation.

1.9 Usage with MS-DOS

Under MS-DOS (and other PC oriented old operating systems), the filename extensions are limited to 3 characters. The minitoc package determines dynamically the type of extensions available and will use it. All other modifications will be done automatically. The `.mtc⟨N⟩` extensions will become `.M⟨N⟩`, where `⟨N⟩` is the absolute chapter number. The extensions `.mlf⟨N⟩` and `.mlt⟨N⟩` become `.F⟨N⟩` and `.T⟨N⟩`. The `.ptc⟨N⟩` extensions become `.P⟨N⟩`, where `⟨N⟩` is the absolute part number. The extensions `.plf⟨N⟩` and `.plt⟨N⟩` become `.G⟨N⟩` and `.U⟨N⟩`. The `.stc⟨N⟩` extensions become `.S⟨N⟩`, where `⟨N⟩` is the absolute section number. The extensions `.slf⟨N⟩` and `.slt⟨N⟩` become `.H⟨N⟩` and `.V⟨N⟩`. All these extensions are listed in table 1.11 on the next page. Of course, this implies a limit of 99 chapters in a document, but do you really need so many chapters (or sections in an article)? The limit of 99 parts does not seem too serious for most documents, but for sections, it could be tragical. The `hints` option (section 1.8 on page 51) will report such situations. See also section 2.5 on page 57.

²¹ This package is obsolete; now use the caption package.



W0053
W0054
W0055

Table 1.11: Extensions of the auxiliary files

mini-table	long extensions (UNIX, etc.)	short extensions (MS-DOS, etc.)
parttoc	.ptc $\langle N \rangle$.P $\langle N \rangle$
partlof	.plf $\langle N \rangle$.G $\langle N \rangle$
partlot	.plt $\langle N \rangle$.U $\langle N \rangle$
minitoc	.mtc $\langle N \rangle$.M $\langle N \rangle$
minilof	.mlf $\langle N \rangle$.F $\langle N \rangle$
minilot	.mlt $\langle N \rangle$.T $\langle N \rangle$
secttoc	.stc $\langle N \rangle$.S $\langle N \rangle$
sectlof	.slf $\langle N \rangle$.H $\langle N \rangle$
sectlot	.slt $\langle N \rangle$.V $\langle N \rangle$

1.10 Why several L^AT_EX runs are required?

The mini-tables, at part, chapter and section levels, are using some space on the first pages on each chapter, part or section, thus the page numbers are altered. After the first L^AT_EX run, the mini-tables and lists, partial tables and lists and section-level tables and lists will be empty (in fact skipped since version #35); after the second run, they appear (if not empty), but because they modify the page numbering, page numbers are wrong; after the third L^AT_EX run, the mini, part- and section-level tables and lists should be correct (see figure 2.1 on page 58).

1.11 The mtcoff package

If a document has been prepared with the minitoc package, it contains many minitoc specific commands, most of them being `\dominitoc`, `\faketableofcontents`, and `\minitoc` commands (and their equivalents for lists of figures and tables). If you want to typeset this document without any mini-table, you have just to replace the minitoc package by the mtcoff package (without option), and all these commands will be ignored, eventually writing warning messages in the *document.log* file. At least two L^AT_EX runs will be necessary to get a correct page numbering and cross references. It also sanitizes the *.aux*, *.toc*, *.lof*, and *.lot* files from minitoc specific commands which are now spurious.

Chapter 2

Frequently Asked Questions

Contents

2.0	Introduction	56
2.1	Avoiding a page break near the rules before and after a mini-table	57
2.2	Implementing others layouts for a mini-table	57
2.3	A “\” command in a contents line makes an error	57
2.4	Reordering chapters makes havoc	57
2.5	Extensions for the names of auxiliary files	57
2.6	Playing with the chapter number	58
2.7	Supported document classes	58
2.8	Compatibility with L ^A T _E X versions	59
2.9	Other mini-tables	59
2.10	Why so many auxiliary files?	60
2.11	Mini-tables at levels other than chapter	60
2.12	Incompatibility with L ^A T _E X2.09	61
2.13	Documents resetting the chapter number at each part	61
2.14	The mini-tables have too much spaced lines	61
2.15	The secttocs are wrong	61
2.16	Removing the lines of dots	61
2.17	Using the hyperref package with minitoc	61
2.18	Problem while upgrading minitoc	62
2.19	A local TOC for the set of appendices	62
2.20	Use with the appendix package	63
2.21	Use with the tocloft package	63
2.22	Use with the memoir class	64
2.23	There are too many commands for fonts, titles, and depths	65
2.24	Compatibility with the A _M S document classes	65
2.25	Hiding some entries from the main table of contents	66
2.26	Defining your own .mld file	69
2.27	Use with the abstract package	69
2.28	Use with the sectsty package	69
2.29	Strange alignment in the minitocs	70
2.30	Useful precautions with starred sectionning commands	71
2.31	Use with packages for captions	71
2.32	Bad interaction minitoc/hyperref/memoir	71

2.33	Use with the <code>varsects</code> package	72
2.34	Initial font settings	72
2.35	Use with the KOMA-Script classes	74
2.36	Use with the <code>jura</code> class or the <code>alphanumeric</code> package	74
2.37	The <code>.mld</code> files and the <code>babel</code> package	74
2.38	Use with the <code>fncychap</code> package	74
2.39	Use with the <code>quotchap</code> package	74
2.40	Use with the <code>romannum</code> package	75
2.41	Use with the <code>sfheaders</code> package	75
2.42	Use with the <code>alnumsec</code> package	75
2.43	Use with the <code>captcont</code> package	75
2.44	Vertical spaces (gaps) for <code>parttocs</code> , <code>partlofs</code> , and <code>partlots</code> titles	75
2.45	Vertical spacing before the bottom rule of a <code>minitable</code>	76
2.46	Another interaction between the <code>tocloft</code> and <code>minitoc</code> packages	77
2.47	Use with the <code>hangcaption</code> package	78
2.48	Use with the <code>flowfram</code> package	78

Figures

2.1	Three compilations for <code>minitoc</code>	58
-----	---	----

Tables

2.1	Kernings before <code>minitable</code> bottom rules	77
-----	---	----

2.0 Introduction

Here is a list of problems and frequently asked questions about the `minitoc.sty` package. If the version has a number less than 55, please upgrade to version #55. This list is also given in the `minitoc.bug` file, in pure text form. The numbering of this list is done by date of the first occurrence of the question.

If a problem arises, it is often wise to: a) use the `hints` option (see section 1.8 on page 51), which is activated by default, and b) read the `document.log` file, which may contain pertinent messages. If you do not find a solution, ask a question on an adequate news group, like `fr.comp.text.tex` (in french) or `comp.text.tex` (in english) preferably, groups which I try to follow, or send me a mail in last resort (please join a minimal but complete example [299, 332]¹ reproducing the problem; this example should use the `hint` option).

¹ See also: <http://www.tex.ac.uk/cgi-bin/textfaq2html?label=minxampl> and <http://www.tex.ac.uk/cgi-bin/textfaq2html?label=askquestion> for good advices.

2.1 Avoiding a page break near the rules before and after a mini-table

`\enlargethispage` This problem seemed solved since version #8, but version #12 added better fixes. You may have to make some final tuning with `\enlargethispage`. See the L^AT_EX manual [217]. The `needspace` package [362] may also be useful.

2.2 Implementing others layouts for a mini-table

Suggestions are welcome, but look at the section 1.4.14 on page 43. There are yet some examples in chapter 4 on page 89, for some layouts, like mini-tables on two or three columns.

2.3 A “\” command in a contents line makes an error

`\\` Use `\protect\linebreak`. The `\\` command should be used only in tabular material
`\protect` (tabular environment and similar, or in the `tabbing` environment) and in math arrays and
`\linebreak` equations, or in the quote-like environments.

2.4 Reordering chapters makes havoc

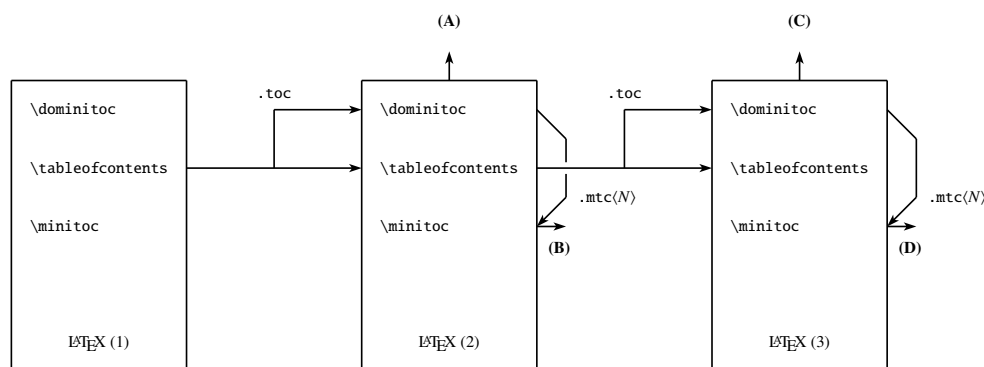
If you reorder chapters, havoc follows... mini-tables going in wrong chapters.

The best way seems to make one run with the `mtcoff` package replacing the `minitoc` package, then restore the `minitoc` package and re-execute L^AT_EX at least three times (yes, it is time consuming...). See figure 2.1 on the following page². Running with the `mtcoff` package ensures that the standard auxiliary files are cleared from “spurious” commands introduced by `minitoc`. A more radical solution is to delete the `.aux`, `.toc`, `.lof` and `.lot` files relative to the document, then re-execute L^AT_EX at least three times.

2.5 Extensions for the names of auxiliary files

This package creates auxiliary files with extensions like `.mtc(N)`. Some operating systems allow only 3 characters extensions. What to do?

² I used the `pict2e` package [150], by Hubert GÄSSLEIN and Rolf NIEPRASCHK, to prepare this figure.



(A) `\tableofcontents` produces a table of contents, which is likely inaccurate.

(B) `\minitoc` produces minitocs, which are likely inaccurate.

(C) `\tableofcontents` produces a table of contents, which is accurate.

(D) `\minitoc` produces minitocs, which are accurate.

Figure 2.1: Three compilations for minitoc

No modification is needed: all became automatic since version #28! If you insist to use 3 characters extensions, even on operating systems allowing more, just use the package option `shorttext`. Then you will get first the autoconfiguration messages, then a message saying that you will use short extensions. But then be careful to not have more than 99 mini-tables of the same kind (even empty)!

W0053
W0054
W0055

2.6 Playing with the chapter number

`\setcounter` *Do not cheat* with the “chapter” counter, i.e., do not write ugly things like:
`\chapter`

```
\setcounter{chapter}{6}
```



The mechanism would break. It is better to add `\chapter` commands, to create empty (but numbered in a legal way) chapters. Since version #10, the minitoc package works with appendices. Version #19 allows to begin with a chapter other than number 1. And look at “Special Entries in the TOC”, section 1.5.5 on page 49.

The same remark applies to the `part` and `section` counters.

2.7 Supported document classes

The minitoc package is restricted to document classes which define chapters in the standard way, like “book” and “report”, or sections in the standard way, like “article” [220]. There

W0017

are “parttocs” if the document class defines the `\part` command. Note that classes like “letter” [221], which have not the classical sectionning structure, cannot be supported. Classes using sectionning commands with other names are not supported³. See also section 2.24 on page 65.

2.8 Compatibility with L^AT_EX versions

Some users have failed to make minitoc to work. They got a message like:

W0021

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0021
Undefined command ... \@inputcheck ...
Your version of latex.tex is obsolete. Trying to continue...
```

or:

W0022

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0022
Undefined command ... \reset@font ...
Your version of latex.tex is very obsolete.
Trying to continue... crossing fingers.
```

The `\reset@font` command has been added to `latex.tex` on September 29th, 1991 and the `\@inputcheck` command on March 18th, 1992 and this version of `latex.tex` has been released on March 25th, 1992. If you get this message, you have an old version of `latex.tex`. Get a recent one from the archives (or a recent distribution) and regenerate a `latex.fmt` format via `initex` (or your configuration tool).

2.9 Other mini-tables

Some demanding users want to have minilof, minilot and minibbl (mini-bibliographies per part, chapter or section). First, “minibbl” is another problem, strongly related to the B₁B₂T_EX’s dealing with `.aux` files. Look at the `chapterbib` [15], `bibunits` [166], `multibib` [167], `bibtopic` [20], and `splitbib` [246] packages. Version #13 has implemented basic minilofs and minilots. Minibbbls are not the aim of this package⁴.

³ This would be very difficult: any user can create new sectionning commands (often with the help from some packages) with standard or new names; this is only limited by the imagination. The minitoc package relies on the names of the standard sectionning commands and on the syntax of these commands.

⁴ See <http://www.tex.ac.uk/cgi-bin/textfaq2html?label=multibib>

2.10 Why so many auxiliary files?

This package creates a lot of auxiliary files and some users have argued that it is too many. A deep redesign would be necessary to avoid that. Using only one big auxiliary file (or one for all minitocs, one for all minilofs, ...) would make the reading of such file very slow, as it would be read for each `\miniXXX` macro! Moreover, this would make the `checkfiles` (see section 1.3.3 on page 29) package option impractical to implement. Note that the many files `*.mtc*`, etc., may be deleted after the \LaTeX run. They are rebuilt by the preparation commands (like `\dominitoc` and `siblings`). But, since version #35, `minitoc` is able to detect and skip empty `*.mtc*` files (and siblings) to avoid ugly titles with just two thin rules. It would not be easy to do with one big auxiliary file. Since version #44, the `listfiles` package option is available to create a list of these auxiliary files; see section 1.7 on page 51.

These files contain the mini-tables extracted from the `.toc`, `.lof`, and `.lot` files. They are no more useful after the \LaTeX run. If you run \LaTeX via a script or a “makefile”, it may be useful to add to it a cleaning feature (which should be optional, to allow debugging). The table 1.11 on page 54 gives the list of the extensions for these files (note that a `document.mtc` auxiliary file is also created as a scratch file).

As an example, you can look at the rubber tool [28] (written in Python) provided by Emmanuel BEFFARA:

<http://rubber.sourceforge.net/>
<http://www.pps.jussieu.fr/~beffara/soft/rubber/>

2.11 Mini-tables at levels other than chapter

Here also, some redesign was needed. From version #15, there are `parttocs`, `partlofs` and `partlots` for the part level in `book` | `report`-like and `article`-like documents, `secttocs`, `sectlofs` and `sectlots` for the section level in `article`-like documents. Note that you can not have minitocs features at chapter and section level in the same document, because doing so would make an almost unreadable monster. The user must choose the main class of the document according to the size of it (e.g., do not write an article of more than 100 sections: this is a report, or even a book!).

	part	chapter	section
<code>book</code>	*	*	
<code>report</code>	*	*	
<code>article</code>	*		*

2.12 Incompatibility with L^AT_EX 2.09

`\protect` The more recent version of L^AT_EX 2_ε adds `\protect` before `\contentsline` in the `.toc`,
`\contentsline` `.lof` and `.lof` files. The version #17 of `minitoc` attempts to be compatible with L^AT_EX 2_ε and L^AT_EX 2.09. This will be the *last* version usable with L^AT_EX 2.09. Versions #18 and later are L^AT_EX 2_ε specific, and no more compatible with L^AT_EX 2.09, which is completely obsolete.

2.13 Documents resetting the chapter number at each part

Since version #23, `minitoc` works with document classes resetting chapter (or section) number at each part (or chapter). This is possible because the auxiliary files for the mini-tables have now an *absolute* number.

2.14 The mini-tables have too much spaced lines

From version #29, you can have tight mini-tables with the `tight` option, and with the `k-tight` option for the KOMA-Script classes [207, 270, 308] (since version #43).

2.15 The secttocs are wrong

Secttocs did not work: corrected (version #38).

2.16 Removing the lines of dots

The lines of dots (leaders) between section titles and page numbers are removed by the `undotted` option (#29). See also section 1.4.14 on page 43.

2.17 Using the hyperref package with minitoc

Since version #31, `minitoc` works correctly with the powerful `hyperref` package [304], thanks to Heiko OBERDIEK, using the work of Bernd JAEHNE, Didier VERNA and A. J. “Tony” ROBERTS. Hence the *minitoc-hyper* package [349] is now obsolete and should no more be used. It is still present on the CTAN archives for compatibility with old documents. If you add the loading of the `hyperref` package to a document yet using `minitoc`, you will get error message about spurious closing braces. Just let finish the L^AT_EX run, then re-L^AT_EX the document. There will



be no problem if you remove the loading of `hyperref` and add it again: the problem occurs only when upgrading from `minitoc` #30 to `minitoc` #31 (or higher) with a document already processed and adding `hyperref` at the same time! It seems better to process the document with `minitoc` #31 (or higher) without `hyperref`, then with `hyperref`, because some internal commands written into the auxiliary files have been modified. If used, the `hyperref` package must be loaded *before* `minitoc`. Note that the documents `minitoc.dtx` and `fminitoc.dtx` show (not so) basic examples of the use of the `hyperref` package with `minitoc`.

2.18 Problem while upgrading minitoc

If upgrading from version #30 or lower to version #31 or higher, you should delete the `.aux`, `.toc`, `.lof`, `.lot` files of the document, else the first \LaTeX run with version #31 or higher will produce a lot of errors (the next run should be ok). See also the section 2.17 on the page before.

2.19 A local TOC for the set of appendices

<code>\doparttoc</code> <code>\tableofcontents</code> <code>\appendix</code> <code>\part</code> <code>\parttoc</code> <code>\addtocontents</code> <code>\protect</code> <code>\setcounter</code> <code>\chapter</code> <code>\partbegin</code>	<p>Some users need a table of contents for the appendices, but without putting the entries of it into the main table of contents. The solution is to put the appendices in a <code>\part</code> subdivision of the document and ask for a table of contents at the <code>\part</code> level:</p> <pre> \doparttoc % after \begin{document} . . . \tableofcontents . . . \appendix \part{Appendices} % create a part level subdivision \parttoc % create a local table of contents % To suppress the appendix part in the main toc \addtocontents{toc}{\protect\setcounter{tocdepth}{-1}} \chapter{First appendix} . . . % Add this at the end of appendices if there is something % after the appendices (like an index or a bibliography) % to put a bound to the contents of \parttoc \addtocontents{toc}{\protect\partbegin} </pre>
---	---

See also section 2.25 on page 66.

2.20 Use with the `appendix` package

`\addcontentsline` `\adjustmtc` `\adjuststc` `appendices` If you use the `appendix` package [365] (by Peter R. WILSON), you will observe a serious problem with `minitocs` in the `appendices` environment (and after it): they do not match with their respective appendices. In fact, the environment opening `\begin{appendices}` hides a `\addcontentsline` command for a chapter or a section, putting trouble in the numbering of `minitocs` or `secttocs`. Several solutions are available. The first one is to add a `\adjustmtc` or `\adjuststc` command (depending on the level of the appendices, chapter or section) after *each* `\begin{appendices}` command. An other solution is to add the following commands in the preamble *after* the loading of the `appendix` package:

I0042

```
\let\oldappendices\appendices
\def\appendices{\oldappendices\adjustmtc}
```

if appendices are at the chapter level, OR:

```
\let\oldappendices\appendices
\def\appendices{\oldappendices\adjuststc}
```

if appendices are at the section level.

These two solutions may be modified by replacing `\adjustmtc` by the sequence:

```
\addtocontents{toc}{\chapterend}
OR
\addtocontents{toc}{\sectend}
```

when it is necessary to delimit the end of the preceding chapter or section.

A rather elegant solution is to add an entry into the TOC via the `\addappheadtotoc` command offered by the `appendix` package. As this entry is a chapter-level (or section-level) entry, it delimits correctly the end of the preceding chapter or section.

See also the `mtc-amm.tex` example file (section 4.6 on page 105), which uses the `memoir` class [370, 371, 373], which includes itself the `appendix` package functionality (same author).

2.21 Use with the `tocloft` package

`\mtcsetfont` (This answer is given in the documentation of the `tocloft` package [363].) The `tocloft` (by Peter R. WILSON) and `minitoc` packages have an unfortunate interaction⁵, which fortunately

I0047

⁵ Discovered by Lyndon DUDGING.

can be fixed. In the normal course of events, when `minitoc` is used in a chaptered document it will typeset section entries in the minitocs in bold font. If `tocloft` is used in conjunction with `minitoc`, then the `minitoc` section entries are typeset in the normal font, except for the page numbers which are in bold font, while the ToC section entries are all in normal font.

One cure, if you want the `minitoc` section entries to be all in normal small font, is to put:

```
\renewcommand{\mtcSfont}{\normalfont\small}
```

or:

```
\mtcsetfont{minitoc}{section}{\normalfont\small}
```

in the preamble.

Otherwise, the cure is the following incantation:

```
\renewcommand{\cftsecfont}{\bfseries}
\renewcommand{\cftsecleader}{\bfseries\cftdotfill{\cftdotsep}}
\renewcommand{\cftsecpagefont}{\bfseries}
```

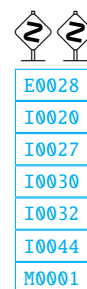
To have the section entries in both the ToC and the minitocs in bold then put the incantation in the preamble. To have only the `minitoc` section entries in bold while the ToC entries are in the normal font, put the incantation between the `\tableofcontents` command and the first `\chapter` command.

As `tocloft` is a very powerful and useful package, these cures are worth to be added if you need the benefits of this package. See also section [2.22](#).

2.22 Use with the memoir class

The `memoir` class [[370](#), [371](#), [373](#)] offers basically the functionalities of the `appendix`, `tocbibind` and `tocloft` packages (this class and these packages have the same author, Peter R. Wilson), hence it has the same problems; see above the available solutions (sections [2.20](#) on the page before, [1.5.5](#) on page [49](#), and [2.21](#) on the page before respectively). If your version of the `memoir` class is recent, the syntax of the `\chapter` command is different and the `memoir` class *could be no more compatible* with the `minitoc` package, but a patch is inserted to fix the problem. Hopefully, if your version of the `memoir` is more recent than 2005/09/25, the patch is no more necessary.

If you are using the `memoir` class (or the `tocloft` package), the `\mtcsetfont` command has no effect (`\mtcsetttitlefont` works); you should use the font commands which are specific of the `memoir` class (or of the `tocloft` package).



If you still want to use the `\mtcsetfont` commands while using the `memoir` class (or of the `tocloft` package), you must disable the `memoir/tocloft` font commands. This is done by the following commands:

```
\let\cftpfont\relax
\let\cftchapterfont\relax
\let\cftsectionfont\relax
\let\cftsubsectionfont\relax
\let\cftsubsubsectionfont\relax
\let\cftparagraphfont\relax
\let\cftsubparagraphfont\relax
\let\cftfigurefont\relax
\let\cftsubfigurefont\relax
\let\cfttablefont\relax
\let\cftsubtablefont\relax
```

2.23 There are too many commands for fonts, titles, and depths

`\mtcsetfont` Since version #41, the `\mtcsetfont` and `\mtcsetttitlefont` commands are available. You do not need anymore to know `\mtcSSSfont`, `\ptifont`, etc.

`\mtcsetttitle` Since version #42, the `\mtcsetttitle` command is available. You do not need anymore to know `\mtctitle`, `\sltttitle`, etc.

`\mtcsetdepth` Since version #43, the `\mtcsetdepth` command is available. You do not need anymore to know the counters `minitocdepth`, `sectlotdepth`, etc.

2.24 Compatibility with the \mathcal{AMS} document classes

This problem has been pointed out by Henri MASSIAS.

`\mtcaddchapter` Unfortunately, the `amsart` and `amsproc` document classes are *incompatible* with `minitoc`. The `amsbook` document class requires the insertion of commands if you want a list of figures and/or a list of tables:

```
\listoffigures
\mtcaddchapter % added
\listoftables
\mtcaddchapter % added
```

W0026
W0027
I0041

2.25 Hiding some entries from the main table of contents

`mtchideinmaintoc` It is a problem similar to that of section 2.19 on page 62. An example is having a local table of contents for a chapter (`\minitoc`) whose entries should not appear in the main table of contents. Just use the `mtchideinmaintoc` environment:

```
\chapter{Title}
\begin{mtchideinmaintoc}[level]
\minitoc
\section{sub-title}
...
\end{mtchideinmaintoc}
```

This environment accepts an optional numeric argument, which is the depth of hiding in the main toc (default: -1, complete hiding). You can look at the `mtc-apx.tex` example file:

```
1 (*mtc - apx)
2 \documentclass[oneside]{book}
3 \ProvidesFile{mtc-apx.tex}%
4 [2007/03/22]
5 \usepackage{lipsum} % provides filling text
6 \usepackage{tocbibind} % adds some entries in the main TOC.
7 \usepackage[tight,listfiles]{minitoc}
8 \setcounter{minitocdepth}{3} \setcounter{parttocdepth}{3}
9 \begin{document}
10 \doparttoc \dominitoc % prepare the mini-tables
11 \tableofcontents
12 \mtcaddchapter % because tocbibind adds a chapter entry in the TOC
13 \chapter{First}
14 \minitoc
15 First chapter
16 \section{First section}
17 \lipsum[1]
18 \section{Second section}
19 \lipsum[2]
20 \chapter{Second}
21 \minitoc
22 Second
23 \section{First section of second chapter}
24 \lipsum[3]
25 \section{Second section of second chapter}
26 \lipsum[4]
27 \appendix % begins the appendices
28 \addcontentsline{toc}{part}{Appendices} % adds a part entry in the TOC
29 \adjustptc % fixes the parttoc counter ptc
30 \mtcsettitle{parttoc}{List of Appendices} % changes the parttoc title
31 \parttoc % adds a partial toc for the appendices
32 \begin{mtchideinmaintoc}[-1] % hides the details of the appendices in the main TOC,
33 % % but chapter-level entries would be still visible in the main TOC
34 % % if you use 0 in place of -1 as optional argument.
35 \chapter{First appendix}
```

```

36 \minitoc
37 First appendix
38 \section{First section}
39 \lipsum[5]
40 \section{Second section}
41 \lipsum[6]
42 \chapter{Second appendix}
43 \minitoc
44 Second appendix
45 \section{First section of second appendix}
46 \lipsum[7]
47 \section{Second section of second appendix}
48 \lipsum[8]
49 \end{mtchideinmaintoc} % end of hiding
50 \end{document}
51 \</mtc - apx>

```

`mtchideinmainlof` Of course, the environments `mtchideinmainlof` and `mtchideinmainlot` are also available, to hide some entries in the main list of figures or of tables.

Note that the position of the end of these environments must be adjusted to include a page break (like the one done by a `\chapter` command), else the `restore` command might be inserted too early into the `.toc`, `.lof` or `.lot` file. There is an example file (`mtc-hi1.tex`):



<pre> 52 \<*mtc - hi1> 53 \documentclass{report} 54 \ProvidesFile{mtc-hi1.tex}% 55 [2007/01/04] 56 \usepackage% 57 [tight,listfiles]{minitoc} 58 \begin{document} 59 \dominilof 60 \dominilot 61 \listoffigures 62 \listoftables 63 \chapter{First} 64 \minilof 65 \minilot 66 \begin{figure} </pre>	<pre> 67 \caption{AAAA1} 68 \end{figure} 69 \begin{figure} 70 \caption{AAAA2} 71 \end{figure} 72 \begin{table} 73 \caption{TAAAA1} 74 \end{table} 75 \begin{table} 76 \caption{TAAAA2} 77 \end{table} 78 \chapter{Second} 79 \minilof 80 \minilot 81 %%----- </pre>
--	---

We begin the hiding of figure entries in the list of figures and of table entries in the list of tables. In this document, we use the environment forms.

<pre> 82 \begin{mtchideinmainlof} 83 \begin{mtchideinmainlot} 84 \begin{figure} 85 \caption{BBBB1} 86 \end{figure} 87 \begin{figure} 88 \caption{BBBB2} 89 \end{figure} </pre>	<pre> 90 \begin{table} 91 \caption{TBBBB1} 92 \end{table} 93 \begin{table} 94 \caption{TBBBB2} 95 \end{table} 96 \chapter{Third} </pre>
--	---

We terminate the hiding of figure entries in the list of figures and of table entries in the list of tables. In this document, we use the environment forms.

<pre> 97 \end{mtchideinmainlot} 98 \end{mtchideinmainlof} 99 %----- 100 \minilof \minilot 101 \begin{figure} 102 \caption{CCCC1} 103 \end{figure} 104 \begin{figure} 105 \caption{CCCC2} </pre>	<pre> 106 \end{figure} 107 \begin{table} 108 \caption{TCCCC1} 109 \end{table} 110 \begin{table} 111 \caption{TCCCC2} 112 \end{table} 113 \end{document} 114 \</mtc-hi1> </pre>
---	--

`\mtchideinmainlof` But it is also possible to use *commands* in place of these environments: you place a `\mtchideinmainlof` (or `\mtchideinmainlot`) command in the first figure (or table) to hide, *before* its caption and a `\endmtchideinmainlof` (or `\endmtchideinmainlot`) command at the end of the last figure (or table) to hide, *after* its caption, like in this example file (`mtc-hi2.tex`):

<pre> 115 \<{*mtc-hi2} 116 \documentclass{report} 117 \ProvidesFile{mtc-hi2.tex}% 118 [2007/01/04] 119 \usepackage% 120 [tight,listfiles]{minitoc} 121 \begin{document} 122 \dominilof 123 \dominilot 124 \listoffigures 125 \listoftables 126 \chapter{First} 127 \minilof \minilot 128 \begin{figure} </pre>	<pre> 129 \caption{AAAA1} 130 \end{figure} 131 \begin{figure} 132 \caption{AAAA2} 133 \end{figure} 134 \begin{table} 135 \caption{TAAAA1} 136 \end{table} 137 \begin{table} 138 \caption{TAAAA2} 139 \end{table} 140 \chapter{Second} 141 \minilof 142 \minilot </pre>
---	--

We begin the hiding of figure entries in the list of figures and of table entries in the list of tables. In this document, we use the command forms: a command is inserted *before* the caption of the first “hidden” entry.

<pre> 143 \begin{figure} 144 \mtchideinmainlof % <-- 145 \caption{BBBB1} 146 \end{figure} 147 \begin{figure} 148 \caption{BBBB2} </pre>	<pre> 149 \endmtchideinmainlof % <-- 150 \end{figure} 151 \begin{table} 152 \mtchideinmainlot % <-- 153 \caption{TBBBB1} 154 \end{table} </pre>
--	---

We terminate the hiding of figure entries in the list of figures and of table entries in the list of tables. In this document, we use the command forms: a command is inserted *after* the caption of the *last* “hidden” entry.

<pre> 155 \begin{table} 156 \caption{TBBBB2} 157 \endmtchideinmainlot % <-- 158 \end{table} 159 \chapter{Third} 160 \minilof 161 \minilot 162 \begin{figure} 163 \caption{CCCC1} 164 \end{figure} 165 \begin{figure} </pre>	<pre> 166 \caption{CCCC2} 167 \end{figure} 168 \begin{table} 169 \caption{TCCCC1} 170 \end{table} 171 \begin{table} 172 \caption{TCCCC2} 173 \end{table} 174 \end{document} 175 </mtc – hi2> </pre>
--	---

This method, recommended while more delicate to apply, is much more reliable in delimiting the hiding domain: it solves the problem of the asynchronism between the writing of floats and the writing of the normal text.

2.26 Defining your own .mld file

<pre> \mtcsettitle \mtcselectlanguage </pre>	<p>First, you should not directly modify one of the distributed .mld and .mlo files. The simplest way to alter some title is to redefine the corresponding command via <code>\renewcommand</code> or better via <code>\mtcsettitle</code>. If you really want to have your own .mld file, you copy an existing .mld file into one with a new name (not the name of a distributed .mld file). Then you modify this new .mld file and you can use it via <code>\mtcselectlanguage</code>. You can always contact me to add this new .mld file to the distribution. These remarks apply also to the <i>language</i>[.mld-.mlo] pairs of language definition files.</p>
--	---

2.27 Use with the abstract package

<pre> \mtcaddchapter \mtcaddsection \chapter abstract </pre>	<p>If the <code>abstract</code> package [364] (by Peter R. WILSON), is used with its <code>addtotoc</code> option, a “Abstract” entry is added to the table of contents, as a starred chapter if the document class defines <code>\chapter</code>, else as a starred section. This problem is detected by the <code>hints</code> option and you should add a <code>\mtcaddchapter[]</code> or a <code>\mtcaddsection[]</code> command after your <code>abstract</code> environment.</p>	<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; width: fit-content;">I0040</div>
--	---	---

2.28 Use with the sectsty package

If the `sectsty` package [249] (by Rowland McDONNELL) is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package, because it alters (redefines) the sectioning commands. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem.

W0037

2.29 Strange alignment in the minitocs

In minitocs, subsections titles are not aligned with sections, as they are in the main table of contents.

<code>\l@part</code>	The entries of a table of contents are formatted via internal commands like <code>\l@part</code> ,
<code>\l@chapter</code>	<code>\l@chapter</code> , <code>\l@section</code> , etc.
<code>\l@section</code>	
<code>\l@subsection</code>	The “part” and “chapter” levels (and “section” for an article) use specific commands which
<code>\l@subsubsection</code>	are somewhat complex for a more elaborated formatting. For the “section” (in the <code>report</code> and
<code>\l@paragraph</code>	<code>book</code> classes) and lower levels, these commands are (<code>book</code> class, <code>book.cls</code>) by default:
<code>\l@subparagraph</code>	
<code>\renewcommand</code>	<code>\renewcommand*\l@section{\@dottedtocline{1}{1.5em}{2.3em}}</code>
<code>\@dottedtocline</code>	<code>\renewcommand*\l@subsection{\@dottedtocline{2}{3.8em}{3.2em}}</code>
<code>\mtcsetfont</code>	<code>\renewcommand*\l@subsubsection{\@dottedtocline{3}{7.0em}{4.1em}}</code>
<code>\mtcSfont</code>	<code>\renewcommand*\l@paragraph{\@dottedtocline{4}{10em}{5em}}</code>
<code>\mtcSSfont</code>	<code>\renewcommand*\l@subparagraph{\@dottedtocline{5}{12em}{6em}}</code>
<code>\mtcSSSfont</code>	
<code>\mtcPfont</code>	
<code>\mtcSPfont</code>	which will be applied in the main table of contents and in the minitocs. The arguments of

`\@dottedtocline` are

- 1) the logical depth (which will be compared to `tocdepth` or `minitocdepth`).
- 2) the indentation.
- 3) the width reserved for the section/subsection/... number.



In the standard `book`, `report` and `article` classes [220], the dimensions (second and third arguments) are given in “em” units, and this unit depends on the current font. In the main table of contents, the section and subsection entries are written in the *same* font, hence usually the alignment is correct. But in the minitocs, the section entries are written in a bold font while the subsection entries are written in a non bold font (the default font choices are given in table 1.6 on page 37), hence one “em” has different sizes in these two fonts and the alignment is changed.

There are several solutions:

- Redefine the `\l@section` ... `\l@subparagraph` commands to use font independent units (pt, mm, pc, etc.). This redefinition must be performed in a package or via a command defined by a package or between `\makeatletter` and `\makeatother`, because these commands have a @ in their names; you must use `\renewcommand*` to redefine these commands.
- Use the `tocloft` package [363] to change the indentation, with font independent units. But then see section 2.21 on page 63.

- Use the same font for the section and subsection entries in the minitocs, using the `\mtcsetfont` command (see section 1.4.9 on page 41) or redefining the `\mtcSfont`, `\mtcSSfont`, `\mtcSSSfont`, `\mtcPfont` and `\mtcSPfont` commands (see table 1.6 on page 37), or similar.

2.30 Useful precautions with starred sectionning commands

- The headers are not modified by `\part*`, `\chapter*` or `\section*`; it is *necessary* to use `\markboth` or `\markright` to get correct page headers for the current and following pages. 
- If you need an entry in the table of contents for a `\chapter*` or a `\section*` command, you must use `\mtcaddchapter[title]` or `\mtcaddsection[title]` *after* the starred sectionning command. If you need an entry in the table of contents for a `\part*` command, the page number in the table of contents would be wrong, because `\part*` implies a `\clearpage` or a `\cleardoublepage` before the first page of the part. Use the sequence 

```
\cleardoublepage      % \clearpage if openany option.
\mtcaddpart[title]
\part*[title]
```

2.31 Use with packages for captions

If one of the `caption` [325], `caption2`⁶ [323], (both written by Axel SOMMERFELDT), `ccaption` [368] (by Peter R. WILSON), or `mcaption` [183] (by Stephan HENNIG), packages is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package, because such packages alter (redefine) the commands listing figures and tables. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem.

W0033
W0034
W0035
W0036

2.32 Bad interaction minitoc/hyperref/memoir

When the `minitoc` and `hyperref` [304] packages are used in a document of class `memoir` [370, 371, 373], the chapter header “Chapter” does not appear on the first page of the chapter.

This problem is fixed in version #44 of `minitoc`.

⁶ This package is obsolete; now use a recent version of the `caption` package.

2.33 Use with the varsects package

If the varsects package [336] (by Daniel TAUPIN[†]) is used, it must be loaded *before* the minitoc package, because it alters (redefines) the sectionning commands. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem.

W0038

2.34 Initial font settings

The setting of the fonts in the mini-tables is a rather complex problem. If we take the parttoc as an example, there is a `\ptcfont` font-command which is used for two purposes⁷:

- First, to be used as default value for some other font-commands (like `\ptcSPfont`). As its default value is used in the initialization of the minitoc package, the value of these other commands is *not altered* if you modify `\ptcfont`. You must modify these commands one at a time.
- Second, it is invoked at the beginning of each parttoc, partlof or partlot to set an initial font command. Then each entry of the mini-table calls its own font command (like `\ptcSPfont`). Thus, if you modify `\ptcfont`, you can obtain a global effect on the fonts in the parttoc, partlofs, and partlots. So you can play with the various parameters of the fonts (family, shape, series, size), if you want fancy mini-tables; but it is rather difficult.

In the initialization of the minitoc package, we have a sequence of commands:



```
\let\ptcSSfont\ptcfont      % (subsections)
\let\ptcSSSfont\ptcfont     % (subsubsections)
\let\ptcPfont\ptcfont       % (paragraphs)
\let\ptcSPfont\ptcfont      % (subparagraphs)
\let\plffont\ptcfont        % (figures)
\let\plfSfont\ptcfont       % (subfigures)
\let\pltfont\ptcfont        % (tables)
\let\pltSfont\ptcfont       % (subtables)
```

to define some default fonts. But this sequence is executed only once. If you alter `\ptcfont`, the modification is not applied to these font commands. The command `\ptcfont` is invoked at the beginning of each parttoc. `\ptcCfont` is invoked for each chapter entry in a parttoc (`\ptcSfont` for each section entry, etc.). So `\ptcfont` can be used to define some global characteristics for the fonts in the parttoc, while `\ptcCfont` (etc.) can be used to customize the fonts for each level of entries.

Note that if you say:

⁷ The same remarks apply to the other mini-tables.


```

\let\ptcSSfont\ptcfont      % (subsections)
\let\ptcSSSfont\ptcfont    % (subsubsections)
\let\ptcPfont\ptcfont      % (paragraphs)
\let\ptcSPfont\ptcfont     % (subparagraphs)
\let\plffont\ptcfont       % (figures)
\let\plfSfont\ptcfont      % (subfigures)
\let\pltfont\ptcfont       % (tables)
\let\pltSfont\ptcfont      % (subtables)

```

after loading the minitoc package, these font commands will be “associated” to `\ptcfont`, hence if you modify `\ptcfont` (by via `\mtcsetfont{parttoc}{*}{...}` or `\renewcommand`), they will follow the modification. But if you modify one of these commands via `\renewcommand` or `\mtcsetfont{parttoc}{subsection}{...}` (subsection is an example), the association is broken. But you could be more clever by saying something like

```
\mtcsetfont{parttoc}{subsection}{\ptcfont\itshape}
```

to preserve the association and modify only some parameters of a minitoc font command.

For levels above subsection (part, chapter and section), the fonts are more specific in general, but you can, of course, say something like `\def\ptcCfont{\ptcfont}` to make a similar association. You can even make other associations, like this:

```

% for high sectionning levels:
\def\highlevelsfont{\rmfamily\bfseries\normalsize\upshape}
% for low sectionning levels:
\def\lowlevelsfont{\rmfamily\mdseries\smallsize\upshape}
% then for each level:
\def\ptcCfont{\highlevelsfont}
\def\ptcSfont{\highlevelsfont}
\def\ptcSSfont{\lowlevelsfont}
\def\ptcSSSfont{\lowlevelsfont}
\def\ptcPfont{\lowlevelsfont\itshape}
\def\ptcSPfont{\lowlevelsfont\itshape}

```

Then you can redefine `\highlevelsfont` or `\lowlevelsfont` to act on several fonts in one step, but you must use `\renewcommand`. You cannot act on `\highlevelsfont` or `\lowlevelsfont` with `\mtcsetfont`.

Note that only the fonts for parttocs are used in the examples above; but, of course, the situation is the same for minitocs and secttocs. `\highlevelsfont` and `\lowlevelsfont` are macro names that you can choose, they are not part of the minitoc package.

2.35 Use with the KOMA-Script classes

If a KOMA-Script class [207, 270, 308], compatible with minitoc (scrbook, scrreprt or scrartcl), is used, some class options may cause problems with the minitoc package, because these options add chapter or section entries in the table of contents. See section 1.5.5 on page 49. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem.

I0043

2.36 Use with the jura class or the alphanum package

The `jura` class loads the `alphanum` package, which redefines the sectionning structure in a non-standard way, after the loading of the `report` class. This class and this package are *incompatible* with `minitoc`.



2.37 The .mld files and the babel package

If you are using the `babel` package [46, 47], you can automatize the loading of the `.mld` file by adding some code in the preamble of your document, like this:

```
\AtBeginDocument{%
  \addto\captionslanguage1{\mtcselectlanguage{language2}}}
```

where *language1* is the language name for `babel` and *language2* the language name for `minitoc`; there are often identical, but there are exceptions (when you use a locally customized `.mld` file, for instance).

2.38 Use with the fncychap package

If the `fncychap` package [237] (by Ulf A. LINDGREN) is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package, because it alters (redefines) the sectionning commands. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem.

W0086

2.39 Use with the quotchap package

If the `quotchap` package [338] (by Karsten TINNEFELD) is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package, because it alters (redefines) the sectionning commands. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem.

W0087

2.40 Use with the `romannum` package

If the `romannum` package [372] (by Peter R. WILSON) is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package, because it alters (redefines) the numbering of the sectioning commands. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem.

W0088

2.41 Use with the `sfheaders` package

If the `sfheaders` package [239] (by Maurizio LORETI) is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package, because it alters (redefines) the sectioning commands. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem.

W0089

2.42 Use with the `alnumsec` package

If the `alnumsec` package [212] (by Frank KÜSTER) is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package, because it alters (redefines) the numbering of the sectioning commands. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem.

W0090

2.43 Use with the `captcont` package

If the `captcont` package [115] (by Steven Douglas COCHRAN) is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package, because it alters (redefines) the caption commands. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem.

W0091

2.44 Vertical spaces (gaps) for `parttocs`, `partlofs`, and `partlots` titles

These vertical gaps were hard-coded like for the chapter heads in the `book` and `report` document classes. The values were 50pt and 40pt, but some users want to adjust them for the titles of the part-level mini-tables. Since version #45, these gaps are defined by `\mtcgapbeforeheads` and `\mtcgapafterheads`, with these defaults values. These commands apply globally to `parttocs`, `partlofs` and `partlots`. They are *commands*, *not* dimensions, so they must be modified via `\renewcommand` (but *not* via `\setlength`). An example of use is given in the `mtc-gap.tex` document file:



```
176 \< *mtc-gap>
177 \documentclass[a4paper,oneside,12pt]{book}
178 \ProvidesFile{mtc-gap.tex}%
```

179 [2007/01/04]

We use the `vruler` package (by Zhuhan JIANG) to display a vertical showing the position of the titles:

```
180 \usepackage{vruler} % to have a vertical graduation to note positions
181 % (by Zhuhan Jiang)
182 % \begin{macrocode}
183 \usepackage{txfonts}
184 \usepackage[english2,tight,listfiles]{minitoc}
185 \begin{document}
186 \setvruler[1cm][0][10][3][0][0pt][0pt][0pt][0pt] % with vruler package
187 \doparttoc
188 \faketableofcontents
189 \part{First part}
```

A normal `parttoc`, with the normal gaps before and after it.

```
190 \parttoc
191 \chapter{First chapter of first part} \chapter{Second chapter of first part}
192 \part{Second part}
```

`\mtcgapbeforeheads` We set large gaps. Note the new position of the `parttoc`.

`\mtcgapafterheads`

```
193 \renewcommand{\mtcgapbeforeheads}{100pt}
194 \renewcommand{\mtcgapafterheads}{80pt}
195 \parttoc
196 \chapter{First chapter of second part} \chapter{Second chapter of second part}
197 \part{Third part}
```

`\mtcgapbeforeheads` We set small gaps. Note the new position of the `parttoc`.

`\mtcgapafterheads`

```
198 \renewcommand{\mtcgapbeforeheads}{20pt}
199 \renewcommand{\mtcgapafterheads}{10pt}
200 \parttoc
201 \chapter{First chapter of third part} \chapter{Second chapter of third part}
202 \end{document}
203 </mtc-gap>
```

2.45 Vertical spacing before the bottom rule of a minitable

The little spacing between a minitable and its bottom rule is implemented as a vertical kern that should be sufficient to allow the descending parts of the letters of the last entry of the minitable. The values should depend on the line spacing and of the font size. They are defined as macros that you can adjust by redefining them via `\renewcommand`. The (empirical) default values are given in table 2.1 on the following page.

Table 2.1: Kernings before minitable bottom rules

Command	Default value
<code>\kernafterparttoc</code>	<code>\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex</code>
<code>\kernafterpartlof</code>	<code>\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex</code>
<code>\kernafterpartlot</code>	<code>\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex</code>
<code>\kernafterminitoc</code>	<code>\kern-.5\baselineskip\kern.5ex</code>
<code>\kernafterminilof</code>	<code>\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern0.ex</code>
<code>\kernafterminilot</code>	<code>\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern0.ex</code>
<code>\kernaftersecttoc</code>	<code>\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex</code>
<code>\kernaftersectlof</code>	<code>\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex</code>
<code>\kernaftersectlot</code>	<code>\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex</code>

2.46 Another interaction between the `tocloft` and `minitoc` packages

I encountered an interaction between `tocloft` and `minitoc`. I want to force `minitoc` to not display the page numbers, but because of `tocloft` it doesn't. Here is an example code:

```
\documentclass[12pt,a4paper]{book}
\usepackage{tocloft}
\usepackage{minitoc}
\begin{document}
\frontmatter
\dominitoc
\tableofcontents
\mainmatter
\chapter{Chapter}
\section{Section A} \section{Section B}
\chapter{Second Chapter}
\mtcsetfont{minitoc}{section}{\normalfont\small}
\mtcsetpagenumbers{minitoc}{off}
\minitoc
\section{Section A} \section{Section B}
\end{document}
```

If I comment the line loading the `tocloft` package, I will get a `minitoc` without page numbers as I wanted.

When using together `tocloft` and `minitoc`, the `tocloft` package must be loaded first, and its commands take precedence to format the entries in the TOC (and in minitocs). To suppress the page numbers, you should try the `\cftpagenumbersoff{XXX}` command (from `tocloft`), which is described in the `tocloft.pdf` documentation [363, pages 45-56]; `XXX` is the level of entry (chapter, sec, subsec, etc.). There are similar remarks about font related commands.

The `tocloft` package is more specialized in that job than `minitoc`, so if it is loaded, `minitoc` uses the `tocloft` tools. There is the corrected example (`mtc-tlo.tex`):

```
204 <*mtc - tlo>
205 \documentclass[12pt,a4paper]{book}
206 \ProvidesFile{mtc-tlo.tex}%
207 [2007/06/13]
```

We must load `tocloft` *before* `minitoc`:

```
208 \usepackage{tocloft}
209 \usepackage[tight]{minitoc}
210 \begin{document}
```

`\mtcsetfont` We define the global font for the `minitoc` entries:

```
211 \mtcsetfont{minitoc}{*}{\normalfont\small}
212 \frontmatter
213 \dominitoc
214 \tableofcontents
```

`\cftpagenumbersoff` For the section entries in the `minitocs`, we suppress the page numbers and change the font by
`\cftsecfont` using commands from the `tocloft` package:

```
215 \cftpagenumbersoff{sec}
216 \renewcommand{\cftsecfont}{\normalfont\small}
217 \mainmatter
218 \chapter{First Chapter} \minitoc
219 \section{Section A} \section{Section B}
220 \chapter{Second Chapter} \minitoc
221 \section{Section A} \section{Section B}
222 \end{document}
223 </mtc - tlo>
```

2.47 Use with the `hangcaption` package

If the `hangcaption` package [196] (by David M. JONES) is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package, because it alters (redefines) the sectioning commands. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem.

W0092

2.48 Use with the `flowfram` package

The `flowfram` package [333, 334], which has its own system of `minitocs`, is hence *incompatible* with `minitoc`.


W0097

Chapter 3

Memento

Tables

3.1	Package options	79	3.8	Commands for mini-tables features . . .	85
3.2	General commands	80	3.9	Preparation and insertion commands . .	86
3.3	Commands: part level	81	3.10	Adjustment commands	86
3.4	Commands: chapter level	82	3.11	Classes and packages needing some precautions with minitoc	87
3.5	Commands: section level	83	3.12	Obsolete commands	88
3.6	Commands for horizontal rules	84			
3.7	Commands for page numbers	84			

Table 3.1: Package options

Options	Default	Meaning
shorttext	*NO*	Short extensions for auxiliary files.
loose, tight	loose	Spacing of lines in mini-tables.
k-loose, k-tight	k-loose	Spacing of lines in mini-tables (KOMA-Script classes).
dotted, undotted	dotted	Presence of leaders (dotted lines).
insection	*NO*	Keeps floats (figures and tables) from drifting outside of their section. Useful if you use sectlofs/sectlots.
notoccite	*NO*	Useful if you have \cite commands in sectionning titles and use an unsorted bibliographic style.
listfiles, nolistfiles	listfiles	Lists the minitoc auxiliary files into <i>document.maf</i> .
hints, nohints	hints	Adds hints in the <i>document.log</i> file. Useful to detect some problems. Option <i>nohints</i> is inadvisable.

Language options are listed in table 1.7 on page 38. Default: `english`.

Table 3.2: General commands

Command	Meaning
<code>\faketableofcontents</code>	Replaces <code>\tableofcontents</code> if you want mini-tables of contents but no main table of contents.
<code>\fakelistoffigures</code>	Replaces <code>\listoffigures</code> if you want mini-lists of figures but no main list of figures.
<code>\fakelistoftables</code>	Replaces <code>\listoftables</code> if you want mini-lists of tables but no main list of tables.
<code>\mtcselectlanguage{language}</code>	Loads <code>language.mld</code> to select a language for mini-tables titles.
<code>\mtcsetdepth{mini-table}{depth}</code>	Changes the depth for some mini-tables.
<code>\mtcsetoffset{mini-table}{offset}</code>	Changes the offset for some mini-tables.
<code>\mtcsetfeature{mini-table}{before after open close pagestyle}{commands}</code>	Modifies the features for a mini-table.
<code>\mtcsetfont{mini-table}{sectioning-level}{font commands}</code>	Redefines a minitoc font command.
<code>\mtcsetformat{mini-table}{dotinterval pagenumwidth tocrightmargin}{value}</code>	Changes the layout of some mini-tables.
<code>\mtcsetpagenumbers{mini-table}*{on off}</code>	Activates/inhibits page numbers in some or all mini-tables.
<code>\mtcsetrules{mini-table}*{on off}</code>	Activates/inhibits horizontal rules in some or all mini-tables.
<code>\mtcsettitle{mini-table}{title string}</code>	Changes the title for some mini-tables.
<code>\mtcsettitlefont{mini-table}{font commands}</code>	Changes the font of the title for some mini-tables.
<code>\mtcskip</code>	To add a vertical skip between the mini-tables.
<code>\mtcskipamount</code>	Length of <code>\mtcskip</code> . Default: <code>\bigskipamount</code> .
<code>\tightmtcfalse</code>	Loose mini-tables. Default.
<code>\tightmtctrue</code>	Tight mini-tables.
<code>\ktightmtcfalse</code>	Loose mini-tables. Default. (KOMA-Script classes).
<code>\ktightmtctrue</code>	Tight mini-tables. (KOMA-Script classes).
<code>\undottedmtcfalse</code>	Dotted lines in mini-tables (from entry to page number). Default.
<code>\undottedmtctrue</code>	No dotted lines in mini-tables (from entry to page number).

Table 3.3: Commands: part level

Command	Meaning
<code>\doparttoc[x]</code>	Before <code>\[fake]tableofcontents</code> if you use <code>\parttoc*</code> .
<code>\dopartlof[x]</code>	Before <code>\[fake]listoffigures</code> if you use <code>\partlof*</code> .
<code>\dopartlot[x]</code>	Before <code>\[fake]listoftables</code> if you use <code>\partlot*</code> .
<code>\parttoc[x]</code>	After each <code>\part</code> command for which a <code>parttoc</code> is needed*.
<code>\partlof[x]</code>	After each <code>\part</code> command for which a <code>partlof</code> is needed*.
<code>\partlot[x]</code>	After each <code>\part</code> command for which a <code>partlot</code> is needed*.
<code>\setcounter{parttocdepth}{depth}</code>	Depth of the following <code>parttocs</code> . Analog to <code>tocdepth</code> . Default: 2. Has no action on <code>partlofs</code> and <code>partlots</code> .
<i>or:</i>	
<code>\mtcsetdepth{parttoc partlof partlot}{depth}</code>	Idem, but can also act on <code>partlofs</code> and <code>partlots</code> .
<code>\ptcindent</code>	Left/right indentation of a partial table. Default: 24pt.
<code>\ptcoffset</code>	Horizontal offset for <code>parttocs</code> . Command. Default: 0pt.
<code>\plfoffset</code>	Horizontal offset for <code>partlofs</code> . Command. Default: 0pt.
<code>\pltoffset</code>	Horizontal offset for <code>partlots</code> . Command. Default: 0pt.
<code>\mtcsetoffset{parttoc partlof partlot}{offset}</code>	Idem, but can also act on <code>partlofs</code> and <code>partlots</code> .
<code>\ptcfont</code>	Font command for <code>parttoc</code> . Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> (article) or: <code>\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> (book, report).
<code>\ptcCfont</code>	Font command for <code>parttoc</code> , chapter entries. Default: <code>\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries</code> .
<code>\ptcSfont</code>	Font command for <code>parttoc</code> , section entries. Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries</code> (article) or: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries</code> (book, report).
<code>\ptcSSfont</code>	Font command for <code>parttoc</code> , subsection entries**.
<code>\ptcSSSfont</code>	Font command for <code>parttoc</code> , subsubsection entries**.
<code>\ptcPfont</code>	Font command for <code>parttoc</code> , paragraph entries**.
<code>\ptcSPfont</code>	Font command for <code>parttoc</code> , subparagraph entries**.
<code>\plffont</code>	Font for <code>partlof</code> . Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\plfSfont</code>	Font for <code>partlof</code> (subfigures). Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\pltfont</code>	Font for <code>partlot</code> . Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\pltSfont</code>	Font for <code>partlot</code> (subtables). Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\ptctitle</code>	Title of <code>parttocs</code> . Default: Table of Contents.
<code>\plftitle</code>	Title of <code>partlofs</code> . Default: List of Figures.
<code>\plttitle</code>	Title of <code>partlots</code> . Default: List of Tables.
<code>\ptifont</code>	Font for <code>partXXX</code> titles. Default: <code>\Large\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries</code> (article) or: <code>\LARGE\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries</code> (book, report).
<code>\mtcgapbeforeheads</code>	Vertical gap before part-level mini-tables titles. Default: 50pt
<code>\mtcgapafterheads</code>	Vertical gap after part-level mini-tables titles. Default: 40pt

*: `[x]` is an optional argument to set the position of the title; the setting is local for the `\partXXX` commands, global for the `\dopartXXX` commands. The values of `x` are: l for left (default), c for centered, r for right, n or e for no title.

** : defaults like `\ptcfont`.

Table 3.4: Commands: chapter level

Command	Meaning
<code>\dominitoc[x]</code>	Before <code>\[fake]tableofcontents</code> if you use <code>\minitoc*</code> .
<code>\dominilof[x]</code>	Before <code>\[fake]listoffigures</code> if you use <code>\minilof*</code> .
<code>\dominilot[x]</code>	Before <code>\[fake]listoftables</code> if you use <code>\minilot*</code> .
<code>\minitoc[x]</code>	After each <code>\chapter</code> command for which a minitoc is needed*.
<code>\minilof[x]</code>	After each <code>\chapter</code> command for which a minilof is needed*.
<code>\minilot[x]</code>	After each <code>\chapter</code> command for which a minilot is needed*.
<code>\setcounter{minitocdepth}{depth}</code>	Depth of the following minitocs. Analog to <code>tocdepth</code> . Default: 2. Has no action on minilofs and minilots.
<i>or:</i>	
<code>\mtcsetdepth{minitoc minilof minilot}{depth}</code>	Idem, but can also act on minilofs and minilots.
<code>\mtcindent</code>	Left/right indentation of a mini-table. Default: 24pt.
<code>\mtcoffset</code>	Horizontal offset for minitocs. Command. Default: 0pt.
<code>\mlfoffset</code>	Horizontal offset for minilofs. Command. Default: 0pt.
<code>\mltoffset</code>	Horizontal offset for minilots. Command. Default: 0pt.
<code>\mtcsetoffset{minitoc minilof minilot}{offset}</code>	Idem, but can also act on minilofs and minilots.
<code>\mtcfont</code>	Font command for minitoc. Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\mtcSfont</code>	Font command for minitoc, section entries. Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries</code> .
<code>\mtcSSfont</code>	Font command for minitoc, subsection entries**.
<code>\mtcSSSfont</code>	Font command for minitoc, subsubsection entries**.
<code>\mtcPfont</code>	Font command for minitoc, paragraph entries**.
<code>\mtcSPfont</code>	Font command for minitoc, subparagraph entries**.
<code>\mlffont</code>	Font for minilof. Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\mlfSfont</code>	Font for minilof (subfigures). Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\mltfont</code>	Font for minilot. Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\mltSfont</code>	Font for minilot (subtables). Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\mtctitle</code>	Title of minitocs. Default: Contents.
<code>\mlftitle</code>	Title of minilofs. Default: Figures.
<code>\mlttitle</code>	Title of minilots. Default: Tables.
<code>\mtifont</code>	Font for miniXXX titles. Default: <code>\large\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries</code> .

*: [x] is an optional argument to set the position of the title; the setting is local for the `\miniXXX` commands, global for the `\dominiXXX` commands. The values of *x* are: l for left (default), c for centered, r for right, n or e for no title.

** : defaults like `\mtcfont`.

Table 3.5: Commands: section level

Command	Meaning
<code>\dosecttoc[x]</code>	Before <code>\[fake]tableofcontents</code> if you use <code>\secttoc*</code> .
<code>\dosectlof[x]</code>	Before <code>\[fake]listoffigures</code> if you use <code>\sectlof*</code> .
<code>\dosectlot[x]</code>	Before <code>\[fake]listoftables</code> if you use <code>\sectlot*</code> .
<code>\secttoc[x]</code>	After each <code>\section</code> command for which a <code>secttoc</code> is needed*.
<code>\sectlof[x]</code>	After each <code>\section</code> command for which a <code>sectlof</code> is needed*.
<code>\sectlot[x]</code>	After each <code>\section</code> command for which a <code>sectlot</code> is needed*.
<code>\setcounter{secttocdepth}{depth}</code>	Depth of the following <code>secttocs</code> . Analog to <code>tocdepth</code> . Default: 2. Has no action on <code>sectlofs</code> and <code>sectlots</code> .
<i>or:</i>	
<code>\mtcsetdepth{secttoc sectlof sectlot}{depth}</code>	Idem, but can also act on <code>sectlofs</code> and <code>sectlots</code> .
<code>\stcindent</code>	Left/right indentation of a mini-table. Default: 24pt.
<code>\stcoffset</code>	Horizontal offset for <code>secttocs</code> . Command. Default: 0pt.
<code>\slfoffset</code>	Horizontal offset for <code>sectlofs</code> . Command. Default: 0pt.
<code>\sltoffset</code>	Horizontal offset for <code>sectlots</code> . Command. Default: 0pt.
<code>\mtcsetoffset{secttoc sectlof sectlot}{offset}</code>	Idem, but can also act on <code>sectlofs</code> and <code>sectlots</code> .
<code>\stcfont</code>	Font command for <code>secttoc</code> . Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\stcSSfont</code>	Font command for <code>secttoc</code> , subsection entries**.
<code>\stcSSSfont</code>	Font command for <code>secttoc</code> , subsubsection entries**.
<code>\stcPfont</code>	Font command for <code>secttoc</code> , paragraph entries**.
<code>\mtcSPfont</code>	Font command for <code>secttoc</code> , subparagraph entries**.
<code>\slffont</code>	Font for <code>sectlof</code> . Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\slfSfont</code>	Font for <code>sectlof</code> (subfigures). Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\sltfont</code>	Font for <code>sectlot</code> . Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\sltSfont</code>	Font for <code>sectlot</code> (subtables). Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\stctitle</code>	Title of <code>secttocs</code> . Default: Contents.
<code>\slftitle</code>	Title of <code>sectlofs</code> . Default: Figures.
<code>\slttitle</code>	Title of <code>sectlots</code> . Default: Tables.
<code>\stifont</code>	Font for <code>sectXXX</code> titles. Default: <code>\large\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries</code> .

*: `[x]` is an optional argument to set the position of the title; the setting is local for the `\sectXXX` commands, global for the `\dosectXXX` commands. The values of `x` are: l for left (default), c for centered, r for right, n or e for no title.

** : defaults like `\stcfont`.

Table 3.6: Commands for horizontal rules

Command	Meaning
<code>\[no]ptcrule</code>	Activates or inhibits rules in parttocs.
<code>\[no]mtcrule</code>	Activates or inhibits rules in minitocs.
<code>\[no]stcrule</code>	Activates or inhibits rules in secttocs.
<code>\[no]plfrule</code>	Activates or inhibits rules in partlofs.
<code>\[no]mlfrule</code>	Activates or inhibits rules in minilofs.
<code>\[no]slfrule</code>	Activates or inhibits rules in sectlofs.
<code>\[no]pltrule</code>	Activates or inhibits rules in partlots.
<code>\[no]mltrule</code>	Activates or inhibits rules in minilots.
<code>\[no]sltrule</code>	Activates or inhibits rules in sectlots.
<code>\mtcsetrules{mini-table *}{on off}</code>	Activates/inhibits horizontal rules in some or all mini-tables.
<code>\kernafterparttoc</code>	Vertical kerning between a parttoc and its bottom rule.
<code>\kernafterpartlof</code>	Vertical kerning between a partlof and its bottom rule.
<code>\kernafterpartlot</code>	Vertical kerning between a partlot and its bottom rule.
<code>\kernafterminitoc</code>	Vertical kerning between a minitoc and its bottom rule.
<code>\kernafterminilof</code>	Vertical kerning between a minilof and its bottom rule.
<code>\kernafterminilot</code>	Vertical kerning between a minilot and its bottom rule.
<code>\kernaftersecttoc</code>	Vertical kerning between a secttoc and its bottom rule.
<code>\kernaftersectlof</code>	Vertical kerning between a sectlof and its bottom rule.
<code>\kernaftersectlot</code>	Vertical kerning between a sectlot and its bottom rule.

By default, parttocs have no rules; minitocs and secttocs have rules. In articles, parttocs have rules.

Table 3.7: Commands for page numbers

Command	Meaning
<code>\[no]ptcpagenumbers</code>	Activates or inhibits page numbers in parttocs.
<code>\[no]plfpagenumbers</code>	Activates or inhibits page numbers in partlofs.
<code>\[no]pltpagenumbers</code>	Activates or inhibits page numbers in partlots.
<code>\[no]mtcpagenumbers</code>	Activates or inhibits page numbers in minitocs.
<code>\[no]mlfpagenumbers</code>	Activates or inhibits page numbers in minilofs.
<code>\[no]mltpagenumbers</code>	Activates or inhibits page numbers in minilots.
<code>\[no]stcpagenumbers</code>	Activates or inhibits page numbers in secttocs.
<code>\[no]slfpagenumbers</code>	Activates or inhibits page numbers in sectlofs.
<code>\[no]sltpagenumbers</code>	Activates or inhibits page numbers in sectlots.
<code>\mtcsetpagenumbers{mini-table *}{on off}</code>	Activates/inhibits page numbers in some or all mini-tables.

By default, the page numbers are present.

Table 3.8: Commands for mini-tables features

Command	Default	Meaning
<code>\beforeparttoc</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action before a parttoc.
<code>\beforepartlof</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action before a partlof.
<code>\beforepartlot</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action before a partlot.
<code>\afterparttoc</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action after a parttoc.
<code>\afterpartlof</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action after a partlof.
<code>\afterpartlot</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action after a partlot.
<code>\openparttoc</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action before inserting a parttoc file.
<code>\openpartlof</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action before inserting a partlof file.
<code>\openpartlot</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action before inserting a partlot file.
<code>\closeparttoc</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action after inserting a parttoc file.
<code>\closepartlof</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action after inserting a partlof file.
<code>\closepartlot</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action after inserting a partlot file.
<code>\thispageparttocstyle</code>	<code>\thispagestyle{empty}</code>	Page style for a parttoc.
<code>\thispagepartlofstyle</code>	<code>\thispagestyle{empty}</code>	Page style for a partlof.
<code>\thispagepartlotstyle</code>	<code>\thispagestyle{empty}</code>	Page style for a partlot.
<code>\beforeminitoc</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action before a minitoc.
<code>\beforeminilof</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action before a minilof.
<code>\beforeminilot</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action before a minilot.
<code>\afterminitoc</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action after a minitoc.
<code>\afterminilof</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action after a minilof.
<code>\afterminilot</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action after a minilot.
<code>\openminitoc</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action before inserting a minitoc file.
<code>\openminilof</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action before inserting a minilof file.
<code>\openminilot</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action before inserting a minilot file.
<code>\closeminitoc</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action after inserting a minitoc file.
<code>\closeminilof</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action after inserting a minilof file.
<code>\closeminilot</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action after inserting a minilot file.
<code>\thispageminitocstyle</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Page style for a minitoc.
<code>\thispageminilofstyle</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Page style for a minilof.
<code>\thispageminilotstyle</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Page style for a minilot.
<code>\beforesecttoc</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action before a secttoc.
<code>\beforesectlof</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action before a sectlof.
<code>\beforesectlot</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action before a sectlot.
<code>\aftersecttoc</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action after a secttoc.
<code>\aftersectlof</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action after a sectlof.
<code>\aftersectlot</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action after a sectlot.
<code>\opensecttoc</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action before inserting a secttoc file.
<code>\opensectlof</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action before inserting a sectlof file.
<code>\opensectlot</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action before inserting a sectlot file.
<code>\closesecttoc</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action after inserting a secttoc file.
<code>\closesectlof</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action after inserting a sectlof file.
<code>\closesectlot</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action after inserting a sectlot file.
<code>\thispagesecttocstyle</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Page style for a secttoc.
<code>\thispagesectlofstyle</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Page style for a sectlof.
<code>\thispagesectlotstyle</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Page style for a sectlot.
<hr/>		
<code>\mtcsetfeature{mini-table}{before after open close pagestyle}{commands}</code>		
Modifies the features for a mini-table.		

Table 3.9: Preparation and insertion commands

Type	Phase	Level		
		part	chapter	section
table of contents	preparation	<code>\doparttoc[p]</code>	<code>\dominitoc[p]</code>	<code>\dosecttoc[p]</code>
	insertion	<code>\parttoc[p]</code>	<code>\minitoc[p]</code>	<code>\secttoc[p]</code>
list of figures	preparation	<code>\dopartlof[p]</code>	<code>\dominiloof[p]</code>	<code>\dosectlof[p]</code>
	insertion	<code>\partlof[p]</code>	<code>\miniloof[p]</code>	<code>\sectlof[p]</code>
list of tables	preparation	<code>\dopartlot[p]</code>	<code>\dominilot[p]</code>	<code>\dosectlot[p]</code>
	insertion	<code>\partlot[p]</code>	<code>\minilot[p]</code>	<code>\sectlot[p]</code>
all	preparation	<code>\mtcprepare[p]</code>		

Each of these commands accepts one optional argument p , which specifies the position of the title of the mini-table. This argument p has a global effect for the preparation commands, but local for the insertion commands. It is a letter: [l] for left aligned (default), [c] for centered, [r] for right aligned, [e] or [n] for empty (no title).

Table 3.10: Adjustment commands

Command	Meaning
<code>\adjustptc[n]</code>	Adjusts (increments) the parttoc counter <code>ptc</code> by n .
<code>\adjustmtc[n]</code>	Adjusts (increments) the minitoc counter <code>mtc</code> by n .
<code>\adjuststc[n]</code>	Adjusts (increments) the secttoc counter <code>stc</code> by n .
<code>\decrementptc</code>	Adjusts (decrements by 1) the parttoc counter <code>ptc</code> .
<code>\decrementmtc</code>	Adjusts (decrements by 1) the minitoc counter <code>mtc</code> .
<code>\decrementstc</code>	Adjusts (decrements by 1) the secttoc counter <code>stc</code> .
<code>\incrementptc</code>	Adjusts (increments by 1) the parttoc counter <code>ptc</code> .
<code>\incrementmtc</code>	Adjusts (increments by 1) the minitoc counter <code>mtc</code> .
<code>\incrementstc</code>	Adjusts (increments by 1) the secttoc counter <code>stc</code> .
<code>\mtcaddpart[title]</code>	Adds the title of a <code>\part*</code> in the ToC.
<code>\mtcaddchapter[title]</code>	Adds the title of a <code>\chapter*</code> in the ToC.
<code>\mtcaddsection[title]</code>	Adds the title of a <code>\section*</code> in the ToC.
<code>\mtcfixglossary[chapter section part]</code>	Adjusts the entry for the glossary in the ToC.
<code>\mtcfixindex[chapter section part]</code>	Adjusts the entry for the index in the ToC.
<code>\mtcfixnomenclature[chapter section part]</code>	Adjusts the entry for the nomenclature in the ToC.
<code>\begin{mtchideinmaintoc}[depth] ... \end{mtchideinmaintoc}</code>	Environment to hide entries in the main ToC.
<code>\begin{mtchideinmainlof}[depth] ... \end{mtchideinmainlof}</code>	Environment to hide entries in the main list of figures.
<code>\mtchideinmainlof[depth] ... \endmtchideinmainlof</code>	Pair of commands to hide entries in the main list of figures.
<code>\begin{mtchideinmainlot}[depth] ... \end{mtchideinmainlot}</code>	Environment to hide entries in the main list of tables.
<code>\mtchideinmainlot[depth] ... \endmtchideinmainlot</code>	Pair of commands to hide entries in the main list of tables.

Table 3.11: Classes and packages needing some precautions with minitoc

P/C	Names	Author(s)	Page(s)	Reference(s)
P	abstract	Peter R. WILSON	52	[364]
P	alnumsec	Frank KÜSTER	53	[212]
* P	alphanum	Felix BRAUN	74	[94]
* C	amsart	\mathcal{AMS}	65	[7]
C	amsbook	\mathcal{AMS}	65	[7]
* C	amsproc	\mathcal{AMS}	65	[7]
P	appendix	Peter R. WILSON	63	[365]
P	captcont	Steven Douglas COCHRAN	53	[115]
P	caption	Axel SOMMERFELDT	53	[324, 325]
P	caption2	Axel SOMMERFELDT	53	[323]
P	ccaption	Peter R. WILSON	53	[368]
* P	flowfram	Nicola L. C. TALBOT	78	[333, 334]
P	fncychap	Ulf A. LINDGREN	74	[237]
P	hangcaption	David M. JONES	78	[196]
P	hyperref	Sebastian RAHTZ and Heiko OBERDIEK	61	[273, 276–278, 301, 304, 305]
* C	jura	Felix BRAUN	74	[94]
P	mcaption	Stephan HENNIG	53	[183]
P	float	Anselm LINGNAU	53	[238]
P	floatrow	Olga G. LAPKO	53	[223]
P	trivfloat	Joseph A. WRIGHT	53	[375]
P	rotrfloat	Sebastian RAHTZ and Leonor BARROCA	53	[322]
C	memoir	Peter R. WILSON	64	[370, 371, 373]
P	notoccite	Donald ARSENEAU	51	[10]
P	placeins	Donald ARSENEAU	29	[11]
P	quotchap	Karsten TINNEFELD	53	[338]
P	romannum	Peter R. WILSON	53	[372]
C	scartcl, scrbook and scrreprt	Frank NEUKAM, Markus KOHM, Axel KIELHORN, and Jens-Uwe MORAWSKI	74	[207, 270, 308]
P	sectsty	Rowland McDONNELL	69	[249]
P	sfheaders	Maurizio LORETI	75	[239]
P	subfig	Steven Douglas COCHRAN	33	[116]
P	subfigure	Steven Douglas COCHRAN	33	[114]
* P	titlesec	Javier BEZOS	52	[40]
* P	titletoc	Javier BEZOS	52	[40]
P	tocbibind	Peter R. WILSON	49	[366]
P	tocloft	Peter R. WILSON	63, 77	[363]
P	varsect	Daniel TAUPIN [†]	52	[336]

*: *Incompatible* with minitoc. **C**: Class. **P**: Package.

Any class not defining the main standard sectioning commands is *incompatible* with minitoc.

Table 3.12: Obsolete commands

Command	Meaning
<code>\firstpartis{N}</code>	<i>N</i> is the number of the first part.
<code>\firstchapteris{N}</code>	<i>N</i> is the number of the first chapter.
<code>\firstsectionis{N}</code>	<i>N</i> is the number of the first section.
These commands have no effect (except a harmless warning).	

Chapter 4

Examples of documents

Contents

4.1	The <code>mtc-2c.tex</code> document file	90	4.19	The <code>mtc-hia.tex</code> document file	128
4.2	The <code>mtc-2nd.tex</code> document file	91	4.20	The <code>mtc-hir.tex</code> document file	129
4.3	The <code>mtc-3co.tex</code> document file	92	4.21	The <code>mtc-hop.tex</code> document file	130
4.4	The <code>mtc-add.tex</code> document file	95	4.22	The <code>mtc-liv.tex</code> document file	131
4.5	The <code>mtc-ads.tex</code> document file	100	4.23	The <code>mtc-mem.tex</code> document file	135
4.6	The <code>mtc-amm.tex</code> document file	105	4.24	The <code>mtc-mm1.tex</code> document file	136
4.7	The <code>mtc-apx.tex</code> document file	106	4.25	The <code>mtc-mu.tex</code> document file	137
4.8	The <code>mtc-art.tex</code> document file	106	4.26	The <code>mtc-nom.tex</code> document file	139
4.9	The <code>mtc-bk.tex</code> document file	111	4.27	The <code>mtc-ocf.tex</code> document file	140
4.10	The <code>mtc-bo.tex</code> document file	117	4.28	The <code>mtc-ofs.tex</code> document file	141
4.11	The <code>mtc-ch0.tex</code> document file	122	4.29	The <code>mtc-sbf.tex</code> document file	143
4.12	The <code>mtc-cri.tex</code> document file	123	4.30	The <code>mtc-scr.tex</code> document file	145
4.13	The <code>mtc-fko.tex</code> document file	124	4.31	The <code>mtc-syn.tex</code> document file	146
4.14	The <code>mtc-fo1.tex</code> document file	125	4.32	The <code>mtc-tbi.tex</code> document file	147
4.15	The <code>mtc-fo2.tex</code> document file	126	4.33	The <code>mtc-tlc.tex</code> document file	149
4.16	The <code>mtc-gap.tex</code> document file	128	4.34	The <code>mtc-tlo.tex</code> document file	150
4.17	The <code>mtc-hi1.tex</code> document file	128	4.35	The <code>mtc-tsfc.tex</code> document file	150
4.18	The <code>mtc-hi2.tex</code> document file	128			

This chapter shows the code of some examples of documents. Some are extracted or derived from real documents, others are just demonstrations to illustrate problems or features. The code of some specific example files has been shown earlier: `mtc-apx.tex` on page 66, `mtc-hi1.tex` on page 67, `mtc-hi2.tex` on page 68, `mtc-gap.tex` on page 75, and `mtc-tlo.tex` on page 78,

Note that the `lipsum` package [168] is often used to provide filling text.

4.1 The `mtc-2c.tex` document file

`\mtcindent` This document shows the use of the `minitoc` package in a document with a two columns layout. The layout uses the `multicol` standard package [255] and its `multicols` environment. We set `\mtcindent` to zero. We test several combinations. If a `minitoc` is long enough to be splitted on both columns, the result may be funny.

<pre> 224 <*mtc - 2c> 225 \documentclass[12pt,a4paper]% 226 {report} 227 \ProvidesFile{mtc-2c.tex}% 228 [2007/01/04] 229 \usepackage{multicol} 230 \usepackage{lipsum} </pre>	<pre> 231 \usepackage% 232 [tight,latin,listfiles]{minitoc} 233 \usepackage[latin]{babel} 234 \setlength{\mtcindent}{0pt} 235 \begin{document} 236 \dominitoc 237 \tableofcontents </pre>
---	---

`multicols` Two first chapters with a standard chapter head, a `minitoc` on one full width column, then the
`\minitoc` body of the chapter on two columns:

<pre> 238 \chapter{Primum capitulum} 239 \begin{multicols}{2}[\minitoc] 240 \section{Prima sectio} 241 \lipsum[1-2] 242 \section{Secunda sectio} 243 \lipsum[3-4] 244 \end{multicols} 245 \chapter{Secundum capitulum} </pre>	<pre> 246 \begin{multicols}{2}[\minitoc] 247 \section{Prima sectio} 248 \lipsum[5-6] 249 \section{Secunda sectio} 250 \lipsum[7-8] 251 \section{Tertia sectio} 252 \lipsum[9-10] 253 \end{multicols} </pre>
---	---

`multicols` A third chapter entirely on two columns, so the chapter head and the `minitoc` are in the first
`\minitoc` column:

<pre> 254 \begin{multicols}{2} 255 \chapter{Tertium capitulum} 256 \minitoc 257 \section{Prima sectio} 258 \lipsum[11-12] </pre>	<pre> 259 \section{Secunda sectio} 260 \lipsum[13-14] 261 \section{Tertia sectio} 262 \lipsum[15-16] 263 \end{multicols} </pre>
--	---

`multicols` A fourth chapter, with the chapter head on one column, and the `minitoc` and the chapter body
`\minitoc` on two columns (the `minitoc` is in the first column):

<pre> 264 \chapter{Quadrum capitulum} 265 \begin{multicols}{2} 266 \minitoc 267 \section{Prima sectio} 268 \lipsum[16-17] 269 \section{Secunda sectio} </pre>	<pre> 270 \lipsum[18-19] 271 \section{Tertia sectio} 272 \lipsum[20-21] 273 \end{multicols} 274 \end{document} 275 </mtc - 2c> </pre>
---	---

4.2 The mtc-2nd.tex document file

This document tests the french2.mld minitoc language definition file (section 13.60 on page 493) and its supporting code in the minitoc package. First, the preamble of the document uses the french2 minitoc package language option¹:

```

276 <*mtc – 2nd>
277 %% Test de french2.mld:
278 %% « seconde » ou « deuxième » partie?
279 %% compilez 3 fois.
280 \documentclass{report}
281 \ProvidesFile{mtc-2nd.tex}%
282 [2007/01/04]
283 \usepackage[french2,tight,listfiles]{minitoc}
284 \usepackage[french]{babel}
285 \usepackage{franc,frnew}
286 \usepackage[OT1,TS1,T1]{fontenc}
287 \usepackage[isolatin]{inputenc}
288 \usepackage{mypatches}
289 \begin{document}

```

\ifmtcsecondpart We test if there is only two parts: if yes, we will use “seconde”. Else (zero, one, three or more parts), we will use “deuxième”.

```

290 \ifmtcsecondpart
291 Il n’y a que 2 parties: seconde.
292 \else
293 Il y a une partie ou plus de deux parties: deuxième.
294 \fi
295 \clearpage

```

\doparttoc The body of the document, with two parts:
 \faketableofcontents

```

\dparttoc
296 \doparttoc
297 \faketableofcontents
298 \part{P1}
299 \parttoc
300 \chapter{P1C1}
301 \chapter{P1C2}
302 \part{P2}
303 \parttoc
304 \chapter{P2C1}
305 \chapter{P2C2}

```

If you want also a third part, comment out this line and recompile 3 times:

¹ The franc, frnew and mypatches packages are local additions, provided with the minitoc package documentation sources.

Observe the titles of the parttocs when the document has two then three parts. Note the changes after each compilation. You can play by adding and removing parts. It would be interesting to add a starred part, with starred chapters, at the beginning of the document, this part and these chapters having their entries in the TOC. For instance, try to add the following lines after `\faketableofcontents`:

and you will see how the parttoc of the new starred part is titled.

This document shows how to prepare a minitoc on three columns, with some modifications of the code the `mtc@verse` environment.

```

314 \*mtc - 3co>
315 \documentclass[oneside]{book}
316 \ProvidesFile{mtc-3co.tex}%
317   [2007/02/19]
318 \usepackage[a3paper]{geometry}
319 \usepackage{lipsum}
320 \usepackage{multicol}
321 \usepackage[toc]{multitoc}
322 \renewcommand{\multicolumntoc}{3}

```

```

\mtcindent Then we load the minitoc package, set some parameters and define the number of columns for
\mtcsetformat the minitocs. We alter the mtc@verse environment to add a multicols environment2:
\multicolumnmtc
\mtc@verse 323 %%%%%%%%%%%%%%%
\endmtc@verse 324 \usepackage[tight]{minitoc}
multicols 325 \setlength{\mtcindent}{0pt}
326 \mtcsetformat{minitoc}{tocrightmargin}{2.55em plus 1fil}
327 \newcommand{\multicolumnmtc}{3}
328 \makeatletter
329 \let\SV@mtc@verse\mtc@verse
330 \let\SV@endmtc@verse\endmtc@verse
331 \def\mtc@verse#1{\SV@mtc@verse#1\removelastskip%
332 \begin{multicols}{\multicolumnmtc}\raggedcolumns\leavevmode\unskip
333 \vskip -1.5ex \vskip -1\baselineskip}
334 \def\endmtc@verse{\end{multicols}\SV@endmtc@verse}
335 \makeatother
336 %%%%%%%%%%%%%%%

```

We begin the document, preparing the minitocs and the main TOC. The (first) chapter begins with its minitoc, then the text on two columns. We use the `lipsum` package [168] to provide filling text; the section number is used to select a *lipsum* paragraph.

```

337 \begin{document}
338 \dominitoc
339 \tableofcontents
340 \chapter{First chapter}
341 \minitoc
342 \begin{multicols}{2}

```

We use a lot of sections, to have a minitoc large enough to use the three columns. A subsection with a long title gives a good result (we have used `\mtcsetformat` to avoid hyphenations).

```

343 \section{First section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
344 \section{Second section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
345 \section{Third section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
346 \section{Fourth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
347 \section{Fifth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
348 \section{Sixth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
349 \section{Seventh section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
350 \section{Eighth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
351 \section{Ninth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
352 \section{Tenth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
353 \section{Eleventh section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
354 \section{Twelfth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
355 \section{Thirteenth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
356 \section{Fourteenth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
357 \section{Fifteenth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
358 \section{Sixteenth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
359 \section{Seventeenth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
360 \section{Eighteenth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]

```

² Some vertical adjustments are necessary.

```

361 \section{Nineteenth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
362 \section{Twentieth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
363 \section{Twenty-first section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
364 \section{Twenty-second section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
365 \section{Twenty-third section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
366 \section{Twenty-fourth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
367 \subsection{A very long subsection title,
368 for the fun in a multicolumn
369 table of contents} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
370 \section{Twenty-fifth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
371 \section{Twenty-sixth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
372 \section{Twenty-seventh section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
373 \section{Twenty-eighth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
374 \section{Twenty-ninth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
375 \section{Thirtieth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
376 \section{Thirty-first section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
377 \section{Thirty-second section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
378 \section{Thirty-third section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
379 \section{Thirty-fourth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
380 \section{Thirty-fifth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
381 \section{Thirty-sixth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
382 \section{Thirty-seventh section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
383 \section{Thirty-eighth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
384 \section{Thirty-ninth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
385 \section{Fortieth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
386 \section{Forty-first section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
387 \section{Forty-second section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
388 \section{Forty-third section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
389 \section{Forty-fourth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
390 \section{Forty-fifth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
391 \section{Forty-sixth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
392 \section{Forty-seventh section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
393 \section{Forty-eighth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
394 \section{Forty-ninth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
395 \section{Fiftieth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
396 \section{Fifty-first section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
397 \section{Fifty-second section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
398 \section{Fifty-third section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
399 \section{Fifty-fourth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
400 \section{Fifty-fifth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
401 \section{Fifty-sixth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
402 \section{Fifty-seventh section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
403 \section{Fifty-eighth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
404 \section{Fifty-ninth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
405 \end{multicols}
406 \clearpage
407 \end{document}
408 </mtc - 3co>

```

4.4 The `mtc-add.tex` document file

This document shows how to add special entries in the table of contents, and the interaction with the `tocbibind` package [366].

```

409 \documentclass[12pt,a4paper]{report}
410 \documentclass[12pt,a4paper]{book}
411 %% \ProvidesFile{mtc-add.tex}%
412 \ProvidesFile{mtc-add.tex}%
413 [2007/01/04]
414 \usepackage{url}
415 \usepackage{tocbibind}
416 \usepackage{makeidx}
417 \makeatletter
418 \newif\ifscan@allowed
419 \scan@allowedtrue
420 \makeatother
421 \def\dotfil{\leaders\hbox to.6em{\hss .\hss}\hfil}%
422 \def\pfill{\unskip~\dotfill\penalty500\strut\nobreak
423           \dotfil~\ignorespaces}%

```

Load the `minitoc` package, or `mtcoff`.

```

424 \usepackage[tight,hints,listfiles]{minitoc}
425 %% \usepackage{mtcoff}

426 \makeindex
427 \begin{document}

```

`\dominitoc` We call the mini-table preparation commands:

`\dominilof`

```

\dominilot 428 \dominitoc
429 \dominilof
430 \dominilot

```

`\tableofcontents` We are using the `tocbibind` package to add special entries in the table of contents, so we must take the precautions specified in section 1.5.5 on page 49:

`\mtcaddchapter`

`\listoffigures`

```

\listoftables 431 \tableofcontents
432 \mtcaddchapter
433 \listoffigures
434 \mtcaddchapter
435 \listoftables
436 \mtcaddchapter

```

`\chapter` For a chapter, we want a `minitoc`, a `minilof` and a `minilot`:

`\minitoc`

```

\minilof 437 \chapter{First chapter}\index{chapter!normal}
\minilot
\mtcskip

```

```

438 \minitoc
439 \mtcskip
440 \minilof
441 \mtcskip
442 \minilot

```

Then the text of the chapter, with sections, figures and tables:

```

443 \section{First section}
444
445 \begin{figure}[tp]
446 \caption{First figure}
447 \end{figure}
448 \begin{table}[tp]
449 \caption{First table}
450 \end{table}
451
452 \section{Second section}
453 A small nice citation from~\cite{dark}:\
454 \index{small}\index{citation}\index{nice}\index{A}\index{a}%
455 \index{and}\index{bird}\index{But}\index{cannot}%
456 \index{claim}\index{great}\index{he}\index{I}%
457 \index{imagine}\index{it}\index{know}\index{land}%
458 \index{on}\index{once}\index{that}\index{to}\index{tree}%
459 \index{would}\index{yes}%
460 \textsf{A bird cannot land once on a great tree and claim to know it.}
461 But I imagine that he would, yes.}\
462 \hbox{}\hfill
463 Iain~M.~\textsc{Banks}~(1993),~\textsl{Against~a~dark~background.}%
464 \index{Iain}\index{Banks}\index{Against}\index{dark}\index{background}
465
466 \begin{figure}[tp]
467 \caption{Second figure}
468 \end{figure}
469 \begin{table}
470 \caption{Second table}
471 \end{table}

```

`\chapter*` A starred chapter requires a special treatment; three solutions are possible. You can test variations on the `\mtcaddchapter` command. Just uncomment one (and only one) of the `\mtcaddchapter` commands after `\chapter*` in the source code of `mtc-add.tex`. For each case, look at the Table of Contents and the involved chapter.

```

472 \chapter*{Second chapter, starred}
473 \index{chapter!starred}
474 %% UNCOMMENT ONE AND ONLY ONE OF THE 3 FOLLOWING LINES
475 \mtcaddchapter[Second chapter, starred] % OK
476 %% \mtcaddchapter[~] % produces a (strange) correct result. OK
477 %% \addcontentsline{toc}{xchapter}{}
478 %% %%%%%%%%%%%\mtcaddchapter[~]%%%%%%%%%%\mtcaddchapter[~]%%%%%%%%%%\mtcaddchapter[~]%%%%%%%%%%
479 %% \mtcaddchapter[] % BAD SOLUTION
480 %% \mtcaddchapter % BAD SOLUTION

```



```

481 %%%%%%%%%%
482 \index{tests}
483
484 This is a starred chapter; you can test here variations on
485 the \verb|\mtcaddchapter| command. Just uncomment one (and
486 only one) of the \verb|\mtcaddchapter| commands after
487 \verb|\chapter*| in the source code of \texttt{mtc-add.tex}.
488 For each case, look at the \index{Table of Contents}Table of Contents
489 and at this chapter.
490 \index{a}\index{added}\index{after}\index{also}\index{and}%
491 \index{at}\index{can}\index{case}\index{chapter}\index{code}%
492 \index{command}\index{commands}\index{Contents}\index{each}%
493 \index{entries}\index{For}\index{here}\index{I}\index{in}%
494 \index{index}\index{is}\index{Just}\index{just}\index{look}%
495 \index{lot}\index{of}\index{on}\index{one}\index{only}%
496 \index{source}\index{starred}\index{Table}\index{test}%
497 \index{the}\index{This}\index{this}\index{to}\index{uncomment}%
498 \index{variations}\index{you}%
499 I also added a lot of index entries, just to test.
500
501 \chapter{Third chapter}
502 \index{chapter!normal}
503 \minitoc
504 \mtcskip
505 \minilof
506 \mtcskip
507 \minilot
508 \section{Third section}
509
510 \begin{figure}
511 \caption{Third figure}
512 \end{figure}
513 \begin{table}
514 \caption{Third table}
515 \end{table}
516
517 \section{Fourth section}
518
519 \begin{figure}
520 \caption{Fourth figure}
521 \end{figure}
522 \begin{table}
523 \caption{Fourth table}
524 \end{table}

```

\bibliographystyle As we want to add an entry for the bibliography in the table of contents, and we use the
 \bibliography tocbibind package for that, we must add a correction with \adjustmtc:
 \adjustmtc

```

525 \nocite*
526 \def\noopsort#1{\relax}
527 \bibliographystyle{plain}
528 \bibliography{mtc-add}
529 \adjustmtc

```

`\printindex` As we want to add an entry for the index in the table of contents, and we use the `tocbibind`
`\mtcfixindex` package for that, we must add a correction; two solutions are available: use `\mtcfixindex` or
the other given three lines:

```

530 \printindex
531 \mtcfixindex % use this OR the 3 following lines
532 %% \addcontentsline{lof}{xchapter}{}
533 %% \addcontentsline{lot}{xchapter}{}
534 %% \mtcaddchapter
535 %%
536
537 \appendix
538 \chapter{App.~1}
539 \index{chapter!appendix}
540 \minitoc
541 \mtcskip
542 \minilof
543 \mtcskip
544 \minilot
545 \section{Fifth section}
546
547 \begin{figure}
548 \caption{Fifth figure}
549 \end{figure}
550 \begin{table}
551 \caption{Fifth table}
552 \end{table}
553
554 \section{Sixth section}
555
556 \begin{figure}
557 \caption{Sixth figure}
558 \end{figure}
559 \begin{table}
560 \caption{Sixth table}
561 \end{table}

```

The next chapter asks for a minitoc, a minilof and a minilot, but contains no tables; hence the minitoc package will give some warnings.

```

562 \chapter{App.~2}
563 \index{chapter!appendix}
564 %% contains no tables but asks for a minilot! No minilot printed.
565 \minitoc
566 \mtcskip
567 \minilof
568 \mtcskip
569 \minilot
570 \section{Seventh section}
571 \begin{figure}
572 \caption{Seventh figure}
573 \end{figure}

```

```

574 \begin{figure}
575 \caption{Eighth figure}
576 \end{figure}
577
578 \section{Eighth section}
579
580 \begin{figure}
581 \caption{Ninth figure}
582 \end{figure}
583 \begin{figure}
584 \caption{Eleventh figure}
585 \end{figure}
586
587 \end{document}
588 </mtc – add>

```

And we need also its small bibliographic data base:

- the english documentation of the minitoc package [132]:

```

589 <*mtc – addbib>
590 @MISC{minitoc,
591     TITLE="The {\textsf{minitoc}} package",
592     AUTHOR="Drucbert, Jean-Pierre F.",
593     ADDRESS="{\url{mailto:drucbert@onera.fr}}",
594     NOTE="{\url{CTAN:macros/latex/contrib/minitoc/minitoc.pdf}}",
595     MONTH=jun,
596     YEAR=2007}
597

```

- the french documentation of the minitoc package [131]:

```

598 @MISC{fminitoc,
599     TITLE="Le paquetage {\textsf{minitoc}}",
600     AUTHOR="Drucbert, Jean-Pierre F.",
601     ADDRESS="{\url{mailto:drucbert@onera.fr}}",
602     NOTE="{\url{CTAN:macros/latex/contrib/minitoc/fminitoc.pdf}}",
603     MONTH=jun,
604     YEAR=2007}
605

```

- the documentation of the shorttoc package [130]:

```

606 @MISC{shorttoc,
607     TITLE="The {\textsf{shorttoc}} package",
608     AUTHOR="Drucbert, Jean-Pierre F.",
609     ADDRESS="{\url{mailto:drucbert@onera.fr}}",
610     NOTE="{\url{CTAN:macros/latex/contrib/shorttoc/shorttoc.dtx}}",
611     MONTH=aug,
612     YEAR=2002}
613

```

- a novel [19] from which a short citation is taken:

```

614 @BOOK{dark,

```

```

615         TITLE="{Against a Dark Background}",
616         AUTHOR="Banks, Iain Menzies",
617         PUBLISHER="Bantam Books",
618         ISBN="0553292240 (pb)",
619         YEAR=1993}
620     </mtc – addbib>

```

4.5 The mtc-ads.tex document file

This document uses the article class and shows some problems for adding special entries in the table of contents and some problems with floating objects. We need to use the tocibind package [366] for the first ones and the minitoc insection package option to avoid the drift if floating objects outside of their section. That gives the following document preamble:

```

621 (*mtc – ads)
622 \documentclass[oneside,12pt,a4paper]{article}
623 \ProvidesFile{mtc-ads.tex}%
624   [2007/01/04]
625 \usepackage{url,tocbibind,makeidx}
626 \makeatletter
627 \newif\ifscan@allowed
628 \scan@allowedtrue
629 \makeatother
630 \def\dotfil{\leaders\hbox to.6em{\hss.\hss}\hfil}%
631 \def\pfill{\unskip~\dotfil\penalty500\strut\nobreak
632           \dotfil~\ignorespaces}%
633 \usepackage[tight,hints,insection]{minitoc}
634 %% \usepackage{mtcoff}
635 \makeindex

```

\doparttoc The preparation commands:

\dopartlof

\dopartlot 636 \begin{document}

\dosecttoc 637 \doparttoc \dopartlof \dopartlot

\dosectlof 638 \dosecttoc \dosectlof \dosectlot

\dosectlot

\setcounter The commands to prepare the table of contents, the list of figures and the list of tables. As we use the tocibind package, we must add some \mtcaddsection commands:

\tableofcontents

\mtcaddsection

\listoffigures 639 \setcounter{tocdepth}{6}

\listoftables 640 \setcounter{parttocdepth}{6}

641 \setcounter{secttocdepth}{6}

642 \tableofcontents

643 \mtcaddsection

644 \listoffigures

645 \mtcaddsection

646 \listoftables

647 \mtcaddsection

```

\parttoc The body of the document: a part with its part-level mini-tables, some sections with their
\partlof section-level mini-tables. The document has an index and contains figures and tables.
\partlot
\secttoc 648 \part{Part~1}
\sectlof 649 \parttoc \mtcskip \partlof \mtcskip \partlot
\sectlot 650
\mtcskip 651 \section{First section}
        652 \index{section!normal}
        653 \secttoc \mtcskip \sectlof \mtcskip \sectlot
        654 \subsection{First subsection}
        655
        656 \begin{figure}[tp]
        657 \caption{First figure}
        658 \end{figure}
        659 \begin{table}[tp]
        660 \caption{First table}
        661 \end{table}
        662
        663 \subsection{Second subsection}
        664 A small nice citation from~\cite{dark}:\
        665 \index{small}\index{citation}\index{nice}\index{A}%
        666 \index{a}\index{and}\index{bird}\index{But}%
        667 \index{cannot}\index{claim}\index{great}\index{he}%
        668 \index{I}\index{imagine}\index{it}\index{know}%
        669 \index{land}\index{on}\index{once}\index{that}%
        670 \index{to}\index{tree}\index{would}\index{yes}%
        671 A bird cannot land once on a great tree and claim to know it.
        672 But I imagine that he would, yes.\
        673 \hbox{}\hfill Iain~M.~\textsc{Banks} (1993), \textsl{Against a dark background.}%
        674 \index{Iain}\index{Banks}\index{Against}\index{dark}%
        675 \index{background}
        676 \begin{figure}[tp]
        677 \caption{Second figure}
        678 \end{figure}
        679 \begin{table}
        680 \caption{Second table}
        681 \end{table}

\section* Here, we try a starred section, with its entry in the table of contents. You can try several
\mtcaddsection solutions (good or bad).

682 \section*{Second section, starred}
683 \index{section!starred}
684 %% UNCOMMENT ONE AND ONLY ONE OF THE 4 FOLLOWING LINES
685 \mtcaddsection[Second section, starred] % OK
686 %% \mtcaddsection[] % BAD
687 %% \mtcaddsection[~] % produces a (strange) correct result.
688 %% \mtcaddsection % BAD
689 %%%
690 \index{tests}
691
692 This is a starred section; you can test here variations on
693 the \verb|\mtcaddsection| command. Just uncomment one (and

```

```

694 only one) of the \verb|\mtcaddsection| commands after
695 \verb|\section*| in the source code of \texttt{mtc-add.tex}.
696 For each case, look at the \index{Table of Contents}Table of Contents
697 and at this section.
698 \index{a}\index{added}\index{after}\index{also}\index{and}%
699 \index{at}\index{can}\index{case}\index{section}%
700 \index{code}\index{command}\index{commands}%
701 \index{Contents}\index{each}\index{entries}\index{For}%
702 \index{here}\index{I}\index{in}\index{index}\index{is}%
703 \index{Just}\index{just}\index{look}\index{lot}%
704 \index{of}\index{on}\index{one}\index{only}\index{source}%
705 \index{starred}\index{Table}\index{test}\index{the}%
706 \index{This}\index{this}\index{to}\index{uncomment}%
707 \index{variations}\index{you}%
708 I also added a lot of index entries, just to test.
709
710 \section{Third section}
711 \index{section!normal}
712 \secttoc \mtcskip \sectlof \mtcskip \sectlot
713 \subsection{Third subsection}
714
715 \begin{figure}
716 \caption{Third figure}
717 \end{figure}
718 \begin{table}
719 \caption{Third table}
720 \end{table}
721
722 \subsection{Fourth subsection}
723
724 \begin{figure}
725 \caption{Fourth figure}
726 \end{figure}
727 \begin{table}
728 \caption{Fourth table}
729 \end{table}
730
731 \subsubsection{Even a sub-sub-section!}
732 \subsubsection{And yet another one}
733
734 \part{Part~2}
735 \parttoc \mtcskip \partlof \mtcskip \partlot
736
737 \section{Fourth section}
738 \index{section!normal}
739 \secttoc \mtcskip \sectlof \mtcskip \sectlot
740 \subsection{Fifth subsection}
741
742 \begin{figure}[tp]
743 \caption{Fifth figure}
744 \end{figure}
745 \begin{table}[tp]
746 \caption{Fifth table}
747 \end{table}

```

```

748
749 \subsection{Sixth subsection}
750 A small nice citation from~\cite{dark}:\
751 \index{small}\index{citation}\index{nice}\index{A}%
752 \index{a}\index{and}\index{bird}\index{But}%
753 \index{cannot}\index{claim}\index{great}\index{he}%
754 \index{I}\index{imagine}\index{it}\index{know}%
755 \index{land}\index{on}\index{once}\index{that}%
756 \index{to}\index{tree}\index{would}\index{yes}%
757 A bird cannot land once on a great tree and claim to know it.
758 But I imagine that he would, yes.\
759 \hbox{}\hfill
760 Iain~M.~\textsc{Banks} (1993), \textsl{Against a dark background.}%
761 \index{Iain}\index{Banks}\index{Against}%
762 \index{dark}\index{background}
763
764 \begin{figure}[tp]
765 \caption{Sixth figure}
766 \end{figure}
767 \begin{table}
768 \caption{Sixth table}
769 \end{table}
770
771 \section*{Fifth section, starred}
772 \index{section!starred}
773 %% UNCOMMENT ONE AND ONLY ONE OF THE 4 FOLLOWING LINES
774 \mtcaddsection[Fifth section, starred] % OK
775 %% \mtcaddsection[] % OK
776 %% \mtcaddsection[~] % produces a (strange) correct result.
777 %% \mtcaddsection % OK
778 %%%
779 \index{tests}
780
781 This is a starred section; you can test here variations on
782 the \verb|\mtcaddsection| command. Just uncomment one (and
783 only one) of the \verb|\mtcaddsection| commands after
784 \verb|\section*| in the source code of \texttt{mtc-add.tex}.
785 For each case, look at the \index{Table of Contents}Table of Contents
786 and at this section.\index{a}%
787 \index{added}\index{after}\index{also}\index{and}%
788 \index{at}\index{can}\index{case}\index{section}%
789 \index{code}\index{command}\index{commands}\index{Contents}%
790 \index{each}\index{entries}\index{For}\index{here}%
791 \index{I}\index{in}\index{index}\index{is}%
792 \index{Just}\index{just}\index{look}\index{lot}%
793 \index{of}\index{on}\index{one}\index{only}%
794 \index{source}\index{starred}\index{Table}\index{test}%
795 \index{the}\index{This}\index{this}\index{to}%
796 \index{uncomment}\index{variations}\index{you}%
797 I also added a lot of index entries, just to test.
798
799 \section{Sixth section}
800 \index{section!normal}
801 \secttoc \mtcskip \sectlof \mtcskip \sectlot

```

```

802 \subsection{Seventh subsection}
803
804 \begin{figure}
805 \caption{Seventh figure}
806 \end{figure}
807 \begin{table}
808 \caption{Seventh table}
809 \end{table}
810
811 \subsection{Eighth subsection}
812
813 \begin{figure}
814 \caption{Eighth figure}
815 \end{figure}
816 \begin{table}
817 \caption{Eighth table}
818 \end{table}

```

`\bibliographystyle` The bibliography: as we want an entry for it in the table of contents, we use the `tocbibind` package [366] and a correction with `\adjuststc`:

```

819 \nocite*
820 \def\noopsort#1{\relax}
821 \bibliographystyle{plain}
822 \bibliography{mtc-add}
823 \adjuststc

```

`\printindex` The index: as we want an entry for it in the table of contents, we use the `tocbibind` package [366] and a correction with `\mtcfixindex`:

```

824 \printindex
825 \mtcfixindex % use this OR the 3 following lines
826 %% \addcontentsline{lof}{xsect}{}
827 %% \addcontentsline{lot}{xsect}{}
828 %% \mtcaddsection
829
830 \appendix
831 \section{App.~1}
832 \index{section!appendix}
833 \secttoc \mtcskip \sectlof \mtcskip \sectlot
834 \subsection{Ninth subsection}
835
836 \begin{figure}
837 \caption{Ninth figure}
838 \end{figure}
839 \begin{table}
840 \caption{Ninth table}
841 \end{table}
842
843 \subsection{Tenth subsection}
844
845 \begin{figure}

```



```

846 \caption{Tenth figure}
847 \end{figure}
848 \begin{table}
849 \caption{Tenth table}
850 \end{table}
851
852 \section{App.~2}
853 \index{section!appendix}
854 %% contains no tables but asks for a sectlot! No sectlot printed.
855 \secttoc \mtcskip \sectlof \mtcskip \sectlot
856 \subsection{Eleventh subsection}
857
858 \begin{figure}
859 \caption{Eleventh figure}
860 \end{figure}
861 \begin{figure}
862 \caption{Twelfth figure}
863 \end{figure}
864
865 \subsection{Twelfth subsection}
866
867 \begin{figure}
868 \caption{Thirteenth figure}
869 \end{figure}
870 \begin{figure}
871 \caption{Fourteenth figure}
872 \end{figure}
873
874 \end{document}
875 </mtc – ads>

```

4.6 The mtc-amm.tex document file

`\dominitoc` This example shows the use of the `appendices` environment in a memoir class document when the `minitoc` package is loaded. First, the preamble:

`\tableofcontents`

`\adjustmtc`

`\minitoc`

```

876 (*mtc – amm)
877 \documentclass[oneside]{memoir}
878 \ProvidesFile{mtc-amm.tex}%
879 [2007/06/29]
880 \usepackage{lipsum} % filling text
881 \usepackage{hyperref}
882 \usepackage{memhfixc}
883 \usepackage[tight]{minitoc}

```

```

884 \begin{document}
885 \dominitoc \tableofcontents
886 \adjustmtc
887 \chapter{First chapter}
888 \minitoc
889 \lipsum[1]
890 \section{First section}
891 \lipsum[2]

```

`appendices` The `appendices` are set in an `appendices` environment; we can add an entry in the TOC with `\addappheadtotoc` (a command from the memoir class):

`\addappheadtotoc`

`\chapter`

`\minitoc`

<pre> 892 \begin{appendices} 893 \addappheadtotoc 894 \adjustmtc %correction! 895 \chapter{Afterthoughts} 896 \minitoc 897 \lipsum[3] 898 Afterthoughts appendix 899 \section{Further remarks} 900 \lipsum[4] 901 \chapter{Last wills} 902 \minitoc 903 \section{Testament} 904 \lipsum[5] </pre>	<pre> 905 \end{appendices} 906 \chapter{Conclusion} 907 \minitoc 908 \section{Bye} 909 \lipsum[6] 910 \chapter{Back from Hell} 911 \minitoc 912 \section{Not dead yet!} 913 \lipsum[7] 914 \section{I will survive} 915 \lipsum[8] 916 \end{document} 917 \</mtc – amm> </pre>
---	--

4.7 The mtc-apx.tex document file

The mtc-apx.tex document file is described in section 2.25 on page 66.

4.8 The mtc-art.tex document file

`\stcindent` This is a basic document using the minitoc package. It contains sections but no chapters, so it must use an article-like document class. You should work on a *copy* of this file and can alter its preamble and its contents to make experiments with parameters. A typical preamble follows:

```

918 \<*mtc – art>
919 %% mtc-art.tex
920 %% This file contains a set of tests for the minitoc.sty version #55
921 %% package. You can alter most of parameters to test.
922 %% article (\section must be defined)
923 \documentclass[12pt,a4paper]{article}
924 \ProvidesFile{mtc-art.tex}%
925 [2007/06/06]
926 \usepackage{lipsum} % provides filling text
927 %% \usepackage{hyperref} % If used, load it BEFORE minitoc
928 \usepackage[tight,insection]{minitoc}
929 \setcounter{secnumdepth}{5} % depth of numbering of sectioning commands
930 \setcounter{tocdepth}{3} % depth of table of contents
931 \setlength{\stcindent}{24pt} % indentation of secttocs, default
932 %% % font for secttocs, default
933 \renewcommand{\stcfont}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}%
934 %% % font for secttocs, subsections
935 %% \renewcommand{\stcSSfont}{\small\sffamily}%
936 %% % you can make experiments with
937 %% % \stcSSfont, \stcPfont and \stcSPfont
938 %% % but it is ‘fontomania’...
939 \raggedbottom % or \flushbottom, at your choice

```

If you want to use sections numbered in each part (the section number restarts to 1 at the beginning of each part), uncomment the 3 lines of code below. This demonstrates that the numbering of the secttoc files is independent on the numbering of the sections (it is absolute).

```
940%% TEST: uncomment the next line to test
941%% resetting section number in each part
942%% \makeatletter \@addtoreset{section}{part} \makeatother
943%% END TEST
```

We begin the body of the document. You can still alter some parameters (presence or absence of rules and page numbers in the mini-tables):

```
944 \begin{document}
```

```
\dosecttoc The preparation commands, with their optional argument if necessary:
\dosectlof
\dosectlot 945 \dosecttoc
\doparttoc 946 \dosectlof[c] % center titles of the sectlofs
\dopartlof 947 \dosectlot
\dosectlot 948 \doparttoc % test of parttoc/partlof stuff
          949 \dopartlof % added in version #15
          950 \dopartlot % added in version #15
```

```
\faketableofcontents It is necessary to create the contents files; use the “fake” version to not print.
\fakeistoffigures
\fakeistoftables 951 \faketableofcontents % or \tableofcontents
                 952 \fakeistoffigures % to check compatibility
                 953 \fakeistoftables % to check compatibility
```

```
\part There is the text of the document, with its sectionning commands; we define a part, with a
\parttoc parttoc, a partlof (with the title on the right) and a parttoc:
\partlof
\partlot 954 \part{First Part} \parttoc \partlof[r] \partlot
```

```
\section A section, in two columns mode, with a secttoc (title on the right), and a sectlof; this section
\secttoc contains subsections to make a non-empty secttoc but no figures (to detect an empty sectlof).
\sectlof
\mtcskip 955 \twocolumn\sloppy % the secttoc in twocolumn layout is ugly,
          956 % but works. Ideas to make it better?
          957 \section{AAAAA} % a section with a lot of sections
          958 \secttoc[r] % secttoc title on the right
          959 \mtcskip \sectlof %ADDED
          960 \lipsum[1]
          961 \subsection{S1}
          962 \lipsum[2]
          963 \subsection{S2}
          964 \lipsum[3]
          965 \subsection{S3}
```

```

966 \lipsum[4]
967 \subsection*{S4}
968 %% \addcontentsline{toc}{starsubsection}{*S4*}

```

A lot of subsections:

<pre> 969 \lipsum[5] 970 \subsection{S5} 971 \lipsum[6] 972 \subsection{S6} 973 \lipsum[7] 974 \subsection{S7} 975 \lipsum[8] 976 \subsection{S8} 977 \lipsum[9] 978 \subsection{S9} 979 \lipsum[10] 980 \subsection{S10} 981 \lipsum[11] 982 \subsection{S11} 983 \lipsum[12] 984 \subsection{S12} 985 \lipsum[13] 986 \subsection{S13} 987 \lipsum[14] 988 \subsection{S14} 989 \lipsum[15] 990 \subsection{S15} 991 \lipsum[16] 992 \subsection{S16} 993 \lipsum[17] 994 \subsection{S17} 995 \lipsum[18] </pre>	<pre> 996 \subsection{S18} 997 \lipsum[19] 998 \subsection{S19} 999 \lipsum[20] 1000 \subsection{S20} 1001 \lipsum[21] 1002 \subsection{S21} 1003 \lipsum[22] 1004 \subsection{S22} 1005 \lipsum[23] 1006 \subsection{S23} 1007 \lipsum[24] 1008 \subsection{S24} 1009 \lipsum[25] 1010 \subsection{S25} 1011 \lipsum[26] 1012 \subsection{S26} 1013 \lipsum[27] 1014 \subsection{S27} 1015 \lipsum[28] 1016 \subsection{S28} 1017 \lipsum[29] 1018 \subsection{S29} 1019 \lipsum[30] 1020 \subsection{S30} 1021 \lipsum[31] </pre>
---	---

<pre> \FloatBarrier \section* \mtcaddsection \sectlof \sectlot </pre>	<p>We return to the one column mode. Then a section with a secttoc and a sectlof (there are subsections and figures). The insection package option should ensure that floating objects (like figures) do not drift outside their section.</p> <pre> 1022 \onecolumn\fussy % back to one column 1023 \section{BBBBB} 1024 \secttoc 1025 \mtcskip % put some skip here 1026 \sectlof % a sectlof 1027 \lipsum[32] 1028 \subsection{T1} 1029 \lipsum[33] 1030 \begin{figure}[t] % tests compatibility with floating bodies 1031 \setlength{\unitlength}{1mm} 1032 \begin{picture}(100,50) 1033 \end{picture} 1034 \caption{F1} % (I have not tested tables, but it is similar) 1035 \end{figure} </pre>
---	---

```

1036 \FloatBarrier
1037 \subsubsection[t1]{TT1} % tests optional arg. of a sectioning command
1038 \lipsum[34]
1039 \paragraph{TTT1}
1040 \lipsum[35]
1041 \subparagraph{TTTT1}
1042 \lipsum[36]
1043 \begin{figure}[t]
1044 \setlength{\unitlength}{1mm}
1045 \begin{picture}(100,50)
1046 \end{picture}
1047 \caption[f2]{F2} % tests optional arg. of a caption
1048 \end{figure}
1049 \FloatBarrier
1050 \subsection{T2}
1051 \lipsum[37]
1052 \section*{CCCCC} % tests a pseudo-section. should have no secttoc
1053 %% \addstarredsection{CCCCC}
1054 \mtcaddsection[CCCCC]
1055 \secttoc \mtcskip \sectlof %ADDED
1056 \lipsum[38]
1057 \subsection{U1}
1058 \lipsum[39]
1059 \subsubsection{UU1}
1060 \lipsum[40]
1061 \paragraph{UUU1}
1062 \lipsum[41]
1063 \subparagraph{UUUU1}
1064 \lipsum[42]
1065 \subsection{U2}
1066 \lipsum[43]
1067 \part{Second Part}
1068 \parttoc
1069 \partlof[c]
1070 \partlot
1071 %% % the following section should have no secttoc,
1072 \section{DDDDD} % but if you uncomment \secttoc,
1073 %% \secttoc
1074 \mtcskip \sectlof %ADDED
1075 % % the secttoc appears
1076 \lipsum[44]
1077 \subsection{V1}
1078 \lipsum[45]
1079 \subsubsection{VV1}
1080 \lipsum[46]
1081 \paragraph{VVV1}
1082 \lipsum[47]
1083 \subparagraph{VVVV1}
1084 \lipsum[48]
1085 \begin{figure}[t] % tests compatibility with floating bodies
1086 \setlength{\unitlength}{1mm}
1087 \begin{picture}(100,50)
1088 \end{picture}
1089 \caption{F3} % (I have not tested tables, but it is similar)

```

```

1090 \end{figure}
1091 \FloatBarrier
1092 \lipsum[49]
1093 \subsection{V2}
1094 \lipsum[50]

\mtcskip We change the depth of the secttocs, inside a local group (a pair of braces):
\section
\chapter 1095 \section{EEEEEE} % this section should have a secttoc
\secttoc 1096 {% % left brace, see below
\sectlof 1097 \setcounter{secttocdepth}{3} % depth of sect table of contents;
\sectlot 1098 % try with different values.
\FloatBarrier 1099 \secttoc
\part 1100 \mtcskip \sectlof %ADDED
\parttoc 1101 } % right brace
\parttoc 1102 %% this pair of braces is used to keep local the change
\partlof 1103 %% on secttocdepth.
\partlot 1104 \lipsum[51]
1105 \subsection{W1} % with the given depth
1106 \lipsum[52]
1107 \subsubsection{WW1}
1108 \lipsum[53]
1109 \paragraph{WWW1}
1110 \lipsum[54]
1111 \begin{figure}[t] % tests compatibility with floating bodies
1112 \setlength{\unitlength}{1mm}
1113 \begin{picture}(100,50)
1114 \end{picture}
1115 \caption{F4} % (I have not tested tables, but it is similar)
1116 \end{figure}
1117 \FloatBarrier
1118 bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla
1119 \subparagraph{WWW1}
1120 \lipsum[55]
1121 \subsection{W2}
1122 \lipsum[56]
1123 \chapter*{}
1124 \part{Appendices}
1125 \parttoc
1126 \mtcskip
1127 \partlof
1128 \mtcskip
1129 \partlot
1130 \FloatBarrier
1131 \appendix
1132 \section{Comments}
1133 \lipsum[57]
1134 \secttoc
1135 \mtcskip \sectlof %ADDED
1136 \subsection{C1}
1137 \lipsum[58]
1138 \subsection{C2}
1139 \lipsum[59]

```

```

1140 \subsection{C3}
1141 \lipsum[60]
1142 \begin{figure}[hb]           % tests compatibility with floating bodies
1143 \setlength{\unitlength}{1mm}
1144 \begin{picture}(100,50)
1145 \end{picture}
1146 \caption{F5}                % (I have not tested tables, but it is similar)
1147 \end{figure}
1148 \FloatBarrier
1149 \subsection{C4}
1150 \lipsum[61]
1151 \FloatBarrier
1152 \section{Evolution}
1153 \sectoc
1154 \sectlof % empty
1155 \sectlot % empty
1156 \lipsum[62]
1157 \subsection{D1}
1158 \lipsum[63]
1159 \subsection{D2}
1160 \lipsum[64]
1161 \subsection{D3}
1162 \lipsum[65]
1163 \subsection{D4}
1164 \lipsum[66]
1165 \end{document}
1166 </mtc - art>

```

4.9 The mtc-bk.tex document file

`\setcounter` This is a basic document using the minitoc package. It contains chapters, so it must use a
`\mtcindent` book-like or report-like document class. You should work on a *copy* of this file and can
`\mtcfont` alter its preamble and its contents to make experiments with parameters. A typical preamble
`\mtcSfont` follows:
`\mtcSSfont`

```

1167 <*mtc - bk>
1168 %%%%%%%%%%%%%%% A example file (differs from previous versions)
1169 % mtc-bk.tex
1170 % This file contains a set of tests for the minitoc.sty version #55
1171 % package file. You can alter most of parameters to test.
1172 % book/report (\chapter must be defined).
1173 % You can use a copy of this file to play with minitoc
1174 % commands and parameters.
1175 \documentclass[12pt,a4paper]{report} % the report class uses less pages
1176 % \documentclass[12pt,a4paper]{book}
1177 \ProvidesFile{mtc-bk.tex}%
1178 [2007/06/06]
1179 \usepackage{lipsum} % provides filling text
1180 % \usepackage{hyperref} % if used, load it BEFORE minitoc
1181 % \usepackage{mtccoeff}

```

```

1182 \usepackage[tight]{minitoc} % tight option make shorter mini-tables
1183 \setcounter{secnumdepth}{5} % depth of numbering of sectioning commands
1184 \setcounter{tocdepth}{3}      % depth of table of contents
1185 \setlength{\mtcindent}{24pt}  % indentation of minitocs, default
1186 \renewcommand{\mtcfont}{\small\rm} % font for minitocs, default
1187 \renewcommand{\mtcSfont}{\small\bf} % font for minitocs, sections, default
1188 %% \renewcommand{\mtcSSfont}{\small\sf} % font for minitocs, subsections
1189 %% you can make experiments with \mtcSSfont, \mtcPfont and \mtcSPfont
1190 %% but it is ‘fontomania’...
1191 \raggedbottom                  % or \flushbottom, at your choice

```

If you want to use chapters numbered in each part (the chapter number restarts to 1 at the beginning of each part), uncomment the 3 lines of code below. This demonstrates that the numbering of the minitoc files is independent on the numbering of the chapters (it is absolute).

```

1192 %% TEST: uncomment the 3 next lines to test
1193 %% resetting chapter number in each part
1194 %% \makeatletter
1195 %% \@addtoreset{chapter}{part}
1196 %% \makeatother
1197 %% END TEST

```

`\mtcpagenumbers` We begin the body of the document. You can still alter some parameters (presence or absence of rules and page numbers in the mini-tables):

```

1198 \begin{document}
1199 \mtcpagenumbers
1200 \noptcrule
1201 %% \nomtcrule                % suppresses minitoc rules
1202 %% \nomtcpagenumbers         % suppresses minitoc page numbers
1203 %% \nomlfpagenumbers         % ----- minilof ----
1204 %% \nomltpagenumbers         % ----- minilot ----

```

`\dominitoc` The preparation commands, with their optional argument if necessary:

```

\dominilof
\dominilot 1205 \dominitoc
\doparttoc 1206 \dominilof[c] % centers title of minilof's
\dopartlof 1207 \dominilot
\dopartlot 1208 \doparttoc    % test of parttoc/partlof stuff
           1209 \dopartlof    % added in version #15
           1210 \dopartlot     % added in version #15

```

`\tableofcontents` It is necessary to create the contents files; use the “fake” version to not print.

```

\listoffigures
\fake listoftables 1211 \tableofcontents % or \faketableofcontents
                  1212 \listoffigures   % or \fake listoffigures
                  1213 \fake listoftables % or \listoftables

```


Uncomment the following line if the first chapter must be numbered “0”:

```
1214 %% \addtocounter{chapter}{-1} % to begin with Chapter 0
```

```
\part There is the text of the document, with its sectionning commands:
\parttoc
\partlof 1215 \part{First Part}
\partlot 1216 \parttoc \partlof[r] \partlot[r]
```

A chapter, in two column mode, with a minitoc (title on the right):

```
1217 \twocolumn\sloppy           % the minitoc in twocolumn layout is ugly,
1218 \chapter{AAAAA}             % a chapter with a lot of sections
1219 \minitoc[r]                 % minitoc title on the right
1220 \lipsum[1]
1221 \section{S1}
1222 \lipsum[2]
1223 \section{S2}
1224 \lipsum[3]
1225 \section{S3}
1226 \lipsum[4]
```

```
\section* A starred section; we want an entry in the TOC, so we add it the normal way:
\addtocontentsline
1227 \section*{S4}
1228 \addcontentsline{toc}{section}{\protect\numberline{}{S4}}
```

A lot of subsections:

1229 \lipsum[5]	1249 \lipsum[15]
1230 \section{S5}	1250 \section{S15}
1231 \lipsum[6]	1251 \lipsum[16]
1232 \section{S6}	1252 \section{S16}
1233 \lipsum[6]	1253 \lipsum[17]
1234 \section{S7}	1254 \section{S17}
1235 \lipsum[7]	1255 \lipsum[18]
1236 \section{S8}	1256 \section{S18}
1237 \lipsum[9]	1257 \lipsum[19]
1238 \section{S9}	1258 \section{S19}
1239 \lipsum[10]	1259 \lipsum[20]
1240 \section{S10}	1260 \section{S20}
1241 \lipsum[11]	1261 \lipsum[21]
1242 \section{S11}	1262 \section{S21}
1243 \lipsum[12]	1263 \lipsum[22]
1244 \section{S12}	1264 \section{S22}
1245 \lipsum[13]	1265 \lipsum[23]
1246 \section{S13}	1266 \section{S23}
1247 \lipsum[14]	1267 \lipsum[24]
1248 \section{S14}	1268 \section{S24}

1269 \lipsum[25]	1278 \section{S29}
1270 \section{S25}	1279 \lipsum[30]
1271 \lipsum[26]	1280 \section{S30}
1272 \section{S26}	1281 \lipsum[31]
1273 \lipsum[27]	1282 \subsection{SS1}
1274 \section{S27}	1283 \lipsum[32]
1275 \lipsum[28]	1284 \section{S31}
1276 \section{S28}	1285 \lipsum[33]
1277 \lipsum[29]	

\chapter We return to one column mode. A new chapter, with a minitoc, a minilof and a minilot:

```

\minitoc
\minilof 1286 \onecolumn\fussy           % back to one column
\minilot 1287 \chapter{BBBBB}
\mtcskip 1288 \minitoc
1289 \mtcskip                           % put some skip here
1290 \minilof                           % a minilof
1291 \mtcskip                           % put some skip here
1292 \minilot                           % a minilot
1293 \lipsum[34]
1294 \section{T1}
1295 \lipsum[35]
1296 \begin{figure}[t]                   % tests compatibility with floating bodies
1297 \setlength{\unitlength}{1mm}
1298 \begin{picture}(100,50)
1299 \end{picture}
1300 \caption{F1}                       % (tables are similar)
1301 \end{figure}
1302 \begin{table}[b]                   % tests compatibility with floating bodies
1303 \setlength{\unitlength}{1mm}
1304 \begin{picture}(100,50)
1305 \end{picture}
1306 \caption{T1}                       % (tables are similar)
1307 \end{table}
1308 \clearpage
1309 \subsection[t1]{T1}                % tests optional arg. of a sectionning command
1310 \lipsum[36]
1311 \subsubsection{TTT1}
1312 \lipsum[37]
1313 \paragraph{TTTT1}
1314 \lipsum[38]
1315 \begin{figure}
1316 \setlength{\unitlength}{1mm}
1317 \begin{picture}(100,50)
1318 \end{picture}
1319 \caption[f2]{F2}                   % tests optional arg. of a caption
1320 \end{figure}
1321 \section{T2}
1322 \lipsum[39]
```

```

\chapter* A starred chapter with an entry added in the TOC; all subordinate (lower) sectionning
\addstarredchapter commands must also be starred.
\addcontentsline
\section* 1323 \chapter*{CCCCC} % tests a pseudo-chapter; could have a minitoc.
\paragraph* 1324 \addstarredchapter{CCCCC}
\part 1325 \lipsum[40]
\parttoc 1326 \section*{U1}
\partlof 1327 \addcontentsline{toc}{section}{U1}
1328 \lipsum[41]
1329 \subsection*{UU1}
1330 \addcontentsline{toc}{subsection}{UU1}
1331 \lipsum[42]
1332 \subsubsection*{UUU1}
1333 \addcontentsline{toc}{subsubsection}{UUU1}
1334 \lipsum[43]
1335 \paragraph*{UUUU1}
1336 \addcontentsline{toc}{paragraph}{UUUU1}
1337 \lipsum[44]
1338 \section*{U2}
1339 \addcontentsline{toc}{section}{U2}
1340 \lipsum[45]
1341 \part{Second Part}
1342 \parttoc
1343 \partlof[c]

```

This chapter has no minitoc, but if you uncomment `\minitoc`, the minitoc will appear.

```

1344 %% % the following chapter should have no minitoc,
1345 \chapter{DDDDD} % but if you uncomment \minitoc,
1346 %% \minitoc % the minitoc appears
1347 \lipsum[46]
1348 \section{V1}
1349 \lipsum[47]
1350 \subsection{VV1}
1351 \lipsum[48]
1352 \subsubsection{VVV1}
1353 \lipsum[49]
1354 \paragraph{VVVV1}
1355 \lipsum[50]
1356 \begin{figure}[t] % tests compatibility with floating bodies
1357 \setlength{\unitlength}{1mm}
1358 \begin{picture}(100,50)
1359 \end{picture}
1360 \caption{F3} % (I have not tested tables, but it is similar)
1361 \end{figure}
1362 \lipsum[51]
1363 \section{V2}
1364 \lipsum[52]

```

We change the depth of the minitocs, inside a local group (a pair of braces):

```

1365 \chapter{EEEEEE} % this chapter should have a minitoc

```

```

1366 {%                                % left brace, see below
1367 \setcounter{minitocdepth}{3}      % depth of mini table of contents;
1368                                  % try with different values.
1369 \minitoc
1370 }                                % right brace
1371 %% this pair of braces is used to keep local the change
1372 %% on minitocdepth.
1373 \lipsum[53]
1374 \section{W1}                        % with the given depth
1375 \lipsum[54]
1376 \subsection{WW1}
1377 \lipsum[55]
1378 \subsubsection{WWW1}
1379 \lipsum[56]
1380 \begin{figure}[t]                  % tests compatibility with floating bodies
1381 \setlength{\unitlength}{1mm}
1382 \begin{picture}(100,50)
1383 \end{picture}
1384 \caption{F4}                        % (I have not tested tables here, but it is similar)
1385 \end{figure}
1386 \lipsum[57]
1387 \paragraph{WWWW1}
1388 \lipsum[58]
1389 \subparagraph{WWWWW1}
1390 \lipsum[59]
1391 \section{W2}
1392 \lipsum[60]

```

`\appendix` Here, we encounter a classical problem: to make a local table of contents for a set of appendices, while hiding these entries in the main table of contents. First, we create a part, with its

`\part`

`\parttoc` parttoc:

```

1393 \appendix
1394 \part{Appendices}
1395 \parttoc

```

`mtchideinmaintoc` Then, we begin a `mtchideinmaintoc` environment, with the hiding depth as optional

`\chapter` argument:

`\minitoc`

```

1396 \begin{mtchideinmaintoc}[-1]
1397 \chapter{Comments}
1398 \minitoc
1399 \section{C1}
1400 \lipsum[61]
1401 \section{C2}
1402 \lipsum[62]
1403 \section{C3}
1404 \lipsum[63]
1405 \begin{figure}[t]                  % tests compatibility with floating bodies
1406 \setlength{\unitlength}{1mm}
1407 \begin{picture}(100,50)
1408 \end{picture}

```

```

1409 \caption{F5}           % (I have not tested tables, but it is similar)
1410 \end{figure}
1411 \section{C4}
1412 \chapter{Evolution}
1413 \minitoc
1414 \minilof %Empty => invisible
1415 \minilot %Empty => invisible
1416 \section{D1}
1417 \lipsum[64]
1418 \section{D2}
1419 \lipsum[65]
1420 \section{D3}
1421 \lipsum[66]
1422 \section{D4}

```

`mtchideinmaintoc` We terminate the part by adding a marker in the TOC file, then we must close this `\addtocontents` `mtchideinmaintoc` environment:

```

1423 %% this line closes the omitted part
1424 \addtocontents{toc}{\protect\partbegin}
1425 %% this line restore the depth in the main TOC
1426 \end{mtchideinmaintoc}
1427 \lipsum[67]
1428 \end{document}
1429 </mtc - bk>

```

4.10 The `mtc-bo.tex` document file

This document shows the use of the `minitoc` package in a document using a two column layout for some portions and the `tocloft` package [363]. The aim is to begin a chapter with a special head and a preliminary block containing a `minitoc` and some indications, on two columns. The preamble loads the `geometry` package [343], which defines the global page layout, the `multicol` package [255], the `color` package [107], because we want a colored background for the `minitoc`, the `tocloft` package [363], to change some parameters of the `minitoc`, and, at least, the `minitoc` package itself:

```

1430 <*mtc - bo>
1431 \documentclass[10pt]{book}
1432 \ProvidesFile{mtc-bo.tex}%
1433 [2007/04/17]
1434 \usepackage[paperwidth=8.5in,paperheight=11in,%
1435             lmargin=1.25in,rmargin=1.25in,tmargin=1in,bmargin=1in]{geometry}
1436 \usepackage{multicol}
1437 \usepackage{color}

```

```

\setlength We use the tocloft package and its commands to set the indentations in the TOC and the
\addtolength minitoc:
\cftsecindent
\cftsecnumwidth 1438 \usepackage{tocloft}
\cftsubsecindent 1439 \setlength{\cftsecindent}{0cm}
\cftsubsecnumwidth 1440 \setlength{\cftsecnumwidth}{15 pt}
\cftsubsubsecindent 1441 \setlength{\cftsubsecindent}{\cftsecindent}
\cftsubsubsecnumwidth 1442 \addtolength{\cftsubsecindent}{\cftsecnumwidth}
1443 \setlength{\cftsubsecnumwidth}{20 pt}
1444 \setlength{\cftsubsubsecindent}{\cftsubsecindent}
1445 \addtolength{\cftsubsubsecindent}{\cftsubsecnumwidth}

\cftpagenumbersoff Note that if we want to suppress the page numbers in the minitoc, we must use the commands
from tocloft:

```

```

1446 \cftpagenumbersoff{sec}
1447 \cftpagenumbersoff{subsec}

```

```

\mtcindent We load the minitoc package and change the indentation, suppress the rules and change the
\nomtcrule minitoc title. The hyperref package [305] can also be loaded (after minitoc).
\nomtcpagenumbers
\mtctitle 1448 \usepackage[francais,tight]{minitoc}
1449 \usepackage{hyperref}
1450 \setlength{\mtcindent}{0pt}
1451 \nomtcrule % pas de filets en haut et en bas de la mini-tdm
1452 \nomtcpagenumbers % pas de numéro de pages
1453 % (non fonctionnel avec tocloft)
1454 \renewcommand{\mtctitle}{Contenu de la rencontre}

```

We load also some packages for the french language (some are local):

```

1455 \usepackage[francais]{babel}
1456 \usepackage{franc, frnew}
1457 \usepackage[T1]{fontenc}
1458 \usepackage[isolatin]{inputenc}
1459 \usepackage{mypatches}

```

This code redefines the format of the chapter head:

```

1460 %%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%
1461 % MACRO POUR AVOIR LE MOT « RENCONTRE » AU LIEU DE « CHAPITRE » %
1462 % Sans saut de ligne (modification du code qui se trouve dans la FAQ) %
1463 %%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%
1464 \makeatletter
1465 \def\@makechapterhead#1{%
1466   \vspace*{10\p@}%
1467   {\parindent \z@ \raggedleft \normalfont
1468     \interlinepenalty\@M
1469     \ifnum \c@secnumdepth >\m@ne

```

```

1470 \Huge\bfseries\sffamily Rencontre \thechapter\% \quad
1471 \fi
1472 \Huge\bfseries\sffamily #1\par\nobreak
1473 \vskip 10\p@
1474 }}
1475 \def\@makeschapterhead#1{%
1476 \vspace*{10\p@}%
1477 {\parindent \z@ \raggedright \normalfont
1478 \interlinepenalty\@M
1479 \Huge \sffamily #1\par\nobreak
1480 \vskip 10\p@
1481 }} \makeatother

```

We define an environment (pageUn) for the block placed at the beginning of a chapter. This block contains a minitoc, then a sequence of informations given by the 6 parameters of the environment. The block uses a multicols environment to typeset on two columns. Some decorations are added: rules, colored background for the minitoc.

```

1482 %%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%
1483 %: ENVIRONNEMENT POUR LA PAGE 1 DES RENCONTRES %
1484 %%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%
1485 % param1: date de la rencontre
1486 % param2: nombre de périodes
1487 % param3: liste des documents distribués
1488 % param4: messages
1489 % param5: lecture
1490 % param6: exercices
1491 %%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%
1492 \newenvironment{pageUn}[6]{%
1493 \parindent = 0.0in
1494 \rule{\linewidth}{1pt}
1495 \begin{multicols}{2}
1496 {\large \bfseries Math. pour médecine nucléaire\\
1497 \textit{(#2)}}
1498 \vfill\columnbreak
1499 \raggedleft\bfseries Automne 2003\\
1500 #1
1501 \end{multicols}
1502 \vspace{-18pt}
1503 \rule{\linewidth}{1pt}
1504
1505 \setlength{\columnseprule}{.3pt}
1506 \setlength{\columnsep}{1cm}
1507 \begin{multicols}{2}%
1508
1509 %: TABLE DES MATIÈRES (col. gauche)
1510 \colorbox{cmyk}{.1,0,0,0}{%
1511 \parbox{\linewidth}{%
1512 \setcounter{minitocdepth}{3}%
1513 \minitoc%
1514 }}
1515 %\vfill \columnbreak ~ \vfill
1516

```

```

1517 \mtcskip
1518
1519 %: DOCUMENTS DISTRIBUÉS (début col. droite)
1520
1521 {\large \bfseries Documents distribués}
1522 \begin{itemize} \renewcommand{\labelitemi}{$\star$} #3 \end{itemize}
1523
1524 %: MESSAGES AUX ÉTUDIANTS
1525
1526 \vspace{12pt}{\large \bfseries Messages}
1527 \begin{itemize} \renewcommand{\labelitemi}{$\star$} #4 \end{itemize}
1528
1529 %: LECTURE
1530 \vspace{12pt}{\large \bfseries Lecture}\vspace{-6pt} \par#5 \par
1531
1532 % EXERCICES
1533 \vspace{12pt}{\large \bfseries Exercices}\vspace{-6pt}\par#6\par
1534
1535 %\newpage
1536 \end{multicols}%
1537 }
1538 %{\newpage}
1539 {\hrule}
1540
1541 %\renewcommand{\baselinestretch}{1.2} %interligne
1542
1543 %\pagestyle{empty} %pas de # de page
1544 %\parindent = 0.0in
1545 \parskip = 0.1in
1546
1547 %%%%%%%%%%%
1548 %: REDÉFINIR LES SECTIONS %
1549 %%%%%%%%%%%
1550 \renewcommand{\thesection}{\Alph{section}}
1551 \renewcommand{\thesection}{\thechapter-\Alph{section}}
1552

```

The body of the document:

```

1553 %%%%%%%%%%%
1554 %: BEGIN %
1555 %%%%%%%%%%%
1556 \begin{document}
1557 \dominitoc
1558 \faketableofcontents
1559 \chapter{Première étape (début)}
1560 %\minitoc
1561 \begin{pageUn}
1562     {%1      Date du cours
1563           lundi 25 août
1564           }
1565     {%2      Durée du cours
1566           2 périodes

```



```

1567      }
1568      {%3      Liste des documents à~distribuer
1569              \item Plan de cours
1570              \item Fiche d'identification
1571              \item Grille horaire
1572              \item Feuilles d'exercices supplémentaires
1573      }
1574      {%4      Ne pas oublier
1575              \item Acheter le livre de référence
1576              \item Apporter une disquette
1577      }
1578      {%5      Lecture
1579              Lire les pages ppp à~ppp et ppp à~ppp
1580      }
1581      {%6      Exercice
1582              Faire les exercices nnn de la page ppp
1583      }
1584 \end{pageUn}
1585
1586 %%%%%%%%%%%
1587 \section{Titre de la section} %
1588 %%%%%%%%%%%
1589
1590 Texte dans la section
1591
1592 %%
1593 \subsection{Une sous-section}
1594 %%
1595 Bla bla bla
1596
1597 %%
1598 \subsection{Une autre sous-section}
1599 %%
1600 Bla bla bla
1601
1602
1603 %%%%%%%%%%%
1604 \section{Titre d'une autre section} %
1605 %%%%%%%%%%%
1606
1607 Texte dans la section
1608
1609 %%
1610 \subsection{Une sous-section}
1611 %%
1612 Bla bla bla
1613
1614 %%
1615 \subsection{Une autre sous-section}
1616 %%
1617 Bla bla bla
1618
1619 %%%%%%%%%%%
1620 \section{Encore une autre section} %

```

```

1621 %%%%%%%%%%%%%%
1622
1623 Texte dans la section
1624
1625 \end{document}
1626 </mtc - bo>

```

4.11 The mtc-ch0.tex document file

`\dominitoc` This document shows the use of the minitoc package in a document using a starred first chapter, inducing the “Chapter Zero” problem.

`\tableofcontents`

```

1627 <*mtc - ch0>
1628 \documentclass[12pt,a4paper]{report}
1629 \ProvidesFile{mtc-ch0.tex}%
1630 [2007/01/04]
1631 \usepackage[tight,english]{minitoc}
1632 \begin{document}
1633 \dominitoc \tableofcontents

```

`\chapter*` The first chapter is starred, but contains real numbered sections. We add an entry in the TOC
`\mtcaddchapter` for this chapter and see that its sections are using “0” as chapter number:
`\minitoc`

```

1634 \chapter*{Chapter One (starred)}
1635 \mtcaddchapter[Fake chapter one]
1636 \minitoc
1637 \section{Chap 1, section 1}
1638 That's right, folks -- we're close to the release of Firefox and
1639 Thunderbird~1.0 and, just like our last 1.0~release, we want to organize
1640 worldwide parties to celebrate.
1641
1642 Thanks to Dominik 'Aeneas' Schnitzer, we have an all-new and improved
1643 Mozilla Party Webtool~2.0. You can create your own party, or sign up for
1644 one already in progress -- and, in an improvement on Webtool~1.0,
1645 organizers can now edit and update party details. The tool allows you to
1646 organize a celebration in any of 243~countries, principalities,
1647 dominions and islands around the world. Never let it be said that we do
1648 things by halves around here.
1649
1650 \subsection{Chap 1, section 1, subsection 1}
1651 That's right, folks -- we're close to the release of Firefox and
1652 Thunderbird~1.0 and, just like our last 1.0~release, we want to organize
1653 worldwide parties to celebrate.
1654
1655 Thanks to Dominik 'Aeneas' Schnitzer, we have an all-new and improved
1656 Mozilla Party Webtool~2.0. You can create your own party, or sign up for
1657 one already in progress -- and, in an improvement on Webtool~1.0,
1658 organizers can now edit and update party details. The tool allows you to
1659 organize a celebration in any of 243~countries, principalities,

```

1660 dominions and islands around the world. Never let it be said that we do
 1661 things by halves around here.

\chapter The second chapter is normal:

\minitoc

```
1662 \chapter{Chapter Two (numbered one)}
1663 \minitoc
1664 \section{Chapter 2, section 1}
1665 That's right, folks -- we're close to the release of Firefox and
1666 Thunderbird 1.0 and, just like our last 1.0~release, we want to organize
1667 worldwide parties to celebrate.
1668
1669 Thanks to Dominik 'Aeneas' Schnitzer, we have an all-new and improved
1670 Mozilla Party Webtool~2.0. You can create your own party, or sign up for
1671 one already in progress -- and, in an improvement on Webtool~1.0,
1672 organizers can now edit and update party details. The tool allows you to
1673 organize a celebration in any of 243~countries, principalities,
1674 dominions and islands around the world. Never let it be said that we do
1675 things by halves around here.
1676 \end{document}
1677 \</mtc - ch0>
```

4.12 The mtc-cri.tex document file

<pre>\mtcsetdepth This document shows the use of the minitoc package in a document with a starred part and \doarttoc starred chapters. Note the use of the adjustment commands. This example is not commented: \dominitoc just follow the insertion of the mini-tables in the mtc-cri.log file. \tableofcontents \part* 1678 (*mtc - cri) \mtcaddpart 1679 \documentclass[12pt,a4paper]% \adjustptc 1680 {report} \parttoc 1681 \ProvidesFile{mtc-cri.tex}% \chapter* 1682 [2007/01/04] \mtcaddchapter 1683 \usepackage[francais]{babel} \chapter 1684 \usepackage[T1]{fontenc} \chapter 1685 \usepackage[latin1]{inputenc} \minitoc 1686 \usepackage% \section 1687 [french2,tight]% 1688 {minitoc} 1689 1690 \mtcsetdepth{parttoc}{2} 1691 1692 \begin{document} 1693 \doarttoc 1694 \dominitoc 1695 \tableofcontents 1696 \part*{Présentation générale} 1697 \mtcaddpart[Présentation générale] 1698 \adjustptc[-2]</pre>	<pre>1699 \parttoc 1700 1701 Texte de la 1702 présentation générale\ldots 1703 1704 \chapter*{Les auteurs} 1705 \mtcaddchapter[Les auteurs] 1706 Présentation des auteurs\ldots 1707 1708 \chapter*{Les lecteurs} 1709 \mtcaddchapter[Les lecteurs] 1710 Présentation des lecteurs\ldots 1711 1712 \part{Première partie} 1713 \parttoc 1714 \chapter*{Introduction} 1715 \mtcaddchapter[Introduction] 1716 \chapter{Premier chapitre} 1717 \minitoc 1718 \section{Première section~A} 1719 \section{Deuxième section~A}</pre>
---	--

<pre> 1720 \chapter{Deuxième chapitre} 1721 \minitoc 1722 \section{Première section~B} 1723 \section{Deuxième section~B} 1724 1725 \part{Deuxième partie} 1726 \parttoc 1727 \chapter{Premier chapitre} 1728 \minitoc </pre>	<pre> 1729 \section{Première section~C} 1730 \section{Deuxième section~C} 1731 \chapter{Deuxième chapitre} 1732 \minitoc 1733 \section{Première section~D} 1734 \section{Deuxième section~D} 1735 \end{document} 1736 </mtc - cri> </pre>
--	---

4.13 The mtc-fko.tex document file

This is a document using the `scrbook` class. Without any precaution, some entries in the minitocs are not in the right font (bold sans serif) like in the main table of contents; moreover, the language of the minitoc titles is not correct because the options of the `babel` package are not transferred to the minitoc package. To solve the language problem, we just set “german” as a *global* option in the `\documentclass` command (`babel` and `minitoc` will hence use this global option).

```

1737 <*mtc - fko>
1738 \documentclass[german,a4paper,oneside]{scrbook}
1739 \ProvidesFile{mtc-fko.tex}%
1740 [2007/02/19]

```

`\mtcindent` Then we load the packages and set some parameters:

```

1741 \usepackage{babel}
1742 \usepackage[tight]{minitoc}
1743 \setlength{\mtcindent}{0pt} % optional

```

`\mtcsetfont` Then we set explicitly the fonts for the entries³ and the font of the titles of the minitocs, knowing that the font command `\sectfont` is defined in `scrbook.cls`; we change also the

`\sectfont` title for the minitocs:

`\mtcsettitle`

```

1744 \mtcsetfont{minitoc}{section}{\sectfont\small}
1745 \mtcsettitlefont{minitoc}{\sectfont\large}
1746 \mtcsettitle{minitoc}{Inhalt}

```

`\dominitoc` Then the body of the document, with a chapter (with a minitoc) containing a section. The

`\tableofcontents` section entry did not appear in bold sans serif in the original document (before the corrections).

`\chapter`

`\minitoc`

```

1747 \begin{document}
1748 \dominitoc \tableofcontents

```

³ Here we only gave the commands for the section entries in the minitocs, but analog commands may be used for lower entries.

```

1749 %
1750 \chapter{Ein serifenloses Kapitel}
1751 \minitoc % Aufruf Minitoc
1752 \section{Dieser Text ist in minitoc serifenlos}
1753 Auch der Text \glqq Inhaltsangabe\grqq\ will
1754 so wie koma es definiert.
1755 \end{document}
1756 </mtc – fko>

```

4.14 The mtc-fo1.tex document file

`\doparttoc` This document creates several copies of the same parttoc, but with different fonts (for the
`\dominitoc` chapter level entries); you can compare the results.
`\tableofcontents`

```

\part 1757 < *mtc – fo1>
1758 \documentclass{report}
1759 \ProvidesFile{mtc-fo1.tex}%
1760 [2007/01/04]
1761 \usepackage{lipsum}
1762 \usepackage{txfonts}
1763 \usepackage[tight]{minitoc}
1764 \begin{document}
1765 \doparttoc
1766 \dominitoc
1767 \tableofcontents
1768 \part{Introduction}
1769 \clearpage

```

`\parttoc` A first copy, with default fonts:

```
1770 \parttoc
```

`\mtcsetfont` A second copy, roman bold font for chapter entries:

```

\parttoc
1771 \clearpage
1772 \mtcsetfont{parttoc}{chapter}{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}
1773 \parttoc

```

`\mtcsetfont` A third copy, typewriter bold font for chapter entries:

```

\parttoc
1774 \clearpage
1775 \mtcsetfont{parttoc}{chapter}{\normalsize\ttfamily\upshape\bfseries}
1776 \parttoc

```

```

\mtcsetfont A fourth copy, not bold typewriter font for chapter entries:
\parttoc
\chapter 1777 \clearpage
\minitoc 1778 \mtcsetfont{parttoc}{*}{\normalsize\ttfamily\upshape\mdseries}
\section 1779 \parttoc
\subsection 1780 \chapter{A very short chapter}
1781 \minitoc
1782 \lipsum[1]
1783 \section{First section}
1784 \lipsum[2]
1785 \subsection{Alpha}
1786 \lipsum[3]
1787 \subsection{Beta}
1788 \lipsum[4]
1789 \section{Second section}
1790 \lipsum[5]
1791 \subsection{Gamma}
1792 \lipsum[6]
1793 \subsection{Delta}
1794 \lipsum[7]
1795 \end{document}
1796 </mtc – fo1>

```

4.15 The mtc-fo2.tex document file

This document creates several copies of the same parttoc, but with different fonts (for the chapter level entries); you can compare the results. As the fonts are not declared the same way, compare the results with those of mtc-fo1.tex (see section 4.14 on the page before).

```

1797 <*mtc – fo2>
1798 \documentclass{report}
1799 \ProvidesFile{mtc-fo2.tex}%
1800 [2007/01/04]
1801 \usepackage{lipsum}
1802 \usepackage{txfonts}
1803 \usepackage[tight]{minitoc}

```

```

\ptcfont We declare the fonts with the old method:
\ptcSSfont
\ptcSSfont 1804 \def\ptcSSfont{\ptcfont} % (subsections)
\ptcPfont 1805 \def\ptcSSfont{\ptcfont} % (subsubsections)
\ptcSPfont 1806 \def\ptcPfont{\ptcfont} % (paragraphs)
\plffont 1807 \def\ptcSPfont{\ptcfont} % (subparagraphs)
\plfSfont 1808 \def\plffont{\ptcfont} % (figures)
\pltfont 1809 \def\plfSfont{\ptcfont} % (subfigures)
\pltSfont 1810 \def\pltfont{\ptcfont} % (tables)
\doparttoc 1811 \def\pltSfont{\ptcfont} % (subtables)
\dominitoc 1812 \begin{document}
\tableofcontents
\part

```

```
1813 \doparttoc
1814 \dominitoc
1815 \tableofcontents
1816 \part{Introduction}
1817 \clearpage
```

`\parttoc` A first version of the parttoc, with the fonts defined above:

```
1818 \parttoc
1819 \clearpage
```

`\mtcsetfont` A second version of the parttoc, with chapter entries in a roman bold font:
`\parttoc`

```
1820 \mtcsetfont{parttoc}{chapter}{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}
1821 \parttoc
1822 \clearpage
```

`\mtcsetfont` A third version of the parttoc, with chapter entries in a typewriter bold font:
`\parttoc`

```
1823 \mtcsetfont{parttoc}{chapter}{\normalsize\ttfamily\upshape\bfseries}
1824 \parttoc
1825 \clearpage
```

`\mtcsetfont` A fourth version of the parttoc, with chapter entries in a non bold typewriter font:
`\parttoc`

```
1826 \mtcsetfont{parttoc}{*}{\normalsize\ttfamily\upshape\mdseries}
1827 \parttoc
1828 \chapter{A very short chapter}
1829 \minitoc
1830 \lipsum[1]
1831 \section{First section}
1832 \lipsum[2]
1833 \subsection{Alpha}
1834 \lipsum[3]
1835 \subsection{Beta}
1836 \lipsum[4]
1837 \section{Second section}
1838 \lipsum[5]
1839 \subsection{Gamma}
1840 \lipsum[6]
1841 \subsection{Delta}
1842 \lipsum[7]
1843 \end{document}
1844 </mtc - fo2>
```

4.16 The `mtc-gap.tex` document file

The `mtc-gap.tex` document file is described in section 2.44 on page 75.

4.17 The `mtc-hi1.tex` document file

The `mtc-hi1.tex` document file is described in section 2.25 on page 67.

4.18 The `mtc-hi2.tex` document file

The `mtc-hi2.tex` document file is described in section 2.25 on page 68.

4.19 The `mtc-hia.tex` document file

`\dosectlot` This document shows the use of the `minitoc` package in a document where the entries for some
`\listoftables` tables must be hidden in the main list of tables. The document uses the `article` class.

`\section`

`\sectlot`

```
1845 (*mtc - hia)
1846 \documentclass%
1847   [oneside,a4paper]{article}
1848 \ProvidesFile{mtc-hia.tex}%
1849   [2007/01/04]
1850 \usepackage{lipsum}
1851 \usepackage%
1852   [tight,insection]%
1853     {minitoc}
1854 \dosectlot
1855 \begin{document}
1856 \listoftables
```

```
1857 \section{First section}
1858 \sectlot
1859 \lipsum[1]
1860 \begin{table}[hb]
1861 \caption{My first visible table}
1862 \end{table}
1863 \lipsum[2]
1864 \begin{table}[ht]
1865 \caption{A second visible table}
1866 \end{table}
1867 \lipsum[3]
```

`\mtchideinmainlot` For the *first* hidden table, we add `\mtchideinmainlot` *before* its caption:

`\section`

`\sectlot`

```
1868 \begin{table}[hb]
1869 \mtchideinmainlot
1870 \caption{My first hidden table}
1871 \end{table}
1872 \lipsum[4-6]
1873 \begin{table}[ht]
```

```
1874 \caption{A second hidden table}
1875 \end{table}
1876 \lipsum[7]
1877 \section{Second section}
1878 \sectlot
1879 \lipsum[8]
```



`\endmtchideinmainlot` For the *last* hidden table, we add `\endmtchideinmainlot` *after* its caption:



<pre> 1880 \begin{table}[hb] 1881 \caption{My last hidden table} 1882 \endmtchideinmainlot 1883 \end{table} 1884 \lipsum[9] 1885 \begin{table}[ht] 1886 \caption{A third visible table} 1887 \end{table} </pre>	<pre> 1888 \lipsum[10] 1889 \begin{table}[hb] 1890 \caption{A fourth visible table} 1891 \end{table} 1892 \lipsum[11] 1893 \end{document} 1894 \</mtc-hia> </pre>
---	---

4.20 The `mtc-hir.tex` document file

`\dominilot` This document shows the use of the `minitoc` package in a document where the entries for some tables must be hidden in the main list of tables. The document uses the `report` class.

`\listoftables`

`\chapter`

`\minilot`

```

1895 \<mtc-hir>
1896 \documentclass[a4paper]{report}
1897 \ProvidesFile{mtc-hir.tex}%
1898 [2007/01/04]
1899 \usepackage{lipsum}
1900 \usepackage%
1901 [tight]{minitoc}
1902 \dominilot
1903 \begin{document}
1904 \listoftables
1905 \chapter{First chapter}

```

```

1906 \minilot
1907 \lipsum[1]
1908 \begin{table}[hb]
1909 \caption{My first visible table}
1910 \end{table}
1911 \lipsum[2]
1912 \begin{table}[ht]
1913 \caption{A second visible table}
1914 \end{table}
1915 \lipsum[3]

```

`\mtchideinmainlot` For the *first* hidden table, we add `\mtchideinmainlot` *before* its caption:

`\chapter`

`\minilot`

```

1916 \begin{table}[hb]
1917 \mtchideinmainlot % <--
1918 \caption{My first hidden table}
1919 \end{table}
1920 \lipsum[4-6]
1921 \begin{table}[ht]

```

```

1922 \caption{A second hidden table}
1923 \end{table}
1924 \lipsum[7]
1925 \chapter{Second chapter}
1926 \minilot
1927 \lipsum[8]

```

`\endmtchideinmainlot` For the *last* hidden table, we add `\endmtchideinmainlot` *after* its caption:



<pre> 1928 \begin{table}[hb] 1929 \caption{My last hidden table} 1930 \endmtchideinmainlot % <-- 1931 \end{table} 1932 \lipsum[9] </pre>	<pre> 1933 \begin{table}[ht] 1934 \caption{A third visible table} 1935 \end{table} 1936 \lipsum[10] 1937 \begin{table}[hb] </pre>
---	---

<pre> 1938 \caption{A fourth visible table} 1939 \end{table} 1940 \lipsum[11] </pre>	<pre> 1941 \end{document} 1942 \</mtc – hir> </pre>
--	---

4.21 The mtc-hop.tex document file

This document shows the use of the minitoc package in a document of class scrbook.

```

1943 (*mtc – hop)
1944 \documentclass[oneside,12pt]{scrbook}
1945 \ProvidesFile{mtc-hop.tex}%
1946 [2007/01/04]
1947 \usepackage{lipsum}
1948 \usepackage[hints]{minitoc}
1949 \begin{document}

```

```

\dominitoc We prepare the minitocs and the minilofs, we print the TOC but not the LOF (while the LOF
\dominilof file is prepared):
\tableofcontents
\listoffigures 1950 \dominitoc
1951 \dominilof
1952 \tableofcontents
1953 \fakelistoffigures

```

```

\part* A starred part with its entry in the TOC:
\mtcaddpart
1954 \part*{Part 1: Strategic Marketing}
1955 \mtcaddpart[Part 1: Strategic Marketing]

```

```

\chapter Then two chapters with their minitocs and minitocs:
\minitoc
\minilof 1956 \chapter{Chapter 1}
1957 \minitoc
1958 \minilof
1959 \section{Section one of first chapter}
1960 \lipsum[1]
1961 \begin{figure}
1962 \centering
1963 Test
1964 \caption{Picture one of first chapter}
1965 \end{figure}
1966
1967 \section{Section two of first chapter}
1968 \lipsum[2]
1969 \begin{figure}
1970 \centering

```

```

1971   Test
1972   \caption{Picture two of first chapter}
1973 \end{figure}
1974
1975 \chapter{Chapter 2}
1976 \minitoc \minilof
1977
1978 \section{Section one of second chapter}
1979 \lipsum[3]
1980 \begin{figure}
1981   \centering
1982   Test
1983   \caption{Picture one of second chapter}
1984 \end{figure}
1985 \cleardoublepage
1986 \section{Section two of second chapter}
1987 \lipsum[4]
1988 \begin{figure}
1989   \centering
1990   Test
1991   \caption{Picture two of second chapter}
1992 \end{figure}
1993 \end{document}
1994 </mtc – hop>

```

4.22 The mtc-liv.tex document file

This document shows the use of the minitoc package in a document of book class, with customized TOC and minitocs.

```

1995 < *mtc – liv>
1996 \documentclass[10pt,twoside,openright]{book}
1997 \ProvidesFile{mtc-liv.tex}%
1998   [2007/01/04]

```

First, we want that empty pages be really empty, without page number nor headers, so we redefine \cleardoublepage:

```

1999 \makeatletter
2000 \def\ps@chapterverso{\ps@empty}%
2001 \def\cleardoublepage{\clearpage
2002   \if@twoside
2003     \ifodd\c@page\else
2004       \null\thispagestyle{chapterverso}\newpage
2005     \if@twocolumn\null\newpage\fi
2006   \fi
2007   \fi
2008 }%
2009 \def\ps@chapterverso{\ps@empty}%

```

2010 `\makeatother`

We define the encodings, for input and output, because the document is in french and uses accented letters:

2011 `\usepackage[latin1]{inputenc}`
 2012 `\usepackage[T1,T1]{fontenc}`

We load two packages, `tocloft` [363], to customize the TOC and the minitocs, and `sectsty` [249], to customize the sectionning commands:

2013 `\usepackage{tocloft}`
 2014 `\usepackage{sectsty}`

We load the `minitoc` package then some complementary local packages for the french language:

2015 `\usepackage[french,undotted,tight]{minitoc}`
 2016 `\usepackage[english,français]{babel}`
 2017 `\usepackage{franc,frnew,mypatches}`
 2018 `\providecommand{\fup}{\textsuperscript}`

`\addtolength` We make some customizations: indentation for the subsection entries in the TOC and the
`\cftsubsecindent` minitocs, depth of the TOC, numerotation depth, depth of the minitocs, some fonts:
`\cftsetrmarg`
`\setcounter` 2019 `\addtolength{\cftsubsecindent}{1em}` % for tocloft
`\chapterfont` 2020 `\cftsetrmarg{2.55em plus 1fil}` % to avoid hyphenations in the ToC (tocloft).
`\thesection` 2021 `\setcounter{tocdepth}{3}`
`\sectionfont` 2022 `\setcounter{secnumdepth}{1}`
`\raggedright` 2023 `\setcounter{minitocdepth}{4}`
 2024 `\chapterfont{\huge\bfseries\sffamily}` % for sectsty
 2025 `\renewcommand{\thesection}{\arabic{section}}`
 2026 `\sectionfont{\Large\raggedright}` % for sectsty (to avoid hyphenations in section titles)

Some informations for the title page:

2027 `\title{Systèmes d'occultation}`
 2028 `\author{Laurent~\textsc{Bloch}}`

`\dominitoc` And the document body⁴:
`\tableofcontents`
`\chapter` 2029 `\begin{document}`
`\minitoc` 2030
`\section` 2031 `\maketitle`
`\subsection` 2032
`\subsection*` 2033 `\dominitoc \tableofcontents`
`\subsubsection` 2034
`\addcontentsline`

⁴ The text has been shortened, so there is an undefined reference; do not worry.

2035 \chapter{Définition et contrôle du travail à~faire}%
2036 \label{chap+controle}
2037 \minitoc
2038
2039 \section{Le modèle de la grande industrie et le taylorisme}%
2040 \index{taylorisme}
2041 C'est au \textsc{xviii}\fup{e}~siècle que la vision du travail comme
2042 marchandise est vraiment devenue dominante, pour s'imposer au
2043 \textsc{xix}\fup{e}~siècle dans l'organisation type de la grande usine
2044 industrielle.
2045
2046 \subsection*{Après l'usine, le centre d'appel}\index{centre d'appel}
2047 \addcontentsline{toc}{subsection}{Après l'usine, le centre d'appel}
2048 Aujourd'hui le taylorisme\index{taylorisme} au sens
2049 strict est en déclin parce qu'il n'est plus guère adapté aux
2050 besoins de la production industrielle contemporaine non plus qu'aux
2051 nouvelles normes de comportement individuel et collectif.
2052
2053 \section{Tout travail émet de la pensée}
2054 Le travail a vocation à~produire du sens, pour son auteur comme pour
2055 son destinataire.
2056
2057 \section{Théorie et pratique de la commande publique}
2058 En France, les prestations de service commandées par les
2059 services publics à~des entreprises font l'objet de contrôles
2060 de leur bonne réalisation selon des procédures et des règles
2061 qui sont des cas particuliers d'un ensemble plus vaste, la
2062 réglementation des marchés publics de l'État, dont nous
2063 allons donner ci-dessous une brève description.
2064
2065 \subsection{Réglementation des marchés publics}
2066 Le dispositif juridique, réglementaire et comptable qui encadre les
2067 actes contractuels de la puissance publique en France est très~[...]
2068
2069 \subsubsection{Premier principe: séparation de l'ordonnateur et du comptable}
2070 Le premier élément du dispositif est le principe de
2071 séparation de l'ordonnateur et du comptable. Il a été
2072 instauré en 1319 par l'ordonnance portant création de la~[...]
2073
2074 \subsubsection{Second principe: contrôle \emph{a~priori}}
2075 Le second élément du dispositif est le principe du contrôle
2076 \emph{a~priori}. Lorsque le directeur de l'organisme public
2077 de recherche pris ici comme exemple (l'ordonnateur) décide~[...]
2078
2079 \subsubsection{Le Code des Marchés Publics}
2080 Le troisième pilier de la commande publique est le Code des Marchés
2081 Publics (CMP), qui régit tous les contrats, conclus par des organismes
2082 publics ou des collectivités territoriales, dont le montant excède un~[...]
2083
2084 \subsection{La pratique des marchés publics}
2085 Lorsque l'administration française fait réaliser un système
2086 informatique par un prestataire, elle est en position de maître
2087 d'ouvrage\index{maîtrise d'ouvrage}. Elle rédige (ou fait rédiger) un
2088 cahier des charges\index{cahier des charges} qui décrit les

2089 spécifications du système à~réaliser. Ce cahier des charges constitue~[...]

2090

2091 \subsection{Quels sont les services publics «~rentables~»?}

2092 Pour parler comme les informaticiens, nous pouvons identifier un

2093 « effet de bord », c'est-à-dire une conséquence non intentionnelle de

2094 la réglementation des marchés publics: les administrations ne disposent

2095 d'aucun moyen pour envisager la notion d'investissement. Le~[...]

2096

2097 \section{Projet et cahier des charges}\index{cahier des charges}

2098 Jean-Pierre~\textsc{Boutinet} nous guidera ici pour ce qui concerne

2099 l'histoire de la notion de~[...]

2100

2101 \subsection{La frontière entre conception et fabrication}

2102 La vision classique de la conduite d'un projet informatique de gestion

2103 est la suivante: le maître d'ouvrage\index{maîtrise d'ouvrage}~[...]

2104

2105 \subsection{Bâtiment, mécanique, programmation}

2106 Nous y reviendrons au chapitre~\ref{chap+travail}, mais nous savons

2107 déjà que la mise en \oeuvre de l'informatique s'est beaucoup

2108 inspirée des procédures de travail les plus élaborées du

2109 \textsc{xx}\fup{e}~siècle~[...]

2110

2111 \chapter{Le travail informatique}

2112 \minitoc

2113

2114 \section{De la nature de l'informatique}

2115

2116 \subsection{Premières croyances}\label{sub+premcroyances}

2117 Les premiers ordinateurs, qui entrèrent en fonction à~l'extrême fin

2118 des années 1940 et durant les années 1950, étaient consacrés à~des

2119 travaux militaires ou scientifiques puisque, à~cette époque,

2120 on pensait~[...]

2121

2122 \subsection{Comment l'informatique diffère des mathématiques}

2123 J'aimerai à~l'occasion de cette analyse attirer l'attention du

2124 lecteur sur une question qui est une source constante de malentendus

2125 au sujet de la programmation.

2126

2127 \subsubsection{Les preuves de programme}

2128 L'écriture de programmes informatiques obéit à~de tout autres

2129 principes. Il convient de préciser cette affirmation pour la

2130 préserver~[...]

2131

2132 \section{Programmation dans le monde réel}

2133 \subsection{La vraie nature de la programmation des ordinateurs}

2134

2135 Alors, comment s'écrivent les programmes informatiques? Et

2136 d'ailleurs, qu'est-ce qu'une erreur\index{erreur} de programmation?

2137 Ces questions sont liées et elles sont, bien sûr, au c\oeur de notre

2138 préoccupation.

2139

2140 \subsection{Méthodes de programmation}

2141 Un processeur quelconque est caractérisé par le jeu des actions

2142 élémentaires qu'il est capable d'effectuer. Ces actions élémentaires

```

2143 sont appelées les \emph{primitives} du processeur, ou, si le
2144 processeur est une machine, les «~instructions machine~». Un~[...]
2145
2146 \subsection{Méthodes de construction de programmes}
2147 Nous avons décrit ci-dessus le processus élémentaire de la
2148 programmation, celui qui consiste à~écrire les instructions ou les
2149 expressions qui vont composer un programme.
2150
2151 \subsubsection{La programmation structurée}
2152 Le premier courant de pensée qui associa la recherche d'une syntaxe
2153 claire et expressive à~une organisation logique et commode des unités
2154 de programme fut la \emph{programmation
2155 structurée}\index{programmation!structurée} des années 1970, dont~[...]
2156
2157 \subsubsection{La programmation par objets}
2158 Après la programmation structurée vint un autre courant significatif:
2159 la programmation par objets\index{programmation!par objets}, inventée
2160 en Norvège à~la fin des années 1960 par l'équipe de~[...]
2161
2162 \subsubsection{Excès dans la pensée}
2163 Il y a eu beaucoup de verbiage autour de l'aptitude supposée du
2164 modèle~[...]
2165 \end{document}
2166 </mtc – liv>

```

4.23 The mtc-mem.tex document file

This example shows the use of the minitoc package in a memoir class document. First, the preamble:

<pre> 2167 <*mtc – mem> 2168 \documentclass% 2169 [oneside]{memoir} 2170 \ProvidesFile{mtc-mem.tex}% 2171 [2007/01/04] 2172 \usepackage{lipsum} </pre>	<pre> 2173 %% \usepackage{hyperref} 2174 %% \usepackage{memhfixc} 2175 \usepackage% 2176 [tight]{minitoc} 2177 %% \usepackage{mtcoff} 2178 \begin{document} </pre>
--	--

\dominitoc We use the starred form \tableofcontents* specific of the memoir class. Note that the the
\tableofcontents* \chapter command has *two* optional arguments in the memoir class.

<pre> \chapter \minitoc \section 2179 \dominitoc 2180 \tableofcontents* 2181 2182 \chapter[oneA][oneB]{oneC} 2183 \minitoc 2184 \lipsum[1] 2185 \newpage 2186 \lipsum[2] 2187 \section{S-1-one} </pre>	<pre> 2188 \lipsum[3] 2189 \section{S-1-two} 2190 \lipsum[4] 2191 2192 \chapter[twoA][twoB]{twoC} 2193 \minitoc 2194 \lipsum[4] 2195 \newpage 2196 \lipsum[5] </pre>
--	--

2197 \section{S-2-one}	2200 \lipsum[7]
2198 \lipsum[6]	2201 \end{document}
2199 \section{S-2-two}	2202 \</mtc – mem>

4.24 The mtc-mm1.tex document file

This example shows the use of the minitoc package in a memoir class document and shows some of the necessary adaptations for fonts. First, the preamble:

```

2203 \<mtc – mm1>
2204 \documentclass[oneside]{memoir}
2205 \ProvidesFile{mtc-mm1.tex}%
2206 [2007/01/04]
2207 \usepackage{lipsum} % filling text

```

```

\providecommand \cftsecfont

```

We inhibit some font commands of the memoir class:

```

\cftsubsecfont 2208 \providecommand{\cftsecfont}{\empty}
\empty 2209 \providecommand{\cftsubsecfont}{\empty}

```

```

\renewcommand \cftsecfont

```

Then we redefine them:

```

\cftsubsecfont 2210 \renewcommand{\cftsecfont}{\normalsize\scshape}
2211 \renewcommand{\cftsubsecfont}{\normalsize\scshape}

```

```

\mtcsetfont

```

We load the minitoc package and try to use some minitoc font commands, but without any success:

```

2212 %% hyperref before minitoc, optional
2213 %% \usepackage[linktocpage=true]{hyperref}\usepackage{memhfixc}
2214 \usepackage[tight]{minitoc}
2215 \mtcsetfont{minitoc}{section}{\normalsize\scshape} % <- no scshape
2216 \mtcsetfont{minitoc}{subsection}{\normalsize\scshape}% <- no scshape

```

```

\providecommand \cftsecfont

```

But if we use the font commands of the memoir class, it works!

```

\cftsubsecfont 2217 \providecommand{\cftsecfont}{\empty}
\empty 2218 \providecommand{\cftsubsecfont}{\empty}
\renewcommand 2219 \renewcommand{\cftsubsecfont}{\normalsize\rmfamily\scshape}
2220 \renewcommand{\cftsubsecfont}{\normalsize\rmfamily\scshape}

```

```

\mtcsetttitlefont \mtcsetttitle

```

But for mini-table titles (font and text), we can use the minitoc commands:

```

2221 \mtcsetttitlefont{minitoc}{\Large\scshape}

```



```

2222 %% this is working beautifully ->
2223 \mtcsettitle{minitoc}{Chapter Contents}

\dominitoc The document body:
\tableofcontents*
  \chapter 2224 \begin{document}
  \minitoc 2225 \dominitoc
  \section 2226 \tableofcontents*
          2227
          2228 \chapter[OneA][OneB]{OneC}
          2229 \minitoc
          2230 \section{This section}
          2231 \lipsum[1]
          2232 \section{Second section}
          2233 \lipsum[2]
          2234 \section{Third section}
          2235 \lipsum[3]
          2236 \end{document}
          2237 </mtc - mm1>

```

4.25 The mtc-mu.tex document file

```

\mtcindent This document shows the use of the minitoc package in a document, the minitoc being inserted
\dominitoc in the text with the wrapfig package [14].
\tableofcontents

2238 (*mtc - mu)
2239 \documentclass[12pt]{report}
2240 \ProvidesFile{mtc-mu.tex}%
2241 [2007/01/04]
2242 \usepackage[tight]{minitoc}
2243 \setlength{\mtcindent}{0pt}
2244 \usepackage{wrapfig}
2245 \newcommand{\LangSig}[1]{\textsc{[#1]}} % smallcaps
2246 \begin{document}
2247 \dominitoc
2248 \tableofcontents

wrapfigure A chapter, with its minitoc set in a minipage, included in a wrapfigure environment on the
minipage half of the text width, with some vertical adjustments:
\chapter
\linewidth 2249 \chapter{Mulsprent}\label{chapter+mulsprent}
\vspace 2250 \begin{wrapfigure}{r}{0.5\linewidth}
\baselineskip 2251 \begin{minipage}{\linewidth}
\minitoc 2252 \vspace{-2.\baselineskip}
          2253 \minitoc
          2254 \vspace{-1.\baselineskip}
          2255 \end{minipage}
          2256 \end{wrapfigure}

```

The remaining of the text:

2257 The previous chapter examined many end-user programming environments
 2258 and found that most contain cognitive programming gulfs.
 2259 These gulfs were often created when programing environments used
 2260 multiple notations, and could manifest themselves in a variety of
 2261 usability problems, ranging from users being unable to understand
 2262 a program representation, to not wanting to execute their programs.
 2263 Conversely, the previous chapter also found circumstances where multiple
 2264 notations helped users understand programs.
 2265 It concluded that there was a place for multiple notation programming
 2266 environments, but developers had to be very careful to avoid creating
 2267 programming gulfs.
 2268 It concluded that there was a place for multiple notation programming
 2269 environments, but developers had to be very careful to avoid creating
 2270 programming gulfs.
 2271
 2272 This chapter introduces our programming environment, Mulspren.
 2273 Mulspren was designed to avoid these gulfs and gain the potential
 2274 benefits of multiple notations.
 2275 Users program using two notations, one similar to English and one
 2276 similar to conventional code.
 2277 Changes in one notation are immediately reflected in the other notation,
 2278 and users can move rapidly and seamlessly between the notations.
 2279 This is programming using dual notations.
 2280 When the program is executed, both notations are animated.
 2281 Mulspren's language signature is `\LangSig{Re/Wr/Wa + Re/Wr/Wa + Wa}`.
 2282
 2283 Papers describing Mulspren have been published in~\cite{Wright02-2}
 2284 and~\cite{Wright03-3}.
 2285
 2286 \section{section 1}
 2287 \section{section 2 bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla
 2288 bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla}
 2289 \section{section 3}
 2290 \section{section 4}
 2291 \section{section 5 bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla
 2292 bla bla bla bla bla}

thebibliography I tried to find some articles of the net to fill the citations:

\bibitem

2293 \begin{thebibliography}{1}
 2294 \bibitem{Wright02-2}
 2295 Tim Wright and Andy Cockburn.
 2296 \newblock Mulspren: a multiple language simulation programming
 2297 environment.
 2298 \newblock In {\em HCC '02: Proceedings of the IEEE 2002 Symposia
 2299 on Human Centric Computing Languages and Environments (HCC'02)},
 2300 page 101, Washington, DC, USA, 2002. IEEE Computer Society.
 2301
 2302 \bibitem{Wright03-3}
 2303 Tim Wright and Andy Cockburn.
 2304 \newblock Evaluation of two textual programming notations for children.

```

2305 \newblock In {\em AUIC '05: Proceedings of the Sixth Australasian
2306 conference on User interface}, pages 55--62, Darlinghurst, Australia,
2307 Australia, 2005.
2308 Australian Computer Society, Inc.
2309 \end{thebibliography}
2310 \end{document}
2311 </mtc - mu>

```

4.26 The mtc-nom.tex document file

This document⁵ shows the interaction of the minitoc package with the nomencl package [351], when this package uses its option intoc.

```

2312 <*mtc - nom>
2313 \documentclass[oneside]{book}
2314 \ProvidesFile{mtc-nom.tex}%
2315 [2007/04/02]

```

\makenomenclature We load the packages and prepare the nomenclature:

```

2316 \usepackage[intoc]{nomencl}
2317 \usepackage[tight]{minitoc}
2318 \makenomenclature
2319 \begin{document}

```

\dominitoc We prepare the minitocs and the table of contents:
\tableofcontents

```

2320 \dominitoc
2321 \tableofcontents

```

```

\chapter A first chapter, with its minitoc, a section and some entries for the nomenclature:
\minitoc
\section 2322 \chapter{Angels}
\nomenclature 2323 \minitoc
2324 \section{Main equations}
2325 \begin{equation}
2326 a=\frac{N}{A}
2327 \end{equation}%
2328 \nomenclature{$a$}{The number of angels per unit area}%
2329 \nomenclature{$N$}{The number of angels per needle point}%
2330 \nomenclature{$A$}{The area of the needle point}%
2331 The equation $\sigma = m a$%
2332 \nomenclature{$\sigma$}{The total mass of angels per unit area}%
2333 \nomenclature{$m$}{The mass of one angel}
2334 follows easily.

```

⁵ It is derived from the example given in the documentation of nomencl.

`\printnomenclature` We print the nomenclature; but that adds a chapter entry in the TOC because of the `intoc` option of the `nomencl`, hence we add a correction with `\mtcfixnomenclature` (try to remove the correction and look at the result: the next minitocs are wrong):

```
2335 \printnomenclature
2336 \mtcfixnomenclature
```

`\chapter` A second chapter, with its minitoc, a section, and an entry in the nomenclature. This entry will
`\minitoc` be present in the nomenclature printed above.
`\section`
`\nomenclature` 2337 `\chapter{Demons}`
2338 `\minitoc`
2339 `\section{False equations}`
2340 `\begin{equation}`
2341 `i=\sqrt{-1}`
2342 `\end{equation}`
2343 `\nomenclature{i}{The imaginary unit}%`
2344 `\end{document}`
2345 `</mtc - nom>`

4.27 The `mtc-ocf.tex` document file

This document shows the use of the `open` and `close` features of the `minitoc` package to prepare a minitoc on three columns. The old package `fullpage` [123] is used to have a wide text area.

```
2346 <{*mtc - ocf>
2347 \documentclass[oneside]{book}
2348 \ProvidesFile{mtc-ocf.tex}%
2349 [2007/04/02]
2350 \usepackage{multicol} % to make multi-columns.
2351 \usepackage[french]{babel}
2352 \usepackage[latin1]{inputenc}
2353 \usepackage[OT1,TS1,T1]{fontenc}
2354 \usepackage{fullpage}
2355 % to allow a page breaks before a section
2356 \let\osection\section \def\section{\penalty-1\relax\osection}
2357 %
2358 \usepackage[french,tight]{minitoc}
```

`\mtcsetfeature` The “open” feature for minitocs opens a `multicols` environment, with 3 columns:
`multicols`

```
2359 \mtcsetfeature{minitoc}{open}{\vspace{-1ex}\begin{multicols}{3}}
```

`\mtcsetfeature` The “close” feature for minitocs close the `multicols` environment:
`multicols`

```
2360 \mtcsetfeature{minitoc}{close}{\end{multicols}\vspace{-1.5ex}}
```

As the `multicols` environment adds some vertical spacing before and after it, we added some corrections.

`\mtcsetfeature` As the number of sections is not a multiple of three (or some entries are long), we cannot always balance the columns nicely, so we use ragged columns, using the “before” and “after” features:

```
2361 \mtcsetfeature{minitoc}{before}{\raggedcolumns}
2362 \mtcsetfeature{minitoc}{after}{\flushcolumns}
```

`\dominitoc` And the body of the document, a chapter with many sections, listed in a minitoc:
`\tableofcontents`

<code>\chapter</code>	2363 <code>\begin{document}</code>	2380 <code>\section{Lima}</code>
<code>\minitoc</code>	2364 <code>\dominitoc</code>	2381 <code>\section{Mike}</code>
<code>\section</code>	2365 <code>\tableofcontents</code>	2382 <code>\section{November}</code>
	2366 <code>\chapter{Premier chapitre}</code>	2383 <code>\section{Oscar}</code>
	2367 <code>\minitoc</code>	2384 <code>\section{Papa}</code>
	2368 <code>% A lot of sections</code>	2385 <code>\section{Quebec}</code>
	2369 <code>\section{Alfa}</code>	2386 <code>\section{Romeo}</code>
	2370 <code>\section{Bravo}</code>	2387 <code>\section{Sierra}</code>
	2371 <code>\section{Charlie}</code>	2388 <code>\section{Tango}</code>
	2372 <code>\section{Delta}</code>	2389 <code>\section{Uniform}</code>
	2373 <code>\section{Echo}</code>	2390 <code>\section{Victor}</code>
	2374 <code>\section{Fox-Trot}</code>	2391 <code>\section{Whiskey}</code>
	2375 <code>\section{Golf}</code>	2392 <code>\section{X-Ray}</code>
	2376 <code>\section{Hotel}</code>	2393 <code>\section{Yankee}</code>
	2377 <code>\section{India}</code>	2394 <code>\section{Zulu}</code>
	2378 <code>\section{Juliet}</code>	2395 <code>\end{document}</code>
	2379 <code>\section{Kilo}</code>	2396 <code>\end{mtc-ofs}</code>

4.28 The `mtc-ofs.tex` document file

This document shows the use of the `\mtcsetoffset` command to shift a minitoc to the left, trying to put it along the left margin of the text. The open and close features of the minitoc package are also used to prepare the minitoc on three columns. The old package `fullpage` [123] is used to have a wide text area.

```
2397 <*mtc - ofs>
2398 \documentclass[a4paper]{book}
2399 \ProvidesFile{mtc-ofs.tex}%
2400 [2007/04/17]
2401 \usepackage{lipsum}
2402 \usepackage{multicol}
2403 \usepackage{fullpage}
2404 %\usepackage[a4paper]{geometry}
2405 \usepackage[tight]{minitoc}
```

```

\setlength We remove the minitoc indentation and set up the open and close features:
\mtcindent
\mtcsetfeature 2406 \setlength{\mtcindent}{0pt}
\raggedcolumns 2407 \mtcsetfeature{minitoc}{open}{\kern1sp\vspace*{-.1ex}\begin{multicols}{4}[\kern-2.5ex]}
\flushcolumns 2408 \mtcsetfeature{minitoc}{close}{\end{multicols}\kern-2.ex}
multicols 2409 \mtcsetfeature{minitoc}{before}{\raggedcolumns}
2410 \mtcsetfeature{minitoc}{after}{\flushcolumns}

\dominitoc We begin the document with a chapter and its minitoc:
\faketableofcontents
\chapter 2411 \begin{document}
\minitoc 2412 \dominitoc
2413 \faketableofcontents
2414 \chapter{Introduction}
2415 \minitoc

\mtcsetoffset As the minitoc is not aligned on the left margin of the text, we set a negative offset and print
\mtcskip again the minitoc:
\minitoc
2416 \mtcsetoffset{minitoc}{-1.75em}
2417 \mtcskip \minitoc

\mtcsetoffset But then the minitoc does not use the full width of the text; it would be better to modify both
\setlength the offset and the indentation, each by the half of the total correction:
\mtcindent
\mtcskip 2418 \mtcsetoffset{minitoc}{-0.875em}
\minitoc 2419 \setlength{\mtcindent}{-0.875em}
2420 \mtcskip \minitoc

\section Then a lot of sections, with some text:
2421 \section{Alfa} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
2422 \section{Bravo} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
2423 \section{Charlie} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
2424 \section{Delta} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
2425 \section{Echo} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
2426 \section{Fox-Trot} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
2427 \section{Golf} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
2428 \section{Hotel} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
2429 \section{India} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
2430 \section{Juliet} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
2431 \section{Kilo} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
2432 \section{Lima} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
2433 \section{Mike} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
2434 \section{November} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
2435 \section{Oscar} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
2436 \section{Papa} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
2437 \section{Quebec} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
2438 \section{Romeo} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]

```

```

2439 \section{Sierra}    \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
2440 \section{Tango}     \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
2441 \section{Uniform}   \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
2442 \section{Victor}    \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
2443 \section{Whiskey}   \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
2444 \section{X-Ray}     \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
2445 \section{Yankee}    \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
2446 \section{Zulu}      \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
2447 \end{document}
2448 </mtc – ofs>

```

Note: if you add a sub-section in this example, the corresponding entry in the minitoc may stick out if it appears in the last column, and the offset and the indentation should then be corrected again.



4.29 The mtc-sbf.tex document file

```

\l@subfigure This document shows the use of the minitoc package with a document containing subfigures
\@dottedxxxline (here with the subfigure package [114]). We show how to use minilofs and to adjust their
\ext@subfigure depth.

```

The preamble loads the subfigure package and redefines the format of subfigure entries in the list of figures:

```

2449 <*mtc – sbf>
2450 \documentclass[12pt]{report}
2451 \ProvidesFile{mtc-sbf.tex}%
2452 [2007/01/04]
2453 \usepackage{subfigure}
2454 \makeatletter
2455 \renewcommand{\l@subfigure}{\@dottedxxxline{\ext@subfigure}{2}{3.9em}{3.3em}}
2456 \makeatother

```

We load the varioref [256] package (to have nice cross-references) and the minitoc package:

```

2457 \usepackage{varioref}
2458 \usepackage[tight]{minitoc}

```

```

\newcommand We define some features for the layout of the subfigures, then the depth of the list of figures:
\goodap
\subfigtopskip 2459 \newcommand{\goodap}{%
\subfigbottomskip 2460 \hspace{\subfigtopskip}%
\setcounter 2461 \hspace{\subfigbottomskip}}
2462 \setcounter{lofdepth}{2}
2463 \begin{document}

```

`\mtcsetdepth` We define the depth of the mini-lists of figures, then some fonts:

`\mtcsetfont`

```
2464 \mtcsetdepth{minilof}{2}
2465 \mtcsetfont{minitoc}{section}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}
2466 \mtcsetfont{partlof}{subfigure}{\small\rmfamily\slshape\bfseries}
2467 \mtcsetfont{partlof}{figure}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}
2468 \mtcsetfont{minilof}{subfigure}{\small\rmfamily\slshape\bfseries}
2469 \mtcsetfont{minilof}{figure}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}
2470 %% no tables in this document
2471 %% \mtcsetfont{partlot}{subtable}{\small\rmfamily\slshape\bfseries}
2472 %% \mtcsetfont{partlot}{table}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}
2473 %% \mtcsetfont{minilot}{subtable}{\small\rmfamily\slshape\bfseries}
2474 %% \mtcsetfont{minilot}{table}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}
```

`\dominilof` We prepare the minilofs, the table of contents and the list of figures:

`\tableofcontents`

`\listoffigures` 2475 `\dominilof \listoffigures \tableofcontents`

`\chapter` A chapter, with is minilof, twice but with different depths:

`\minilof`

`\mtcskip` 2476 `\chapter{First Chapter}`

`\mtcsetdepth` 2477 `\minilof`

2478 `\mtcskip`

2479 `\mtcsetdepth{minilof}{1}`

2480 `\minilof`

A figure containing three subfigures and their captions:

```
2481 \begin{figure}
2482 \centering
2483   \fbox{%
2484     \begin{minipage}{3.5in}%
2485       \raggedright
2486       \begin{center}
2487         \subfigure[First]{%
2488           \fbox{\hbox to 20mm{\vbox to 15mm{\vfil\null}\hfil}}}%
2489           \hspace{\subfigtopskip}\hspace{\subfigbottomskip}%
2490         \subfigure[Second Figure]{%
2491           \fbox{\hbox to 20mm{\vbox to 10mm{\vfil\null}\hfil}}}%
2492         \subfigure[Third]{\label{3figs-c}%
2493           \fbox{\hbox to 20mm{\vbox to 10mm{\vfil\null}\hfil}}}%
2494         \caption{Three subfigures.}%
2495         \label{3figs}%
2496       \end{center}
2497       \vspace{4pt}%
2498       This figure contains two top ‘subfigures’ and
2499       Figure~\ref{3figs-c}.
2500     \end{minipage}}
2501 \end{figure}
2502 Figure~\vref{3figs} contains two top ‘‘subfigures’’ and
```



```

2503 Figure~\vref{3figs-c}.
2504 \end{document}
2505 </mtc – sbf>

```

4.30 The mtc-scr.tex document file

`\setcounter` This document shows the use of the minitoc package with a KOMA-Script document class [207, 270, 308], scrreprt. Some precautions are needed, because these classes have specific interfaces with the TOC (class options and commands).

```

2506 <*mtc – scr>
2507 \documentclass[12pt,halfparskip,liststotoc,bibtotoc]{scrreprt}
2508 \ProvidesFile{mtc-scr.tex}%
2509 [2007/01/04]
2510 \setcounter{secnumdepth}{4}
2511 \setcounter{tocdepth}{4}
2512 \usepackage[latin1]{inputenc}
2513 \usepackage{longtable}

```

The hyperref package, if used, must be loaded *before* minitoc:

```

2514 \usepackage{hyperref}

```

`\pagenumbering` With a KOMA-Script class [207, 270, 308], use the k-tight package option in place of
`\dominitoc` `tight`; as it is a document in german, use also a language package option:
`\tableofcontents`

```

2515 \usepackage[k-tight,germanb]{minitoc}
2516 \usepackage[germanb]{babel}
2517 \begin{document}
2518 \pagenumbering{Roman} % page number in Roman, reset to 1 (I)
2519 \dominitoc
2520 \tableofcontents

```

`\listoftables` In this document class, with the liststotoc class option, the `\listoftables` macro adds a
`\mtcaddchapter` chapter entry in the TOC, so we must add `\mtcaddchapter` after `\listoftables`:

```

2521 \listoftables
2522 \mtcaddchapter

```

`\pagenumbering` With the bibtotoc class option, it is necessary to add a `\adjustmtc` command after
`\chapter` `\bibliography`. This problem is similar to the one of compatibility with the tocbind
`\setcounter` package.
`\appendix`
`\minitoc` 2523 `\clearpage`
`\section` 2524 `\pagenumbering{arabic}` % page number in arabic digits

```

2525 \setcounter{page}{1} % forced to 1
2526
2527 \chapter{Test 1}\label{cha:test-1}
2528
2529 Text.
2530
2531 \section{Tabelle}\label{sec:tabelle}
2532
2533 \begin{table}
2534   \centering
2535   \begin{longtable}[l]{ll}
2536     \underline{Ausbildungsbetrieb} & \hspace{10mm} & Kommanditgesellschaft \\
2537   \\
2538     \underline{Ausbildender} & & Hammer \\
2539     Ausbildungsstätte & & XXXXX Ort \\
2540   \end{longtable}
2541   \caption{Ausbildungsbetrieb}
2542 \end{table}
2543
2544 Text.
2545
2546 \appendix
2547 \chapter{Dokumente}
2548 \minitoc % Aufruf Minitoc
2549
2550 \section{Anhang}\label{sec:anhang}
2551 Text.\\
2552 Hier sollte nun der Anhang sein, davor das Verzeichnis dafür.
2553 \end{document}
2554 </mtc – scr>

```

4.31 The mtc-syn.tex document file

This document shows the use of the minitoc package when the table of contents is not at the beginning of the document, but is preceded by some starred chapters.

`\dominitoc` We have the preamble, then we invoke `\dominitoc` to prepare the minitocs:

```

2555 <*mtc – syn>
2556 \documentclass[a4paper,twoside,12pt]{book}
2557 \ProvidesFile{mtc-syn.tex}%
2558   [2007/01/04]
2559 \usepackage{minitoc}
2560 \begin{document}
2561 \dominitoc

```

`\chapter*` Some starred chapters, with calls to `\mtcaddchapter` to synchronize. The optional argument
`\mtcaddchapter` is used when an entry in the ToC is wanted:

```

2562 \chapter*{ } % Dedication chapter, no title
2563 \mtcaddchapter          % Added for a starred chapter
2564                        % without entry in the ToC
2565 Dedication goes here
2566
2567 \chapter*{Abstract}
2568 \mtcaddchapter[Abstract] % Added for a starred chapter
2569                        % with an entry in the ToC
2570 Abstract goes here
2571
2572 \chapter*{Declaration}
2573 \mtcaddchapter[Declaration] % Added for a starred chapter
2574                        % with an entry in the ToC
2575 Declaration goes here

```

`\tableofcontents` The table of contents comes here. Looking at the *document.log* file shows that the minitoc
`\decrementmtc` files inserted after here are from one chapter to far: we add a correction.

```

2576 \tableofcontents
2577 \decrementmtc % Synchro added (look at the .log file)

```

`\chapter` The following chapters are normal (unstarred):

`\minitoc`

```

\section 2578 \chapter{Chapter One}
2579 \minitoc
2580
2581 \section{Section 1}
2582 Some text.
2583
2584 \section{Section 2}
2585 Some text.
2586
2587 \chapter{Chapter Two}

```

```

2588 \minitoc
2589
2590 \section{Another Section 1}
2591 Some more text.
2592
2593 \section{Another Section 2}
2594 Some more text.
2595
2596 \end{document}
2597 </mtc – syn>

```

4.32 The mtc-tbi.tex document file

This document shows the use of the minitoc package with a document using the tocbibind package [366].

```

2598 < *mtc – tbi>
2599 \documentclass[a4paper]{report}
2600 \ProvidesFile{mtc-tbi.tex}%
2601 [2007/01/04]

```

<code>\dominitoc</code>	We dont want an entry for the TOC in the TOC: option <code>nottoc</code> for the <code>tocbibind</code> package:	
<code>\tableofcontents</code>	<pre> 2602 \usepackage[nottoc]{tocbibind} 2603 \usepackage[tight]{minitoc} 2604 \begin{document} </pre>	<pre> 2605 \dominitoc 2606 \tableofcontents </pre>
<code>\mtcaddchapter</code>	As there is no entry for the TOC in the TOC, no correction is necessary; we comment out the usual correction ⁶ :	
	<pre> 2607 %% tocbibind compatibility 2608 %% not used if nottoc option : </pre>	<pre> 2609 %% \mtcaddchapter[] </pre>
<code>\chapter*</code>	A starred chapter with an entry in the TOC; we add it;	
<code>\mtcaddchapter</code>	<pre> 2610 \chapter*{Introduction} </pre>	<pre> 2611 \mtcaddchapter[Introduction] </pre>
<code>\chapter</code>	Some normal chapters:	
<code>\minitoc</code>		
<code>\section</code>	<pre> 2612 \chapter{Title of chapter~1} 2613 \minitoc 2614 \section{as1} 2615 \section{as2} 2616 \chapter{Title of chapter~2} 2617 \minitoc 2618 \section{bs1} 2619 \section{bs2} </pre>	<pre> 2620 \chapter{Title of chapter~3} 2621 \minitoc 2622 \section{cs1} 2623 \section{cs2} 2624 \chapter{Title of chapter~4} 2625 \minitoc 2626 \section{ds1} 2627 \section{ds2} </pre>
<code>\chapter*</code>	Another starred chapter, with an entry in the TOC:	
<code>\mtcaddchapter</code>	<pre> 2628 \chapter*{Conclusion} </pre>	<pre> 2629 \mtcaddchapter[Conclusion] </pre>
<code>\chapter*</code>	Yet another starred chapter, with an entry in the TOC, but with starred sections, also listed in the TOC:	
<code>\mtcaddchapter</code>		
<code>\minitoc</code>		
<code>\section*</code>	<pre> 2630 \chapter*{Appendices} </pre>	<pre> 2635 {first appendix} </pre>
<code>\addcontentsline</code>	<pre> 2631 \mtcaddchapter[Appendices] 2632 \minitoc 2633 \section*{first appendix} 2634 \addcontentsline{toc}{section}% </pre>	<pre> 2636 \section*{second appendix} 2637 \addcontentsline{toc}{section}% 2638 {second appendix} </pre>
<code>\listoffigures</code>	The list of figures has an entry in the TOC (via the <code>tocbibind</code> package), so a correction must be applied:	
<code>\mtcaddchapter</code>		

⁶ It is recommended to keep this comment; you could change your mind.

2639 \listoffigures	2641 \mtcaddchapter
2640 %% tocbibind compatibility	
thebibliography	The tocbibind package adds an entry in the TOC for the bibliography, so we must add the
\bibitem	recommended correction:
\adjustmtc	
2642 \begin{thebibliography}{3}	2646 \adjustmtc
2643 \bibitem {s1}{title ...}	2647 \end{document}
2644 \end{thebibliography}	2648 \mtc - tbi
2645 %% tocbibind compatibility	

4.33 The mtc-tlc.tex document file

This document shows the use of the minitoc package in a document of the article class. It is the example of [260, page 58], modernized.

2649 *mtc - tlc	2651 \ProvidesFile{mtc-tlc.tex}%
2650 \documentclass{article}	2652 [2007/01/04]
\setlength	Dimensions of the text on the page:
\textwidth	
\textheight	2653 \setlength{\textwidth}%
2654 {124.20126pt}	2655 \setlength{\textheight}%
	2656 {19\baselineskip}
\setlength	We load the minitoc package and set some parameters (indentation, base font and depth) for
\stcindent	the secttocs:
\mtcsetfont	
\mtcsetdepth	2657 \usepackage{minitoc}
2658 \setlength{\stcindent}{0pt}	2660 {\footnotesize}
2659 \mtcsetfont{secttoc}{*}%	2661 \mtcsetdepth{secttoc}{3}
\dosecttoc	We prepare the secttocs, without title, and the table of contents which is not printed:
\faketableofcontents	
\section	2662 \begin{document}
\secttoc	2675 \section{Albania}
\subsection	2676 \secttoc
\subsubsection	2677 \subsection{Geography}
2665	2678 \subsubsection{Total area}
2666 \section{Afghanistan}	2679 28,750 km2
2667 \secttoc	2680 \subsubsection{Land area}
2668 \subsection{Geography}	2681 27,400 km2
2669 \subsubsection{Total area}	2682 \subsection{History} \ldots
2670 647,500 km2	2683 \end{document}
2671 \subsubsection{Land area}	2684 \mtc - tlc
2672 647,500 km2	
2673 \subsection{History} \ldots	

4.34 The `mtc-tlo.tex` document file

The `mtc-tlo.tex` document file is described in section 2.46 on page 78.

4.35 The `mtc-tsf.tex` document file

This document⁷ shows the use of the `minitoc` package with a document containing subfigures (here with the `subfig` package [116]). We show how to use `minilofs` and to adjust their depth. The old package `fullpage` [123] is used to have a wide text area.

The preamble loads the `subfig` package and redefines the format of subfigure entries in the list of figures:

```
2685 <*mtc - tsf>
2686 \documentclass{report}
2687 \ProvidesFile{mtc-tsf.tex}%
2688 [2007/01/04]
2689 \usepackage{fullpage}
2690 \usepackage[config=altsf]{subfig}
2691 \usepackage[tight]{minitoc}
```

This is utility code to make graduated rules and a box around a figure.

```
2692 \newdimen\testtemp
2693 \newcommand{\ru}[1]{%
2694   \testtemp #1%
2695   \advance\testtemp .5pt%
2696   \divide\testtemp 2%
2697   \hbox to \testtemp{\leaders\hbox to 1mm{%
2698     \vrule height1mm depth0pt width.25pt\hfil}\hfil}%
2699   \hbox to 0pt{\hss\vrule height3mm depth0pt width.25pt\hss}%
2700   \hbox to \testtemp{\leaders\hbox to 1mm{%
2701     \hfil\vrule height1mm depth0pt width.25pt\hfil}}
2702 %}
2703 \fboxsep=-\fboxrule
2704 \newcommand{\figbox}[1]{%
2705   \fbox{%
2706     \vbox to 1in{%
2707       \vfil
2708       \hbox to 2in{%
2709         \parbox{2in}{%
2710           \centering
2711           #1}}}%
2712     \vfil
2713     \vbox to 0pt{%
2714       \vss
2715       \hbox to 2in{%
```

⁷ It is derived from one of the examples distributed with the `subfig` package [116].

```

2716      \hfil
2717      \ru{1.1in}%
2718      \hfil}}}}

```

```

\setcounter The body of the document. We set the depth of the list of figures and prepare the minilofs and
\dominilof the list of figures:
\listoffigures

```

```

2719 \begin{document}
2720 \setcounter{lofdepth}{2}
2721 \dominilof
2722 \listoffigures
2723 \newpage

```

```

\chapter A chapter containing a figure with subfigures. We print a minilof twice, with different depths:
\minilof

```

```

\mtcskip 2724 \chapter{Reference Test}
\mtcsetdepth 2725 \minilof
2726 \mtcskip
2727 \mtcsetdepth{minilof}{1}
2728 \minilof
2729
2730 \begin{figure}[ht]%
2731   \centering
2732   \subfigure{%
2733     \label{fig+A}%
2734     \figbox{SUBFIGURE ONE:\\
2735             (no opt)}}
2736   \quad
2737   \subfigure[]{%
2738     \label{fig+B}%
2739     \figbox{SUBFIGURE TWO:\\
2740             (empty opt)}}\\
2741
2742   \subfigure[Subfigure Three.]{%
2743     \label{fig+C}%
2744     \figbox{SUBFIGURE THREE:\\
2745             (opt)}}
2746   \quad
2747   \subfigure[][Subfigure Four.]{%
2748     \label{fig+D}%
2749     \figbox{SUBFIGURE FOUR:\\
2750             (empty opt and opt)}}
2751   \quad
2752   \subfigure[][]{%
2753     \label{fig+E}%
2754     \figbox{SUBFIGURE FIVE:\\
2755             (both empty opt)}}\\
2756
2757   \subfigure[The Sixth Subfigure.][Subfigure Six.]{%
2758     \label{fig+F}%
2759     \figbox{SUBFIGURE SIX:\\
2760             (both opt)}}

```

```

2761 \quad
2762 \subfigure[The Seventh Subfigure][{}%
2763 \label{fig+G}%
2764 \figbox{SUBFIGURE SEVEN:\\
2765 (opt and empty opt)}}
2766
2767 \caption{Optional argument test.}%
2768 \label{fig+main}%
2769 \end{figure}
2770
2771 The figure~\ref{fig+main} on page~\pageref{fig+main} is composed
2772 of the seven subfigures~\subref{fig+A} (aka: \ref{fig+A}),
2773 \subref{fig+B} (aka: \ref{fig+B}), \subref{fig+C} (aka: \ref{fig+C}),
2774 \subref{fig+D} (aka: \ref{fig+D}), \subref{fig+E} (aka: \ref{fig+E}),
2775 \subref{fig+F} (aka: \ref{fig+F}), and \subref{fig+G} (aka: \ref{fig+G}).
2776
2777 \section{Centering Test}
2778 Note that figures~\ref{fig+B}, \ref{fig+E} and \ref{fig+G} are centered.
2779 This means that \verb|\subfigcapskip| has been set to zero and is not
2780 offsetting the simple label to the left. Also the remaining captioned
2781 subfigures (figures~\ref{fig+C}, \ref{fig+D}, and \ref{fig+F}) should
2782 have centered labels.
2783 \end{document}
2784 </mtc - tsf>

```


Chapter 5

Messages

Contents

5.1	Introduction	153
5.2	Messages from the minitoc package	155
5.2.1	Informative messages	155
5.2.1.1	Informative messages for hints	163
5.2.2	Warning messages	167
5.2.2.1	Warning messages for hints	173
5.2.3	Error messages	189
5.3	Messages from the mtcoff package	203
5.3.1	Warning messages	203
5.4	Message from the mtcpatchmem package	206

Tables

5.1	Message identifiers	154
---------------------	-------------------------------------	---------------------

5.1 Introduction

This chapter lists and comments the messages given by the minitoc package, and is associates, mtcoff and mtcpatchmem¹. The table [5.1](#) on the following page lists all messages; in this table, you can click on a message identifier to find quickly its meaning.

- The first line of each message contains usually the name of the package and an unique identifier (this identifier may be useful to search in this chapter of the documentation,

¹ The texts of the messages given in this chapter may slightly differ from the real text, because some messages contain variable elements and the layout may differ.

Table 5.1: Message identifiers (click on a message identifier to see its meaning).

E0001	E0002	E0003	E0004	E0005	E0006	E0007	E0008	E0009	E0010
E0011	E0012	E0013	E0014	E0015	E0016	E0017	E0018	E0019	E0020
E0021	E0022	E0023	E0024	E0025	E0026	E0027	E0028	E0029	E0030
E0031	E0032	E0033	E0034	E0035	E0036	E0037	E0038	E0039	E0040
E0041	E0042	E0043							
F0001	F0002	F0003	F0004	F0005	F0006	F0007	F0008	F0009	
I0000									
I0001	I0002	I0003	I0004	I0005	I0006	I0007	I0008	I0009	I0010
I0011	I0012	I0013	I0014	I0015	I0016	I0017	I0018	I0019	I0020
I0021	I0022	I0023	I0024	I0025	I0026	I0027	I0028	I0029	I0030
I0031	I0032	I0033	I0034	I0035	I0036	I0037	I0038	I0039	I0040
I0041	I0042	I0043	I0044	I0045	I0046	I0047	I0048	I0049	I0050
I0051	I0052	I0053							
M0001									
W0001	W0002	W0003	W0004	W0005	W0006	W0007	W0008	W0009	W0010
W0011	W0012	W0013	W0014	W0015	W0016	W0017	W0018	W0019	W0020
W0021	W0022	W0023	W0024	W0025	W0026	W0027	W0028	W0029	W0030
W0031	W0032	W0033	W0034	W0035	W0036	W0037	W0038	W0039	W0040
W0041	W0042	W0043	W0044	W0045	W0046	W0047	W0048	W0049	W0050
W0051	W0052	W0053	W0054	W0055	W0056	W0057	W0058	W0059	W0060
W0061	W0062	W0063	W0064	W0065	W0066	W0067	W0068	W0069	W0070
W0071	W0072	W0073	W0074	W0075	W0076	W0077	W0078	W0079	W0080
W0081	W0082	W0083	W0084	W0085	W0086	W0087	W0088	W0089	W0090
W0091	W0092	W0093	W0094	W0095	W0096	W0097			

but has no special meaning, except the leading letter: I for informative, W for warning, and E for error).

- Informative messages are written only in the *document.log* file; the prefix is F for the warning messages from the mtcff package and M for the informative message from the mtcpatchmem package.
- Warning messages are shown on the screen (but often too quickly to be seen, because normally L^AT_EX does not stop for warnings) and written in the *document.log* file.
- Error messages are shown on the screen and written in the *document.log* file, but L^AT_EX stops, so you can ask for help by typing “h”.
- In this chapter, some words in the messages are typeset in italic characters; they represent the variable parts of the message:
 - *ARG1* The first argument of the command.
 - *ARG2* The second argument of the command.

- *ARG3* The third argument of the command.
- *CLASS* The name of the class of your document.
- *COMMAND* The name of the command.
- *COUNTER* The name of a \LaTeX counter.
- *document* The name of your document, without its `.tex` extension.
- *EXTENSION* The extension part of the name of a file.
- *FILE* The name of a file (often a minitoc auxiliary file, the `document.toc` file, the `document.lof` file, or the `document.lot` file).
- *INTERNAL_NAME* The name of an internal macro redefined by a `\mtcset...` command.
- *LANGUAGE* The name of the language (for `\mtcselectlanguage`).
- *LINE* The number of the line in the source file.
- *macro* The name of a minitoc font command redefined by `\mtcsetfont`.
- *NEW_TITLE* The new value of a title redefined by `\mtcsetttitle`.
- *NUMBER* The number of mini-tables of the given type in your document (when you are using short extensions and that number is greater than 99).
- *OFFSET* The new value of an offset redefined by `\mtcsetoffset`.
- *PREPARATION* The name of a minitoc preparation command.
- *SEQUENCE* A sequence of commands used to redefine an internal macro via a `\mtcset...` command.
- *STRING* A string of characters, often part of a command name.
- *VALUE* The new value of a counter.

The messages are produced using macros from the `mtcmess` package, described in chapter 11 on page 458.

5.2 Messages from the minitoc package

5.2.1 Informative messages

I0000

Package: minitoc 2007/06/29 v55 Package minitoc (JPDF)

This is the announce message of the minitoc package, with its name, date and version. “JPDF” are my initials. This message has no real identifier because it is emitted by `\ProvidesPackage`, but, for indexing it, we use `I0000`.

I0001

```
Package minitoc Info: I0001
(minitoc)          *** minitoc package, version 55 ***.
```

Remember the version of the package.

I0002

```
Package minitoc Info: I0002
(minitoc)          Autoconfiguration of extensions.
```

The minitoc package tries to determine if short or long extensions for file names are used by the operating system.

I0003

```
Package minitoc Info: I0003
(minitoc)          chapter level macros available.
```

The `\chapter` sectionning command is available, so you can use the mini-table commands at the chapter level, but *not* the mini-table commands at the section level.

I0004

```
Package minitoc Info: I0004
(minitoc)          chapter level macros NOT available.
```

The `\chapter` sectionning command is *not* available, so you cannot use the mini-table commands at the chapter level, but, if the `\section` sectionning command is available, you can use mini-table commands at the section level.

I0005

```
Package minitoc Info: I0005
(minitoc)          compatible with hyperref.
```

This version of minitoc is compatible with the `hyperref` package.

I0006

```
Package minitoc Info: I0006
(minitoc)           document.EXTENSION is empty on input line LINE.
```

The auxiliary file for a mini-table is found empty (or inexistent) when minitoc tries to insert it. If the `checkfiles` option is active, it is skipped.

I0007

```
Package minitoc Info: I0007
(minitoc)           Horizontal rules are activated
(minitoc)           for the ARGIs on input line LINE.
```

The horizontal rules will be present in the mini-tables of type *ARGI*.

I0008

```
Package minitoc Info: I0008
(minitoc)           Horizontal rules are inhibited
(minitoc)           for the ARGIs on input line LINE.
```

The horizontal rules will be omitted in the mini-tables of type *ARGI*.

I0009

```
Package minitoc Info: I0009
(minitoc)           Listing minitoc auxiliary files.
(minitoc)           Creating the document.maf file.
```

You have used the `listfiles` package option. A list of the minitoc auxiliary files is written in the *document.maf* file. It may be helpful to delete these files. See section 1.7 on page 51. This option is the default since version #48.

I0010

```
Package minitoc Info: I0010
Package minitoc Info: The LANGUAGE language is selected.
(minitoc)           on input line LINE.
```

The *LANGUAGE.mld* file has been successfully loaded for the *LANGUAGE* language² by the `\mtcselectlanguage` command at line *LINE*. The titles for the mini-tables are changed.

² The *english.mld* file is always loaded first, to have english as default language.

I0011

Package minitoc Info: I0011
(minitoc) *LANGUAGE* language object selected.
(minitoc) on input line *LINE*.

The `\mtcselectlanguage` macro has successfully (indirectly) loaded the *LANGUAGE.mlo* minitoc object file.

I0012

Package minitoc Info: I0012
(minitoc) Long extensions (Unix-like) will be used.

The autoconfiguration has detected that your operating system is able to use long extensions; this will be the default.

I0013

Package minitoc Info: I0013
(minitoc) `\mtcsetdepth` redefines the counter
(minitoc) "*COUNTER*" as "*VALUE*" on input line *LINE*.

The `\mtcsetdepth` macro changes the value of the specified depth counter and forces it to *VALUE*.

I0014

Package minitoc Info: I0014
(minitoc) `\mtcsetfeature` redefines the macro
(minitoc) "*INTERNAL_NAME*" as
(minitoc) "*SEQUENCE*" on input line *LINE*.

The `\mtcsetfeature` macro has redefined the internal macro *INTERNAL_NAME* with the given *SEQUENCE*.

I0015

Package minitoc Info: I0015
(minitoc) `\mtcsetfont` redefines the macro
(minitoc) "*macro*" as "*SEQUENCE*" on input line *LINE*.

The `\mtcsetfont` command redefines the (old style) *macro* by the given *SEQUENCE* of font commands.

I0016

```
Package minitoc Info: I0016
(minitoc)          \mtcsetformat redefines the macro
(minitoc)          "\INTERNAL_NAME" as "ARG3" on input line LINE.
```

The macro `\mtcsetformat` redefines an internal macro with the value given by its third argument.

I0017

```
Package minitoc Info: I0017
(minitoc)          \mtcsettitle redefines the macro
(minitoc)          "INTERNAL_NAME" as
(minitoc)          "NEW_TITLE" on input line LINE.
```

A mini-table title is redefined via the `\mtcsettitle` macro.

I0018

```
Package minitoc Info: I0018
(minitoc)          \mtcsettitlefont redefines the macro
(minitoc)          "\INTERNAL_NAME" as
(minitoc)          "SEQUENCE" on input line LINE.
```

The `\mtcsettitlefont` macro redefines the (old style) `\INTERNAL_NAME` macro which the given sequence *SEQUENCE*.

I0019

```
Package minitoc(hints) Info: I0019
(minitoc(hints))   No hints have been written
(minitoc(hints))   in the document.log file.
```

The hints package option has detected no potential problem.

I0020

```
Package minitoc Info: I0020
(minitoc)          old version of the memoir class.
```

The version of the memoir class is old. The minitoc package does not need to patch this class.

I0021

Package minitoc Info: I0021
(minitoc) Page numbers are activated
(minitoc) for the *ARG1*s on input line *LINE*.

The page numbers will be present in the mini-tables of type *ARG1*.

I0022

Package minitoc Info: I0022
(minitoc) Page numbers are inhibited
(minitoc) for the *ARG1*s on input line *LINE*.

The page numbers will be omitted in the mini-tables of type *ARG1*.

I0023

Package minitoc Info: I0023
(minitoc) part level macros available.

The `\part` sectionning command is available, so you can use the mini-table commands at the part level.

I0024

Package minitoc Info: I0024
(minitoc) PREPARING MINITOCs FROM *FILE* on input line *LINE*.

A `\dominitoc` command prepares the minitoc auxiliary files for minitocs from *FILE*.

I0025

Package minitoc Info: I0025
(minitoc) PREPARING PARTTOCS FROM *FILE* on input line *LINE*.

A `\doparttoc` command prepares the parttoc auxiliary files for parttocs from *FILE*.

I0026

Package minitoc Info: I0026
(minitoc) PREPARING SECTTOCS FROM *FILE* on input line *LINE*.

A `\dosecttoc` command prepares the secttoc auxiliary files for secttocs from *FILE*.

I0027

```
Package minitoc Info: I0027
(minitoc)             recent version of the memoir class.
```

The version of the memoir class is recent. The minitoc package will try to patch it.

I0028

```
Package minitoc Info: I0028
(minitoc)             section level macros available.
```

The `\section` sectionning command is available but the `\chapter` sectionning command is *not* available, so you can use the mini-table commands at the section level.

I0029

```
Package minitoc Info: I0029
(minitoc)             section level macros NOT available.
```

The `\section` sectionning command is not defined (by the document class), so the section level commands of the minitoc package are not available.

I0030

```
Package minitoc Info: I0030
(minitoc)             the memoir class is loaded:
(minitoc)             compatibility attempted.
```

The memoir document class is used. The minitoc package tries to ensure compatibility.

I0031

```
Package minitoc Info: I0031
(minitoc)             ==> this version is configured for UNIX-like
(minitoc)             (long extensions) file names.
```

The autoconfiguration has detected that your operating uses UNIX-like (long extensions) file names.

I0032

```

Package minitoc Info: I0032
(minitoc)           This version of the memoir class uses
(minitoc)           a version of \chapter which is
(minitoc)           incompatible with the minitoc package.
(minitoc)           We try to patch.

```

The memoir class uses a version of the `\chapter` command which needs to be corrected because its syntax has been changed. A patch is loaded.

I0033

```

Package minitoc Info: I0033
(minitoc)           Writing document.EXTENSION.

```

An auxiliary file for a mini-table is written by a minitoc preparation command (like `\dominitoc`).

I0034

```

Package minitoc Info: I0034
(minitoc)           PREPARING MINILOFS FROM FILE on input line LINE.

```

A `\dominilof` command prepares the minilof auxiliary files for minilofs from *FILE*.

I0035

```

Package minitoc Info: I0035
(minitoc)           PREPARING PARTLOFS FROM FILE on input line LINE.

```

A `\dopartlof` command prepares the partlof auxiliary files for partlofs from *FILE*.

I0036

```

Package minitoc Info: I0036
(minitoc)           PREPARING SECTLOFS FROM FILE on input line LINE.

```

A `\dosectlof` command prepares the sectlof auxiliary files for sectlofs from *FILE*.

I0037

```
Package minitoc Info: I0037
(minitoc)             PREPARING MINILOTS FROM FILE on input line LINE.
```

A `\dominilot` command prepares the minilot auxiliary files for minilots from *FILE*.

I0038

```
Package minitoc Info: I0038
(minitoc)             PREPARING PARTLOTS FROM FILE on input line LINE.
```

A `\dopartlot` command prepares the partlot auxiliary files for partlots from *FILE*.

I0039

```
Package minitoc Info: I0039
(minitoc)             PREPARING SECTLOTS FROM FILE on input line LINE.
```

A `\dosectlot` command prepares the sectlot auxiliary files for sectlots from *FILE*.

5.2.1.1 Informative messages for hints

I0040

```
Package minitoc(hints) Info: I0040
(minitoc(hints))      The ‘‘abstract’’ package has been
(minitoc(hints))      loaded with the ‘‘addtotoc’’ option.
(minitoc(hints))      You need to look at the
(minitoc(hints))      documentation to adjust.
```

As you are using the `abstract` package with its `addtotoc` option, you should look at the `minitoc` package documentation for specific precautions. See section [2.27](#) on page [69](#).

I0041

```
Package minitoc(hints) Info: I0041
(minitoc(hints))      --- The amsbook class is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))      See the minitoc package documentation
(minitoc(hints))      for specific precautions.
```

As you are using the `amsbook` class, you should look at the `minitoc` package documentation for specific precautions. See section [2.24](#) on page [65](#).

I0042

```
Package minitoc(hints) Info: I0042
(minitoc(hints))      --- The appendix package is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))      See the minitoc package documentation
(minitoc(hints))      for specific precautions.
```

As you are using also the `appendix` package, you should look at the `minitoc` package documentation for specific precautions. See section 2.20 on page 63.

I0043

```
Package minitoc(hints) Info: I0043
(minitoc(hints))      --- The KOMAScript CLASS class is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))      See the minitoc package documentation
(minitoc(hints))      for specific precautions.
```

As you are using also the `CLASS` class, you should look at the `minitoc` package documentation for specific precautions. See section 1.5.5 on page 49. The classes involved here are `scrbook`, `scrreprt`, and `scrartcl`, i.e., the KOMA-Script classes [207, 270, 308] compatible with `minitoc`.

I0044

```
Package minitoc(hints) Info: I0044
(minitoc(hints))      --- The memoir class is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))      See the minitoc package documentation
(minitoc(hints))      for specific precautions.
```

As you are using the `memoir` class, you should look at the `minitoc` package documentation for specific precautions. See section 2.22 on page 64.

I0045

```
Package minitoc(hints) Info: I0045
(minitoc(hints))      The \PREPARATION command
(minitoc(hints))      has been invoked more than once
(minitoc(hints))      on input line LINE.
```

A `minitoc` preparation command has been invoked more than once.

I0046

```
Package minitoc(hints) Info: I0046
(minitoc(hints))          --- The tocbibind package is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))          See the minitoc package documentation
(minitoc(hints))          for specific precautions.
```

As you are using also the tocbibind package, you should look at the minitoc package documentation for specific precautions. See section 1.5.5 on page 49.

I0047

```
Package minitoc(hints) Info: I0047
(minitoc(hints))          --- The tocloft package is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))          See the minitoc package documentation
(minitoc(hints))          for specific precautions.
```

As you are using also the tocloft package, you should look at the minitoc package documentation for specific precautions. See section 2.21 on page 63.

I0048

```
Package minitoc(hints) Info: I0048
(minitoc(hints))          Using \mtcprepare may induce some
(minitoc(hints))          hints about the preparation commands,
(minitoc(hints))          because it invokes ALL the preparation
(minitoc(hints))          commands allowed by the document class,
(minitoc(hints))          without any previous check.
```

The `\mtcprepare` command invoke all the possible preparation commands, depending only on the document class and the available contents files. It does not know exactly what you want, so it can prepare too many mini-tables files.

I0049

```
Package minitoc(hints) Info: I0049
(minitoc(hints))          ==> You requested the hints option
(minitoc(hints))          Some hints are eventually given below.
```

As you have requested the `hints` package option (which is set by default), some “hints” are eventually given in the `document.log` file. You can find them easily by searching for the string “`minitoc(hints)`” with a text editor.

I0050

```

Package minitoc Warning: I0050
(minitoc)                The required "LANGUAGE.mld" file is missing.
(minitoc)                The "LANGUAGE" language option
(minitoc)                will not be available.
(minitoc)                Please install it from a recent distribution
(minitoc)                or from the CTAN archives.

```

The *LANGUAGE.mld* has not been installed on your system. You should take it from a recent distribution or from the CTAN archives to complete your installation, else the *LANGUAGE* language option will not be available.

I0051

```

Package minitoc Warning: I0051
(minitoc)                The required "LANGUAGE.mlo" file is missing.
(minitoc)                The "LANGUAGE" language option
(minitoc)                will not be available.
(minitoc)                Please install it from a recent distribution
(minitoc)                or from the CTAN archives.

```

The *LANGUAGE.mlo* has not been installed on your system. You should take it from a recent distribution or from the CTAN archives to complete your installation, else the *LANGUAGE* language option will not be available.

I0052

```

Package minitoc Info: I0052
(minitoc)                \mtcsetoffset redefines the offset
(minitoc)                "OFFSET" as "VALUE" on input line LINE.

```

The `\mtcsetoffset` macro changes the value of the specified offset and forces it to *VALUE*.

I0053

```

Package minitoc Info: I0053
(minitoc)                You have loaded the PACK package;
(minitoc)                please be aware that the minitoc package
(minitoc)                facilities can not be used for new types
(minitoc)                of floats defined by the PACK package

```

The minitoc package does not manage new types of floats defined via the float [238], floatrow [223], trivfloat [375] and rotfloat [322] packages³.

³ As the trivfloat and rotfloat packages load the float package, this message will then appear twice!

5.2.2 Warning messages

W0001

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0001
(minitoc)                \chapter and \section are undefined.
(minitoc)                Cannot use \mtcfixglossary without
(minitoc)                optional argument [part].
```

The sectionning commands `\chapter` and `\section` are not defined (by the document class), hence the `\mtcfixglossary` macro cannot be used without an optional argument (try `\part`). This situation is very unlikely to happen, so also verify your document class.

W0002

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0002
(minitoc)                \chapter and \section are undefined.
(minitoc)                Cannot use \mtcfixindex without
(minitoc)                optional argument [part].
```

The sectionning commands `\chapter` and `\section` are not defined (by the document class), hence the `\mtcfixindex` macro cannot be used without an optional argument (try `\part`). This situation is very unlikely to happen, so also verify your document class.

W0003

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0003
(minitoc)                \firstchapteris is an obsolete (ignored)
(minitoc)                command on input line LINE.
```

You have used an obsolete command (`\firstchapteris`). You should remove it.

W0004

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0004
(minitoc)                \firstpartis is an obsolete (ignored)
(minitoc)                command on input line LINE.
```

You have used an obsolete command (`\firstpartis`). You should remove it.

W0005

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0005
(minitoc)                \firstsectionis is an obsolete (ignored)
(minitoc)                command on input line LINE.
```

You have used an obsolete command (`\firstsectionis`). You should remove it.

W0006

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0006
(minitoc)                \mtcfixglossary can only be used
(minitoc)                with the [part] optional argument,
(minitoc)                which becomes the default.
```

The `\mtcfixglossary` macro can only use `[part]` as optional argument (which becomes the default), because `\chapter` and `\section` are not defined.

W0007

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0007
(minitoc)                \mtcfixindex can only be used
(minitoc)                with the [part] optional argument,
(minitoc)                which becomes the default.
```

The `\mtcfixindex` macro can only use `[part]` as optional argument (which becomes the default), because `\chapter` and `\section` are not defined.

W0008

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0008
(minitoc)                No file FILE.
(minitoc)                MINILOFS NOT PREPARED on input line LINE.
```

The *FILE* cannot be found, because it has not been created by a `\dominilof` command. Please check if you have called `\dominilof` in the correct sequence of commands.

W0009

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0009
(minitoc)                No file FILE.
(minitoc)                MINILOTS NOT PREPARED on input line LINE.
```

The *FILE* cannot be found, because it has not been created by a `\dominilot` command. Please check if you have called `\dominilot` in the correct sequence of commands.

W0010

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0010
(minitoc)                No file FILE.
(minitoc)                MINITOCs NOT PREPARED on input line LINE.
```

The *FILE* cannot be found, because it has not been created by a `\dominitoc` command.
Please check if you have called `\dominitoc` in the correct sequence of commands.

W0011

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0011
(minitoc)                No file FILE.
(minitoc)                PARTLOFS NOT PREPARED on input line LINE.
```

The *FILE* cannot be found, because it has not been created by a `\dopartlof` command.
Please check if you have called `\dopartlof` in the correct sequence of commands.

W0012

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0012
(minitoc)                No file FILE.
(minitoc)                PARTLOTS NOT PREPARED on input line LINE.
```

The *FILE* cannot be found, because it has not been created by a `\dopartlot` command.
Please check if you have called `\dopartlot` in the correct sequence of commands.

W0013

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0013
(minitoc)                No file FILE.
(minitoc)                PARTTOCS NOT PREPARED on input line LINE.
```

The *FILE* cannot be found, because it has not been created by a `\doparttoc` command.
Please check if you have called `\doparttoc` in the correct sequence of commands.

W0014

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0014
(minitoc)                No file FILE.
(minitoc)                SECTLOFS NOT PREPARED on input line LINE.
```

The *FILE* cannot be found, because it has not been created by a `\dosectlof` command.
Please check if you have called `\dosectlof` in the correct sequence of commands.

W0015

```

Package minitoc Warning: W0015
(minitoc)                No file FILE.
(minitoc)                SECTLOTS NOT PREPARED on input line LINE.

```

The *FILE* cannot be found, because it has not been created by a `\dosectlot` command. Please check if you have called `\dosectlot` in the correct sequence of commands.

W0016

```

Package minitoc Warning: W0016
(minitoc)                No file FILE.
(minitoc)                SECTTOCS NOT PREPARED on input line LINE.

```

The *FILE* cannot be found, because it has not been created by a `\dosecttoc` command. Please check if you have called `\dosecttoc` in the correct sequence of commands.

W0017

```

Package minitoc Warning: W0017
(minitoc)                no section or chapter level macros available
(minitoc)                PLEASE VERIFY YOUR MAIN DOCUMENT CLASS.

```

The `\chapter` and `\section` sectionning commands are not defined. Your document class is likely without any sectionning command, so the minitoc package is pointless. *Verify your main document class.*

W0018

```

Package minitoc Warning: W0018
Package minitoc Warning: part level macros NOT available.

```

The `\part` sectionning command is not defined (by the document class), so the part level commands of the minitoc package are not available. It is a warning message because most classes with sectionning commands define the `\part` command, so you should verify which class you are using.

W0019

```

Package minitoc Warning: W0019
(minitoc)                Short extensions (MSDOS-like) will be used.
(minitoc)                ==> this version is configured for MSDOS-like
(minitoc)                (8+3) file names.

```

The autofiguration has found that the operating system uses file names with short extensions (8+3 scheme).

W0020

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0020
(minitoc)                You have forced the use of short extensions.
```

You have used the `shorttext` package option to force the use of short extensions (8+3 scheme). This action limits the number of usable mini-tables of each kind and may be problematic if you have more than 99 mini-tables of the same kind. If your operating system allows for long extensions, do not use the `shorttext` package option, except for testing purposes.

W0021

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0021
(minitoc)                Your version of latex.tex is obsolete.
(minitoc)                Trying to continue...
```

You are using an obsolete version of \LaTeX , but the minitoc package will try to continue. It would be better to update your \LaTeX installation.



W0022

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0022
Package minitoc Warning: Your version of latex.tex is very obsolete.
(minitoc)                Trying to continue... crossing fingers.
```

Your version of \LaTeX is very obsolete, and almost unusable with the minitoc package. You can try to continue the compilation, but you are urged to update your \LaTeX installation as soon as possible.



W0093

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0093
(minitoc)                Some "*.mld" or "*.mlo" files are missing
(minitoc)                in your installation.
(minitoc)                Search for the I0050 and I0051 info messages
(minitoc)                in the \jobname.log file.
(minitoc)                Please install the missing files from
(minitoc)                a recent distribution
(minitoc)                or from the CTAN archives.
```

Some .mld or .mlo files have not been installed on your system. Search for the I0050 and I0051 info messages in the *document.log* file to find which files are missing. You can retrieve them from a recent distribution or from the CTAN archives to complete your installation, else some language options will not be available. The list of the missing files is given in the W0094 warning message.

W0094

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0094
(minitoc)                Missing minitoc language file(s):
(minitoc)                ...
```

Some .mld or .mlo files have not been installed on your system. The list is given in the message.

W0095

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0095
(minitoc)                \chapter and \section are undefined.
(minitoc)                Cannot use \mtcfixnomenclature without
(minitoc)                optional argument [part].
```

The sectionning commands `\chapter` and `\section` are not defined (by the document class), hence the `\mtcfixnomenclature` macro cannot be used without an optional argument (try `\part`). This situation is very unlikely to happen, so also verify your document class.

W0096

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0096
(minitoc)                \mtcfixnomenclature can only be used
(minitoc)                with the [part] optional argument,
(minitoc)                which becomes the default.
```

The `\mtcfixnomenclature` macro can only use `[part]` as optional argument (which becomes the default), because `\chapter` and `\section` are not defined.

W0097

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0097
(minitoc(hints))        --- The flowfram package is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))        It is incompatible
(minitoc(hints))        with the minitoc package.
```

You are using the `flowfram` package which is *incompatible* with the `minitoc` package, because it has its own definitions for `minitocs`. The compilation can continue, but the result could be unsatisfactory.



5.2.2.1 Warning messages for hints

W0023

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0023
(minitoc(hints))          --- It may be the consequence
(minitoc(hints))          of loading the ‘hyperref’ package.
```

Some sectionning commands have been altered *after* the loading of the `minitoc` package. The `hyperref` package does that, but it is harmless. For other packages or user-made alterations, it is recommended to alter the sectionning commands only *before* loading the `minitoc` package. See section 2.17 on page 61.

W0024

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0024
(minitoc(hints))          Some hints have been written
(minitoc(hints))          in the document.log file.
```

The `hints` package option has detected some potential problems and written hints into the `document.log` file. You can search it for the “`minitoc(hints)`” string with a text editor.

W0025

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0025
(minitoc(hints))          --- The alphanum package is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))          It is incompatible
(minitoc(hints))          with the minitoc package.
```

You are using the `alphanum` package which is *incompatible* with the `minitoc` package. The compilation can continue, but the result could be unsatisfactory.



W0026

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0026
(minitoc(hints))          --- The amsart class is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))          It is incompatible
(minitoc(hints))          with the minitoc package.
```

You are using the `amsart` document class which is *incompatible* with the `minitoc` package. The compilation can continue, but the result could be unsatisfactory.



W0027

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0027
(minitoc(hints))      --- The amsproc class is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))      It is incompatible
(minitoc(hints))      with the minitoc package.
```

You are using the `amsproc` document class which is *incompatible* with the `minitoc` package. The compilation can continue, but the result could be unsatisfactory.



W0028

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0028
(minitoc(hints))      --- The \chapter command is altered
                        after minitoc.
```

Some packages alter the sectionning commands, like `\chapter`. Most of them should be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package. The `hyperref` package, even if it is loaded *before* the `minitoc` package (as recommended), alters the sectionning commands in an `\AtBeginDocument`, so this message is always printed when you use the `hyperref` package with `minitoc`, but then it is harmless.

W0029

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0029
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: --- The jura class is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))      It is incompatible
(minitoc(hints))      with the minitoc package.
```

You are using the `jura` document class which is *incompatible* with the `minitoc` package. The compilation can continue, but the result could be unsatisfactory.



W0030

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0030
(minitoc(hints))      --- The \part command is altered
                        after minitoc.
```

Some packages alter the sectionning commands, like `\part`. Most of them should be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package. The `hyperref` package, even if it is loaded *before* the `minitoc` package (as recommended), alters the sectionning commands in an `\AtBeginDocument`, so this message is always printed when you use the `hyperref` package with `minitoc`, but then it is harmless.

W0031

```

Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0031
(minitoc(hints))      --- The placeins package is loaded
(minitoc(hints))      without the section option,
(minitoc(hints))      but minitoc used the insection option
(minitoc(hints))      which implies it. Try to inverse the
(minitoc(hints))      loading order and use consistent options.
(minitoc(hints))      You may have got a message
(minitoc(hints))      ! LaTeX Error: Option clash for package placeins.

```

You are using the `placeins` package, but without its `section` option, while `minitoc` is called with its `insection` option which implies it. See page 29, near a “dangerous bend” symbol like the one shown in the margin.



W0032

```

Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0032
(minitoc(hints))      --- The placeins package loaded is
(minitoc(hints))      too old. You should use a version
(minitoc(hints))      dated of 2005/04/18 at least.

```

You are using an obsolete version of the `placeins` package. Please update it from the CTAN archives or a recent distribution.

W0033

```

Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0033
(minitoc(hints))      The caption package should be
(minitoc(hints))      loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.

```

The `caption` package alters some commands and must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package. See section 2.31 on page 71.

W0034

```

Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0034
(minitoc(hints))      The caption2 package should be
(minitoc(hints))      loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.

```

The `caption2` package alters some commands and must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package. See section 2.31 on page 71. Note that the `caption2` package is now obsolete; please use a recent version of the `caption` package.

W0035

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0035
(minitoc(hints))           The ccaption package should be
(minitoc(hints))           loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.
```

The ccaption package alters some commands and must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. See section 2.31 on page 71.

W0036

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0036
(minitoc(hints))           The mcaption package should be
(minitoc(hints))           loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.
```

The mcaption package alters some commands and must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. See section 2.31 on page 71.

W0037

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0037
(minitoc(hints))           The sectsty package should be
(minitoc(hints))           loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.
```

The sectsty package alters some commands and must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. See section 2.28 on page 69.

W0038

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0038
(minitoc(hints))           The varsects package should be
(minitoc(hints))           loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.
```

The varsects package alters some commands and must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. See section 2.33 on page 72.

W0039

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0039
(minitoc(hints))           --- The \section command is altered
                           after minitoc.
```


Some packages alter the sectioning commands, like `\section`. Most of them should be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package. The `hyperref` package, even if it is loaded *before* the `minitoc` package (as recommended), alters the sectioning commands in an `\AtBeginDocument`, so this message is always printed when you use the `hyperref` package with `minitoc`, but then it is harmless.

W0040

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0040
(minitoc(hints))      --- The titletoc package is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))      It is incompatible
(minitoc(hints))      with the minitoc package.
```

You are trying to use also the `titletoc` package, but it is *incompatible* with the `minitoc` package. See note [20](#) on page [52](#).



W0041

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0041
(minitoc(hints))      You have attempted to insert
                      empty minilofs.
```

You have attempted to insert empty minilofs. If you have used the `nocheckfiles` package option, you will get some ugly empty mini-tables, with only a title and two horizontal rules. By default (`checkfiles` package option), you will only get this harmless message.

W0042

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0042
(minitoc(hints))      You have attempted to insert
                      empty minilots.
```

You have attempted to insert empty minilots. If you have used the `nocheckfiles` package option, you will get some ugly empty mini-tables, with only a title and two horizontal rules. By default (`checkfiles` package option), you will only get this harmless message.

W0043

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0043
(minitoc(hints))      You have attempted to insert
                      empty minitocs.
```

You have attempted to insert empty minitocs. If you have used the `nocheckfiles` package option, you will get some ugly empty mini-tables, with only a title and two horizontal rules. By default (`checkfiles` package option), you will only get this harmless message.

W0044

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0044
(minitoc(hints))              You have attempted to insert
                               empty partlofs.
```

You have attempted to insert empty partlofs. If you have used the `nocheckfiles` package option, you will get some ugly empty mini-tables, with only a title and two horizontal rules. By default (`checkfiles` package option), you will only get this harmless message.

W0045

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0045
(minitoc(hints))              You have attempted to insert
                               empty partlots.
```

You have attempted to insert empty partlots. If you have used the `nocheckfiles` package option, you will get some ugly empty mini-tables, with only a title and two horizontal rules. By default (`checkfiles` package option), you will only get this harmless message.

W0046

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0046
(minitoc(hints))              You have attempted to insert
                               empty parttocs.
```

You have attempted to insert empty parttocs. If you have used the `nocheckfiles` package option, you will get some ugly empty mini-tables, with only a title and two horizontal rules. By default (`checkfiles` package option), you will only get this harmless message.

W0047

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0047
(minitoc(hints))              You have attempted to insert
                               empty sectlofs.
```

You have attempted to insert empty sectlofs. If you have used the `nocheckfiles` package option, you will get some ugly empty mini-tables, with only a title and two horizontal rules. By default (`checkfiles` package option), you will only get this harmless message.

W0048

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0048
(minitoc(hints))           You have attempted to insert
                           empty sectlots.
```

You have attempted to insert empty sectlots. If you have used the `nocheckfiles` package option, you will get some ugly empty mini-tables, with only a title and two horizontal rules. By default (`checkfiles` package option), you will only get this harmless message.

W0049

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0049
(minitoc(hints))           You have attempted to insert
                           empty secttocs.
```

You have attempted to insert empty secttocs. If you have used the `nocheckfiles` package option, you will get some ugly empty mini-tables, with only a title and two horizontal rules. By default (`checkfiles` package option), you will only get this harmless message.

W0050

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0050
(minitoc(hints))           You have invoked an obsolete (ignored)
                           command: \firstchapteris.
```

You have used an obsolete command (`\firstchapteris`). You should remove it.

W0051

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0051
(minitoc(hints))           You have invoked an obsolete (ignored)
                           command: \firstpartis.
```

You have used an obsolete command (`\firstpartis`). You should remove it.

W0052

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0052
(minitoc(hints))           You have invoked an obsolete (ignored)
                           command: \firstsectionis.
```

You have used an obsolete command (`\firstsectionis`). You should remove it.

W0053

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0053
(minitoc(hints))           You have used short extensions
(minitoc(hints))           and more than 99 chapters (NUMBER).
```

You have used short extensions (limited to 3 characters) and more than 99 chapters, so the number of the auxiliary file does not fit in the extension. *NUMBER* is the number of effective chapters in your document. See section 1.9 on page 53.

W0054

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0054
(minitoc(hints))           You have used short extensions
(minitoc(hints))           and more than 99 parts (NUMBER).
```

You have used short extensions (limited to 3 characters) and more than 99 parts, so the number of the auxiliary file does not fit in the extension. *NUMBER* is the number of effective parts in your document. See section 1.9 on page 53.

W0055

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0055
(minitoc(hints))           You have used short extensions
(minitoc(hints))           and more than 99 sections (NUMBER).
```

You have used short extensions (limited to 3 characters) and more than 99 sections, so the number of the auxiliary file does not fit in the extension. *NUMBER* is the number of effective sections in your document. See section 1.9 on page 53.

W0056

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0056
(minitoc(hints))           You are using \dosectlof and/or
(minitoc(hints))           \dosectlot, \sectlof and/or \sectlot,
(minitoc(hints))           hence the ‘‘insection’’ package
(minitoc(hints))           option is recommended.
```

You are asking for mini-lists of figures or tables at the section level. But as floats (figures and tables) could drift somewhere outside the printing area of the text of the section, the sectlofs and sectlots can be rather strange. In order to have a better behaviour of these mini-tables, it may be useful to add the *insection* package option. See page 29.

W0057

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0057
(minitoc(hints))              You have used \minilof,
(minitoc(hints))              but not \dominilof.
```

You have attempted to insert some minilofs (via `\minilof`), but the minilofs have not been prepared (via `\dominilof`).

W0058

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0058
(minitoc(hints))              You have used \minilot,
(minitoc(hints))              but not \dominilot.
```

You have attempted to insert some minilots (via `\minilot`), but the minilots have not been prepared (via `\dominilot`).

W0059

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0059
(minitoc(hints))              You have used \minitoc,
(minitoc(hints))              but not \dominitoc.
```

You have attempted to insert some minitocs (via `\minitoc`), but the minitocs have not been prepared (via `\dominitoc`).

W0060

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0060
(minitoc(hints))              You have used \partlof,
(minitoc(hints))              but not \dopartlof.
```

You have attempted to insert some partlofs (via `\partlof`), but the partlofs have not been prepared (via `\dopartlof`).

W0061

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0061
(minitoc(hints))              You have used \partlot,
(minitoc(hints))              but not \dopartlot.
```

You have attempted to insert some partlots (via `\partlot`), but the partlots have not been prepared (via `\dopartlot`).

W0062

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0062
(minitoc(hints))           You have used \parttoc,
(minitoc(hints))           but not \doparttoc.
```

You have attempted to insert some parttocs (via `\parttoc`), but the parttocs have not been prepared (via `\doparttoc`).

W0063

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0063
(minitoc(hints))           You have used \sectlof,
(minitoc(hints))           but not \dosectlof.
```

You have attempted to insert some sectlofs (via `\sectlof`), but the sectlofs have not been prepared (via `\dosectlof`).

W0064

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0064
(minitoc(hints))           You have used \sectlot,
(minitoc(hints))           but not \dosectlot.
```

You have attempted to insert some sectlots (via `\sectlot`), but the sectlots have not been prepared (via `\dosectlot`).

W0065

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0065
(minitoc(hints))           You have used \secttoc,
(minitoc(hints))           but not \dosecttoc.
```

You have attempted to insert some secttocs (via `\secttoc`), but the secttocs have not been prepared (via `\dosecttoc`).

W0066

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0066
(minitoc(hints))           You have used \minilof,
(minitoc(hints))           but not \listoffigures nor
(minitoc(hints))           \fakelistoffigures.
```

You have tried to insert some minilofs (via `\minilof`), but the *document.lof* file is not available because you have not invoked `\listoffigures` nor `\fakelistoffigures`.

W0067

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0067
(minitoc(hints))           You have used \minilot but not
(minitoc(hints))           \listoftables nor
(minitoc(hints))           \fakelistoftables.
```

You have tried to insert some minilots (via `\minilot`), but the *document.lot* file is not available because you have not invoked `\listoftables` nor `\fakelistoftables`.

W0068

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0068
(minitoc(hints))           You have used \minitoc but not
(minitoc(hints))           \tableofcontents
(minitoc(hints))           nor \faketableofcontents.
```

You have tried to insert some minitocs (via `\minitoc`), but the *document.toc* file is not available because you have not invoked `\tableofcontents` nor `\faketableofcontents`.

W0069

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0069
(minitoc(hints))           You have used \partlof but not
(minitoc(hints))           \listoffigures
(minitoc(hints))           nor \fakelistoffigures.
```

You have tried to insert some partlofs (via `\partlof`), but the *document.lof* file is not available because you have not invoked `\listoffigures` nor `\fakelistoffigures`.

W0070

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0070
(minitoc(hints))           You have used \partlot but not
(minitoc(hints))           \listoftables
(minitoc(hints))           nor \fakelistoftables.
```

You have tried to insert some partlots (via `\partlot`), but the *document.lot* file is not available because you have not invoked `\listoftables` nor `\fakelistoftables`.

W0071

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0071
(minitoc(hints))           You have used \parttoc but not
(minitoc(hints))           \tableofcontents
(minitoc(hints))           nor \faketableofcontents.
```

You have tried to insert some parttocs (via `\parttoc`), but the *document.toc* file is not available because you have not invoked `\tableofcontents` nor `\faketableofcontents`.

W0072

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0072
(minitoc(hints))           You have used \sectlof but not
(minitoc(hints))           \listoffigures
(minitoc(hints))           nor \fakelistoffigures.
```

You have tried to insert some sectlofs (via `\sectlof`), but the *document.lof* file is not available because you have not invoked `\listoffigures` nor `\fakelistoffigures`.

W0073

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0073
(minitoc(hints))           You have used \sectlot but not
(minitoc(hints))           \listoftables
(minitoc(hints))           nor \fakelistoftables.
```

You have tried to insert some sectlots (via `\sectlot`), but the *document.lot* file is not available because you have not invoked `\listoftables` nor `\fakelistoftables`.

W0074

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0074
(minitoc(hints))           You have used \secttoc but not
(minitoc(hints))           \tableofcontents
(minitoc(hints))           nor \faketableofcontents.
```

You have tried to insert some secttocs (via `\secttoc`), but the *document.toc* file is not available because you have not invoked `\tableofcontents` nor `\faketableofcontents`.

W0075

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0075
(minitoc(hints))              You have used \doparttoc
(minitoc(hints))              but not \parttoc.
```

You have prepared some parttocs (via `\doparttoc`), but you never used one of them.

W0076

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0076
(minitoc(hints))              You have used \dopartlof
(minitoc(hints))              but not \partlof.
```

You have prepared some partlofs (via `\dopartlof`), but you never used one of them.

W0077

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0077
(minitoc(hints))              You have used \dopartlot
(minitoc(hints))              but not \partlot.
```

You have prepared some partlots (via `\dopartlot`), but you never used one of them.

W0078

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0078
(minitoc(hints))              You have used \dominitoc
(minitoc(hints))              but not \minitoc.
```

You have prepared some minitocs (via `\dominitoc`), but you never used one of them.

W0079

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0079
(minitoc(hints))              You have used \dominilof
(minitoc(hints))              but not \minilof.
```

You have prepared some minilofs (via `\dominilof`), but you never used one of them.

W0080

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0080
(minitoc(hints))           You have used \dominilot
(minitoc(hints))           but not \minilot.
```

You have prepared some minilots (via `\dominilot`), but you never used one of them.

W0081

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0081
(minitoc(hints))           You have used \dosecttoc
(minitoc(hints))           but not \secttoc.
```

You have prepared some secttocs (via `\dosecttoc`), but you never used one of them.

W0082

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0082
(minitoc(hints))           You have used \dosectlof
(minitoc(hints))           but not \sectlof.
```

You have prepared some sectlofs (via `\dosectlof`), but you never used one of them.

W0083

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0083
(minitoc(hints))           You have used \dosectlot
(minitoc(hints))           but not \sectlot.
```

You have prepared some sectlots (via `\dosectlot`), but you never used one of them.

W0084

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0084
(minitoc(hints))           --- The placeins package is loaded
(minitoc(hints))           with the above option,
(minitoc(hints))           but minitoc used the insection option
(minitoc(hints))           which is incompatible with it.
(minitoc(hints))           Try to remove the above option and
(minitoc(hints))           use consistent options.
```

You are using the `placeins` package, but with its `above` option, while `minitoc` is called with its `insection` option which is *incompatible* with it. See page 29, near a “dangerous bend” symbol.



W0085

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0085
(minitoc(hints))      --- The placeins package is loaded
(minitoc(hints))      with the below option,
(minitoc(hints))      but minitoc used the insection option
(minitoc(hints))      which is incompatible with it.
(minitoc(hints))      Try to remove the below option
(minitoc(hints))      and use consistent options.
```

You are using the `placeins` package, but with its `below` option, while `minitoc` is called with its `insection` option which is *incompatible* with it. See page 29, near a “dangerous bend” symbol.



W0086

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0086
(minitoc(hints))      The fncychap package should be
(minitoc(hints))      loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.
```

The `fncychap` package alters some commands and must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package. See section 2.38 on page 74.

W0087

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0087
(minitoc(hints))      The quotchap package should be
(minitoc(hints))      loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.
```

The `quotchap` package alters some commands and must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package. See section 2.39 on page 74.

W0088

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0088
(minitoc(hints))      The romannum package should be
(minitoc(hints))      loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.
```

The `romannum` package alters the numbering of some sectioning commands and must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package. See section 2.40 on page 75.

W0089

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0089
(minitoc(hints))              The sfheaders package should be
(minitoc(hints))              loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.
```

The `sfheaders` package alters the sectionning commands and must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package. See section [2.41](#) on page [75](#).

W0090

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0090
(minitoc(hints))              The alnumsec package should be
(minitoc(hints))              loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.
```

The `alnumsec` package alters the sectionning commands and must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package. See section [2.42](#) on page [75](#).

W0091

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0091
(minitoc(hints))              The captcont package should be
(minitoc(hints))              loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.
```

The `captcont` package alters the caption commands and must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package. See section [2.43](#) on page [75](#).

W0092

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0092
(minitoc(hints))              The hangcaption package should be
(minitoc(hints))              loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.
```

The `hangcaption` package alters some commands and must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package. See section [2.47](#) on page [78](#).

5.2.3 Error messages

E0001

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0001
(minitoc)                But \part is undefined.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
\mtcfixglossary not usable
```

There are no adequate sectionning command available to use the `\mtcfixglossary` macro; even `\part` is undefined. Verify your document class.

E0002

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0002
(minitoc)                But \part is undefined.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
\mtcfixindex not usable
```

There are no adequate sectionning command available to use the `\mtcfixindex` macro; even `\part` is undefined. Verify your document class.

E0003

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0003
(minitoc)                Imbrication of mtchideinmainlof environments.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
The hiding in main LoF could be incorrect
```

Some `mtchideinmainlof` environments are incorrectly imbricated (overlapping), so the hiding in the main list of figures will be strange.

E0004

```

! Package minitoc Error: E0004
(minitoc)           Imbrication of mtchideinmainlot environments.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
The hiding in main LoT could be incorrect

```

Some `mtchideinmainlot` environments are incorrectly imbricated (overlapping), so the hiding in the main list of tables will be strange.

E0005

```

! Package minitoc Error: E0005
(minitoc)           Imbrication of mtchideinmaintoc environments.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
The hiding in main ToC could be incorrect

```

Some `mtchideinmaintoc` environments are incorrectly imbricated (overlapping), so the hiding in the main table of contents will be strange.

E0006

```

! Package minitoc Error: E0006
(minitoc)           LANGUAGE is not a known language,
(minitoc)           LANGUAGE.mld not found.
(minitoc)           Command ignored.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
See the minitoc documentation.
Correct the source using a valid language name.
Press RETURN

```

The `\mtcselectlanguage` macro has attempted to load the `LANGUAGE.mld` minitoc language definition file, but has not found it. First, verify the name of the language (likely to be misspelt), then check if your installation contains *all* the many distributed `.mld` files of the minitoc package, at the right place. If it is a local `.mld` file, it should be installed in the right place (in a local hierarchy) or be in the working directory.

E0007

```

! Package minitoc Error: E0007
(minitoc)          LANGUAGE is not a known minitoc
(minitoc)          language object file (.mlo),
(minitoc)          LANGUAGE.mlo not found.
(minitoc)          Command ignored.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
See the minitoc documentation.
Correct the source using a valid language name.
Press RETURN

```

The `\mtcselectlanguage` macro has attempted to load indirectly the `LANGUAGE.mlo` minitoc language object file, but has not found it. First, verify the name of the language (likely to be misspelt), then check if your installation contains *all* the many distributed `.mlo` files of the minitoc package, at the right place. If it is a local `.mlo` file, it should be installed in the right place (in a local hierarchy) or be in the working directory.

E0008

```

! Package minitoc Error: E0008
(minitoc)          \mtcsetdepth attempts to use
(minitoc)          an undefined counter (ARG/depth).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

You are trying to set the depth for an inexistent or undefined type of mini-table. Verify the type given and the document class, and the loaded packages.

E0009

```

! Package minitoc Error: E0009
(minitoc)          \mtcsetdepth has a wrong first argument
(minitoc)          (ARGI).
(minitoc)          It should be a mini-table type
(minitoc)          (parttoc...sectlot).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

The first argument of the `\mtcsetdepth` macro is incorrect. It should be a type of mini-table (`parttoc`, ..., `sectlot`).

E0010

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0010
(minitoc) \mtcsetdepth: Illegal type of table (ARG1).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

The first argument of the `\mtcsetdepth` macro is incorrect. It should be a mini-table type (`parttoc`, ..., `sectlot`).

E0011

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0011
(minitoc) \mtcsetfeature has a wrong first argument
(minitoc) (ARG1).
(minitoc) It should be a mini-table type
(minitoc) (parttoc...sectlot).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

The first argument of the `\mtcsetfeature` macro is incorrect. It should be a mini-table type (`parttoc`, ..., `sectlot`).

E0012

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0012
(minitoc) \mtcsetfeature has a wrong second argument
(minitoc) (ARG2).
(minitoc) It should be a feature param
(minitoc) (before, after, open, close, pagestyle).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

The second argument of the `\mtcsetfeature` macro is incorrect. It should be `before`, `after`, `open`, `close`, or `thispagestyle`.

E0013

```

! Package minitoc Error: E0013
(minitoc)          \mtcsetfont has a wrong first argument
(minitoc)          (arg1).
(minitoc)          It should be a mini-table type
(minitoc)          (parttoc...sectlot).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

The first argument of `\mtcsetfont` is incorrect; it should be the type of a mini-table (`parttoc ...`, `sectlot`).

E0014

```

! Package minitoc Error: E0014
(minitoc)          \mtcsetfont has a wrong second argument
(minitoc)          (ARG2).
(minitoc)          It should be a sectionning level
(minitoc)          (part...subparagraph) or * .
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

The second argument of `\mtcsetfont` is incorrect; it should be a sectionning level (i.e., a sectionning command without its backslash), like `part ...`, `subparagraph`.

E0015

```

! Package minitoc Error: E0015
(minitoc)          \mtcsetformat has a wrong first argument
(minitoc)          (ARG1).
(minitoc)          It should be a mini-table type
(minitoc)          (parttoc...sectlot).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

The first argument of a `\mtcsetformat` macro is incorrect. It should be a mini-table type (`parttoc`, `...`, `sectlot`).

E0016

```

! Package minitoc Error: E0016
(minitoc)          \mtcsetformat has a wrong second argument
(minitoc)          (ARG2).
(minitoc)          It should be a formatting param choosen from:
(minitoc)          pagenumwidth, tocrightmargin, dotinterval.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

The second argument of the `\mtcsetformat` macro is wrong. It should be one of the following keywords: `pagenumwidth`, `tocrightmargin`, or `dotinterval`.

E0017

```

! Package minitoc Error: E0017
(minitoc)          \mtcsetpagenumbers has a wrong first
(minitoc)          argument (ARG1)..
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
It should be a mini-table type
(minitoc)          (parttoc...sectlot)
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

The first argument of the `\mtcsetpagenumbers` macro must be a type of minitable (`parttoc`, ..., `sectlot`).

E0018

```

! Package minitoc Error: E0018
(minitoc)          \mtcsetpagenumbers has a wrong second
(minitoc)          argument (ARG2).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
It should be a boolean value (0/1, yes/no, on/off, ...)
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

The second argument of the `\mtcsetpagenumbers` must be a keyword chosen in the following lists⁴ :

- on, ON, yes, YES, y, Y, true, TRUE, t, T, vrai, VRAI, v, V, oui, OUI, o, O, +, and 1;
- off, OFF, no, NO, n, N, false, FALSE, faux, FAUX, f, F, non, NON, -, and 0.

E0019

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0019
(minitoc)          \mtcsetrules has a wrong first argument
(minitoc)          (ARG1).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
It should be a mini-table type
(minitoc)          (parttoc...sectlot)
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

The first argument of the `\mtcsetrules` is incorrect. It should be a mini-table type (`parttoc`, ..., `sectlot`).

E0020

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0020
(minitoc)          \mtcsetrules has a wrong second argument
(minitoc)          (ARG2).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
It should be a boolean value (0/1, yes/no, on/off, ...)
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

The second argument of the `\mtcsetrules` must be a keyword chosen in the following lists⁴ :

- on, ON, yes, YES, y, Y, true, TRUE, t, T, vrai, VRAI, v, V, oui, OUI, o, O, +, and 1;
- off, OFF, no, NO, n, N, false, FALSE, faux, FAUX, f, F, non, NON, -, and 0.

⁴ O and o are the letter O, 0 is the zero digit.

E0021

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0021
(minitoc)          \mtcsettitle has a wrong first argument
(minitoc)          (ARG1).
(minitoc)          It should be a mini-table type
(minitoc)          (parttoc...sectlot).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

The first argument of a `\mtcsettitle` macro is incorrect; it should be a mini-table type (`parttoc`, ..., `sectlot`).

E0022

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0022
(minitoc)          \mtcsettitlefont has a wrong first argument
(minitoc)          (ARG1).
(minitoc)          It should be a mini-table type
(minitoc)          (parttoc...sectlot).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

The first argument of the `\mtcsettitlefont` must be a mini-table type. You likely misspelt it.

E0023

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0023
(minitoc)          The macro \mtcsetfeature has incompatible
(minitoc)          first (ARG1) and second (ARG2) arguments.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

The first and second arguments of the `\mtcsetfeature` macro are *incompatible*. You should verify them.



E0024

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0024
(minitoc)                The macro \mtcsetfont has incompatible
(minitoc)                first (ARG1) and second (ARG2) arguments.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

The `\mtcsetfont` macro takes a mini-table type as first argument, a sectionning level as second argument (or a star), and a sequence of font commands as third argument. The second argument must have a lower level than the first one (i.e., it is meaningless to specify the font for the chapter level entries for a minitoc or a secttoc).

E0025

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0025
(minitoc)                The macro \mtcsetformat has incompatible
(minitoc)                first (ARG1) and second (ARG2) arguments.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

The first and second arguments of a `\mtcsetformat` macro are *incompatible*. One is likely to be misspelt.



E0026

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0026
(minitoc)                The optional argument of \mtcfixglossary
(minitoc)                is wrong.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
It must be omitted (chapter), or be part, chapter or section
```

The optional argument of the `\mtcfixglossary` macro is incorrect: it should be omitted (then it defaults to chapter) or be part, chapter, or section.

E0027

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0027
(minitoc)          The optional argument of \mtcfixindex
(minitoc)          is wrong.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
It must be omitted (chapter), or be part, chapter or section
```

The optional argument of the `\mtcfixindex` macro is incorrect: it should be omitted (then it defaults to chapter) or be part, chapter, or section.

E0028

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0028
(minitoc)          Unable to patch the memoir class.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
So it remains incompatible. Sorry.
```

Your version of the memoir class is really *incompatible* with the minitoc package and cannot be automatically patched. Please update the memoir class and/or the minitoc package from the CTAN archives or a recent distribution.



E0029

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0029
(minitoc)          Unbalanced mtchideinmainlof environment.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
The hiding in main LoF could be incorrect
```

A `mtchideinmainlof` environment is unbalanced, so the hiding in the main list of figures could be incorrect.

E0030

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0030
(minitoc)          Unbalanced mtchideinmainlot environment.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
The hiding in main LoT could be incorrect
```

A `mtchideinmainlot` environment is unbalanced, so the hiding in the main list of tables could be incorrect.

E0031

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0031
(minitoc)                Unbalanced mtchideinmaintoc environment.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
The hiding in main ToC could be incorrect
```

A `mtchideinmaintoc` environment is unbalanced, so the hiding in the main table of contents could be incorrect.

E0032

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0032
(minitoc)                You are using the \mtcloadmlo command
(minitoc)                outside of a .mld file.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
It will be ignored
```

It is *forbidden* to use the `\mtcloadmlo` macro outside of a `.mld` file (which is loaded via `\mtcselectlanguage`). The command is ignored.

E0033

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0033
(minitoc)                The macro \mtcsettitle uses
(minitoc)                an illegal type of table (ARG1).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

The first argument of a minitoc macro is incorrect. It should be a type of mini-table, like `parttoc`, `partlof`, `partlot`, `minitoc`, `minilof`, `minilot`, `secttoc`, `sectlof`, or `sectlot`.

E0034

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0034
(minitoc)          The macro \mtcsettitlefont uses
(minitoc)          an illegal type of table (ARG1).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

The first argument of a minitoc macro is incorrect. It should be a type of mini-table, like parttoc, partlof, partlot, minitoc, minilof, minilot, secttoc, sectlof, or sectlot.

E0035

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0035
(minitoc)          You have used the 'insection' option in
(minitoc)          a document where chapters are defined.
(minitoc)          This is not compatible: option ignored.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Remove this option.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

The insection package option is intended for article-like document classes, to prevent floats from drifting out of their section. It is pointless for book-like or report-like document classes, where floats are contained in their chapter.

E0036

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0036
(minitoc)          Your minitoc installation is incomplete.
(minitoc)          The minitoc language object file (.mld),
(minitoc)          english.mld is not found.
(minitoc)          We will try to continue with default values.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
See the minitoc documentation.
Please fix your minitoc installation.
Type <return> to continue
```

The english.mld language definition file can not be found. You should verify your installation of the minitoc package. As an interim solution, we provide the missing english titles.

E0037

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0037
(minitoc)           The \COMMAND command is incompatible
(minitoc)           with the document class.
```

See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
 Type H <return> for immediate help.
 ...

```
1.39 \dominitoc[r]
```

```
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

You have used a preparation or insertion command (*\COMMAND*) which is not available for the document class you are using. Please verify that the document class is compatible with minitoc and if the level of the mini-table is available in the document class (section-level mini-tables are not available in book- or report-like classes, chapter-level mini-tables are not available in article-like classes, mini-tables are not available in letter-like classes, etc.).

E0038

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0038
(minitoc)           Your minitoc installation is incomplete.
(minitoc)           A mandatory minitoc language object file,
(minitoc)           LANGUAGE.mld, is not found.
(minitoc)           We will try to continue with
(minitoc)           current/default values.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
See the minitoc documentation.
Please fix your minitoc installation.
Type <return> to continue
```

The mandatory *LANGUAGE.mld* language definition file can not be found. You should verify your installation of the minitoc package. As an interim solution, we provide the default english titles.

E0039

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0039
(minitoc)                But \part is undefined.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
\mtcfixnomenclature not usable
```

There are no adequate sectionning command available to use the `\mtcfixnomenclature` macro; even `\part` is undefined. Verify your document class.

E0040

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0040
(minitoc)                The optional argument of \mtcfixnomenclature
(minitoc)                is wrong.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
It must be omitted (chapter), or be part, chapter or section
```

The optional argument of the `\mtcfixnomenclature` macro is incorrect: it should be omitted (then it defaults to `chapter`) or be `part`, `chapter`, or `section`.

E0041

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0041
(minitoc)                \mtcsetoffset attempts to use
(minitoc)                an undefined mini-table type (ARG1).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

You are trying to set the offset for an inexistent or undefined type of mini-table. Verify the type given and the document class, and the loaded packages.

E0042

```

! Package minitoc Error: E0042
(minitoc)          \mtcsetoffset has a wrong first argument
(minitoc)          (ARG1).
(minitoc)          It should be a mini-table type
(minitoc)          (parttoc...sectlot).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

The first argument of the `\mtcsetoffset` macro is incorrect. It should be a type of mini-table (`parttoc`, ..., `sectlot`).

E0043

```

! Package minitoc Error: E0043
(minitoc)          \mtcsetoffset: Illegal type of table (ARG1).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

The first argument of the `\mtcsetoffset` macro is incorrect. It should be a mini-table type (`parttoc`, ..., `sectlot`).

5.3 Messages from the `mtcoff` package

The `mtcoff` package gives only warning messages; their numbers begin with F.

5.3.1 Warning messages

F0001

```

Package mtcoff Warning: F0001
(mtcoff)          \addstarredchapter{...} should be replaced
(mtcoff)          by \addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{...}
(mtcoff)          on input line LINE.

```

The `\addstarredchapter` command is specific of the `minitoc` package and simulated by the `mtcoff` package. If necessary, it should be replaced by the equivalent `\addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{...}` command.

F0002

```
Package mtcoff Warning: F0002
(mtcff)                \addstarredpart{...} should be replaced
(mtcff)                by \addcontentsline{toc}{part}{...}
(mtcff)                on input line LINE.
```

The `\addstarredpart` command is specific of the `minitoc` package and simulated by the `mtcoff` package. If necessary, it should be replaced by the equivalent `\addcontentsline{toc}{part}{...}` command.

F0003

```
Package mtcoff Warning: F0003
(mtcff)                \addstarredsection{...} should be replaced
(mtcff)                by \addcontentsline{toc}{section}{...}
(mtcff)                on input line LINE.
```

The `\addstarredsection` command is specific of the `minitoc` package and simulated by the `mtcoff` package. If necessary, it should be replaced by the equivalent `\addcontentsline{toc}{section}{...}` command.

F0004

```
Package mtcoff Warning: F0004
(mtcff)                \mtcaddchapter{...} should be replaced
(mtcff)                by \addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{...}
(mtcff)                on input line LINE.
```

The `\mtcaddchapter` command is specific of the `minitoc` package and simulated by the `mtcoff` package. If necessary, it should be replaced by the equivalent `\addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{...}` command.

F0005

```
Package mtcoff Warning: F0005
(mtcff)                \mtcaddpart{...} should be replaced
(mtcff)                by \addcontentsline{toc}{part}{...}
(mtcff)                on input line LINE.
```

The `\mtcaddpart` command is specific of the `minitoc` package and simulated by the `mtcoff` package. If necessary, it should be replaced by the equivalent `\addcontentsline{toc}{part}{...}` command.

F0006

```
Package mtcoff Warning: F0006
(mtcoff)                \mtcaddsection{...} should be replaced
(mtcoff)                by \addcontentsline{toc}{section}{...}
(mtcoff)                on input line LINE.
```

The `\mtcaddsection` command is specific of the `minitoc` package and simulated by the `mtcoff` package. If necessary, it should be replaced by the equivalent `\addcontentsline{toc}{section}{...}` command.

F0007

```
Package mtcoff Warning: F0007
(mtcoff)                You should scan (backwards) your .log
(mtcoff)                file to find some commands needing
(mtcoff)                to be replaced if you decide to
(mtcoff)                DEFINITELY stop using minitoc for this
(mtcoff)                document. It is more wise to keep the
(mtcoff)                \usepackage lines for minitoc and mtcoff
(mtcoff)                and to comment out only one of them.
```

You have replaced the use of the `minitoc` package by its substitute `mtcoff`. It is recommended to keep the `\usepackage` lines for both `minitoc` and `mtcoff` and to comment out only one of them. If you decide to *definitely* stop using `minitoc` for this document, it is wise to scan (backwards) the *document.log* file (after a compilation using `mtcoff`) to locate some commands needing to be replaced.

F0008

```
Package mtcoff Warning: F0008
(mtcoff)                The macro \kernafterSTRING
(mtcoff)                should not be used out of context
(mtcoff)                on line LINE.
```

You are using one of the `\kernafterSTRING` macros with the `mtcoff` package. The result may be unpredictable. You can only redefine these macros to adjust the position of the bottom rule of a type of minitables. Any other usage is meaningless without the `minitoc` package.

F0009

```
Package mtcoff Warning: F0009
(mtcoff)                The macro \STRINGoffset
(mtcoff)                should not be used out of context
(mtcoff)                on line LINE.
```

You are using one of the `\STRINGoffset` macros with the `mtcoff` package. The result may be unpredictable. You can only redefine these macros to adjust the horizontal position of a type of minitables. Any other usage is meaningless without the `minitoc` package.

5.4 Message from the `mtcpatchmem` package

M0001

Package `mtcpatchmem` Info: M0001

Package `mtcpatchmem` Info: `mtcpatchmem` package to patch the `memoir` class.

You are using a version of the `memoir` class which needs a correction. This correction has been automatically loaded if necessary. Very recent versions should not need it anymore. See chapter [12](#) on page [459](#).

Chapter 6

Jargon

Contents

“.”	207	E	217	J	222	O	234	T	239
A	209	F	219	K	223	P	235	U	241
B	211	G	221	L	223	Q	237	V	242
C	212	H	221	M	225	R	237	W	242
D	216	I	222	N	231	S	237	X	242

Tables

6.1	Category codes	213	6.8	Most common font series	232
6.2	Encoding schemes implemented in CJK	214	6.9	Most common font shapes	233
6.3	Standard document classes	215	6.10	The five font parameters for some fonts	233
6.4	Depths for sectionning commands	216	6.11	Author commands for fonts	233
6.5	Various encodings	218	6.12	Some systems derived from T _E X and L ^A T _E X	235
6.6	Most common font encodings	232			
6.7	Most common font families	232			

This chapter attempts to explain some terms used in this documentation, and describes some useful files and suffixes. Many data come from the documentations of various cited packages (often from the abstract), and from [4, 5, 117, 120, 206, 207, 220, 227–229, 243, 244, 247, 260, 270, 279, 280, 354].



.aux The suffix of the name for an *auxiliary* file of a L^AT_EX document. It carries some information from a L^AT_EX run to the next.

.cls	The suffix for the name of a document class file, loaded via <code>\documentclass</code> .
.dtx	The suffix of the name for a documented source file of a \LaTeX package or class. This file is often associated with a <code>.ins</code> file to generate the package or class. Compiling a <code>.dtx</code> file with \LaTeX generates the documentation.
.F	The base suffix of the name for a minilof file when short extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is <code>.Fnn</code> where <i>nn</i> is the absolute number of the minilof.
.G	The base suffix of the name for a partlof file when short extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is <code>.Gnn</code> where <i>nn</i> is the absolute number of the partlof.
.H	The base suffix of the name for a sectlof file when short extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is <code>.Hnn</code> where <i>nn</i> is the absolute number of the sectlof.
.ins	The suffix of the name for an installation file of a \LaTeX package or class. When compiled with \LaTeX , it extracts the files of the package or class from an <code>.dtx</code> file.
.lof	The suffix of the name of the “list of figures” file.
.log	The suffix of the name of the log file (compilation report).
.lot	The suffix of the name of the “list of tables” file.
.M	The base suffix of the name for a minitoc file when short extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is <code>.Mnn</code> where <i>nn</i> is the absolute number of the minitoc.
.maf	The suffix of the name of the file generated by the <code>listfiles</code> package option. This file contains the list of the minitoc auxiliary files.
.mld	The suffix for the name of a minitoc language definition file. A minitoc language definition file contains the definitions for the mini-table titles in a given language.
.mlf	The base suffix of the name for a minilof file when long extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is <code>.mlfnn</code> where <i>nn</i> is the absolute number of the minilof.
.mlo	The suffix for the name of a minitoc language object file. For some exotic languages, the encoding makes not easy to put directly the titles in a <code>.mld</code> file; hence the <code>.mld</code> file must load a <code>.mlo</code> file.
.mlt	The base suffix of the name for a minilot file when long extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is <code>.mltτnn</code> where <i>nn</i> is the absolute number of the minilot.
.mtc	The base suffix of the name for a minitoc file when long extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is <code>.mtcτnn</code> where <i>nn</i> is the absolute number of the minitoc.
.P	The base suffix of the name for a parttoc file when short extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is <code>.Pnn</code> where <i>nn</i> is the absolute number of the parttoc.
.plf	The base suffix of the name for a partlof file when long extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is <code>.plfnn</code> where <i>nn</i> is the absolute number of the partlof.
.plt	The base suffix of the name for a partlot file when long extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is <code>.pltτnn</code> where <i>nn</i> is the absolute number of the partlot.
.ptc	The base suffix of the name for a parttoc file when long extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is <code>.ptcτnn</code> where <i>nn</i> is the absolute number of the parttoc.

- .S** The base suffix of the name for a secttoc file when short extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is *.Snn* where *nn* is the absolute number of the secttoc.
- .slf** The base suffix of the name for a sectlof file when long extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is *.slfnn* where *nn* is the absolute number of the sectlof.
- .slt** The base suffix of the name for a sectlot file when long extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is *.sltnn* where *nn* is the absolute number of the sectlot.
- .stc** The base suffix of the name for a secttoc file when long extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is *.stcnn* where *nn* is the absolute number of the secttoc.
- .sty** The suffix for the name of a package file, loaded via `\usepackage`.
- .T** The base suffix of the name for a minilot file when short extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is *.Tnn* where *nn* is the absolute number of the minilot.
- .tex** The suffix of the name of a \TeX or \LaTeX normal source file.
- .toc** The suffix of the name of the “table of contents” file.
- .U** The base suffix of the name for a partlot file when short extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is *.Unn* where *nn* is the absolute number of the partlot.
- .V** The base suffix of the name for a sectlot file when short extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is *.Vnn* where *nn* is the absolute number of the sectlot.



absolute numbering The auxiliary files for the mini-tables have a suffix containing an *absolute number*, i.e., the number is unique and always increasing from the first part, chapter or section; this has solved some obscure problems, and also made obsolete some commands, like `\firstpartis`, `\firstchapteris`, and `\firstsectionis`. The absolute numbering has been introduced in version #23.

abstract The abstract package [364] (by Peter R. WILSON) needs some precautions if used with its `addtotoc` option.

I0040

adjustment Some `minitoc` commands and environments are known as “adjustment commands” because they are used in some circumstances to “adjust” a counter or to alter the displaying of contents files. These commands and environments are `\adjustptc`, `\adjustmtc`, `\adjuststc`, `\decrementptc`, `\decrementmtc`, `\decrementstc`, `\incrementptc`, `\incrementmtc`, `\incrementstc`, `\mtcaddpart`, `\mtcaddchapter`, `\mtcaddsection`, `\mtcfixglossary`, `\mtcfixindex`, `\mtcfixnomenclature`, `mtchideinmaintoc`, `mtchideinmainlof`, and `mtchideinmainlot`. It is *strongly recommended* that the user verifies the result of such adjustments in the final document.



after A type of *feature* (see this term) which is executed *after* a given type of mini-table. Look at the documentation of the `\mtcsetfeature` command, in section 1.10 on page 47.

afterpage The `afterpage` [102] package is used to add code to be executed *after* the next page break.

alnumsec The `alnumsec` package [212] allows you to use alphanumeric section numbering, e.g. A. Introduction; III. International Law. It's output is similar to the `alphanum` package (part of the `jura` class [94]), but you can use the standard L^AT_EX sectioning commands. Thus it is possible to switch numbering schemes easily. Greek letters, double letters (bb) and different delimiters around them are supported. It must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package (see point 1.8 on page 53 and section 2.42 on page 75).

W0090

alphanum The `alphanum` package, which is part of the specialized `jura` class [94], by Felix BRAUN, is *incompatible* with the `minitoc` package.

W0025

\mathcal{AMS} The American Mathematical Society ¹. This society has developed some document classes: unfortunately, `amsart` and `amsproc` are *incompatible* with the `minitoc` package; `amsbook` is compatible but needs precautions.

W0026

W0027

I0041

amsart, `amsart.cls` A document class for articles [7], provided by the American Mathematical Society (\mathcal{AMS}). Unfortunately, this class is *incompatible* with the `minitoc` package.

W0026

amsbook, `amsbook.cls` A document class for books [7], provided by the American Mathematical Society (\mathcal{AMS}). This class is compatible with the `minitoc` package, but needs some precautions. See section 2.24 on page 65.

I0041

amsproc, `amsproc.cls` A document class for conference proceedings [7], provided by the American Mathematical Society (\mathcal{AMS}). Unfortunately, this class is *incompatible* with the `minitoc` package.

W0027

Antomega `Antomega` [210] (by Alexej M. KRYUKOV and Dmitry IVANOV) is a language support package for *Lambda* (Λ), based on the original `omega.sty` file of the Omega project (Ω). However, it provides some additional useful functionalities. Some languages definition files (.mld) use titles taken from Antomega: `greek-mono.mld`, `greek-polydemo.mld`, `greek-polykatha.mld`, `latvian.mld`, `polish2.mld`, `russian2m.mld`, `russian2o.mld`, and `spanish3.mld`.

appendices See appendix below.

appendix The `appendix` package [365] (by Peter R. WILSON) provides various ways of formatting the titles of appendices. Also (sub)appendices environments are provided that can be used, for instance, for per chapter/section appendices. If this package is used with `minitoc`, some precautions are needed (see section 2.20 on page 63).

I0042

Arabi `Arabi` [191] is a system (by Youssef JABRI) to prepare L^AT_EX documents in the arabic or farsi languages. The titles in `arabi.mld` and `farsi3.mld` come from the `arabic.ldf` and `farsi.ldf` files of this system.

¹ <http://www.ams.org>

- ArabTeX** ArabTeX [214, 215] is a package (by Klaus LAGALLY) to prepare L^AT_EX documents in the arabic or hebrew languages. The titles in arab.mld (or arabic.mld), arab2.mld and hebrew.mld come from ArabTeX, while those of hebrew2.mld come from babel [46, 47].
- ArmTeX** ArmTeX [121] is a package (prepared by Sergueï DACHIAN, Arnak DALALYAN and Vartan AKOPIAN) to prepare L^AT_EX documents in the armenian language. The titles in armenian.mld come from ArmTeX.
- article** A standard L^AT_EX document class [220]. It has sectioning commands: `\part` and `\section` (and below), but not `\chapter`. It is compatible with the minitoc package and you can make mini-tables at the part and section levels (but, of course, not at the chapter level).
- \AtBeginDocument** This standard macro allows to add code to be executed at the beginning of the document (if fact, at the very end of its preamble, but inside it, which implies some restrictions), at the point where `\begin{document}` is processed. This allows a package (or a class) to add code without creating any conflicts with other packages trying to do the same.
- \AtEndDocument** This standard macro allows to add code to be executed at the end of the document, at the point where `\end{document}` is processed. This allows a package (or a class) to add code without creating any conflicts with other packages trying to do the same.
- autoconfiguration** Since version #28, minitoc detects automatically if the extensions (suffixes) of the file names are limited to 3 characters (like under MS-DOS) or not. This process is named autoconfiguration. The package option `shorttext` forces the limitation to 3 characters.
- auxiliary** During the preparation of a document, the L^AT_EX system uses some **auxiliary** files to store information. The standard auxiliary files are *document.aux* (for cross-reference labels, counters, etc.), *document.toc* for the table of contents, *document.lof* for the list of figures, and *document.lot* for the list of tables. The minitoc package creates its own auxiliary files, to store the contents of each mini-table. These files are the *minitoc auxiliary files*, whose names are *document.extension*, the table 1.11 on page 54 lists the possible extensions.

B

- babel** The babel package [46, 47] (by Johannes L. BRAAMS and others) is a large package useful to write L^AT_EX documents in many languages, not only english. Many titles for mini-tables come from the babel package.
- BangTeX** A package for typesetting documents in the bangla language using the T_EX/L^AT_EX systems; see [286].
- before** A type of *feature* (see this term) which is executed *before* a given type of mini-table. Look at the documentation of the `\mtcsetfeature` command, in section 1.10 on page 47.

- BibTeX** A program by Oren PATASHNIK to make bibliographies in \LaTeX documents. Distributed with \LaTeX . See [247, 290, 291, 320].
- bibtopic** A \LaTeX package [20] for including several bibliographies in a document. These bibliographies might be considered to cover different topics (hence the name) or bibliographic material (e.g., primary and secondary literature) and the like.
- bibunits** The bibunits package [166] allows separate bibliographies for different units or parts of the text. The units can be chapters, sections or `bibunit` environments. This package is compatible with a wide variety of packages, including, but not limited to, `natbib` [124, 125], `overcite` [13] and KOMA-Script classes [207, 270, 308].
- book** A standard \LaTeX document class [220]. It has sectioning commands: `\part`, `\chapter`, and `\section` (and below). It is compatible with the `minitoc` package and you can make mini-tables at the part and chapter levels (but not at the section level, to avoid too many auxiliary files).
- booktabs** This nice package [139] helps to the preparation of better tables, *without* vertical rules nor double rules.

C

- calc** The `calc` [337] package makes easier the numeric computations (on counters and dimensions) when preparing a \LaTeX document.
- cappuccino** See “minutes” below.
- captcont** The `captcont` package [115] provides support for retaining a figure or caption number across several float environments — usually over several pages. It allows control over the contents of the List-of-Figures and the List-of-Tables pages. It should be compatible with all other packages that modify or extend the float environment and with the `subfig` package [116] in particular. W0091
- caption** The `caption` package [325] provides many ways to customize the captions in floating environments such `figure` and `table` and cooperates with many other packages. W0033
- caption2** The² `caption2` package [323] used to be an experimental side-version of the regular `caption` package [325] and has been superseded by the new release of the regular `caption` package version 3.0 in December 2003. `caption2` is still some kind of supported, that means it will be part of future releases and bugs will still be fixed, so existing documents using this package will still compile. But Axel SOMMERFELDT will *not* answer questions about this package anymore except questions on migrating to the regular version of the `caption` package. And it will *not* be adapted or enhanced in the future. W0034
- So please don’t use this package for new documents. It’s old, it’s obsolete and it starts to begin smell bad!

² This text comes from the documentation of the `caption` package. The `caption` and `caption2` packages have the same author, Axel SOMMERFELDT.

Table 6.1: Category codes

	Category	Meaning
0	Escape character	(\ usually)
1	Beginning of group	{ usually)
2	End of group	} usually)
3	Math shift	(\\$ usually)
4	Alignment tab	(& usually)
5	End of line	(<i>return</i> usually)
6	Parameter	(# usually)
7	Superscript	(^ usually)
8	Subscript	(_ usually)
9	Ignored character	(<i>null</i> usually)
10	Space	(_ usually)
11	Letter	(A, . . . , Z and a, . . . , z)
12	Other character	(none of the above or below)
13	Active character	(~ usually)
14	Comment character	(% usually)
15	Invalid character	(<i>delete</i> usually)

Please ignore all hints in books or other documents which try to tell you that the `caption2` package should be used instead of the `caption` package – these hints are outdated since December 2003.

CATALOG A plain text file which contains basic infos about the `minitoc` package (abstract, date, author, version, licence).

catcode Short for “category code”. In³ the first place, it’s wise to have a precise idea of what your keyboard sends to the machine. There are 256 characters that \TeX might encounter at each step, in a file or in a line of text typed directly on your terminal. These 256 characters are classified into 16 categories numbered 0 to 15. See table 6.1. It’s not necessary for you to learn these code numbers; the point is only that \TeX responds to 16 different types of characters. At first, “*The \TeX book*” led you to believe that there were just two types — the escape character and the others — and then you were told about two more types, the grouping symbols { and }. The category code for any character can be changed at any time, but it is usually wise to stick to a particular scheme.

ccaption The `ccaption` package [368] provides commands for “continuation captions”, unnumbered captions, and a legend heading for any environment. Methods are provided to define captions for use outside float environments, and to define new float environments and subfloats. Tools are provided for defining your own captioning styles.

W0035

Chapter 0 Some documents do not begin with chapter number one, but with chapter number zero (or even a weirder number). This caused a serious problem in old versions of the `minitoc` package: the `minitocs` appeared in the wrong chapters, and a first correction was the introduction of specific commands (`\firstchapteris` and

³ This definition is taken from “*The \TeX book*” [203, 205].

Table 6.2: Encoding schemes implemented in CJK

Encoding	1 byte	2 bytes	3 bytes
GB	0xA1–0xF7	0xA1–0xFE	—
Big 5	0xA1–0xF9	0x40–0xFE	—
JIS	0xA1–0xF4	0xA1–0xFE	—
SJIS	0xA1–0xFE	0x40–0xFC	—
KS	0xA1–0xFD	0xA1–0xFE	—
UTF 8	0xC0–0xEF	0x80–0xBF	0x80–0xBF
CNS	0xA1–0xFE	0xA1–0xFE	—

co.). With the addition of the absolute numbering of the mini-table auxiliary files (see *absolute* above), the problem was solved in minitoc version #23, and these commands became obsolete. See section 1.5.4 on page 48.

chapterbib The chapterbib package [15] allows multiple bibliographies in a L^AT_EX document, including items \cite’d in more than one bibliography. Despite the name “chapterbib”, *the bibliographies are for each included file*, not necessarily for each chapter.

checkfiles A package option of minitoc. It checks every mini-table to look if it is empty; then empty mini-tables are *not* printed. This is the default. The opposite package option (nocheckfiles) prints even the empty mini-tables, which look ugly. See section 9.75.2 on page 403.

CJK The CJK system [233, 234] (by Werner LEMBERG and others), is a set of packages and fonts to prepare L^AT_EX documents in some oriental language, like chinese, japanese, korean (with Hangûl or Hanja fonts), and thai, plus some variants of russian. The titles of mini-tables for these languages come from some CJK files and were inserted in .mld files when possible, or in .mlo files when the encoding is incompatible with the .ins/.dtx mechanism; then the .mld file must input the corresponding .mlo file. CJK implements the GB, Big 5, JIS, SJIS, KS, UTF 8, and CNS encodings (on 16 bits, except UTF 8 on 24 bits). See table 6.2.

Some encoding schemes (Big 5, SJIS) have gaps in the range of the second byte. It is difficult to input Big 5 and SJIS encoding directly into T_EX since some of the values used for the encodings’ second bytes are reserved for control characters: ‘{’, ‘}’, and ‘\’. Redefining them breaks a lot of things in L^AT_EX; to avoid this, preprocessors are normally used which convert the second byte into a number followed by a delimiter character. For further details, please refer to [243, 244]; Ken LUNDE discusses in great detail all CJK encodings which are or have been in use. Please note that the minitoc package uses the .mlo files as a workaround for this problem; see section 1.4.13 on page 43.

class The **class**⁴ is the first information L^AT_EX needs to know when processing an input file; it is the type of document the author wants to create. This is specified with the \documentclass command.

\documentclass[options]{class}

⁴ This note is extracted from [280], then adapted.

Table 6.3: Standard document classes

Class	Usage
article [220]	For articles in scientific journals, presentations, short reports, program documentation, invitations, ...
proc [219]	For preparing conference proceedings; analog to the article class.
ltxdoc [103]	For preparing the documentation of a package or of a class; analog to the article class.
ltnews [194]	For preparing the announcement of a L ^A T _E X release; analog to the article class.
report [220]	For longer reports containing several chapters, small books, PhD theses, ...
book [220]	For real books.
letter [221]	For letters; as this class has no sectionning commands, do not use minitoc with this class.
slides [254]	For slides; the class uses big sans serif letters. You might want to consider using BeamerT _E X ^a instead. Do not use minitoc with these classes.

^a <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/beamer/doc/beameruserguide.pdf>

Here *class* specifies the type of document to be created. Table 6.3 lists the standard document classes [220]. The L^AT_EX 2_ε distribution provides additional classes for other documents, including letters and slides, but the minitoc package has not been tested with all these classes. The *options* parameters customize the behaviour of the document class. The options have to be separated by commas. The standard classes supported by the minitoc package are listed in section 2.7 on page 58.

- close** A type of *feature* (see this term) which is executed immediately after (*close*) the insertion of the auxiliary file for a given type of mini-table. Look at the documentation of the `\mtcsetfeature` command, in section 1.10 on page 47. See the `mtc-ocf.tex` example file, in section 4.27 on page 140.
- cmk** An example of shell script to prepare the documentation files in PostScript format from the ones in PDF format. This script should be adapted to your needs.
- CMR** For “Computer Modern Roman”. The roman subset of the Computer Modern fonts. See “Computer Modern” below.
- comp.text.tex** The Usenet news group about T_EX and L^AT_EX, in english.
- Computer Modern** A set of fonts [202] designed by Donald E. KNUTH for T_EX. Initially they were built with METAFONT [126, 204] (a program also created by KNUTH), but PostScript type 1 (vector) versions exist today, with extensions (for accented characters, mainly): the EC-fonts (European Computer Modern), the cm-super fonts, etc.
- counter** A T_EX register containing an integer value. There are 256 counters (from 0 to 255) in T_EX, but L^AT_EX uses some of them, and many packages need some counters for their own usage. An extended version derived from T_EX, ϵ -T_EX [96], allows more counters. Omega (Ω) also offers more counters.
- CTAN** The *Comprehensive T_EX Archive Network*, a set of computer archives containing most of the T_EX related resources (like fonts, software, documentations, packages).

Table 6.4: Depths for sectionning commands

Class:	book	report	article
secnumdepth	2	2	3
\part	-1	-1	0
\chapter	0	0	×
\section	1	1	1
\subsection	2	2	2
\subsubsection	3	3	3
\paragraph	4	4	4
\subparagraph	5	5	5

They are accessible via Internet. The participating hosts in the Comprehensive TeX Archive Network are ⁵:

- `ftp.dante.de` (Cologne [Köln], Germany)
 - anonymous ftp `/tex-archive (/pub/tex /pub/archive)`
 - rsync access on `rsync://rsync.dante.de/CTAN/`
 - World Wide Web access on `http://www.dante.de/`
 - Administrator: `mailto:ftpmaint@dante.de`
- `ftp.tex.ac.uk` (Cambridge, England, UK)
 - anonymous ftp `/tex-archive (/pub/tex /pub/archive)`
 - rsync access on `rsync://rsync.tex.ac.uk/CTAN/`
 - NFS mountable from `nfs.tex.ac.uk:/tex-archive`
 - World Wide Web access on `http://www.tex.ac.uk/`
 - Administrator: `mailto:ctan-uk@tex.ac.uk`
- `tug.ctan.org` (Colchester, Vermont, USA)
 - anonymous ftp `/tex-archive (/pub/archive)`
 - World Wide Web access on `http://www.ctan.org/`
 - Administrator: `mailto:tex@ctan.tug.org`

There are also many sites mirroring these main archives.

D

dblacnt I needed to use the `dblacnt` [258] package to typeset “The pdfTeX Program” entry [163] in the bibliography, because its author’s first name contains a double accent (Thế Thành HÃN).

de.comp.text.tex The Usenet news group about TeX and L^ATeX, in german.

⁵ This list may change in the future.

depth In the standard documents classes (and in most classes) with sectionning commands, we have a notion of **depth**. The depth of a sectionning command determines the numbering level in its title (from the value of the `secnumdepth` counter), and the entries for a given sectionning command appear in the main table of contents if the depth of this sectionning command is lower than or equal to the value of the `tocdepth` counter; see table 6.4 on the page before for the depths of the sectionning commands in the main document classes.

The mechanism is analog for the `parttocs`, `minitocs`, and `secttocs`, using the values of the `parttocdepth`, `minitocdepth`, and `secttocdepth` counters. If you use sub-figures or sub-tables, the corresponding mini-tables use counters like `partlofdepth`, `partlotdepth`, `minilofdepth`, `minilotdepth`, `sectlofdepth`, and `sectlotdepth`.

descriptor (file descriptor). A software entity describing the interface between a program and a file. For most programs and operating systems, the number of file descriptors is limited. For \TeX (and \LaTeX), there are 16 file descriptors for writing and 16 file descriptors for reading.

devanagari.sty The *Devanāgarī for \TeX* (Devanāgarī) package [288] provides a way to typeset high-quality Devanāgarī text with \TeX . Devanāgarī is a script used for writing and printing Sanskrit and a number of languages in Northern and Central India such as Hindi and Marathi, as well as Nepali. The Devanāgarī package was originally developed in May 1991 by Frans Velthuis for the University of Groningen, The Netherlands, and it was the first system to provide support for the Devanāgarī script for \TeX .

E

em A length unit equal (approximatively) to the width of a “m” letter in the current font.

emk An example of shell script to prepare the english documentation of the `minitoc` package. The script `imk` must have been run previously. See item 9 on page 246.

en-mtc.bst A bibliographic style derived from the `plain.bst` standard style, but modified with the `urlbst` tool [158] to add an URL field. Family names of authors and editors are in small caps, years are in old style digits.

encoding This specifies the order that characters appear in the font (e.g., whether the 65th character is “A”). The most common value for \TeX font encoding is OT1. The other predefined option is T1 (extended \TeX). There’s also US ASCII (7 bit), ISO Latin-1 (8 bit), Adobe Standard Encoding, UTF8 (Unicode [113, 128, 344]), etc. See table 6.5 on the next page and [230, 253].

environment An environment is a delimited domain in a document, where special rules apply. Such a domain is delimited by `\begin{env}` ... `\end{env}` and may take arguments, like this:

```
\begin{minipage}[t]{.5\textwidth}
\end{minipage}
```

Table 6.5: Various encodings

Encoding	Comment
ansinew	Windows 3.1 ANSI encoding, extension of Latin-1.
applemac	Macintosh encoding.
ascii	ASCII encoding for the range 32–127.
cp1250	Windows 1250 (Central and Eastern Europe) code page.
cp1251	Windows 1251 (Cyrillic) code page.
cp1252	Synonym for ansinew.
cp1257	Windows 1257 (Baltic) code page.
cp437	IBM 437 code page, which is the original American code page and contains letters, digits, mathematical symbols, and some characters useful in the construction of pseudographics.
cp437de	IBM 437 code page (German version).
cp850	IBM 850 code page, almost the same as ISO Latin 1, but character arrangement is not the same.
cp852	IBM 852 code page.
cp855	IBM 855 code page (Cyrillic).
cp865	IBM 865 code page.
cp866	IBM 866 code page (MS-DOS Cyrillic).
decmulti	DEC Multinational Character Set encoding.
latin1	ASCII encoding plus the characters needed for most Western European languages, including Danish, Dutch, English, Faroese, Finnish, Flemish, French, German, Icelandic, Italian, Norwegian, Portuguese, Spanish, and Swedish. Some non-European languages, such as Hawaiian and Indonesian, are also written in this character set.
latin2	ASCII encoding plus the characters needed for most Central European languages, including Croatian, Czech, Hungarian, Polish, Romanian, Slovak, and Slovenian.
latin3	ASCII encoding plus the characters needed for Esperanto, Maltese, Turkish, and Galicean. However, latin5 is the preferred character set for Turkish.
latin4	ASCII encoding plus the characters needed for the Baltic languages (Latvian, Estonian, and Lithuanian), Greenlandic, and Lappish (Sámi).
latin5	Is essentially the same as latin1, except that some Turkish characters replace less commonly used Icelandic letters.
next	Next encoding.

ε -T_EX ε -T_EX [96] is an extended version of T_EX, with much more registers and many new primitives; it supports also left-to-right and right-to-left writing.

ethiop A L^AT_EX package [37] giving the ethiopian language support for the babel package [46, 47].

extension The name of a file is often made of 2 parts: a *base name* and an *extension*, separated by a dot. On some old operating systems, the base name is limited to 8 characters and the extension to 3 characters (the “8+3” scheme). See also sections 1.9 on page 53 and 2.5 on page 57. It is strongly recommended to not have more than one dot in a file name.

F

farsi.sty See FarsiTeX below.

FarsiTeX A package [136] to typeset a document in the `farsi` (iranian, persian) language. See <http://www.farsitex.org>. But this package is today available only for L^AT_EX 2.09. See also sections 13.52 on page 489 and 13.53 on page 489.

features A feature (for the minitoc package) is a set of actions executed at each occurrence of a mini-table of a given type. Five features are associated to each mini-table type: a “before” feature (executed before the whole mini-table), an “after” feature (executed after the whole mini-table), a “open” feature, executed just before inserting the mini-table file, a “close” feature, executed just after inserting the mini-table file, and a “pagestyle” feature, which is executed with the mini-table to set its page style. Look at the documentation of the `\mtcsetfeature` command, in section 1.10 on page 47.

filecontents A special L^AT_EX environment. It allows to create a file (whose name is passed as an argument of the environment) by writing the contents of the environment into that file:

```
\begin{filecontents}{file}
...contents ...
\end{filecontents}
```

This environment should be used *before* `\documentclass`. It is used in `minitoc.ins` to prepare the `.mlo` files (see section 1.4.13 on page 43) and some files used in the compilation of the documentation.

\firstchapteris An obsolete command, temporarily used as a workaround for the Chapter 0 problem; see **Chapter 0** and **absolute numbering** above, and section 1.5.4 on page 48.

\firstpartis Analog to `\firstchapteris` above.

\firstsectionis Analog to `\firstchapteris` above.

float This package [238] (by Anselm LINGNAU) improves the interface for defining floating objects such as figures and tables in L^AT_EX. It adds the notion of a ‘float style’ that governs appearance of floats. New kinds of floats may be defined using a `\newfloat` command analogous to `\newtheorem`. This package also incorporates the functionality of David P. CARLISLE’s package [here](#), giving floating environments a [H] option which means ‘PUT IT HERE’ (as opposed to the standard [h] option which means ‘You may put it here if you like’).

I0053

\FloatBarrier A macro from the `placeins` package [11]. It sets up a “barrier” against the drift of floats (like figures or tables).

floatrow This package [223] (by Olga G. LAPKO) is an extension of the `float` package [238] (by Anselm LINGNAU), reusing its code, with extensions from the `roffloat` package [322] (by Axel SOMMERFELDT).

I0053

flowframe This package [333, 334] is designed to enable you to create text *frames* in a document such that the contents of the `document` environment flow from one frame to the next in the order that they were defined. This is useful for creating posters or magazines or any other form of document that does not conform to the standard one or two column layout. As this package defines its own system of minitocs, it is *incompatible* with the `minitoc` package.

W00097

fminitoc.bib A bibliographic data base for the french documentation of the `minitoc` package.

fminitoc.dtx The source file for the french documentation of the `minitoc` package. In fact, it just sets `\jobname` then loads `minitoc.dtx`, which itself loads `\jobname.lan` to select the language used in `minitoc.dtx`; `minitoc.dtx` contains both english and french documentation fragments, selected by `\ifcase` constructs with the `\LANG` variable, set to 0 by `minitoc.lan` or to 1 by `fminitoc.lan` (i.e., by `\jobname.lan`). `fminitoc.dtx` is generated when compiling `minitoc.ins`.

fminitoc.ist This file contains a style for formatting the index in the french documentation. It is generated when compiling `minitoc.ins`.

fminitoc.lan A file used to force the french language in the documentation. It is generated when compiling `minitoc.ins`.

fminitoc.pdf The french documentation in PDF format.

fminitoc.ps The french documentation in PostScript format. No more distributed (but look at the `cmk` script).

fmk An example of shell script to prepare the french documentation of the `minitoc` package. The script `imk` must have been run previously. See item 9 on page 246.

fncychap The `fncychap` package [237] provides a set of commands for changing the format used for some headings (chapters) in the standard L^AT_EX 2_ε document classes: `book` and `report`. It must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package (see point 1.8 on page 52 and section 2.38 on page 74).

W00086

fr.comp.text.tex The Usenet newsgroup about T_EX and L^AT_EX, in french.

franc.sty A small package file used to prepare the french documentation. It is generated when compiling `minitoc.ins`.

frbib.sty A small package file used to prepare the bibliography of the french documentation. It is generated when compiling `minitoc.ins`.

fr-mtc.bst A bibliographic style file used to prepare the bibliography of the french documentation. It has been updated from the standard `plain.bst` for french by Ronan KERYELL, then I added some adaptations for french (like last names in small caps for authors and editors, years in old style digits), then modified with the `urlbst` [158] tool to add an URL field.

frnew.sty A small package file used to prepare the french documentation. It is generated when compiling `minitoc.ins`.

G

geometry The `geometry` package [343] provides a flexible and complete user interface to page dimensions. You can specify them by using intuitive parameters to get your desired page layout. For instance, if you want to set margins (the left, right, top and bottom margins) to 2cm from each edge of the paper, what you need is just:

```
\usepackage[margin=2cm]{geometry}
```

This powerful (and recommended) package is used in some example documents and in this documentation.

guarani A \LaTeX package to compose text in Guarani, the main language spoken in Paraguay. The file `guarani.ldf`, included in this package, defines the titles. See [39] and section 13.72 on page 500.

H

hangcaption The `hangcaption` package [196] defines a variant of the `\caption` command to produce captions with hanging indentation. This package is likely obsolete (1992, \LaTeX 2.09).

W00092

Hindi For the Hindi language, see the `Devanāgarī` package [288] above. The `minitoc` package accepts the `devanagari` and `hindi` language options, which are synonyms. A `hindi-modern` language option is also available.

hint An indication, a clue to detect a problem. It is also a message written (into the `document.log` file) by the `hints` option (see below).

hints An option of the `minitoc` package. It verifies the loading order of some packages, the invocation order of some `minitoc` commands, the consistency between main `minitoc` commands, etc., and gives warnings and other useful hints (mainly in the `document.log` file). This is a default option (use the `nohints` option to skip these checks).

H \LaTeX A system to write documents in the Korean language, using *Lambda* (Λ) (see below). Written by Un KOAUNGHI [206, in korean]. It uses special Hangŭl or Hanja fonts and the UTF-8 input encoding.

hyperlink In a document, a reference to another object which is dynamically found (via a click with the mouse). This requires a special type of document (PDF, PostScript with hypertext features) and a suitable viewer (PDF viewer, recent PS viewer). This is useful to navigate in a document or in many documents, which can be remote documents.

hyperref The `hyperref` package [304] is used to emend cross-referencing commands in \LaTeX to produce some sort of `\special` commands; there are backends for the `\special` set defined for `Hyper \TeX` dvi processors, for embedded pdfmark commands for processing by Acrobat Distiller (`dvips` and `dvipsone`), for `dviwindo`, for `pdf \TeX` , for `T \TeX 4ht`, and for `V \TeX` 's pdf and HTML backends.

W00023

W00028

W00030

W00039

This package derives from, and builds on, the work of the HyperTeX project, described in [295]. It extends the functionality of all the L^AT_EX cross-referencing commands (including the table of contents, bibliographies, etc.) to produce `\special` commands which a driver can turn into hypertext links; it also provides new commands to allow the user to write *ad hoc* hypertext links (hyperlinks), including those to external documents and URLs.

I

ifmtarg The ifmtarg package [374] provides an if-then-else command for testing if a macro argument is empty (“empty” meaning zero or more spaces only).

ifthen The ifthen package [105] implements an `\ifthenelse` command for L^AT_EX 2_ε.

imk An example of shell script, which prepares the minitoc package from `minitoc.ins` and `minitoc.dtx`; note that `imk` must be run before running `emk` or `fmk`. See item 9 on page 246.

insection The insection package option loads the `placeins` package [11] with adequate options to avoid the floats (like figures and tables) to drift outside of their sections. This package option is recommended if you use `sectlofs` or `sectlots` in your document. See section 1.2 on page 30.

W0056

insertion The insertion commands of the minitoc package insert a mini-table in the document. A corresponding *preparation* command must have been invoked (only once) before. The insertion commands are:

```
\parttoc, \partlof, \partlot,
\minitoc, \minilof, \minilot,
\secttoc, \sectlof, \sectlot,
\mtcprepare
```

INSTALL A text file describing the installation of the minitoc package. See chapter 7 on page 243.

J

\jobname A T_EX primitive containing the name of the document in preparation, i.e., the name of the file read first by T_EX (or L^AT_EX), without its extension. Very useful to build the names of other files.

jura The jura class [94], by Felix BRAUN, is *incompatible* with the minitoc package. It is used for german judicial documents.

W0029

K

KannadaT_EX A project [376] to use L_AT_EX for typesetting in the Kannada language. See section 13.99 on page 514.

k-loose A minitoc package option useful if your document is written with one of the KOMA-Script classes [207, 270, 308]. This option tries to set a loose line spacing in the mini-tables. Analog to the `loose` package option for standard classes.

k-tight A minitoc package option useful if your document is written with one of the KOMA-Script classes [207, 270, 308]. This option tries to set a tight line spacing in the mini-tables. Analog to the `tight` package option for standard classes.

KOMA-Script KOMA-Script [207, 270, 308] is a very complex bundle. You may see this, because it is not only one class or one package but a bundle of many classes and packages. The classes (`scrartcl`, `scrbook`, `scrlettr`, `scrlltr2`, and `scrreprt`) are counterparts to the standard classes but never they come with only the same commands, environments, options and optional possibilities like the standard classes nor they result in the same look-a-like.

I0043

The `scrbook`, `scrreprt`, and `scrartcl` classes are compatible with the minitoc package, with some precautions (see section 1.5.5 on page 49). The `scrlettr` and `scrlltr2` have no sectioning commands, so the minitoc package is pointless with them.

KOMA-Script comes with a lot of classes, packages, commands, environments and possibilities. Some of these you may find also at the standard classes, many of them you wouldn't. Some are even supplements to the L_AT_EX kernel.

The main classes of the KOMA-Script bundle are designed as counterparts to the standard L_AT_EX classes. This means that the KOMA-Script bundle contains replacements for the three standard classes `book`, `report`, and `article`. There is also a replacement for the standard class `letter`.

L

Lambda The L_AT_EX format (in the T_EX meaning of that word) adapted to the special features of Omega (Ω) is called “*Lambda*” (Λ).

Lamed The L_AT_EX format (in the T_EX meaning of that word) adapted to the special features of Aleph (\aleph) is called “*Lamed*” (\beth).

L_AT_EX L_AT_EX [217] is a typesetting system that is very suitable for producing scientific and mathematical documents of high typographical quality. It is also suitable for producing all sorts of other documents, from simple letters to complete books. L_AT_EX uses T_EX [203, 205] as its formatting engine (from [280]).

In fact, L_AT_EX is a macro package that enables authors to typeset and print their work at the highest typographical quality, using a predefined, professional layout. L_AT_EX was originally written by Leslie LAMPORT [217]. It uses the T_EX formatter as its typesetting engine. These days L_AT_EX is maintained by Frank MITTELBACH and his team.

In 1994 the \LaTeX package was (deeply) updated by the $\text{\LaTeX}3$ team, led by Frank MITTELBACH, to include some long-requested improvements, and to reunify all the patched versions which had cropped up since the release of $\text{\LaTeX}2.09$ some years earlier. To distinguish the new version from the old, it is called $\text{\LaTeX}2_{\epsilon}$.

\LaTeX is pronounced “Lay-tech” or “Lah-tech.” If you refer to \LaTeX in an ASCII environment, you type LaTeX. $\text{\LaTeX}2_{\epsilon}$ is pronounced “Lay-tech two e” and typed LaTeX2e.

$\text{\LaTeX}2.09$ An obsolete version of the \LaTeX program, before 1994; it is no more supported. Do not use it⁶. Use the current version of $\text{\LaTeX}2_{\epsilon}$, which is supported and much more efficient.

$\text{\LaTeX}2_{\epsilon}$ The current version of the \LaTeX program, after 1994; it is supported.

$\text{\LaTeX}3$ The future version of \LaTeX , whose development is still in progress.

leaders A repetitive sequence of dots (or of one another small character), regulary spaced, used to link two objects on the same line (leading from a title to a page number in a table of contents or the like).

letter A standard document class [221] to prepare letters for postal mail (mail on paper). As such documents have no sectionning commands nor structure, the minitoc package is pointless (hence *incompatible*) with them.



lipsum The lipsum package [168] allows to easily insert sentences in a test file with a minimum of typing. The sentences are in latin but are modified and made nearly senseless. I have used this package in some of the examples of documents. See also <http://lipsum.com> for the origin of this text (pieces of *De Finibus Bonorum et Malorum* by Marcus TULLIUS CICERO).

listfiles An option of the minitoc package. It creates a list of the minitoc auxiliary files (these files contains the mini-tables and may be removed after the \LaTeX run) in the *document.maf* file. Default. See section 1.7 on page 51.

LOF, LoF An acronym for “list of figures”.

lofdepth This counter, if it exists, contains the depth of the list of figures.

loose An option of the minitoc package. It gives a loose line spacing in the mini-tables. It is the default. The opposite option is **tight**.

LOT, LoT An acronym for “list of tables”.

lotdepth This counter, if it exists, contains the depth of the list of tables.

LPPL The *LaTeX Project Public License*, available at

<http://www.latex-project.org/lppl.txt>

Its current version is 1.3 (2003-12-01). The minitoc package is distributed under this license.

⁶ Except in the case of a very old document; if possible, try to convert it.

- ltxdoc** A standard L^AT_EX document class [103], for preparing the documentation of a package or of a class. For the minitoc package, it is very similar to the `article` document class; see above.
- ltnews** A standard L^AT_EX document class [194], for preparing the announcement of a L^AT_EX release. For the minitoc package, it is very similar to the `article` document class; see above.

M

\makeatletter and **\makeatother** Many⁷ internal commands of L^AT_EX, of packages and classes contain the @ character in their names. This effectively prevents such names from being used in documents for user-defined commands. However, it also means that they cannot appear in a document, even in the preamble, without taking special precautions. As it is sometimes necessary to have such bits of “internal code” in the preamble, the commands `\makeatletter` and `\makeatother` make it easy to do: the difficult bit is to remember to add them, failure to do so can result in some strange errors. And these two commands *should never be used in a package or class file*.



makefile A special text file containing instructions describing the creation and the installation of a piece of software, using the “**make**” utility; **make** is a nice tool coming from the Unix operating system, but variants exists.

mcaption The mcaption package [183] provides a `margin`cap environment for putting captions in the outer document margin with either a top or bottom alignment.

W0036

memoir, **memoir.cls** A very general and powerful document class (by Peter R. WILSON, described in [370, 371, 373]); this class is compatible with the minitoc package (with some precautions) if you use a recent version. See section 2.22 on page 64.

E0028
 I0020
 I0027
 I0030
 I0032
 I0044
 M0001

mini-bibliography See `minibbl` below.

mini-list Synonym for “mini-table” below.

mini-lof See “minilof” below.

mini-lot See “minilot” below.

mini-table This term refers to a local table of contents (like a table of contents, a list of figures or a list of tables) for a sectionning unit (part, chapter or section), by opposition to a global table (the table of contents, the list of figures or the list of tables for the whole document). The main aim of the minitoc package is the creation of such mini-tables. But the term “minitoc” is also used to refer to such mini-table, as a generic term, because the first versions of the package allowed only table of contents for chapters.

mini-toc See “minitoc” below.

⁷ Informations from [260, page 843].

- minibbl** Short for “mini-bibliography”, i.e., to have a bibliography per part, chapter or section, or even by theme or subject. This is out of the domain of the minitoc package. See section 2.9 on page 59.
- minilof** A list of figures for a chapter.
- minilofdepth** This counter, if defined, contains the depth of the minilofs.
- minilot** A list of tables for a chapter.
- minilotdepth** This counter, if defined, contains the depth of the minilots.
- minitoc** A table of contents for a chapter. Also used as a generic term for any mini-table (see “mini-table” above).
- minitoc.bib** A bibliographic data base for the english documentation of the minitoc package.
- minitoc.bug** A plain text file containing a list of problems and questions about the minitoc package. See chapter 2 on page 55.
- minitocdepth** This counter contains the depth of the minitocs.
- minitoc.dtx** The file containing the documentation and the commented code of the minitoc package.
- minitoc-hyper.sty** A special version [349] of the minitoc package which has been prepared by Bernd JAEHNE, Didier VERNA and A. J. “Tony” ROBERTS to work with the powerful hyperref package [304]; Heiko OBERDIEK has integrated their work so since version #31, minitoc is compatible with hyperref. *Hence the minitoc-hyper package [349] is now obsolete and should no more be used. It is still present on the CTAN archives for compatibility with old documents.*
- minitoc.ins** The installation file for the minitoc package. Compiling it with L^AT_EX produces most of the files of the minitoc package.
- minitoc.ist** This file contains a style for formatting the index in the english documentation. It is generated when compiling minitoc.ins.
- minitoc.l** A text file containing the list of all the files being included in the minitoc package. Files not listed in minitoc.l are files used only to install the package or to produce its documentation.
- minitoc.lan** A file used to force the english language in the documentation. It is generated when compiling minitoc.ins.
- minitoc.pdf** The english documentation in PDF format.
- minitoc.pre** This file contains a L^AT_EX preamble for the documentation. It is generated when compiling minitoc.ins.
- minitoc.ps** The english documentation in PostScript format. No more distributed (but look at the cmk scripts).
- minitoc.sty** This file contains the main part of the minitoc package, with comments removed. It is generated when compiling minitoc.ins.



minitoc.sum A plain text file containing a commented list of the minitoc commands and environments. See chapter 3 on page 79.

minitoc-tds.zip A ZIP archive of a TDS-compliant hierarchy containing all files in the minitoc package.

minutes The minutes package [236] (by Knut LICKERT) is used to prepare conference proceedings. The minitoc package allows to add “coffee breaks” in the table of contents via commands like `\addcoffeeline` and `\coffeeline` (and internal commands) whose names contain the string “coffee”, hence the footnote about “cappuccino” ☕ in the installation chapter!⁸

MonTeX MonTeX [117, 120] is a large package to prepare documents in various dialects of the Mongol language (Bicig and Bicig2, Mongol, Bithe and Manju, Buryat, Xalx and Khalkha) and in a dialect of Russian used in Mongolia (Russianc). Bicig is another name for Uighur. You can find many things about Mongolia and Mongolian at the web site [119]. The following description is extracted from [120].

MonTeX is a package which offers support for writing documents in Mongolian, Manju, Buryat and Russian. Mongolian can be represented in traditional Uighur script (also known as Classical or Traditional Script) and Cyrillic. Manju resembles the Traditional Mongolian script (from which it is derived) but uses a rich choice of diacritics in order to eliminate numerous ambiguities of the Mongolian script ancestor. Modern Buryat, like Mongolian in its present form, is written with a Cyrillic alphabet, but both Mongolian (35 letters) and Buryat (36 letters) use more letters than Russian (33 letters).

Mongolian The word *Mongolian* is actually an umbrella term for several languages rather than the precise name of a single language. Things become more complicated when names of ethnic groups, languages and writing systems are mixed.

Xalx or Khalkha is the name of the Mongolian nationality residing in Mongolia proper. Their dialect forms the basis of Mongolian written with Cyrillic letters. Throughout this text, *Modern Mongolian* is used as a synonym.

Buryat is the name of the Mongolian nationality residing in Buryatia, north of Mongolia, east of Lake Baikal, being a part of the Russian Federation. The Buryat call themselves *Buryaad* while Xalx Mongolians call them *Buriad*. The English name follows the Russian orthography. Linguistically, Xalx and Buryat Mongol are fairly close languages; Buryat has a slightly different sound system in which the phoneme /s/ partially shifted to /h/; the modern Buryat Cyrillic alphabet (virtually identical with the Cyrillic alphabet used for writing Modern Mongolian) has one additional letter (H/h, `\xa1x{H/h}`) for marking the difference to /s/.

Bicig (literally *script* in Mongolian) denotes text written in the traditional Mongolian script which is also referred to as Uighur. Throughout this document, the term *Bicig* will be used on an equal footing with *Classical* and *Traditional* Mongolian. The latter term is used in the names of the Unicode/ISO10646 character plane U1800 which contains Mongolian,

⁸ The little cups ☕ come from the marvosym package [182].

Manju, Sibe and sets of special characters called Ali Gali or Galig. In order to identify Mongolian script related commands distinct for Mongolian and Manju, the Mongolian commands have the name root *bicig* whereas the Manju commands have the name root *bithe*.

Xalx Mongolian, or Modern Colloquial Mongolian, is about as different from the form written in Classical script as modern English in phonetical spelling (assume it be written in Shavian letters) from the highly historical orthography of Standard English. Beyond these differences, Mongolian written in Classical Script usually preserves a substantial amount of historical grammatical features which make it look a bit like Elizabethan English.

Manju Manju is a Tungusic language closely related to Mongolian. Though Manju is virtually not spoken anymore, it has been the official language during 300 years of Manju government in Qing Dynasty China. Vast amounts of official documents survive, as well as some of the finest multilingual dictionaries ever compiled, e. g. the Pentaglot, or Mirror in Five Languages, a dictionary with 18671 entries in five languages (Manju, Tibetan, Mongolian, Uighur and Chinese). See [118] for more details. Manju writing is derived from Uighur Mongolian by adding diacritics in the form of dots and circles (*tongki fuka sindaha hergen*, script with dots and circles).

MS-DOS (Microsoft® Disk Operating System) An old operating system for personal computers (PCs). From the minitoc point of view, its main drawback is the use of filenames with short extensions (the “8+3” scheme), which limits to 99 the number of mini-tables for each kind.

mtc-2c.tex An example file showing the use of the minitoc package with a two columns page layout. See section 4.1 on page 90.

mtc-2nd.tex An example of document using the minitoc package and its *french2* language option. See section 4.2 on page 91.

mtc-add.bib A small bibliographic data base for the *mtc-add.tex* and *mtc-ads.tex* example documents. See section 4.4 on page 95.

mtc-3co.tex An example of document using the minitoc package to prepare a minitoc on three columns. See section 4.3 on page 92.

mtc-add.tex An example document showing how to use `\mtcaddchapter` and the *tocbibind* package [366] with minitoc. See section 4.4 on page 95.

mtc-ads.tex An example document showing how to use `\mtcaddsection` and the *tocbibind* package [366] with minitoc. See section 4.5 on page 100. It also shows how it is challenging to manage the mini-lists of floats at the section level.

mtc-amm.tex An example file showing the use of the *appendices* environment in a memoir class document with the minitoc package. See section 4.6 on page 105.

mtc-apx.tex An example file showing the use of the *mtchideinmaintoc* environment to hide the entries of the appendices in the main TOC and to create a part-level TOC for the appendices. See section 2.25 on page 66.

mtc-art.tex An example of document (article class) using the minitoc package. See section 4.8 on page 106.

mtc-bk.tex An example of document (book or report class) using the minitoc package. See section 4.9 on page 111.

mtc-bo.tex An example file showing the use of the minitoc package with a two columns page layout and using the tocloft package [363]. See section 4.10 on page 117.

mtc-ch0.tex An example file showing the use of the minitoc package in a document with a starred first chapter. See section 4.11 on page 122.

mtc-cri.tex An example file showing the use of the minitoc package with starred parts and chapters. See section 4.12 on page 123.

mtc-fko.tex An example file showing the problem of fonts in minitocs when using the scrbook class. See section 4.13 on page 124.

mtc-fo1.tex An example file showing the use of the minitoc package with changing some fonts. See section 4.14 on page 125.

mtc-fo2.tex Another example file showing the use of the minitoc package with changing some fonts. See section 4.15 on page 126.

mtc-gap.tex An example file showing the use of the `\mtcgapbeforeheads` and `\mtcgapafterheads` commands. See section 2.44 on page 75.

mtc-hi1.tex An example file showing the use of the `mtchideinmainlof` and `mtchideinmainlot` specialized environments. See section 2.25 on page 67.

mtc-hi2.tex An example file showing the use of the following pairs of commands:

- `\mtchideinmainlof` and `\endmtchideinmainlof`,
- `\mtchideinmainlot` and `\endmtchideinmainlot`.

See section 2.25 on page 68.

mtc-hia.tex An example file showing the use of the minitoc package to hide the entries for some tables in the main list of tables of an article class document. See section 4.19 on page 128.

mtc-hir.tex An example file showing the use of the minitoc package to hide the entries for some tables in the main list of tables of a report class document. See section 4.20 on page 129.

mtc-hop.tex An example file showing the use of the minitoc package with the scrbook document class. See section 4.21 on page 130.

mtc-liv.tex An example file showing the use of the minitoc package in a book with customized table of contents and minitocs. See section 4.22 on page 131.

mtc-mem.tex An example file showing the use of the minitoc package with the memoir class. See section 4.23 on page 135.

mtc-mm1.tex An example file showing the use of the minitoc package with the memoir class, if you want to change some fonts. See section 4.24 on page 136.

mtc-mu.tex A document using a minitoc set in a wrapfigure environment with the wrapfig package [14]. See section 4.25 on page 137.

- mtc-nom.tex** A document showing an interaction between the minitoc package and the nomencl package [351]. See section 4.26 on page 139.
- mtc-ocf.tex** A document using the open and close features to prepare a minitoc on three columns. See section 4.27 on page 140.
- mtc-ofs.tex** A document using the open and close features to prepare a minitoc on three columns and \mtcsetoffset to shift the minitoc to align it on the left. See section 4.28 on page 141.
- mtc-sbf.tex** An example file showing the use of the minitoc package with the subfigure package [114]. See section 4.29 on page 143.
- mtc-scr.tex** An example file showing the use of the minitoc package with a KOMA-Script class [207, 270, 308], scrreprt. See section 4.30 on page 145.
- mtc-syn.tex** An example file showing the use of the minitoc package when the table of contents is preceded by some starred chapters. See section 4.31 on page 146.
- mtc-tbi.tex** An example file showing the use of the minitoc package with the tocblind package [366]. See section 4.32 on page 147.
- mtc-tlc.tex** An example file showing the use of the minitoc package in a document of article class. It is the example of [260, page 58], modernized. See section 4.33 on page 149.
- mtc-tlo.tex** An example file showing the use of the minitoc package with the tocloft package [363] and their interaction about the page numbers in the mini-tables. See section 2.46 on page 78.
- mtc-tsfc.tex** An example file showing the use of the minitoc package with the subfig package [116]. See section 4.35 on page 150.
- mtcmess** A package used to provide variants of the standard commands \PackageInfo, \PackageWarning, \PackageWarningNoLine, and \PackageError by adding an optional argument for a unique message identifier.
- mtcoff** A package which is used in place of the minitoc package to ignore all the commands and environments of the minitoc package. In fact, it defines them to do nothing. Useful if you want a version of your document without any mini-table.
- mtcpatchmem** A small package which is automatically loaded if necessary when you use the memoir document class with a version *incompatible* with the minitoc package, but correctible. It is generated when compiling minitoc.ins.
- mu** A length unit normally used in math mode (μ means “math unit”); 18 math units make 1em (one quad), which is about the width of a “m” in the current font. So the size of 1mu is font dependent. The separation between dots in the dotted lines in the mini-tables is expressed in math units.
- multibib** The multibib package [167] allows to create references to multiple bibliographies within one document. It thus provides a complementary functionality to packages like bibunits [166] or chapterbib [15], which allow to create one bibliography for multiple, but different parts of the document.



multicol The multicol package [255] defines the `multicols` environment (with a “s”) to typeset text on several columns. Used in some example documents.

multitoc This package [318] allows setting only the table of contents, list of figures and/or list of tables in two or more columns (using the multicol package [255], of course). The number of columns can be configured via commands; the multicolumn toc(s) can be selected via package options. The `mtc-3co.tex` example document uses this package; see section 4.3 on page 92.

N

natbib It is a \LaTeX 2_ε (but with some support for \LaTeX 2.09) package [124, 125] to act as generalized interface for standard and non-standard bibliographic style files (\BibTeX).

needspace The needspace package [362] provides commands to reserve space at the bottom of a page. If there is not enough space on the current page (column) a new page (column) is started.

NFSS The *New Font Selection Scheme*. The \LaTeX 2_ε font selection system [229] was first released as the “New Font Selection Scheme” (NFSS) in 1989, and then in release 2 in 1993. \LaTeX 2_ε includes NFSS release 2 as standard.

Every text font in \LaTeX has five *attributes*:

encoding This specifies the order that characters appear in the font. The two most common text encodings used in \LaTeX are \KerTeX ’s “ \TeX text” encoding (OT1), and the “ \TeX text extended” encoding (T1) developed by the \TeX Users Group members during a \TeX Conference at Cork in 1990 (hence its informal name “Cork encoding”). See [230, 253].

family The name for a collection of fonts, usually grouped under a common name by the font foundry. For instance, “Adobe Times”, “ITC Garamond”, and \KerTeX ’s “Computer Modern Roman” are all font families.

series How heavy or expanded a font is. For instance, “medium weight”, “narrow” and “bold extended” are all series.

shape The form of the letters within a font family. For instance, “italic”, “oblique” and “upright” (sometimes called “roman”) are all font shapes.

size The design size of the font, for instance “10pt”.

The possible values for these attributes are given short acronyms by \LaTeX . The most common values for the font encoding are given in table 6.6 on the following page.

The “local” encodings are intended for font encodings which are only locally available, for instance a font containing an organisation’s logo in various sizes.

There are far too many font families to list them all, but some common ones are listed in table 6.7 on the next page. The most common values for the font series are listed in table 6.8 on the following page. The most common values for the font shape are listed in table 6.9 on page 233.

Table 6.6: Most common font encodings

Encoding	Description
T1	L ^A T _E X extended text (“Cork”)
TS1	L ^A T _E X symbols (Latin)
T2A, T2B, T2C	L ^A T _E X text (Cyrillic)
T3	L ^A T _E X phonetic alphabet
TS3	L ^A T _E X phonetic alphabet (extra symbols)
T4	L ^A T _E X text (African languages)
T5	L ^A T _E X text (Vietnamese)
T7	L ^A T _E X text (reserved for Greek)
OT1	T _E X text (as defined by Donald E. K _N UTH)
OT2	T _E X text for Cyrillic languages (obsolete)
OT3	International phonetic alphabet (obsolete)
OT4	T _E X text with extensions for the Polish language
OT6	T _E X text with extensions for the Armenian language
OML	T _E X math italic (Donald E. K _N UTH)
OMS	T _E X math symbols (Donald E. K _N UTH)
OMX	T _E X math large symbols (Donald E. K _N UTH)
X2	L ^A T _E X extended text (Cyrillic)
U	Unknown
L<xx>	A local encoding
LTH	Encoding used for the Thai language
LV1	Encoding used with some V _T eX fonts
LY1	Alternative to T1 encoding, for Y&Y software
PD1	Implements the PDFDocEncoding for use with L ^A T _E X 2 _ε ’s NFSS.
PU	Implements the Unicode encoding for use with L ^A T _E X’s NFSS.

Table 6.7: Most common font families

Family	Description
cmr	Computer Modern Roman
cmss	Computer Modern Sans
cmtt	Computer Modern Typewriter
cmm	Computer Modern Math Italic
cmsy	Computer Modern Math Symbols
cmex	Computer Modern Math Extensions
ptm	Adobe Times
phv	Adobe Helvetica
pcr	Adobe Courier

Table 6.8: Most common font series

Series	Description
m	Medium
b	Bold
bx	Bold extended
sb	Semi-bold
c	Condensed

The font size is specified as a dimension, for instance 10pt or 1.5in or 3mm; if no unit is specified, pt is assumed. These five parameters specify every L^AT_EX font, see table 6.10 on the following page, for instance.

These five parameters are displayed whenever L^AT_EX gives an overfull box warning, for instance:

Table 6.9: Most common font shapes

Shape	Description
n	Normal (that is “upright” or “roman”)
it	Italic
sl	Slanted (or “oblique”)
sc	Caps and small caps

Table 6.10: The five font parameters for some fonts

L ^A T _E X specification					Font	T _E X name
OT1	cmr	m	n	10	Computer Modern Roman 10 point	cmr10
OT1	cmss	m	sl	1pc	Computer Modern Sans Oblique 1 pica	cmssi12
OML	cmm	m	it	10pt	Computer Modern Math Italic 10 point	cmmi10
T1	ptm	b	it	1in	Adobe Times Bold Italic 1 inch	ptmb8t at 1in

Table 6.11: Author commands for fonts

Author command	Attribute	Value in article class
<code>\textrm...</code> or <code>\rmfamily</code>	family	<code>cmr</code>
<code>\textsf...</code> or <code>\sffamily</code>	family	<code>cmss</code>
<code>\texttt...</code> or <code>\ttfamily</code>	family	<code>cmtt</code>
<code>\textmd...</code> or <code>\mdseries</code>	series	<code>m</code>
<code>\textbf...</code> or <code>\bfseries</code>	series	<code>bx</code>
<code>\textup...</code> or <code>\upshape</code>	shape	<code>n</code>
<code>\textit...</code> or <code>\itshape</code>	shape	<code>it</code>
<code>\textsl...</code> or <code>\slshape</code>	shape	<code>sl</code>
<code>\textsc...</code> or <code>\scshape</code>	shape	<code>sc</code>
<code>\tiny</code>	size	<code>5pt</code>
<code>\scriptsize</code>	size	<code>7pt</code>
<code>\footnotesize</code>	size	<code>8pt</code>
<code>\small</code>	size	<code>9pt</code>
<code>\normalsize</code>	size	<code>10pt</code>
<code>\large</code>	size	<code>12pt</code>
<code>\Large</code>	size	<code>14.4pt</code>
<code>\LARGE</code>	size	<code>17.28pt</code>
<code>\huge</code>	size	<code>20.74pt</code>
<code>\Huge</code>	size	<code>24.88pt</code>

Overfull \hbox (3.80855pt too wide) in paragraph at lines
314--318
[]\OT1/cmrm/n/10 Normally [] and [] will be iden-ti-cal,

The table 6.11 on the page before lists the author commands for fonts which set these five attributes⁹.

nocheckfiles A package option of minitoc. The opposite of the `checkfiles` package option (see above).

nohints A package option of minitoc. The opposite of the `hints` package option (see above).

nolistfiles An option of the minitoc package. It is the opposite of the `listfiles` above. See section 1.7 on page 51.

notoccite This option of the minitoc package loads the `notoccite` package [10] (by Donald ARSENEAU). It avoids problems with `\cite` commands in sectioning commands or captions. See section 1.6 on page 51.

O

Omega The Omega typesetting system¹⁰ (Ω) (by Yannis HARALAMBOUS and John PLAICE) is an extension of \TeX that is aimed primarily at improving \TeX 's multilingual abilities.

When the \TeX program was originally developed in the mid seventies [*circa* 1975] by Professor Donald E. KNUTH it was mainly aimed at typesetting mathematical texts in the english language. Since then \TeX has made inroads in broader and broader areas of scientific, literary and other scholarly activities in many countries all over the world. In 1991, KNUTH froze \TeX , mainly in the interest of stability. However, he allows the \TeX code to be used as the basis for further developments, so long as the resulting system is distributed under a different name.

In Omega all characters and pointers into data-structures are 31-bit wide, instead of 8-bit, thereby eliminating many of the trivial limitations of \TeX . Omega also allows multiple input and output character sets, and uses programmable filters to translate from one encoding to another, to perform contextual analysis, etc. Internally, Omega uses the universal Unicode/ISO-10646 character set. Omega also includes support for multiple writing directions.

These improvements not only make it a lot easier for \TeX users to cope with multiple or complex languages, like Arabic, Indic, Khmer, Chinese, Japanese or Korean, in one document, but also form the basis for future developments in other areas, such as native color support and hypertext features.

The \LaTeX format (in the \TeX meaning of that word) adapted to the special features of Omega is called “*Lambda*” (Λ). Extending Omega with the ε - \TeX [96] extensions is a separate project, known as “*Aleph*” (\aleph) [42, 161] and led by Giuseppe BILOTTA. The \LaTeX for Aleph is known as “*Lamed*” (\beth). There is an experimental system, named $\text{Lua}\TeX$ [184], which will regroup $\text{PDF}\TeX$, Aleph, ε - \TeX and other developments.

⁹ The values used by these commands are determined by the document class.

¹⁰Most but not all of this note is taken in the Omega documentation [172, 173, 176, 297, 298].

Table 6.12: Some systems derived from T_EX and L^AT_EX

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} \text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X} & \longrightarrow & \Omega & + & \text{L}_{\text{A}}\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X} & \longrightarrow & \Lambda \\ & & + & & & & + \\ \text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X} & \longrightarrow & \varepsilon\text{-T}_{\text{E}}\text{X} & + & \text{L}_{\text{A}}\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X} & \longrightarrow & \varepsilon\text{-L}_{\text{A}}\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X} \\ \hline & & \aleph & + & \text{L}_{\text{A}}\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X} & \longrightarrow & \beth \end{array}$$

open A type of *feature* (see this term) which is executed immediately before (*open*) the insertion of the auxiliary file for a given type of mini-table. Look at the documentation of the `\mtcsetfeature` command, in section 1.10 on page 47. See the `mtc-ocf.tex` example file, in section 4.27 on page 140.

P

package Packages¹¹ are a very important feature of L^AT_EX. These are extensions to the basic L^AT_EX commands that are written to files with names that end with `.sty` and are loaded with the command `\usepackage` in the preamble. Packages can be classified by they origin.

- **Core** packages (in fact, **base** and **required** packages) are an integral part of the L^AT_EX basic installation and are therefore fully standard.
- **Tools** packages are a set written by members of the L^AT_EX3 Team and should always be in the installation.
- **Graphics** packages are a standardized set for including pictures generated by other programs and for handling colors; they are at the same level as the tools packages.
- **A_MS-L^AT_EX** packages, published by the American Mathematical Society¹², should be in any installation¹³.
- **Contributed** packages have been submitted by actual users; certain of these have established themselves as “essential” to standard L^AT_EX usage, but all are useful.

pagestyle A type of *feature* (see this term) which is executed at each occurrence of a given type of mini-table, to force the page style to use for the current page. Look at the documentation of the `\mtcsetfeature` command, in section 1.10 on page 47.

partlof A list of figures for a part.

partlofdepth This counter, if defined, contains the depth of the partlofs.

partlot A list of tables for a part.

¹¹This info is taken from [208, page 12–13] and adapted.

¹²<http://www.ams.org>

¹³They are indispensable if you use a lot of mathematics.

partlotdepth This counter, if defined, contains the depth of the partlots.

parttoc A table of contents for a part.

parttocdepth This counter contains the depth of the parttocs.

PDF Portable Document Format [152]. A descendant of the PostScript language from Adobe, optimized for navigation on the Internet. It adds hypertext, font substitution, and compression features.

placeins The placeins package [11] keeps floats “in their place”, preventing them from floating past a `\FloatBarrier` command into another section. To use it, declare `\usepackage{placeins}` in the preamble and insert `\FloatBarrier` commands at places that floats should not move past, perhaps at every `\section`. The `insection` package option of the `minitoc` package does that with adequate options, and loads also the `flafter` package (described in [226] and [260, page 286]); see section 1.3.3 on page 29.

placeins.txt A plain text file containing the documentation of the placeins package [11].

PLATEX A version of \LaTeX customized for the polish (`polski`) language. See [281, 358]. But the *same* name refers also to a version of \LaTeX customized for the japanese language, $\text{\LaTeX} 2_{\epsilon}$ [189, 197].

pmk An example of shell script to prepare the minitoc package and its documentation; you should adapt it to your needs. See item 9 on page 246.

PostScript A page description language, by Adobe. It describes the appearance of a page, including elements such as text, graphics, and scanned images, to a printer or visualization device. Introduced by Adobe in 1985, it has become the language of choice in high quality printing.

preamble In the main file of a \LaTeX source document, the part of it between the commands `\documentclass[...]{...}` and `\begin{document}`. In the preamble, you can insert global declarations and the loading of packages via `\usepackage` commands.

preparation The preparation commands of the minitoc package prepare the auxiliary files for the mini-tables of a given type. A *preparation* command must have been invoked (only once) before any insertion command for the mini-table type. The preparation commands are:

<code>\doparttoc</code> , <code>\dopartlof</code> , <code>\dopartlot</code> ,	(part level)
<code>\dominitoc</code> , <code>\dominilof</code> , <code>\dominilot</code> ,	(chapter level)
<code>\dosecttoc</code> , <code>\dosectlof</code> , <code>\dosectlot</code> ,	(section level)
<code>\mtcprepare</code>	(all levels)

proc A standard \LaTeX document class, for preparing conference proceedings. For the minitoc package, it is very similar to the `article` document class; see above.

pseudo-chapter Or starred chapter. A chapter introduced by a `\chapter*` command. By default, it has no entry in the table of contents. `\chapter*` needs some precautions with the minitoc package. See section 1.3.4 on page 33.

W0031
W0032
W0084
W0085



Q

quotchap The quotchap package [338] provides a set of commands for adding quotations to some headings (chapters) in the standard L^AT_EX 2_ε document classes: `book`, and `report`. It must be loaded *before* the minitoc package (see point 1.8 on page 53 and section 2.39 on page 74).

W0087

R

README is a plain text file (english) describing briefly the minitoc package, plus some useful infos.

report A standard L^AT_EX document class [220]. It has sectioning commands: `\part`, `\chapter`, and `\section` (and below). It is compatible with the minitoc package and you can make mini-tables at the part and chapter levels (but not at the section level, to avoid too many auxiliary files).

rmk An example of shell script, which sorts the files of the minitoc package into classes (one directory for each class). It should be run after the scripts `imk` (mandatory) and `emk` and/or `fmk`, in that sequence. See item 9 on page 246.

romannum The romannum package [372] changes the numbers (for sectioning commands) generated by L^AT_EX from arabic digits to roman numerals. This package uses the `stdclsdv` package [361]. It must be loaded *before* the minitoc package (see point 1.8 on page 53 and section 2.40 on page 75).

W0088

rotating The rotating [303] package performs all the different sorts of rotation one might like, including complete figures.

rotfloat The packrotfloat [322] package provides commands to define new floats of various styles (`plain`, `boxed`, `ruled`, and userdefined ones); the rotating package [303] provides new environments (`sidewaysfigure` and `sidewaystable`) which are rotated by 90° or 270°. But what about new rotated floats, e.g. a rotated ruled one? This package makes this possible; it builds a bridge between both packages and extend the commands from the `float` package to define rotated versions of the new floats, too.

I0053

rubber `rubber` [28] is a wrapper for L^AT_EX and companion programs. Its purpose is, given a L^AT_EX source to process, to compile it enough times to resolve all references, possibly running satellite programs such as **B_uL_oT_EX**, **makeindex**, **Metapost**, etc., to produce appropriate data files. It has facilities to make some post-processing cleanup actions, like deleting the auxiliary files created by minitoc.

S

scrartcl See KOMA-Script above.

scrbook See KOMA-Script above.

scrreprt See KOMA-Script above.

sectionning commands These are the \LaTeX commands which specify the logical structure of your document. The main sectionning commands are `\part`, `\chapter`, `\section`, `\subsection`, `\subsubsection`, `\paragraph`, or `\subparagraph`. Some standard document classes have not the `\chapter` command (like the `article` and `proc` classes), some have no sectionning commands (like the `letter` class). In the later case, the `minitoc` package is pointless. If some of the `\part`, `\chapter`, or `\section` commands are not defined, the `minitoc` commands for that level are unavailable. If `\chapter` is defined, the `minitoc` commands at the section level are not defined in the current and older versions of the `minitoc` package, but if `\chapter` is not defined and `\section` is defined, then the `minitoc` commands at the section level are defined. See section 1.1.1 on page 26. In non-standard document classes, sectionning commands with non-standard names cannot be recognized by the `minitoc` package.

sectlof A list of figures for a section.

sectlofdepth This counter, if defined, contains the depth of the `sectlofs`.

sectlot A list of tables for a section.

sectlotdepth This counter, if defined, contains the depth of the `sectlots`.

sectsty The `sectsty` package [249] provides a set of commands for changing the font used for the various sectional headings in the standard \LaTeX 2_ε document classes: `article`, `book`, and `report`. This package also works with the KOMA-Script classes [207, 270, 308] `scrartcl`, `scrbook`, and `scrreprt`. It must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package (see point 1.8 on page 52 and section 2.28 on page 69).

W0037

secttoc A table of contents for a section.

secttocdepth This counter contains the depth of the `secttoCs`.

sfheaders The `sfheaders` package [239] (for \LaTeX 2_ε) borrows some definitions from the standard `article/report/book` classes and modifies them in order to print the `part`, `chapter`, `section`, `subsection`... headers with the Sans-Serif variant of the current font. It must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package (see point 1.8 on page 53 and section 2.41 on page 75).

W0089

shell In the Unix, Unix-like and Linux operating systems, the **shell** is a program used as an interface between the operating system and the user. It can also be used as a scripting language to write programs or scripts to prepare routinely used sequences of tasks. The main shells are the Bourne shell (**sh**), the C shell (**csh**), the Korn shell (**ksh**), and their many successors (like **bash**, **tcsh**, etc.).

shorttext An option of the `minitoc` package. It forces the use of short extensions (3 characters) in the names of the `minitoc` auxiliary files. This option is inactive by default, but is automatically activated if your operating system needs short extensions. See **autoconfiguration** above and the section 2.5 on page 57.




W0020

shorttoc The `shorttoc` package [130] allows to create an other table of contents in a document, with an other title and an other depth than the main table of contents.

- SJIS** The SJIS character encoding (for the Japanese language), also known as MS-Kanji (Kanji for Microsoft®), consists of two overlaid character sets: the so-called halfwidth Katakana (JIS X0201-1976, 1-byte characters encoded in the range 0xA1 to 0xDF) and the (fullwidth) JIS character set (JIS X0208-1990, mapped to the remaining code points). This information is taken from [233, 234].
- SL_AT_EX** A version of L_AT_EX customized for the Swedish language. See [248].
- splitbib** A L_AT_EX package [246] which allows for sorting a bibliography into categories and subcategories; this is interesting for lists of publications, for grouping references by subject, by year, ...
- stdclsdv** The stdclsdv package [361] is intended to be used by the authors of L_AT_EX packages that need to know about the sectional divisions provided by the document class.
- strut** A vertical invisible rule used to force a minimal separation between two lines of text.
- subfig** The subfig package [116] provides support for the inclusion of small, “sub-figures” and “sub-tables”. It simplifies the positioning, captioning and labeling of them within a single figure or table environment. In addition, this package allows such sub-captions to be written to the List of Figures or List of Tables if desired.
- subfigure** The subfigure package [114] is an obsolete version (by the same author) of the subfig package [116].
- suffix** See “extension” above.

T

- TDS** The T_EX Directory Structure [341, 342]; a directory structure highly recommended to store macros, fonts, and the other implementation-independent T_EX system files; it also suggests how to incorporate the rest of the T_EX files in a single structure; the TDS has been designed to work on all modern systems.
- T_EX** T_EX is a computer program created by Donald E. K_NUTH [203, 205]. It is aimed at typesetting text and mathematical formulae. K_NUTH started writing the T_EX typesetting engine in 1977 to explore the potential of the digital printing equipment that was beginning to infiltrate the publishing industry at that time, especially in the hope that he could reverse the trend of deteriorating typographical quality that he saw affecting his own books and articles. T_EX as we use it today was released in 1982, with some slight enhancements added in 1989 to better support 8-bit characters and multiple languages. T_EX is renowned for being extremely stable, for running on many different kinds of computers, and for being virtually bug free. The version number of T_EX is converging to π and is now at 3.141592.
- T_EX is pronounced “Tech,” with a “ch” as in the German word “Ach” or in the Scottish “Loch.” In an ASCII environment, T_EX becomes TeX.

- thailatex** The thailatex package [250] allows to typeset documents in the Thai language. You can also use the CJK system [233, 234].
- tight** An option of the minitoc package. It gives a tight line spacing in the mini-tables. The opposite option is loose.
- titlesec** The titlesec package [40] allows to change the sectioning titles. Amongst its many features it provides margin titles, different format in left and right pages, rules above and below the title, etc. Unfortunately, it is *incompatible* with the minitoc package. 
- titletoc** The titletoc package is useful for toc entries formatting, providing the possibility of changing the format in the middle of a document, grouping the entries in a single paragraph, pretty free-forms entries, partial tocs, etc. Unfortunately, it is *incompatible* with the minitoc package. 
The titletoc.sty file is not part of the titlesec package; it's an independent package, but it's described in the titlesec package documentation [40]. W0040
- tmk** A script file which creates a TDS-compliant hierarchy [341, 342] (to be adjusted to your system).
- TOC, ToC** Acronym for “table of contents”.
- tocbibind** The tocbibind package [366] can be used to add the ToC and/or bibliography and/or the index etc., to the Table of Contents listing. But it needs some precautions when used with the minitoc package. See section 1.5.5 on page 49. I0046
- tocdepth** This counter contains the depth of the table of contents.
- tocloft** The tocloft package [363] provides means of controlling the typographic design of the Table of Contents, List of Figures and List of Tables. New kinds of “List of ...” can be defined. If you use the tocloft package and the minitoc package, see section 2.21 on page 63 about fixing some minor compatibility issues. I0047
- TODO** is a plain text file (english) which lists some suggested developments of the package, not yet implemented. Comments and suggestions are welcome.
- token** A token¹⁴ is either (a) a single character with an attached category code (see “cat-code” above), or (b) a control sequence. You *should* remember two chief things about T_EX's tokens: (1) A control sequence is considered to be a single object that is no longer composed of a sequence of symbols. Therefore long control sequence names are no harder for T_EX to deal with than short ones, after they have been replaced by tokens. Furthermore, spaces are not ignored after control sequences inside a token list; the ignore-space rule applies only in an input file, during the time that strings of characters are being tokenized. (2) Once a category code has been attached to a character token, the attachment is permanent. For instance, if character ‘{’ were suddenly declared to be of category 12 instead of category 1, the characters ‘{₁’ already inside token lists of T_EX would still remain of category 1; only newly made lists would contain ‘{₁₂’ tokens. In other words, individual characters receive a fixed interpretation as soon as they have been read from a file, based on the category they have at the time of reading. Control sequences are 

¹⁴This definition is taken from “The T_EXbook” [203, 205].

different, since they can change their interpretation at any time. \TeX 's digestive processes always know exactly what a character token signifies, because the category code appears in the token itself; but when the digestive processes encounter a control sequence token, they must look up the current definition of that control sequence in order to figure out what it means.

trivfloat The trivfloat package [375] (by Joseph A. WRIGHT) provides a quick method for defining new float types in LaTeX. A single command sets up a new float in the same style as the \LaTeX kernel `figure` and `table` float types.

I0053

txfonts The txfonts package [312] provides the TX fonts, which consist of

1. virtual text roman fonts using Adobe Times (or URW NimbusRomNo9L) with some modified and additional text symbols in OT1, T1, TS1, and LY1 encodings;
2. virtual text sans serif fonts using Adobe Helvetica (or URW NimbusSanL) with additional text symbols in OT1, T1, TS1, and LY1 encodings;
3. monospaced typewriter fonts in the OT1, T1, TS1, and LY1 encodings;
4. math alphabets using Adobe Times (or URW NimbusRomNo9L) with modified metrics;
5. math fonts of all symbols corresponding to those of Computer Modern math fonts (CMSY, CMMI, CMEX, and Greek letters of CMR);
6. math fonts of all symbols corresponding to those of AmS fonts (MSAM and MSBM);
7. additional math fonts of various symbols.

All fonts are in the Type 1 format (in `afm` and `pfb` files). Necessary `tfm` and `vfb` files together with \LaTeX 2_ε package files and font map files for `dvips` are provided.

U

UNIX A modern operating system, available on many computers and in various flavors. From the minitoc point of view, it has the advantage of using filenames with long extensions (the length limit is too high to be a problem with the number of mini-tables).

UNIX-like Operating systems analog to Unix, with the same advantages. Linux is a good example, but others exist.

urlbst A PERL script, by Norman GRAY [158], to add a webpage \BibTeX entry type, and add support for general `url` and `lastchecked` fields, to (most) \BibTeX .bst files. Optionally adds basic support for `eprint` and `doi` fields, and \HyperTeX /hyperref support, too. See [295, 304].

UTF 8 UTF 8 (Unicode Transformation Format 8), also called UTF 2 or FSS-UTF, is a special representation of Unicode (resp. ISO 10646). It uses multibyte sequences of various lengths, but only 2-byte and 3-byte sequences are implemented in CJK.

ASCII characters will be used as-is — without this property it would be impossible to use UTF 8 with \TeX . See table 6.2 on page 214.

V

varsects The varsects package [336] provides a set of commands for changing the font used for the various sectional headings in the standard \LaTeX 2_ε document classes: article, book, and report. It must be loaded *before* the minitoc package (see point 1.8 on page 52 and section 2.33 on page 72).

W0038

W

wrapfig The wrapfig package [14] provides the wrapfigure and wratable environments to place a figure or table at the side of the page and wrap text around it.

X

xmk An example of shell script, which typesets the example document files into PDF documents.

xr The xr package [101] implements a system for eXternal References. I wrote the first version of this package, but it had severe problems. David P. CARLISLE rewrote it in a much better and more robust way. With his permission, I used some of his code in the minitoc package to implement the preparation commands (like `\dominitoc`). If you use also the hyperref package [304], use xr-hyper [104] in place of the xr package.

Chapter 7

Installation

Tables

7.1	List of files (minitoc.1)	244
7.2	A TDS-compliant hierarchy for the minitoc files	245

This chapter describes the installation of the minitoc package (version #55).

This package contains a lot of files. The list of all files is given in `minitoc.1`. See table 7.1 on the following page. The files are sorted into “classes” below (a file can appear in more than one class). Each class specifies the function and the placement of its files.

- (0) The files `minitoc.ins` and `minitoc.dtx` are the basic source files of this package. The file `fminitoc.dtx` loads `minitoc.dtx` but selects the french documentation. The language selection is done by using `\ifcase ... \or ... \fi` constructs.

- (1) The files `minitoc.sty`, `mtcoeff.sty`, `mtcmess.sty`, and *all* `*.mld` and `*.mlo` files are the package itself ¹.

The table 1.7 on page 38 lists the available languages; for each of these languages, a *language.mld* file is available; the languages in parentheses are aliases of a main language and their `.mld` files will load the `.mld` file of that main language.

`mtcpatchmem.sty` is a temporary fix for compatibility with the `memoir` class.

The files of this class must be *all* installed in a directory where $\text{\LaTeX 2}_{\epsilon}$ finds the `.sty` files.

- (2) Informative text files:

¹ The large number of `*.mld` files is (partially) a consequence of the fact that some languages have aliases (or dialects) and hence one `*.mld` file for each name (a `*.mld` file may load another one) and, if necessary, a `.mlo` file; the english and french languages are evident examples. For some languages, the multiplicity of the `*.mld` files corresponds to a multiplicity of fonts and/or encodings (chinese, greek, japanese, korean, malayalam, polish, russian, serbian), or even for spelling reforms (german, greek, norsk). *Note that the presence of the `english.mld` file is mandatory.* Since version #50, the minitoc package signals the missing `.mld` or `.mlo` files and gives their list in a warning message.

I0050
I0051
E0036
E0038
W0034

Table 7.1: List of files (minitoc.1)

class (0) : -minitoc.ins -minitoc.dtx -fminitoc.dtx class (1) : -minitoc.sty -mtcoff.sty -mtcmess.sty -mtcpatchmem.sty -acadian.mld -acadien.mld -afrikaan.mld -afrikaans.mld -albanian.mld -american.mld -arab.mld -arab2.mld -arabi.mld -arabic.mld -armenian.mld -australian.mld -austrian.mld -bahasa.mld -bahasai.mld -bahasam.mld -bangla.mld -basque.mld -bicig.mld -bicig2.mld -bicig3.mld -bithe.mld -brazil.mld -brazilian.mld -breton.mld -british.mld -bulgarian.mld -bulgarianb.mld -buryat.mld -buryat2.mld -canadian.mld -canadien.mld -castillan.mld -castillian.mld -catalan.mld -chinese1.ml[d o] -chinese2.ml[d o] -croatian.mld -czech.mld -danish.mld -devanagari.mld -dutch.mld -english.mld -english1.mld -english2.mld -esperant.mld -esperanto.mld -estonian.mld -ethiopia.mld -ethiopian.mld -ethiopian2.mld -farsi1.ml[d o] -farsi2.ml[d o] -farsi3.mld	-finnish.mld -finnish2.mld -francais.mld -french.mld -french1.mld -french2.mld -frenchb.mld -frenchle.mld -frenchpro.mld -galician.mld -german.mld -germanb.mld -germanb2.mld -greek.mld -greek-mono.mld -greek-polydemo.mld -greek-polykatha.mld -guarani.mld -hangul1.ml[d o] -hangul2.ml[d o] -hangul3.ml[d o] -hangul4.ml[d o] -hangul-u8.ml[d o] -hanja1.ml[d o] -hanja2.ml[d o] -hanja-u8.ml[d o] -hebrew.mld -hebrew2.mld -hindi.mld -hindi-modern.mld -hungarian.mld -icelandic.mld -indon.mld -indonesian.mld -interlingua.mld -irish.mld -italian.mld -italian2.mld -japanese.ml[d o] -japanese2.ml[d o] -japanese3.ml[d o] -japanese4.ml[d o] -japanese5.ml[d o] -japanese6.ml[d o] -kannada.mld -khalkha.mld -latin.mld -latin2.mld -latinc.mld -latinc2.mld -latvian.mld -latvian2.mld -letton.mld -letton2.mld -lithuanian.mld -lithuanian2.mld -lowersorbian.mld -lsorbian.mld -magyar.mld -magyar2.mld -magyar3.mld -malay.mld -malayalam-keli.mld	-malayalam-omega.ml[d o] -malayalam-rachana.mld -malayalam-rachana2.mld -manju.mld -meyalu.mld -mongol.mld -mongolb.mld -mongolian.mld -naustrian.mld -newzealand.mld -ngerman.mld -ngermanb.mld -ngermanb2.mld -norsk.mld -norsk2.mld -nynorsk.mld -nynorsk2.mld -polish.mld -polish2.mld -polski.mld -portuges.mld -portuguese.mld -romanian.mld -romanian2.mld -romanian3.mld -russian.mld -russianb.mld -russianc.mld -russian2m.mld -russian2o.mld -russian-cca.ml[d o] -russian-cca1.ml[d o] -russian-lh.ml[d o] -russian-lhcyralt.ml[d o] -russian-lhcyrkoi.ml[d o] -russian-lhcyrwin.ml[d o] -samin.mld -scottish.mld -serbian.mld -serbianc.mld -slovak.mld -slovene.mld -spanish.mld -spanish2.mld -spanish3.mld -spanish4.mld -swedish.mld -swedish2.mld -thai.ml[d o] -turkish.mld -uighur.mld -uighur2.mld -uighur3.mld -UKenglish.mld -ukraineb.mld -ukrainian.mld -uppersorbian.mld -USenglish.mld -usorbian.mld -vietnam.mld -vietnamese.mld -welsh.mld -xalx.mld	-xalx2.mld -xalx3.mld class (2) : -INSTALL, README, TODO, CATALOG -minitoc.1 class (3) : -mtc-2c.tex, mtc-2nd.tex, mtc-3co.tex, mtc-add.bib, mtc-add.tex, mtc-ads.tex, mtc-amm.tex, mtc-apx.tex, mtc-art.tex, mtc-bo.tex, mtc-bk.tex, mtc-ch0.tex, mtc-cri.tex, mtc-fko.tex, mtc-fo1.tex, mtc-fo2.tex, mtc-gap.tex, mtc-hi1.tex, mtc-hi2.tex, mtc-hia.tex, mtc-hir.tex, mtc-hop.tex, mtc-liv.tex, mtc-mem.tex, mtc-mml.tex, mtc-mu.tex, mtc-nom.tex, mtc-ocf.tex, mtc-ofs.tex, mtc-sbf.tex, mtc-scr.tex, mtc-syn.tex, mtc-tbi.tex, mtc-tlc.tex, mtc-tlo.tex, mtc-tsf.tex class (4) : -minitoc.bug -minitoc.sum class (5) : -minitoc.ins -minitoc.dtx -minitoc.bib -minitoc.ist -minitoc.lan -minitoc.pre -en-mtc.bst -lamed.eps, lamed.pdf, lamed.tex class (6) : -minitoc.dtx -fminitoc.dtx -fminitoc.bib -fminitoc.ist -fminitoc.lan -minitoc.pre -franc.sty, frbib.sty, frnew.sty -fr-mtc.bst class (7) : -minitoc.pdf class (8) : -fminitoc.pdf class (9) : -cmk, emk, fmk, imk, pmk, rmk, tmk, xmk class (10) : -minitoc-tds.zip
--	--	---	--

Table 7.2: A TDS-compliant hierarchy for the minitoc files

TDS Root Directory						
bibtex/		doc/	makeindex/	scripts/	source/	tex/
bib/	bst/	latex/	minitoc/	minitoc/	latex/	latex/
minitoc/	minitoc/	minitoc/	(D)	(E)	minitoc/	minitoc/
(A)	(B)	(C)			(F)	(G)
		examples/				
		(H)				
(A) fminitoc.bib, minitoc.bib;			mtc-amm.tex, mtc-apx.pdf, mtc-apx.tex, mtc-art.pdf, mtc-art.tex, mtc-bk.pdf, mtc-bk.tex, mtc-bo.pdf, mtc-bo.tex, mtc-ch0.pdf, mtc-ch0.tex, mtc-cri.pdf, mtc-cri.tex, mtc-fko.pdf, mtc-fko.tex, mtc-fo1.pdf, mtc-fo1.tex, mtc-fo2.pdf, mtc-fo2.tex, mtc-gap.pdf, mtc-gap.tex, mtc-hi1.pdf, mtc-hi1.tex, mtc-hi2.pdf, mtc-hi2.tex, mtc-hia.pdf, mtc-hia.tex, mtc-hir.pdf, mtc-hir.tex, mtc-hop.pdf, mtc-hop.tex, mtc-liv.pdf, mtc-liv.tex, mtc-mem.pdf, mtc-mem.tex, mtc-mm1.pdf, mtc-mm1.tex, mtc-mu.pdf, mtc-mu.tex, mtc-nom.pdf, mtc-nom.tex, mtc-ocf.pdf, mtc-ocf.tex, mtc-ofs.pdf, mtc-ofs.tex, mtc-sbf.pdf, mtc-sbf.tex, mtc-scr.pdf, mtc-scr.tex, mtc-syn.pdf, mtc-syn.tex, mtc-tbi.pdf, mtc-tbi.tex, mtc-tlc.pdf, mtc-tlc.tex, mtc-tlo.pdf, mtc-tlo.tex, mtc-tsf.pdf, mtc-tsf.tex.			
(B) en-mtc.bst, fr-mtc.bst;						
(C) INSTALL, README, TODO, CATALOG, fminitoc.lan, fminitoc.pdf, lamed.eps, lamed.pdf, lamed.tex, minitoc.bug, minitoc.l, minitoc.lan, minitoc.pdf, minitoc.pre, minitoc.sum, franc.sty, frbib.sty, frnew.sty;						
(D) fminitoc.ist, minitoc.ist;						
(E) cmk, emk, fmk, imk, pmk, rmk, tmk, xmk;						
(F) fminitoc.dtx, minitoc.dtx, minitoc.ins;						
(G) minitoc.sty, mtccoeff.sty, mtcmess.sty, mtcpatchmem.sty, *.mld, *.mlo;						
(H) mtc-2c.pdf, mtc-2c.tex, mtc-2nd.pdf, mtc-2nd.tex, mtc-3co.pdf, mtc-3co.tex, mtc-add.bib, mtc-add.pdf, mtc-add.tex, mtc-ads.pdf, mtc-ads.tex, mtc-amm.pdf,						

- INSTALL is a file describing the installation of the package. You are (almost) reading it (but it is shorter).
 - minitoc.l contains the list of all files of the minitoc distribution. See table 7.1 on the preceding page.
 - README is a file describing briefly the minitoc package, plus some useful infos.
 - CATALOG contains basic infos about the minitoc package (abstract, date, author, version, licence).
 - TODO lists some suggested developments of the package, not yet implemented. Comments and suggestions are welcome.
- (3) Examples of documents: mtc-2c.tex, mtc-2nd.tex, mtc-3co.tex, mtc-add.bib, mtc-add.tex, mtc-ads.tex, mtc-amm.tex, mtc-apx.tex, mtc-art.tex, mtc-bk.tex, mtc-bo.tex, mtc-ch0.tex, mtc-cri.tex, mtc-fko.tex, mtc-fo1.tex, mtc-fo2.tex, mtc-gap.tex, mtc-hi1.tex, mtc-hi2.tex, mtc-hia.tex, mtc-hir.tex, mtc-hop.tex, mtc-liv.tex, mtc-mem.tex, mtc-mm1.tex, mtc-mu.tex, mtc-nom.tex, mtc-ocf.tex, mtc-ofs.tex, mtc-sbf.tex, mtc-scr.tex, mtc-syn.tex, mtc-tbi.tex, mtc-tlc.tex, mtc-tlo.tex, mtc-tsf.tex, are example files, to play with. The associated .pdf files are provided. Another (*short*) examples are welcome.

- (4) `minitoc.bug`, `minitoc.sum` are plain text documentation: list of problems (faq, see chapter 2 on page 55) and summary of commands (see chapter 3 on page 79).
- (5) `minitoc.ins`, `minitoc.ist`, `minitoc.pre`, `minitoc.lan`, `en-mtc.bst`, `minitoc.dtx`, and `minitoc.bib` are the source of the documentation in (non perfect) english, `lamed.eps` and `lamed.pdf` are images to include, `lamed.tex` is the source code². `minitoc.pre` is the common preamble code for the documentation.
- (6) `minitoc.dtx`, `fminitoc.dtx`, `fminitoc.bib`, `fminitoc.ist`, `fminitoc.lan`, `minitoc.pre`, `franc.sty`, `frbib.sty`, `frnew.sty`, `fr-mtc.bst` are the source (and tools) of the documentation in french³.
- (7) `minitoc.pdf`, is the documentation in (non perfect) english, in PDF format.
- (8) `fminitoc.pdf` is the documentation in french, in PDF format. The french documentation and its source files must not be left out.
- (9) `pmk` is a shell script⁴ to prepare the package and its documentation; the `pmk` script uses the `/tmp/‘whoami’.imk` and `/tmp/‘whoami’.tmk` directories to not waste disk space under your home directory; there are also six partial scripts⁵ and a supplementary one, `cmk` (all to be adapted):
 - `imk`, which prepares the package from `minitoc.ins` and `minitoc.dtx`; note that `imk` must be run before running `emk` or `fmk`; it creates also some `.sty` files necessary to prepare the documentation but that are to be installed with it; the `imk` script uses the `/tmp/‘whoami’.imk` directory to not waste disk space under your home directory;
 - `emk`, which prepares the english documentation from `minitoc.dtx`;
 - `fmk`, which prepares the french documentation from `fminitoc.dtx` and `minitoc.dtx`;
 - `xmk`, which typesets the example files (in PDF format);
 - `rmk`, which sorts the files into classes (one directory for each class);
 - `tmk`, which creates a TDS-compliant hierarchy [341, 342] (to be tailored to your system); see table 7.2 on the page before; this hierarchy is saved in `minitoc-tds.zip`;
 - `cmk`, which converts the PDF documentation files into PostScript files.

These scripts are currently written in C-shell, but they are very simple, and should be easy to convert in another classic shell. The documentation in PostScript format is no more distributed on the CTAN archives, but the `cmk` script can prepare it from the documentation in PDF formate (recto-verso printing).

² Compiling `lamed.tex` requires a specific hebrew font and a specific package (both obsolete), plus conversion into EPS or PDF; hence I prefer to provide also the image files.

³ This seems rather strange. In fact, the english and french documentations are both contained in the `minitoc.dtx` file. `fminitoc.dtx` sets a flag then loads `minitoc.dtx`; hence the file `fminitoc.dtx` is much smaller than `minitoc.dtx`. Thus, `minitoc.ins` contains also some utility files which are automatically created (some `.sty` files, `minitoc.ist`, `fminitoc.ist`, `minitoc.lan`, `fminitoc.lan`). The english and french versions are not word-by-word translations, but they are in parallel in the file `minitoc.dtx`, and this helps the maintenance. Note that there is no more any `fminitoc.ins` file.

⁴ You can sip a big cappuccino ☕ while this script is running! Be patient.

⁵ In fact, `pmk` assembles the scripts `imk`, `emk`, `fmk`, `xmk`, `rmk`, and `tmk` (but *not* `cmk`).

- (10) `minitoc-tds.zip` is a ZIP-archive file containing a TDS-compliant hierarchy with all the files of the minitoc package.

Some remarks about the `rmk`, `tmk` and `pmk` scripts (which you should tailor to your needs):

- **with `rmk`:**

1. the hierarchy is *not* TDS-compliant;
2. the files of (0) must be installed in a directory where $\text{\LaTeX} 2_{\epsilon}$ finds `.dtx` and `.ins` files;
3. the files of (1) must be installed in a directory where $\text{\LaTeX} 2_{\epsilon}$ finds `.sty` files;
4. the files of (2), (3), (4), (5), (6) and (9) must be installed in a separate directory, but must not be left out;
5. the files of (7) and (8) must be installed as on-line documentation;
6. the directories created by the `rmk` script are under `/tmp/‘whoami’`.`rmk` to not waste disk space under your home directory.

- **with `tmk`:**

1. the hierarchy is TDS-compliant;
2. each file appears only once in the hierarchy;
3. the installation is much easier: you only need a `.zip` or a `.tar` (or `.tgz`) dump file⁶ of the hierarchy to be deployed into the installed TDS hierarchy; you should examine *very carefully* (by comparison with your TDS installation) and tailor the `tmk` script before using it;
4. the directories created by the `tmk` script are under `/tmp/‘whoami’`.`tmk` to not waste disk space under your home directory;
5. the file `minitoc-tds.zip` (10) should not be installed; it is just a method to help making a TDS-compliant installation.



- **with `pmk`:**

1. the `pmk` script performs the actions of `imk` (preparation of the basic files), `emk` and `fmk` (preparation of the english and french documentation), `xmk` (preparation of the examples of documents), `rmk` and `tmk` (repartition of files into classes and in a TDS-compliant hierarchy);
2. the directories created by the `pmk` script are under `/tmp/‘whoami’`.`rmk` and `/tmp/‘whoami’`.`tmk` to not waste disk space under your home directory;
3. the *same precautions* as for `tmk` are needed.



The file `minitoc-tds.zip` contains a ZIP archive of a TDS-compliant hierarchy of all files of the minitoc package. It has been prepared by the `pmk` or `tmk` scripts.

Note that `minitoc.dtx` and hence `fminitoc.dtx` are (not so trivial) examples of using minitoc with `hyperref`. They show how the combinaison of these two packages may be useful.

⁶ The `tmk` script creates the `minitoc-tds.zip` file.

Chapter 8

Postface

Contents

8.1	The origins	248	8.9	Developments in 2000	250
8.2	New design in 1993	249	8.10	Developments in 2001	251
8.3	Developments in 1994	249	8.11	Developments in 2002	251
8.4	No developments in 1995	249	8.12	Developments in 2003	251
8.5	Developments en 1996	250	8.13	Developments in 2004	251
8.6	Developments in 1997	250	8.14	Developments in 2005	252
8.7	Developments in 1998	250	8.15	Developments in 2006	254
8.8	Developments in 1999	250	8.16	Developments in 2007	254

This chapter summarizes the evolution of the minitoc package, year by year. A more detailed history is available in “Changes History”, page [591](#). Many minor changes are skipped here.

In fact, this chapter is for the average user of the package, who wants to have an overview of its evolution; the chapter “Changes History” is more oriented towards peoples interested in the code of the package and the problems encountered during its development.

8.1 The origins

The minitoc package was initially written by Nigel WARD in 1990 and 1991, with major contributions by Dan JURAFSKY. But minitoc suffered of a major weakness: when the number of chapters exceeded 9 or 10, you got a rather mysterious error message:

```
No room for a new \write.
```

As I needed the basic fonctionnality of this package (printing mini-tables of contents for each chapter), I looked further in its code and finally found the culprit: minitoc used a `\newwrite`

command to create a new file for the contents table of each chapter, allocating a new file descriptor each time. But the number of file descriptors for writing is limited to 16 under \LaTeX (in fact, by the underlying \TeX program itself). As some descriptors are already used by \LaTeX , writing more than 9 or 10 chapters was too much. Such errors are difficult to find when testing on too small documents: with few chapters, everything goes fine. But on a real document, with many chapters, the mysterious error happens.

8.2 New design in 1993

So I decided (June 1993, when I took the maintenance of the package) to change the allocation method to always use the same file descriptor for all the mini-table of contents files. Some major improvements happened in 1993: the addition of the `mtcoff` (minitocoff at this time) package and a rewrite of `minitoc` to extract the data from the `document.toc` file, with a selection mechanism. Then a first solution for the short extension problem was added (still manual). An elementary system for the fonts in the mini-tables was added. In December 1993, the `minilofs` and `minilots` were added.

8.3 Developments in 1994

The first improvements in 1994 were about the forming of the mini-tables: spacing was improved and the position of the title became ajustable (with the optional parameter of `\minitoc` or `\dominitoc`). But a major addition was done: part-level mini-tables (`parttocs`, `partlofs`, `partlots`) and, for articles, section-level mini-tables (`secttocs`, `sectlofs`, `sectlots`).

With the emergence of $\text{\LaTeX} 2_{\epsilon}$, replacing the ageing $\text{\LaTeX} 2.09$, some work was necessary to support the compatibility with this new version. This was not easy, but Denis B. ROEGEL and Frank MITTELBACH gave me many helpful hints.

Another major addition is the language option feature, with the concept of the *mini-toc language definition file* (or `.mld` file), coming from the `babel` package [46, 47], by Johannes L. BRAAMS. But at this time, these files were still named as `.sty` files.

An important simplification is introduced by the notion of “absolute numbering”, which avoids many problems when the chapters are not numbered the standard way (consecutively, starting from 1, with arabic digits).

8.4 No developments in 1995

Sorry, I was busy with an other project.

8.5 Developments en 1996

The very annoying problem with the starred sectionning commands received some (rather primitive) solutions, but it is very complex, so manual interventions are often required.

The names of the minitoc language definition files take now the extension `.mld`, more specific, and english is the default language. Some new languages are added.

The work on the starred sectionning commands continues.

The minitocoff companion package is renamed `mtcoff` to keep its name short.

8.6 Developments in 1997

The problem of short extensions for files names under some operating systems is addressed via the new `shorttext` package option and by the new autoconfiguration feature.

For the starred sectionning commands, the `\addstarredchapter` commande is added (with analog commands for starred parts and sections).

8.7 Developments in 1998

The `tight` and `loose` package options are added to improve the line spacing in the mini-tables.

8.8 Developments in 1999

The `dotted` and `undotted` package options are added to add or suppress some lines of dots (leaders) in the mini-tables.

8.9 Developments in 2000

A major addition is the compatibility with the `hyperref` package [304], and I ought to thank loudly Heiko OBERDIEK, Didier VERNA, Bernd JAEHNE and A. J. “Tony” ROBERTS [349].

Some corrections about the starred sectionning commands are added by Heiko OBERDIEK.

The mini-tables features (`\beforeparttoc` and `co.`) commands are added.

Some adjustment commands, like `\mtcaddchapter`, are added, again about the problem with the starred sectionning commands.

The compatibility with the `tocbibind` package [366] is documented.

I0046

Aliases for some languages are added.

8.10 Developments in 2001

Added the `checkfiles` and `nocheckfiles` package options, to avoid the insertion of (ugly) empty mini-tables.

Added the `\mtcselectlanguage` command to change more easily the language of the mini-tables titles.

8.11 Developments in 2002

Correction of an interaction between `\tableofcontents` (creating a hidden `\chapter*` or `\section*` command) and the numbering of the mini-table files.

Added the `\mtcskip` and `\mtcskipamount` commands.

8.12 Developments in 2003

Added the `insection` package option (which was temporarily done by the `flsection` and `flsectionb` package options) to deal with floats drifting out of their section. The `placeins` package [11] (by Donald ARSENEAU) is used.

The font commands are made compatible with the `memoir` class [370, 371, 373].

Added compatibility with the `notoccite` package [10].

8.13 Developments in 2004

Added comments in the `.mld` files needing special fonts. Better documentation about languages.

Added an explanation about making a local table of contents for an appendix, eventually masking it in the main table of contents. Compatibility with the `appendix` package [365].

I0042

A major addition is the `hints` package option, to detect some programming and compatibility problems.

8.14 Developments in 2005

All messages are now written via the standard interface commands (`\PackageInfo`, `\PackageWarning`, and `\PackageError`), so the `minitoc` package is less verbose on the terminal.

Added the `\mtcsetfont` and `\mtcsettitlefont` commands (from a suggestion by Benjamin BAYART) to replace many font commands by only one command with a better user interface.

Comments about the \mathcal{AMS} classes (some ones are incompatible with `minitoc`).

Added the `\mtcsetformat` and `\mtcsettitle` commands, again to have a simpler user interface.

Added various hints (`insection` package option, order of `minitoc` basic commands, short extensions).

Added the `\mtcsetpagenumbers` and `\mtcsetrules` commands, again to have a simpler user interface.

Added the `mtchideinmaintoc` environment, to hide a group of entries in the main table of contents; added also the `mtchideinmainlof` and `mtchideinmainlot` environments.

Added the `\mtcfixindex` and `\mtcsettitle` commands.

Added the description of the installation of the package (a new chapter and the file `INSTALL`).

Improved and added hints about consistency of `\dominitoc`/`\minitoc` and `co`.

Added the `\mtcsetfeature` command (very complex).

Added a hint about the `abstract` package [364].

I0040

The `minitoc` package is now written using the `.dtx-.ins` system. Some cleanup is done in the code.

Added the `\mtcfixglossary` command, like `\mtcfixindex`.

Some improvements are made to print the documentation.

Some new hints are added (`sectsty` package [249], empty mini-tables, obsolete commands).

I0043

Added the notion of depth for mini-tables of figures/tables. Added the `\mtcsetdepth` command.

The `hints` package option is now the default.

Added a method for making a bilingual documentation in one file (the `minitoc.dtx` file). This method could be used for more languages.

Added or improved some adjustment commands (`\adjustptc`, `\incrementptc`, `\decrementptc`, etc.).

Added the `k-tight` and `k-loose` package options, for the KOMA-Script [207, 270, 308] document classes.

Added a patch for the recent version of the `memoir` class [370, 371, 373].

Use `\mtcselectlanguage` in language options and in “secondary” `.mld` files.

Added the `\mtcloadmlo` command to be used in some `.mld` files to load a `.mlo` file. The extension `.mlo` means *minitoc language object*; such files contains characters not easily manipulated in a `.dtx` file.

The history of changes is now displayed in a much simpler way (using a glossary was too cumbersome).

Added the `listfiles` package option, to create a list of the `minitoc` auxiliary files, which can be removed after the \LaTeX compilation of the document. It is the `document.maf` file.

Added a remark in the FAQ chapter (and `minitoc.bug`) about precautions to take with the starred sectioning commands.

Added hints about the `caption`, `caption2`, `ccaption`, and `mcaption` packages (they must be loaded *before* `minitoc`).

A “Jargon” chapter is added. It will grow slowly.

Added a note about a problem with `minitoc`, `hyperref` and `memoir` used together.

Some bugs in the `\mtcset...` commands are fixed.

Added a hint about the `varsects` package [336].

W0038

Added a hint on the number of mini-tables when short extensions are used.

Added a chapter with all the (explained) messages.

8.15 Developments in 2006

Added the “*” keyword as first argument of the `\mtcsetpagenumbers` and `\mtcsetrules` command, to get an action on all kinds of mini-tables.

Corrections in the `\mtcaddsection`, `\mtcfixglossary`, and `\mtcfixindex` commands.

In the PDF documentation, the panel of bookmarks shows initially only the bookmarks for parts and chapters, but you can open them to show deeper entries.

Added a comment about the initialization of fonts in the FAQ (point 34). It is still an open domain and I am working on it.

Added a hint about the KOMA-Script classes [207, 270, 308], and an entry in the FAQ chapter (and in `minitoc.bug`).

I0043

Added the “Postface” chapter.

Added the `\mtcprepare` command.

Added an URL field in the bibliography (the styles are modified with the `urlbst` tool [158]).

Added the `mtcmess` package to add unique identifiers to the messages.

Suppressed the PostScript documentation files from the distribution (no more accepted on CTAN archives), but the scripts still creates them.

Corrections in the `insection` package option.

Reordering of the chapters in the user’s manual (part I).

8.16 Developments in 2007

Removed the preparation of documentation in PostScript format.

Added the `cmk` script to convert the documentation from PDF format to PostScript format.

Added hints about the `fncychap` [237], `quotchap` [338], `romannum` [372], `sfheaders` [239], `aliumsec` [212], and `captcont` [115] packages.

Added FAQ 44 and the `\mtcgapbeforeheads` and `\mtcgapafterheads` formatting commands.

Added the chapter 4, “Examples of documents”, page 89.

W0086

W0087

W0088

W0089

W0090

Added FAQ 45 and the `\kernafterparttoc` and `co.` commands for the vertical space between a minitable and its bottom rule.

Increased the text width and adjusted the format of the entries in the TOC in the documentation.

Correction of the preamble in the generated files (spurious lines have been eliminated, at least).

Added `devanagari.mld` and `hindi.mld`. Added `hindi-modern.mld`.

The bibliographic styles `plainurl.bst` and `frplain1.bst` are renamed `en-mtc.bst` and `fr-mtc.bst`.

All example documents are renamed with names beginning with “`mtc-`”.

The “`listfiles`” package option is active by default.

Better error messages about undefined preparation and insertion commands.

Added `japanese6.mld` and `japanese6.mlo`.

Added a hint about the `hangcaption` package [196].

W0092

Added (in the `memento`) a table of the classes and packages which are incompatible or need precautions with `minitoc`.

Added a validation of the language options with the presence of the `.mld` and `.mlo` files.

Added the `tnk` script and a table describing a TDS-compliant structure for `minitoc`.

Updated the `INSTALL` file and the “Installation” chapter.

Added the file `minitoc-tds.zip` (a ZIP archive of a TDS-compliant hierarchy of all files of the package) to the distribution.

Improving the index (entries for: packages and classes, scripts, tools, names, examples, extensions, option, language options).

The names of some internal macros are shortened to fit into the margin.

Indexing the environments and the files.

Indexing the counters and depth counters.

The example files are in their own directory in the (proposed) TDS-compliant hierarchy.

Indexing referenced commands (begin).

Added `mongolb.mld` and `mongolb.mlo`.

Removed `mongolb.mlo` (new T2 and X2 cyrillic encodings in `mongolb.mld`).

Added the `mtc-3co.tex` example file.

Added `mongolian.mld` (loads `mongolb.mld`).

Improved the layout of the index.

Indexing the names of authors.

Added the `mtc-fko.tex` example file.

Bibliographic references for packages and classes in the index.

Features in the index.

Added the “open” and “close” features.

Added the `mtc-ocf.tex` example file.

Added the “`\mtcfixnomenclature`” command.

Added the `mtc-nom.tex` example file.

Corrected the last argument of `\mtcsetfeature` and `siblings`, using `\mtc@toks`.

Indexing the messages. Messages noted in the right margin.

Added `latinc.mld` and `latinc2.mld` for classical latin.

Added internal hyperlinks for messages.

Added `\mtcoffset` and `co.` for an horizontal offset of a mini-table.

Added `\mtcsetoffset` for an horizontal offset of a mini-table type.

Added the `mtc-ofs.tex` example file.

Added flagging of macros in example files.

Added a clickable table of all messages.

Added a local `minitoc` in the “Jargon” chapter.

Added `lithuanian2.mld`.

Added `latvian2.mld` and `letton2.mld`.

Added a hint (warning `W0097`) about the `flowfram` [333, 334] package (incompatible).

W0097

Added a *hint* (`I0053`) about the `float` [238], `floatrow` [223], `trivfloat` [375], and `rotfloat` [322] packages.

I0053

Regrouping some marginal notes about messages; improving their positions.

Corrected a bug about minitocs in appendices for the memoir class.

Changed the color of hyperlinks.

Revised the format of headers.

Corrected some `\mtcset...` commands to use `\edef` to correctly evaluate `\mtc@toks`.

Acknowledgments

I ought to thank the following peoples¹, for their help, their questions, their interventions in the news groups², and/or for their packages, classes, documents, and tools:

Hassan ABOLHASSANI, Paul W. ABRAHAMS, Nabil ABU EL-ATA, Tommaso ADDABBO, Juan M. AGUIRREGABIRIA, Stéphane AICARDI, Vartan AKOPIAN, A. J. ALEX, Mark ALFORD, Jacques ANDRÉ, Jérôme ANDRIEUX, Ralf ANGELI, Walter APPEL, Achod André ARADIAN, Einar ÁRNASON, Tim ARNOLD, Jouko ARPONEN, Donald ARSENEAU, Helmer ASLASKEN, David ASPINALL, Ivar ÅSSEN, Philipp BACHMANN, Gonçal BADENES, Marin BALGARENSKY, Leonor BARROCA, Pierre BASSO, Dorjgotov BATMUNKH, Jean-Yves BAUDAIS, David BAUSUM, Benjamin BAYART, Thierry BAYET, Claudio BECCARI, Emmanuel BEFFARA, Benoît BELET, Rachid BELMOUHOU, József BÉRCES, Alexander BERDNIKOV, Jens BERGER, Karl BERRY, Berhanu BEYENE, Javier BEZOS, Giuseppe BILOTTA, Árpád BÍRÓ, Denis BITOUZÉ, Laurent BLOCH, Georgi N. BOSHPANOV, Patrice BOUGETTE, Daniel BOURBONNAIS, Victor BOYKO, Johannes L. BRAAMS, Felix BRAUN, Jim BREEN, Peter BREITENLOHNER, Gyöngyi BUJDOSÓ, Mimi BURBANK, Mustafa BURC, Alexey BURYKIN, Olivier CARDI, Samuele CARCAGNO, David CARELLA, David P. CARLISLE, Kevin CARMODY, Manuel CARRIBA, Régis CASPAR, Winston CHANG, Jean-Côme CHARPENTIER, Jean-Pascal CHAUVET, Pehong CHEN, Céline CHEVALIER, Jana CHLEBÍKOVÁ, Otfried CHEONG, Pai H. CHOU, Marian CLEGG, Steven Douglas COCHRAN, Maurizio CODOGNO, David B. COOK, Emmanuel CORNET, Oliver CORFF, Prakash COUNTCHAM, Sergueï DACHIAN, Adrian DAERR, Arnak DALALYAN, Patrick W. DALY, Holger DANIELSSON, Arnaldo Viegas DE LIMA, Sébastien DEMOUSTIER, Éric DEPARDIEU, Ben DE RYDT, Bernard DESGRAUPES, Cécile DESPRAIRIES, Sébastien DESREUX, Antoni R. DILLER, Dorjpalam DORJ, Ivars DRIKIS, Denys DUCHIER, Lyndon DUDDING, Marko ÈEHAJA, Ta Quang DUNG, Victor EIJKHOUT, Danie ELS, Behdad ESFAHBOD, Thomas ESSER, Gilhooly ETIENNE, Karl F. EVERITT, Mike FABIAN, Robin FAIRBAIRNS, Christian FAULHAMMER, Simon FEAR, Jürgen FENN, Michael J. FERGUSON, Jeff FESSLER, Ulrike FISCHER, Jean-Julien FLECK, Daniel FLIPO, Peter L. FLOM, Peter FLYNN, Jim FOX, Danny M. FÜRNISS, Tetsuo FURUKAWA, Federico GARCIA, Diego GARCÍA MORATE, Hubert GÄSSLEIN, Maarten GELDERMAN, Chuck GENSCHTE, Mohammad GHODSI, Helen GILHOOY, Markus GLEISZNER, Vitali GONTSHARUK, Michel GOOSSENS, Mathieu GOUTELLE, Fraser GRANT, George GRÄTZER, Norman GRAY, George D. GREENWADE, Enrico GREGORIO, Loïc GRENON, Charles GREYER, Olga A. GRINEVA, Sébastien GROT, Micael GUIGNARD, Marion GUNN, Eitan M. GURARI, Thomas HAFNER, Hans HAGEN,

¹ And I apologize to all whose I forgot.

² Mainly, `fr.comp.text.tex` (in french) and `comp.text.tex` (in english), but also `de.comp.text.tex` (in german, but I do not read it well: send me also a mail in french or english).

Boumediene HAMZI, Thé Thành HÀN, Thorsten HANSEN, Patrick HAPPEL, Yannis HARALAMBOUS, Kathryn A. HARGREAVES, Alexander HARIN, Russel L. HARRIS, Michael A. HARRISON, Stephen HARTKE, Danny HEAP, Jim HEFFERON, André HEIDER, Thorsten HEIN, Sten HELLMAN, Håvard HELSTRUP, Yvon HENEL, Hartmut HENKEL, Thomas HENLICH, Stephan HENNIG, Florence HENRY, Stephen HERBORN, Jörg HESOLL, David HOADLEY, Taco HOEKWATER, Alan HOENIG, Joe HOGG, Morten HØGHOLM, Alv Kjetil HOLME, Klaus HÖPPNER, Umstatter HORST, Don HOSEK, Yufan HU, Jean-Michel HUFFLEN, Dave W. HUSEBY, Helene HYNA, Hiroya IKEDA, Dmitry IVANOV, Per Steinar IVERSEN, Tetsuo IWAKUMA, Zunbeltz IZAOLA, Youssef JABRI, Paweł JACKOWSKI, Bernd JAEHNE, Radwan JALAM, Michael JANICH, Frank JENSEN, Alan JEFFREY, Regnor JERNSLETEN, Zhuhan JIANG, Loïc JOLY, David M. JONES, Christophe JORSEN, Robert JUHASZ, Stefan JUNGE, Dan JURAFSKY, Akira KAKUTO, Mikko KANERVA, Theppitak KAROONBOONYANAN, David KASTRUP, Ronan KERYELL, Axel KIELHORN, Ki-Joo KIM, Bil KLEB, Peter KLEIWEG, Rune KLEVELAND, Ingo KLÖCKL, Jörg KNAPPEN, Donald E. KNUTH, Markus KOHM, Helmut KOPKA, Attila KOPPANYI, Adamantios KORAI, Vincent KRAKOWIACK, Kai KRATT, Thankmar KRONZUCKER, Siep KROONENBERG, Alexej M. KRYUKOV, Manfred KUDLEK, Markus G. KUHN, Florian KULZER, Toshiaki KUMAZAWA, Olaf KUMMER, Frank KÜSTER, Stéphane LABORDE, Thomas LACHAND-ROBERT, Klaus LAGALLY, Leslie LAMPORT, Fabio LANARI, Robert LANGE, Dag LANGMYHR, Olga G. LAPKO, Henning LARSEN, Jean-Marc LASGOUTTES, Andris LASIS, Jean-Philippe LAUFFENBURGER, Arnaud LAUNAY, Claire LAUVERNET, Boris LAVVA, André LEBACQ, Olivier LECARME, Jeanne LEGRAND, Philipp LEHMAN, Werner LEMBERG, Thomas LEONHARDT, Etwan LE PENNEC, Stéphane LEPOLOZEC, Julien LE THUAUT, Adam LEWENBERG, Knut LICKERT, Ulf A. LINDGREN, Anselm LINGNAU, Pierre LOBEL, Miloš V. LOKAJČEK, Stoffel LOMBARD, Maurizio LORETI, Tristan LORINO, Tim LOVE, Vincent LOZANO, Daniel H. LUECKING, Ken LUNDE, Anders LYHNE, Pierre A. MACKAY, Lars MADSEN, Richard MAHONEY, Irina A. MAKHOVAYA, Bob MARGOLIS, Nicolas MARKEY, Marcus MARR, Françoise MARRE-FOURNIER, Terry MART, Vadim MASLOV, Henri MASSIAS, Andreas MATTHIAS, Sven MATTISSON, Rowland McDONNELL, Ben MCKAY, Surapant MEKNAVIN, Sébastien MENGIN, Jochen METZINGER, Yanick MICHOU, Frank MITTELBACH, Young Joon MOON, Ross MOORE, Jens-Uwe MORAWSKI, Lapo Filippo MORI, Michael A. MORRISON, Javier A. MÚGICA DE RIVERA, Dejan MUHAMEDAGIĆ, Sergei O. NAUMOV, Lee NETHERTON, Frank NEUKAM, Cuong NGUYEN, Julien NICOLAS, Rolf NIEPRASCHK, Josselin NOIREL, Tim NULL, Heiko OBERDIEK, Tobias OETIKER, Mariusz OLKO, Tanguy ORTOLO, Erik ÖSTHOLS, Jörg OTT, Alan PAIĆ, Scott PAKIN, Palash Baran PAL, Anshuman PANDEY, Minje Byeng-sen PARK, Hubert PARTL, Oren PATASHNIK, Jonathan PECHTA, Kasper PEETERS, Matthias PELGER, Terje Engeset PETTERST, Paul PICHAREAU, Éric PICHERAL, Bruno PIGUET, Karel PŠKA, John PLAICE, Veerathanabutr POONLAP, Fabrice POPINEAU, Nico POPPELIER, Rama PORRAT, Camille-Aimé POSSAMAÏ, Roozbeh POURNADER, Hilmar PREUSSE, C. V. RADHAKRISHNAN, Sebastian RAHTZ, Bernd RAICHLE, Jose Pedro RAMALHETE, Keranen REINO, Adrian REZUŞ, Yuri ROBBERS, A. J. “Tony” ROBERTS, Will ROBERTSON, Denis B. ROEGEL, Christian ROLLAND, Rasmus Pank ROULUND, Chris A. ROWLEY, Marti RUIZ-ALTABA, Jan Michael RYNNING, Young RYU, Enn SAAR, David SAMSOEN, Julio SÁNCHEZ, Morgan SANGEUX, Eddie SAUDRAIS, Elmar SCHALÜCK, Bernd SCHANDL, Elisabeth SCHLEGL, Tobias SCHLEMMER, Walter SCHMIDT, Thomas A. SCHMITZ, Uwe SCHNEIDER, Rainer SCHÖPF, Martin SCHRÖDER, Ulrich SCHWARTZ, Elizabeth SCURFIELD, Michael SHELL, JUNGSHIK Shin, Ali SHOUKAT, Andrij M. SHVAIKA, Chanop SILPA-ANAN, Sindhu SINGH, Anna SITNIKOVA-RIOLAND, Jankovic SLOBODAN, John SMITH, Robin S. SOCHA, Nick SOFRONIOU, Axel SOMMERFELDT, Lianyi SONG, Yves SOULET, Arjen STEINER, D. P. STORY, Éric STREIT, Ralf STUBNER, K. K. SUBRAMANIAM, Robert S. SUTOR, Chris SWOYER, Apostolos SYROPOULOS, Raffaella TABACCO, Nicola L. C. TALBOT,

Daniel TAUPIN[†], Philip TAYLOR, Christina THIELE, Kresten Krab THORUP, Aurélien THUREAU, Karsten TINNEFELD, Ton 'T LAM, Sigitas TOLUŠIS, Laurent TORDELLA, Mark TRETTIN, Antonis TSOLOMITIS, Ahto TRUU, Stefan ULRICH, Hideo UMEKI, Un KOAUNGI, Turgut UYAR, Jari VAARIO, Piet VAN OOSTRUM, Thomas VAN OUDENHOVE DE SAINT GÉRY, Timothy VAN ZANDT, Vincent VAQUIN, Suki K. VENKATESAN, Didier VERNÉ, Sylvain VESCO, Boris VEYTSMAN, Alexandre VIAL, André VIOLANTE, Carl F. VOEGELIN, Florence M. VOEGELIN, Martin VOGEL, Vladimir VOLOVICH, Stephan P. VON BECHTOLSHEIM, Herbert VOSS, Zdeněk WAGNER, David WALDEN, Nigel WARD, John WARNOCK, Douglas WAUD Staszek WAWRYKIEWICZ, Stephan B. WEBANCK, Eduard WERNER, Daphne WEST, Ferenc WETTL, Graham WILLIAMS, Peter R. WILSON, Jeroen WIJNHOUT, Marcin WOLIŃSKI, Élisabeth WOLKOWSKI, Mark WOODING, Joseph A. WRIGHT, Tim WRIGHT, Dominik WUJASTYK, Damien WYART, C. S. YOGANANDA, Adi ZAİMİ, Lejzer Ludwig ZAMENOF, Danilo ZAVRTANIK, Krzysztof Konrad ŹELECHOWSKI, Charlie S. ZENDER, Federico ZENITH, Vadim V. ZHYTNIKOV, Uwe ZIEGENHAGEN, and Leon ŹLAJPAH.

Part II

Implementation

Contents of the Second Part

9	Commented code of the <code>minitoc</code> package	263
10	Commented code of the <code>mtcoff</code> package	442
11	Commented code of the <code>mtcmess</code> package	458
12	Patch for the <code>memoir</code> class	459
13	Language definition (<code>.mld</code>) and object (<code>.mlo</code>) files	461

Chapter 9

Commented code of the minitoc package

Contents

9.1	Introduction	267
9.2	Identification code	267
9.3	A file descriptor to write	267
9.4	Indentation and skip	268
9.5	Tests and flags	269
9.5.1	Flags for the <code>hints</code> option	269
9.5.2	Use of section-level mini-lists of floats	270
9.5.3	Presence of some packages and classes	270
9.5.4	Flags for packages dealing with floats	271
9.5.5	Insertion of empty mini-tables	271
9.5.6	Presence or absence of some sectionning commands	271
9.5.7	Flags to check if some commands are used	272
9.5.8	Check if the document has exactly 2 parts	273
9.6	Preparation for the <code>notoccite</code> option	274
9.7	Preparation for the <code>tight</code> and <code>k-tight</code> options	274
9.8	Preparation to work with <code>hyperref</code>	275
9.9	Checking the presence of some packages	275
9.9.1	Check if the <code>sectsty</code> package is loaded, and when	275
9.9.2	Check if the <code>varsects</code> package is loaded, and when	275
9.9.3	Check if the <code>fncychap</code> package is loaded, and when	276
9.9.4	Check if the <code>hangcaption</code> package is loaded, and when	276
9.9.5	Check if the <code>quotchap</code> package is loaded, and when	276
9.9.6	Check if the <code>romannum</code> package is loaded, and when	276
9.9.7	Check if the <code>sfheaders</code> package is loaded, and when	277
9.9.8	Check if the <code>alnumsec</code> package is loaded, and when	277
9.9.9	Check if the <code>captcont</code> package is loaded, and when	277
9.9.10	Check if the <code>caption</code> package is loaded, and when	277
9.9.11	Check if the <code>caption2</code> package is loaded, and when	278
9.9.12	Check if the <code>ccaption</code> package is loaded, and when	278
9.9.13	Check if the <code>mcaption</code> package is loaded, and when	278
9.9.14	Check if the <code>float</code> package is loaded	278

9.9.15	Check if the floatrow package is loaded	278
9.9.16	Check if the trivfloat package is loaded	279
9.9.17	Check if the rofloat package is loaded	279
9.10	Is the memoir class loaded?	279
9.11	Testing the emptiness of a file	280
9.12	Internal macros to decrement minitoc counters	281
9.13	Patching the <code>\part</code> command	282
9.14	Adding an entry in the TOC for a starred part	282
9.15	Section level macros	283
9.16	Corrections for numbering	283
9.17	Patching the <code>\section</code> command	283
9.18	Adding an entry in the TOC for a starred section	284
9.19	Chapter level macros	284
9.20	Patching the <code>\chapter</code> command	284
9.21	Adding an entry in the TOC for a starred chapter	285
9.22	Miscellaneous declarations	285
9.23	Autoconfiguration of extensions	286
9.24	Detecting obsolete versions of \LaTeX	287
9.25	Adding a TOC entry without leaders nor page numbers	288
9.26	Default values for the page-number customizations	288
9.27	“Features” for the mini-tables	291
9.28	Fake tables of contents	293
9.29	Depth counters for minilofs and minilots	294
9.30	Chapter level commands	294
9.31	Starred parts, chapters or sections	295
9.32	Font commands for the mini-tables	297
9.33	Internal commands to position the mini-table titles	297
9.34	The <code>mtc@verse</code> environment	298
9.35	The <code>\minitoc</code> , <code>\minilof</code> , and <code>\minilot</code> commands	298
9.35.1	The <code>\minitoc</code> command	298
9.35.2	The <code>\minilof</code> command	301
9.35.3	The <code>\minilot</code> command	305
9.36	Patching the <code>\chapter</code> command, continued	308
9.37	The <code>\addstarred...</code> commands	308
9.38	TOC entries without leaders	309
9.39	Mini-tables with or without leaders	309
9.40	The <code>\dominitoc</code> command and its siblings	310
9.40.1	Analysis and splitting of the TOC file	313
9.41	Mini-lists of figures	317
9.41.1	Analysis and splitting of the list of figures file	318
9.42	Mini-lists of tables	320
9.42.1	Analysis and splitting of the list of tables file	320
9.43	Macro to write a contents line	323
9.44	Depth counters for partlofs and partlots	324
9.45	Part level commands	324
9.46	Fonts for the parttocs	325
9.47	Default titles for part-level mini-tables	326
9.48	The <code>ptc@verse</code> environment	327
9.49	The part level mini-tables: <code>\parttoc</code> , <code>\partlof</code> , and <code>\partlot</code>	328
9.49.1	The <code>\parttoc</code> command	328
9.49.2	The <code>\partlof</code> command	331
9.49.3	The <code>\partlot</code> command	334
9.50	Auxiliary commands for printing parttocs	337

9.51	Patching the <code>\part</code> command, continued	337
9.52	The <code>\doparttoc</code> command and its siblings	337
9.52.1	Processing macros for the <code>parttocs</code>	340
9.52.2	Processing macros for the <code>partlofs</code>	343
9.52.3	Processing macros for the <code>partlots</code>	346
9.53	Depth counters for <code>sectlofs</code> and <code>sectlots</code>	348
9.54	Section-level commands	348
9.55	Fonts commands for <code>secttocs</code> and <code>co.</code>	349
9.56	Internal macros for title positioning	349
9.57	The <code>stc@verse</code> environment	350
9.58	The <code>\secttoc</code>, <code>\sectlof</code>, and <code>\sectlot</code> commands	350
9.58.1	The <code>\secttoc</code> command	350
9.58.2	The <code>\sectlof</code> command	353
9.58.3	The <code>\sectlot</code> command	356
9.59	Auxiliary internal commands, section level	358
9.60	Patching the <code>\section</code> command (continued)	359
9.61	The <code>\dosecttoc</code> command and siblings	360
9.62	End of section-level commands	370
9.63	The <code>\mtcprepare</code> command	370
9.64	Necessary <code>\l@...</code> commands	371
9.65	The horizontal rules and their default values	371
9.66	The <code>\mtcset...</code> commands	372
9.66.1	Keywords for the <code>\mtcset...</code> commands	372
9.66.2	The <code>\mtcsetfont</code> command	374
9.66.3	The <code>\mtcsetttitlefont</code> command	378
9.66.4	The <code>\mtcsetttitle</code> command	380
9.66.5	The <code>\mtcsetformat</code> command	381
9.66.6	The <code>\mtcsetpagenumbers</code> command	385
9.66.7	The <code>\mtcsetrules</code> command	388
9.66.8	The <code>\mtcsetfeature</code> command	390
9.66.9	The <code>\mtcsetdepth</code> command	392
9.66.10	The <code>\mtcsetoffset</code> command	394
9.67	The <code>mtchideinmaintoc</code> environment and siblings	395
9.68	Fixing the “Glossary” entry in the TOC	397
9.69	Fixing the “Index” entry in the TOC	398
9.70	Fixing the “Nomenclature” entry in the TOC	400
9.71	The <code>\mtcselectlanguage</code> command	401
9.72	The <code>\mtcloadmlo</code> internal command	401
9.73	The “coffee breaks”	402
9.74	Initialization of counters	403
9.75	Declarations for simple options	403
9.75.1	Options <code>tight</code> and <code>loose</code> , <code>k-tight</code> and <code>k-loose</code>	403
9.75.2	Options <code>checkfiles</code> and <code>nocheckfiles</code>	403
9.75.3	Options <code>dotted</code> and <code>undotted</code>	403
9.75.4	Option <code>notoccite</code>	404
9.75.5	Option <code>shorttext</code>	404
9.76	The <code>insection</code> option	404
9.77	The <code>listfiles</code> and <code>nolistfiles</code> options	405
9.78	Language options	405
9.79	The <code>hints</code> option	409
9.79.1	First part: <code>\mtc@hints@begindoc</code>	410
9.79.1.1	Hint about the <code>alphanum</code> package	410
9.79.1.2	Hint about the <code>appendix</code> package	410
9.79.1.3	Hint about the <code>tocbibind</code> package	411

9.79.1.4	Hint about the KOMA-Script classes	411
9.79.1.5	Hint about the tocloft package	412
9.79.1.6	Hint about the titletoc package	412
9.79.1.7	Hint about the placeins package	412
9.79.1.8	Hint about the memoir class	414
9.79.1.9	Hint about the amsart and amsproc classes	414
9.79.1.10	Hint about the amsbook class	414
9.79.1.11	Hint about the abstract package	415
9.79.1.12	Hint about the jura class	415
9.79.1.13	Hint about the flowfram package	415
9.79.1.14	Hint about the alteration of the sectionning commands	416
9.79.1.14.1	Alteration of <code>\part</code>	416
9.79.1.14.2	Alteration of <code>\chapter</code>	417
9.79.1.14.3	Alteration of <code>\section</code>	417
9.79.1.15	Hint about the consistency of the calling sequences of the commands	418
9.79.2	Final part: <code>\mtc@hints@enddoc</code>	419
9.79.2.1	Hint about <code>\sect-lof lot</code> and the <code>insection</code> option	419
9.79.2.2	Final part of the consistency tests	419
9.79.2.3	Check if the main tables have been prepared (first part)	421
9.79.2.4	Check if the main tables have been prepared (second part)	423
9.79.2.5	Check the number of mini-tables, in case of short extensions	426
9.79.2.6	Final part of the hint about the <code>sectsty</code> package	427
9.79.2.7	Final part of the hint about the <code>varsects</code> package	427
9.79.2.8	Final part of the hint about the <code>fncychap</code> package	427
9.79.2.9	Final part of the hint about the <code>hangcaption</code> package	428
9.79.2.10	Final part of the hint about the <code>quotchap</code> package	428
9.79.2.11	Final part of the hint about the <code>romannum</code> package	428
9.79.2.12	Final part of the hint about the <code>sfheaders</code> package	429
9.79.2.13	Final part of the hint about the <code>alnumsec</code> package	429
9.79.2.14	Final part of the hint about the <code>captcont</code> package	429
9.79.2.15	Final part of the hint about the <code>caption</code> package	430
9.79.2.16	Final part of the hint about the <code>caption2</code> package	430
9.79.2.17	Final part of the hint about the <code>ccaption</code> package	430
9.79.2.18	Final part of the hint about the <code>mcaption</code> package	431
9.79.2.19	Final part of the hint about the <code>float</code> package	431
9.79.2.20	Final part of the hint about the <code>floatrow</code> package	431
9.79.2.21	Final part of the hint about the <code>trivfloat</code> package	432
9.79.2.22	Final part of the hint about the <code>rotfloat</code> package	432
9.79.2.23	Check if empty mini-tables have been detected	432
9.79.2.24	Check if obsolete commands have been used	434
9.79.2.25	Check if some hints have been written	435
9.80	Processing of options	436
9.80.1	Processing the <code>insection</code> option	436
9.80.2	Processing the <code>notoccite</code> option	437
9.80.3	Processing the <code>listfiles</code> option	437
9.80.4	Processing the <code>hints</code> option	438
9.80.5	Saving the sectionning commands	438
9.81	Trapping the undefined preparation and insertion commands	439
9.82	The <code>fminitoc.dtx</code> file	441

9.1 Introduction

This very long chapter presents the code of the minitoc package and attempts to explain it. Some comments of the original source file¹ are skipped, like the history, because they do not need further examination (they will be put in the change history).

The code is split in sections to make the reading easier, and the sections are sometimes reordered to make the reading easier.

Most of the minitoc external commands have `mtc`, `ptc`, `stc`, or one of the mini-table names (`parttoc`, ..., `sectlot`) in their names. Most of the minitoc internal commands have `@mtc`, `@ptc`, `@stc`, or `parttoc@`, ..., `sectlot@` in their names, or a similar convention. The few exceptions should be explicit enough to not conflict with other packages.

9.2 Identification code

The code of `minitoc.sty` starts here:

```
2785 <*minitoc>
```

<pre>\NeedsTeXFormat \ProvidesPackage \mtcPackageInfo \RequirePackage</pre>	<pre>This code section identifies the package with its name, version number and date. A trace is written in the <i>document.log</i> file. This package will not work with L^AT_EX2.09. 2786 \NeedsTeXFormat{LaTeX2e}[1996/06/02]% 2787 \ProvidesPackage{minitoc}% 2788 [2007/06/29 v55 Package minitoc (JPDF)] % message I0000 2789 \RequirePackage{mtcmess}[2006/03/14] 2790 \mtcPackageInfo[I0001]{minitoc}% 2791 {*** minitoc package, version 55 ***\@gobble}</pre>	<table border="1" style="border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td style="padding: 2px 5px;">I0000</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="padding: 2px 5px;">I0001</td> </tr> </table>	I0000	I0001
I0000				
I0001				

9.3 A file descriptor to write

`\tf@mtc` A file descriptor is needed to write the files containing the mini-tables, it is `\tf@mtc`. The minitoc package uses only one file descriptor for writing. See section 9.23 on page 286.

```
2792 \newwrite\tf@mtc
```

¹ The source file of version #42. Version #43 includes the conversion of the package to `.dtx-.ins` format. Version #42 has not been distributed because of that.

9.4 Indentation and skip

`\mtcindent` We define the indentation `\mtcindent` (both sides) of the mini-tables and the command
`\mtcskip` `\mtcskip` to make a vertical skip before a mini-table, its value is `\mtcskipamount` (default:
`\mtcskipamount` `\bigskipamount`).
`\parskip`

```
2793 \newlength\mtcindent
2794 \newskip\mtcskipamount
2795 \setlength{\mtcskipamount}{\bigskipamount}
2796 \def\mtcskip{\parskip=\z@\addvspace{\mtcskipamount}}
```

Note that `\mtcskip` uses a local group to avoid the influence of `\parskip`.

`\mtcgapbeforeheads` We define the default values for the vertical gaps before and after titles part level mini-tables.
`\mtcgapafterheads`

```
2797 \def\mtcgapbeforeheads{50\p@}
2798 \def\mtcgapafterheads{40\p@}
```

`\@ifundefined` We define the vertical kernings between the minitables and their before the bottom rule. The
`\kernafterparttoc` names of these macros is rather explicit. The values are empirical and can be changed via
`\kernafterpartlof` `\renewcommand`.
`\kernafterpartlot`

```
\kernaftersecttoc 2799 \@ifundefined{part}{}{%
\kernaftersectlof 2800 \def\kernafterparttoc{\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
\kernaftersectlot 2801 \def\kernafterpartlof{\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
\kernafterminitoc 2802 \def\kernafterpartlot{\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
\kernafterminilof 2803 }%
\kernafterminilot 2804 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}%
2805 \@ifundefined{section}{}%
2806 }%
2807 \def\kernaftersecttoc{\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
2808 \def\kernaftersectlof{\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
2809 \def\kernaftersectlot{\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
2810 }%
2811 }%
2812 }%
2813 \def\kernafterminitoc{\kern-.5\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
2814 \def\kernafterminilof{\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern0.ex}%
2815 \def\kernafterminilot{\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern0.ex}%
2816 }%
```

```

\@ifundefined We defines horizontal offets by which the margins in the mini-tables are corrected (added to
\ptcoffset the right margin and subtracted from the left margin). These are commands, not lengths2, to
\pfloffset be redefined by \renewcommand.
\pltoffset
\mtcoffset 2817 \@ifundefined{part}{}{}%
\mlfoffset 2818 \def\ptcoffset{0pt}%
\mltoffset 2819 \def\plfoffset{0pt}%
\sltoffset 2820 \def\pltoffset{0pt}%
\sfloffset 2821 }%
\sltoffset 2822 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}%
2823 \@ifundefined{section}{}{}%
2824 {}%
2825 \def\stcoffset{0pt}%
2826 \def\slfoffset{0pt}%
2827 \def\sltoffset{0pt}%
2828 }%
2829 }%
2830 {}%
2831 \def\mtcoffset{0pt}%
2832 \def\mlfoffset{0pt}%
2833 \def\mltoffset{0pt}%
2834 }%

```

9.5 Tests and flags

We need to declare some flags³ (via `\newif`) to detect the loading of some packages or classes and the availability of some commands (this will be used by the `hints` option (section 9.79 on page 409) or to allow the definition of some minitoc commands).

9.5.1 Flags for the hints option

```

\if@mtc@hints@ But first, we define some flags for the hints option:
\if@mtc@hints@w@
\if@mtc@hints@giben@

```

- The flag `\if@mtc@hints@` is true if the `hints` option is required (default).
- The flag `\if@mtc@hints@w@` is set true if we detect that some sectionning commands have been altered since the loading of the document class.
- The flag `\if@mtc@hints@given@` is set true if the `hints` option detects something curious and writes messages in the `document.log` file. It will be used at the end of the document to signal that you should look for hints in the `document.log` file.

² We avoid to allocate a precious length register.

³ Not so many years ago, some authors had a preference for using counters rather than flags, because a flag costs 3 control sequences (`\iffoo`, `\foofalse` and `\footrue`), which use memory. But the number of count registers is limited to 256 in the native T_EX engine (much more with ϵ -T_EX [96], but still limited in number), while memory has become rather cheap today. And a code programmed with flags (`\iffoo ... \else ... \fi`) is easier to structure and debug than a code programmed with counters, IMHO.

```

2835 \newif\if@mtc@hints@ \@mtc@hints@true
2836 \newif\if@mtc@hints@w@ \@mtc@hints@w@false
2837 \newif\if@mtc@hints@given@ \@mtc@hints@given@false

```

9.5.2 Use of section-level mini-lists of floats

```

\if@mtc@sect@floats@ We will check if the commands \dosectlof and \dosectlot are used:
\dosectlof
\dosectlot 2838 \newif\if@mtc@sect@floats@ \@mtc@sect@floats@false

```

9.5.3 Presence of some packages and classes

```

\if@mtc@placeinsLoaded@ We will check if the placeins package is loaded, then if the memoir is loaded (and if it is a
\if@mtc@memoirLoaded@ recent enough version), then if the sectsty package is loaded (before or after minitoc).
\if@mtc@memoirnew@
\if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@ 2839 \newif\if@mtc@placeinsLoaded@ \@mtc@placeinsLoaded@false
\if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@a@ 2840 \newif\if@mtc@memoirLoaded@ \@mtc@memoirLoaded@false
2841 \newif\if@mtc@memoirnew@ \@mtc@memoirnew@false
2842 \newif\if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@ \@mtc@sectstyLoaded@false
2843 \newif\if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@a@ \@mtc@sectstyLoaded@a@false

```

```

\if@mtc@captionLoaded@ We do the same for some caption-related packages:
\if@mtc@captionLoaded@a@
\if@mtc@captionIILoaded@ 2844 \newif\if@mtc@captionLoaded@ \@mtc@captionLoaded@false
\if@mtc@captionIILoaded@a@ 2845 \newif\if@mtc@captionLoaded@a@ \@mtc@captionLoaded@a@false
\if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@ 2846 \newif\if@mtc@captionIILoaded@ \@mtc@captionIILoaded@false
\if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@a@ 2847 \newif\if@mtc@captionIILoaded@a@ \@mtc@captionIILoaded@a@false
\if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@ 2848 \newif\if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@ \@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@false
\if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@a@ 2849 \newif\if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@a@ \@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@a@false
\if@mtc@captcontLoaded@ 2850 \newif\if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@ \@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@false
\if@mtc@captcontLoaded@a@ 2851 \newif\if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@a@ \@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@a@false
2852 \newif\if@mtc@captcontLoaded@ \@mtc@captcontLoaded@false
2853 \newif\if@mtc@captcontLoaded@a@ \@mtc@captcontLoaded@a@false

```

```

\if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@ And the varsects package and other packages altering the sectionning commands:
\if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@a@
\if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@ 2854 \newif\if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@ \@mtc@varsectsLoaded@false
\if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@a@ 2855 \newif\if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@a@ \@mtc@varsectsLoaded@a@false
\if@mtc@HgcLoaded@ 2856 \newif\if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@ \@mtc@fncychapLoaded@false
\if@mtc@HgcLoaded@a@ 2857 \newif\if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@a@ \@mtc@fncychapLoaded@a@false
\if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@ 2858 \newif\if@mtc@HgcLoaded@ \@mtc@HgcLoaded@false
\if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@a@ 2859 \newif\if@mtc@HgcLoaded@a@ \@mtc@HgcLoaded@a@false
2860 \newif\if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@ \@mtc@quotchapLoaded@false
2861 \newif\if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@a@ \@mtc@quotchapLoaded@a@false

```

```

\if@mtc@romannumLoaded@ And yet other packages altering the sectionning commands:
\if@mtc@romannumLoaded@a@
\if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@ 2862 \newif\if@mtc@romannumLoaded@ \@mtc@romannumLoaded@false
\if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@a@ 2863 \newif\if@mtc@romannumLoaded@a@ \@mtc@romannumLoaded@a@false
\if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@ 2864 \newif\if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@ \@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@false
\if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@a@ 2865 \newif\if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@a@ \@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@a@false
2866 \newif\if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@ \@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@false
2867 \newif\if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@a@ \@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@a@false

```

9.5.4 Flags for packages dealing with floats

```

\if@mtc@floatLoaded@ We must warn about a limitation with the float [238], floatrow [223], trivfloat [375], and
\if@mtc@floatrowLoaded@ rotfloat [322] packages.
\if@mtc@trivfloatLoaded@
\if@mtc@rotfloatLoaded@ 2868 \newif\if@mtc@floatLoaded@ \@mtc@floatLoaded@false
2869 \newif\if@mtc@floatrowLoaded@ \@mtc@floatrowLoaded@false
2870 \newif\if@mtc@trivfloatLoaded@ \@mtc@trivfloatLoaded@false
2871 \newif\if@mtc@rotfloatLoaded@ \@mtc@rotfloatLoaded@false

```

9.5.5 Insertion of empty mini-tables

```

\if@mtc@empty@parttoc@ We will check if you have attempted to insert some empty mini-tables:
\if@mtc@empty@partlof@
\if@mtc@empty@partlot@ 2872 \newif\if@mtc@empty@parttoc@ \@mtc@empty@parttoc@false
\if@mtc@empty@minitoc@ 2873 \newif\if@mtc@empty@partlof@ \@mtc@empty@partlof@false
\if@mtc@empty@minitoc@ 2874 \newif\if@mtc@empty@partlot@ \@mtc@empty@partlot@false
\if@mtc@empty@minilof@ 2875 \newif\if@mtc@empty@minitoc@ \@mtc@empty@minitoc@false
\if@mtc@empty@sectlot@ 2876 \newif\if@mtc@empty@minilof@ \@mtc@empty@minilof@false
\if@mtc@empty@sectlof@ 2877 \newif\if@mtc@empty@minilof@ \@mtc@empty@minilof@false
\if@mtc@empty@sectlof@ 2878 \newif\if@mtc@empty@secttoc@ \@mtc@empty@secttoc@false
\if@mtc@empty@sectlot@ 2879 \newif\if@mtc@empty@sectlof@ \@mtc@empty@sectlof@false
2880 \newif\if@mtc@empty@sectlot@ \@mtc@empty@sectlot@false

```

9.5.6 Presence or absence of some sectionning commands

We define and set flags about the presence of the sectionning commands (in fact, the counters associated with these commands).

```

\if@mtc@part@def@ The part counter:

2881 \newif\if@mtc@part@def@ \@mtc@part@def@false
2882 \@ifundefined{part}{\@mtc@part@def@false}{\@mtc@part@def@true}

```

`\if@mtc@chapter@def@` The chapter counter:

```
2883 \newif\if@mtc@chapter@def@ \@mtc@chapter@def@false
2884 \@ifundefined{chapter}{\@mtc@chapter@def@false}{\@mtc@chapter@def@true}
```

`\if@mtc@section@def@` The section counter:

```
2885 \newif\if@mtc@section@def@ \@mtc@section@def@false
2886 \@ifundefined{section}{\@mtc@section@def@false}{\@mtc@section@def@true}
```

We define and set flags about the absence of the sectionning commands.

`\if@mtc@part@undef@` The part counter:

```
2887 \newif\if@mtc@part@undef@ \@mtc@part@undef@true
2888 \@ifundefined{part}{\@mtc@part@undef@true}{\@mtc@part@undef@false}
```

`\if@mtc@chapter@undef@` The chapter counter:

```
2889 \newif\if@mtc@chapter@undef@ \@mtc@chapter@undef@true
2890 \@ifundefined{chapter}{\@mtc@chapter@undef@true}{\@mtc@chapter@undef@false}
```

`\if@mtc@section@undef@` The section counter:

```
2891 \newif\if@mtc@section@undef@ \@mtc@section@undef@true
2892 \@ifundefined{section}{\@mtc@section@undef@true}{\@mtc@section@undef@false}
```

9.5.7 Flags to check if some commands are used

We define a pair of flags for each mini-table type: one for the command itself and one for the preparation command (`\do...`). These flags will be used by the hints package option (section 9.79 on page 409).

`\if@parttoc@used@` For the part level:

`\if@partlof@used@`

`\if@partlot@used@` 2893 \newif\if@parttoc@used@ \global\@parttoc@used@false

`\if@doparttoc@used@` 2894 \newif\if@partlof@used@ \global\@partlof@used@false

`\if@dopartlof@used@` 2895 \newif\if@partlot@used@ \global\@partlot@used@false

`\if@dopartlot@used@` 2896 \newif\if@doparttoc@used@ \global\@doparttoc@used@false

2897 \newif\if@dopartlof@used@ \global\@dopartlof@used@false

2898 \newif\if@dopartlot@used@ \global\@dopartlot@used@false


```

\if@minitoc@used@   For the chapter level:
\if@minilof@used@
\if@minilot@used@ 2899 \newif\if@minitoc@used@ \global\@minitoc@used@false
\if@dominitoc@used@ 2900 \newif\if@minilof@used@ \global\@minilof@used@false
\if@dominilof@used@ 2901 \newif\if@minilot@used@ \global\@minilot@used@false
\if@dominilot@used@ 2902 \newif\if@dominitoc@used@ \global\@dominitoc@used@false
2903 \newif\if@dominilof@used@ \global\@dominilof@used@false
2904 \newif\if@dominilot@used@ \global\@dominilot@used@false

\if@secttoc@used@   For the section level:
\if@sectlof@used@
\if@sectlot@used@ 2905 \newif\if@secttoc@used@ \global\@secttoc@used@false
\if@dosecttoc@used@ 2906 \newif\if@sectlof@used@ \global\@sectlof@used@false
\if@dosectlof@used@ 2907 \newif\if@sectlot@used@ \global\@sectlot@used@false
\if@dosectlot@used@ 2908 \newif\if@dosecttoc@used@ \global\@dosecttoc@used@false
2909 \newif\if@dosectlof@used@ \global\@dosectlof@used@false
2910 \newif\if@dosectlot@used@ \global\@dosectlot@used@false

\if@firstpartis@used@ We also detect the use of some obsolete commands:
\if@firstchapteris@used@
\if@firstsectionis@used@ 2911 \newif\if@firstpartis@used@ \global\@firstpartis@used@false
2912 \newif\if@firstchapteris@used@ \global\@firstchapteris@used@false
2913 \newif\if@firstsectionis@used@ \global\@firstsectionis@used@false

```

9.5.8 Check if the document has exactly 2 parts

`\ifmtcsecondpart` In french, the ordinal adjective is “deuxième” if the second object is not the last object, but “second” (masculine) or “seconde” (feminine) when it is also the last one. So we define a specific flag:

```
2914 \newif\ifmtcsecondpart \mtcsecondpartfalse
```

`\AtBeginDocument` At the beginning of the document, we test this flag and make it global:
`\ifmtcsecondpart`

```

2915 \AtBeginDocument{%
2916   \ifmtcsecondpart
2917     \global\mtcsecondparttrue
2918   \else
2919     \global\mtcsecondpartfalse
2920   \fi}

```

```

\AtEndDocument    At the end of the document, we set and memorize the value of the flag in the .aux file:
\ifmtcsecondpart
  \@mainaux 2921 \AtEndDocument{%
            2922 \ifnum\value{part}=2\relax
            2923   \mtcsecondparttrue
            2924 \else
            2925   \mtcsecondpartfalse
            2926 \fi
            2927 \if@files
            2928   \ifmtcsecondpart
            2929     \immediate\write\@mainaux
            2930       {\string\global\string\mtcsecondparttrue}%
            2931   \else
            2932     \immediate\write\@mainaux
            2933       {\string\global\string\mtcsecondpartfalse}%
            2934   \fi
            2935 \fi}

```

So we need two \LaTeX runs to get a correct result. The `french2.mld` language definition file (see section 13.60 on page 493) uses this trick to form the titles of part level mini-tables. See the `mtc-2nd.tex` example file in section 4.2 on page 91.

9.6 Preparation for the notoccite option

```

\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile We declare a flag for the presence of this option and the new internal “hook” command
\if@mtc@notoccite@ (redefinable command) \mtc@hook@beforeinputfile, used by this option (this has been
                    requested by Donald ARSENEAU for his notoccite package [10]). See section 1.6 on page 51.

```

```

2936 \newif\if@mtc@notoccite@ \@mtc@notoccite@false
2937 \@ifundefined{mtc@hook@beforeinputfile}%
2938   {\let\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile\relax}{}

```

9.7 Preparation for the tight and k-tight options

```

\iftightmtc We just declare a flag for each of these options; they are set false by default (loose and
\ifktightmtc k-loose options):

```

```

2939 \newif\iftightmtc \tightmtcfalse
2940 \newif\ifktightmtc \ktightmtcfalse

```

9.8 Preparation to work with hyperref

`\AtBeginDocument` This code prepares the interface with the hyperref package [304]. A flag is defined, then
`\if@mtc@hyper@used@` this preparation is performed in an `\AtBeginDocument` block if this package is loaded. This
`\@ifpackageloaded` action defines some commands for the hyperref package.

I0005

```

2941 \mtcPackageInfo[I0005]{minitoc}{compatible with hyperref\@gobble}
2942 \newif\if@mtc@hyper@used@ \global\@mtc@hyper@used@false
2943 \AtBeginDocument{%
2944   \@ifpackageloaded{hyperref}{%
2945     \global\@mtc@hyper@used@true
2946     \def\toclevel@xpart{1000}%
2947     \def\toclevel@xchapter{1000}%
2948     \def\toclevel@xsect{1000}%
2949     \def\toclevel@xsection{1000}%
2950     \let\toclevel@starpertoclevel@part
2951     \let\toclevel@starchapter\toclevel@chapter
2952     \let\toclevel@starsection\toclevel@section
2953     \let\toclevel@starsubsection\toclevel@subsection
2954     \let\toclevel@starsubsubsection\toclevel@subsubsection
2955     \let\toclevel@starparagraph\toclevel@paragraph
2956     \let\toclevel@starsubparagraph\toclevel@subparagraph
2957   }{}%

```

9.9 Checking the presence of some packages

9.9.1 Check if the sectsty package is loaded, and when

`\AtBeginDocument` We must test if the sectsty package [249] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we test when
`\if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@` minitoc is loaded and also in an `\AtBeginDocument` block, when all packages have been
`\if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@a@` loaded. See section 9.79.2.6 on page 427.
`\@ifpackageloaded`

```

2958 \@ifpackageloaded{sectsty}{\@mtc@sectstyLoaded@true}{}%
2959 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{sectsty}{\@mtc@sectstyLoaded@a@true}{}%

```

9.9.2 Check if the varsects package is loaded, and when

`\@ifpackageloaded` We must test if the varsects package [336] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we test
`\AtBeginDocument` when minitoc is loaded and also in an `\AtBeginDocument` block, when all packages have
`\if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@` been loaded. See section 9.79.2.7 on page 427.
`\if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@a@`

```

2960 \@ifpackageloaded{varsects}{\@mtc@varsectsLoaded@true}{}%
2961 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{varsects}{\@mtc@varsectsLoaded@a@true}{}%

```

9.9.3 Check if the fncychap package is loaded, and when

```

\@ifpackageloaded We must test if the fncychap package [237] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we test
\AtBeginDocument when minitoc is loaded and also in an \AtBeginDocument block, when all packages have
\if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@ been loaded. See section 9.79.2.8 on page 427.
\if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@a@

2962 \@ifpackageloaded{fncychap}{\@mtc@fncychapLoaded@true}{}%
2963 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{fncychap}{\@mtc@fncychapLoaded@a@true}{}%

```

9.9.4 Check if the hangcaption package is loaded, and when

```

\@ifpackageloaded We must test if the hangcaption package [196] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we
\AtBeginDocument test when minitoc is loaded and also in an \AtBeginDocument block, when all packages
\if@mtc@HgcLoaded@ have been loaded. See section 9.79.2.9 on page 428.
\if@mtc@HgcLoaded@a@

2964 \@ifpackageloaded{hangcaption}{\@mtc@HgcLoaded@true}{}%
2965 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{hangcaption}{\@mtc@HgcLoaded@a@true}{}%

```

9.9.5 Check if the quotchap package is loaded, and when

```

\@ifpackageloaded We must test if the quotchap package [338] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we test
\AtBeginDocument when minitoc is loaded and also in an \AtBeginDocument block, when all packages have
\if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@ been loaded. See section 9.79.2.10 on page 428.
\if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@a@

2966 \@ifpackageloaded{quotchap}{\@mtc@quotchapLoaded@true}{}%
2967 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{quotchap}{\@mtc@quotchapLoaded@a@true}{}%

```

9.9.6 Check if the romannum package is loaded, and when

```

\@ifpackageloaded We must test if the romannum package [372] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we test
\AtBeginDocument when minitoc is loaded and also in an \AtBeginDocument block, when all packages have
\if@mtc@romannumLoaded@ been loaded. See section 9.79.2.11 on page 428.
\if@mtc@romannumLoaded@a@

2968 \@ifpackageloaded{romannum}{\@mtc@romannumLoaded@true}{}%
2969 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{romannum}{\@mtc@romannumLoaded@a@true}{}%

```

9.9.7 Check if the sfheaders package is loaded, and when

```

\@ifpackageloaded We must test if the sfheaders package [239] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we test
\AtBeginDocument when minitoc is loaded and also in an \AtBeginDocument block, when all packages have
\if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@ been loaded. See section 9.79.2.12 on page 429.
\if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@a@

2970 \@ifpackageloaded{sfheaders}{\@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@true}{}%
2971 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{sfheaders}{\@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@a@true}{}%

```

9.9.8 Check if the alnumsec package is loaded, and when

```

\@ifpackageloaded We must test if the alnumsec package [212] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we test
\AtBeginDocument when minitoc is loaded and also in an \AtBeginDocument block, when all packages have
\if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@ been loaded. See section 9.79.2.13 on page 429.
\if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@a@

2972 \@ifpackageloaded{alnumsec}{\@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@true}{}%
2973 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{alnumsec}{\@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@a@true}{}%

```

9.9.9 Check if the captcont package is loaded, and when

```

\@ifpackageloaded We must test if the captcont package [115] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we test
\AtBeginDocument when minitoc is loaded and also in an \AtBeginDocument block, when all packages have
\if@mtc@captcontLoaded@ been loaded. See section 9.79.2.14 on page 429.
\if@mtc@captcontLoaded@a@

2974 \@ifpackageloaded{captcont}{\@mtc@captcontLoaded@true}{}%
2975 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{captcont}{\@mtc@captcontLoaded@a@true}{}%

```

9.9.10 Check if the caption package is loaded, and when

```

\@ifpackageloaded We must test if the caption package [325] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we test when
\AtBeginDocument minitoc is loaded and also in an \AtBeginDocument block, when all packages have been
\if@mtc@captionLoaded@ loaded. See section 9.79.2.15 on page 430.
\if@mtc@captionLoaded@a@

2976 \@ifpackageloaded{caption}{\@mtc@captionLoaded@true}{}%
2977 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{caption}{\@mtc@captionLoaded@a@true}{}%

```

9.9.11 Check if the caption2 package is loaded, and when

```
\@ifpackageloaded We must test if the caption2 package [323] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we test
\AtBeginDocument when minitoc is loaded and also in an \AtBeginDocument block, when all packages have
\if@mtc@captionIILoaded@ been loaded. See section 9.79.2.16 on page 430.
\if@mtc@captionIILoaded@a@

2978 \@ifpackageloaded{caption2}{\@mtc@captionIILoaded@true}{}%
2979 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{caption2}{\@mtc@captionIILoaded@a@true}{}%}
```

9.9.12 Check if the ccaption package is loaded, and when

```
\@ifpackageloaded We must test if the ccaption package [368] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we test
\AtBeginDocument when minitoc is loaded and also in an \AtBeginDocument block, when all packages have
\if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@ been loaded. See section 9.79.2.17 on page 430.
\if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@a@

2980 \@ifpackageloaded{ccaption}{\@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@true}{}%
2981 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{ccaption}{\@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@a@true}{}%}
```

9.9.13 Check if the mcaption package is loaded, and when

```
\@ifpackageloaded We must test if the mcaption package [183] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we test
\AtBeginDocument when minitoc is loaded and also in an \AtBeginDocument block, when all packages have
\if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@ been loaded. See section 9.79.2.18 on page 431.
\if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@a@

2982 \@ifpackageloaded{mcaption}{\@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@true}{}%
2983 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{mcaption}{\@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@a@true}{}%}
```

9.9.14 Check if the float package is loaded

```
\@ifpackageloaded We must test if the float package [238] is loaded in the preamble, so we use an
\AtBeginDocument \AtBeginDocument block. See section 9.79.2.19 on page 431.
\if@mtc@floatLoaded@

2984 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{float}{\@mtc@floatLoaded@true}{}%}
```

9.9.15 Check if the floatrow package is loaded

```
\@ifpackageloaded We must test if the floatrow package [223] is loaded in the preamble, so we use an
\AtBeginDocument \AtBeginDocument block. See section 9.79.2.20 on page 431.
\if@mtc@floatrowLoaded@
```

```
2985 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{floatrow}{\@mtc@floatrowLoaded@true}}}%
```

9.9.16 Check if the trivfloat package is loaded

```
\@ifpackageloaded We must test if the trivfloat package [375] is loaded in the preamble, so we use an
\AtBeginDocument \AtBeginDocument block. See section 9.79.2.21 on page 432.
\if@mtc@trivfloatLoaded@
```

```
2986 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{trivfloat}{\@mtc@trivfloatLoaded@true}}}%
```

9.9.17 Check if the rotfloat package is loaded

```
\@ifpackageloaded We must test if the rotfloat package [322] is loaded in the preamble, so we use an
\AtBeginDocument \AtBeginDocument block. See section 9.79.2.22 on page 432.
\if@mtc@rotfloatLoaded@
```

```
2987 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{rotfloat}{\@mtc@rotfloatLoaded@true}}}%
```

9.10 Is the memoir class loaded?

```
\@ifclassloaded We test if the memoir [370, 371, 373] class is loaded. This class needs some compatibility
\if@mtc@memoirLoaded@ adjustments or may be incompatible if too recent. In the later case, a patch is inserted (see
\if@mtc@memoirnew@ chapter 12 on page 459). This correction is no more necessary after the 2005/09/25 version of
\if@mtcpatchmemoir@ memoir.cls.
```

```
2988 \newif\if@mtcpatchmemoir@ \@mtcpatchmemoir@false
2989 \@ifclassloaded{memoir}{\@mtc@memoirLoaded@true\relax%
2990 \mtcPackageInfo[I0030]{minitoc}%
2991 {the memoir class is loaded:
2992 \MessageBreak
2993 compatibility attempted\@gobble}}%
2994 {\@mtc@memoirLoaded@false}
2995 \if@mtc@memoirLoaded@
2996 \@ifundefined{@m@chapter}%
2997 {\@mtc@memoirnew@false\mtcPackageInfo[I0020]{minitoc}%
2998 {old version of the memoir class\@gobble}}
2999 {\@mtc@memoirnew@true\mtcPackageInfo[I0027]{minitoc}%
3000 {recent version of the memoir class\@gobble}}
3001 \mtcPackageInfo[I0032]{minitoc}%
3002 {This version of the memoir class uses
3003 \MessageBreak
3004 a version of \string\chapter\space which is
3005 \MessageBreak
3006 incompatible with the minitoc package.
```

I0030

I0020

I0027

I0032

```

3007         \MessageBreak
3008         We try to patch\@gobble}%
3009     \@mtcpatchmemoir@true}
3010 \fi

```

\if@mtcpatchmemoir@ And now the patch:

E0028

```

3011 \if@mtcpatchmemoir@
3012 \IfFileExists{mtcpatchmem.sty}{%
3013     \@ifclasslater{memoir}{2005/09/25}{{\RequirePackage{mtcpatchmem}}}{%
3014     \mtcPackageError[E0028]{minitoc}%
3015         {Unable to patch the memoir class}%
3016         {So it remains incompatible. Sorry.}}
3017 \fi

```

9.11 Testing the emptiness of a file

\mtc@ifmtarg Some macros for testing if an argument of a macro is empty (taken from the package
\mtc@xifmtarg ifmtarg [374], by Peter R. WILSON and Donald ARSENEAU, and from while.tip, by
\mtc@EndWhile Stephan P. VON BECHTOLSHEIM [356]). The group is necessary to keep local the catcode
\mtc@WhilePreCondition change of “Q”, hence a \gdef is needed for \mtc@ifmtarg.
\mtc@WhileCondition
\mtc@WhileBody 3018 \begingroup
\mtc@While 3019 \catcode'\Q=3
\mtc@WhileNext 3020 \long\gdef\mtc@ifmtarg#1{%
3021 \mtc@xifmtarg#1QQ\@secondoftwo\@firstoftwo\@nil}
3022 \long\gdef\mtc@xifmtarg#1#2Q#3#4#5\@nil{#4}
3023 \endgroup
3024 \let\mtc@EndWhile = \fi
3025 \def\mtc@While #1#2#3\mtc@EndWhile{%
3026 \def\mtc@WhilePreCondition{#1}%
3027 \def\mtc@WhileCondition{#2}%
3028 \def\mtc@WhileBody{#3}%
3029 \mtc@@While
3030 }
3031 \def\mtc@@While{%
3032 \mtc@WhilePreCondition
3033 \mtc@WhileCondition
3034 \def\mtc@WhileNext{%
3035 \mtc@WhileBody
3036 \mtc@@While
3037 }%
3038 \else
3039 \def\mtc@WhileNext{}%
3040 \fi
3041 \mtc@WhileNext
3042 }


```

\if@mtc@checkfiles Some macros to test if a file is empty or not: \mtc@CkFile{file} returns \@mtc@FEtrue
\if@mtc@FE if the file is empty, \@mtc@FEfalse if the is file not empty. An inexistent file is empty.
\if@mtc@LI A file full of white space (space, tabulation, newline) is empty. Comments are empty.
\mtc@While
\mtc@Body Note: on a big empty file, the \mtc@While loop may be time consuming, but not an
\mtc@EndWhile eternity (33 s for 106 lines on my computer), and the first non-empty line stops the loop.
\mtc@CkFile \jobname.mtc is used as scratch file. Its contents is erased after use.
\mtc@CkStr
\mtc@Rline 3043 \newif\if@mtc@LI\@mtc@LItrue
\tf@mtc 3044 \newif\if@mtc@FE\@mtc@FEtrue
\@inputcheck 3045 \newif\if@mtc@checkfiles\@mtc@checkfilestrue
3046 \def\mtc@Body{\immediate\read\@inputcheck to \mtc@Rline\relax
3047 \ifeof\@inputcheck\relax\@mtc@LIfalse\fi
3048 \expandafter\ifx\mtc@Rline\par\relax
3049 \def\mtc@Rline{}
3050 \else
3051 \ifeof\@inputcheck\relax\global\@mtc@LIfalse\fi
3052 \mtc@ifmtarg{\mtc@Rline}{\relax}{\@mtc@FEfalse\@mtc@LIfalse}
3053 \fi}
3054 \def\mtc@CkFile#1{%
3055 \@mtc@LItrue\@mtc@FEtrue
3056 \if@mtc@checkfiles
3057 \IfFileExists{#1}{%
3058 \immediate\openin\@inputcheck #1\relax
3059 \mtc@While{\if@mtc@LI\relax}{\mtc@Body}\mtc@EndWhile}%
3060 {\@mtc@FEtrue}%
3061 \else
3062 \@mtc@FEfalse%
3063 \fi}
3064 \closein\@inputcheck\relax
3065 \def\mtc@CkStr#1{%
3066 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc \jobname.mtc
3067 \immediate\write\tf@mtc{#1}%
3068 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
3069 \mtc@CkFile{\jobname.mtc}%
3070 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc \jobname.mtc
3071 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}

```

9.12 Internal macros to decrement minitoc counters

```

\mtc@onebackpart It is sometimes necessary to decrement a minitoc counter (ptc, mtc or stc) by one. These
\mtc@onebackchapter macros are:
\mtc@onebacksection
\addtocounter 3072 \def\mtc@onebackpart{\addtocounter{ptc}{-1}}
3073 \def\mtc@onebackchap{\addtocounter{mtc}{-1}}
3074 \def\mtc@onebacksect{\addtocounter{stc}{-1}}

```

9.13 Patching the `\part` command

`\part` If the `\part` command is not defined (by the document class, usually), we cannot patch it and
`\mtc@svspart` a warning is displayed⁴. Else, we patch its two branches, `\@part` (for the unstarred version)
`\mtc@svpart` or `\@spart` (for the starred version, `\part*`): we add `\stepcounter{ptc}` to increment the
`\@spart` parttoc counter ptc. See also section 9.51 on page 337.
`\@part`
`\stepcounter` The code of the next section (section 9.14) is also skipped if `\part` is not defined.

W0018
I0023

```

3075 \@ifundefined{part}{%
3076   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0018]{minitoc}%
3077   {part level macros NOT available}
3078 }{%% else undefined part (\part defined)
3079   \mtcPackageInfo[I0023]{minitoc}%
3080   {part level macros available\@gobble}
3081   \let\mtc@svspart\@spart
3082   \def\@spart{\stepcounter{ptc}\mtc@svspart}
3083   \let\mtc@svpart\@part
3084   \def\@part{\stepcounter{ptc}\mtc@svpart}

```

9.14 Adding an entry in the TOC for a starred part

`\mtcaddpart` To add an entry in the TOC for a starred part, we need the `\mtcaddpart` macro, which has an
`\mtc@ifmtarg` optional argument, the title of the part as it should appear in the TOC.
`\contentsline`
`\addcontentsline` By default, this argument is empty. If it is empty (tested via `\mtc@ifmtarg`) or omit-
`\adjustptc` ted, we add a `\contentsline{xpart}{}{}...` line in the `.toc` file. If it is not empty,
`\l@xpart` we add a `\contentsline{part}{title}{}...` line in the `.toc` file. We always add a
`\l@part` `\contentsline{xpart}{}{}...` line in the `.lof` and `.lot` files. Then we increment the ptc
 counter, via `\adjustptc` (defined in section 9.45 on page 324). Using `xpart` as first argument
 of `\contentsline` means that `\l@xpart` will be invoked in place of `\l@part` to print the
 entry in the TOC, but `\l@xpart` uses a huge depth (10 000) for this entry, hence it will never
 be really printed (except if you cheat).

```

3085 \newcommand{\mtcaddpart}[1][{}]{%
3086   \mtc@ifmtarg{#1}{\addcontentsline{toc}{xpart}{}}%
3087   {\addcontentsline{toc}{part}{#1}}%
3088   \addcontentsline{lof}{xpart}{}%
3089   \addcontentsline{lot}{xpart}{}%
3090   \adjustptc}

```

This code terminates (temporarily) the part level commands.

```

3091 }%

```

⁴ Document classes with sectioning commands but no `\part` command are likely non standard, hence the warning displayed on the terminal.

9.15 Section level macros

`\chapter` The section level macros are defined if `\chapter` is not defined and `\section` defined,
`\section` i.e., in document classes like `article`, but not in document classes like `book` or `report`. So we
test if `\chapter` is defined and if `\section` is defined, with adequate warnings. If neither are
defined, you are in big trouble to use the minitoc package with the class of your document.

I0004

I0029

W0017

I0028

```

3092 \ifundefined{chapter}{\mtcPackageInfo[I0004]{minitoc}%
3093         {chapter level macros NOT available\@gobble}%
3094 \ifundefined{section}{\mtcPackageInfo[I0029]{minitoc}%
3095         {section level macros NOT available\@gobble}%
3096 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0017]{minitoc}%
3097     {no section or chapter level macros available
3098     \MessageBreak
3099     PLEASE VERIFY YOUR MAIN DOCUMENT CLASS}}%
3100 {\mtcPackageInfo[I0028]{minitoc}%
3101     {section level macros available\@gobble}%

```

9.16 Corrections for numbering

`\mtc@onebacksect` As the TOC, the LOF and the LOT are considered as (starred) sections, we must decrement
`\tableofcontents` the secttoc counter (stc) via `\mtc@onebacksect` when the corresponding commands are
`\listoffigures` executed. Hence we patch these commands.
`\listoftables`

```

\mtcsv@tableofcontents 3102 \let\mtcsv@tableofcontents\tableofcontents
\mtcsv@listoffigures 3103 \let\mtcsv@listoffigures\listoffigures
\mtcsv@listoftables 3104 \let\mtcsv@listoftables\listoftables
3105 \def\tableofcontents{\mtcsv@tableofcontents\mtc@onebacksect}
3106 \def\listoffigures{\mtcsv@listoffigures\mtc@onebacksect}
3107 \def\listoftables{\mtcsv@listoftables\mtc@onebacksect}

```

9.17 Patching the `\section` command

`\mtc@svsection` If the `\section` command is not defined (by the document class, usually), we cannot patch it
`\mtc@svss` and a warning is displayed. Else, we patch its two branches, `\@sect` (for the unstarred version)
`\@ssect` or `\@ssect` (for the starred version, `\section*`): we add `\stepcounter{stc}` to increment
`\@sect` the secttoc counter stc, only in the unstarred case⁵.
`\section`

```

\stepcounter 3108 \let\mtc@svsection\section
3109 \def\section{\stepcounter{stc}\mtc@svsection}
3110 \let\mtc@svss\@ssect

```

⁵ Version #25 has removed a spurious decrementation of this counter.

9.18 Adding an entry in the TOC for a starred section

`\mtcaddsection` To add an entry in the TOC for a starred section, we need the `\mtcaddsection` macro, which has an optional argument, the title of the section as it should appear in the TOC. `\mtc@ifmtarg` By default, this argument is empty. If it is empty (tested via `\mtc@ifmtarg`) or omitted, `\contentsline` we add a `\contentsline{xsect}{}...` line in the .toc file. If it is not empty, we `\adjuststc` add a `\contentsline{section}{title...}...` line in the .toc file. We always add a `\l@xsect` `\contentsline{xsect}{}...` line in the .lof and .lot files. Then we increment the `\l@section` `stc` counter, via `\adjuststc` (this command is defined in section 9.54 on page 348). Using `xsect` as first argument of `\contentsline` means that `\l@xsect` will be invoked in place of `\l@section` to print the entry in the TOC, but `\l@xsect` uses a huge depth (10 000) for this entry, hence it will never be really printed (except if you cheat).

```

3111 \newcommand{\mtcaddsection}[1][]{%
3112   \mtc@ifmtarg{#1}{\addcontentsline{toc}{xsect}{}}%
3113   {\addcontentsline{toc}{section}{#1}}%
3114   \addcontentsline{lof}{xsect}{}%
3115   \addcontentsline{lot}{xsect}{}%
3116   \adjuststc}

```

This code terminates (temporarily) the section level commands, and we continue with chapter level macros.

```

3117 }{}%

```

9.19 Chapter level macros

`\chapter` The chapter level macros are defined if `\chapter` is defined, i.e., in document classes like book or report. So we test if `\chapter` is defined, with adequate warnings. The test is already done above, we are in the “else” branch of `\ifundefined{chapter}`.

I0003

```

3118 \mtcPackageInfo[I0003]{minitoc}{chapter level macros available\@gobble}

```

9.20 Patching the `\chapter` command

`\chapter` The `\chapter` command is defined (by the document class, usually). We patch its two `\@chapter` branches, `\@chapter` (for the unstarred version) or `\@schapter` (for the starred version, `\chapter*`): we add call to `\stepcounter{mtc}` to increment the minitoc counter `mtc`. `\mtc@svchapter` Only the unstarred branch (`\@chapter`) is patched here. The other branch is patched later `\stepcounter` (section 9.36 on page 308).

```

3119 \let\mtc@svchapter\@chapter \def\@chapter{\stepcounter{mtc}\mtc@svchapter}

```

9.21 Adding an entry in the TOC for a starred chapter

`\mtcaddchapter` To add an entry in the TOC for a starred chapter, we need the `\mtcaddchapter` macro, which has an optional argument, the title of the chapter as it should appear in the TOC. By default, this argument is empty. If it is empty (tested via `\mtc@ifmtarg`) or omitted, we add a `\contentsline{xchapter}{...}` line in the `.toc` file. If it is not empty, we add a `\contentsline{chapter}{title...}` line in the `.toc` file. We always add a `\contentsline{xchapter}{...}` line in the `.lof` and `.lot` files. Then we increment the `mtc` counter, via `\adjustmtc` (defined in section 9.31 on page 295). Using `xchapter` as first argument of `\contentsline` means that `\l@xchapter` will be invoked in place of `\l@chapter` to print the entry in the TOC, but `\l@xchapter` uses a huge depth (10 000) for this entry, hence it will never be really printed (except if you cheat).

```

3120 \newcommand{\mtcaddchapter}[1][{}]{%
3121   \mtc@ifmtarg{#1}{\addcontentsline{toc}{xchapter}{}}{%
3122     \addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{#1}}%
3123   \addcontentsline{lof}{xchapter}{}%
3124   \addcontentsline{lot}{xchapter}{}%
3125   \adjustmtc}%
3126 }%
```

This code terminates (temporarily) the chapter level commands, i.e., terminates the `\ifundefined{chapter}` at the beginning of section 9.15 on page 283.

9.22 Miscellaneous declarations

`\newread` The `\newread` command must be redeclared as being `\outer` (as Donald ARSENEAU told me).
`\newtoks` We need a token register (`\mtc@toks`), a temporary string (`\mtc@string`), struts (two kinds, each one using a box containing an invisible vertical rule), a rule with all dimensions equal to zero (`\mtc@zrule`) and a command discouraging page breaks (`\mtc@BBR`, for “bad break”).
`\mtc@toks`
`\mtc@string`
`\mtc@strut` For the struts, which are boxes containing an invisible vertical rule, we use “ex” units, to follow the current font.
`\mtc@strutbox`
`\mtc@hstrut`
`\mtc@hstrutbox`

```

3127 \def\newread{\alloc@6\read\chardef\sixt@@n}
\mtc@v 3128 \newtoks\mtc@toks
\mtc@zrule 3129 \def\mtc@string{\relax}
\mtc@BBR 3130 \newbox\mtc@strutbox
3131 \setbox\mtc@strutbox=\hbox{\rule[1.8ex]{\z@}{2.5ex}}
3132 \def\mtc@strut{\relax\ifmmode\copy\mtc@strutbox
3133   \else\unhcopy\mtc@strutbox\fi}
3134 \newbox\mtc@hstrutbox
3135 \setbox\mtc@hstrutbox=\hbox{\rule[1.ex]{\z@}{1.ex}}
3136 \def\mtc@hstrut{\relax\ifmmode\copy\mtc@hstrutbox
3137   \else\unhcopy\mtc@hstrutbox\fi}
3138 \def\mtc@v{\leavevmode\mtc@strut}
3139 \def\mtc@zrule{\rule[\z@]{\z@}{\z@}}
3140 \def\mtc@BBR{\unpenalty\nopagebreak[4]}
```

Table 9.1: Trick to detect the limitation to short extensions

Phase (time runs from left to right):		1	2	3
OS with long extensions	<code>\jobname.mtc1</code>	TRUE	TRUE	*
	<code>\jobname.mtc</code>		FALSE	
OS with short extensions	<code>\jobname.mtc(1)</code>	TRUE	FALSE	*

9.23 Autoconfiguration of extensions

`\tf@mtc` This code is a trick to determine if the operating system is able or unable to use long extensions (> 3 characters) in file names. We define a file descriptor (`\tf@mtc`) to write files⁶. This code is verbose if long extensions cannot be used, else the messages are only written in the `document.log` file. The sequencing of these operations is vital. The table 9.1 shows this sequence. A star (*) denotes which file is read in phase 3.

```
\if@longextensions@ (0) First, a message and a new flag:
\tf@mtc 3141 \mtcPackageInfo[I0002]{minitoc}%
\openout 3142 {Autoconfiguration of extensions\@gobble}
\write 3143 \newif\if@longextensions@\@longextensions@false
\closeout
\input (1) We write “\@longextensions@true” in \jobname.mtc1. But if the OS has short
\jobname extensions, the real name of the file will be truncated to \jobname.mtc.

3144 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc \jobname.mtc1
3145 \immediate\write\tf@mtc{\string\@longextensions@true}
3146 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc

(2) We write “\@longextensions@false” in \jobname.mtc.

3147 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc \jobname.mtc
3148 \immediate\write\tf@mtc{\string\@longextensions@false}
3149 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc

(3) We read \jobname.mtc1. But if the OS has short extensions, the real name of the file will
be truncated to \jobname.mtc.

3150 \input{\jobname.mtc1}
```

I0002

(4) Hence, the flag is true if we read really from `\jobname.mtc1`, but false if we read from

I0012

I0031

W0019

⁶ It is the *only* new file descriptor created by the minitoc package. All files written by minitoc use this descriptor, or one of the standard descriptors, e.g., for the `document.log` file. In fact, minitoc writes also in the `.toc`, `.lof` and `.lot` files, but via file descriptors already used by standard commands like `\tableofcontents`, `\listoffigures` and `\listoftables`. We can conclude that minitoc itself uses only one file descriptor (or write stream). Some other attempts to make per chapter TOCs have failed by quickly leading to exhaustion of file descriptors (TeX offers only 16 file descriptors for writing), because they called the standard internal `\starttoc` macro, which invokes `\newwrite`, for each mini-table. As minitoc writes into only one file at a time (and in the `document.log` file, and in the standard contents files, of course), we can reuse the same file descriptor and avoid this serious problem (which was present in the original version of the package). The minitoc package writes in the contents files when it encounters a major sectionning command (`\part`, `\chapter`, or `\section`), if necessary. It writes into the mini-table auxiliary files only via the mini-table preparing commands (`\doparttoc`, ..., `\dosectlot`), once at a time. You do not need a new hammer for each nail.

\jobname.mtc. The text and the severity of the messages are different.

```

3151 \if@longextensions@
3152 \mtcPackageInfo[I0012]{minitoc}%
3153 {Long extensions (Unix-like) will be used@gobble}
3154 \mtcPackageInfo[I0031]{minitoc}%
3155 {==> this version is configured for UNIX-like
3156 \MessageBreak
3157 \space\space\space(long extensions) file names@gobble}%
3158 \else
3159 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0019]{minitoc}%
3160 {Short extensions (MSDOS-like) will be used
3161 \MessageBreak
3162 ==> this version is configured for MSDOS-like
3163 \MessageBreak
3164 \space\space\space(8+3) file names}
3165 \fi

```

- (5) We erase the contents of the two files (because \jobname.mtc is also used later as a scratch file, see section 9.11 on page 280).

```

3166 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc \jobname.mtc
3167 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
3168 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc \jobname.mtc1
3169 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc

```

9.24 Detecting obsolete versions of L^AT_EX

\@inputcheck This code detects old versions of the L^AT_EX kernel that are no more supported and with which the minitoc package can hardly work. The trick is to detect the absence of some internal L^AT_EX commands, \@inputcheck and \reset@font. If you get one of these messages, you are in bad luck and should *urgently* update your L^AT_EX installation, which is just rusting since... a lot of years!



```

3170 \@ifundefined{@inputcheck}%
3171 {\mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0021]{minitoc}%
3172 {Your version of latex.tex is obsolete.
3173 \MessageBreak
3174 Trying to continue..}\newread@inputcheck\relax}{}}
3175 \@ifundefined{reset@font}%
3176 {\mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0022]{minitoc}%
3177 {Your version of latex.tex is very obsolete.
3178 \MessageBreak
3179 Trying to continue... crossing fingers}%
3180 \let\reset@font\relax}{}}

```

9.25 Adding a TOC entry without leaders nor page numbers

```

\@undottedtocline The (internal) macro \@undottedtocline is a modified version of the standard command
\ifundottedmtc \@dottedtocline. It will be used in customization macros.
\undottedmtcfalse

3181 \newif\ifundottedmtc\undottedmtcfalse
3182 \def\@undottedtocline#1#2#3#4#5{%
3183   \ifnum #1>\c@tocdepth\relax \else
3184     \vskip \z@ plus.2\p@
3185     {\leftskip #2\relax \rightskip \@tocrmarg \parfillskip -\rightskip
3186      \parindent #2\relax\@afterindenttrue
3187      \interlinepenalty\@M
3188      \leavevmode
3189      \@tempdima #3\relax \advance\leftskip \@tempdima \hbox{}}%
3190     \hskip -\leftskip
3191     #4\nobreak\hfill \nobreak
3192     \null\par}%
3193 \fi}

```

9.26 Default values for the page-number customizations

`\if@mtc@memoirLoaded@` This section defines some customization macros for the presence or absence of page numbers in the mini-tables. But if the memoir class [370, 371, 373] is loaded, it does the job. So, we test first `\if@mtc@memoirLoaded@` to use the commands of memoir when they are available.

```

3194 \if@mtc@memoirLoaded@

```

```

\mtcpagenumbers For entries in minitocs:
\nomtcpagenumbers

3195 \def\mtcpagenumbers{%
3196   \cftpagenumberon{section}
3197   \cftpagenumberon{subsection}
3198   \cftpagenumberon{subsubsection}
3199   \cftpagenumberon{paragraph}
3200   \cftpagenumberon{subparagraph}}
3201 \def\nomtcpagenumbers{%
3202   \cftpagenumberoff{section}
3203   \cftpagenumberoff{subsection}
3204   \cftpagenumberoff{subsubsection}
3205   \cftpagenumberoff{paragraph}
3206   \cftpagenumberoff{subparagraph}}

```



```

\stcpagenumbers For entries in secttocs:
\nostcpagenumbers
3207 \def\stcpagenumbers{%
3208   \cftpagenumberson{subsection}
3209   \cftpagenumberson{subsubsection}
3210   \cftpagenumberson{paragraph}
3211   \cftpagenumberson{subparagraph}}
3212 \def\nostcpagenumbers{%
3213   \cftpagenumbersoff{subsection}
3214   \cftpagenumbersoff{subsubsection}
3215   \cftpagenumbersoff{paragraph}
3216   \cftpagenumbersoff{subparagraph}}

\ptcpagenumbers For entries in parttocs:
\noptcpagenumbers
3217 \def\ptcpagenumbers{%
3218   \cftpagenumberson{chapter}
3219   \cftpagenumberson{section}
3220   \cftpagenumberson{subsection}
3221   \cftpagenumberson{subsubsection}
3222   \cftpagenumberson{paragraph}
3223   \cftpagenumberson{subparagraph}}
3224 \def\noptcpagenumbers{%
3225   \cftpagenumbersoff{chapter}
3226   \cftpagenumbersoff{section}
3227   \cftpagenumbersoff{subsection}
3228   \cftpagenumbersoff{subsubsection}
3229   \cftpagenumbersoff{paragraph}
3230   \cftpagenumbersoff{subparagraph}}

\mlfpagenumbers For entries in minilofs, sectlofs, and partlofs:
\nomlfpagenumbers
\slfpagenumbers 3231 \def\mlfpagenumbers{\cftpagenumberson{figure}}
\noslfpagenumbers 3232 \def\nomlfpagenumbers{\cftpagenumbersoff{figure}}
\plfpagenumbers 3233 \def\slfpagenumbers{\cftpagenumberson{figure}}
\noplfpagenumbers 3234 \def\noslfpagenumbers{\cftpagenumbersoff{figure}}
3235 \def\plfpagenumbers{\cftpagenumberson{figure}}
3236 \def\noplfpagenumbers{\cftpagenumbersoff{figure}}

\mltpagenumbers For entries in minilots, sectlots, and partlots:
\nomltpagenumbers
\sltpagenumbers 3237 \def\mltpagenumbers{\cftpagenumberson{table}}
\nosltpagenumbers 3238 \def\nomltpagenumbers{\cftpagenumbersoff{table}}
\pltpagenumbers 3239 \def\sltpagenumbers{\cftpagenumberson{table}}
\nopltpagenumbers 3240 \def\nosltpagenumbers{\cftpagenumbersoff{table}}
3241 \def\pltpagenumbers{\cftpagenumberson{table}}
3242 \def\nopltpagenumbers{\cftpagenumbersoff{table}}

```

Else, minitoc will use its own commands.

```
3243 \else
```

```
\mtcpagenumbers  First, for minitocs, secttocs and parttocs:
\nomtcpagenumbers
\mlfpagenumbers 3244 \def\mtcpagenumbers{\let\mtc@pgno\null}
\nomlfpagenumbers 3245 \def\nomtcpagenumbers{\let\mtc@pgno\relax}
\mltpagenumbers 3246 \def\stcpagenumbers{\let\stc@pgno\null}
\nomltpagenumbers 3247 \def\nostcpagenumbers{\let\stc@pgno\relax}
3248 \def\ptcpagenumbers{\let\ptc@pgno\null}
3249 \def\noptcpagenumbers{\let\ptc@pgno\relax}
```

```
\mlfpagenumbers  Then, for minilofs, sectlofs and partlofs:
\nomlfpagenumbers
\mlfpagenumbers 3250 \def\mlfpagenumbers{\let\mlf@pgno\null}
\nomlfpagenumbers 3251 \def\nomlfpagenumbers{\let\mlf@pgno\relax}
\mltpagenumbers 3252 \def\slfpagenumbers{\let\slf@pgno\null}
\nomltpagenumbers 3253 \def\noslfpagenumbers{\let\slf@pgno\relax}
3254 \def\plfpagenumbers{\let\plf@pgno\null}
3255 \def\noplfpagenumbers{\let\plf@pgno\relax}
```

```
\mltpagenumbers  Then, for minilots, sectlots and partlots:
\nomltpagenumbers
\mltpagenumbers 3256 \def\mltpagenumbers{\let\mlt@pgno\null}
\nomltpagenumbers 3257 \def\nomltpagenumbers{\let\mlt@pgno\relax}
\mltpagenumbers 3258 \def\sltpagenumbers{\let\slt@pgno\null}
\nomltpagenumbers 3259 \def\nosltpagenumbers{\let\slt@pgno\relax}
3260 \def\pltpagenumbers{\let\plt@pgno\null}
3261 \def\nopltpagenumbers{\let\plt@pgno\relax}
3262 \fi
```

```
\ptcpagenumbers  Then the default values are set; page numbers are present:
\plfpagenumbers
\pltpagenumbers 3263 \ptcpagenumbers
\mtcpagenumbers 3264 \plfpagenumbers
\mlfpagenumbers 3265 \pltpagenumbers
\mltpagenumbers 3266 \mtcpagenumbers
\stcpagenumbers 3267 \mlfpagenumbers
\slfpagenumbers 3268 \mltpagenumbers
\sltpagenumbers 3269 \stcpagenumbers
3270 \slfpagenumbers
3271 \sltpagenumbers
```

9.27 “Features” for the mini-tables

Each kind of mini-table has five “features”: a “before” feature, an “after” feature, an “open” feature, an “close” feature, and a “pagestyle” feature.

A “before” feature is defined by a macro like `\beforeparttoc` which contains code to be executed before any mini-table of a given type: `\beforeparttoc` is executed before each `parttoc`. Usually such features contain only trivial commands like `\clear[double]page`, or `\empty`.

An “after” feature is analog but its code is executed after each mini-table of a given type.

An “open” feature contains code to be executed just before the insertion of the file containing the mini-table. Usually such features either do nothing, either prepare some basic formatting (like multi-column). It does not concern the title of the mini-table or the decorative rules.

An “close” feature contains code to be executed just after the insertion of the file containing the mini-table. Usually such features either do nothing, either finish some basic formatting (like multi-column). It does not concern the title of the mini-table or the decorative rules.

A “pagestyle” feature is defined by a macro like `\thispageparttocstyle` which contains code to define the page style implied by mini-tables of a given type: the command `\thispageparttocstyle` can be defined as `\thispagestyle{...}`. Usually, the “pagestyle” feature is only defined for part-level mini-tables, which use page breaks in their before and after features. For chapter- and section-level mini-tables, the “pagestyle” feature is usually defined as `\empty`.

We set the default values for the part-level features depending on the presence of the `\chapter` command, as article-like documents are different from the book- or report-like documents for the layout of part-level mini-tables.

```

\chapter   If \chapter is not defined, the part level mini-tables have no “before” feature (by default):
\beforeparttoc
\beforepartlof 3272 \@ifundefined{chapter}{%
\beforepartlot 3273   \let\beforeparttoc\empty
                 3274   \let\beforepartlof\empty
                 3275   \let\beforepartlot\empty}%

```

`\cleardoublepage` But if `\chapter` is defined, they have a `\cleardoublepage` as default “before” feature:

```

3276   {\let\beforeparttoc\cleardoublepage
3277   \let\beforepartlof\cleardoublepage
3278   \let\beforepartlot\cleardoublepage}

```

`\beforeinitoc` Chapter level mini-tables have no “before” feature (by default):

`\beforeminilof`

```
\beforeminilot 3279 \let\beforeinitoc\empty
                 3280 \let\beforeminilof\empty
                 3281 \let\beforeminilot\empty
```

`\beforesecttoc` Section level mini-tables have no “before” feature (by default):

`\beforesectlof`

```
\beforesectlot 3282 \let\beforesecttoc\empty
                 3283 \let\beforesectlof\empty
                 3284 \let\beforesectlot\empty
```

`\chapter` If `\chapter` is not defined, the part level mini-tables have no “after” feature (by default):

`\afterparttoc`

```
\afterpartlof 3285 \@ifundefined{chapter}{%
\afterpartlot 3286     \let\afterparttoc\empty
                 3287     \let\afterpartlof\empty
                 3288     \let\afterpartlot\empty}%
```

`\cleardoublepage` But if `\chapter` is defined, they have a `\cleardoublepage` as default “after” feature:

```
3289     {\let\afterparttoc\cleardoublepage
3290      \let\afterpartlof\cleardoublepage
3291      \let\afterpartlot\cleardoublepage}
```

`\afterinitoc` Chapter level mini-tables have no “after” feature (by default):

`\afterminilof`

```
\afterminilot 3292 \let\afterinitoc\empty
                 3293 \let\afterminilof\empty
                 3294 \let\afterminilot\empty
```

`\aftersecttoc` Section level mini-tables have no “after” feature (by default):

`\aftersectlof`

```
\aftersectlot 3295 \let\aftersecttoc\empty
                 3296 \let\aftersectlof\empty
                 3297 \let\aftersectlot\empty
```

```

\openparttoc By default, the “open” and “close” features do nothing:
\openpartlof
\openpartlot 3298 \let\openparttoc\empty \let\closeparttoc\empty
\openminitoc 3299 \let\openpartlof\empty \let\closepartlof\empty
\openminilof 3300 \let\openpartlot\empty \let\closepartlot\empty
\openminilot 3301 \let\openminitoc\empty \let\closeminitoc\empty
\opensecttoc 3302 \let\openminilof\empty \let\closeminilof\empty
\opensectlof 3303 \let\openminilot\empty \let\closeminilot\empty
\opensectlot 3304 \let\opensecttoc\empty \let\closesecttoc\empty
3305 \let\opensectlof\empty \let\closesectlof\empty
3306 \let\opensectlot\empty \let\closesectlot\empty

```

```

\thispagestyle By default, all the “pagestyle” features (at part level) use the empty page style. It affects only
\thispageparttocstyle the first page of the mini-table. If \chapter is not defined, there is no default “pagestyle”
\thispagepartlofstyle features at the part level.
\thispagepartlotstyle
\thispageinitocstyle 3307 \@ifundefined{chapter}{%
\thispageminilofstyle 3308 \def\thispageparttocstyle{\empty}
\thispageminilotstyle 3309 \def\thispagepartlofstyle{\empty}
\thispagesecttocstyle 3310 \def\thispagepartlotstyle{\empty}}%
\thispagesectlofstyle 3311 {\def\thispageparttocstyle{\thispagestyle{\empty}}
\thispagesectlotstyle 3312 \def\thispagepartlofstyle{\thispagestyle{\empty}}
3313 \def\thispagepartlotstyle{\thispagestyle{\empty}}}
3314 \def\thispageinitocstyle{\empty}
3315 \def\thispageminilofstyle{\empty}
3316 \def\thispageminilotstyle{\empty}
3317 \def\thispagesecttocstyle{\empty}
3318 \def\thispagesectlofstyle{\empty}
3319 \def\thispagesectlotstyle{\empty}

```

`\mtcsetfeature` In section 9.66.8 on page 390, we will define the `\mtcsetfeature` macro which is a much easier user interface to set the mini-tables “features”.

9.28 Fake tables of contents

```

\fakeableofcontents If you don’t want a table of contents, but want minitocs, you need to create the .toc file, with-
\fakeistoffigures out inserting it into your document. This \fakeableofcontents command is a stripped off
\fakeistoftables version of the standard command \tableofcontents. We define in the same way the anal-
\fake@starttoc og commands \fakeistoffigures and \fakeistoftables, using in fact just a stripped
version \fake@starttoc of \@starttoc. But it is nice to reset to zero the ptc, mtc, and
stc counters now, if they are defined7.

```

⁷ Remember the infamous “stc0” bug.

```

3320 \def\fakeableofcontents{\fake@starttoc{toc}%
3321   \ifundefined{c@ptc}{\setcounter{ptc}{0}}%
3322   \ifundefined{c@mtc}{\setcounter{mtc}{0}}%
3323   \ifundefined{c@stc}{\setcounter{stc}{0}}%
3324   }
3325 \def\fakeistofffigures{\fake@starttoc{lof}}
3326 \def\fakeistoftables{\fake@starttoc{lot}}
3327 \def\fake@starttoc#1{\begingroup \makeatletter
3328   \if@filesw \expandafter\newwrite\csname tf@#1\endcsname
3329   \immediate\openout \csname tf@#1\endcsname
3330   \jobname.#1\relax \fi
3331   \global\@nobreakfalse \endgroup}

```

This code uses the same file descriptors (for writing) than the original commands.

9.29 Depth counters for minilofs and minilots

```

\AtBeginDocument If the counters lofdepth and lotdepth are defined, we create the necessary new counters:
  \newcounter      minilofdepth and minilofdepth. These counters are initialized to 2. This is done after the
  \setcounter      loading of the packages, in an \AtBeginDocument block:
  \c@lofdepth
  \c@lotdepth
3332 \AtBeginDocument{%
3333   \ifundefined{c@lofdepth}{%
3334     {\newcounter{minilofdepth}\setcounter{minilofdepth}{2}}%
3335   \ifundefined{c@lotdepth}{%
3336     {\newcounter{minilotdepth}\setcounter{minilotdepth}{2}}%
3337   }%

```

9.30 Chapter level commands

From here, we define the chapter-level commands.

```

\mtc@markboth First, we memorize the marks (not used today, but...):
  \@mkboth
3338 \global\let\mtc@markboth\markboth
3339 \global\let\@mkboth\markboth

```

9.31 Starred parts, chapters or sections

`\addst@rred` We define commands to manage the starred sectionning commands: `\part*`, `\chapter*`
`\addcontentsline` and `\section*`. The section-level is different depending on the presence of the `\chapter`
`\stepcounter` command. Eventually, a counter is incremented. A contents line is added in the `.toc` file, with
`\c@ptc` the right depth to print it (see `\l@star...` later, in section 9.64 on page 371).
`\c@mtc`

```
\c@stc 3340 \def\addst@rred#1#2{%
3341   \addcontentsline{toc}{star#1}{#2}%
3342   \@ifundefined{c@ptc}{}{%
3343     \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\part\relax
3344       \stepcounter{ptc}%
3345     \fi
3346   }%
3347   \@ifundefined{c@mtc}{}{%
3348     \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\chapter\relax
3349       \stepcounter{mtc}%
3350     \fi
3351     \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\appendix\relax
3352       \stepcounter{mtc}%
3353     \fi
3354   }%
3355   \@ifundefined{c@stc}{}{%
3356     \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\section\relax
3357   %%      \@ifundefined{chapter}{\stepcounter{stc}}{}%
3358     \stepcounter{stc}%
3359   \fi
3360   }%
3361 }%
```

`\addstarredsection` If `\chapter` is not defined, we just define `\addstarredsection`:

```
\chapter
\addst@rred 3362 \@ifundefined{chapter}{%
3363   \gdef\addstarredsection#1{\addst@rred{section}{#1}}
3364 }%
```

Else we begin to define the stuff for chapter-level commands (the “else” branch of `\@ifundefined{chapter}`):

```
3365 {%
```

W0003

```

\The@mtc We define now: the internal format of the mtc counter (\The@mtc), the obsolete command
\firstchapteris \firstchapteris (it just emits a harmless warning), the mtc counter (initialized to 0), the
@if@firstchapteris@used@ \adjustmtc command (increments the mtc counter, by 1 by default), the \decrementmtc
\newcounter command (decrements the mtc counter by 1), the \incrementmtc command (increments the
\setcounter mtc counter by 1), the format of the mtc counter (\themtc), the counter minitocdepth,
\adjustmtc initialized to 2, for the depth of a minitoc (analog to the standard tocdepth counter).
\decrementmtc
\incrementmtc 3366 \def\The@mtc{\arabic{mtc}}
\themtc 3367 \def\firstchapteris#1%
\columnwidth 3368 {\mtcPackageWarning[W0003]{minitoc}%
3369 {\string\firstchapteris \space is an obsolete (ignored)
3370 \MessageBreak
3371 command}%
3372 \@firstchapteris@used@true}
3373 \newcounter{mtc}
3374 \setcounter{mtc}{0}
3375 \newcommand{\adjustmtc}[1][1]{\addtocounter{mtc}{#1}}
3376 \def\decrementmtc{\addtocounter{mtc}{-1}}
3377 \def\incrementmtc{\addtocounter{mtc}{+1}}
3378 \gdef\themtc{\arabic{mtc}}
3379 \newcounter{minitocdepth}
3380 \setcounter{minitocdepth}{2}

\mtc@rule We define the horizontal rules to draw before and after minitocs (\mtc@rule), and we copy
\mlf@rule that definition into analog macros for other kinds of mini-tables. We also set the default value
\mlt@rule (24pt) of \mtcindent, the indentation for minitocs (both sides). The rules are 0.4pt thick.
\plf@rule They are defined via \hrule to stay in vertical mode for the final \kern.
\plt@rule
\slf@rule 3381 \def\mtc@rule{\kern-3\p@ \hrule \@width\columnwidth \kern2.6\p@}
\slt@rule 3382 \let\mlf@rule\mtc@rule
\mtcindent 3383 \let\mlt@rule\mtc@rule
3384 \let\plf@rule\mtc@rule
3385 \let\plt@rule\mtc@rule
3386 \let\slf@rule\mtc@rule
3387 \let\slt@rule\mtc@rule
3388 \mtcindent=24\p@

```


9.32 Font commands for the mini-tables

`\mtcfont` We define these commands with full NFSS [229] descriptions. These definitions are effective if `\chapter` is defined. The fonts for titles are also defined here. See also the `\mtcsetfont` macro (section 9.66.2 on page 374) and the `\mtcsetttitlefont` macro later (section 9.66.3 on page 378).

```
\mtcPfont
\mtcSPfont 3389 \def\mtcfont{\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}
\mlffont 3390 \def\mtcSfont{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}
\mlfSfont 3391 \let\mtcSSfont\mtcfont \let\mtcSSSfont\mtcfont
\mltfont 3392 \let\mtcPfont\mtcfont \let\mtcSPfont\mtcfont
\mltSfont 3393 \let\mlffont\mtcfont \let\mlfSfont\mtcfont
\mtifont 3394 \let\mltfont\mtcfont \let\mltSfont\mtcfont
3395 \def\mtifont{\large\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}
```

`\coffeeont` And `\coffeeont` is used for “coffee breaks ☕” in the minutes package [236].

```
3396 \def\coffeeont{\small\rmfamily\slshape\mdseries}
```

9.33 Internal commands to position the mini-table titles

`\df@mtitc` The commands `\miniXXX` and `\dominiXXX` accept an optional argument to left justify, center, right justify or omit the title of the chapter-level mini-tables. By default, these titles are left justified. The choice made in a `\dominiXXX` command is global and memorized in `\df@mtitc`, `\do@mtitc` `\df@mtilf` or `\df@mtilt`; the choice made in a `\miniXXX` command is local and stored in `\do@mtitc`, `\do@mtilf` or `\do@mtilt`. See the `\minitoc@` macro later (section 9.35.1 on the next page). An empty title needs a vertical correction (Frank MITTELBACH).

```
\c@mti Centering, flushleft, flushright or empty titles:
\l@mti
\r@mti 3397 \def\c@mti#1{\null\hfill #1\hfill\null}
\e@mti 3398 \def\l@mti#1{\null #1\hfill\null}
\n@mti 3399 \def\r@mti#1{\null\hfill #1\hfill\null}
3400 \def\e@mti#1{\vspace{-\baselineskip}}
3401 \def\n@mti#1{\vspace{-\baselineskip}}
```

```
\l@mti Default: titles on left:
\do@mtitc
\df@mtitc 3402 \let\do@mtitc\l@mti
\do@mtilf 3403 \let\df@mtitc\l@mti
\df@mtilf 3404 \let\do@mtilf\l@mti
\do@mtilt 3405 \let\df@mtilf\l@mti
\df@mtilt
```

```

3406 \let\do@mtilt\l@mti
3407 \let\df@mtilt\l@mti

```

9.34 The mtc@verse environment

`mtc@verse` Each minitoc is placed inside a `mtc@verse` environment. This environment is analog to the standard `verse` environment and hence defined via two commands: `\mtc@verse` and `\endmtc@verse`. As it is a list environment, we first define (in a local way) `\`, then call `\list{}` and set some dimensions like `\itemsep`, `\itemindent`, `\listparindent`, `\list` `\topsep`. `\parsep` is set to zero if the `tight` option is active (to reduce the spacing of the lines). `\parskip` is set to zero if the `k-tight` option is active (to reduce the spacing of the lines). Both margins are set to `\mtcindent`. `\endmtc@verse` terminates the list and discourages a page break. The `mtc@verse` environment has an argument which is an horizontal offset (a command like `\mtcoffset`).

```

\topsep
\parsep
\mtcindent 3408 \def\mtc@verse#1{\let\=\@centercr
3409 \list{}}%
3410 \itemsep=\z@ \itemindent=\z@ \partopsep=\z@
3411 \listparindent=\itemindent \topsep=lex
3412 \iftightmtc \parsep=\z@ \fi \ifktightmtc \parskip=\z@ \fi
3413 \leftmargin=\mtcindent \rightmargin=\leftmargin
3414 \addtolength{\leftmargin}{+1}%
3415 \addtolength{\rightmargin}{-1}%
3416 }%
3417 \item[]
3418 \def\endmtc@verse{\nopagebreak[4]\endlist}

```

9.35 The \minitoc, \minilof, and \minilot commands

These three commands are very similar, with only cosmetic differences.

9.35.1 The \minitoc command

`\minitoc` The `\minitoc` command must be used after `\chapter` if you need a minitoc (no automatic minitoc).

`\dominitoc` This command accepts an optional argument, whose default value has eventually been set earlier by a `\dominitoc` command. The letter “d” represents this default value. `\dominitoc` has itself an optional argument which sets the default value of the optional argument of `\minitoc`.

The default value of the optional argument of the `\dominitoc` command is “1”. It seems tortuous, but it is simple to use: we have a default behaviour (1) which can be altered globally via the optional argument of `\dominitoc`, or locally via the optional argument of `\minitoc`.

`\minitoc` So we define `\minitoc` with an optional argument and its (current) default value, and call
`\minitoc@` the true code in the `\minitoc@` macro (which has one delimited argument); we use the
`\@ifnextchar` `\@ifnextchar` trick to detect a left bracket for the optional argument:

```
3419 \def\minitoc{\@ifnextchar[{ \minitoc@}{\minitoc@d]}}
```

The real code of `\minitoc` is in `\minitoc@`, which has a mandatory argument (delimited by brackets) specifying the position of the title.

`\if@minitoc@used@` First, we set the global flag `\@minitoc@used@true` to note that `\minitoc` has been called
 (this will be used by a hint later, section 9.79.2.2 on page 419).

```
3420 \def\minitoc@[#1]{%
3421 \global\@minitoc@used@true
```

`\@tocfile` The name of the file containing the minitoc is constructed from `\jobname` and a suffix
`\if@longextensions` `\@tocfile`, which is `.mtc` (long extensions) or `.M` (short extensions) followed by the absolute
 number of the minitoc.

```
3422 \if@longextensions@
3423 \def\@tocfile{mtc\The@mtc}%
3424 \else
3425 \def\@tocfile{M\The@mtc}%
3426 \fi
```

`\mtc@CkFile` Then we test (via `\mtc@CkFile`) the emptiness of this file. A warning is given if the file is
`\if@mtc@FE` empty and a flag is set (a hint will signal that an empty minitoc has been requested).
`\if@mtc@empty@minitoc@`

I0006

```
3427 \mtc@CkFile{\jobname.\@tocfile}
3428 \if@mtc@FE
3429 \mtcPackageInfo[I0006]{minitoc}%
3430 {\jobname.\@tocfile\space is empty}
3431 \@mtc@empty@minitoc@true
3432 \else
```

`\thispagemininitocstyle` We call `\thispagemininitocstyle` to set the page style (by default, this does nothing because,
 by default, there is no page break before a minitoc). The marks are not treated, because usually
 there is no new page for a minitoc.

```
3433 \thispagemininitocstyle
3434 %% \mtc@markboth{\MakeUppercase{\mtctitle}}{\MakeUppercase{\mtctitle}}%
```

```

\beforeminitoc We call \beforeminitoc, then begin a samepage environment (to try to discourage page
samepage breaks in a minitoc) and look at the position of the title. If the title is empty, the layout is
\do@mtitc corrected. We print the title with its font (\mtifont), then the top rule of the minitoc (if rules
\e@mti are present), using a tabular environment (to inhibit a page break between the title and the
\nc@mti top rule). The font is set to \mtcfont.
\c@mti
\l@mti 3435 \beforeminitoc
\r@mti 3436 \relax\begin{samepage}%
\df@mtic 3437 \if #1e\let\do@mtitc\e@mti
\mtc@CkStr 3438 \else\if #1n\let\do@mtitc\nc@mti
\mtctitle 3439 \else\if #1c\let\do@mtitc\c@mti
\if@mtc@FE 3440 \else\if #1l\let\do@mtitc\l@mti
\mtcfont 3441 \else\if #1r\let\do@mtitc\r@mti
\mtifont 3442 \else\if #1d\let\do@mtitc\df@mtitc
\mtc@rule 3443 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi\fi
\columnwidth 3444 \mtc@CkStr{\mtctitle}\if@mtc@FE \let\do@mtitc\e@mti\relax\fi
3445 \raggedright
tabular 3446 \parskip=\z@%
3447 \reset@font\mtcfont%
3448 \parindent=\z@%
3449 \nopagebreak[4]%
3450 \kern-0.8\baselineskip\nopagebreak[4]%
3451 \par\noindent %
3452 \ifx\mtc@rule\relax
3453 \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
3454 \reset@font\mtifont\do@mtitc{\mtc@v\mtctitle}\\
3455 \end{tabular}%
3456 \else
3457 \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
3458 \reset@font\mtifont\do@mtitc{\mtc@v\mtctitle}\\ \hline
3459 \end{tabular}%
3460 \fi

\mtc@zrule We forbid a page break after the title and the top rule, then set some layout parameters and
\mtc@BBR begin an mtc@verse environment:
\mtcindent
\mtcoffset 3461 \nopagebreak[4]\null\leavevmode\mtc@zrule\\\mtc@BBR
mtc@verse 3462 \leftmargin\mtcindent \rightmargin\mtcindent
3463 \itemindent=\z@\labelwidth=\z@%
3464 \labelsep=\z@\listparindent=\z@%
3465 \begin{mtc@verse}{\mtcoffset}%

\c@tocdepth We force the effective depth of the mini-table (\c@tocdepth) to the required depth
\c@minitocdepth (\c@minitocdepth), so the printing is done inside the mtc@verse environment, where
\\ tocdepth has been forced to minitocdepth, to print only the entries whose level is low
\mtc@BBR enough, then inhibit a page break. The blank line is necessary to avoid a parasite negative
indentation.

3466 \c@tocdepth=\c@minitocdepth
3467 \leavevmode\\\mtc@BBR\vskip -.5\baselineskip

```

```

\mtc@pgno We test the presence of leaders and page numbers, then print the minitoc by inputting the
\@dottedtocline minitoc file. But before reading the minitoc file, we must call the hook macro (asked for
\@undottedtocline by Donald ARSENEAU for his notocite package [10]) \mtc@hook@beforeinputfile and the
\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile macro \mtc@setform which adjusts some layout parameters (defined by the user via some
\mtc@setform \mtcsetformat commands). We work in a group to keep local some macro redefinitions.
\openminitoc The “open” and “close” features are called just before and after the insertion of the mini-table
\closeminitoc file.
\mtcsetformat
\mtc@strut 3468 \begingroup
3469 \makeatletter
3470 \@ifundefined{mtc@pgno}%
3471 {\let\@dottedtocline\@undottedtocline}{}
3472 \@fileswfalse\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
3473 \mtc@setform%
3474 \openminitoc
3475 \@input{\jobname.\@tocfile}%
3476 \closeminitoc
3477 \vspace{-1ex} \vspace{-\baselineskip}
3478 \leavevmode\mtc@strut
3479 \global\@nobreakfalse\endgroup

mtc@verse We close the mtc@verse environment, add the bottomrule (while preventing a page break),
\mtc@bottom@rule then close the samepage environment, and call \afterminitoc. The blank line (\) is
\  essential.
samepage
\afterminitoc 3480 \end{mtc@verse}%
3481 \kernafterminitoc
3482 \nopagebreak[4]\mtc@bottom@rule\null\leavevmode\%
3483 \vskip-1.0\baselineskip\mtc@zrule\end{samepage}%
3484 \par\pagebreak[1]\vspace*{-1ex}\afterminitoc\fi}

\mtc@bottom@rule And we define the bottom rule for a minitoc, with some space under the minitoc:
\mtc@rule
\columnwidth 3485 \def\mtc@bottom@rule{%
3486 \ifx\mtc@rule\relax\relax\else
3487 \vskip -2.5ex
3488 \rule[2.4\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}\fi}

```

9.35.2 The \minilof command

\minilof The \minilof command is very similar to the \minitoc command.

`\minilof` The `\minilof` command must be used after `\chapter` if you need a minilof (no automatic minilof).

`\chapter`

`\dominilof` This command accepts an optional argument, whose default value has eventually been set earlier by a `\dominilof` command. The letter “d” represents this default value. `\dominilof` has itself an optional argument which sets the default value of the optional argument of `\minilof`. The default value of the optional argument of the `\dominilof` command is “1”. It seems tortuous, but it is simple to use: we have a default behaviour (1) which can be altered globally via the optional argument of `\dominilof`, or locally via the optional argument of `\minilof`.

`\minilof` So we define `\minilof` with an optional argument and its (current) default value, and call `\minilof@` the true code in the `\minilof@` macro (which has one delimited argument); we use the `\ifnextchar` trick to detect a left bracket for the optional argument:

```
3489 \def\minilof{\ifnextchar[{\minilof@}{\minilof@d}}
```

The real code of `\minilof` is in `\minilof@`, which has a mandatory argument (delimited by brackets) specifying the position of the title.

`\if@minilof@used@` First, we set the global flag `\@minilof@used@true` to note that `\minilof` has been called (this will be used by a hint later, section 9.79.2.2 on page 419).

```
3490 \def\minilof@[#1]{%
3491 \global\@minilof@used@true
```

`\@tocfile` The name of the file containing the minilof is constructed from `\jobname` and a suffix `\if@longextensions@` `\@tocfile`, which is .mlf (long extensions) or .F (short extensions) followed by the absolute number of the minilof.

```
3492 \if@longextensions@%
3493   \def\@tocfile{mlf\The@mtc}%
3494 \else
3495   \def\@tocfile{F\The@mtc}%
3496 \fi
```

`\mtc@CkFile` Then we test (via `\mtc@CkFile`) the emptiness of this file. A warning is given if the file is empty and a flag is set (a hint will signal that an empty minilof has been requested).

`\if@mtc@FE`

`\if@mtc@empty@minilof@`

```
3497   \mtc@CkFile{\jobname.\@tocfile}
3498   \if@mtc@FE
3499   \mtcPackageInfo[I0006]{minitoc}%
3500     {\jobname.\@tocfile\space is empty}
3501   \@mtc@empty@minilof@true
3502   \else
```

I0006

`\thispageminilofstyle` We call `\thispageminilofstyle` to set the page style (by default, this does nothing because, by default, there is no page break before a minilof). The marks are not treated, because usually there is no new page for a minilof.

```
3503      \thispageminilofstyle
3504 %%      \mtc@markboth{\MakeUppercase{\mlftitle}}{\MakeUppercase{\mlftitle}}%
```

`\beforeminilof` We call `\beforeminilof`, then begin a `samepage` environment (to try to discourage page breaks in a minilof) and look at the position of the title. If the title is empty, the layout is corrected. We print the title with its font (`\mtifont`), then the top rule of the minilof (if rules are present), using a tabular environment (to inhibit a page break between the title and the top rule). The font is set to `\mlffont`.

```
\l@mti 3505      \beforeminilof
\r@mti 3506      \relax\begin{samepage}%
\df@mtic 3507      \if #1e\let\do@mtilf\@mti
\mtc@CkStr 3508      \else\if #1n\let\do@mtilf\n@mti
\mtctitle 3509      \else\if #1c\let\do@mtilf\c@mti
\if@mtc@FE 3510      \else\if #1l\let\do@mtilf\l@mti
\mlffont 3511      \else\if #1r\let\do@mtilf\r@mti
\mtifont 3512      \else\if #1d\let\do@mtilf\df@mtilf
\mlf@rule 3513      \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi
\columnwidth 3514      \mtc@CkStr{\mlftitle}\if@mtc@FE \let\do@mtilf\@mti\relax\fi
tabular 3515      \raggedright
3516      \parskip=\z@
3517      \reset@font\mlffont
3518      \parindent=\z@
3519      \noprogrambreak[4]%
3520      \kern-0.8\baselineskip\noprogrambreak[4]%
3521      \par\noindent
3522      \ifx\mlf@rule\relax
3523      \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
3524      \reset@font\mtifont\do@mtilf{\mtc@v\mlftitle}\\
3525      \end{tabular}%
3526      \else
3527      \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
3528      \reset@font\mtifont\do@mtilf{\mtc@v\mlftitle}\\ \hline
3529      \end{tabular}%
3530      \fi
```

`\mtc@zrule` We forbid a page break after the title and the top rule, then set some layout parameters and begin an `mtc@verse` environment:

```
\mtcindent
\mlfoffset 3531      \noprogrambreak[4]\null\leavevmode\mtc@zrule\\\mtc@BBR
mtc@verse 3532      \leftmargin\mtcindent \rightmargin\mtcindent
3533      \itemindent=\z@\labelwidth=\z@%
3534      \labelsep=\z@\listparindent=\z@%
3535      \begin{mtc@verse}{\mlfoffset}%
```

`\c@lofdepth` We force the effective depth of the mini-table (`\c@tocdepth`) to the required depth
`\c@minilofdepth` (`\c@minilofdepth`), so the printing is done inside the `mtc@verse` environment, where
`\` `tocdepth` has been forced to `minilofdepth`, to print only the entries whose level is low
`\mtc@BBR` enough, then inhibit a page break. The blank line is necessary to avoid a parasite negative
indentation.

```
3536 \ifundefined{c@lofdepth}{}%
3537 {\c@lofdepth=\c@minilofdepth
3538 \ifnum\c@lofdepth<1\relax\c@lofdepth=1\fi}
3539 \leavevmode\\mtc@BBR\vskip -.5\baselineskip
```

`\mtc@pgno` We test the presence of leaders and page numbers, then print the minilof by inputting the
`\@dottedtocline` minilof file. But before reading the minilof file, we must call the hook macro (asked for
`\@undottedtocline` by Donald ARSENEAU for his `notoccite` package [10]) `\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile` and the
`\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile` macro `\mlf@setform` which adjusts some layout parameters (defined by the user via some
`\mlf@setform` `\mtcsetformat` commands). We work in a group to keep local some macro redefinitions.
`\openminilof` The “open” and “close” features are called just before and after the insertion of the mini-table
`\closeminilof` file.
`\mtcsetformat`

```
\mtc@strut 3540 \begingroup
3541 \makeatletter
3542 \ifundefined{mlf@pgno}%
3543 {\let\@dottedtocline\@undottedtocline}{}
3544 \@filesfalse\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
3545 \mlf@setform
3546 \openminilof
3547 \@input{\jobname.\@tocfile}%
3548 \closeminilof
3549 \vspace{-1ex} \vspace{-.5\baselineskip}
3550 \leavevmode\mtc@strut
3551 \global\@nobreakfalse\endgroup
```

`mtc@verse` We close the `mtc@verse` environment, add the bottomrule (while preventing a page break),
`\mtc@bottom@rule` then close the `samepage` environment, and call `\afterminilof`. The blank line (`\`) is
`\` essential.

```
samepage
\afterminilof 3552 \end{mtc@verse}%
3553 \kernafterminilof
3554 \nopagebreak[4]\mlf@rule\null\leavevmode\\%
3555 \vskip-1.0\baselineskip\mtc@zrule\end{samepage}%
3556 \par\pagebreak[1]\vspace*{-1ex}\afterminilof\fi%
```


9.35.3 The `\minilot` command

`\minilot` The `\minilot` command is absolutely similar to the `\minilof` command:

`\minilot` The `\minilot` command must be used after `\chapter` if you need a minilot (no automatic
`\chapter` minilot).

`\dominilot` This command accepts an optional argument, whose default value has eventually been set ear-
`\minilot` lier by a `\dominilot` command. The letter “d” represents this default value. `\dominilot` has
itself an optional argument which sets the default value of the optional argument of `\minilot`.
The default value of the optional argument of the `\dominilot` command is “1”. It seems tor-
tuorous, but it is simple to use: we have a default behaviour (1) which can be altered globally via
the optional argument of `\dominilot`, or locally via the optional argument of `\minilot`.

`\minilot` So we define `\minilot` with an optional argument and its (current) default value, and call
`\minilot@` the true code in the `\minilot@` macro (which has one delimited argument); we use the
`\@ifnextchar` `\@ifnextchar` trick to detect a left bracket for the optional argument:

```
3557 \def\minilot{\@ifnextchar[{ \minilot@}{\minilot@d]}}
```

The real code of `\minilot` is in `\minilot@`, which has a mandatory argument (delimited by
brackets) specifying the position of the title.

`\if@minilot@used@` First, we set the global flag `\@minilot@used@true` to note that `\minilot` has been called
(this will be used by a hint later, section 9.79.2.2 on page 419).

```
3558 \def\minilot@[#1]{%
3559 \global\@minilot@used@true
```

`\@tocfile` The name of the file containing the minilot is constructed from `\jobname` and a suffix
`\if@longextensions@` `\@tocfile`, which is .mlt (long extensions) or .T (short extensions) followed by the absolute
number of the minilot.

```
3560 \if@longextensions@%
3561   \def\@tocfile{mlt\The@mtc}%
3562 \else
3563   \def\@tocfile{T\The@mtc}%
3564 \fi
```

`\mtc@CkFile` Then we test (via `\mtc@CkFile`) the emptiness of this file. A warning is given if the file is empty and a flag is set (a hint will signal that an empty minilot has been requested).

`\if@mtc@FE`

`\if@mtc@empty@minilot@`

```

3565      \mtc@CkFile{\jobname.\@tocfile}
3566      \if@mtc@FE
3567      \mtcPackageInfo[I0006]{minitoc}%
3568          {\jobname.\@tocfile\space is empty}
3569      \@mtc@empty@minilot@true
3570      \else

```

`\thispageminilotstyle` We call `\thispageminilotstyle` to set the page style (by default, this does nothing because, by default, there is no page break before a minilot). The marks are not treated, because usually there is no new page for a minilot.

```

3571      \thispageminilotstyle
3572      %      \mtc@markboth{\MakeUppercase{\mltttitle}}{\MakeUppercase{\mltttitle}}%

```

`\beforeminilot` We call `\beforeminilot`, then begin a `samepage` environment (to try to discourage page breaks in a minilot) and look at the position of the title. If the title is empty, the layout is corrected. We print the title with its font (`\mtifont`), then the top rule of the minilot (if rules are present), using a tabular environment (to inhibit a page break between the title and the top rule). The font is set to `\mltfont`.

```

\do@mtitc
\e@mti
\n@mti
\c@mti
\l@mti 3573      \beforeminilot
\r@mti 3574      \relax\begin{samepage}%
\df@mtic 3575      \if #1e\let\do@mtilt\e@mti
\mtc@CkStr 3576      \else\if #1n\let\do@mtilt\n@mti
\mtctitle 3577      \else\if #1c\let\do@mtilt\c@mti
\if@mtc@FE 3578      \else\if #1l\let\do@mtilt\l@mti
\mltfont 3579      \else\if #1r\let\do@mtilt\r@mti
\mtifont 3580      \else\if #1d\let\do@mtilt\df@mti
\mlt@rule 3581      \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi\fi
\columnwidth 3582      \mtc@CkStr{\mltttitle}\if@mtc@FE \let\do@mtilt\e@mti\relax\fi
tabular 3583      \raggedright
3584      \parskip=\z@%
3585      \reset@font\mltfont%
3586      \parindent=\z@%
3587      \nopagebreak[4]%
3588      \kern-0.8\baselineskip\nopagebreak[4]%
3589      \par\noindent
3590      \ifx\mlt@rule\relax
3591      \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
3592      \reset@font\mtifont\do@mtilt{\mtc@v\mltttitle}\\
3593      \end{tabular}%
3594      \else
3595      \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
3596      \reset@font\mtifont\do@mtilt{\mtc@v\mltttitle}\\\hline
3597      \end{tabular}%
3598      \fi

```

`\mtc@zrule` We forbid a page break after the title and the top rule, then set some layout parameters and
`\mtc@BBR` begin an `mtc@verse` environment:

`\mtcindent`

```
\mltoffset 3599      \nopagebreak[4]\null\leavevmode\mtc@zrule\\\mtc@BBR
mtc@verse 3600      \leftmargin\mtcindent \rightmargin\mtcindent
           3601      \itemindent=\z@\labelwidth=\z@%
           3602      \labelsep=\z@\listparindent=\z@%
           3603      \begin{mtc@verse}\mltoffset}%
```

`\c@lotdepth` We force the effective depth of the mini-table (`\c@lotdepth`) to the required depth
`\c@minilotdepth` (`\c@minilotdepth`), so the printing is done inside the `mtc@verse` environment, where
`\` `lotdepth` has been forced to `minilotdepth`, to print only the entries whose level is low
`\mtc@BBR` enough, then inhibit a page break. The blank line is necessary to avoid a parasite negative
indentation.

```
3604      \@ifundefined{c@lotdepth}{}%
3605      {\c@lotdepth=\c@minilotdepth
3606      \ifnum\c@lotdepth<1\relax\c@lotdepth=1\fi}
3607      \leavevmode\\\mtc@BBR\vskip -.5\baselineskip
```

`\mtc@pgno` We test the presence of leaders and page numbers, then print the minilot by inputting the
`\@dottedtocline` minilot file. But before reading the minilot file, we must call the hook macro (asked for
`\@undottedtocline` by Donald ARSENEAU for his `notoccite` package [10]) `\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile` and the
`\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile` macro `\mlt@setform` which adjusts some layout parameters (defined by the user via some
`\mlt@setform` `\mtcsetformat` commands). We work in a group to keep local some macro redefinitions.
`\openminilot` The “open” and “close” features are called just before and after the insertion of the mini-table
`\closeminilot` file.
`\mtcsetformat`

```
\mtc@strut 3608 \begingroup
           3609 \makeatletter
           3610 \@ifundefined{mlt@pgno}%
           3611 {\let\@dottedtocline\@undottedtocline}{}
           3612 \@filesfalse\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
           3613 \mlt@setform
           3614 \openminilot
           3615 \@input{\jobname.\@tocfile}%
           3616 \closeminilot
           3617 \vspace{-1ex} \vspace{-\baselineskip}
           3618 \leavevmode\mtc@strut
           3619 \global\@nobreakfalse\endgroup
```

`mtc@verse` We close the `mtc@verse` environment, add the bottomrule (while preventing a page break),
`\mtc@bottom@rule` then close the `samepage` environment, and call `\afterminilot`. The blank line (`\`) is
`\` essential.

```
samepage
\afterminilot 3620      \end{mtc@verse}%
           3621      \kernafterminilot
```

```

3622 \nopagebreak[4]\mlt@rule\null\leavevmode\\%
3623 \vskip-1.0\baselineskip\mtc@zrule\end{samepage}%
3624 \par\pagebreak[1]\vspace*{-1ex}\afterminilot\fi}%

```

9.36 Patching the `\chapter` command, continued

$\backslash l@xchapter$ $\backslash @dottedtocline$ $\backslash l@chapter$ $\backslash xchapter$	First, we define $\backslash l@xchapter$ which is like $\backslash l@chapter$, but with a huge depth, to inhibit its printing (except if you cheat): <pre> 3625 \def l@xchapter{\@dottedtocline{\@M}{1em}{2.3em}} 3626 \def xchapter{xchapter} </pre>
---	---

<code>\@chapter</code> <code>\sv@chapter</code> <code>\addcontentsline</code> <code>\ignorespaces</code>	Then we patch <code>\@chapter</code> (the non-starred branch of <code>\chapter</code>) to add pseudo-chapter entries in the LOF and the LOT (these entries will be used by the <code>\dominiXXX</code> commands to split the LOF and the LOT into slices).
---	---

```

3627 \let\sv@chapter\@chapter
3628 \def\@chapter[#1]#2{\sv@chapter[#1]#2\relax%
3629   \addcontentsline{lof}{xchapter}{#1}%
3630   \addcontentsline{lot}{xchapter}{#1}%
3631   \ignorespaces}

```

<code>\mtc@schapter</code> <code>\@schapter</code> <code>\addtocontents</code> <code>\chapterbegin</code> <code>\chapterend</code>	We also patch <code>\@schapter</code> (the starred branch of <code>\chapter</code>) to add marks in the TOC to delimit chapters; these marks will be used by the <code>\dominiXXX</code> commands to take slices from the LOF and the LOT; as they are defined as <code>\relax</code> , they should not perturbate other packages.
--	---

```

3632 \let\mtc@schapter\@schapter
3633 \def\@schapter{\addtocontents{toc}{\protect\chapterend}\mtc@schapter}
3634 \def\@schapter{\addtocontents{@@@}{\protect\chapterbegin}\mtc@schapter}
3635 \let\chapterbegin\relax
3636 \let\chapterend\relax

```

9.37 The `\addstarred...` commands

<code>\addstarredsection</code>	If the command <code>\chapter</code> is undefined, we define the command <code>\addstarredsection</code>
<code>\addstarredchapter</code>	(only if <code>\section</code> is defined). If the command <code>\chapter</code> is defined, we define the com-
<code>\addstarredpart</code>	mand <code>\addstarredchapter</code> . If the command <code>\part</code> is defined, we define the command
<code>\chapter</code>	<code>\addstarredpart</code> . We use the utility command <code>\addst@rred</code> defined in section 9.31 on
<code>\section</code>	page 295.
<code>\part</code>	
<code>\addst@rred</code>	

```

3637 \ifundefined{chapter}%
3638   {\ifundefined{section}%
3639     {\def\addstarredsection#1{\addst@rred{section}{#1}}}%
3640     {\def\addstarredchapter#1{\addst@rred{chapter}{#1}}}
3641 \ifundefined{part}%
3642   {\def\addstarredpart#1{\addst@rred{part}{#1}}}

```

9.38 TOC entries without leaders

`\@Undottedtocline` We define two internal macros to format TOC entries without leaders. The macro `\coffeeont` `\@Undottedtocline` prints no page number, but `\@Undottedtoclinep` prints it.

```

3643 \def\@Undottedtocline#1#2#3#4#5{%
3644   \ifnum #1>\c@tocdepth\relax \else
3645     \vskip \z@ \@plus.2\p@
3646     {\leftskip #2\relax \rightskip \@tocrmarg \parfillskip -\rightskip
3647      \parindent #2\relax\@afterindenttrue
3648      \interlinepenalty\@M
3649      \leavevmode
3650      \@tempdima #3\relax
3651      \advance\leftskip \@tempdima \null\nobreak\hskip -\leftskip
3652      {\coffeeont #4}\nobreak \nobreak\null
3653      \par}%
3654   \fi}

```

`\@Undottedtoclinep` The same but with the page number:

```

3655 \def\@Undottedtoclinep#1#2#3#4#5{%
3656   \ifnum #1>\c@tocdepth\relax \else
3657     \vskip \z@ \@plus.2\p@
3658     {\leftskip #2\relax \rightskip \@tocrmarg \parfillskip -\rightskip
3659      \parindent #2\relax\@afterindenttrue
3660      \interlinepenalty\@M
3661      \leavevmode
3662      \@tempdima #3\relax
3663      \advance\leftskip \@tempdima \null\nobreak\hskip -\leftskip
3664      {#4}\nobreak \hfill \nobreak\null
3665      \hb@xt@\@pnumwidth{\hfil\normalfont \normalcolor #5}%
3666      \par}%
3667   \fi}

```

9.39 Mini-tables with or without leaders

`\minitoc@` This code sets the flag to false, then patches each mini-table command (its internal part).
`\minilof@` We alter the commands `\minitoc@`, `\minilof@`, etc., to test the flag `\ifundottedmtc` and,
`\minilot@`
`\@dottedtocline`
`\@Undottedtoclinep`
`\sv@minitoc@`
`\sv@minilof@`
`\sv@minilot@`

if true, replace locally `\@dottedtocline` by its dotless version `\@Undottedtoclinep`. Of course, we must also test the availability of the `\chapter`, `\part` and `\section` commands, to avoid to define many unnecessary commands.

```

3668 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}{}%
3669   \let\sv@minitoc@\minitoc@
3670   \def\minitoc#[1]{\ifundottedmtc\let\@dottedtocline\@Undottedtoclinep\fi
3671     \sv@minitoc#[1]}%
3672   \let\sv@minilof@\minilof@
3673   \def\minilof#[1]{\ifundottedmtc\let\@dottedtocline\@Undottedtoclinep\fi
3674     \sv@minilof#[1]}%
3675   \let\sv@minilot@\minilot@
3676   \def\minilot#[1]{\ifundottedmtc\let\@dottedtocline\@Undottedtoclinep\fi
3677     \sv@minilot#[1]}%

```

`\sv@parttoc@` For the part level:

`\sv@partlof@`

`\sv@partlot@` 3678 \@ifundefined{part}{}{}%

`\ifundottedmtc` 3679 \let\sv@parttoc@\parttoc@

`\parttoc@` 3680 \def\parttoc#[1]{\ifundottedmtc\let\@dottedtocline\@Undottedtoclinep\fi

`\partlof@` 3681 \sv@parttoc#[1]}%

`\partlot@` 3682 \let\sv@partlof@\partlof@

3683 \def\partlof#[1]{\ifundottedmtc\let\@dottedtocline\@Undottedtoclinep\fi

3684 \sv@partlof#[1]}%

3685 \let\sv@partlot@\partlot@

3686 \def\partlot#[1]{\ifundottedmtc\let\@dottedtocline\@Undottedtoclinep\fi

3687 \sv@partlot#[1]}%

`\sv@secttoc@` For the section level:

`\sv@sectlof@`

`\sv@sectlot@` 3688 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}{}%

`\ifundottedmtc` 3689 \@ifundefined{section}{}{}%

`\secttoc@` 3690 \let\sv@secttoc@\secttoc@

`\sectlof@` 3691 \def\secttoc#[1]{\ifundottedmtc\let\@dottedtocline\@Undottedtoclinep\fi

`\sectlot@` 3692 \sv@secttoc#[1]}%

3693 \let\sv@sectlof@\sectlof@

3694 \def\sectlof#[1]{\ifundottedmtc\let\@dottedtocline\@Undottedtoclinep\fi

3695 \sv@sectlof#[1]}%

3696 \let\sv@sectlot@\sectlot@

3697 \def\sectlot#[1]{\ifundottedmtc\let\@dottedtocline\@Undottedtoclinep\fi

3698 \sv@sectlot#[1]}%}

9.40 The `\dominitoc` command and its siblings

`\dominitoc` The three commands `\dominitoc`, `\dominilof` and `\dominilot` are, of course,

`\dominilof` very similar. They take the `\jobname.toc` file (resp. the `\jobname.lof` and

`\dominilot`

`\contentsline`

`\chapbegin`

`\starchapter`

`\jobname.lot` files) produced by the previous \LaTeX run and cut it in slices (one slice per chapter or starred chapter) into the `\jobname.mtc<N>` files (resp. the `\jobname.mlf<N>` and `\jobname.mlt<N>` files), using specific lines in the `\jobname.toc` (resp. `\jobname.lof` and `\jobname.lot`) file. These lines are essentially chapter-level entry commands (like `\contentsline{chapter}...`, `\contentsline{xchapter}...`, `\contentsline{starchapter}...`, `\chapbegin`) delimiting chapters in the TOC (or in the LOF or the LOT). Analog part-level lines delimit parts, hence also chapters.

```
\dominitoc As \dominitoc has an optional argument, whose default value is "l" (left), it calls
\dominitoc@ \dominitoc@ with a argument delimited by brackets.
@@dominitoc
@ifdominitoc@used@ The macros are \dominitoc (user interface), which calls \dominitoc@[1] (or with the
optional argument of \dominitoc). Then \dominitoc@[1] processes its argument and
calls @@dominitoc. @@dominitoc calls \dominitoc (passing \jobname as argument)
then close the minitoc file written. @@dominitoc reset to zero the counter of mini-tables,
calls \MTC@next#1.toc (where #1 is the value of \jobname), then reset again to zero
the counter of mini-tables. Each call to \dominitoc@ (i.e., to \dominitoc) sets the flag
\dominitoc@used@true. This will be used later for a hint (which detects that you have
correctly called \minitoc after \dominitoc and that both or neither have been called). See
section 9.79.2.2 on page 419. The code is similar for \dominilof and \dominilot.
```

```
\dominitoc The \dominitoc command extracts information from the .toc file and create the minitocs
\dominitoc files, with the adequate extension.
\MTC@next
@ifnextchar 3699 \def\dominitoc#1{%
3700 \makeatletter
3701 \setcounter{mtc}{0}
3702 \MTC@next#1.toc\relax\}\setcounter{mtc}{0}}
3703 \def\dominitoc{\ifnextchar[\dominitoc@]{\dominitoc@[1]}}
```

```
\dominilof The \dominilof command extracts information from the .lof file and create the minilofs
\dominilof files, with the adequate extension.
\MLF@next
@ifnextchar 3704 \def\dominilof#1{%
3705 \makeatletter
3706 \setcounter{mtc}{0}
3707 \MLF@next#1.lof\relax\}\setcounter{mtc}{0}}
3708 \def\dominilof{\ifnextchar[\dominilof@]{\dominilof@[1]}}
```

```
\dominilot The \dominilot command extracts information from the .lot file and create the minilots
\dominilot files, with the adequate extension.
\MLT@next
@ifnextchar 3709 \def\dominilot#1{%
3710 \makeatletter
3711 \setcounter{mtc}{0}}
```

```

3712 \MLT@next#1.lot\relax\\\setcounter{mtc}{0}}
3713 \def\dominilot{\@ifnextchar[{\dominilot@}{\dominilot@[1]}}

```

\if@dominitoc@used@ Some code to flag the use of the command and manage the position of the minitoc title; a hint
 \if@mtc@hints@ detects any spurious invocation.
 \@mtc@hints@given@true

I0045

```

\df@mtitc 3714 \def\dominitoc@[#1]{%
  \e@mti 3715 \if@mtc@hints@
  \n@mti 3716 \if@dominitoc@used@
  \c@mti 3717 \mtcPackageInfo[I0045]{minitoc(hints)}%
  \l@mti 3718 {The \string\dominitoc \space command
  \r@mti 3719 \MessageBreak
  @@dominitoc 3720 has been invoked more than once
  3721 \MessageBreak}
  3722 \global\@mtc@hints@given@true
  3723 \fi
  3724 \fi
  3725 \global\@dominitoc@used@true
  3726 \if #1e\let\df@mtitc\e@mti%
  3727 \else\if #1n\let\df@mtitc\n@mti%
  3728 \else\if #1c\let\df@mtitc\c@mti%
  3729 \else\if #1l\let\df@mtitc\l@mti%
  3730 \else\if #1r\let\df@mtitc\r@mti%
  3731 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi%
  3732 @@dominitoc}

```

\if@dominilof@used@ Some code to flag the use of the command and manage the position of the minilof title; a hint
 \if@mtc@hints@ detects any spurious invocation.
 \@mtc@hints@given@true

I0045

```

\df@mtilf 3733 \def\dominilof@[#1]{%
  \e@mti 3734 \if@mtc@hints@
  \n@mti 3735 \if@dominilof@used@
  \c@mti 3736 \mtcPackageInfo[I0045]{minitoc(hints)}%
  \l@mti 3737 {The \string\dominilof \space command
  \r@mti 3738 \MessageBreak
  @@dominilof 3739 has been invoked more than once
  3740 \MessageBreak}
  3741 \global\@mtc@hints@given@true
  3742 \fi
  3743 \fi
  3744 \global\@dominilof@used@true
  3745 \if #1e\let\df@mtilf\e@mti%
  3746 \else\if #1n\let\df@mtilf\n@mti%
  3747 \else\if #1c\let\df@mtilf\c@mti%
  3748 \else\if #1l\let\df@mtilf\l@mti%
  3749 \else\if #1r\let\df@mtilf\r@mti%
  3750 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi%
  3751 @@dominilof}

```


`\if@dominilot@used@` Some code to flag the use of the command and manage the position of the minilot title; a hint
`\if@mtc@hints@` detects any spurious invocation.
`\@mtc@hints@given@true`

```

\df@mtilt 3752 \def\dominilot@[#1]{%
\e@mti 3753 \if@mtc@hints@
\n@mti 3754 \if@dominilot@used@
\c@mti 3755 \mtcPackageInfo[I0045]{minitoc(hints)}%
\l@mti 3756 {The \string\dominilot \space command
\r@mti 3757 \MessageBreak
@@dominilot 3758 has been invoked more than once
3759 \MessageBreak}
3760 \global\@mtc@hints@given@true
3761 \fi
3762 \fi
3763 \global\@dominilot@used@true
3764 \if #1e\let\df@mtilt\e@mti%
3765 \else\if #1n\let\df@mtilt\n@mti%
3766 \else\if #1c\let\df@mtilt\c@mti%
3767 \else\if #1l\let\df@mtilt\l@mti%
3768 \else\if #1r\let\df@mtilt\r@mti%
3769 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi%
3770 \@dominilot}

@@dominitoc These macros invoke the \@domini... macros to create the mini-table file, then close the file
@@dominilof descriptor.
@@dominilot
\tf@mtc 3771 \def@@dominitoc{ \@dominitoc{\jobname}\immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}
3772 \def@@dominilof{ \@dominilof{\jobname}\immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}
3773 \def@@dominilot{ \@dominilot{\jobname}\immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}

```

I0045

9.40.1 Analysis and splitting of the TOC file

This is done via a loop managed by the following macros ⁸:

```

\MTC@next Processes the next entry in the list and removes it from the head of the list:
\MTC@list
\MTC@loop 3774 \def\MTC@next#1\relax#2\{\%
3775 \edef\MTC@list{#2}%
3776 \MTC@loop{#1}%
3777 }

```

⁸ This code is derived from the `xr` package [101], by David P. CARLISLE, with his permission. Some modifications were made by Heiko OBERDIEK, Didier VERNA, and Bernd JAEHNE for the support of `hyperref`, essentially by adding an argument to some macros, to use the `hyperlink` argument in the contents lines.

```

\MTC@toc    Check if the list is empty:
\MTC@list
\MTC@explist 3778 \def\MTC@toc{%
              3779   \ifx\MTC@list\@empty\else\expandafter\MTC@explist\fi
              3780 }

```

```

\MTC@contentsline The macro \MTC@contentsline analyses the lines read from the TOC file and detects inter-
\arabic           esting keywords. If \chapter is found, the mtc counter (which simulates the chapter counter,
\chapter          but is absolute) is incremented and a new minitoc file is created.
\themtc
\tf@mtc 3781 \def\MTC@contentsline#1#2#3#4{%
          3782   \gdef\themtc{\arabic{mtc}}%
          3783   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\chapter
          3784     \stepcounter{mtc}%

```

```

\if@longextensions@ We test if long or short extensions are used, to build the name of the mini-table file, then open
\themtc             it (after closing the file descriptor):
\mtcname

```

I0033

```

\tf@mtc 3785   \if@longextensions@%
\closeout 3786     \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
\openout 3787       {Writing\space\jobname.mtc\themtc\@gobble}%
          3788       \def\mtcname{\jobname.mtc\themtc}%
          3789       \else
          3790       \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
          3791       {Writing\space\jobname.M\themtc\@gobble}%
          3792       \def\mtcname{\jobname.M\themtc}%
          3793       \fi
          3794       \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
          3795       \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\mtcname
          3796       \fi

```

```

\if@longextensions@ We need a similar code to detect TOC entries for appendices in the memoir class9:
\themtc

```

```

\mtcname 3797   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\appendix
\tf@mtc 3798     \stepcounter{mtc}%
\closeout 3799     \if@longextensions@%
\openout 3800       \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
          3801       {Writing\space\jobname.mtc\themtc\@gobble}%
          3802       \def\mtcname{\jobname.mtc\themtc}%
          3803       \else
          3804       \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
          3805       {Writing\space\jobname.M\themtc\@gobble}%
          3806       \def\mtcname{\jobname.M\themtc}%
          3807       \fi
          3808       \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
          3809       \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\mtcname
          3810       \fi

```

⁹ Tim ARNOLD has signaled the problem; thanks!

`\mtc@toks` Now, we filter the relevant contents lines, the token register `\mtc@toks` is used as a verbatim memory.

```
3811 \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode #2}%
```

`\MTC@WriteContentsline` Each interesting contents line is copied, with a font command added before it. We begin with the standard sectionning commands, below `\chapter`:

`\section`

```
\subsection 3812 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\section
```

```
\paragraph 3813 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mtcS}{#3}{#4}%
```

```
\subparagraph 3814 \fi
```

```
3815 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subsection
```

```
3816 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mtcSS}{#3}{#4}%
```

```
3817 \fi
```

```
3818 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subsubsection
```

```
3819 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mtcSSS}{#3}{#4}%
```

```
3820 \fi
```

```
3821 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\paragraph
```

```
3822 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mtcP}{#3}{#4}%
```

```
3823 \fi
```

```
3824 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subparagraph
```

```
3825 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mtcSP}{#3}{#4}%
```

```
3826 \fi
```

`\coffee` A coffee break contents line ☕ is written for `\coffee`:

`\MTC@WriteCoffeeline`

```
3827 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\coffee
```

```
3828 \MTC@WriteCoffeeline{#1}{#3}%
```

```
3829 \fi
```

`\starchapter` If it is `\starchapter` (for a starred chapter), we increment the `mtc` counter, build a new minitoc file name, close the file descriptor and open it with this new file.

I0033

`\if@longextensions@`

```
\mtcname 3830 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starchapter
```

```
\themtc 3831 \stepcounter{mtc}%
```

```
\tf@mtc 3832 \if@longextensions@
```

```
\closeout 3833 \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
```

```
\openout 3834 {Writing\space\jobname.mtc\themtc\@gobble}%
```

```
3835 \def\mtcname{\jobname.mtc\themtc}%
```

```
3836 \else
```

```
3837 \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
```

```
3838 {Writing\space\jobname.M\themtc\@gobble}%
```

```
3839 \def\mtcname{\jobname.M\themtc}%
```

```
3840 \fi
```

```
3841 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
```

```
3842 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\mtcname
```

```
3843 \fi
```

```

\starsection For starred sectionning commands lower than \chapter, a contents line is written into the
\MTC@WriteContentsline minitoc file, with a font command added:
\starsubsection
\starsubsubsection 3844 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsection
\starparagraph 3845 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mtcS}{#3}{#4}%
\starsubparagraph 3846 \fi
3847 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsubsection
3848 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mtcSS}{#3}{#4}%
3849 \fi
3850 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsubsubsection
3851 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mtcSSS}{#3}{#4}%
3852 \fi
3853 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starparagraph
3854 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mtcP}{#3}{#4}%
3855 \fi
3856 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsubparagraph
3857 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mtcSP}{#3}{#4}%
3858 \fi
3859 }

\MTC@explist The loop to read the lines of the TOC file; it expands the list of entries and call \MTC@next to
\MTC@next process the first one:
\MTC@list
3860 \def\MTC@explist{\expandafter\MTC@next\MTC@list\}

\MTC@loop If an entry is found, loop through line by line, looking for interesting entries. Otherwise,
\openin process the next entry in the list.
\@inputcheck
\MTC@toc 3861 \def\MTC@loop#1{\openin\@inputcheck#1\relax
\MTC@read 3862 \ifeof\@inputcheck
3863 \mtcPackageWarning[W0010]{minitoc}%
3864 {No file #1.
3865 \MessageBreak
3866 MINITOCs NOT PREPARED}%
3867 \expandafter\MTC@toc
3868 \else
3869 \mtcPackageInfo[I0024]{minitoc}{PREPARING MINITOCs FROM #1}%
3870 \expandafter\MTC@read
3871 \fi
3872 }

\MTC@read Read the next entry of the .toc file.
\read
\@inputcheck 3873 \def\MTC@read{%
\MTC@line 3874 \read\@inputcheck to\MTC@line

```

W0010

I0024

```

\MTC@test The ..... make sure that \MTC@test has enough arguments:
\MTC@line
  \MTC@ 3875 \expandafter\MTC@test\MTC@line.....\MTC@%
        3876 }%

\MTC@test The \MTC@test macro finds the “interesting” commands in the TOC file, mainly to delimit
\MTC@contentsline chapters10:

\MTC@test Look at the first token of the line. If it is an interesting entry, process it. If it is \@input, add
\MTC@contentsline the file to the list. Otherwise ignore. Go around the loop if not at end of file. Finally process
\contentsline the next file in the list.
\mtc@string
  \@input 3877 \long\def\MTC@test#1#2#3#4#5#6\MTC@{%
\MTC@list 3878 \ifx#1\contentsline
\chapterend 3879 \let\mtc@string\string
\closeout 3880 \MTC@contentsline{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}%
\tf@mtc 3881 \let\mtc@string\relax
\openout 3882 \else\ifx#1\@input
\chapterbegin 3883 \edef\MTC@list{\MTC@list#2\relax}%
\addtocounter 3884 \else\ifx#1\chapterend
\MTC@toc 3885 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
\MTC@read 3886 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\jobname.mtc
3887 \else\ifx#1\chapterbegin
3888 \addtocounter{mtc}{-1}%
3889 \fi\fi\fi\fi
3890 \ifeof\@inputcheck
3891 \expandafter\MTC@toc
3892 \else
3893 \expandafter\MTC@read
3894 \fi
3895 }%

```

9.41 Mini-lists of figures

The code is similar to the code for mini-tables of contents, but with less commands to recognize.

¹⁰The macro \MTC@test has been patched to call \MTC@contentsline with four parameters instead of three (thanks to Heiko OBERDIEK, Didier VERNA, Bernd JAEHNE and A. J. “Tony” ROBERTS). The same remark applies to similar macros.

9.41.1 Analysis and splitting of the list of figures file

`\MLF@next` This is done via a loop managed by the following macros:
`\MLF@list`
`\MLF@loop` Processes the next entry in the list and removes it from the head of the list:

```
3896 \def\MLF@next#1\relax#2\{\%
3897   \edef\MLF@list{#2}%
3898   \MLF@loop{#1}}
```

`\MLF@lof` Checks if the list is empty:
`\MLF@list`
`\MLF@explist` 3899 `\def\MLF@lof{%`
 3900 `\ifx\MLF@list\@empty\else\expandafter\MLF@explist\fi}`

`\MLF@contentsline` The macro `\MLF@contentsline` analyses the lines read from the LOF file and detects interesting keywords. If `\xchapter` is found, the counter `mtc` is incremented and a new minilof file is created.

```
3901 \def\MLF@contentsline#1#2#3#4{%
3902   \gdef\themtc{\arabic{mtc}}%
3903   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\xchapter
3904     \stepcounter{mtc}%
```

`\if@longextensions@` The name of the minilof file is built from `\jobname` and a long or short extension:

I0033

```
\themtc
\mlfname 3905   \if@longextensions@%
\closeout 3906     \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
\tf@mtc 3907     {Writing\space\jobname.mlf\themtc\@gobble}
\openout 3908     \def\mlfname{\jobname.mlf\themtc}%
3909     \else
3910       \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
3911       {Writing\space\jobname.F\themtc\@gobble}
3912       \def\mlfname{\jobname.F\themtc}%
3913     \fi
3914     \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
3915     \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\mlfname
3916   \fi
```

`\figure` The token register `\mtc@toks` is used to pass the entry to `\MTC@WriteContentsline`. If we found a `\figure` entry, we copy it into the minilof file:

```
\subfigure
\mtc@toks
\MTC@WriteContentsline 3917 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\figure
3918   \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode#2}%
3919   \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mlf}{#3}{#4}%
```

```

3920 \fi
3921 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subfigure
3922 \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode#2}%
3923 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mlfS}{#3}{#4}%
3924 \fi
3925 }

```

`\MLF@explist` The loop to read the LOF file; it expands the list of entries and calls `\MLF@next` to process the first one:

```

\MLF@next
\MLF@list
3926 \def\MLF@explist{\expandafter\MLF@next\MLF@list\}

```

`\MLF@loop` And now, we scan the .lof file:

```

\openin
\@inputcheck 3927 \def\MLF@loop#1{\openin\@inputcheck#1\relax
\MLF@lof 3928 \ifeof\@inputcheck
\MLF@read 3929 \mtcPackageWarning[W0008]{minitoc}%
3930 {No file #1.
3931 \MessageBreak
3932 MINILOFS NOT PREPARED}%
3933 \expandafter\MLF@lof
3934 \else
3935 \mtcPackageInfo[I0034]{minitoc}%
3936 {PREPARING MINILOFS FROM #1}%
3937 \expandafter\MLF@read\fi}

```

W0008
I0034

`\MLF@read` Read the next entry in the .lof file:

```

\read
\@inputcheck 3938 \def\MLF@read{%
3939 \read\@inputcheck to\MLF@line

```

`\MLF@line` The make sure that `\MLF@test` has enough arguments:

```

\MLF@test
\MLF@ 3940 \expandafter\MLF@test\MLF@line. . . . \MLF@%
3941 }%

```

`\MLF@test` The `\MLF@test` macro finds the “interesting” commands in the LOF file, mainly to delimit chapters.

```

\contentsline Look at the first token of the line. If it is an interesting entry, process it. If it is \@input, add
\mtc@string the file to the list. Otherwise ignore. Go around the loop if not at end of file. Finally process
\MLF@contentsline the next file in the list.
\@input
\MLF@list 3942 \long\def\MLF@test#1#2#3#4#5#6\MLF@{%
\chapterend 3943 \ifx#1\contentsline
\closeout 3944 \let\mtc@string\string
\tf@mtc 3945 \MLF@contentsline{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}%
\openout 3946 \let\mtc@string\relax
\chapterbegin 3947 \else\ifx#1\@input
\addtocounter 3948 \edef\MLF@list{\MLF@list#2\relax}%
\MLF@lof 3949 \else\ifx#1\chapterend
\MLF@read 3950 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
3951 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\jobname.mtc
3952 \else\ifx#1\chapterbegin
3953 \addtocounter{mtc}{-1}%
3954 \fi\fi\fi\fi
3955 \ifeof\@inputcheck\expandafter\MLF@lof
3956 \else\expandafter\MLF@read\fi}%

```

9.42 Mini-lists of tables

The code is similar to the code for mini-tables of contents, but with less commands to recognize.

9.42.1 Analysis and splitting of the list of tables file

```

\MLT@next This is done via a loop managed by the following macros:
\MLT@list
\MLT@loop Processes the next entry in the list and removes it from the head of the list:

3957 \def\MLT@next#1\relax#2\{\%
3958 \edef\MLT@list{#2}%
3959 \MLT@loop{#1}}

\MLT@lot Checks if the list is empty:
\MLT@list
\MLT@explist 3960 \def\MLT@lot{%
3961 \ifx\MLT@list\@empty\else\expandafter\MLT@explist\fi}

```


`\MLT@contentsline` The macro `\MLT@contentsline` analyses the lines read from the LOT file and detects interesting keywords. If `\xchapter` is found, the mtc counter is incremented and a new minilot file is created.

```
3962 \def\MLT@contentsline#1#2#3#4{%
3963   \gdef\themtc{\arabic{mtc}}%
3964   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\xchapter
3965     \stepcounter{mtc}%
```

`\if@longextensions@` The name of the minilot file it build from `\jobname` and a long or short extension:

I0033

```
\themtc
\mltname 3966 \if@longextensions@%
\closeout 3967 \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
\tf@mtc 3968 {Writing\space\jobname.mlt\themtc@gobble}%
\openout 3969 \def\mltname{\jobname.mlt\themtc}%
3970 \else
3971 \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
3972 {Writing\space\jobname.T\themtc@gobble}%
3973 \def\mltname{\jobname.T\themtc}%
3974 \fi
3975 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
3976 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\mltname
3977 \fi
```

`\table` The token register `\mtc@toks` is used to pass the entry to `\MTC@WriteContentsline`. If we found a `\table` entry, we copy it into the minilot file:

`\subtable`

`\mtc@toks`

```
\MTC@WriteContentsline 3978 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\table
3979 \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode#2}%
3980 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mlt}{#3}{#4}%
3981 \fi
3982 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subtable
3983 \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode#2}%
3984 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mltS}{#3}{#4}%
3985 \fi
3986 }
```

`\MLT@explist` The loop to read the LOT file; it expands the list of entries and calls `\MLT@next` to process the first one:

`\MLT@next`

`\MLT@list`

```
3987 \def\MLT@explist{\expandafter\MLT@next\MLT@list\}
```

`\MLT@loop` And now, we scan the .lot file:

`\openin`

`\@inputcheck` 3988 \def\MLT@loop#1{\openin\@inputcheck#1\relax

`\MLT@lot` 3989 \ifeof\@inputcheck

`\MLT@read`

W0009

I0037

```

3990 \mtcPackageWarning[W0009]{minitoc}%
3991     {No file #1.
3992     \MessageBreak
3993     MINILOTS NOT PREPARED}%
3994 \expandafter\MLT@lot
3995 \else
3996 \mtcPackageInfo[I0037]{minitoc}%
3997     {PREPARING MINILOTS FROM #1}%
3998 \expandafter\MLT@read\fi}

```

```

\MLT@read Read the next entry in the .lot file:
\read
\@inputcheck 3999 \def\MLT@read{%
4000 \read\@inputcheck to\MLT@line

```

```

\MLT@line The . . . . make sure that \MLT@test has enough arguments:
\MLT@test
\MLT@ 4001 \expandafter\MLT@test\MLT@line. . . . \MLT@%
4002 }%

```

```

\MLT@test The \MLT@test macro finds the “interesting” commands in the LOT file, mainly to delimit
chapters.

```

```

\contentsline Look at the first token of the line. If it is an interesting entry, process it. If it is \@input, add
\mtc@string the file to the list. Otherwise ignore. Go around the loop if not at end of file. Finally process
\MLT@contentsline the next file in the list.
\@input
\MLT@list 4003 \long\def\MLT@test#1#2#3#4#5#6\MLT@{%
\chapterend 4004 \ifx#1\contentsline
\closeout 4005 \let\mtc@string\string
\tf@mtc 4006 \MLT@contentsline{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}%
\openout 4007 \let\mtc@string\relax
\chapterbegin 4008 \else\ifx#1\@input
\addtocounter 4009 \edef\MLT@list{\MLT@list#2\relax}%
\MLT@lot 4010 \else\ifx#1\chapterend
\MLT@read 4011 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
4012 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\jobname.mtc
4013 \else\ifx#1\chapterbegin
4014 \addtocounter{mtc}{-1}%
4015 \fi\fi\fi\fi
4016 \ifeof\@inputcheck\expandafter\MLT@lot
4017 \else\expandafter\MLT@read\fi}%

```

Note that we terminate with a closing brace to end the chapter-level macros (end of the *else* branch of a `\@ifundefined{chapter}` alternative).

```

4018 }%

```

9.43 Macro to write a contents line

`\mtc@dot` The `\MTC@WriteContentsline` macro makes the definition of `\MTC@contentsline` shorter.
`\MTC@WriteContentsline` An extra `\edef` level is removed (Heiko OBERDIEK):
`\mtc@param`
`\write` The arguments of `\MTC@WriteContentsline` are:
`\tf@mtc`
`\@resetfont` #1: the #1 argument of `\MTC@contentsline`;
`\mtc@string` #2: font shorthand =: `\csname #2font\endcsname`;
`\contentsline` #3: the #3 argument of `\MTC@contentsline`;
`\mtc@toks` #4: the #4 argument of `\MTC@contentsline` (hyperlink).

The token register `\mtc@toks` is used to pass the entry to `\MTC@WriteContentsline`.

```

4019 \def\mtc@dot{.}
4020 \def\MTC@WriteContentsline#1#2#3#4{%
4021   \def\mtc@param{#4}%
4022   \immediate\write\tf@mtc{%
4023     {\string\resetfont
4024       \expandafter\string\csname #2font\endcsname
4025       \string\mtc@string
4026       \string\contentsline{#1}%
4027       {\the\mtc@toks}%
4028       {\string\resetfont
4029         \expandafter\string\csname #2font\endcsname
4030         \space #3%
4031       }%
4032       \ifx\mtc@dot\mtc@param
4033       \else
4034         {#4}%
4035       \fi
4036     }%
4037   }%
4038 }
```

`\MTC@WriteCoffeeline` And the same for a “coffee” ☕ line. The arguments of the macro `\MTC@WriteCoffeeline` are:
`\write`
`\tf@mtc`
`\@resetfont` #1: the #1 argument of `\MTC@contentsline`;
`\coffeeFont` #2: the #3 argument of `\MTC@contentsline`.
`\mtc@string`
`\mtc@toks`

The token register `\mtc@toks` is used to pass the entry to `\MTC@WriteCoffeeline`. Le registre *token* `\mtc@toks` est utilisé pour passer l’entrée à `\MTC@WriteCoffeeline`.

```

4039 \def\MTC@WriteCoffeeline#1#2#3{%
4040   \immediate\write\tf@mtc{%
4041     {\string\reset@font \string\coffee\font \string\mtc@string
4042     {\the\mtc@toks}%
4043     {\string\reset@font \string\coffee\font \space #3%
4044     }%
4045   }%
4046 }%
4047 }

```

9.44 Depth counters for partlofs and partlots

`\AtBeginDocument` If the counters `lofdepth` and `lotdepth` are defined, we create the corresponding new counters: `partlofdepth` and `partlotdepth`. These counters are initialized to 2. This is done after the loading of the packages, in an `\AtBeginDocument` block:

```

\newcounter
\setcounter
\c@lofdepth
\c@lotdepth
4048 \AtBeginDocument{%
4049   \ifundefined{c@lofdepth}{}%
4050   {\newcounter{partlofdepth}\setcounter{partlofdepth}{2}}%
4051   \ifundefined{c@lotdepth}{}%
4052   {\newcounter{partlotdepth}\setcounter{partlotdepth}{2}}%
4053 }%

```

9.45 Part level commands

`\xpart` If `\part` is defined, we define some utility commands, a counter (`ptc`) for the parttocs and related commands (`\theptc`, `\Thepart`, `\adjustptc`, `\decrementptc`, `\incrementptc`), the obsolete command `\firstpartis`, and the depth counter `parttocdepth`.

```

\theptc
\Thepart
\adjustptc
\decrementptc
\incrementptc
\firstpartis
\firstpartis
4054 \ifundefined{part}{}%
4055 {%
4056 \def\xpart{xpart}
4057 \def\Thepart{\arabic{ptc}}
4058 \def\firstpartis#1%
4059   {\mtcPackageWarning[W0004]{minitoc}%
4060    {\string\firstpartis \space is an obsolete (ignored)
4061     \MessageBreak
4062     command}%
4063    \@firstpartis@used@true}
4064 \newcounter{ptc}
4065 \setcounter{ptc}{0}
4066 \newcommand{\adjustptc}[1][1]{\addtocounter{ptc}{#1}}
4067 \def\decrementptc{\addtocounter{ptc}{-1}}
4068 \def\incrementptc{\addtocounter{ptc}{+1}}
4069 \def\theptc{\arabic{ptc}}

```

W0004

```
4070 \newcounter{parttocdepth}
4071 \setcounter{parttocdepth}{2}
```

`\ptc@rule` But, sometimes, we need to make a difference between book/report and article classes (is `\columnwidth` `\chapter` defined?), to have a different layout: the definition of `\ptc@rule` is empty except if `\chapter` is undefined. By default, there is no rule before/after parttocs, partlofs, and partlots for books. You should redeclare `\ptc@rule` if you want these rules.

```
4072 \@ifundefined{chapter}%
4073   {\def\ptc@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}}%
4074   {\let\ptc@rule\relax}
```

`\ptcindent` And we declare the default indentation (both sides) of the parttocs:

```
4075 \newlength\ptcindent
4076 \@ifundefined{chapter}{\ptcindent=24\p@}{\ptcindent=\z@}
```

9.46 Fonts for the parttocs

`\ptcfont` We define the fonts for the parttocs. Note that they are larger if `\chapter` is defined (book/report-like document classes) than when it is not (article-like document classes):

```
\ptcSSfont
\ptcSSSfont 4077 \@ifundefined{chapter}{%
\ptcPfont 4078   \def\ptcfont{\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries} % the parttoc
\ptcSPfont 4079   \def\ptcSfont{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}% (sections)
\plffont 4080   \let\ptcSSfont\ptcfont % (subsections)
\plfSfont 4081   \let\ptcSSSfont\ptcfont % (subsubsections)
\pltfont 4082   \let\ptcPfont\ptcfont % (paragraphs)
\pltSfont 4083   \let\ptcSPfont\ptcfont % (subparagraphs)
\ptifont 4084   \let\plffont\ptcfont % (figures)
4085   \let\plfSfont\ptcfont % (subfigures)
4086   \let\pltfont\ptcfont % (tables)
4087   \let\pltSfont\ptcfont % (subtables)
4088   \def\ptifont{\Large\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}% titles
4089 }%
```

`\ptcfont` If `\chapter` is defined, the fonts are larger and `\ptcCfont` must be defined:

```
\ptcCfont
\ptcSfont 4090 {%
\ptcSSfont 4091   \def\ptcfont{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries} % the parttoc
\ptcSSSfont 4092   \def\ptcCfont{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}% (chapters)
\ptcPfont 4093   \def\ptcSfont{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}% (sections)
\ptcSPfont 4094   \let\ptcSSfont\ptcfont % (subsections)
\plffont 4095   \let\ptcSSSfont\ptcfont % (subsubsections)
\plfSfont
\pltfont
\pltSfont
\ptifont
```

```

4096 \let\ptcPfont\ptcfont      % (paragraphs)
4097 \let\ptcSPfont\ptcfont    % (subparagraphs)
4098 \let\plffont\ptcfont      % (figures)
4099 \let\plfSfont\ptcfont      % (subfigures)
4100 \let\pltfont\ptcfont       % (tables)
4101 \let\pltSfont\ptcfont      % (subtables)
4102 \def\ptifont{\LARGE\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}% titles
4103 }

```

9.47 Default titles for part-level mini-tables

`\parttoc` We define the default position, the fonts and the layout for titles of the part-level mini-tables
`\partlof` (`\parttoc`, `\partlof` and `\partlot`). This formatting is different if `\chapter` is defined or
`\partlot` undefined.

`\c@pti` If `\chapter` is undefined, the definitions are very simple, for centered, flushleft, flushright or
`\l@pti` empty titles. Here, empty titles need a vertical correction (Frank MITTELBACH).
`\r@pti`

```

\@pti 4104 \@ifundefined{chapter}{%
\n@pti 4105 \def\c@pti#1{\null\hfill #1\hfill\null}
4106 \def\l@pti#1{\null #1\hfill\null}
4107 \def\r@pti#1{\null\hfill #1\null}
4108 \def\@pti#1{\vspace{-\baselineskip}}
4109 \def\n@pti#1{\vspace{-\baselineskip}}}%

```

`\@pti` But, if `\chapter` is defined, we must simulate the formatting of a chapter head, which is more
`\n@pti` complex. Here, empty titles need a vertical correction (Frank MITTELBACH).

```

4110 {%
4111 \def\@pti#1{\vspace{-\baselineskip}} \def\n@pti#1{\vspace{-\baselineskip}}

```

`\l@pti` For a title on the left, we must test if the main text is on two columns:

```

\if@twocolumn
\@topnewpage 4112 \def\l@pti#1{\if@twocolumn \@topnewpage[\@makehead@l{#1}]%
\@afterheading 4113 \else \@makehead@l{#1}\@afterheading \fi}
\ptifont 4114 \def\@makehead@l#1{%
\@makehead@l 4115 \vspace*{\mtcgapbeforeheads}%
\mtcgapbeforeheads 4116 {\parindent \z@ \raggedright \ptifont #1\par \nobreak
\mtcgapafterheads 4117 \vskip \mtcgapafterheads\hbox{}
4118 }}

```

```

\l@pti For a title on the right, we must also test if the main text is on two columns:
\if@twocolumn
\@topnewpage 4119 \def\r@pti#1{\if@twocolumn \@topnewpage[\@makehead@r{#1}]
\@makehead@r 4120 \else \@makehead@r{#1}\@afterheading \fi}
\@afterheading 4121 \def\@makehead@r#1{%
\ptifont 4122 \vspace*{\mtcgapbeforeheads}%
\mtcgapbeforeheads 4123 {\parindent \z@ \raggedleft \ptifont #1\par \nobreak
\mtcgapafterheads 4124 \vskip \mtcgapafterheads\hbox{}
4125 }}

```

```

\c@pti For a centered title, we must also test if the main text is on two columns:
\if@twocolumn
\@topnewpage 4126 \def\c@pti#1{\if@twocolumn \@topnewpage[\@makehead@c{#1}]}%
\@makehead@c 4127 \else \@makehead@c{#1}\@afterheading \fi}
\@afterheading 4128 \def\@makehead@c#1{%
\ptifont 4129 \vspace*{\mtcgapbeforeheads}%
\mtcgapbeforeheads 4130 {\parindent \z@ \centering \ptifont #1\par \nobreak
\mtcgapafterheads 4131 \vskip \mtcgapafterheads\hbox{}
4132 }}%
4133 }

```

```

\l@pti By default, titles are on left:
\do@ptitc
\df@ptitc 4134 \let\do@ptitc\l@pti \let\df@ptitc\l@pti
\do@ptilf 4135 \let\do@ptilf\l@pti \let\df@ptilf\l@pti
\df@ptilf 4136 \let\do@ptilt\l@pti \let\df@ptilt\l@pti
\do@ptilt
\df@ptilt

```

9.48 The ptc@verse environment

ptc@verse Each parttoc is placed inside a ptc@verse environment. This environment is analog to the standard verse environment and hence defined via two commands: \ptc@verse and \endptc@verse. As it is a list environment, we first define (in a local way) \, then call \list{} and set some dimensions like \itemsep, \itemindent, \listparindent, \centercr, \itemindent, \partopsep, \topsep. \parsep is set to zero if the tight option is active (this reduces the spacing between the lines). \parskip is set to zero if the k-tight option is active (this reduces the spacing between the lines). Both margins are set to \itemindent. \endptc@verse terminates the list and discourages a page break. The \listparindent ptc@verse environment has an argument which is an horizontal offset (a command like \topsep \ptcoffset).

```

\partopsep 4137 \def\ptc@verse#1{\let\=\@centercr
\list{}{}%
\ptcindent 4139 \topsep=\lex \itemsep=\z@ \itemindent=\z@
\iftightmtc 4140 \listparindent=\itemindent \partopsep=\z@
\ifktightmtc 4141 \leftmargin=\ptcindent \rightmargin=\leftmargin

```

```

4142 \iftightmtc \parsep=\z@ \fi
4143 \ifktightmtc \parskip=\z@ \fi
4144 \addtolength{\leftmargin}{+#1}
4145 \addtolength{\rightmargin}{-#1}
4146 }%
4147 \item[]{}
4148 \def\endptc@verse{\nopagebreak[4]\endlist}

```

9.49 The part level mini-tables: `\parttoc`, `\partlof`, and `\partlot`

`\parttoc` These commands are essentially similar to the `\minitoc` command, except that they should
`\partlof` be placed after a `\part` command to produce a parttoc, a partlof or a partlot, and the format-
`\partlot` ting is different and depends on the availability of the `\chapter` command (for the fonts and
the horizontal rules). The code is very similar. The `\partlof` and `\partlot` commands
are siblings of the `\parttoc` command. Note that `\parttoc`, `\partlof` and `\partlot`
use page styles, because `\beforepart...` and `\afterpart...` commands imply usually
a `\clear[double]page` command, and hence `\markboth{...}{...}` must be called.

9.49.1 The `\parttoc` command

`\parttoc` This command must be used after `\part` if you need a parttoc (no automatic parttoc). First,
`\parttoc@` `\parttoc` detects the presence of its optional argument, and uses its default value, d, if it is
`\@ifnextchar` missing. Then, `\parttoc@` is called with the effective position as argument:

```

4149 \def\parttoc{\@ifnextchar[\parttoc@]{\parttoc@d}}

```

`\parttoc@` The `\parttoc@` macro does the real work. It first sets the flag `\if@parttoc@used@` (for
`\if@parttoc@used@` a consistency hint) and checks if long extensions are used or not (to create the name of the
`\if@longextensions@` parttoc file):

```

\@tocfile
\Thepart 4150 \def\parttoc@[#1]{%
4151 \global\@parttoc@used@true
4152 \if@longextensions@
4153 \def\@tocfile{ptc\Thepart}%
4154 \else
4155 \def\@tocfile{P\Thepart}%
4156 \fi

```


`\mtc@CkFile` Then, we check the presence of the parttoc file and give a warning if it is not here:

```

\if@mtc@FE
\@tocfile 4157      \mtc@CkFile{\jobname.\@tocfile}
           4158      \if@mtc@FE
           4159      \mtcPackageInfo[I0006]{minitoc}%
           4160      {\jobname.\@tocfile\space is empty}
           4161      \@mtc@empty@parttoc@true
           4162      \else

```

`\beforeparttoc` If the parttoc file is present, we can insert it, but we must add some presentation code: first, `\beforeparttoc`, of course:

```

4163      \beforeparttoc

```

`\mtc@markboth` If `\chapter` is defined, we just set the page marks with the parttoc title and set the page style:

```

\@mkboth
\thispageparttocstyle 4164      \@ifundefined{chapter}{}{%
\MakeUppercase 4165      \global\let\mtc@markboth\markboth \global\let\@mkboth\markboth
\ptctitle 4166      \thispageparttocstyle
4167      \mtc@markboth{\MakeUppercase{\ptctitle}}{\MakeUppercase{\ptctitle}}}%

```

`\do@ptitc` A samepage environment is begun, then the argument is treated to set the position of the parttoc title. If the title string is empty, this forces the positionning.

```

\@pti
\@npti
\@cpti 4168      \relax\begin{samepage}%
\@lpti 4169      \if #1e\let\do@ptitc\@e@pti
\@rpti 4170      \else\if #1n\let\do@ptitc\@n@pti
\@dfpti 4171      \else\if #1c\let\do@ptitc\@c@pti
\mtc@CkStr 4172      \else\if #1l\let\do@ptitc\@l@pti
\ptctitle 4173      \else\if #1r\let\do@ptitc\@r@pti
\if@mtc@FE 4174      \else\if #1d\let\do@ptitc\@df@ptitc
4175      \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi\fi
samepage 4176      \mtc@CkStr{\ptctitle}\if@mtc@FE \let\do@ptitc\@e@pti\relax\fi

```

`\raggedright` We adjust some formatting parameters and avoid a page break between the title and the parttoc, then we set the font:

```

\parskip
\ptcfont
4177      \raggedright \reset@font\ptcfont \parskip=\z@ \parindent=\z@%
4178      \nopagebreak[4]\kern-0.8\baselineskip\nopagebreak[4]%
4179      \par\noindent \nopagebreak[4]%

```

`\ptc@rule` The parttoc title is set in a tabular environment (to inhibit a page break between the title and the top rule), with a rule at its bottom if necessary. This rule is an `\hline`. It is the top rule of the parttoc.

```

\columnwidth
\ptifont
\do@ptitc 4180      \ifx\ptc@rule\relax
\mtc@v 4181      \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
\ptctitle 4182      \reset@font\ptifont\do@ptitc{\mtc@v\ptctitle}\\
\hline 4183      \end{tabular}%
4184      \else
4185      \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
4186      \reset@font\ptifont\do@ptitc{\mtc@v\ptctitle}\\ \hline
4187      \end{tabular}%
4188      \fi

```

`\mtc@zrule` Then, we adjust the position close the top rule and set the indentation and some formatting parameters:

```

\mtc@BBR
\ptcindent
4189      \nopagebreak[4]\null\leavevmode\mtc@zrule\\*[-\baselineskip]\mtc@BBR
4190      \leftmargin\ptcindent \rightmargin\ptcindent
4191      \itemindent=\z@ \labelwidth=\z@ \labelsep=\z@ \listparindent=\z@

```

`ptc@verse` We enter in a `ptc@verse` environment to format the parttoc. The toc depth is forced (locally) to `parttocdepth`. A little trick is necessary to adjust the position. A blank line is necessary to avoid a negative indentation.

```

\c@parttocdepth
\mtc@BBR 4192      \begin{ptc@verse}{\ptc@offset}\c@tocdepth=\c@parttocdepth%
4193      \leavevmode\\ \mtc@BBR\vskip -.5\baselineskip

```

`\ptc@pgno` If the contents lines must have no numbers, we replace the macro `\@dottedtocline` with its undotted version. For chapter-level entries, we must invoke `\l@chapter` ignoring the page number argument. A hook (redefinissable command) is added, and the formatting settings coming from `\mtcsetformat` are activated via `\ptc@setform`. Then the parttoc file is inserted, followed by a strut, and the `ptc@verse` environment is terminated. The “open” and “close” features are called just before and after the insertion of the mini-table file.

```

\closeparttoc
\@tocfile 4194 \begingroup
\mtc@strut 4195 \makeatletter
ptc@verse 4196 \@ifundefined{ptc@pgno}%
4197      {\let\@dottedtocline\@undottedtocline}{}
4198      \@ifundefined{ptc@pgno}%
4199      {\let\l@chapter@SVPN\l@chapter%
4200      \def\l@chapter##1##2{\l@chapter@SVPN{##1}{\hbox{}}}}{}
4201      \@filesfalse\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
4202      \ptc@setform
4203      \openparttoc
4204      \input{\jobname.\@tocfile}%
4205      \closeparttoc

```

```

4206 \vspace{-1ex} \vspace{-1\baselineskip}
4207 \leavevmode\mtc@strut
4208 \global\@nobreakfalse\endgroup
4209 \end{ptc@verse}%

```

```

\ptc@rule The final part is just to add the bottom rule, if necessary, a possible page break (if \chapter
\mtc@zrule is not defined), and \afterparttoc.
samepage
\afterparttoc 4210 \kernafterparttoc
4211 \nopagebreak[4]\ptc@rule\null\leavevmode\%
4212 \vskip-1.0\baselineskip\mtc@zrule\end{samepage}%
4213 \par\@ifundefined{chapter}{\pagebreak[1]\vspace*{-1ex}}%
4214 \afterparttoc\fi}%

```

9.49.2 The \partlof command

`\partlof` This command must be used after `\part` if you need a partlof (no automatic partlof). First, `\partlof@` detects the presence of its optional argument, and uses its default value, `d`, if it is missing. Then, `\partlof@` is called with the effective position as argument:

```

4215 \def\partlof{\@ifnextchar[\partlof@]{\partlof@d}}

```

`\partlof@` The `\partlof@` macro does the real work. It first sets the flag `\if@partlof@used@` (for a consistency hint) and checks if long extensions are used or not (to create the name of the partlof file):

```

\@tocfile
\Thepart 4216 \def\partlof@[#1]{%
4217 \global\@partlof@used@true
4218 \if@longextensions@%
4219 \def\@tocfile{plf\Thepart}%
4220 \else
4221 \def\@tocfile{G\Thepart}%
4222 \fi

```

`\mtc@CkFile` Then, we check the presence of the partlof file and give a warning if it is not here:

```

\if@mtc@FE
\@tocfile 4223 \mtc@CkFile{\jobname.\@tocfile}
4224 \if@mtc@FE
4225 \mtcPackageInfo[I0006]{minitoc}%
4226 {\jobname.\@tocfile\space is empty}
4227 \@mtc@empty@partlof@true
4228 \else

```

I0006

`\beforepartlof` If the partlof file is present, we can insert it, but we must add some presentation code: first, `\beforepartlof`, of course:

```
4229      \beforepartlof
```

`\mtc@markboth` If `\chapter` is defined, we just set the page marks with the partlof title and set the page style:
`\@mkboth`

```
\thispagepartlofstyle 4230      \@ifundefined{chapter}{}%
\MakeUppercase 4231      {\global\let\mtc@markboth\markboth
\plftitle 4232      \global\let\@mkboth\markboth
4233      \thispagepartlofstyle
4234      \mtc@markboth{\MakeUppercase{\plftitle}}{\MakeUppercase{\plftitle}}%
4235      }%
```

`\do@ptilf` A `samepage` environment is begun, then the argument is treated to set the position of the partlof title. If the title string is empty, this forces the positionning.

```
\e@pti
\n@pti
\c@pti 4236      \relax\begin{samepage}%
\l@pti 4237      \if #1e\let\do@ptilf\e@pti
\r@pti 4238      \else\if #1n\let\do@ptilf\n@pti
\df@pti 4239      \else\if #1c\let\do@ptilf\c@pti
\mtc@CkStr 4240      \else\if #1l\let\do@ptilf\l@pti
\plftitle 4241      \else\if #1r\let\do@ptilf\r@pti
\if@mtc@FE 4242      \else\if #1d\let\do@ptilf\df@ptilf
samepage 4243      \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi\fi
4244      \mtc@CkStr{\plftitle}\if@mtc@FE \let\do@ptilf\e@pti\relax\fi
```

`\raggedright` We adjust some formatting parameters and avoid a page break between the title and the parttoc, then we set the font:

```
\parskip
\plffont
4245      \raggedright
4246      \parskip=\z@%
4247      \reset@font\plffont%
```

`\plf@rule` The parttoc title is set in a tabular environment (to inhibit a page break between the title and the top rule), with a rule at its bottom if necessary. This rule is an `\hline`. It is the top rule of the partlof.

```
\ptifont
\do@ptilf 4248      \parindent=\z@%
\mtc@v 4249      \nopagebreak[4]%
\plftitle 4250      \kern-0.8\baselineskip\nopagebreak[4]%
\hline 4251      \par\noindent
4252      \ifx\plf@rule\relax
4253      \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
4254      \reset@font\ptifont\do@ptilf{\mtc@v\plftitle}\\
```

```

4255      \end{tabular}%
4256      \else
4257      \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
4258      \reset@font\ptifont\do@ptilf{\mtc@v\plftitle}\\ \hline
4259      \mtc@hstrut\\
4260      \end{tabular}%
4261      \fi

```

\mtc@zrule Then, we adjust the position under the top rule and set the indentation and some formatting parameters:
 \mtc@BBR
 \ptcindent

```

4262      \nopagebreak[4]\null\leavevmode\mtc@zrule\\*[-\baselineskip]\mtc@BBR
4263      \leftmargin\ptcindent \rightmargin\ptcindent
4264      \itemindent=\z@\labelwidth=\z@%
4265      \labelsep=\z@\listparindent=\z@%

```

ptc@verse We enter in a ptc@verse environment to format the partlof. If necessary, the toc depth is forced (locally) to partlofdepth. A little trick is necessary to adjust the position. A blank line is necessary to avoid a negative indentation.
 \plfoffset
 \mtc@BBR

```

4266      \begin{ptc@verse}{\plfoffset}%
4267      \@ifundefined{c@lofdepth}{}%
4268      {\c@lofdepth=\c@partlofdepth
4269      \ifnum\c@lofdepth<1\relax\c@lofdepth=1\fi}
4270      \leavevmode\\ \mtc@BBR\vskip -.5\baselineskip

```

\plf@pgno If the contents lines must have no numbers, we replace the macro \@dottedtocline with its
 \@dottedtocline undotted version. A hook is added, and the formatting settings coming from \mtcsetformat
 \@undottedtocline are activated via \plf@setform. Then the partlof file is inserted, followed by a strut, and
 \mtc@hook@beforeinputfile the ptc@verse environment is terminated. The “open” and “close” features are called just
 \plf@setform before and after the insertion of the mini-table file.

```

\openpartlof
\closepartlof 4271 \begingroup
  \@tocfile 4272 \makeatletter
  \mtc@strut 4273 \@ifundefined{plf@pgno}%
  ptc@verse 4274 {\let\@dottedtocline\@undottedtocline}%
  4275 \@filesfalse\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
  4276 \plf@setform
  4277 \openpartlof
  4278 \@input{\jobname.\@tocfile}%
  4279 \closepartlof
  4280 \vspace{-1ex} \vspace{-1\baselineskip}
  4281 \leavevmode\mtc@strut
  4282 \global\@nbreakfalse\endgroup
  4283 \end{ptc@verse}%

```

```

\plf@rule The final part is just to add the bottom rule, if necessary, a possible page break (if \chapter
\mtc@zrule is not defined), and \afterpartlof. The blank line (\\) is essential.
samepage
\afterpartlof 4284 \kernafterpartlof
4285 \nopagebreak[4]\plf@rule\null\leavevmode\\%
4286 \vskip-1.0\baselineskip\mtc@zrule\end{samepage}%
4287 \par\@ifundefined{chapter}{\pagebreak[1]\vspace*{-1ex}}%
4288 \afterpartlof\fi}

```

9.49.3 The \partlot command

\partlot This command must be used after \part if you need a partlot (no automatic partlot). First, \partlot@ detects the presence of its optional argument, and uses its default value, d, if it is missing. Then, \partlot@ is called with the effective position as argument:

```
4289 \def\partlot{\@ifnextchar[{\partlot@}{\partlot@d}}
```

```

\partlot@ The \partlot@ macro does the real work. It first sets the flag \if@partlot@used@ (for a
\if@partlot@used@ consistency hint) and checks if long extensions are used or not (to create the name of the partlot
\if@longextensions@ file):
\@tocfile
\Thepart 4290 %
4291 \def\partlot@[#1]{%
4292 \global\@partlot@used@true
4293 \if@longextensions@%
4294 \def\@tocfile{plt\Thepart}%
4295 \else
4296 \def\@tocfile{U\Thepart}%
4297 \fi

```

\mtc@CkFile Then, we check the presence of the partlot file and give a warning if it is not here:

I0006

```

\if@mtc@FE
\@tocfile 4298 \mtc@CkFile{\jobname.\@tocfile}
4299 \if@mtc@FE
4300 \mtcPackageInfo[I0006]{minitoc}%
4301 {\jobname.\@tocfile\space is empty}
4302 \@mtc@empty@partlof@true
4303 \else

```

\beforepartlot If the partlot file is present, we can insert it, but we must add some presentation code: first, \beforepartlot, of course:

```
4304 \beforepartlot
```

`\mtc@markboth` If `\chapter` is defined, we just set the page marks with the partlot title and set the page style:

```

\mkboth
\thispagepartlotstyle 4305 \ifundefined{chapter}{\%
\MakeUppercase 4306 \global\let\mtc@markboth\markboth
\plttitle 4307 \global\let\mkboth\markboth
4308 \thispagepartlotstyle
4309 \mtc@markboth{\MakeUppercase{\plttitle}}{\MakeUppercase{\plttitle}}%
4310 }%
```

`\do@ptilt` A samepage environment is begun, then the argument is treated to set the position of the partlot title. If the title string is empty, this forces the positioning.

```

\@pti
\nc@pti 4311 \relax\begin{samepage}%
\l@pti 4312 \if #1e\let\do@ptilt\@pti
\r@pti 4313 \else\if #1n\let\do@ptilt\nc@pti
\df@pti 4314 \else\if #1c\let\do@ptilt\c@pti
\mtc@CkStr 4315 \else\if #1l\let\do@ptilt\l@pti
\plttitle 4316 \else\if #1r\let\do@ptilt\r@pti
\if@mtc@FE 4317 \else\if #1d\let\do@ptilt\df@ptilt
samepage 4318 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi\fi
4319 \mtc@CkStr{\plttitle}\if@mtc@FE \let\do@ptilt\@pti\relax\fi
```

`\raggedright` We adjust some formatting parameters and avoid a page break between the title and the partlot, then we set the font:

```

\pltfont
4320 \raggedright
4321 \parskip=\z@%
4322 \reset@font\pltfont%
4323 \parindent=\z@%
4324 \nopagebreak[4]%
4325 \kern-0.8\baselineskip\nopagebreak[4]%
4326 \par\noindent
```

`\plt@rule` The partlot title is set in a tabular environment (to inhibit a page break between the title and the top rule), with a rule at its bottom if necessary. This rule is an `\hline`. It is the top rule of the partlot.

```

\ptifont
\do@ptilt 4327 \ifx\plt@rule\relax
\mtc@v 4328 \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
\plttitle 4329 \reset@font\ptifont\do@ptilt{\mtc@v\plttitle}\\
\hline 4330 \end{tabular}%
4331 \else
4332 \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
4333 \reset@font\ptifont\do@ptilt{\mtc@v\plttitle}\\ \hline
4334 \mtc@hstrut\\
4335 \end{tabular}%
4336 \fi
```

`\mtc@zrule` Then, we adjust the position under the top rule and set the indentation and some formatting
`\mtc@BBR` parameters:
`\ptcindent`

```

4337      \nopagebreak[4]\null\leavevmode\mtc@zrule\\*[-\baselineskip]\mtc@BBR
4338      \leftmargin\ptcindent \rightmargin\ptcindent
4339      \itemindent=\z@\labelwidth=\z@%
4340      \labelsep=\z@\listparindent=\z@%
```

`ptc@verse` We enter in a `ptc@verse` environment to format the parttoc. If necessary, the toc depth is
`\pltoffset` forced (locally) to `partlotdepth`. A little trick is necessary to adjust the position.
`\mtc@BBR`

```

4341      \begin{ptc@verse}{\pltoffset}%
4342      \ifundefined{c@lotdepth}{}%
4343      {\c@lotdepth=\c@partlotdepth
4344       \ifnum\c@lotdepth<1\relax\c@lotdepth=1\fi}
4345      \leavevmode\\ \mtc@BBR\vskip -.5\baselineskip
```

`\plt@pgno` If the contents lines must have no numbers, we replace the macro `\@dottedtocline` with its
`\@dottedtocline` undotted version. A hook is added, and the formatting settings coming from `\mtcsetformat`
`\@undottedtocline` are activated via `\plt@setform`. Then the partlot file is inserted, followed by a strut, and
`\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile` the `ptc@verse` environment is terminated. The “open” and “close” features are called just
`\plt@setform` before and after the insertion of the mini-table file.
`\openpartlot`

```

\closepartlot 4346 \begingroup
\@tocfile 4347 \makeatletter
\mtc@strut 4348 \ifundefined{plt@pgno}%
ptc@verse 4349 {\let\@dottedtocline\@undottedtocline}{}
4350 \@filesfalse\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
4351 \plt@setform
4352 \openpartlot
4353 \@input{\jobname.\@tocfile}5
4354 \closepartlot
4355 \vspace{-1ex} \vspace{-1\baselineskip}
4356 \leavevmode\mtc@strut
4357 \global\@nbreakfalse\endgroup
4358 \end{ptc@verse}%
```

`\ptc@rule` The final part is just to add the bottom rule, if necessary, a possible page break (if `\chapter`
`\mtc@zrule` is not defined), and `\afterpartlot`. The blank line (`\`) is essential.
`samepage`

```

\afterpartlot 4359 \kernafterpartlot
4360 \nopagebreak[4]\plt@rule\null\leavevmode\\%
4361 \vskip-1.0\baselineskip\mtc@zrule\end{samepage}%
4362 \par\ifundefined{chapter}{\pagebreak[1]\vspace*{-1ex}}%
4363 \afterpartlot\fi}
```


9.50 Auxiliary commands for printing parttocs

`\@dottedtocline` The following auxiliary commands are used in the printing of parttocs. Note that `\l@xpart` uses a huge depth to inhibit the printing of its contents line (except if you cheat). These commands are similar to `\l@subsection`, only the arguments have been altered:

```

\l@xpart
\l@pchapter
\l@psect
\pchapter 4364 \def\l@xpart{\@dottedtocline{\@M}{1.0em}{2.3em}}
\psect    4365 \def\l@pchapter{\@dottedtocline{1}{1.0em}{2.3em}}
          4366 \def\l@psect{\@dottedtocline{2}{1.0em}{2.3em}}
          4367 \def\pchapter{pchapter}
          4368 \def\psect{psect}

```

9.51 Patching the `\part` command, continued

`\sv@part` We patch both branches of the `\part` command: `\@part` (unstarred `\part`) and `\@spart` (`\part*`). We add the incrementation of the `ptc` counter to both branches. In the unstarred branch, we add `xpart` entries in the TOC, the LOF and the LOT. In the starred branch, we add a `\partbegin` line in the TOC. This command is just a marker and does nothing real (`\relax`).

```

\sv@spart
\mtc@svpart
\@part
\addtocontents
\sv@spart
\ptc@spart
\@spart 4369 \let\sv@part\mtc@svpart
\stepcounter 4370 \def\@part[#1]#2{\sv@part[#1]#2}\relax
\partbegin 4371 \addcontentsline{lof}{xpart}{#1}%
\partend   4372 \addcontentsline{lot}{xpart}{#1}%
          4373 \addcontentsline{toc}{xpart}{#1}%
          4374 \stepcounter{ptc}}
          4375 \let\sv@spart\@spart
          4376 \def\@spart{\stepcounter{ptc}\sv@spart}
          4377 \let\ptc@spart\@spart
          4378 \def\@spart{\addtocontents{toc}{\protect\partend}\ptc@spart}
          4379 \def\@spart{\addtocontents{toc}{\protect\partbegin}\ptc@spart}
          4380 \let\partend\relax
          4381 \let\partbegin\relax

```

9.52 The `\doparttoc` command and its siblings

`\doparttoc` The `\doparttoc` command works like the `\dominitoc` command, `\dopartlof` like `\dominilof` and `\dopartlot` like `\dominilot`.

`\@doparttoc` The `\doparttoc` command extracts information from the `.toc` file and creates the `.ptc`(N)
`\PTC@next` files (`.ptc` becomes `.P` on MS-DOS).
`\setcounter`

```
4382 \def\@doparttoc#1{%
4383   \makeatletter
4384   \setcounter{ptc}{0}%
4385   \PTC@next#1.toc\relax\}\setcounter{ptc}{0}}%
```

`\@dopartlof` The `\dopartlof` command extracts information from the `.lof` file and creates the `.plf`(N)
`\PLF@next` files (`.plf` becomes `.G` on MS-DOS).
`\setcounter`

```
4386 \def\@dopartlof#1{%
4387   \makeatletter
4388   \setcounter{ptc}{0}%
4389   \PLF@next#1.lof\relax\}\setcounter{ptc}{0}}%
```

`\@dopartlot` The `\dopartlot` command extracts information from the `.lot` file and creates the `.plt`(N)
`\PLT@next` files (`.plt` becomes `.U` on MS-DOS).
`\setcounter`

```
4390 \def\@dopartlot#1{%
4391   \makeatletter
4392   \setcounter{ptc}{0}%
4393   \PLT@next#1.lot\relax\}\setcounter{ptc}{0}}%
```

`\doparttoc` We define the user macros, who detect the optional argument:
`\dopartlof`

```
\dopartlot 4394 \def\doparttoc{\@ifnextchar[{\doparttoc@}{\doparttoc@[1]}}
\@ifnextchar 4395 \def\dopartlof{\@ifnextchar[{\dopartlof@}{\dopartlof@[1]}}
4396 \def\dopartlot{\@ifnextchar[{\dopartlot@}{\dopartlot@[1]}}
```

`\doparttoc@` We treat the optional argument of `\doparttoc` (it becomes the default position for titles of
`\if@mtc@hints@` parttocs) and flag this macro as used; a hint detects any spurious invocation.
`\if@doparttoc@used@`

```
\@mtc@hints@given@true 4397 \def\doparttoc@[#1]{%
  \df@ptitc 4398 \if@mtc@hints@
    \e@pti 4399   \if@doparttoc@used@
    \n@pti 4400   \mtcPackageInfo[I0045]{minitoc(hints)}%
    \c@pti 4401   {The \string\doparttoc \space command
    \l@pti 4402   \MessageBreak
    \r@pti 4403   has been invoked more than once
    4404   \MessageBreak}
    4405   \global\@mtc@hints@given@true
    4406   \fi
    4407   \fi
    4408   \global\@doparttoc@used@true
    4409   \if #1e\let\df@ptitc\e@pti%
```

```

4410 \else\if #1n\let\df@ptitc\n@pti%
4411 \else\if #1c\let\df@ptitc\c@pti%
4412 \else\if #1l\let\df@ptitc\l@pti%
4413 \else\if #1r\let\df@ptitc\r@pti%
4414 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi%
4415 \@@doparttoc}

```

\dopartlof@ We treat the optional argument of \dopartlof (it becomes the default position for titles of partlofs) and flag this macro as used, a hint detects any spurious invocation.

I0045

```

\dopartlof@
\if@dopartlof@used@
\if@mtc@hints@
\@mtc@hints@given@true 4416 \def\dopartlof@[#1]{%
\df@ptilf 4417 \if@mtc@hints@
\@pti 4418 \if@dopartlof@used@
\n@pti 4419 \mtcPackageInfo[I0045]{minitoc(hints)}%
\c@pti 4420 {The \string\dopartlof \space command
\l@pti 4421 \MessageBreak
\r@pti 4422 has been invoked more than once
4423 \MessageBreak}
4424 \global\@mtc@hints@given@true
4425 \fi
4426 \fi
4427 \global\@dopartlof@used@true
4428 \if #1e\let\df@ptilf\@pti%
4429 \else\if #1n\let\df@ptilf\n@pti%
4430 \else\if #1c\let\df@ptilf\c@pti%
4431 \else\if #1l\let\df@ptilf\l@pti%
4432 \else\if #1r\let\df@ptilf\r@pti%
4433 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi%
4434 \@@dopartlof}

```

\dopartlot@ We treat the optional argument of \dopartlot (it becomes the default position for titles of partlofs) and flag this macro as used; a hint detects any spurious invocation.

I0045

```

\dopartlot@
\if@mtc@hints@
\@mtc@hints@given@true
\if@dopartlot@used@ 4435 \def\dopartlot@[#1]{%
\df@ptilt 4436 \if@mtc@hints@
\@pti 4437 \if@dopartlot@used@
\n@pti 4438 \mtcPackageInfo[I0045]{minitoc(hints)}%
\c@pti 4439 {The \string\dopartlot \space command
\l@pti 4440 \MessageBreak
\r@pti 4441 has been invoked more than once
4442 \MessageBreak}
4443 \global\@mtc@hints@given@true
4444 \fi
4445 \fi
4446 \global\@dopartlot@used@true
4447 \if #1e\let\df@ptilt\@pti%
4448 \else\if #1n\let\df@ptilt\n@pti%
4449 \else\if #1c\let\df@ptilt\c@pti%
4450 \else\if #1l\let\df@ptilt\l@pti%
4451 \else\if #1r\let\df@ptilt\r@pti%

```

```
4452 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi%
4453 \@@dopartlot}
```

\@@doparttoc These macros invoke the @dopart... commands to create the mini-table file, then close the
 \@@dopartlof file descriptor.

```
\@@dopartlot
  \tf@mtc 4454 \def\@@doparttoc{\@doparttoc{\jobname}\immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}
          4455 \def\@@dopartlof{\@dopartlof{\jobname}\immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}
          4456 \def\@@dopartlot{\@dopartlot{\jobname}\immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}
```

9.52.1 Processing macros for the parttocs

\PTC@next Processing the next entry in the list and remove it from the head of the list:

```
\PTC@list
\PTC@loop 4457 \def\PTC@next#1\relax#2\{\%
          4458 \edef\PTC@list{#2}%
          4459 \PTC@loop{#1}}
```

\PTC@toc Check if the list is empty:

```
\PTC@list
\PTC@explist 4460 \def\PTC@toc{%
          4461 \ifx\PTC@list@empty\else\expandafter\PTC@explist\fi}
```

\PTC@contentsline The macro \PTC@contentsline analyses the lines read from the TOC file and detects interesting keywords. If \part is found, the ptc counter is incremented and a new partlof file is created.

I0033

```
\tf@mtc
\ptcname 4462 \def\PTC@contentsline#1#2#3#4{%
\MTC@WriteContentsLine 4463 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\part
          4464 \stepcounter{ptc}%
          4465 \if@longextensions%
          4466 \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
          4467 {Writing\space\jobname.ptc\theptc@gobble}%
          4468 \def\ptcname{\jobname.ptc\theptc}%
          4469 \else
          4470 \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
          4471 {Writing\space\jobname.P\theptc@gobble}%
          4472 \def\ptcname{\jobname.P\theptc}%
          4473 \fi
          4474 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
          4475 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\ptcname
          4476 \fi
          4477 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starpart\relax
          4478 \stepcounter{ptc}%
```

`\if@longextensions@` We test if long or short extensions are used, to build the name of the mini-table file, then open
`\ptcname` it:

I0033

```

4479 \if@longextensions@%
4480 \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
4481 {Writing\space\jobname.ptc\theptc}%
4482 \def\ptcname{\jobname.ptc\theptc}%
4483 \else
4484 \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
4485 {Writing\space\jobname.P\theptc}%
4486 \def\ptcname{\jobname.P\theptc}%
4487 \fi
4488 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
4489 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\ptcname
4490 \fi

```

`\mtc@toks` The token register `\mtc@toks` is used to pass the entry to `\MTC@WriteContentsline`:

```

4491 \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode #2}%

```

`\MTC@WriteContentsline` Now, we filter the relevant contents lines; this code extracts and writes info for chapters,
`\chapter` sections, etc.:

```

\pchapter
\section 4492 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\chapter
\coffee 4493 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcC}{#3}{#4}%
\subsection 4494 \fi
\subsubsection 4495 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\appendix
\paragraph 4496 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcC}{#3}{#4}%
\subparagraph 4497 \fi
4498 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\pchapter
4499 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcC}{#3}{#4}%
4500 \fi
4501 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\section
4502 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcS}{#3}{#4}%
4503 \fi
4504 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\coffee
4505 \MTC@WriteCoffeeline{#1}{#3}%
4506 \fi
4507 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subsection
4508 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcSS}{#3}{#4}%
4509 \fi
4510 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subsubsection
4511 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcSSS}{#3}{#4}%
4512 \fi
4513 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\paragraph
4514 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcP}{#3}{#4}%
4515 \fi
4516 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subparagraph
4517 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcSP}{#3}{#4}%
4518 \fi

```

`\MTC@WriteContentsline` And for the starred sectionning commands:

```

\starchapter
\starsection 4519 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starchapter
\starsubsection 4520 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcC}{#3}{#4}%
\starsubsubsection 4521 \fi
\starparagraph 4522 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsection
\starsubparagraph 4523 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcS}{#3}{#4}%
4524 \fi
4525 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsubsection
4526 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcSS}{#3}{#4}%
4527 \fi
4528 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsubsubsection
4529 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcSSS}{#3}{#4}%
4530 \fi
4531 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starparagraph
4532 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcP}{#3}{#4}%
4533 \fi
4534 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsubparagraph
4535 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcSP}{#3}{#4}%
4536 \fi
4537 }
```

`\PTC@explist` The loop to read the lines of the TOC file; expands the list of entries and call `\PTC@next` to process the first one:

`\PTC@next`

`\PTC@list`

```
4538 \def\PTC@explist{\expandafter\PTC@next\PTC@list\}
```

`\PTC@loop` If an entry is found, loop through line by line, looking for interesting entries. Otherwise, process the next entry in the list.

`\PTC@toc`

`\PTC@read`

```

4539 \def\PTC@loop#1{\openin\@inputcheck#1\relax
4540 \ifeof\@inputcheck
4541 \mtcPackageWarning[W0013]{minitoc}%
4542 {No file #1
4543 \MessageBreak
4544 PARTTOCS NOT PREPARED}%
4545 \expandafter\PTC@toc
4546 \else
4547 \mtcPackageInfo[I0025]{minitoc}%
4548 {PREPARING PARTTOCS FROM #1}%
4549 \expandafter\PTC@read\fi}
```

`\PTC@read` Read the next entry of the .toc file.

`\PTC@line`

```

4550 \def\PTC@read{%
4551 \read\@inputcheck to\PTC@line
```

W0013

I0025

\PTC@test The make sure that \PTC@test has enough arguments:
 \PTC@line

```
4552 \expandafter\PTC@test\PTC@line. . . . .\PTC@%
4553 }%
```

\PTC@test The \PTC@test macro finds the “interesting” commands in the TOC file, mainly to delimit parts:

\PTC@contentsline Look at the first token of the line. If it is an interesting entry, process it. If it is \@input, add
 \mtc@string the file to the list. Otherwise ignore. Go around the loop if not at end of file. Finally process
 \PTC@list the next file in the list.

```
\PTC@toc
\PTC@read 4554 \long\def\PTC@test#1#2#3#4#5#6\PTC@{%
\partend 4555 \ifx#1\contentsline
4556 \let\mtc@string\string
4557 \PTC@contentsline{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}%
4558 \let\mtc@string\relax
4559 \else\ifx#1\@input
4560 \edef\PTC@list{\PTC@list#2\relax}%
4561 \else\ifx#1\partend
4562 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
4563 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\jobname.mtc
4564 \else\ifx#1\partbegin
4565 \addtocounter{ptc}{-1}%
4566 \fi\fi\fi\fi
4567 \ifeof\@inputcheck\expandafter\PTC@toc
4568 \else\expandafter\PTC@read\fi}%

```

9.52.2 Processing macros for the partlofs

\PLF@next Processing the next entry in the list and remove it from the head of the list:

```
\PLF@list
\PLF@loop 4569 \def\PLF@next#1\relax#2\{\%
4570 \edef\PLF@list{#2}%
4571 \PLF@loop{#1}}
```

\PLF@lof Check if the list is empty:

```
\PLF@list
\PLF@explist 4572 \def\PLF@lof{%
4573 \ifx\PLF@list\@empty\else\expandafter\PLF@explist\fi}
```

```

\PLF@contentsline The macro \PLF@contentsline analyses the lines read from the LOF file and detects inter-
  \part           esting keywords. If \part is found, the ptc counter is incremented and a new partlof file is
  \theptc         created.
  \tf@mtc
  \plfname 4574 \def\PLF@contentsline#1#2#3#4{%
\PLF@WriteContentsLine 4575   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\xpart
  4576     \stepcounter{ptc}%

```

```

\if@longextensions@ We test if long or short extensions are used, to build the name of the mini-table file, then open
  \plfname it:

```

I0033

```

4577   \if@longextensions@%
4578     \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
4579     {Writing\space\jobname.plf\theptc}%
4580     \def\plfname{\jobname.plf\theptc}%
4581   \else
4582     \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
4583     {Writing\space\jobname.G\theptc}%
4584     \def\plfname{\jobname.G\theptc}%
4585   \fi
4586   \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
4587   \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\plfname
4588   \fi

```

```

  \figure The token register \mtc@toks is used to pass the entry to \MTC@WriteContentsline. Now,
\subfigure we filter the relevant contents lines:
  \mtc@toks
\MTC@WriteContentsline 4589   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\figure
4590     \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode#2}%
4591     \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{plf}{#3}{#4}%
4592   \fi
4593   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subfigure
4594     \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode#2}%
4595     \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{plfs}{#3}{#4}%
4596   \fi
4597 }

```

```

\PLF@explist The loop to read the lines of the LOF file; expands the list of entries and call \PLF@next to
  \PLF@next process the first one:
  \PLF@list
4598 \def\PLF@explist{\expandafter\PLF@next\PLF@list\}

```

```

\PLF@loop If an entry is found, loop through line by line, looking for interesting entries. Otherwise,
  \PLF@lof process the next entry in the list.
\PLF@read

```

W0011

I0035


```

4599 \def\PLF@loop#1{\openin\@inputcheck#1\relax
4600   \ifeof\@inputcheck
4601     \mtcPackageWarning[W0011]{minitoc}%
4602     {No file #1
4603       \MessageBreak
4604       PARTLOFS NOT PREPARED}%
4605   \expandafter\PLF@lof
4606   \else
4607     \mtcPackageInfo[I0035]{minitoc}%
4608     {PREPARING PARTLOFS FROM #1}%
4609   \expandafter\PLF@read\fi}

```

\PLF@read Read the next entry of the .lof file.

\PLF@line

```

4610 \def\PLF@read{%
4611   \read\@inputcheck to\PLF@line

```

\PLF@test The make sure that \PLF@test has enough arguments:

\PLF@line

```

4612   \expandafter\PLF@test\PLF@line. . . . .\PLF@%
4613   }%

```

\PLF@test The \PLF@test macro finds the “interesting” commands in the LOF file, mainly to delimit parts:

```

\PLF@contentsline Look at the first token of the line. If it is an interesting entry, process it. If it is \@input, add
\mtc@string the file to the list. Otherwise ignore. Go around the loop if not at end of file. Finally process
\PLF@list the next file in the list.
\PLF@lof
\PLF@read 4614 \long\def\PLF@test#1#2#3#4#5#6\PLF@{%
\partend 4615   \ifx#1\contentsline
4616     \let\mtc@string\string
4617     \PLF@contentsline{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}%
4618     \let\mtc@string\relax
4619   \else\ifx#1\@input
4620     \edef\PLF@list{\PLF@list#2\relax}%
4621   \else\ifx#1\partend
4622     \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
4623     \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\jobname.mtc
4624   \else\ifx#1\partbegin
4625     \addtocounter{ptc}{-1}%
4626     \fi\fi\fi\fi
4627   \ifeof\@inputcheck\expandafter\PLF@lof
4628   \else\expandafter\PLF@read\fi}%

```

9.52.3 Processing macros for the partlots

`\PLT@next` Processing the next entry in the list and remove it from the head of the list:
`\PLT@list`
`\PLT@loop` 4629 `\def\PLT@next#1\relax#2\{\%`
 4630 `\edef\PLT@list{#2}%`
 4631 `\PLT@loop{#1}}`

`\PLT@lot` Check if the list is empty:
`\PLT@list`
`\PLT@explist` 4632 `\def\PLT@lot{%`
 4633 `\ifx\PLT@list\@empty\else\expandafter\PLT@explist\fi}`

`\PLT@contentsline` The macro `\PLT@contentsline` analyses the lines read from the LOT file and detects interesting keywords. If `\part` is found, the ptc counter is incremented and a new partlot file is created.
`\part`
`\theptc`
`\tf@mtc`
`\plname` 4634 `\def\PLT@contentsline#1#2#3#4{%`
`\PLT@WriteContentsLine` 4635 `\expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\xpart`
 4636 `\stepcounter{ptc}%`

`\if@longextensions@` We test if long or short extensions are used, to build the name of the mini-table file, then open it:
`\plname`

I0033

4637 `\if@longextensions@%`
 4638 `\mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%`
 4639 `{Writing\space\jobname.plt\theptc}%`
 4640 `\def\plname{\jobname.plt\theptc}%`
 4641 `\else`
 4642 `\mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%`
 4643 `{Writing\space\jobname.U\theptc}%`
 4644 `\def\plname{\jobname.U\theptc}%`
 4645 `\fi`
 4646 `\immediate\closeout\tf@mtc`
 4647 `\immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\plname`
 4648 `\fi`

`\table` The token register `\mtc@toks` is used to pass the entry to `\MTC@WriteContentsline`. Now,
`\subtable` we filter the relevant contents lines:
`\mtc@toks`
`\MTC@WriteContentsline` 4649 `\expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\table`
 4650 `\mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode#2}%`
 4651 `\MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{plt}{#3}{#4}%`
 4652 `\fi`
 4653 `\expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subtable`

```

4654 \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode#2}%
4655 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{pltS}{#3}{#4}%
4656 \fi
4657 }

```

\PLT@explist The loop to read the lines of the LOT file; expands the list of entries and call \PLT@next to process the first one:

\PLT@list

```

4658 \def\PLT@explist{\expandafter\PLT@next\PLT@list\}

```

\PLT@loop If an entry is found, loop through line by line, looking for interesting entries. Otherwise, process the next entry in the list.

\PLT@lot

\PLT@read

```

4659 \def\PLT@loop#1{\openin\@inputcheck#1\relax
4660 \ifeof\@inputcheck
4661 \mtcPackageWarning[W0012]{minitoc}%
4662 {No file #1
4663 \MessageBreak
4664 PARTLOTS NOT PREPARED}%
4665 \expandafter\PLT@lot
4666 \else
4667 \mtcPackageInfo[I0038]{minitoc}%
4668 {PREPARING PARTLOTS FROM #1}%
4669 \expandafter\PLT@read\fi}

```

W0012
I0038

\PLT@read Read the next entry of the .lot file.

\PLT@line

```

4670 \def\PLT@read{%
4671 \read\@inputcheck to\PLT@line

```

\PLT@test The make sure that \PLT@test has enough arguments:

\PLT@line

```

4672 \expandafter\PLT@test\PLT@line.....\PLT@%
4673 }%

```

\PLT@test The \PLT@test macro finds the “interesting” commands in the LOT file, mainly to delimit parts:

\PLT@contentsline Look at the first token of the line. If it is an interesting entry, process it. If it is \@input, add the file to the list. Otherwise ignore. Go around the loop if not at end of file. Finally process the next file in the list.

\mtc@string

\PLT@list

\PLT@lot

\PLT@read

\partend

```

4674 \long\def\PLT@test#1#2#3#4#5#6\PLT@{%
4675   \ifx#1\contentsline
4676     \let\mtc@string\string
4677     \PLT@contentsline{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}%
4678     \let\mtc@string\relax
4679   \else\ifx#1\@input
4680     \edef\PLT@list{\PLT@list#2\relax}%
4681   \else\ifx#1\partend
4682     \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
4683     \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\jobname.mtc
4684   \else\ifx#1\partbegin
4685     \addtocounter{ptc}{-1}%
4686     \fi\fi\fi\fi
4687   \ifeof\@inputcheck\expandafter\PLT@lot
4688   \else\expandafter\PLT@read\fi}%

```

End of the part level stuff (begun in section 9.45 on page 324):

```

4689 }%

```

9.53 Depth counters for sectlofs and sectlots

`\AtBeginDocument` If the counters `lofdepth` and `lotdepth` are defined, we create new counters for the depths of the corresponding mini-tables: `sectlofdepth` and `sectlotdepth`. These counters are initialized to 2. This is done after the loading of the packages, in an `\AtBeginDocument` block:

```

\setcounter
4690 \AtBeginDocument{%
4691   \@ifundefined{c@lofdepth}{}%
4692   {\newcounter{sectlofdepth}\setcounter{sectlofdepth}{2}}%
4693   \@ifundefined{c@lotdepth}{}%
4694   {\newcounter{sectlotdepth}\setcounter{sectlotdepth}{2}}%
4695 }%

```

9.54 Section-level commands

`\if@mtc@chapter@undef@` The section-level commands are defined only if `\chapter` is *not* defined, hence in article-like document classes, and only if `\section` is defined:

```

4696 \if@mtc@chapter@undef@ \if@mtc@section@def@

```

W0005

```

\firstsectionis We define the obsolete command \firstsectionis (with its harmless warning), the counter
\adjuststc stc of secttocs, the \adjuststc, \decrementstc and \incrementstc commands, the
\decrementstc depth counter secttocdepth and its default value 2 (to include at least the subsections),
\incrementstc the horizontal rule \stc@rule (rule before/after secttoc/sectlof/sectlot), the indentation (both
\stc@rule sides) \stcindent for the secttocs (with its default values).
\stcindent
\columnwidth 4697 \def\firstsectionis#1{\mtcPackageWarning[W0005]{minitoc}%
4698 {\string\firstsectionis \space is an obsolete (ignored)
4699 \MessageBreak
4700 command}%
4701 \@firstsectionis@used@true}
4702 \newcounter{stc}\setcounter{stc}{0}%
4703 \newcommand{\adjuststc}[1][1]{\addtocounter{stc}{#1}}%
4704 \def\decrementstc{\addtocounter{stc}{-1}}%
4705 \def\incrementstc{\addtocounter{stc}{+1}}%
4706 \newcounter{secttocdepth}\setcounter{secttocdepth}{2}%
4707 \def\stc@rule{\rule[3p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}%
4708 \newlength\stcindent \stcindent=24\p@

```

9.55 Fonts commands for secttocs and co.

```

\stcfont We define the fonts commands for the secttocs, sectlofs and sectlots and their titles:
\stcSSfont
\stcSSSfont 4709 \def\stcfont{\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries} % secttoc
\stcPfont 4710 \def\stcSSfont{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries} % (subsections)
\stcSPfont 4711 \let\stcSSfont\stcfont % (subsubsections)
\slffont 4712 \let\stcPfont\stcfont % (paragraphs)
\slfSfont 4713 \let\stcSPfont\stcfont % (subparagraphs)
\sltfont 4714 \let\slffont\stcfont % sectlof (figures)
\sltSfont 4715 \let\slfSfont\stcfont % sectlof (subfigures)
\stifont 4716 \let\sltfont\stcfont % sectlot (tables)
4717 \let\stifont\stcfont % sectlot (subtables)
4718 \def\stifont{\large\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries} % titles

```

9.56 Internal macros for title positioning

```

\l@sti Some internal macros for title positioning, from the optional arguments of \dosecttoc and
\c@sti \secttoc commands (and siblings). Centering, flushleft, flushright or empty titles (with a
\r@sti vertical correction for empty titles, from Frank MITTELBACH):
\e@sti
\n@sti 4719 \def\c@sti#1{\null\hfill #1\hfill\null}
4720 \def\l@sti#1{\null #1\hfill\null}
4721 \def\r@sti#1{\null\hfill #1\null}
4722 \def\e@sti#1{\vspace{-\baselineskip}}
4723 \def\n@sti#1{\vspace{-\baselineskip}}

```

```

\do@stitlec By default, titles are flushleft.
\df@stitlec
\do@stilf 4724 \let\do@stitlec\l@sti
\df@stilf 4725 \let\df@stitlec\l@sti
\do@stilt 4726 \let\do@stilf\l@sti
\df@stilt 4727 \let\df@stilf\l@sti
\l@sti 4728 \let\do@stilt\l@sti
4729 \let\df@stilt\l@sti

```

9.57 The stc@verse environment

`stc@verse` The `stc@verse` environment is a very simple list environment, analog to the standard `verse` environment. Some formatting parameters are adjusted. The `tight/loose` and `k-tight/k-loose` package options are honored. The `stc@verse` environment has an argument which is an horizontal offset (a command like `\stcoffset`).

```

4730 \def\stc@verse#1{\let\=\@centercr
4731 \list{}}{%
4732 \itemsep=\z@ \itemindent=\z@ \topsep=lex
4733 \listparindent=\itemindent \partopsep=\z@
4734 \iftightmtc \parsep=\z@ \fi
4735 \ifktightmtc \parskip=\z@ \fi
4736 \leftmargin=\stcindent \rightmargin=\leftmargin
4737 \addtolength{\leftmargin}{+#1}%
4738 \addtolength{\rightmargin}{-#1}%
4739 }%
4740 \item[]}%
4741 \def\endstc@verse{\nopagebreak[4]\endlist}

```

9.58 The \secttoc, \sectlof, and \sectlot commands

These three commands are very similar.

9.58.1 The \secttoc command

`\secttoc` The `\secttoc` command must be used after `\section` if you need a `secttoc` (no automatic `secttoc`). Its code is similar to the code of `\minitoc` (but simpler). First, `\secttoc` detects the presence of its optional argument, and uses its default value, `d`, if it is missing. Then, `\secttoc@` is called with the effective position as argument:

```

4742 \def\secttoc{\@ifnextchar[{\secttoc@}{\secttoc@d}}

```

`\secttoc@` The `\secttoc@` macro does the real work. It first sets the flag `\if@secttoc@used@` (for
`\if@secttoc@used@` a consistency hint) and checks if long extensions are used or not (to create the name of the
`\if@longextensions@` secttoc file):

```
\@tocfile
\thestic 4743 \def\secttoc@[#1]{%
4744 \global\@secttoc@used@true
4745 \if@longextensions@%
4746 \def\@tocfile{stc\thestic}%
4747 \else
4748 \def\@tocfile{S\thestic}%
4749 \fi
```

`\mtc@CkFile` Then, we check the presence and the emptiness of the secttoc file and give a warning if it is
`\if@mtc@FE` not here or is empty:

I0006

```
\@tocfile
4750 \mtc@CkFile{\jobname.\@tocfile}
4751 \if@mtc@FE
4752 \mtcPackageInfo[I0006]{minitoc}%
4753 {\jobname.\@tocfile\space is empty}
4754 \@mtc@empty@secttoc@true
4755 \else
```

`\beforesecttoc` If the secttoc file is present and not empty, we can insert it, but we must add some presentation
`\thispagesecttocstyle` code: first, `\beforesecttoc`, of course, and the page style feature:

```
4756 \beforesecttoc
4757 \thispagesecttocstyle
```

`\do@sttc` We begin a samepage environment, then treat the positionning argument. If the title is empty,
`\e@sti` we simulate the “e” positionning.

```
\n@sti
\c@sti 4758 %% \mtc@markboth{\MakeUppercase{\stctitle}}{\MakeUppercase{\stctitle}}%
\l@sti 4759 \relax\begin{samepage}%
\r@sti 4760 \if #1e\let\do@sttc\e@sti
\df@sti 4761 \else\if #1n\let\do@sttc\n@sti
\mtc@CkStr 4762 \else\if #1c\let\do@sttc\c@sti
\stctitle 4763 \else\if #1l\let\do@sttc\l@sti
\if@mtc@FE 4764 \else\if #1r\let\do@sttc\r@sti
samepage 4765 \else\if #1d\let\do@sttc\df@sttc
4766 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi
4767 \mtc@CkStr{\stctitle}\if@mtc@FE \let\do@sttc\e@sti\relax\fi
```

`\raggedright` We adjust some formatting parameters and avoid a page break between the title and the secttoc,
`\parskip` then we set the font:
`\stcfont`

```

4768     \raggedright
4769     \parskip=\z@%
4770     \reset@font\stcfont%
4771     \parindent=\z@%
4772     \nopagebreak[4]%

```

`\stc@rule` The secttoc title is set in a tabular environment (to inhibit a page break between the title and the top rule), with a rule at its bottom if necessary. This rule is an `\hline`. It is the top rule of the secttoc.

```

\stifont
\do@sttc 4773     \kern-0.8\baselineskip\nopagebreak[4]%
\mtc@v 4774     \par\noindent
\stctitle 4775     \nopagebreak[4]%
\hline 4776     \ifx\stc@rule\relax
4777         \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
4778         \reset@font\stifont\do@sttc{\mtc@v\stctitle}\\
4779         \end{tabular}%
4780     \else
4781     \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
4782     \reset@font\stifont\do@sttc{\mtc@v\stctitle}\\\hline
4783     \end{tabular}%
4784     \fi

```

`\mtc@zrule` Then, we adjust the position under the top rule and set the indentation and some formatting parameters:

```

\mtc@BBR
\stcindent
4785     \nopagebreak[4]\null\leavevmode\mtc@zrule\\\mtc@BBR
4786     \leftmargin\stcindent \rightmargin\stcindent
4787     \itemindent=\z@\labelwidth=\z@%
4788     \labelsep=\z@\listparindent=\z@%

```

`stc@verse` We enter in a `stc@verse` environment to format the secttoc. The toc depth is forced (locally) to `secttocdepth`. A little trick is necessary to adjust the position.

```

\stc@tocdepth
\c@secttocdepth 4789     \begin{stc@verse}{\stc@offset}\c@tocdepth=\c@secttocdepth%
\mtc@BBR 4790     \leavevmode\\\mtc@BBR\vskip -.5\baselineskip

```

`\stc@pgno` If the contents lines must have no numbers, we replace the macro `\@dottedtocline` with its undotted version. A hook is added, and the formatting settings coming from `\mtcsetformat` are activated via `\stc@setform`. Then the secttoc file is inserted, followed by a strut, and the `stc@verse` environment is terminated. The “open” and “close” features are called just before and after the insertion of the mini-table file.

```

\opensecttoc
\closesecttoc 4791 \begingroup
\@tocfile 4792     \makeatletter
\mtc@strut 4793     \stc@setform%
stc@verse

```



```

4794 \ifundefined{stc@pgno}%
4795 {\let\@dottedtocline\@undottedtocline}{}
4796 \@filesfalse\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
4797 \stc@setform%
4798 \opensecttoc
4799 \@input{\jobname.\@tocfile}%
4800 \closesecttoc
4801 \vspace{-1ex} \vspace{-\baselineskip}
4802 \leavevmode\mtc@strut
4803 \global\@nobreakfalse\endgroup
4804 \end{stc@verse}%

```

```

\stc@rule The final part is just to add the bottom rule, if necessary, a possible page break and
\mtc@zrule \aftersecttoc.
samepage
\aftersecttoc 4805 \kernaftersecttoc
4806 \nopagebreak[4]\stc@rule\@null\leavevmode\%
4807 \vskip-1.0\baselineskip\mtc@zrule\end{samepage}%
4808 \par\pagebreak[1]\vspace*{-1ex}\aftersecttoc\fi}%

```

9.58.2 The \sectlof command

\sectlof The \sectlof command must be used after \section if you need a sectlof (no automatic sectlof). Its code is similar to the code of \minilof (but simpler). First, \sectlof detects the presence of its optional argument, and uses its default value, d, if it is missing. Then, \sectlof@ is called with the effective position as argument:

```

4809 \def\sectlof{\ifnextchar[\sectlof@]{\sectlof@[d]}}

```

\sectlof@ The \sectlof@ macro does the real work. It first sets the flag \if@sectlof@used@ (for a consistency hint) and checks if long extensions are used or not (to create the name of the sectlof file):

```

\@tocfile
\thetc 4810 \def\sectlof@[#1]{%
4811 \global\@sectlof@used@true
4812 \if@longextensions@
4813 \def\@tocfile{slf\thetc}%
4814 \else
4815 \def\@tocfile{H\thetc}%
4816 \fi

```

`\mtc@CkFile` Then, we check the presence and the emptiness of the sectlof file and give a warning if it is not
`\if@mtc@FE` here or is empty:
`\@tocfile`

```
4817      \mtc@CkFile{\jobname.\@tocfile}
4818      \if@mtc@FE
4819      \mtcPackageInfo[I0006]{minitoc}%
4820          {\jobname.\@tocfile\space is empty}
4821      \@mtc@empty@sectlof@true
4822      \else
```

`\beforesectlof` If the sectlof file is present and not empty, we can insert it, but we must add some presentation
`\thispagesectlofsty` code: first, `\beforesectlof`, of course, and the page style feature:

```
4823      \thispagesectlofsty
4824      %%      \mtc@markboth{\MakeUppercase{\slftitle}}{\MakeUppercase{\slftitle}}%
4825      \beforesectlof
```

`\do@stilf` We begin a `samepage` environment, then treat the positionning argument. If the title is empty,
`\e@sti` we simulate the “e” positionning.

```
\n@sti
\c@sti 4826      \relax\begin{samepage}%
\l@sti 4827      \if #1e\let\do@stilf\e@sti
\r@sti 4828      \else\if #1n\let\do@stilf\n@sti
\df@sti 4829      \else\if #1c\let\do@stilf\c@sti
\mtc@CkStr 4830      \else\if #1l\let\do@stilf\l@sti
\slftitle 4831      \else\if #1r\let\do@stilf\r@sti
\if@mtc@FE 4832      \else\if #1d\let\do@stilf\df@stilf
4833      \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi\fi
samepage 4834      \mtc@CkStr{\slftitle}\if@mtc@FE \let\do@stilf\e@sti\relax\fi
```

`\raggedright` We adjust some formatting parameters and avoid a page break between the title and the sectlof,
`\parskip` then we set the font:

```
\slffont
4835      \raggedright
4836      \parskip=\z@%
4837      \reset@font\slffont%
4838      \parindent=\z@%
4839      \nopagebreak[4]%
```

`\slf@rule` The sectlof title is set in a `tabular` environment (to inhibit a page break between the title and
`tabular` the top rule), with a rule at its bottom if necessary. This rule is an `\hline`. It is the top rule of
`\stifont` the sectlof.

```
\columnwidth
\do@stilf 4840      \kern-0.8\baselineskip\nopagebreak[4]%
\mtc@v 4841      \par\noindent
\slftitle
\hline
```

```

4842 \ifx\slf@rule\relax
4843 \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
4844 \reset@font\stifont\do@stilf{\mtc@v\slftitle}\\
4845 \end{tabular}%
4846 \else
4847 \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
4848 \mtc@hstrut
4849 \reset@font\stifont\do@stilf{\mtc@v\slftitle}\\\hline
4850 \end{tabular}%
4851 \fi

```

\mtc@zrule Then, we adjust the position under the top rule and set the indentation and some formatting parameters:
 \mtc@BBR
 \stcindent

```

4852 \nopagebreak[4]\null\leavevmode\mtc@zrule\\\mtc@BBR
4853 \leftmargin\stcindent \rightmargin\stcindent
4854 \itemindent=\z@\labelwidth=\z@%
4855 \labelsep=\z@\listparindent=\z@%

```

stc@verse We enter in a stc@verse environment to format the sectlof. The toc depth is forced (locally) to sectlofdepth. A little trick is necessary to adjust the position.
 \slfoffset
 \c@tocdepth
 \c@sectlofdepth 4856 \begin{stc@verse}{\slfoffset}%
 \mtc@BBR 4857 \@ifundefined{c@lofdepth}{}%
 4858 {\c@lofdepth=\c@sectlofdepth
 4859 \ifnum\c@lofdepth<1\relax\c@lofdepth=1\fi}
 4860 \leavevmode\\\mtc@BBR\vskip -.5\baselineskip

\slf@pgno If the contents lines must have no numbers, we replace the macro \@dottedtocline with its undotted version. A hook is added, and the formatting settings coming from \mtcsetformat
 \@dottedtocline are activated via \slf@setform. Then the sectlof file is inserted, followed by a strut, and
 \@undottedtocline the stc@verse environment is terminated. The “open” and “close” features are called just
 \mtc@hook@beforeinputfile before and after the insertion of the mini-table file.
 \slf@setform
 \opensectlof

```

\closesectlof 4861 \begingroup
  \@tocfile 4862 \makeatletter
\mtc@strut 4863 \@ifundefined{slf@pgno}%
  stc@verse 4864 {\let\@dottedtocline\@undottedtocline}{}
  4865 \@filesfalse\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
  4866 \slf@setform%
  4867 \opensectlof
  4868 \@input{\jobname.\@tocfile}%
  4869 \closesectlof
  4870 \global\@nbreakfalse\endgroup
  4871 \end{stc@verse}%

```

```

\stc@rule The final part is just to add the bottom rule, if necessary, a possible page break and
\mtc@zrule \aftersectlof. The blank line (\) is essential.
samepage
\aftersectlof 4872 \kernaftersectlof
4873 \nopagebreak[4]\slf@rule\null\leavevmode\%
4874 \vskip-1.0\baselineskip\mtc@zrule\end{samepage}%
4875 \par\pagebreak[1]\vspace*{-1ex}\aftersectlof\fi}%

```

9.58.3 The \sectlot command

\sectlot The \sectlot command must be used after \section if you need a sectlot (no automatic sectlot). Its code is similar to the code of \minilot (but simpler). First, \sectlot detects the presence of its optional argument, and uses its default value, d, if it is missing. Then, \sectlot@ is called with the effective position as argument:

```
4876 \def\sectlot{\ifnextchar[\sectlot@]\sectlot@d}}
```

```

\sectlot@ The \sectlot@ macro does the real work. It first sets the flag \if@sectlot@used@ (for a
\if@sectlot@used@ consistency hint) and checks if long extensions are used or not (to create the name of the sectlot
\if@longextensions@ file):
\@tocfile
\thestc 4877 \def\sectlot@[#1]{%
4878 \global\@sectlot@used@true
4879 \if@longextensions@%
4880 \def\@tocfile{slt\thestc}%
4881 \else
4882 \def\@tocfile{I\thestc}%
4883 \fi

```

\mtc@CkFile Then, we check the presence and the emptiness of the sectlot file and give a warning if it is not here or is empty:

I0006

```

\@tocfile
4884 \mtc@CkFile{\jobname.\@tocfile}
4885 \if@mtc@FE
4886 \mtcPackageInfo[I0006]{minitoc}%
4887 {\jobname.\@tocfile\space is empty}
4888 \@mtc@empty@sectlot@true
4889 \else

```

\beforesectlot If the sectlot file is present and not empty, we can insert it, but we must add some presentation code: first, \beforesectlot, of course, and the page style feature:

```

4890 \thispagesectlotstyle
4891 %% \mtc@markboth{\MakeUppercase{\slttitle}}{\MakeUppercase{\slttitle}}%
4892 \beforesectlot

```

```

\do@stilt We begin a samepage environment, then treat the positionning argument. If the title is empty,
\e@sti we simulate the “e” positionning.
\n@sti
\c@sti 4893 \relax\begin{samepage}%
\l@sti 4894 \if #1e\let\do@stilt\e@sti
\r@sti 4895 \else\if #1n\let\do@stilt\n@sti
\df@sti 4896 \else\if #1c\let\do@stilt\c@sti
\mtc@CkStr 4897 \else\if #1l\let\do@stilt\l@sti
\sltttitle 4898 \else\if #1r\let\do@stilt\r@sti
\if@mtc@FE 4899 \else\if #1d\let\do@stilt\df@stilt
samepage 4900 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi\fi
4901 \mtc@CkStr{\sltttitle}\if@mtc@FE \let\do@stilt\e@sti\relax\fi

\raggedright We adjust some formatting parameters and avoid a page break between the title and the sectlot,
\parskip then we set the font:
\sltfont
4902 \raggedright
4903 \parskip=\z@%
4904 \reset@font\sltfont%
4905 \parindent=\z@%
4906 \nopagebreak[4]%

\stc@rule The sectlot title is set in a tabular environment (to inhibit a page break between the title and
tabular the top rule), with a rule at its bottom if necessary. This rule is an \hline. It is the top rule of
\stifont the sectlot.
\columnwidth
\do@stilt 4907 \kern-0.8\baselineskip\nopagebreak[4]%
\mtc@v 4908 \par\noindent
\sltttitle 4909 \ifx\sltt@rule\relax
\hline 4910 \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
4911 \reset@font\stifont\do@stilt{\mtc@v\sltttitle}\\
4912 \end{tabular}%
4913 \else
4914 \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
4915 \mtc@hstrut
4916 \reset@font\stifont\do@stilt{\mtc@v\sltttitle}\\
4917 \end{tabular}%
4918 \fi

\mtc@zrule Then, we adjust the position under the top rule and set the indentation and some formatting
\mtc@BBR parameters:
\stcindent
4919 \nopagebreak[4]\null\leavevmode\mtc@zrule\\\mtc@BBR
4920 \leftmargin\stcindent \rightmargin\stcindent
4921 \itemindent=\z@\labelwidth=\z@%
4922 \labelsep=\z@\listparindent=\z@%

```

```

stc@verse We enter in a stc@verse environment to format the sectlot. The toc depth is forced (locally)
\c@tocdepth to sectlotdepth. A little trick is necessary to adjust the position.
\c@sectlotdepth
\mtc@BBR 4923 \begin{stc@verse}{\sltoffset}%
4924 \ifundefined{c@lotdepth}{}%
4925 {\c@lotdepth=\c@sectlotdepth
4926 \ifnum\c@lotdepth<1\relax\c@lotdepth=1\fi}
4927 \leavevmode\\mtc@BBR\vskip -.5\baselineskip

\slt@pgno If the contents lines must have no numbers, we replace the macro \@dottedtocline with its
\@dottedtocline undotted version. A hook is added, and the formatting settings coming from \mtcsetformat
\@undottedtocline are activated via \slt@setform. Then the sectlot file is inserted, followed by a strut, and
\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile the stc@verse environment is terminated. The “open” and “close” features are called just
\slt@setform before and after the insertion of the mini-table file.
\opensectlot
\closesectlot 4928 \begingroup
\@tocfile 4929 \makeatletter
\mtc@strut 4930 \ifundefined{slt@pgno}%
stc@verse 4931 {\let\@dottedtocline\@undottedtocline}%
4932 \gdef\thetc{\arabic{stc}}
4933 \@fileswfalse\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
4934 \slt@setform%
4935 \opensectlot
4936 \@input{\jobname.\@tocfile}%
4937 \closesectlot
4938 \global\@nbreakfalse\endgroup
4939 \end{stc@verse}%

\stc@rule The final part is just to add the bottom rule, if necessary, a possible page break and
\mtc@zrule \aftersectlot.
samepage
\aftersectlot 4940 \kernaftersectlof
4941 \nopagebreak[4]\slt@rule\null\leavevmode\\%
4942 \vskip-1.0\baselineskip\mtc@zrule\end{samepage}%
4943 \par\pagebreak[1]\vspace*{-1ex}\aftersectlot\fi%
```

9.59 Auxiliary internal commands, section level

```

\l@xsect We define auxiliary commands, used for the mini-tables and as delimiters in the TOC file (and
\l@xsection LOF and LOT files). The depth of xsect is huge to inhibit the printing of its contents line
\@dottedtocline (except if you cheat).
\l@schapter
\l@xsect 4944 \def\l@xsect{\@dottedtocline{\@M}{1.0em}{2.3em}}
\l@xsection 4945 \def\l@xsection{\@dottedtocline{\@M}{1.0em}{2.3em}}
\l@schapter 4946 \def\l@schapter{\@dottedtocline{1}{1.0em}{2.3em}}
4947 \def\xsect{xsect} \def\xsection{xsection} \def\schapter{schapter}
```

9.60 Patching the `\section` command (continued)

`\@sect` We patch the both branches of the `\section` command: `\@sect` for the unstarred version and
`\addcontentsline` `\@ssect` for the starred version. First, for the unstarred version (`\@sect`), we add a `xsect`
 contents line in the LOF and in the LOT. The test `\ifnum #2=1` restricts the action to the
 section level macros (because `\@sect` is also used by `\subsection` and below, which have
 no mini-tables).

```
4948 \let\sv@sect\@sect
4949 \gdef\@sect#1#2#3#4#5#6[#7]#8{%
4950 \ifnum #2=1\relax
4951   \addcontentsline{lof}{xsect}{#7}%
4952   \addcontentsline{lot}{xsect}{#7}%
4953 \fi
4954 \sv@sect{#1}{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}{#6}[#7]{#8}}
```

`\section` If it is a section (unstarred or starred via `\starsection`), we add a `xsect` entry in the LOF
`\starsection` and in the LOT.
`\addcontentsline`

```
4955 \def\@sect#1#2#3#4#5#6[#7]#8{
4956 \expandafter
4957 \ifx\csname #1\endcsname\section\relax
4958   \addcontentsline{lof}{xsect}{#7}%
4959   \addcontentsline{lot}{xsect}{#7}%
4960 \fi
4961 \ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsection\relax
4962   \addcontentsline{lof}{xsect}{#7}%
4963   \addcontentsline{lot}{xsect}{#7}%
4964 \fi
```

`\@svsec` And the remainder of the section header formatting:
`\refstepcounter`
`\@tempskipa` 4965 `\ifnum #2>\c@secnumdepth\relax`
`\@hangfrom` 4966 `\let\@svsec\@empty`
`\addcontentsline` 4967 `\else`
`\numberline` 4968 `\refstepcounter{#1}%`
`\@svsechd` 4969 `\edef\@svsec{\csname the#1\endcsname\hskip 1em}%`
`\@xsect` 4970 `\fi`
 4971 `\@tempskipa #5\relax`
 4972 `\ifdim \@tempskipa>\z@`
 4973 `\begingroup #6\relax`
 4974 `\@hangfrom{\hskip #3\relax\@svsec}%`
 4975 `{\interlinepenalty \@M #8\par}%`
 4976 `\endgroup`
 4977 `\csname #1mark\endcsname{#7}\addcontentsline`
 4978 `{toc}{#1}{\ifnum #2>\c@secnumdepth\relax`
 4979 `\else`
 4980 `\protect\numberline{\csname the#1\endcsname}%`

```

4981             \fi
4982             #7}%
4983 \else
4984   \def\@svsechd{#6\hskip #3\relax
4985   \@svsec #8\csname #1mark\endcsname
4986   {#7}\addcontentsline
4987   {toc}{#1}{\ifnum #2>\c@secnumdepth\relax
4988           \else
4989             \protect\numberline{\csname the#1\endcsname}
4990           \fi
4991   #7}}%
4992 \fi
4993 \@xsect{#5}}

```

`\@sect` Then we patch the unstarred branch (`\@sect`). We define also the delimiting commands `\sectbegin` and `\sectend` commands. We do not add `\sectbegin` if it is a subsection or deeper.

```

\stc@sect
\addtocontents 4994 \let\stc@sect\@sect
4995 \def\@sect#1#2#3#4#5#6[#7]#8{%
4996   \ifnum #2<1 \relax
4997   \addtocontents{toc}{\protect\sectbegin}
4998   \fi
4999   \stc@sect{#1}{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}{#6}[#7]{#8}}
5000 \let\sectend\relax
5001 \let\sectbegin\relax

```

9.61 The `\dosecttoc` command and siblings

The `\dosecttoc` command is very similar to `\dominitoc`.

`\dosecttoc` The `\dosecttoc` command extracts information from the `.toc` file and creates the `.stc(N)` files (`.stc` becomes `.S` on MS-DOS).
`\@dosecttoc`
`\STC@next`

```

5002 \def\@dosecttoc#1{%
5003   \makeatletter
5004   \setcounter{stc}{0}
5005   \STC@next#1.toc\relax\\}\setcounter{stc}{0}}

```

`\dosectlof` The `\dosectlof` command extracts information from the `.lof` file and creates the `.slf(N)` files (`.slf` becomes `.H` on MS-DOS).
`\@dosectlof`
`\SLF@next`

```

5006 \def\@dosectlof#1{%
5007   \makeatletter
5008   \setcounter{stc}{0}
5009   \SLF@next#1.lof\relax\\}\setcounter{stc}{0}}

```


`\dosectlot` The `\dosectlot` command extracts information from the `.lot` file and creates the `.slt`(N) files (`.slt` becomes `.V` on MS-DOS).
`\@dosectlot`
`\PLT@next`

```
5010 \def\dosectlot#1{%
5011   \makeatletter
5012   \setcounter{stc}{0}
5013   \SLT@next#1.lot\relax\}\setcounter{stc}{0}}
```

`\dosecttoc` We define the user-level macros, who detect the optional argument:
`\dosectlof`
`\dosectlot` 5014 `\def\dosecttoc{\@ifnextchar[{\dosecttoc@}{\dosecttoc@[1]}}`
`\@ifnextchar` 5015 `\def\dosectlof{\@ifnextchar[{\dosectlof@}{\dosectlof@[1]}}`
5016 `\def\dosectlot{\@ifnextchar[{\dosectlot@}{\dosectlot@[1]}}`

`\dosecttoc@` We treat the optional argument of `\dosecttoc` (it becomes the default position for titles of
`\if@mtc@hints@` secttocs) and flag this macro as used; a hint detects any spurious invocation. I0045
`\@mtc@hints@given@true`

```
\if@dosecttoc@used@ 5017 \def\dosecttoc@[#1]{%
\df@stc 5018 \if@mtc@hints@
\@sti 5019   \if@dosecttoc@used@
\@sti 5020   \mtcPackageInfo[I0045]{minitoc(hints)}%
\@sti 5021   {The \string\dosecttoc \space command
\@sti 5022   \MessageBreak
\@sti 5023   has been invoked more than once
\@sti 5024   \MessageBreak}
5025   \global\@mtc@hints@given@true
5026   \fi
5027 \fi
5028 \global\@dosecttoc@used@true
5029 \if #1e\let\df@stc\@sti%
5030 \else\if #1n\let\df@stc\@n%
5031 \else\if #1c\let\df@stc\@c%
5032 \else\if #1l\let\df@stc\@l%
5033 \else\if #1r\let\df@stc\@r%
5034 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi%
5035 \@dosecttoc}
```

`\dosectlof@` We treat the optional argument of `\dosectlof` (it becomes the default position for titles of
`\if@mtc@hints@` sectlofs) and flag this macro as used; a hint detects any spurious invocation. I0045
`\@mtc@hints@given@true`

```
\if@dosectlof@used@ 5036 \def\dosectlof@[#1]{%
\df@stilf 5037 \if@mtc@hints@
\@sti 5038   \if@dosectlof@used@
\@sti 5039   \mtcPackageInfo[I0045]{minitoc(hints)}%
\@sti 5040   {The \string\dosectlof \space command
\@sti 5041   \MessageBreak
\@sti 5042   has been invoked more than once
\@sti 5043   \MessageBreak}
```

```

5044 \global\@mtc@hints@given@true
5045 \fi
5046 \fi
5047 \global\@dosectlof@used@true
5048 \if #1e\let\df@stilf\e@sti%
5049 \else\if #1n\let\df@stilf\n@sti%
5050 \else\if #1c\let\df@stilf\c@sti%
5051 \else\if #1l\let\df@stilf\l@sti%
5052 \else\if #1r\let\df@stilf\r@sti%
5053 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi%
5054 \@@dosectlof}

```

\dosectlot@ We treat the optional argument of \dosectlot (it becomes the default position for titles of
 \if@mtc@hints@ sectlofs) and flag this macro as used; a hint detects any spurious invocation.

I0045

```

\@mtc@hints@given@true
\if@dosectlot@used@ 5055 \def\dosectlot@[#1]{%
\df@stilt 5056 \if@mtc@hints@
\e@sti 5057 \if@dosectlot@used@
\n@sti 5058 \mtcPackageInfo[I0045]{minitoc(hints)}%
\c@sti 5059 {The \string\dosectlot \space command
\l@sti 5060 \MessageBreak
\r@sti 5061 has been invoked more than once
5062 \MessageBreak}
5063 \global\@mtc@hints@given@true
5064 \fi
5065 \fi
5066 \global\@dosectlot@used@true
5067 \if #1e\let\df@stilt\e@sti%
5068 \else\if #1n\let\df@stilt\n@sti%
5069 \else\if #1c\let\df@stilt\c@sti%
5070 \else\if #1l\let\df@stilt\l@sti%
5071 \else\if #1r\let\df@stilt\r@sti%
5072 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi%
5073 \@@dosectlot}

```

\@@dosecttoc These macros invoke the \@dosect... commands to create the mini-table file, then close the
 \@@dosectlof file descriptor.
 \@@dosectlot

```

\tf@mtc 5074 \def\@@dosecttoc{\@dosecttoc{\jobname}\immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}
5075 \def\@@dosectlof{\@dosectlof{\jobname}\immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}
5076 \def\@@dosectlot{\@dosectlot{\jobname}\immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}

```

\STC@next Processing the next entry in the list and remove it from the head of the list:

\STC@list

```

\STC@loop 5077 \def\STC@next#1\relax#2\{\%
5078 \edef\STC@list{#2}%
5079 \STC@loop{#1}}

```

```

\STC@toc    Check if the list is empty:
\STC@list
\STC@explist 5080 \def\STC@toc{%
              5081   \ifx\STC@list\@empty\else\expandafter\STC@explist\fi}

\STC@contentsline The macro \STC@contentsline analyses the lines read from the TOC file. If \section is
\section         found, the stc counter is incremented and a new secttoc file is created.
\thestc
\tf@mtc 5082 \def\STC@contentsline#1#2#3#4{%
\stcname 5083   \gdef\thestc{\arabic{stc}}%
\MTC@WriteContentsLine 5084   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\section
                    5085     \stepcounter{stc}%

\if@longextensions@ We test if long or short extensions are used, to build the name of the mini-table file, then open
\stcname it:

5086   \if@longextensions@%
5087     \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
5088     {Writing\space\jobname.stc\thestc}%
5089     \def\stcname{\jobname.stc\thestc}%
5090   \else
5091     \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
5092     {Writing\space\jobname.S\thestc}%
5093     \def\stcname{\jobname.S\thestc}%
5094   \fi
5095   \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
5096   \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\stcname
5097   \fi

\mtc@toks The token register \mtc@toks is used to pass the entry to \MTC@WriteContentsline or
\MTC@WriteCoffeeline \MTC@WriteCoffeeline. Now, we filter the relevant contents lines:
\MTC@WriteContentsline
\coffee 5098   \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode #2}%
\subsection 5099   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\coffee
\subsubsection 5100     \MTC@WriteCoffeeline{#1}{#3}%
\paragraph 5101   \fi
\subparagraph 5102   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subsection
                    5103     \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{stcSS}{#3}{#4}%
                    5104   \fi
                    5105   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subsubsection
                    5106     \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{stcSSS}{#3}{#4}%
                    5107   \fi
                    5108   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\paragraph
                    5109     \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{stcP}{#3}{#4}%
                    5110   \fi
                    5111   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subparagraph
                    5112     \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{stcSP}{#3}{#4}%
                    5113   \fi

```

`\starsection` A starred section terminates the current section and creates a new secttoc file:

I0033

```

\stepcounter
  \thetc 5114 \ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsection
  \arabic 5115 \stepcounter{stc}%
\if@longextensions@ 5116 \gdef\thetc{\arabic{stc}}
  \stcname 5117 \if@longextensions@%
  \closeout 5118 \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
  \openout 5119 {Writing\space\jobname.stc\thetc}%
  5120 \def\stcname{\jobname.stc\thetc}%
  5121 \else
  5122 \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
  5123 {Writing\space\jobname.S\thetc}%
  5124 \def\stcname{\jobname.S\thetc}%
  5125 \fi
  5126 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
  5127 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\stcname
  5128 \fi

```

`\MTC@WriteContentsline` We process the entries for starred sectionning commands:

```

\starsubsection
\starsubsubsection 5129 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsubsubsection
  \starparagraph 5130 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{stcSS}{#3}{#4}%
\starsubparagraph 5131 \fi
  5132 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsubsubsection
  5133 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{stcSSS}{#3}{#4}%
  5134 \fi
  5135 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starparagraph
  5136 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{stcP}{#3}{#4}%
  5137 \fi
  5138 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsubparagraph
  5139 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{stcSP}{#3}{#4}%
  5140 \fi
  5141 }

```

`\STC@explist` The loop to read the lines of the TOC file; expands the list of entries and call `\STC@next` to process the first one.

`\STC@next`

`\STC@list`

```

5142 \def\STC@explist{\expandafter\STC@next\STC@list\}

```

`\STC@loop` If an entry is found, loop through line by line, looking for interesting entries. Otherwise, process the next entry in the list.

W0016

`\STC@toc`

I0026

`\STC@read`

```

5143 \def\STC@loop#1{\openin\@inputcheck#1\relax
5144 \ifeof\@inputcheck
5145 \mtcPackageWarning[W0016]{minitoc}%
5146 {No file #1
5147 \MessageBreak
5148 SECTTOCS NOT PREPARED}%

```

```

5149 \expandafter\STC@toc
5150 \else
5151 \mtcPackageInfo[I0026]{minitoc}%
5152 {PREPARING SECTTOCS FROM #1}%
5153 \expandafter\STC@read\fi}

```

\STC@read Read the next entry of the .toc file.

```

\STC@line
5154 \def\STC@read{%
5155 \read\@inputcheck to\STC@line

```

\STC@test The make sure that \STC@test has enough arguments:

```

\STC@line
5156 \expandafter\STC@test\STC@line. . . . \STC@%
5157 }%

```

\STC@test The \STC@test macro finds the “interesting” commands in the TOC file, mainly to delimit sections;

```

\mtc@string
\STC@list 5158 \long\def\STC@test#1#2#3#4#5#6\STC@{%
\STC@toc 5159 \ifx#1\contentsline
\STC@read 5160 \let\mtc@string\string
\sectend 5161 \STC@contentsline{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}%
\sectbegin 5162 \let\mtc@string\relax
5163 \else\ifx#1\@input
5164 \edef\STC@list{\STC@list#2\relax}%
5165 \else\ifx#1\sectend
5166 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
5167 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\jobname.mtc
5168 \else\ifx#1\sectbegin
5169 \addtocounter{stc}{-1}%
5170 \fi\fi\fi\fi
5171 \ifeof\@inputcheck\expandafter\STC@toc
5172 \else\expandafter\STC@read\fi}%

```

\SLF@next Processing the next entry in the list and remove it from the head of the list:

```

\SLF@list
\SLF@loop 5173 \def\SLF@next#1\relax#2\{\%
5174 \edef\SLF@list{#2}%
5175 \SLF@loop{#1}}

```

```

\SLF@lof    Check if the list is empty:
\SLF@list
\SLF@explist 5176 \def\SLF@lof{%
5177   \ifx\SLF@list\@empty\else\expandafter\SLF@explist\fi}

\SLF@contentsline The macro \SLF@contentsline analyses the lines read from the LOF file. If \section is
\section         found, the stc counter is incremented and a new sectlof file is created.
\thestc
\tf@mtc 5178 \def\SLF@contentsline#1#2#3#4{%
\slfname 5179   \gdef\thestc{\arabic{stc}}%
\MTC@WriteContentsLine 5180   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\xsect
5181     \stepcounter{stc}%

\if@longextensions@ We test if long or short extensions are used, to build the name of the mini-table file, then open
\slfname it:

5182   \if@longextensions@%
5183     \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
5184     {Writing\space\jobname.slf\thestc}%
5185     \def\slfname{\jobname.slf\thestc}%
5186   \else
5187     \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
5188     {Writing\space\jobname.H\thestc}%
5189     \def\slfname{\jobname.H\thestc}%
5190   \fi
5191   \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
5192   \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\slfname
5193   \fi

\mtc@toks The token register \mtc@toks is used to pass the entry to \MTC@WriteContentsline. Now,
\MTC@WriteContentsline we filter the relevant contents lines:
\figure
\subfigure 5194   \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode #2}%
5195   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\figure
5196     \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{slf}{#3}{#4}%
5197   \fi
5198   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subfigure
5199     \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{slfS}{#3}{#4}%
5200   \fi
5201 }

\SLF@explist The loop to read the lines of the LOF file; expands the list of entries and call \SLF@next to
\SLF@next process the first one.
\SLF@list
5202 \def\SLF@explist{\expandafter\SLF@next\SLF@list\}

```

I0033

\SLF@loop If an entry is found, loop through line by line, looking for interesting entries. Otherwise,
 \SLF@lof process the next entry in the list.
 \SLF@read

W0014
 I0036

```
5203 \def\SLF@loop#1{\openin\@inputcheck#1\relax
5204   \ifeof\@inputcheck
5205     \mtcPackageWarning[W0014]{minitoc}%
5206       {No file #1
5207         \MessageBreak
5208         SECTLOFS NOT PREPARED}%
5209     \expandafter\SLF@lof
5210   \else
5211     \mtcPackageInfo[I0036]{minitoc}%
5212       {PREPARING SECTLOFS FROM #1}%
5213     \expandafter\SLF@read\fi}
```

Read the next entry of the .lof file.

\SLF@read The make sure that \SLF@test has enough arguments:
 \SLF@test
 \SLF@line 5214 \def\SLF@read{%
 5215 \read\@inputcheck to\SLF@line
 5216 \expandafter\SLF@test\SLF@line.....\SLF@%
 5217 }%

\SLF@test The \SLF@test macro finds the “interesting” commands in the LOF file, mainly to delimit
 \SLF@contentsline sections;

```
\mtc@string
\SLF@list 5218 \long\def\SLF@test#1#2#3#4#5#6\SLF@{%
\SLF@lof 5219   \ifx#1\contentsline
\SLF@read 5220     \let\mtc@string\string
\sectend 5221     \SLF@contentsline{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}%
\sectbegin 5222     \let\mtc@string\relax
5223     \else\ifx#1\@input
5224       \edef\SLF@list{\SLF@list#2\relax}%
5225     \else\ifx#1\sectend
5226       \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
5227       \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\jobname.mtc
5228     \else\ifx#1\sectbegin
5229       \addtocounter{stc}{-1}%
5230     \fi\fi\fi\fi
5231     \ifeof\@inputcheck\expandafter\SLF@lof
5232     \else\expandafter\SLF@read\fi}%
```

\SLT@next Processing the next entry in the list and remove it from the head of the list:
 \SLT@list
 \SLT@loop 5233 \def\SLT@next#1\relax#2\{\%
 5234 \edef\SLT@list{#2}%
 5235 \SLT@loop{#1}}

```

\SLT@lot    Check if the list is empty:
\SLT@list
\SLT@explist 5236 \def\SLT@lot{%
              5237   \ifx\SLT@list\@empty\else\expandafter\SLT@explist\fi}

\SLT@contentsline The macro \SLT@contentsline analyses the lines read from the LOT file. If \section is
\section         found, the stc counter is incremented and a new sectlot file is created.
\thestc
\tf@mtc 5238 \def\SLT@contentsline#1#2#3#4{%
\sltname 5239   \gdef\thestc{\arabic{stc}}%
\MTC@WriteContentsLine 5240   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\xsect
                    5241     \stepcounter{stc}%

\if@longextensions@ We test if long or short extensions are used, to build the name of the mini-table file, then open
\sltname it:

5242   \if@longextensions@%
5243     \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
5244     {Writing\space\jobname.slt\thestc}%
5245     \def\sltname{\jobname.slt\thestc}%
5246   \else
5247     \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
5248     {Writing\space\jobname.V\thestc}%
5249     \def\sltname{\jobname.V\thestc}%
5250   \fi
5251   \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
5252   \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\sltname
5253   \fi

\mtc@toks The token register \mtc@toks is used to pass the entry to \MTC@WriteContentsline. Now,
\MTC@WriteContentsline we filter the relevant contents lines:
\table
\subtable 5254   \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode #2}%
5255   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\table
5256     \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{\sltname}{#3}{#4}%
5257   \fi
5258   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subtable
5259     \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{\sltname}{#3}{#4}%
5260   \fi
5261 }

\SLT@explist The loop to read the lines of the LOT file; expands the list of entries and call \SLT@next to
\SLT@next process the first one.
\SLT@list
5262 \def\SLT@explist{\expandafter\SLT@next\SLT@list\}

```

I0033

\SLT@loop If an entry is found, loop through line by line, looking for interesting entries. Otherwise,
 \SLT@lot process the next entry in the list.
 \SLT@read

W0015
 I0039

```
5263 \def\SLT@loop#1{\openin\@inputcheck#1\relax
5264   \ifeof\@inputcheck
5265     \mtcPackageWarning[W0015]{minitoc}%
5266       {No file #1
5267         \MessageBreak
5268         SECTLOTS NOT PREPARED}%
5269   \expandafter\SLT@lot
5270 \else
5271   \mtcPackageInfo[I0039]{minitoc}%
5272     {PREPARING SECTLOTS FROM #1}%
5273   \expandafter\SLT@read\fi}
```

Read the next entry of the .lot file.

\SLT@read The make sure that \SLT@test has enough arguments:
 \SLT@test
 \SLT@line 5274 \def\SLT@read{%
 5275 \read\@inputcheck to\SLT@line
 5276 \expandafter\SLT@test\SLT@line. . . . \SLT@%
 5277 }%

\SLT@test The \SLT@test macro finds the “interesting” commands in the LOT file, mainly to delimit
 \SLT@contentsline sections;

```
\mtc@string
\SLT@list 5278 \long\def\SLT@test#1#2#3#4#5#6\SLT@{%
\SLT@lot 5279   \ifx#1\contentsline
\SLT@read 5280     \let\mtc@string\string
\sectend 5281     \SLT@contentsline{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}%
\sectbegin 5282     \let\mtc@string\relax
5283   \else\ifx#1\@input
5284     \edef\SLT@list{\SLT@list#2\relax}%
5285   \else\ifx#1\sectend
5286     \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
5287     \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\jobname.mtc
5288   \else\ifx#1\sectbegin
5289     \addtocounter{stc}{-1}%
5290   \fi\fi\fi\fi
5291   \ifeof\@inputcheck\expandafter\SLT@lot
5292   \else\expandafter\SLT@read\fi}%
```

9.62 End of section-level commands

We terminate the *else* branch of the test `\@ifundefined{section}`, the *true* branch of the test `\@ifundefined{chapter}` and add an empty *else* branch to that test:

```
5293 \fi% end of \if@mtc@section@def@
5294 \fi% end of \if@mtc@chapter@undef@
```

9.63 The `\mtcprepare` command

```
\mtcprepare This command tests the availability of the \do... minitoc preparation commands and of the
\@ifnextchar contents files, then calls as much as possible of these preparation commands. A hint is given.
\mtcprepare@
\@ifundefined 5295 \def\mtcprepare{\@ifnextchar[\{\mtcprepare@\}\mtcprepare@[1]}}%
\IfFileExists 5296 \def\mtcprepare@[#1]{%
  \jobname 5297 \@ifundefined{part}{}{}%
  \doparttoc 5298 \IfFileExists{\jobname.toc}{\doparttoc[#1]}{}%
  \dopartlof 5299 \IfFileExists{\jobname.lof}{\dopartlof[#1]}{}%
  \dopartlot 5300 \IfFileExists{\jobname.lot}{\dopartlot[#1]}{}%
  \dominitoc 5301 }%
  \dominilof 5302 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}%
  \dominilot 5303 \@ifundefined{section}{}%
  \dosecttoc 5304 {}%
  \dosectlof 5305 \IfFileExists{\jobname.toc}{\dosecttoc[#1]}{}%
  \dosectlot 5306 \IfFileExists{\jobname.lof}{\dosectlof[#1]}{}%
  \dosectlot 5307 \IfFileExists{\jobname.lot}{\dosectlot[#1]}{}%
\mtcPackageInfo 5308 }%
5309 }{}%
5310 \IfFileExists{\jobname.toc}{\dominitoc[#1]}{}%
5311 \IfFileExists{\jobname.lof}{\dominilof[#1]}{}%
5312 \IfFileExists{\jobname.lot}{\dominilot[#1]}{}%
5313 }%
5314 \if@mtc@hints@
5315 \@mtc@hints@given@true
5316 \mtcPackageInfo[I0048]{minitoc(hints)}%
5317 {Using \string\mtcprepare\space may induce some
5318 \MessageBreak
5319 hints about the preparation commands,
5320 \MessageBreak
5321 because it invokes ALL the preparation
5322 \MessageBreak
5323 commands allowed by the document class,
5324 \MessageBreak
5325 without any previous check\@gobble}%
5326 \fi
5327 }
```

I0048

9.64 Necessary \l@... commands

\l@listof Some \l@... commands (analog to \l@section or \l@paragraph) are required to format
 \l@startpart some entries in the mini-tables, for starred sectioning commands essentially:
 \l@starchapter
 \l@starsection 5328 \@ifundefined{section}{}{\let\l@listof\l@section}
 \l@starsubsection 5329 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}{\let\l@listof\l@chapter}
 \l@starsubsubsection 5330 \@ifundefined{part}{}{\let\l@startpart\l@part}
 \l@starparagraph 5331 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}{\let\l@starchapter\l@chapter}
 \l@starsubparagraph 5332 \@ifundefined{section}{}{\let\l@starsection\l@section}
 5333 \@ifundefined{subsection}{}{\let\l@starsubsection\l@subsection}
 5334 \@ifundefined{subsubsection}{}{\let\l@starsubsubsection\l@subsubsection}
 5335 \@ifundefined{paragraph}{}{\let\l@starparagraph\l@paragraph}
 5336 \@ifundefined{subparagraph}{}{\let\l@starsubparagraph\l@subparagraph}

9.65 The horizontal rules and their default values

\columnwidth We define here the various commands to activate ou inhibit the horizontal rules in the various
 \noptcrule kinds of mini-tables. Each such command is an indirect definition of the corresponding hor-
 \nomtcrule izontal rule. The rules are .4 pt high horizontal rules. We begin with rules for mini-tables of
 \nostcrule contents.
 \ptcrule
 \ptc@rule 5337 \def\noptcrule{\let\ptc@rule\relax}
 \mtcrule 5338 \def\nomtcrule{\let\mtc@rule\relax}
 \mtc@rule 5339 \def\nostcrule{\let\stc@rule\relax}
 \stcrule 5340 \def\ptc@rule{\def\ptc@rule{\kern-3\p@ \hrule width \columnwidth \kern2.6\p@}}
 \stc@rule 5341 \def\mtc@rule{\def\mtc@rule{\kern-3\p@ \hrule width \columnwidth \kern2.6\p@}}
 5342 \def\stc@rule{\def\stc@rule{\kern-3\p@ \hrule width \columnwidth \kern2.6\p@}}
 5343 \def\ptc@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}
 5344 \def\mtc@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}
 5345 \def\stc@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}

 \columnwidth Then, the rules for mini-lists of figures:
 \noplfrule
 \nomlfrule 5346 \def\noplfrule{\let\plf@rule\relax}
 \noslfrule 5347 \def\nomlfrule{\let\mlf@rule\relax}
 \plfrule 5348 \def\noslfrule{\let\slf@rule\relax}
 \plf@rule 5349 \def\plfrule{\def\plf@rule{\kern-3\p@ \hrule width \columnwidth \kern2.6\p@}}
 \mlfrule 5350 \def\mlfrule{\def\mlf@rule{\kern-3\p@ \hrule width \columnwidth \kern2.6\p@}}
 \mlf@rule 5351 \def\slfrule{\def\slf@rule{\kern-3\p@ \hrule width \columnwidth \kern2.6\p@}}
 \slfrule 5352 \def\plf@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}
 5353 \def\mlf@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}
 \slf@rule 5354 \def\slf@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}

```

\columnwidth Then, the rules for mini-lists of tables:
\nopltrule
\nomltrule 5355 \def\nopltrule{\let\plt@rule\relax}
\nosltrule 5356 \def\nomltrule{\let\mlt@rule\relax}
\pltrule 5357 \def\nosltrule{\let\slt@rule\relax}
\plt@rule 5358 \def\pltrule{\def\plt@rule{\kern-3\p@ \hrule width \columnwidth \kern2.6\p@}}
\mltrule 5359 \def\mltrule{\def\mlt@rule{\kern-3\p@ \hrule width \columnwidth \kern2.6\p@}}
\mlt@rule 5360 \def\sltrule{\def\slt@rule{\kern-3\p@ \hrule width \columnwidth \kern2.6\p@}}
\sltrule 5361 \def\plt@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}
\slt@rule 5362 \def\mlt@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}
5363 \def\slt@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}

```

9.66 The `\mtcset...` commands

These commands ¹¹ have been introduced to build a nicer user interface, and each of them replaces numerous user commands, offering a rather unified and logical syntax.

9.66.1 Keywords for the `\mtcset...` commands

`\@namedef` We define some common keywords for the `\mtcset...` commands. A keyword is created via the `\@namedef – \@nameuse` mechanism the following way:

```
\@namedef{mtc@family@name}{abbreviation}
```

where *family* is the name of a group of keywords relative to one or several `\mtcset...` macros, *name* is the keyword that the user gives as argument to the `\mtcset...` macro, and *abbreviation* is a string used to build the name of the macro effectively used. As some `\mtcset...` macros have several keyword parameters, this method can reduce the number of macros at the user level, at the cost of few keyword families.

`\@namedef` We define a family (typetable) of keywords for the types of mini-tables:

```

5364 \@namedef{mtc@typetable@parttoc}{ptc}\def\mtc@typetable@parttoc{ptc}
5365 \@namedef{mtc@typetable@partlof}{plf}\def\mtc@typetable@partlof{plf}
5366 \@namedef{mtc@typetable@partlot}{plt}\def\mtc@typetable@partlot{plt}
5367 \@namedef{mtc@typetable@minitoc}{mtc}\def\mtc@typetable@minitoc{mtc}
5368 \@namedef{mtc@typetable@minilof}{mlf}\def\mtc@typetable@minilof{mlf}
5369 \@namedef{mtc@typetable@minilot}{mlt}\def\mtc@typetable@minilot{mlt}
5370 \@namedef{mtc@typetable@secttoc}{stc}\def\mtc@typetable@secttoc{stc}
5371 \@namedef{mtc@typetable@sectlof}{slf}\def\mtc@typetable@sectlof{slf}
5372 \@namedef{mtc@typetable@sectlot}{slt}\def\mtc@typetable@sectlot{slt}

```

¹¹The general concept of the `\mtcset...` commands was proposed by Benjamin BAYART.

`\@namedef` Then another family (typetitle) for the titles of the mini-tables:

```
5373 \@namedef{mtc@typetitle@parttoc}{pti}\def\mtc@typetitle@parttoc{pti}
5374 \@namedef{mtc@typetitle@partlof}{pti}\def\mtc@typetitle@partlof{pti}
5375 \@namedef{mtc@typetitle@partlot}{pti}\def\mtc@typetitle@partlot{pti}
5376 \@namedef{mtc@typetitle@minitoc}{mti}\def\mtc@typetitle@minitoc{mti}
5377 \@namedef{mtc@typetitle@minilof}{mti}\def\mtc@typetitle@minilof{mti}
5378 \@namedef{mtc@typetitle@minilot}{mti}\def\mtc@typetitle@minilot{mti}
5379 \@namedef{mtc@typetitle@secttoc}{sti}\def\mtc@typetitle@secttoc{sti}
5380 \@namedef{mtc@typetitle@sectlof}{sti}\def\mtc@typetitle@sectlof{sti}
5381 \@namedef{mtc@typetitle@sectlot}{sti}\def\mtc@typetitle@sectlot{sti}
```

`\@namedef` We define a family (YN) of keywords to recognize the keywords “off” and “on”, with their many synonyms¹² and meaning false or true¹³:

```
5382 \@namedef{mtc@YN@off}{no}\def\mtc@YN@off{no}
5383 \@namedef{mtc@YN@OFF}{no}\def\mtc@YN@OFF{no}
5384 \@namedef{mtc@YN@no}{no}\def\mtc@YN@no{no}
5385 \@namedef{mtc@YN@NO}{no}\def\mtc@YN@NO{no}
5386 \@namedef{mtc@YN@n}{no}\def\mtc@YN@n{no}
5387 \@namedef{mtc@YN@N}{no}\def\mtc@YN@N{no}
5388 \@namedef{mtc@YN@false}{no}\def\mtc@YN@false{no}
5389 \@namedef{mtc@YN@FALSE}{no}\def\mtc@YN@FALSE{no}
5390 \@namedef{mtc@YN@faux}{no}\def\mtc@YN@faux{no}
5391 \@namedef{mtc@YN@FAUX}{no}\def\mtc@YN@FAUX{no}
5392 \@namedef{mtc@YN@f}{no}\def\mtc@YN@f{no}
5393 \@namedef{mtc@YN@F}{no}\def\mtc@YN@F{no}
5394 \@namedef{mtc@YN@NON}{no}\def\mtc@YN@NON{no}
5395 \@namedef{mtc@YN@non}{no}\def\mtc@YN@non{no}
5396 \@namedef{mtc@YN@0}{no}\expandafter\def\csname mtc@YN@0\endcsname{no}
5397 \@namedef{mtc@YN@-}{no}\expandafter\def\csname mtc@YN@-\endcsname{no}
5398 %
5399 \@namedef{mtc@YN@on}{}\def\mtc@YN@on{}
5400 \@namedef{mtc@YN@ON}{}\def\mtc@YN@ON{}
5401 \@namedef{mtc@YN@yes}{}\def\mtc@YN@yes{}
5402 \@namedef{mtc@YN@YES}{}\def\mtc@YN@YES{}
5403 \@namedef{mtc@YN@y}{}\def\mtc@YN@y{}
5404 \@namedef{mtc@YN@Y}{}\def\mtc@YN@Y{}
5405 \@namedef{mtc@YN@true}{}\def\mtc@YN@true{}
5406 \@namedef{mtc@YN@TRUE}{}\def\mtc@YN@TRUE{}
5407 \@namedef{mtc@YN@t}{}\def\mtc@YN@t{}
5408 \@namedef{mtc@YN@T}{}\def\mtc@YN@T{}
5409 \@namedef{mtc@YN@vrai}{}\def\mtc@YN@vrai{}
5410 \@namedef{mtc@YN@VRAI}{}\def\mtc@YN@VRAI{}
5411 \@namedef{mtc@YN@v}{}\def\mtc@YN@v{}
5412 \@namedef{mtc@YN@V}{}\def\mtc@YN@V{}
5413 \@namedef{mtc@YN@OUI}{}\def\mtc@YN@OUI{}
5414 \@namedef{mtc@YN@oui}{}\def\mtc@YN@oui{}
```

¹²This (deliberately extreme) case shows the easyness for creating synonyms of frequently used keywords. Note also that when a keyword contains a non-letter character, we must use a hack with `\expandafter\csname ... \endcsname`.

¹³0 and o are the letter O, Ø is the zero digit.

```

5415 \@namedef{mtc@YN@O}{}\def\mtc@YN@O{}
5416 \@namedef{mtc@YN@o}{}\def\mtc@YN@o{}
5417 \@namedef{mtc@YN@1}{}\expandafter\def\csname mtc@YN@1\endcsname{}
5418 \@namedef{mtc@YN@+}{}\expandafter\def\csname mtc@YN@+\endcsname{}

```

9.66.2 The `\mtcsetfont` command

`\@namedef` We define the sectionning level keywords (note that part is not a member of this family (sectlevel), because no contents line for a part can appear in a mini-table, part being the highest sectionning level); “*” represents “any level”, and is used to set the global default font for a given kind of mini-table.

```

5419 \@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@chapter}{C}\def\mtc@sectlevel@chapter{C}
5420 \@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@section}{S}\def\mtc@sectlevel@section{S}
5421 \@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@subsection}{SS}\def\mtc@sectlevel@subsection{SS}
5422 \@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@subsubsection}{SSS}\def\mtc@sectlevel@subsubsection{SSS}
5423 \@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@paragraph}{P}\def\mtc@sectlevel@paragraph{P}
5424 \@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@subparagraph}{SP}\def\mtc@sectlevel@subparagraph{SP}
5425 \@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@*}{}\expandafter\def\csname mtc@sectlevel@*\endcsname{}
5426 \@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@figure}{}\def\mtc@sectlevel@figure{}
5427 \@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@table}{}\def\mtc@sectlevel@table{}
5428 \@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@subfigure}{S}\def\mtc@sectlevel@subfigure{S}
5429 \@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@subtable}{S}\def\mtc@sectlevel@subtable{S}

```

`\mtcsetfont` The `\mtcsetfont` command has the following syntax:

```
\mtcsetfont{mini-table}{level-name}{font commands}
```

The *mini-table* type is a keyword like minitoc, the *level-name* is a sectionning level like subsection (no backslash). The *font commands* are a font specification, using NFSS [229] basic commands usually.

`\if@mtc@setfont@` First, we declare a flag, set true:

```
5430 \newif\if@mtc@setfont@\@mtc@setfont@true
```

`\mtcsetfont` Then, we begin the command, which has three arguments:

```
5431 \newcommand{\mtcsetfont}[3]{%
```

E0013

`\mtc@mta@abbrev` The two first arguments of this command are keywords. They must be translated into the effective strings. We process the first argument, a keyword from the `typetable` family. The result is stored in `\mtc@mta@abbrev`. Example: if #1 is `minitoc`, we get `mtc`.

`\if@mtc@setfont@`

`\@nameuse`

```

5432 \def\mtc@mta@abbrev{X}
5433 \@mtc@setfont@true
5434 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@typetable@#1\endcsname\relax
5435   \@mtc@setfont@false
5436   \def\mtc@mta@abbrev{X}
5437   \mtcPackageError[E0013]{minitoc}%
5438     {\string\mtcsetfont \space has a wrong first argument
5439     \MessageBreak
5440     (#1).
5441     \MessageBreak
5442     It should be a mini-table type
5443     \MessageBreak
5444     (parttoc...sectlot)}}%
5445   {Correct the source code.
5446   \MessageBreak
5447   Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
5448 \else
5449   \edef\mtc@mta@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@typetable@#1}}
5450 \fi

```

E0014

`\mtc@level@abbrev` The second argument, a keyword from the family `sectlevel`, is processed the same way and the result is stored into a macro `\mtc@level@abbrev`. Example: if #2 is the subparagraph keyword, we get SP.

`\if@mtc@setfont@`

`\@nameuse`

```

5451 \def\mtc@level@abbrev{X}
5452 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@sectlevel@#2\endcsname\relax
5453   \@mtc@setfont@false
5454   \def\mtc@level@abbrev{X}
5455   \mtcPackageError[E0014]{minitoc}%
5456     {\string\mtcsetfont \space has a wrong second argument
5457     \MessageBreak
5458     (#2).
5459     \MessageBreak
5460     It should be a sectionning level
5461     \MessageBreak
5462     (part...subparagraph) or * }%
5463   {Correct the source code.
5464   \MessageBreak
5465   Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
5466 \else
5467   \edef\mtc@level@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@sectlevel@#2}}
5468 \fi

```

```

\mtc@tmp@name Then, we construct the effective macro to be applied:
\mtc@mta@abbrev
\mtc@level@abbrev 5469 \def\mtc@tmp@name{\mtc@mta@abbrev\mtc@level@abbrev font}

```

Example: if #1 is minitoc and #2 is subsection, we get mtcSSfont, which is the name of the command for the font of a subsection entry in a minitoc (the backslash is missing, but we will use a \csname ... \endcsname pair to apply the constructed command).

```

\if@mtc@setfont@ But all combinaisons are not legal (the level of the entry must be lower than the level of the
mini-table, and the kind 14 of the entry must be consistent with that of the mini-table), so we
must test. Special care must be taken for testing via internal defined commands (quarks) with
@mtcqk at the end of their names).

```

```

5470 \def\parttoc@mtcqk{parttoc@mtcqk}
5471 \def\minitoc@mtcqk{minitoc@mtcqk}
5472 \def\secttoc@mtcqk{secttoc@mtcqk}
5473 \def\partlof@mtcqk{partlof@mtcqk}
5474 \def\minilof@mtcqk{minilof@mtcqk}
5475 \def\sectlof@mtcqk{sectlof@mtcqk}
5476 \def\partlot@mtcqk{partlot@mtcqk}
5477 \def\minilot@mtcqk{minilot@mtcqk}
5478 \def\sectlot@mtcqk{sectlot@mtcqk}
5479 \def\part@mtcqk{part@mtcqk}
5480 \def\chapter@mtcqk{chapter@mtcqk}
5481 \def\appendix@mtcqk{appendix@mtcqk}
5482 \def\section@mtcqk{section@mtcqk}
5483 \def\subsection@mtcqk{subsection@mtcqk}
5484 \def\subsubsection@mtcqk{subsubsection@mtcqk}
5485 \def\paragraph@mtcqk{paragraph@mtcqk}
5486 \def\subparagraph@mtcqk{subparagraph@mtcqk}
5487 \def\figure@mtcqk{figure@mtcqk}
5488 \def\table@mtcqk{table@mtcqk}
5489 \def\subfigure@mtcqk{subfigure@mtcqk}
5490 \def\subtable@mtcqk{subtable@mtcqk}
5491 \@mtc@setfont@true
5492 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1@mtcqk\endcsname\parttoc@mtcqk\relax
5493   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\figure@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5494   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\subfigure@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5495   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\table@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5496   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\subtable@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5497 \fi
5498 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1@mtcqk\endcsname\partlof@mtcqk\relax
5499   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\table@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5500   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\subtable@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5501 \fi
5502 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1@mtcqk\endcsname\partlot@mtcqk\relax
5503   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\figure@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5504   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\subfigure@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5505 \fi
5506 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1@mtcqk\endcsname\minitoc@mtcqk\relax

```

¹⁴ “Kind” being sectionning, (sub-)figure, or (sub-)table.


```

5507 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\part@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5508 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\chapter@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5509 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\appendix@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5510 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\figure@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5511 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\subfigure@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5512 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\table@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5513 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\subtable@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5514 \fi
5515 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1@mtcck\endcsname\minilof@mtcck\relax
5516 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\part@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5517 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\chapter@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5518 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\appendix@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5519 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\table@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5520 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\subtable@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5521 \fi
5522 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1@mtcck\endcsname\minilot@mtcck\relax
5523 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\part@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5524 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\chapter@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5525 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\appendix@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5526 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\figure@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5527 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\subfigure@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5528 \fi
5529 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1@mtcck\endcsname\secttoc@mtcck\relax
5530 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\part@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5531 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\chapter@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5532 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\appendix@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5533 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\section@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5534 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\figure@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5535 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\subfigure@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5536 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\table@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5537 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\subtable@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5538 \fi
5539 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1@mtcck\endcsname\sectlof@mtcck\relax
5540 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\part@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5541 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\chapter@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5542 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\appendix@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5543 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\section@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5544 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\table@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5545 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\subtable@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5546 \fi
5547 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1@mtcck\endcsname\sectlot@mtcck\relax
5548 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\part@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5549 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\chapter@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5550 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\appendix@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5551 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\section@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5552 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\figure@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5553 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\subfigure@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5554 \fi

```

\if@mtc@setfont@ If the combinaison is legal, we apply it, i.e., we redefine the meaning of the constructed
\mtc@tmp@name macro with the sequence of commands given as third argument of \mtcsetfont and we log
\mtc@mta@abbrev
\mtc@level@abbrev
\mtc@toks

I0015
E0024

that event (we store the third argument in a token register to can print it *verbatim*); if the combinaison is not legal, an error message is displayed.

```

5555 \if@mtc@setfont@
5556   \def\mtc@tmp@name{\mtc@mta@abbrev\mtc@level@abbrev font}
5557   \mtc@toks{#3}
5558   \mtcPackageInfo[I0015]{minitoc}%
5559   {\string\mtcsetfont\space redefines the macro
5560     \MessageBreak
5561     "\mtc@tmp@name" as "\the\mtc@toks"}%
5562   \expandafter\edef\csname\mtc@tmp@name\endcsname{\the\mtc@toks}%
5563 \else
5564   \mtcPackageError[E0024]{minitoc}%
5565     {The macro \string\mtcsetfont\space has incompatible
5566     \MessageBreak
5567     first (#1) and second (#2) arguments}%
5568   {Correct the source code.
5569   \MessageBreak
5570   Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
5571 \fi}

```

9.66.3 The `\mtcsettitlefont` command

`\mtcsettitlefont` This command is very similar to the `\mtcsetfont` command. Its syntax is almost identical:

```
\mtcsettitlefont{mini-table}{font commands}
```

`\if@mtc@settitlefont@` The *mini-table* type is a keyword like minitoc. The *font commands* are a font specification, using NFSS [229] basic commands usually. The difference is the absence of the second keyword argument, because the *font commands* will be applied to the title of each mini-table of the given kind.

First, we declare a flag, set true:

```
5572 \newif\if@mtc@settitlefont@\@mtc@settitlefont@true
```

`\mtcsettitlefont` And we begin the definition of the `\mtcsettitlefont` command, which has two arguments:

```
5573 \newcommand{\mtcsettitlefont}[2]{%
```

`\mtc@mtatf@abbrev` We process the first argument, a keyword of the `typetitle` family, then the result is stored
`\if@mtc@settitlefont@` into `\mtc@mtatf@abbrev`:
`\@nameuse`

E0022

```

5574 \def\mtc@mtatf@abbrev{X}
5575 \@mtc@settitlefont@true
5576 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@typetitle@#1\endcsname\relax
5577   \@mtc@settitlefont@false
5578   \def\mtc@mtatf@abbrev{X}
5579   \mtcPackageError[E0022]{minitoc}%
5580     {\string\mtcsettitlefont \space has a wrong first argument
5581       \MessageBreak
5582       (#1).
5583       \MessageBreak
5584       It should be a mini-table type
5585       \MessageBreak
5586       (parttoc...sectlot)}}%
5587   {Correct the source code.
5588     \MessageBreak
5589     Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
5590 \else
5591   \edef\mtc@mtatf@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@typetitle@#1}}
5592 \fi

```

`\if@mtc@settitlefont@` Then we build the name of the effective command and apply this command:
`\mtc@tmptf@name`

I0018

E0034

```

\mtc@mtatf@abbrev 5593 \if@mtc@settitlefont@
\mtc@tmptf@name    5594   \def\mtc@tmptf@name{\mtc@mtatf@abbrev font}
\mtc@toks          5595   \mtc@toks{#2}%
                  5596   \mtcPackageInfo[I0018]{minitoc}%
                  5597   {\string\mtcsettitlefont\space redefines the macro
                  5598     \MessageBreak
                  5599     "\mtc@tmptf@name" as
                  5600     \MessageBreak
                  5601     "\the\mtc@toks"}%
                  5602   \expandafter\edef\csname\mtc@tmptf@name\endcsname{\the\mtc@toks}%
                  5603 \else
                  5604   \mtcPackageError[E0034]{minitoc}%
                  5605     {The macro \string\mtcsettitlefont\space uses
                  5606       \MessageBreak
                  5607       an illegal type of table (#1)}}%
                  5608   {Correct the source code.
                  5609     \MessageBreak
                  5610     Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}{\relax}
                  5611 \fi
                  5612 }

```

9.66.4 The `\mtcsettitle` command

`\mtcsettitle` This command is very similar to the `\mtcsettitlefont` command. Its syntax is almost identical:

```
\mtcsettitle{mini-table}{text}
```

The *mini-table* type is a keyword like minitoc. The *text* is the text for a mini-table title.

`\if@mtc@settitle@` First, we declare a flag, set true:

```
5613 \newif\if@mtc@settitle@\@mtc@settitle@true
```

`\mtcsettitle` Then we define the `\mtcsettitle` command, which has two arguments:

```
5614 \newcommand{\mtcsettitle}[2]{%
```

`\mtc@mtati@abbrev` We process the first argument, a keyword of the `typetable` family. The result is stored in

E0021

`\if@mtc@settitle@` `\mtc@mtati@abbrev:`

`\@nameuse`

```
5615 \def\mtc@mtati@abbrev{X}
5616 \@mtc@settitle@true
5617 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@typetable@#1\endcsname\relax
5618   \@mtc@settitle@false
5619   \def\mtc@mtati@abbrev{X}
5620   \mtcPackageError[E0021]{minitoc}%
5621     {\string\mtcsettitle \space has a wrong first argument
5622     \MessageBreak
5623     (#1).
5624     \MessageBreak
5625     It should be a mini-table type
5626     \MessageBreak
5627     (parttoc...sectlot)}%
5628     {Correct the source code.
5629     \MessageBreak
5630     Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
5631 \else
5632   \edef\mtc@mtati@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@typetable@#1}}
5633 \fi
```

`\if@mtc@settitle@` And we construct the name of the effective macro and apply it:

`\mtc@tmpti@name`

`\mtc@mtati@abbrev` 5634 `\if@mtc@settitle@`

`\mtc@toks` 5635 `\def\mtc@tmpti@name{\mtc@mtati@abbrev title}%`

5636 `\mtc@toks{#2}%`

I0017

E0033

```

5637 \mtcPackageInfo[I0017]{minitoc}%
5638   {\string\mtcsettitle\space redefines the macro
5639     \MessageBreak
5640     "\mtc@tmpti@name" as
5641     \MessageBreak
5642     "\the\mtc@toks"}%
5643 \expandafter\edef\csname\mtc@tmpti@name\endcsname{\the\mtc@toks}%
5644 \else
5645 \mtcPackageError[E0033]{minitoc}%
5646   {The macro \string\mtcsettitle\space uses
5647     \MessageBreak
5648     an illegal type of table (#1)}%
5649   {Correct the source code.
5650     \MessageBreak
5651     Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}{\relax}
5652 \fi
5653 }

```

9.66.5 The `\mtcsetformat` command

`\@namedef` We define first the keywords (family `formatparam`) for the three formatting parameters that this command can alter:

```

5654 \@namedef{mtc@formatparam@dotinterval}{dotsep}%
5655 \def\mtc@arg@dotinterval{dotsep}
5656 \@namedef{mtc@formatparam@tocrightmargin}{tocrmarg}%
5657 \def\mtc@arg@tocrightmargin{tocrightmargin}
5658 \@namedef{mtc@formatparam@pagenumwidth}{pnumwidth}%
5659 \def\mtc@arg@pagenumwidth{\mtc@arg@pagenumwidth}
5660 %% \@namedef{mtc@arg@numwidth}{numwidth} %not yet available
5661 %% \def\mtc@arg@numwidth{\mtc@arg@numwidth} %not yet available

```

`\AtBeginDocument` The `\mtcsetformat` command needs an initialization to be done at the beginning of the document, to set the defaults values of the formatting parameters:

```

5662 \AtBeginDocument{%

```

```

\@pnumwidth We take, if possible, the default value of \@pnumwidth for each type of mini-tables:
\ptcpnumwidth
\stcpnumwidth 5663 \@ifundefined{ptcpnumwidth}{\let\ptcpnumwidth\@pnumwidth}{}%
\stcpnumwidth 5664 \@ifundefined{stcpnumwidth}{\let\stcpnumwidth\@pnumwidth}{}%
\plfpnumwidth 5665 \@ifundefined{mtcpnumwidth}{\let\mtcpnumwidth\@pnumwidth}{}%
\mlfpnumwidth 5666 \@ifundefined{plfpnumwidth}{\let\plfpnumwidth\@pnumwidth}{}%
\slfpnumwidth 5667 \@ifundefined{mlfpnumwidth}{\let\mlfpnumwidth\@pnumwidth}{}%
\pltpnumwidth 5668 \@ifundefined{slfpnumwidth}{\let\slfpnumwidth\@pnumwidth}{}%
\mltpnumwidth 5669 \@ifundefined{pltpnumwidth}{\let\pltpnumwidth\@pnumwidth}{}%
\sltpnumwidth 5670 \@ifundefined{mltpnumwidth}{\let\mltpnumwidth\@pnumwidth}{}%
5671 \@ifundefined{sltpnumwidth}{\let\sltpnumwidth\@pnumwidth}{}%

```

```

\@tocrmarg We take, if possible, the default value of \@tocrmarg for each type of mini-tables:
\ptctocrmarg
\mtclofrmarg 5672 \@ifundefined{ptctocrmarg}{\let\ptctocrmarg\@tocrmarg}{}%
\stclotrarg 5673 \@ifundefined{mtctocrmarg}{\let\mtctocrmarg\@tocrmarg}{}%
\plftocrmarg 5674 \@ifundefined{stctocrmarg}{\let\stctocrmarg\@tocrmarg}{}%
\mlflofrmarg 5675 \@ifundefined{plftocrmarg}{\let\plftocrmarg\@tocrmarg}{}%
\slflotrarg 5676 \@ifundefined{mlftocrmarg}{\let\mlftocrmarg\@tocrmarg}{}%
\plttocrmarg 5677 \@ifundefined{slftocrmarg}{\let\slftocrmarg\@tocrmarg}{}%
\mltlofrmarg 5678 \@ifundefined{plttocrmarg}{\let\plttocrmarg\@tocrmarg}{}%
\sltlotrarg 5679 \@ifundefined{mlttocrmarg}{\let\mlttocrmarg\@tocrmarg}{}%
5680 \@ifundefined{slttocrmarg}{\let\slttocrmarg\@tocrmarg}{}%

```

```

\@dotsep We take, if possible, the default value of \@dotsep for each type of mini-tables:
\ptcdotsep
\mtcdotsep 5681 \@ifundefined{ptcdotsep}{\let\ptcdotsep\@dotsep}{}%
\stcdotsep 5682 \@ifundefined{mtcdotsep}{\let\mtcdotsep\@dotsep}{}%
\plfdotsep 5683 \@ifundefined{stcdotsep}{\let\stcdotsep\@dotsep}{}%
\mlfdotsep 5684 \@ifundefined{plfdotsep}{\let\plfdotsep\@dotsep}{}%
\slfdotsep 5685 \@ifundefined{mlfdotsep}{\let\mlfdotsep\@dotsep}{}%
\pltdotsep 5686 \@ifundefined{slfdotsep}{\let\slfdotsep\@dotsep}{}%
\mltdotsep 5687 \@ifundefined{pltdotsep}{\let\pltdotsep\@dotsep}{}%
\sltdotsep 5688 \@ifundefined{mltdotsep}{\let\mltdotsep\@dotsep}{}%
5689 \@ifundefined{sltdotsep}{\let\sltdotsep\@dotsep}{}%

```

And we terminate the \AtBeginDocument block:

```
5690 }%
```

```

\mtcsetformat The executive part is done via the following macros, which are invoked in the mtc@verse-like
environments for each kind of mini-table. These commands activate the values recorded by
\mtcsetformat.

```

```

\ptc@setform The \ptc@setform macro is invoked in ptc@verse to set format parameters:
ptc@verse

```

```

5691 \def\ptc@setform{%
5692 \let\@pnumwidth\ptcpnumwidth\relax
5693 \let\@tocrmarg\ptctocrmarg\relax
5694 \let\@dotsep\ptcdotsep\relax
5695 }

```

```

\mtc@setform The \mtc@setform macro is invoked in mtc@verse to set format parameters:
mtc@verse

```

```

5696 \def\mtc@setform{%
5697 \let\@pnumwidth\mtcpnumwidth\relax
5698 \let\@tocrmarg\mtctocrmarg\relax
5699 \let\@dotsep\mtcdotsep\relax
5700 }

```

`\stc@setform` The `\stc@setform` macro is invoked in `stc@verse` to set format parameters:
`stc@verse`

```
5701 \def\stc@setform{%
5702 \let\@pnumwidth\stcpnumwidth\relax
5703 \let\@tocrmarg\stctocrmarg\relax
5704 \let\@dotsep\stcdotsep\relax
5705 }
```

`\plf@setform` The `\plf@setform` macro is invoked in `ptc@verse` to set format parameters:
`ptc@verse`

```
5706 \def\plf@setform{%
5707 \let\@pnumwidth\plfpnumwidth\relax
5708 \let\@tocrmarg\plftocrmarg\relax
5709 \let\@dotsep\plfdotsep\relax
5710 }
```

`\mlf@setform` The `\mlf@setform` macro is invoked in `mtc@verse` to set format parameters:
`mtc@verse`

```
5711 \def\mlf@setform{%
5712 \let\@pnumwidth\mlfpnumwidth\relax
5713 \let\@tocrmarg\mlftocrmarg\relax
5714 \let\@dotsep\mlfdotsep\relax
5715 }
```

`\slf@setform` The `\slf@setform` macro is invoked in `stc@verse` to set format parameters:
`stc@verse`

```
5716 \def\slf@setform{%
5717 \let\@pnumwidth\slfpnumwidth\relax
5718 \let\@tocrmarg\slftocrmarg\relax
5719 \let\@dotsep\slfdotsep\relax
5720 }
```

`\plt@setform` The `\plt@setform` macro is invoked in `ptc@verse` to set format parameters:
`ptc@verse`

```
5721 \def\plt@setform{%
5722 \let\@pnumwidth\pltpnumwidth\relax
5723 \let\@tocrmarg\plttocrmarg\relax
5724 \let\@dotsep\pltdotsep\relax
5725 }
```

`\mlt@setform` The `\mlt@setform` macro is invoked in `mtc@verse` to set format parameters:
`mtc@verse`

```
5726 \def\mlt@setform{%
5727 \let\@pnumwidth\plfpnumwidth\relax
```

```

5728 \let\@tocrmarg\plftocrmarg\relax
5729 \let\@dotsep\plfdotsep\relax
5730 }

```

`\slt@setform` The `\slt@setform` macro is invoked in `stc@verse` to set format parameters:
`stc@verse`

```

5731 \def\slt@setform{%
5732 \let\@pnumwidth\plfpnumwidth\relax
5733 \let\@tocrmarg\plftocrmarg\relax
5734 \let\@dotsep\plfdotsep\relax
5735 }

```

`\if@mtc@setformat@` We now define a flag and the `\mtcsetformat` command, with has the following syntax:
`\mtcsetformat`

```
\mtcsetformat{mini-table}{parameter-name}{value}
```

where *mini-table* is a keyword of the `typetable` family, *parameter-name* is a keyword of the `formatparam` family and *value*, the value of this parameter for the given kind of mini-table.

```

5736 \newif\if@mtc@setformat@\@mtc@setformat@true
5737 \newcommand{\mtcsetformat}[3]{%

```

`\mtc@mtf@abbrev` We now process the first argument and store the result in `\mtc@mtf@abbrev`:
`\mtc@fparam@abbrev`

```

5738 \def\mtc@mtf@abbrev{X}
5739 \def\mtc@fparam@abbrev{X}
5740 \@mtc@setformat@true
5741 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@typetable@#1\endcsname\relax
5742 \@mtc@setformat@false
5743 \def\mtc@mtf@abbrev{X}
5744 \mtcPackageError[E0015]{minitoc}%
5745   {\string\mtcsetformat \space has a wrong first argument
5746   \MessageBreak
5747   (#1).
5748   \MessageBreak
5749   It should be a mini-table type
5750   \MessageBreak
5751   (parttoc...sectlot)}}%
5752 {Correct the source code.
5753 \MessageBreak
5754   Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
5755 \else \edef\mtc@mtf@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@typetable@#1}}
5756 \fi

```


`\mtc@fparam@abbrev` Then we process the second argument and store the result into a macro `\mtc@fparam@abbrev`:
`\@nameuse`

E0016

```

5757 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@formatparam@#2\endcsname\relax
5758 \@mtc@setformat@false
5759 \def\mtc@fparam@abbrev{X}
5760 \mtcPackageError[E0016]{minitoc}%
5761   {\string\mtcsetformat \space has a wrong second argument
5762   \MessageBreak
5763   (#2).
5764   \MessageBreak
5765   It should be a formatting param choosen from:
5766   \MessageBreak
5767   pagenumwidth, totrightmargin, dotinterval}%
5768 {Correct the source code.
5769   \MessageBreak
5770   Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}%
5771 \else
5772 \edef\mtc@fparam@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@formatparam@#2}}%
5773 \fi

```

`\if@mtc@setformat@` The name of the storage macro is built and it receives the third parameter as value (*via* `\edef`
`\mtc@tmpfm@name` because it can contain some complex code):
`\mtc@mtf@abbrev`

```

\mtc@fparam@abbrev 5774 \if@mtc@setformat@
5775   \mtc@toks{#3}%
5776   \def\mtc@tmpfm@name{\mtc@mtf@abbrev\mtc@fparam@abbrev}%
5777   \mtcPackageInfo[I0016]{minitoc}%
5778   {\string\mtcsetformat\space redefines the macro
5779   \MessageBreak
5780   "\mtc@tmpfm@name" as "\the\mtc@toks"}
5781   \expandafter\edef\csname\mtc@tmpfm@name\endcsname{\the\mtc@toks}%
5782 \else
5783   \mtcPackageError[E0025]{minitoc}%
5784   {The macro \string\mtcsetformat\space has incompatible
5785   \MessageBreak
5786   first (#1) and second (#2) arguments}%
5787   {Correct the source code.
5788   \MessageBreak
5789   Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}%
5790 \fi
5791 }

```



I0016

E0025

9.66.6 The `\mtcsetpagenumbers` command

This command activates or inhibits page numbers in the mini-tables of a given kind. Its syntax is the following:

```
\mtcsetpagenumbers{mini-table}{on|off}
```

where *mini-table* is a keyword for a kind of mini-table (`parttoc`, ... `sectlot`), or `on` and `off` a keyword to activate (`on`) or inhibit (`off`) the page numbers. `on` and `off` have many synonyms.

`\if@mtc@setpagenumbers@` We define some flags:
`\if@mtc@spn@ok@`

```
5792 \newif\if@mtc@setpagenumbers@ \@mtc@setpagenumbers@false
5793 \newif\if@mtc@spn@ok@
```

`\mtcsetpagenumbers` We define the user-level macro. If the first argument is a star, we call the internal macro
`\@ifundefined` `\mtcsetpagenumbers@` for each type of mini-table available; else, we call this internal macro
`\mtcsetpagenumbers@` only once, for the specified type of mini-table.

```
5794 \newcommand{\mtcsetpagenumbers}[2]{%
5795   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\*\relax
5796   \@ifundefined{part}{}%
5797   {\mtcsetpagenumbers@{parttoc}{#2}}
5798   \mtcsetpagenumbers@{partlof}{#2}
5799   \mtcsetpagenumbers@{partlot}{#2}}
5800 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}%
5801 {\mtcsetpagenumbers@{minitoc}{#2}}
5802 \mtcsetpagenumbers@{minilof}{#2}
5803 \mtcsetpagenumbers@{minilot}{#2}}
5804 \@ifundefined{section}{}%
5805 {\mtcsetpagenumbers@{secttoc}{#2}}
5806 \mtcsetpagenumbers@{sectlof}{#2}
5807 \mtcsetpagenumbers@{sectlot}{#2}}
5808 \else
5809 \mtcsetpagenumbers@{#1}{#2}%
5810 \fi
5811 }
```

`\mtcsetpagenumber@` Then the `\mtcsetpagenumbers@` internal macro, with two arguments:

```
5812 \newcommand{\mtcsetpagenumbers@}[2]{%
```

`\mtc@mttpn@abbrev` We process the first argument, a keyword of the `typetable` family, and store the result in
`\mtc@pns@abbrev` `\mtc@mttpn@abbrev`:

```
5813 \def\mtc@mttpn@abbrev{X}
5814 \@mtc@setpagenumbers@true
5815 \def\mtc@pns@abbrev{}
5816 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@typetable@#1\endcsname\relax
5817   \@mtc@setpagenumbers@false
5818   \def\mtc@pns@abbrev{X}
5819   \def\mtc@mttpn@abbrev{X}
5820   \mtcPackageError[E0017]{minitoc}{%
```

E0017

```

5821     {\string\mtcsetpagenumbers \space has a wrong first
5822     \MessageBreak
5823     argument (#1)}%
5824     {It should be a mini-table type
5825     \MessageBreak
5826     (parttoc...sectlot)
5827     \MessageBreak
5828     Correct the source code.
5829     \MessageBreak
5830     Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
5831 \else
5832     \edef\mtc@mttpn@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@typetable@#1}}
5833 \fi

```

```

\if@mtc@spn@ok@ Then the second argument, a keyword of the YN family, and store the result into a macro
\mtc@pns@abbrev \mtc@pns@abbrev. The name of the effective macro is built and the macro executed.
\mtc@mttpn@abbrev
\if@mtc@setpagenumbers@ 5834 \@mtc@spn@ok@true
\mtc@tmppn@name 5835 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@YN@#2\endcsname\relax
5836     \@mtc@spn@ok@false
5837     \def\mtc@pns@abbrev{X}
5838     \def\mtc@mttpn@abbrev{X}
5839     \@mtc@setpagenumbers@false
5840     \def\mtc@mttpn@abbrev{X}
5841     \mtcPackageError[E0018]{minitoc}%
5842     {\string\mtcsetpagenumbers \space has a wrong second
5843     \MessageBreak
5844     argument (#2)}%
5845     {It should be a boolean value (0/1, yes/no, on/off, ...)
5846     \MessageBreak
5847     Correct the source code.
5848     \MessageBreak
5849     Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
5850 \else
5851     \edef\mtc@pns@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@YN@#2}}
5852     \def\mtc@pns@abbrevX{X}
5853     \def\mtc@noX{mtc@noX}
5854     \def\mtc@tmppn@name{\mtc@pns@abbrev\mtc@mttpn@abbrev pagenumbers}
5855     \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@\mtc@pns@abbrev X\endcsname\mtc@noX
5856     \mtcPackageInfo[I0022]{minitoc}%
5857     {Page numbers are inhibited
5858     \MessageBreak
5859     for the #1s}
5860 \else
5861     \mtcPackageInfo[I0021]{minitoc}%
5862     {Page numbers are activated
5863     \MessageBreak for the #1s}
5864 \fi
5865 \csname\mtc@tmppn@name\endcsname{}
5866 \fi
5867 }

```

E0018

I0022

I0021

9.66.7 The `\mtcsetrules` command

This macro is very similar to `\mtcsetpagenumbers` and its syntax is the same:

```
\mtcsetrules{mini-table}{on|off}
```

where *mini-table* is a keyword for a kind of mini-table (`parttoc`, ... `sectlot`), or `on` and `off` a keyword to activate (`on`) or inhibit (`off`) the horizontal rules. `on` and `off` have many synonyms.

Hence the code is similar.

```
\if@mtc@setrules@ We define some flags:
\if@mtc@sru@ok@
```

```
5868 \newif\if@mtc@setrules@ \@mtc@setrules@false
5869 \newif\if@mtc@sru@ok@
```

```
\mtcsetrules We define the user-level macro. If the first argument is a star, we call the internal macro
\@ifundefined \mtcsetrules@ for each type of mini-table available; else, we call this internal macro only
\mtcsetrules@ once, for the specified type of mini-table.
```

```
5870 \newcommand{\mtcsetrules}[2]{%
5871   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\*\relax
5872   \@ifundefined{part}{}%
5873   {\mtcsetrules@{parttoc}{#2}}
5874   \mtcsetrules@{partlof}{#2}
5875   \mtcsetrules@{partlot}{#2}}
5876   \@ifundefined{chapter}{}%
5877   {\mtcsetrules@{minitoc}{#2}}
5878   \mtcsetrules@{minilof}{#2}
5879   \mtcsetrules@{minilot}{#2}}
5880   \@ifundefined{section}{}%
5881   {\mtcsetrules@{secttoc}{#2}}
5882   \mtcsetrules@{sectlof}{#2}
5883   \mtcsetrules@{sectlot}{#2}}
5884   \else
5885   \mtcsetrules@{#1}{#2}%
5886   \fi
5887 }
```

```
\mtcsetrules@ Then the \mtcsetrules@ internal macro, which has two arguments:
```

```
5888 \newcommand{\mtcsetrules@}[2]{%
```

`\mtc@mttru@abbrev` We process the first argument, a keyword of the `typetable` family and store the result in a
`\if@mtc@setrules@` macro `\mtc@mttru@abbrev`:
`\mtc@rusw@abbrev`

E0019

```

\@nameuse 5889 \def\mtc@mttru@abbrev{X}
5890 \@mtc@setrules@true
5891 \def\mtc@rusw@abbrev{}
5892 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@typetable@#1\endcsname\relax
5893   \@mtc@setrules@false
5894   \def\mtc@rusw@abbrev{X}
5895   \def\mtc@mttru@abbrev{X}
5896   \mtcPackageError[E0019]{minitoc}%
5897     {\string\mtcsetrules \space has a wrong first argument
5898     \MessageBreak
5899     (#1)}%
5900     {It should be a mini-table type
5901     \MessageBreak
5902     (parttoc...sectlot)
5903     \MessageBreak
5904     Correct the source code.
5905     \MessageBreak
5906     Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
5907 \else
5908   \edef\mtc@mttru@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@typetable@#1}}
5909 \fi

```

`\if@mtc@sru@ok@` Then the second argument, a keyword of the `YN` family, and store the result in a macro
`\mtc@rusw@abbrev` `\mtc@rusw@abbrev`. The name of the effective macro is built and the macro executed.
`\mtc@mttru@abbrev`

E0020

I0008

I0007

```

if@setrules@false 5910 \@mtc@sru@ok@true
\mtc@noX 5911 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@YN@#2\endcsname\relax
\mtc@tmppn@name 5912   \@mtc@sru@ok@false
5913   \def\mtc@rusw@abbrev{X}
5914   \def\mtc@mttru@abbrev{X}
5915   \@mtc@setrules@false
5916   \mtcPackageError[E0020]{minitoc}%
5917     {\string\mtcsetrules \space has a wrong second argument
5918     \MessageBreak
5919     (#2)}%
5920     {It should be a boolean value (0/1, yes/no, on/off, ...)
5921     \MessageBreak
5922     Correct the source code.
5923     \MessageBreak
5924     Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
5925 \else
5926   \edef\mtc@rusw@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@YN@#2}}
5927   \def\mtc@rusw@abbrevX{X}
5928   \def\mtc@noX{mtc@noX}
5929   \def\mtc@tmppn@name{\mtc@rusw@abbrev\mtc@mttru@abbrev rule}
5930   \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@\mtc@rusw@abbrev X\endcsname\mtc@noX
5931     \mtcPackageInfo[I0008]{minitoc}%
5932     {Horizontal rules are inhibited
5933     \MessageBreak

```

```

5934         for the #1s}
5935     \else
5936         \mtcPackageInfo[I0007]{minitoc}%
5937         {Horizontal rules are activated
5938         \MessageBreak
5939         for the #1s}
5940     \fi
5941     \csname\mtc@tmppn@name\endcsname{}
5942 \fi
5943 }

```

9.66.8 The `\mtcsetfeature` command

For this command, we must define three families of keywords, but the third is just used to add the word “style” for the “pagestyle” when “pagestyle” is used.

A family (`ltypetable`) for the long names of the types of mini-tables:

```

5944 \@namedef{mtc@ltypetable@parttoc}{parttoc}\def\mtc@ltypetable@parttoc{parttoc}
5945 \@namedef{mtc@ltypetable@partlof}{partlof}\def\mtc@ltypetable@partlof{partlof}
5946 \@namedef{mtc@ltypetable@partlot}{partlot}\def\mtc@ltypetable@partlot{partlot}
5947 \@namedef{mtc@ltypetable@minitoc}{minitoc}\def\mtc@ltypetable@minitoc{minitoc}
5948 \@namedef{mtc@ltypetable@minilof}{minilof}\def\mtc@ltypetable@minilof{minilof}
5949 \@namedef{mtc@ltypetable@minilot}{minilot}\def\mtc@ltypetable@minilot{minilot}
5950 \@namedef{mtc@ltypetable@secttoc}{secttoc}\def\mtc@ltypetable@secttoc{secttoc}
5951 \@namedef{mtc@ltypetable@sectlof}{sectlof}\def\mtc@ltypetable@sectlof{sectlof}
5952 \@namedef{mtc@ltypetable@sectlot}{sectlot}\def\mtc@ltypetable@sectlot{sectlot}

```

A family (`featureparam`) for the type of feature:

```

5953 \@namedef{mtc@featureparam@before}{before}%
5954     \def\mtc@featureparam@before{before}
5955 \@namedef{mtc@featureparam@after}{after}%
5956     \def\mtc@featureparam@after{after}
5957 \@namedef{mtc@featureparam@open}{open}%
5958     \def\mtc@featureparam@open{open}
5959 \@namedef{mtc@featureparam@close}{close}%
5960     \def\mtc@featureparam@close{close}
5961 \@namedef{mtc@featureparam@pagestyle}{thispage}%
5962     \def\mtc@featureparam@pagestyle{thispage}

```

And a family (`ft3`) to add “style” if it is a “pagestyle” feature:

```

5963 \@namedef{mtc@ft3@before}{} \expandafter\def\csname mtc@ft3@before\endcsname{}
5964 \@namedef{mtc@ft3@after}{} \expandafter\def\csname mtc@ft3@after\endcsname{}
5965 \@namedef{mtc@ft3@open}{} \expandafter\def\csname mtc@ft3@open\endcsname{}
5966 \@namedef{mtc@ft3@close}{} \expandafter\def\csname mtc@ft3@close\endcsname{}
5967 \@namedef{mtc@ft3@pagestyle}{style}%
5968     \expandafter\def\csname mtc@ft3@pagestyle\endcsname{style}

```

The `\mtcsetfeature` command has the following syntax:

$$\backslash\mathrm{mtcsetfeature}\{mini\text{-}table\}\{feature\text{-}name\}\{commands\}$$

where *mini-table* is a keyword of the `ltypetable` family, *feature-name* is a keyword of the `featureparam` family (but also of the `ft3` family), and *commands* are the commands which constitute the selected feature.

`\if@mtc@setfeature@` We define a flag and the `\mtcsetfeature` command, with three arguments:
`\mtcsetfeature`

```
5969 \newif\if@mtc@setfeature@\@mtc@setfeature@true
5970 \newcommand{\mtcsetfeature}[3]{%
```

`\mtc@mtfeat@abbrev` We process the first argument, a keyword of the `ltypetable` family, and store the result in
`\mtc@featparam@abbrev` `\mtc@mtfeat@abbrev`:

E0011

```
5971 \def\mtc@mtfeat@abbrev{X}
5972 \def\mtc@featparam@abbrev{X}
5973 \@mtc@setfeature@true
5974 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@ltypetable@#1\endcsname\relax
5975   \@mtc@setfeature@false
5976   \def\mtc@mtfeat@abbrev{X}
5977   \mtcPackageError[E0011]{minitoc}%
5978     {\string\mtcsetfeature \space has a wrong first argument
5979     \MessageBreak
5980     (#1).
5981     \MessageBreak
5982     It should be a mini-table type
5983     \MessageBreak
5984     (parttoc...sectlot)}}%
5985   {Correct the source code.
5986   \MessageBreak
5987   Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
5988 \else
5989   \edef\mtc@mtfeat@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@ltypetable@#1}}
5990 \fi
```

`\if@mtc@setfeature@` The second argument is a keyword of the `featureparam` family, the result is stored in
`\mtc@featparam@abbrev` `\mtc@featparam@`; and the complement is computed from the first argument, interpreted
`\mtc@featparam@third` as a keyword of the `ft3` family and whose result is stored in `\mtc@featparam@third`.
`\@nameuse`

E0012

```
5991 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@featureparam@#2\endcsname\relax
5992   \@mtc@setfeature@false
5993   \def\mtc@featparam@abbrev{X}
5994   \def\mtc@featparam@third{X}
5995   \mtcPackageError[E0012]{minitoc}%
5996     {\string\mtcsetfeature \space has a wrong second argument
```

```

5997     \MessageBreak
5998     (#2).
5999     \MessageBreak
6000     It should be a feature param
6001     \MessageBreak
6002     (before, after, open, close, pagestyle)}%
6003     {Correct the source code.
6004     \MessageBreak
6005     Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
6006 \else
6007   \edef\mtc@featparam@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@featureparam@#2}}
6008   \edef\mtc@featparam@third{\@nameuse{mtc@ft3@#2}}
6009 \fi

```

\if@mtc@setfeature@ The name of the effective macro is built by concatenating these three pieces
 \mtc@tmpfeat@name (named \mtc@featparam@abbrev, \mtc@mtfeat@abbrev, and \mtc@featparam@third
 \mtc@featparam@abbrev respectively), then this macro is executed:
 \mtc@mtfeat@abbrev
 \mtc@featparam@third

I0014

E0023

```

6010 \if@mtc@setfeature@
6011   \def\mtc@tmpfeat@name%
6012     {\mtc@featparam@abbrev\mtc@mtfeat@abbrev\mtc@featparam@third}%
6013     \mtc@toks{#3}}%
6014   \mtcPackageInfo[I0014]{minitoc}%
6015   {\string\mtcsetfeature\space redefines the macro
6016   \MessageBreak
6017   "\csname mtc@tmpfeat@name\endcsname" as
6018   \MessageBreak
6019   "\the\mtc@toks"}%
6020   \expandafter\edef\csname\mtc@tmpfeat@name\endcsname{\the\mtc@toks}%
6021 \else
6022   \mtcPackageError[E0023]{minitoc}%
6023     {The macro \string\mtcsetfeature\space has incompatible
6024     \MessageBreak
6025     first (#1) and second (#2) arguments}%
6026     {Correct the source code.
6027     \MessageBreak
6028     Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
6029 \fi}

```

9.66.9 The \mtcsetdepth command

This command is very similar to the \mtcsettitle command. Its syntax is almost identical:

```
\mtcsetdepth{mini-table}{depth}
```

The *mini-table* type is a keyword like minitoc. The *depth* is the depth for a mini-table. If it is a mini-table for a list of figures or tables, the corresponding depth counter *must be available*, i.e., must have been created (often by an adequate package, like the subfig package [116]).



`\if@mtc@setdepth@` First, we declare a flag, set true:

```
6030 \newif\if@mtc@setdepth@\@mtc@setdepth@true
```

`\mtcsetdepth` Then we define the `\mtcsetdepth` command, with two arguments:

```
6031 \newcommand{\mtcsetdepth}[2]{%
```

`\mtc@mtade@abbrev` We process the first argument, a keyword of the `ltypetable` family. The result is stored in
`\if@mtc@setdepth@` `\mtc@mtade@abbrev:`
`\@nameuse`

E0009

```
6032 \def\mtc@mtade@abbrev{X}
6033 \@mtc@setdepth@true
6034 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@ltypetable@#1\endcsname\relax
6035   \@mtc@setdepth@false
6036   \def\mtc@mtade@abbrev{X}
6037   \mtcPackageError[E0009]{minitoc}%
6038     {\string\mtcsetdepth \space has a wrong first argument
6039     \MessageBreak
6040     (#1).
6041     \MessageBreak
6042     It should be a mini-table type
6043     \MessageBreak
6044     (parttoc...sectlot))}%
6045   {Correct the source code.
6046   \MessageBreak
6047   Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
6048 \else
6049   \edef\mtc@mtade@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@ltypetable@#1}}
6050 \fi
```

`\if@mtc@setdepth@` And we construct the name of the effective counter and gave it the value:
`\mtc@tmpde@name`

E0008

I0013

E0010

```
\mtc@mtade@abbrev 6051 \if@mtc@setdepth@
\mtc@toks 6052   \def\mtc@tmpde@name{\mtc@mtade@abbrev depth}
\setcounter 6053   \expandafter\noexpand\@ifundefined{c@\mtc@mtade@abbrev depth}%
6054     {\mtcPackageError[E0008]{minitoc}%
6055     {\string\mtcsetdepth \space attempts to use
6056     \MessageBreak
6057     an undefined counter (#1depth).}%
6058     {Correct the source code.
6059     \MessageBreak
6060     Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}}}%
6061   \mtc@toks{#2} % trick for explicit message using \the.
6062   \mtcPackageInfo[I0013]{minitoc}%
6063   {\string\mtcsetdepth\space redefines the counter
6064   \MessageBreak
6065   "\mtc@tmpde@name" as "\the\mtc@toks"}%
6066   \expandafter\csname c@\mtc@tmpde@name\endcsname=#2}%
6067 \else
```

```

6068 \mtcPackageError[E0010]{minitoc}%
6069     {\string\mtcsetdepth:\space Illegal type of table (#1)}%
6070     {Correct the source code.
6071     \MessageBreak
6072     Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}{\relax}%
6073 \fi}% end of \mtcsetdepth

```

9.66.10 The `\mtcsetoffset` command

This command is very similar to the `\mtcsettitle` command. Its syntax is almost identical:

```
\mtcsetoffset{mini-table}{value}
```

The *mini-table* type is a keyword like `minitoc`. The *value* is the offset value for a mini-table.

`\if@mtc@setoffset@` First, we declare a flag, set true:

```
6074 \newif\if@mtc@setoffset@\@mtc@setoffset@true
```

`\mtcsetoffset` Then we define the `\mtcsetoffset` command, with two arguments:

```
6075 \newcommand{\mtcsetoffset}[2]{%
```

`\mtc@mtaof@abbrev` We process the first argument, a keyword of the `typetable` family. The result is stored in `\if@mtc@setoffset@` `\mtc@mtaof@abbrev:` E0042
`\@nameuse`

```

6076 \def\mtc@mtaof@abbrev{X}
6077 \@mtc@setoffset@true
6078 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@typetable@#1\endcsname\relax
6079     \@mtc@setoffset@false
6080     \def\mtc@mtaof@abbrev{X}
6081     \mtcPackageError[E0042]{minitoc}%
6082     {\string\mtcsetoffset \space has a wrong first argument
6083     \MessageBreak
6084     (#1).
6085     \MessageBreak
6086     It should be a mini-table type
6087     \MessageBreak
6088     (parttoc...sectlot)}%
6089     {Correct the source code.
6090     \MessageBreak
6091     Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
6092 \else
6093     \edef\mtc@mtaof@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@typetable@#1}}
6094 \fi

```

`\if@mtc@setoffset@` And we construct the name of the effective offset and gave it the value:

`\mtc@tmpof@name`

`\mtc@mtaof@abbrev` 6095 `\if@mtc@setoffset@`

`\mtc@toks` 6096 `\def\mtc@tmpof@name{\mtc@mtaof@abbrev offset.}`

`\setcounter` 6097 `\expandafter\noexpand\@ifundefined{\mtc@mtaof@abbrev offset}%`

6098 `{\mtcPackageError[E0041]{minitoc}%`

6099 `{\string\mtcsetoffset \space attempts to use`

6100 `\MessageBreak`

6101 `an undefined offset (\mtc@mtaof@abbrev offset).}%`

6102 `{Correct the source code.`

6103 `\MessageBreak`

6104 `Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}}%`

6105 `\mtc@toks{#2} % trick for explicit message using \the.`

6106 `\mtcPackageInfo[I0052]{minitoc}%`

6107 `{\string\mtcsetoffset\space redefines`

6108 `\MessageBreak`

6109 `"\mtc@mtaof@abbrev offset" as "\the\mtc@toks"}%`

6110 `\expandafter\def\csname \mtc@mtaof@abbrev offset\endcsname{#2}}%`

6111 `\else`

6112 `\mtcPackageError[E0043]{minitoc}%`

6113 `{\string\mtcsetoffset:\space Illegal type of table (#1)}%`

6114 `{Correct the source code.`

6115 `\MessageBreak`

6116 `Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}{\relax}%`

6117 `\fi}% end of \mtcsetoffset`

E0041

I0052

E0043

9.67 The `mtchideinmaintoc` environment and siblings

`\if@mtc@Himtoc@` The flag `\if@mtc@Himtoc@` is used to detect an incorrect imbrication of this environment:

6118 `\newif\if@mtc@Himtoc@ \@mtc@Himtoc@false`

`\mtc@savetocdepth` We define a macro `\mtc@savetocdepth` to save the current value of the counter `tocdepth`.

`\mtc@restoretocdepth` Then we define this environment, which inserts into the TOC file this command and commands

`mtchideinmaintoc` of the form `\setcounter{tocdepth}{...}`. Note that `\xdef` is necessary! It also save and

`\if@mtc@Himtoc@` restore the value of the counter `tocdepth`, as the optional argument is the hiding depth of the

`\mtc@sv@tocdepth` entries in the main TOC.

`\arabic`

`\addtocontents` 6119 `\newcommand{\mtc@savetocdepth}{\xdef\mtc@sv@tocdepth{\arabic{tocdepth}}}%`

`\setcounter` 6120 `\newcommand{\mtc@restoretocdepth}{\setcounter{tocdepth}{\mtc@sv@tocdepth}}%`

6121 `\newenvironment{mtchideinmaintoc}[1][-1]%`

6122 `{\if@mtc@Himtoc@\mtcPackageError[E0005]{minitoc}%`

6123 `{Imbrication of mtchideinmaintoc environments}%`

6124 `{The hiding in main ToC could be incorrect}\fi`

6125 `\global\@mtc@Himtoc@true`

6126 `\addtocontents{toc}{\protect\mtc@savetocdepth}%`

6127 `\addtocontents{toc}{\protect\setcounter{tocdepth}{#1}}%`

6128 `{\if@mtc@Himtoc@\else\mtcPackageError[E0031]{minitoc}%`

E0005

E0031

```

6129 {Unbalanced mtchideinmaintoc environment}%
6130 {The hiding in main ToC could be incorrect}\fi
6131 \global\@mtc@Himtoc@false
6132 \addtocontents{toc}{\protect\mtc@restoretocdepth}}%

```

\AtBeginDocument The mtchideinmainlof and mtchideinmainlot environments are similar, but we must verify the presence of the associated depth counter, so we have two versions of each of these environments. This must be done *after* the loading of the packages.

\mtc@sv@tocdepth First, for the list of figures:

E0003

E0029

```

\mtc@svf@tocdepth
  \arabic 6133 \newif\if@mtc@Himlof@ \@mtc@Himlof@false
\addtocontents 6134 \AtBeginDocument{%
  \setcounter 6135 \@ifundefined{c@lofdepth}{%
    6136 \newenvironment{mtchideinmainlof}[1][-1]%
    6137 {\if@mtc@Himlof@\mtcPackageError[E0003]{minitoc}%
    6138 {Imbrication of mtchideinmainlof environments}%
    6139 {The hiding in main LoF could be incorrect}\fi
    6140 \global\@mtc@Himlof@true
    6141 \def\mtc@sv@tocdepth{\arabic{tocdepth}}%
    6142 \def\mtc@sv@lofdepth{\arabic{tocdepth}}%
    6143 \addtocontents{lof}{\protect\mtc@savetocdepth}%
    6144 \addtocontents{lof}{\protect\setcounter{tocdepth}{#1}}}%
    6145 {\if@mtc@Himlof@\else\mtcPackageError[E0029]{minitoc}%
    6146 {Unbalanced mtchideinmainlof environment}%
    6147 {The hiding in main LoF could be incorrect}\fi
    6148 \global\@mtc@Himtoc@false
    6149 \addtocontents{lof}{\protect\mtc@restoretocdepth}%
    6150 }}%
    6151 %
    6152 \newcommand{\mtc@savelofdepth}{\xdef\mtc@sv@lofdepth{\arabic{lofdepth}}}%
    6153 \newcommand{\mtc@restorelofdepth}{\setcounter{lofdepth}{\mtc@sv@lofdepth}}%
    6154 \newenvironment{mtchideinmainlof}[1][-1]%
    6155 {\if@mtc@Himlof@\mtcPackageError[E0003]{minitoc}%
    6156 {Imbrication of mtchideinmainlof environments}%
    6157 {The hiding in main LoF could be incorrect}\fi
    6158 \global\@mtc@Himlof@true
    6159 \addtocontents{lof}{\protect\mtc@savelofdepth}%
    6160 \addtocontents{lof}{\protect\setcounter{tocdepth}{#1}}}%
    6161 {\if@mtc@Himlof@\else\mtcPackageError[E0029]{minitoc}%
    6162 {Unbalanced mtchideinmainlof environment}%
    6163 {The hiding in main LoF could be incorrect}\fi
    6164 \global\@mtc@Himlof@false
    6165 \addtocontents{lof}{\protect\mtc@restoretocdepth}}}}

```

\AtBeginDocument Then for the list of tables:

E0004

E0030

```

  \if@mtc@Himlot@
mtchideinmainlot 6166 \newif\if@mtc@Himlot@ \@mtc@Himlot@false
\mtc@sv@lotdepth 6167 \AtBeginDocument{%
\mtc@sv@tocdepth 6168 \@ifundefined{c@lotdepth}{%
\mtc@svt@tocdepth
  \arabic
  \addtocontents
  \setcounter

```

```

6169 \newenvironment{mtchideinmainlot}[1][-1]%
6170 {\if@mtc@Himlot@\mtcPackageError[E0004]{minitoc}%
6171   {Imbrication of mtchideinmainlot environments}%
6172   {The hiding in main LoT could be incorrect}\fi
6173   \global\@mtc@Himlot@true
6174   \def\mtc@sv@tocdepth{\arabic{tocdepth}}%
6175   \def\mtc@sv@lotdepth{\arabic{tocdepth}}%
6176   \addtocontents{lot}{\protect\mtc@savetocdepth}%
6177   \addtocontents{lot}{\protect\setcounter{tocdepth}{#1}}}%
6178 {\if@mtc@Himlot@\else\mtcPackageError[E0030]{minitoc}%
6179   {Unbalanced mtchideinmainlot environment}%
6180   {The hiding in main LoT could be incorrect}\fi
6181   \global\@mtc@Himlot@false
6182   \addtocontents{lot}{\protect\mtc@restoretocdepth}%
6183 }}%
6184 {%
6185 \newcommand{\mtc@savelotdepth}{\xdef\mtc@sv@lotdepth{\arabic{lotdepth}}}%
6186 \newcommand{\mtc@restorelotdepth}{\setcounter{lotdepth}{\mtc@sv@lotdepth}}%
6187 \newenvironment{mtchideinmainlot}[1][-1]%
6188 {\if@mtc@Himlot@\mtcPackageError[E0004]{minitoc}%
6189   {Imbrication of mtchideinmainlot environments}%
6190   {The hiding in main LoT could be incorrect}\fi
6191   \global\@mtc@Himlot@true
6192   \addtocontents{lot}{\protect\mtc@savelotdepth}%
6193   \addtocontents{lot}{\protect\setcounter{lotdepth}{#1}}}%
6194 {\if@mtc@Himlot@\else\mtcPackageError[E0030]{minitoc}%
6195   {Unbalanced mtchideinmainlot environment}%
6196   {The hiding in main LoT could be incorrect}\fi
6197   \global\@mtc@Himlot@false
6198   \addtocontents{lot}{\protect\mtc@restorelotdepth}}}%

```

9.68 Fixing the “Glossary” entry in the TOC

This macro is complex. Its syntax is:

```
\mtcfixglossary[part|chapter|section]
```

\@ifundefined \mtc@glofix@level Depending on the document class, the “Glossary” entry in the TOC is treated as a starred chapter or a starred section. Hence we must first determine the default value of the optional argument. The default value is then stored in the macro \mtc@glofix@level. This is done by the following code, which eventually gives a warning message:

W0001
E0001
W0006

```

6199 \@ifundefined{chapter}{%
6200   \@ifundefined{section}%
6201     {\mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0001]{minitoc}%
6202      {\string\chapter\space and \string\section\space are undefined.%
6203      \MessageBreak

```

```

6204      Cannot use \string\mtcfixglossary \space without
6205      \MessageBreak
6206      optional argument [part]]%
6207      \@ifundefined{part}%
6208      {\mtcPackageError[E0001]{minitoc}%
6209       {But \string\part\space is undefined}%
6210       {\string\mtcfixglossary\space not usable}}%
6211      {\mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0006]{minitoc}%
6212       {\string\mtcfixglossary\space can only be used
6213        \MessageBreak
6214        with the [part] optional argument,
6215        \MessageBreak
6216        which becomes the default}%
6217      \def\mtc@glofix@level{part}%
6218      }%
6219      {\def\mtc@glofix@level{section}}}%
6220 {\def\mtc@glofix@level{chapter}}

```

\if@mtcfixglossary@ Then we define a flag (\if@mtcfixglossary@) and the command \mtcfixglossary, which adds the necessary lines in the TOC, the LOF and the LOT.

E0026

```

\mtcfixglossary
\addcontentsline

6221 \newif\if@mtcfixglossary@ \mtcfixglossary@false
6222 \newcommand{\mtcfixglossary}[1][\mtc@glofix@level]{%
6223   \@mtcfixglossary@false
6224   \expandafter%
6225   \ifx\csname #1\endcsname\part\relax\mtcfixglossary@true\fi
6226   \expandafter%
6227   \ifx\csname #1\endcsname\chapter\relax\mtcfixglossary@true\fi
6228   \expandafter%
6229   \ifx\csname #1\endcsname\section\relax\mtcfixglossary@true\fi
6230   \if@mtcfixglossary@
6231     \addcontentsline{lof}{x\mtc@glofix@level}{}%
6232     \addcontentsline{lot}{x\mtc@glofix@level}{}%
6233     \csname mtcadd\mtc@glofix@level\endcsname\relax
6234   \else
6235     \mtcPackageError[E0026]{minitoc}%
6236     {The optional argument of \string\mtcfixglossary
6237      \MessageBreak
6238      is wrong}%
6239     {It must be omitted (\mtc@glofix@level), or be part, chapter or section}%
6240   \fi
6241 }%

```

9.69 Fixing the “Index” entry in the TOC

This macro is complex. Its syntax is:

```
\mtcfixindex[part|chapter|section]
```

W0002

W0007

E0002

`\@ifundefined` Depending on the document class, the “Index” entry in the TOC is treated as a starred chapter or a starred section. Hence we must first determine the default value of the optional argument. The default value is then stored in the macro `\mtc@ixfix@level`. This is done by the following code, which eventually gives a warning message:

```

6242 \@ifundefined{chapter}{%
6243   \@ifundefined{section}%
6244     {\mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0002]{minitoc}%
6245      {\string\chapter\space and \string\section\space are undefined.%
6246       \MessageBreak
6247       Cannot use \string\mtcfixindex \space without
6248       \MessageBreak
6249       optional argument [part]}}%
6250   \@ifundefined{part}%
6251     {\mtcPackageError[E0002]{minitoc}%
6252      {But \string\part\space is undefined}%
6253      {\string\mtcfixindex\space not usable}}%
6254   {\mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0007]{minitoc}%
6255    {\string\mtcfixindex\space can only be used with
6256     \MessageBreak
6257     the [part] optional argument,
6258     \MessageBreak
6259     which becomes the default}}%
6260   \def\mtc@ixfix@level{part}%
6261   }}%
6262   {\def\mtc@ixfix@level{section}}}%
6263 {\def\mtc@ixfix@level{chapter}}

```

`\if@mtcfixindex@` Then we define a flag and the command `\mtcfixindex`, which adds the necessary lines in the TOC, the LOF and the LOT.

`\mtcfixindex`

`\addcontentsline`

E0027

```

6264 \newif\if@mtcfixindex@ \@mtcfixindex@false
6265 \newcommand{\mtcfixindex}[1][\mtc@ixfix@level]{%
6266   \if@mtcfixindex@false
6267     \expandafter%
6268     \ifx\csname #1\endcsname\part\relax\@mtcfixindex@true\fi
6269     \expandafter%
6270     \ifx\csname #1\endcsname\chapter\relax\@mtcfixindex@true\fi
6271     \expandafter%
6272     \ifx\csname #1\endcsname\section\relax\@mtcfixindex@true\fi
6273     \if@mtcfixindex@
6274       \addcontentsline{lof}{x\mtc@ixfix@level}{}%
6275       \addcontentsline{lot}{x\mtc@ixfix@level}{}%
6276       \csname mtcadd\mtc@ixfix@level\endcsname\relax
6277     \else
6278       \mtcPackageError[E0027]{minitoc}%
6279       {The optional argument of \string\mtcfixindex
6280        \MessageBreak
6281        is wrong}%
6282       {It must be omitted (\mtc@ixfix@level), or be part, chapter or section}%
6283     \fi
6284 }%

```

9.70 Fixing the “Nomenclature” entry in the TOC

This macro is complex. Its syntax is:

```
\mtcfixnomenclature[part|chapter|section]
```

`\@ifundefined` Depending on the document class, the “Nomenclature” entry ¹⁵ in the TOC is treated as a starred chapter or a starred section. Hence we must first determine the default value of the optional argument. The default value is then stored in the macro `\mtc@nomenclfix@level`. This is done by the following code, which eventually gives a warning message:

W0095

E0039

W0096

```

6285 \@ifundefined{chapter}{%
6286   \@ifundefined{section}%
6287     {\mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0095]{minitoc}%
6288      {\string\chapter\space and \string\section\space are undefined.%
6289       \MessageBreak
6290       Cannot use \string\mtcfixnomenclature \space without
6291       \MessageBreak
6292       optional argument [part]}}%
6293   \@ifundefined{part}%
6294     {\mtcPackageError[E0039]{minitoc}%
6295      {\string\part\space is undefined}%
6296      {\string\mtcfixnomclature\space not usable}}%
6297   {\mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0096]{minitoc}%
6298    {\string\mtcfixnomenclature\space can only be used with
6299     \MessageBreak
6300     the [part] optional argument,
6301     \MessageBreak
6302     which becomes the default}}%
6303   \def\mtc@nomenclfix@level{part}%
6304   }%
6305   {\def\mtc@nomenclfix@level{section}}}%
6306 {\def\mtc@nomenclfix@level{chapter}}
```

`\if@mtcfixnomclature@` Then we define a flag and the command `\mtcfixnomenclature`, which adds the necessary lines in the TOC, the LOF and the LOT.

E0040

`\mtcfixnomenclature`
`\addcontentsline`

```

6307 \newif\if@mtcfixnomenclature@ \@mtcfixnomenclature@false
6308 \newcommand{\mtcfixnomenclature}[1][\mtc@nomenclfix@level]{%
6309   \@mtcfixnomenclature@false
6310   \expandafter%
6311   \ifx\csname #1\endcsname\part\relax\@mtcfixnomenclature@true\fi
6312   \expandafter%
6313   \ifx\csname #1\endcsname\chapter\relax\@mtcfixnomenclature@true\fi
6314   \expandafter%
6315   \ifx\csname #1\endcsname\section\relax\@mtcfixnomenclature@true\fi
```

¹⁵If you are using the nomencl package [351].


```

6316 \if@mtcfixnomenclature@
6317 \addcontentsline{lof}{x\mtc@nomenclfix@level}{}%
6318 \addcontentsline{lot}{x\mtc@nomenclfix@level}{}%
6319 \csname mtcadd\mtc@nomenclfix@level\endcsname\relax
6320 \else
6321 \mtcPackageError[E0040]{minitoc}%
6322   {The optional argument of \string\mtcfixnomenclature
6323     \MessageBreak
6324     is wrong}%
6325   {It must be omitted (\mtc@nomenclfix@level), or be part, chapter or section}%
6326 \fi
6327 }%

```

9.71 The \mtcselectlanguage command

\mtcselectlanguage This command loads a minitoc language definition file *language.mld* to set the language-dependent titles for the mini-tables. But first, we verify that this file exists. The flag \if@mtc@insellang@ \IfFileExists \if@mtc@insellang@ is true while we are in this macro.

I0010

E0006

```

\@input
6328 \newif\if@mtc@insellang@ \@mtc@insellang@false
6329 \def\mtcselectlanguage#1{%
6330   \@mtc@insellang@true
6331   \InputIfFileExists{#1.mld}%
6332   {\mtcPackageInfo[I0010]{minitoc}{The #1 language is selected.%
6333     \MessageBreak
6334     }}%
6335   {\mtcPackageError[E0006]{minitoc}%
6336     {#1 is not a known language,
6337     \MessageBreak
6338     #1.mld not found.
6339     \MessageBreak
6340     Command ignored}%
6341     {See the minitoc documentation.
6342     \MessageBreak
6343     Correct the source using a valid language name.
6344     \MessageBreak
6345     Press RETURN}}%
6346   \@mtc@insellang@false
6347 }

```

9.72 The \mtcloadmlo internal command

\mtcloadmlo This command loads a minitoc language object file *language.mlo* to set the language-dependent titles for the mini-tables when exotic characters are needed. This command is used \if@mtc@insellang@ \IfFileExists only in some .mld files when the title strings can not be generated by the normal process- \@input

ing of minitoc.dtx. The .mlo files are generated by filecontents environments in the minitoc.ins file. But first, we verify that this .mlo file exists.

This command should not be invoked directly by the user. This is verified via the flag \if@mtc@insellang@.



I0011
E0007
E0032

```

6348 \def\mtcloadmlo#1{%
6349   \if@mtc@insellang@
6350   \InputIfFileExists{#1.mlo}%
6351     {\mtcPackageInfo[I0011]{minitoc}%
6352       {#1 minitoc language object selected.
6353         \MessageBreak}}%
6354     {\mtcPackageError[E0007]{minitoc}%
6355       {#1 is not a known minitoc
6356         \MessageBreak
6357         language object file (.mlo),
6358         \MessageBreak
6359         #1.mlo not found.
6360         \MessageBreak
6361         Command ignored}%
6362       {See the minitoc documentation.
6363         \MessageBreak
6364         Correct the source using a valid language name.
6365         \MessageBreak
6366         Press RETURN}}%
6367   \else
6368     \mtcPackageError[E0032]{minitoc}%
6369     {You are using the \string\mtcloadmlo\space command
6370       \MessageBreak
6371       outside of a .mld file}%
6372     {It will be ignored}
6373   \@mtc@insellang@false
6374 \fi}

```

9.73 The “coffee breaks”

\addcoffeeline For the minutes package [236] (by Knut LICKERT), we need some commands to insert special entries, undotted, in the TOC to mark “coffee breaks” ☕ in a conference. Hence we define \addcoffeeline, \coffeeline and \l@coffee, and internal commands analog to the standard internal commands to format the TOC.

```

6375 \def\addcoffeeline#1#2#3{%
6376   \addtocontents{#1}{\protect\coffeeline{#2}{#3}{\null}}}
6377 \def\coffeeline#1{\csname l@#1\endcsname}
6378 \newcommand*\l@coffee{\@Undottedtoctline{1}{1.5em}{2.3em}}

```

9.74 Initialization of counters

```

\AtBeginDocument  At the beginning of the document, we initialize the absolute counters for parts, chapters and
\@ifundefined     sections, if they are defined.
\setcounter

6379 \AtBeginDocument{%
6380 \@ifundefined{c@ptc}{}{\setcounter{ptc}{0}}
6381 \@ifundefined{c@mtc}{}{\setcounter{mtc}{0}}
6382 \@ifundefined{c@stc}{}{\setcounter{stc}{0}}

```

9.75 Declarations for simple options

These options are just setting a flag.

9.75.1 Options **tight** and **loose**, **k-tight** and **k-loose**

```

\DeclareOption  These options influence the interline separation in the mini-tables.
\iftightmtc
\ifktightmtc 6383 \DeclareOption{tight}{\tightmtctrue}
6384 \DeclareOption{loose}{\tightmtcfalse} % default
6385 \DeclareOption{k-tight}{\ktightmtctrue}
6386 \DeclareOption{k-loose}{\ktightmtcfalse} % default

```

9.75.2 Options **checkfiles** and **nocheckfiles**

```

\DeclareOption  These options activate or inhibit the checking for empty mini-table files.
\if@mtc@checkfiles
6387 \DeclareOption{checkfiles}{\@mtc@checkfilestrue} % default
6388 \DeclareOption{nocheckfiles}{\@mtc@checkfilesfalse}

```

9.75.3 Options **dotted** and **undotted**

```

\DeclareOption  These options activate or inhibit the leaders (lines of dots) in the mini-tables.
\ifundottedmtc
6389 \DeclareOption{undotted}{\undottedmtctrue}
6390 \DeclareOption{dotted}{\undottedmtcfalse} % default

```

9.75.4 Option notoccite

```
\DeclareOption This option will later load the notoccite package [10].
\if@mtc@notoccite@
6391 \DeclareOption{notoccite}{\@mtc@notoccite@true}
```

9.75.5 Option shorttext

```
\DeclareOption This option forces the use of short extensions.
\if@longextensions@
6392 \DeclareOption{shorttext}{%
6393   \@longextensions@false
6394   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0020]{minitoc}%
6395     {You have forced the use of short extensions}}
```

W0020

9.76 The insection option

```
\if@mtc@ss@insection@ This option is available only if \chapter is not defined and \section defined. It is to be
\ifundefined revised when chapter/section level commands will ever be allowed together, sometime in the
\DeclareOption far away future, with a lot of luck (and work)16.
```

E0035

```
6396 \newif\if@mtc@ss@insection@ \@mtc@ss@insection@false
6397 \@ifundefined{chapter}{%
6398   \@ifundefined{section}{\DeclareOption{insection}{%
6399     \mtcPackageError[E0035]{minitoc}%
6400       {You have used the 'insection' option in
6401         \MessageBreak
6402         a document where chapters are defined.
6403         \MessageBreak
6404         This is not compatible: option ignored.}%
6405       {Remove this option.
6406         \MessageBreak
6407         Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
6408         } }%
6409       {%
6410         \DeclareOption{insection}%
6411           {\@mtc@ss@insection@true}%
6412         }%
6413 } }
```

¹⁶Please, do not dream too much!

9.77 The listfiles and nolistfiles options

`\if@mtc@listfiles@` The `listfiles` option creates a file containing a list of the auxiliary files created by the minitoc package. This is the default. This file is named *document.maf*. The `nolistfiles` option inhibits this listing.

```
6414 \newif\if@mtc@listfiles@ \@mtc@listfiles@true
6415 \DeclareOption{listfiles}{\@mtc@listfiles@true}
6416 \DeclareOption{nolistfiles}{\@mtc@listfiles@false}
```

9.78 Language options

`\@gobblethree` First, we define an utility macro (`\@gobblethree`), a list of the missing files (accumulated in the `\mtc@listmisslanguages` macro), and a macro (`\mtc@addmisslanguage`) to add a file name to the list:

```
\mtc@LML
\DeclareOption{listfiles}{\@mtc@listfiles@true}
\DeclareOption{nolistfiles}{\@mtc@listfiles@false}
\def\@gobblethree#1#2#3{\empty}
\def\mtc@listmisslanguages{}
\def\mtc@addmisslanguage#1{%
  \let\mtc@LML\mtc@listmisslanguages
  \edef\mtc@listmisslanguages{\mtc@LML \MessageBreak #1}}
```

`\if@mtc@misslang` Before defining a language option, we must verify that the corresponding `.mld` file exists, and, if necessary, that the corresponding `.mlo` file exists. Hence, we must first define a flag `\mtc@setlangopt` and two macros to test the presence of these files; if the files are available, we define the language option.

`\IfFileExists`

`\DeclareOption`

```
\mtc@addmisslanguage 6422 \newif\if@mtc@misslang\@mtc@misslangfalse
\mtcPackageWarningNoLine 6423 \newcommand{\mtc@setlangopt}[1]{%
  6424   \IfFileExists{#1.mld}%
  6425   {\DeclareOption{#1}{\mtcselectlanguage{#1}}}%
  6426   {\@mtc@misslangtrue
  6427    \mtc@addmisslanguage{#1.mld}
  6428    \mtcPackageInfo[I0050]{minitoc}%
  6429    {The required "#1.mld" file is missing.
  6430     \MessageBreak
  6431     The "#1" language option
  6432     \MessageBreak
  6433     will not be available.
  6434     \MessageBreak
  6435     Please install it from a recent distribution
  6436     \MessageBreak
  6437     or from the CTAN archives\@gobble}}%
  6438 }%
  6439 \newcommand{\mtc@setlangopto}[1]{%
  6440   \IfFileExists{#1.mlo}%
```

I0050

I0051

```

6441 {\mtc@setlangopt{#1}}%
6442 {\@mtc@misslangtrue
6443 \mtc@addmisslanguage{#1.mlo}
6444 \mtcPackageInfo[I0051]{minitoc}%
6445 {The required "#1.mlo" file is missing.
6446 \MessageBreak
6447 The "#1" language option
6448 \MessageBreak
6449 will not be available.
6450 \MessageBreak
6451 Please install it from a recent distribution
6452 \MessageBreak
6453 or from the CTAN archives\@gobble}%
6454 \IfFileExists{#1.mld}{}%
6455 {\@mtc@misslangtrue
6456 \mtc@addmisslanguage{#1.mld}
6457 \mtcPackageInfo[I0050]{minitoc}%
6458 {The required "#1.mld" file is missing.
6459 \MessageBreak
6460 The "#1" language option will not be available.
6461 \MessageBreak
6462 Please install it from a recent distribution
6463 \MessageBreak
6464 or from the CTAN archives\@gobble}%
6465 }%
6466 }%
6467 }%

```

```

\if@mtc@misslang Some .mld files are mandatory (english.mld because english is the default language), so
\mtc@setlangoptm their absence is a serious error:
\IfFileExists
\DeclareOption 6468 \newcommand{\mtc@setlangoptm}[1]{%
\mtcPackageError 6469 \IfFileExists{#1.mld}%
\mtc@addmisslanguage 6470 {\DeclareOption{#1}{\mtcselectlanguage{#1}}}%
6471 {\@mtc@misslangtrue
6472 \mtc@addmisslanguage{#1.mld}
6473 \mtcPackageError[E0038]{minitoc}%
6474 {Your minitoc installation is incomplete.
6475 \MessageBreak
6476 A mandatory minitoc language object file,
6477 \MessageBreak
6478 #1.mld, is not found.
6479 \MessageBreak
6480 We will try to continue with
6481 \MessageBreak
6482 current/default values}%
6483 {See the minitoc documentation.
6484 \MessageBreak
6485 Please fix your minitoc installation.
6486 \MessageBreak
6487 Press <return> to continue}%

```

E0038

```

\providecommand We must define the default titles (english):
  \ptctitle
  \plftitle 6488 \providecommand{\ptctitle}{Table of Contents}%
  \plttitle 6489 \providecommand{\plftitle}{List of Figures}%
  \mtctitle 6490 \providecommand{\plttitle}{List of Tables}%
  \mlftitle 6491 \providecommand{\mtctitle}{Contents}%
  \mlttitle 6492 \providecommand{\mlftitle}{Figures}%
  \stctitle 6493 \providecommand{\mlttitle}{Tables}%
  \slftitle 6494 \providecommand{\stctitle}{Contents}%
  \slttitle 6495 \providecommand{\slftitle}{Figures}%
  6496 \providecommand{\slttitle}{Tables}%
  6497 }%

```

```

\AtEndDocument If a .mld or .mlo file is missing, we signal that at the end of the document:
\if@mtc@misslang
\mtcPackageWarningNoLine 6498 \AtEndDocument{%
  \MessageBreak 6499 \if@mtc@misslang
\mtc@listmisslanguages 6500 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0093]{minitoc}%
  \@gobblethree 6501 {Some "*.mld" or "*.mlo" files are missing
  6502 \MessageBreak
  6503 in your installation.
  6504 \MessageBreak
  6505 Search for the I0050 and I0051 info messages
  6506 \MessageBreak
  6507 in the \string\jobname.log file.
  6508 \MessageBreak
  6509 Please install the missing files from
  6510 \MessageBreak
  6511 a recent distribution
  6512 \MessageBreak
  6513 or from the CTAN archives}%
  6514 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0094]{minitoc}%
  6515 {Missing minitoc language file(s)\string:
  6516 \MessageBreak
  6517 \mtc@listmisslanguages\@gobblethree}%
  6518 \fi
  6519 }%

```

W0093
W0094

\DeclareOption Each language option reads the corresponding *language.mld* file via the specialized macro
\mtc@setlangopt \mtcselectlanguage, after verification by \mtc@setlangopt or \mtc@setlangopto
\mtc@setlangopto (when a .mlo file is required), by \mtc@setlangoptm when the language is mandatory. If
\mtc@setlangoptm the file does not exist, a standard error message is displayed. The language options are (should
be) in alphabetical order (to make maintenance easier). Several options could load the same
file, but, by convention, there should be a *language.mld* file for each language option, given
that this file may load another one (as *american.mld* loads *english.mld*).

```

6520 \mtc@setlangopt{acadian}%
6521 \mtc@setlangopt{acadien}%
6522 \mtc@setlangopt{afrikaan}%
6523 \mtc@setlangopt{afrikaans}%

```

```

6524 \mtc@setlangopt{albanian}%
6525 \mtc@setlangopt{american}%
6526 \mtc@setlangopt{arab}%
6527 \mtc@setlangopt{arab2}%

```

```

6528 \mtc@setlangopt{arabi}%
6529 \mtc@setlangopt{arabic}%
6530 \mtc@setlangopt{armenian}%
6531 \mtc@setlangopt{australian}%
6532 \mtc@setlangopt{austrian}%
6533 \mtc@setlangopt{bahasa}%
6534 \mtc@setlangopt{bahasai}%
6535 \mtc@setlangopt{bahasam}%
6536 \mtc@setlangopt{bangla}%
6537 \mtc@setlangopt{basque}%
6538 \mtc@setlangopt{bicig}%
6539 \mtc@setlangopt{bicig2}%
6540 \mtc@setlangopt{bicig3}%
6541 \mtc@setlangopt{bithe}%
6542 \mtc@setlangopt{brazil}%
6543 \mtc@setlangopt{brazilian}%
6544 \mtc@setlangopt{breton}%
6545 \mtc@setlangopt{british}%
6546 \mtc@setlangopt{bulgarian}%
6547 \mtc@setlangopt{bulgarianb}%
6548 \mtc@setlangopt{buryat}%
6549 \mtc@setlangopt{buryat2}%
6550 \mtc@setlangopt{canadian}%
6551 \mtc@setlangopt{canadien}%
6552 \mtc@setlangopt{castillan}%
6553 \mtc@setlangopt{castillian}%
6554 \mtc@setlangopt{catalan}%
6555 \mtc@setlangopt{chinese1}%
6556 \mtc@setlangopt{chinese2}%
6557 \mtc@setlangopt{croatian}%
6558 \mtc@setlangopt{czech}%
6559 \mtc@setlangopt{danish}%
6560 \mtc@setlangopt{devanagari}%
6561 \mtc@setlangopt{dutch}%
6562 \mtc@setlangopt{english}%
6563 \mtc@setlangopt{english1}%
6564 \mtc@setlangopt{english2}%
6565 \mtc@setlangopt{esperant}%
6566 \mtc@setlangopt{esperanto}%
6567 \mtc@setlangopt{estonian}%
6568 \mtc@setlangopt{ethiopia}%
6569 \mtc@setlangopt{ethiopian}%
6570 \mtc@setlangopt{ethiopian2}%
6571 \mtc@setlangopt{farsi1}%
6572 \mtc@setlangopt{farsi2}%
6573 \mtc@setlangopt{farsi3}%
6574 \mtc@setlangopt{finnish}%
6575 \mtc@setlangopt{finnish2}%
6576 \mtc@setlangopt{francais}%
6577 \mtc@setlangopt{french}%
6578 \mtc@setlangopt{french1}%
6579 \mtc@setlangopt{french2}%
6580 \mtc@setlangopt{frenchb}%
6581 \mtc@setlangopt{frenchle}%
6582 \mtc@setlangopt{frenchpro}%
6583 \mtc@setlangopt{galician}%
6584 \mtc@setlangopt{german}%
6585 \mtc@setlangopt{germanb}%
6586 \mtc@setlangopt{germanb2}%
6587 \mtc@setlangopt{greek}%
6588 \mtc@setlangopt{greek-mono}%
6589 \mtc@setlangopt{greek-polydemo}%
6590 \mtc@setlangopt{greek-polykatha}%
6591 \mtc@setlangopt{guarani}%
6592 \mtc@setlangopt{hangul1}%
6593 \mtc@setlangopt{hangul2}%
6594 \mtc@setlangopt{hangul3}%
6595 \mtc@setlangopt{hangul4}%
6596 \mtc@setlangopt{hangul-u8}%
6597 \mtc@setlangopt{hanja1}%
6598 \mtc@setlangopt{hanja2}%
6599 \mtc@setlangopt{hanja-u8}%
6600 \mtc@setlangopt{hebrew}%
6601 \mtc@setlangopt{hebrew2}%
6602 \mtc@setlangopt{hindi}%
6603 \mtc@setlangopt{hindi-modern}%
6604 \mtc@setlangopt{hungarian}%
6605 \mtc@setlangopt{icelandic}%
6606 \mtc@setlangopt{indon}%
6607 \mtc@setlangopt{indonesian}%
6608 \mtc@setlangopt{interlingua}%
6609 \mtc@setlangopt{irish}%
6610 \mtc@setlangopt{italian}%
6611 \mtc@setlangopt{italian2}%
6612 \mtc@setlangopt{japanese}%
6613 \mtc@setlangopt{japanese2}%
6614 \mtc@setlangopt{japanese3}%
6615 \mtc@setlangopt{japanese4}%
6616 \mtc@setlangopt{japanese5}%
6617 \mtc@setlangopt{japanese6}%
6618 \mtc@setlangopt{kannada}%
6619 \mtc@setlangopt{khalkha}%
6620 \mtc@setlangopt{latin}%
6621 \mtc@setlangopt{latin2}%
6622 \mtc@setlangopt{latinc}%
6623 \mtc@setlangopt{latinc2}%
6624 \mtc@setlangopt{latvian}%
6625 \mtc@setlangopt{latvian2}%
6626 \mtc@setlangopt{letton}%
6627 \mtc@setlangopt{letton2}%
6628 \mtc@setlangopt{lithuanian}%
6629 \mtc@setlangopt{lithuanian2}%
6630 \mtc@setlangopt{lowersorbian}%
6631 \mtc@setlangopt{lsorbian}%
6632 \mtc@setlangopt{magyar}%
6633 \mtc@setlangopt{magyar2}%
6634 \mtc@setlangopt{magyar3}%
6635 \mtc@setlangopt{malay}%

```



```

6636 \mtc@setlangopt{malayalam-keli}%
6637 \mtc@setlangopto{malayalam-omega}%
6638 \mtc@setlangopt{malayalam-rachana}%
6639 \mtc@setlangopt{malayalam-rachana2}%
6640 \mtc@setlangopt{manju}%
6641 \mtc@setlangopt{meyalu}%
6642 \mtc@setlangopt{mongol}%
6643 \mtc@setlangopt{mongolb}%
6644 \mtc@setlangopt{mongolian}%
6645 \mtc@setlangopt{naustrian}%
6646 \mtc@setlangopt{ngerman}%
6647 \mtc@setlangopt{newzealand}%
6648 \mtc@setlangopt{ngermanb}%
6649 \mtc@setlangopt{ngermanb2}%
6650 \mtc@setlangopt{norsk}%
6651 \mtc@setlangopt{norsk2}%
6652 \mtc@setlangopt{nynorsk}%
6653 \mtc@setlangopt{nynorsk2}%
6654 \mtc@setlangopt{polish}%
6655 \mtc@setlangopt{polish2}%
6656 \mtc@setlangopt{polski}%
6657 \mtc@setlangopt{portuges}%
6658 \mtc@setlangopt{portuguese}%
6659 \mtc@setlangopt{romanian}%
6660 \mtc@setlangopt{romanian2}%
6661 \mtc@setlangopt{romanian3}%
6662 \mtc@setlangopt{russian}%
6663 \mtc@setlangopt{russianb}%
6664 \mtc@setlangopt{russianc}%
6665 \mtc@setlangopt{russian2m}%
6666 \mtc@setlangopt{russian2o}%
6667 \mtc@setlangopto{russian-cca}%
6668 \mtc@setlangopto{russian-cca1}%

6669 \mtc@setlangopto{russian-lh}%
6670 \mtc@setlangopto{russian-lhcyralt}%
6671 \mtc@setlangopto{russian-lhcyrkoi}%
6672 \mtc@setlangopto{russian-lhcyrwin}%
6673 \mtc@setlangopt{samin}%
6674 \mtc@setlangopt{scottish}%
6675 \mtc@setlangopt{serbian}%
6676 \mtc@setlangopt{serbianc}%
6677 \mtc@setlangopt{slovak}%
6678 \mtc@setlangopt{slovene}%
6679 \mtc@setlangopt{spanish}%
6680 \mtc@setlangopt{spanish2}%
6681 \mtc@setlangopt{spanish3}%
6682 \mtc@setlangopt{spanish4}%
6683 \mtc@setlangopt{swedish}%
6684 \mtc@setlangopt{swedish2}%
6685 \mtc@setlangopto{thai}%
6686 \mtc@setlangopt{turkish}%
6687 \mtc@setlangopt{uighur}%
6688 \mtc@setlangopt{uighur2}%
6689 \mtc@setlangopt{uighur3}%
6690 \mtc@setlangopt{UKenglish}%
6691 \mtc@setlangopt{ukraineb}%
6692 \mtc@setlangopt{ukrainian}%
6693 \mtc@setlangopt{uppersorbian}%
6694 \mtc@setlangopt{USenglish}%
6695 \mtc@setlangopt{usorbian}%
6696 \mtc@setlangopt{vietnam}%
6697 \mtc@setlangopt{vietnamese}%
6698 \mtc@setlangopt{welsh}%
6699 \mtc@setlangopt{xalx}%
6700 \mtc@setlangopt{xalx2}%
6701 \mtc@setlangopt{xalx3}%

```

9.79 The hints option

\DeclareOption We declare the hints (default) and nohints options:

\if@mtc@hints@

```

6702 \DeclareOption{hints}{\@mtc@hints@true}
6703 \DeclareOption{nohints}{\@mtc@hints@false}

```

\mtc@hints@begindoc The hints option is made of three parts: the first, \mtc@hints@begindoc, is executed via
\AtBeginDocument \AtBeginDocument and looks if some packages or classes are loaded, then gives warnings
about their compatibility with minitoc.

The second part is made of tiny pieces of code inserted in the minitoc code, to verify that some macros are called in the right order.

`\mtc@hints@enddoc` The third and last part, `\mtc@hints@enddoc`, is executed via `\AtEndDocument` and examines the flags set by the first and the second parts. Then, if necessary, it writes some infos in the `document.log` file and/or warnings on the screen and in the `document.log` file. The hints option *does not signal errors*, only infos and warnings, so it does not stop the \LaTeX run.



9.79.1 First part: `\mtc@hints@begindoc`

`\if@mtc@abstract@loaded@` We declare some flags and the first part of the hints option (for an `\AtBeginDocument` block):

`\mtc@hints@begindoc`

`\if@mtc@toc@used@`

`\if@mtc@lof@used@` 6704 `\newif\if@mtc@abstract@loaded@ \@mtc@abstract@loaded@false`

`\if@mtc@lot@used@` 6705 `\newif\if@mtc@toc@used@ \global\@mtc@toc@used@false`

6706 `\newif\if@mtc@lof@used@ \global\@mtc@lof@used@false`

6707 `\newif\if@mtc@lot@used@ \global\@mtc@lot@used@false`

6708 `\def\mtc@hints@begindoc{%`

6709 `\mtcPackageInfo[I0049]{minitoc(hints)}%`

6710 `{==> You requested the hints option`

6711 `\MessageBreak`

6712 `Some hints are eventually given below\@gobble}%`

I0049

9.79.1.1 Hint about the alphanum package

`\@ifpackageloaded` We test the presence of the alphanum package (part of the jura class [94]), and emit a warning, because this package is *incompatible* with minitoc:

6713 `\@ifpackageloaded{alphanum}%`

6714 `{\@mtc@hints@given@true`

6715 `\mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0025]{minitoc(hints)}%`

6716 `{--- The alphanum package is loaded.`

6717 `\MessageBreak`

6718 `It is incompatible`

6719 `\MessageBreak`

6720 `with the minitoc package}}}%`



W0025

9.79.1.2 Hint about the appendix package

`\@ifpackageloaded` We test the presence of the appendix package [365]:

`\if@mtc@hints@given@`

6721 `\@ifpackageloaded{appendix}{%`

I0042

```

6722 \@mtc@hints@given@true
6723 \mtcPackageInfo[I0042]{minitoc(hints)}%
6724   {--- The appendix package is loaded.
6725     \MessageBreak
6726     See the minitoc package documentation
6727     \MessageBreak
6728     for specific precautions\@gobble}}}%

```

9.79.1.3 Hint about the tocbibind package

\@ifpackageloaded We test the presence of the tocbibind package [366]:
 \if@mtc@hints@given@

I0046

```

6729 \@ifpackageloaded{tocbibind}%
6730   {\@mtc@hints@given@true
6731     \mtcPackageInfo[I0046]{minitoc(hints)}%
6732     {--- The tocbibind package is loaded.
6733       \MessageBreak
6734       See the minitoc package documentation
6735       \MessageBreak
6736       for specific precautions\@gobble}}}%

```

9.79.1.4 Hint about the KOMA-Script classes

\@ifclassloaded We test the presence of each minitoc-compatible KOMA-Script class [207, 270, 308]:
 \if@mtc@hints@given@

I0043

```

6737 \@ifclassloaded{scrbook}%
6738   {\@mtc@hints@given@true
6739     \mtcPackageInfo[I0043]{minitoc(hints)}%
6740     {--- The KOMAScript scrbook class is loaded.
6741       \MessageBreak
6742       See the minitoc package documentation
6743       \MessageBreak
6744       for specific precautions\@gobble}}}%
6745 \@ifclassloaded{scrreprt}%
6746   {\@mtc@hints@given@true
6747     \mtcPackageInfo[I0043]{minitoc(hints)}%
6748     {--- The KOMAScript scrreprt class is loaded.
6749       \MessageBreak
6750       See the minitoc package documentation
6751       \MessageBreak
6752       for specific precautions\@gobble}}}%
6753 \@ifclassloaded{scrartcl}%
6754   {\@mtc@hints@given@true
6755     \mtcPackageInfo[I0043]{minitoc(hints)}%
6756     {--- The KOMAScript scrartcl class is loaded.
6757       \MessageBreak
6758       See the minitoc package documentation
6759       \MessageBreak

```

```
6760      for specific precautions\@gobble}}}%
```

9.79.1.5 Hint about the tocloft package

```
\@ifpackageloaded We test the presence of the tocloft package [363]:
\if@mtc@hints@given@
```

I0047

```
6761 \@ifpackageloaded{tocloft}%
6762   {\@mtc@hints@given@true
6763     \mtcPackageInfo[I0047]{minitoc(hints)}%
6764     {--- The tocloft package is loaded.
6765     \MessageBreak
6766     See the minitoc package documentation
6767     \MessageBreak
6768     for specific precautions\@gobble}}}%
```

9.79.1.6 Hint about the titletoc package

```
\@ifpackageloaded We test the presence of the titletoc package [40], and emit a warning, because this package is
\if@mtc@hints@given@ incompatible with minitoc:
```



```
6769 \@ifpackageloaded{titletoc}%
6770   {\@mtc@hints@given@true
6771     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0040]{minitoc(hints)}%
6772     {--- The titletoc package is loaded.
6773     \MessageBreak
6774     It is incompatible
6775     \MessageBreak
6776     with the minitoc package}}}%
```

9.79.1.7 Hint about the placeins package

```
\@ifpackageloaded We test if the placeins package [11] is loaded and, if yes, we check if the selected options are
\if@mtc@ss@insection@ correct (see section 1.3.3 on page 29):
  \@ifpackagewith
```

```
\if@mtc@hints@given@ 6777 \@ifpackageloaded{placeins}%
6778   {\if@mtc@ss@insection@
6779     \@ifpackagewith{placeins}{section}}}%
6780     {\@mtc@hints@given@true
6781       \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0031]{minitoc(hints)}%
6782       {--- The placeins package is loaded
6783       \MessageBreak
6784       without the section option,
6785       \MessageBreak
6786       but minitoc used the insection option
```

W0031
W0084
W0085
W0032

```

6787         \MessageBreak
6788         which implies it. Try to inverse the
6789         \MessageBreak
6790         loading order and use consistent options.
6791         \MessageBreak
6792         You may have got a message
6793         \MessageBreak
6794         ! LaTeX Error: Option clash for package placeins}%
6795     }%
6796     \@ifpackagewith{placeins}{above}%
6797     {\@mtc@hints@given@true
6798     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0084]{minitoc(hints)}%
6799     {--- The placeins package is loaded
6800     \MessageBreak
6801     with the above option,
6802     \MessageBreak
6803     but minitoc used the insection option
6804     \MessageBreak
6805     which is incompatible with it.
6806     \MessageBreak
6807     Try to remove the above option
6808     \MessageBreak
6809     and use consistent options}%
6810     }{}%
6811     \@ifpackagewith{placeins}{below}%
6812     {\@mtc@hints@given@true
6813     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0085]{minitoc(hints)}%
6814     {--- The placeins package is loaded
6815     \MessageBreak
6816     with the below option,
6817     \MessageBreak
6818     but minitoc used the insection option
6819     \MessageBreak
6820     which is incompatible with it.
6821     \MessageBreak
6822     Try to remove the below option
6823     \MessageBreak
6824     and use consistent options}%
6825     }{}%
6826     \fi
6827     \@ifpackagelater{placeins}{2005/04/18}{}{}%
6828     \@mtc@hints@given@true
6829     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0032]{minitoc(hints)}%
6830     {--- The placeins package loaded is
6831     \MessageBreak
6832     too old. You should use a version
6833     \MessageBreak
6834     dated of 2005/04/18 at least}%
6835     }%
6836     }{}%

```

9.79.1.8 Hint about the memoir class

`\@ifclassloaded` We test if the memoir class [370, 371, 373] is loaded:
`\if@mtc@hints@given@`

I0044

```

6837 \@ifclassloaded{memoir}%
6838     {\@mtc@hints@given@true
6839     \mtcPackageInfo[I0044]{minitoc(hints)}%
6840     {--- The memoir class is loaded.
6841     \MessageBreak
6842     See the minitoc package documentation
6843     \MessageBreak
6844     for specific precautions\@gobble}{}}%
6845     }{}%
```

9.79.1.9 Hint about the amsart and amsproc classes

`\@ifclassloaded` We test if the amsart or amsproc class is loaded and emit a warning, because these classes are
`\if@mtc@hints@given@` *incompatible* with minitoc:



```

6846 \@ifclassloaded{amsart}%
6847     {\@mtc@hints@given@true
6848     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0026]{minitoc(hints)}%
6849     {--- The amsart class is loaded.
6850     \MessageBreak
6851     It is incompatible
6852     \MessageBreak
6853     with the minitoc package}}{}%
6854 \@ifclassloaded{amsproc}%
6855     {\@mtc@hints@given@true
6856     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0027]{minitoc(hints)}%
6857     {--- The amsproc class is loaded.
6858     \MessageBreak
6859     It is incompatible
6860     \MessageBreak with the minitoc package}}{}%
```

9.79.1.10 Hint about the amsbook class

`\@ifclassloaded` We test if the amsbook class is loaded:
`\if@mtc@hints@given@`

I0041

```

6861 \@ifclassloaded{amsbook}%
6862     {\@mtc@hints@given@true
6863     \mtcPackageInfo[I0041]{minitoc(hints)}%
6864     {--- The amsbook class is loaded.
6865     \MessageBreak
6866     See the minitoc package documentation
6867     \MessageBreak
```

```

6868         for specific precautions\@gobble}{}%
6869     }{}%

```

9.79.1.11 Hint about the abstract package

```

\@ifpackageloaded We test the presence of the abstract package [364], then its options:
\@ifpackagewith
\if@mtc@hints@given@
6870 \@ifpackageloaded{abstract}%
6871     {\@mtc@abstract@loaded@true%
6872     \@ifpackagewith{abstract}{addtotoc}%
6873     {\@mtc@hints@given@true
6874     \mtcPackageInfo[I0040]{minitoc(hints)}%
6875     {The ‘‘abstract’’ package has been
6876     \MessageBreak
6877     loaded with the ‘‘addtotoc’’ option.
6878     \MessageBreak
6879     You need to look at the
6880     \MessageBreak
6881     documentation to adjust.
6882     \MessageBreak}
6883     }{}%

```

I0040

9.79.1.12 Hint about the jura class

```

\@ifclassloaded We test if the jura class is loaded and emit a warning, because this class is incompatible with
\if@mtc@hints@given@ minitoc:
6884 \@ifclassloaded{jura}%
6885     {\@mtc@hints@given@true
6886     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0029]{minitoc(hints)}%
6887     {--- The jura class is loaded.
6888     \MessageBreak
6889     It is incompatible
6890     \MessageBreak with the minitoc package}}{}%

```



9.79.1.13 Hint about the flowfram package

```

\@ifpackageloaded We test the presence of the flowfram package [333, 334], and emit a warning, because this
\if@mtc@hints@given@ package is incompatible with minitoc:
6891 \@ifpackageloaded{flowfram}%
6892     {\@mtc@hints@given@true
6893     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0097]{minitoc(hints)}%
6894     {--- The flowfram package is loaded.

```



```

6895      \MessageBreak
6896      It is incompatible
6897      \MessageBreak
6898      with the minitoc package}}}%

```

9.79.1.14 Hint about the alteration of the sectionning commands

`\part` To check if the sectionning commands `\part`, `\chapter` or `\section` have been
`\chapter` altered by some package or in the preamble, we compare them (when executing an
`\section` `\AtBeginDocument` block) with their saved versions (saved by the minitoc package when
`\AtBeginDocument` it is loaded) `\mtc@hints@part`, `\mtc@hints@chapter` and `\mtc@hints@section`. For
`\mtc@hints@part` each sectionning command, we must perform the comparaison for the command itself, its
`\mtc@hints@chapter` unstarred branch and its starred branch. But the `hyperref` package [304] may interfere,
`\mtc@hints@section` hence the formal precautions in the messages.

9.79.1.14.1 Alteration of `\part`

```

\if@mtc@hints@w@ We check the alteration of \part, \@part and \@spart:
\ifundefined
  \part 6899 \@mtc@hints@w@false
  \mtc@hints@part 6900 \@ifundefined{part}{}{\ifx\part\mtc@hints@part\relax
    \@part 6901 \else\@mtc@hints@w@true\fi}
  \mtc@hints@@part 6902 \@ifundefined{part}{}{\ifx\@part\mtc@hints@@part\relax
    \@spart 6903 \else\@mtc@hints@w@true\fi}
  \mtc@hints@@spart 6904 \@ifundefined{part}{}{\ifx\@spart\mtc@hints@@spart\relax
    \if@mtc@hints@given@ 6905 \else\@mtc@hints@w@true\fi}
  \if@mtc@hyper@used@ 6906 \if@mtc@hints@w@\@mtc@hints@given@true%
    6907 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0030]{minitoc(hints)}%
    6908 {--- The \string\part\space command is altered
    6909 \MessageBreak
    6910 after minitoc}
    6911 \if@mtc@hyper@used@
    6912 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0023]{minitoc(hints)}%
    6913 {--- It may be the consequence
    6914 \MessageBreak
    6915 of loading the ‘hyperref’ package}
    6916 \fi
    6917 \fi

```

W0030

W0023

9.79.1.14.2 Alteration of \chapter

```

\if@mtc@hints@w@ We check the alteration of \chapter, \@chapter and \@schapter:
\@ifundefined
  \chapter 6918 \@mtc@hints@w@false
\mtc@hints@chapter 6919 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}{\ifx\chapter\mtc@hints@chapter\relax
  \@chapter 6920   \else\@mtc@hints@w@true\fi}%
\mtc@hints@@chapter 6921 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}{\ifx\@chapter\mtc@hints@@chapter\relax
  \@schapter 6922   \else\@mtc@hints@w@true\fi}%
\mtc@hints@@schapter 6923 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}{\ifx\@schapter\mtc@hints@@schapter\relax
\if@mtc@hints@given@ 6924   \else\@mtc@hints@w@true\fi}%
\if@mtc@hyper@used@ 6925 \if@mtc@hints@w@\@mtc@hints@given@true%
  6926   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0028]{minitoc(hints)}%
  6927   {--- The \string\chapter\space command is altered
  6928       \MessageBreak
  6929       after minitoc}
  6930   \if@mtc@hyper@used@
  6931       \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0023]{minitoc(hints)}%
  6932       {--- It may be the consequence
  6933           \MessageBreak
  6934           of loading the ‘‘hyperref’’ package}
  6935   \fi
  6936 \fi

```

W0028

W0023

9.79.1.14.3 Alteration of \section

```

\if@mtc@hints@w@ We check the alteration of \section, \@sect and \@ssect:
\@ifundefined
  \section 6937 \@mtc@hints@w@false
\mtc@hints@section 6938 \@ifundefined{chapter}%
  \@sect 6939   {\@ifundefined{section}{}{\ifx\section\mtc@hints@section\relax\else
\mtc@hints@@sect 6940   \mtc@hints@w@true\fi}
  \@ssect 6941   \@ifundefined{section}{}{\ifx\@sect\mtc@hints@@sect\relax\else
\mtc@hints@@ssect 6942   \mtc@hints@w@true\fi}
\if@mtc@hints@given@ 6943   \@ifundefined{section}{}{\ifx\@ssect\mtc@hints@@ssect\relax\else
\if@mtc@hyper@used@ 6944   \mtc@hints@w@true\fi}
  6945 \if@mtc@hints@w@\@mtc@hints@given@true%
  6946   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0039]{minitoc(hints)}%
  6947   {--- The \string\section\space command is altered
  6948       \MessageBreak
  6949       after minitoc}
  6950   \if@mtc@hyper@used@
  6951       \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0023]{minitoc(hints)}%
  6952       {--- It may be the consequence
  6953           \MessageBreak
  6954           of loading the ‘‘hyperref’’ package}
  6955   \fi
  6956   \relax\else\fi}%

```

W0039

W0023

9.79.1.15 Hint about the consistency of the calling sequences of the commands

And finally, we prepare the consistency tests about the calling sequences of triplets of associated commands like `\doparttoc`, `\parttoc` and `\[fake]tableofcontents`, and similar: to be able to use `\parttoc`, a table of contents file must have been created via `\[fake]tableofcontents` and splitted into `parttoc` files via `\doparttoc`.

```

\if@mtc@hints@ Hence we initialize some flags:
\if@mtc@toc@used@
\if@mtc@lof@used@ 6957 \if@mtc@hints@
\if@mtc@lot@used@ 6958 \global\@mtc@toc@used@false
                  6959 \global\@mtc@lof@used@false
                  6960 \global\@mtc@lot@used@false

\mtc@sv@tableofcontents Then we patch the involved commands to set the corresponding flag when they are used. First,
\tableofcontents the commands for the main summaries:
\if@mtc@toc@used@
\mtc@sv@listoffigures 6961 \let\mtc@sv@tableofcontents\tableofcontents
\listoffigures 6962 \def\tableofcontents%
\if@mtc@lof@used@ 6963   {\global\@mtc@toc@used@true\mtc@sv@tableofcontents}
\mtc@sv@listoftables 6964 \let\mtc@sv@listoffigures\listoffigures
\listoftables 6965 \def\listoffigures%
\if@mtc@lot@used@ 6966   {\global\@mtc@lof@used@true\mtc@sv@listoffigures}
                  6967 \let\mtc@sv@listoftables\listoftables
                  6968 \def\listoftables%
                  6969   {\global\@mtc@lot@used@true\mtc@sv@listoftables}

\mtc@sv@fktableofcontents Then, their “fake” siblings:
\fake\tableofcontents
\if@mtc@toc@used@ 6970 \let\mtc@sv@fktableofcontents\fake\tableofcontents
\mtc@sv@fklistoffigures 6971 \def\fake\tableofcontents%
\fake\listoffigures 6972   {\global\@mtc@toc@used@true\mtc@sv@fktableofcontents}
\if@mtc@lof@used@ 6973 \let\mtc@sv@fklistoffigures\fake\listoffigures
\mtc@sv@fklistoftables 6974 \def\fake\listoffigures%
\fake\listoftables 6975   {\global\@mtc@lof@used@true\mtc@sv@fklistoffigures}
\if@mtc@lot@used@ 6976 \let\mtc@sv@fklistoftables\fake\listoftables
                  6977 \def\fake\listoftables%
                  6978   {\global\@mtc@lot@used@true\mtc@sv@fklistoftables}
                  6979 \fi

\mtc@hints@beginndoc And the \mtc@hints@beginndoc definition is finished (it begins in section 9.79.1 on page 410):
6980 }
```

9.79.2 Final part: `\mtc@hints@enddoc`

`\mtc@hints@enddoc` The final part of the `hints` option is executed via `\AtEndDocument`. Its code is in the `\AtEndDocument` `\mtc@hints@enddoc` macro. It is a sequence of tests on the packages or classes loaded and the flags set during the first and the second parts of this option. First, we declare the `\mtc@hints@enddoc` macro:

```
6981 \def\mtc@hints@enddoc{%
```

9.79.2.1 Hint about `\sect-lof|lot` and the `insection` option

```
\if@mtc@sect@floats@ We look if some section-level lists of figures or tables have been requested.
\if@dosectlof@used@
\if@dosectlot@used@ 6982 \if@dosectlof@used@\@mtc@sect@floats@true\fi
\if@sectlof@used@ 6983 \if@dosectlot@used@\@mtc@sect@floats@true\fi
\if@sectlot@used@ 6984 \if@sectlof@used@\@mtc@sect@floats@true\fi
\if@mtc@section@def@ 6985 \if@sectlot@used@\@mtc@sect@floats@true\fi
6986 \if@mtc@section@def@
```

```
\if@mtc@placeinsLoaded@ If yes, we verify that the placeins package [11] has been loaded with the correct options or that
\if@mtc@sect@floats@ the insection option of the minitoc package has been invoked. If not, a warning is given.
\if@mtc@hints@w@
\if@mtc@hints@given@ 6987 \if@mtc@placeinsLoaded@ \else
6988 \if@mtc@sect@floats@%
6989 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0056]{minitoc(hints)}%
6990 {You are using \string\dosectlof\space and/or
6991 \MessageBreak
6992 \string\dosectlot, \string\sectlof\space and/or \string\sectlot,
6993 \MessageBreak
6994 hence the ‘insection’ package
6995 \MessageBreak
6996 option is recommended}%
6997 \@mtc@hints@w@true \@mtc@hints@given@true
6998 \fi
6999 \fi
```

W0056

9.79.2.2 Final part of the consistency tests

We test if `\parttoc` has been used without `\doparttoc`, etc., for each pair of preparation/insertion commands.

```

\if@mtc@part@def@ For the part level commands:
\if@parttoc@used@
\if@doparttoc@used@ 7000 \if@mtc@part@def@
\if@mtc@hints@given@ 7001 \if@parttoc@used@
\if@partlof@used@ 7002 \if@doparttoc@used@\else
\if@dopartlof@used@ 7003 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0062]{minitoc(hints)}%
\if@partlot@used@ 7004 {You have used \string\parttoc,
\if@dopartlot@used@ 7005 \MessageBreak
7006 but not \string\doparttoc}
7007 \@mtc@hints@given@true
7008 \fi
7009 \fi
7010 \if@partlof@used@
7011 \if@dopartlof@used@\else
7012 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0060]{minitoc(hints)}%
7013 {You have used \string\partlof,
7014 \MessageBreak
7015 but not \string\dopartlof}
7016 \@mtc@hints@given@true
7017 \fi
7018 \fi
7019 \if@partlot@used@
7020 \if@dopartlot@used@\else
7021 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0061]{minitoc(hints)}%
7022 {You have used \string\partlot,
7023 \MessageBreak
7024 but not \string\dopartlot}
7025 \@mtc@hints@given@true
7026 \fi
7027 \fi
7028 \fi

```

W0062

W0060

W0061

```

\if@mtc@chapter@def@ For the chapter level commands:
\if@minitoc@used@
\if@dominitoc@used@ 7029 \if@mtc@chapter@def@
\if@mtc@hints@given@ 7030 \if@minitoc@used@
\if@minilof@used@ 7031 \if@dominitoc@used@\else
\if@dominilof@used@ 7032 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0059]{minitoc(hints)}%
\if@minilot@used@ 7033 {You have used \string\minitoc,
\if@dominilot@used@ 7034 \MessageBreak
7035 but not \string\dominitoc}
7036 \@mtc@hints@given@true
7037 \fi
7038 \fi
7039 \if@minilof@used@
7040 \if@dominilof@used@\else
7041 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0057]{minitoc(hints)}%
7042 {You have used \string\minilof,
7043 \MessageBreak
7044 but not \string\dominilof}
7045 \@mtc@hints@given@true
7046 \fi

```

W0059

W0057

W0058

```

7047 \fi
7048 \if@minilot@used@
7049   \if@dominilot@used@\else
7050     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0058]{minitoc(hints)}%
7051     {You have used \string\minilot,
7052       \MessageBreak
7053       but not \string\dominilot}
7054   \@mtc@hints@given@true
7055 \fi
7056 \fi
7057 \fi

```

```

\if@mtc@section@def@ For the section level commands:
  \if@secttoc@used@
    \if@dosecttoc@used@ 7058 \if@mtc@section@def@
\if@mtc@hints@given@ 7059 \if@secttoc@used@
  \if@sectlof@used@ 7060   \if@dosecttoc@used@\else
\if@dosectlof@used@ 7061   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0065]{minitoc(hints)}%
  \if@sectlot@used@ 7062     {You have used \string\secttoc,
\if@dosectlot@used@ 7063       \MessageBreak
7064       but not \string\dosecttoc}
7065   \@mtc@hints@given@true
7066 \fi
7067 \fi
7068 \if@sectlof@used@
7069   \if@dosectlof@used@\else
7070     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0063]{minitoc(hints)}%
7071     {You have used \string\sectlof,
7072       \MessageBreak
7073       but not \string\dosectlof}
7074   \@mtc@hints@given@true
7075 \fi
7076 \fi
7077 \if@sectlot@used@
7078   \if@dosectlot@used@\else
7079     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0064]{minitoc(hints)}%
7080     {You have used \string\sectlot,
7081       \MessageBreak
7082       but not \string\dosectlot}
7083 \fi
7084 \fi
7085 \fi

```

W0065

W0063

W0064

9.79.2.3 Check if the main tables have been prepared (first part)

Now, we test if a `\doparttoc` macro has been called but without any matching `\parttoc`, hence it is a vain call. We do the same for each analog command.

```

\if@mtc@part@def@ Part level commands:
\if@doparttoc@used@
\if@parttoc@used@ 7086 \if@mtc@part@def@
\if@mtc@hints@given@ 7087 \if@doparttoc@used@
\if@dopartlof@used@ 7088 \if@parttoc@used@\else
\if@partlof@used@ 7089 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0075]{minitoc(hints)}%
\if@dopartlot@used@ 7090 {You have used \string\doparttoc,
\if@partlot@used@ 7091 \MessageBreak
7092 but not \string\parttoc}
7093 \@mtc@hints@given@true
7094 \fi
7095 \fi
7096 \if@dopartlof@used@
7097 \if@partlof@used@\else
7098 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0076]{minitoc(hints)}%
7099 {You have used \string\dopartlof,
7100 \MessageBreak
7101 but not \string\partlof}
7102 \@mtc@hints@given@true
7103 \fi
7104 \fi
7105 \if@dopartlot@used@
7106 \if@partlot@used@\else
7107 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0077]{minitoc(hints)}%
7108 {You have used \string\dopartlot,
7109 \MessageBreak
7110 but not \string\partlot}
7111 \@mtc@hints@given@true
7112 \fi
7113 \fi
7114 \fi

```

W0075
W0076
W0077

```

\if@mtc@chapter@def@ Chapter level commands:
\if@dominitoc@used@
\if@minitoc@used@ 7115 \if@mtc@chapter@def@
\if@mtc@hints@given@ 7116 \if@dominitoc@used@
\if@dominilof@used@ 7117 \if@minitoc@used@\else
\if@minilof@used@ 7118 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0078]{minitoc(hints)}%
\if@dominilot@used@ 7119 {You have used \string\dominitoc,
\if@minilot@used@ 7120 \MessageBreak
7121 but not \string\minitoc}
7122 \@mtc@hints@given@true
7123 \fi
7124 \fi
7125 \if@dominilof@used@
7126 \if@minilof@used@\else
7127 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0079]{minitoc(hints)}%
7128 {You have used \string\dominilof,
7129 \MessageBreak
7130 but not \string\minilof}
7131 \@mtc@hints@given@true
7132 \fi

```

W0078
W0079
W0080

```

7133 \fi
7134 \if@dominilot@used@
7135   \if@minilot@used@\else
7136     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0080]{minitoc(hints)}%
7137     {You have used \string\dominilot,
7138       \MessageBreak
7139       but not \string\minilot}
7140   \@mtc@hints@given@true
7141 \fi
7142 \fi
7143 \fi

```

```

\if@mtc@section@def@ Section level commands:
\if@dosecttoc@used@
  \if@secttoc@used@ 7144 \if@mtc@section@def@
\if@mtc@hints@given@ 7145 \if@dosecttoc@used@
\if@dosectlof@used@ 7146   \if@secttoc@used@\else
  \if@sectlof@used@ 7147   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0081]{minitoc(hints)}%
\if@dosectlot@used@ 7148     {You have used \string\dosecttoc,
  \if@sectlot@used@ 7149     \MessageBreak
7150     but not \string\secttoc}
7151   \@mtc@hints@given@true
7152 \fi
7153 \fi
7154 \if@dosectlof@used@
7155   \if@sectlof@used@\else
7156     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0082]{minitoc(hints)}%
7157     {You have used \string\dosectlof,
7158       \MessageBreak
7159       but not \string\sectlof}
7160   \@mtc@hints@given@true
7161 \fi
7162 \fi
7163 \if@dosectlot@used@
7164   \if@sectlot@used@\else
7165     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0083]{minitoc(hints)}%
7166     {You have used \string\dosectlot,
7167       \MessageBreak
7168       but not \string\sectlot}
7169 \fi
7170 \fi
7171 \fi
7172 \fi

```

W0081

W0082

W0083

9.79.2.4 Check if the main tables have been prepared (second part)

Another consistency test verifies that if the macro `\parttoc` has been called, then the macro `\tableofcontents` or `\faketableofcontents` has also been called (to create the necessary contents file); similar tests are made for the other mini-table commands.

```

\if@mtc@part@def@ Part level commands:
\if@mtc@hints@given@
\if@parttoc@used@ 7173 \if@mtc@part@def@
\ifmtc@toc@used@ 7174 \if@parttoc@used@
\if@partlof@used@ 7175 \if@mtc@toc@used@\else
\ifmtc@lof@used@ 7176 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0071]{minitoc(hints)}%
\if@partlot@used@ 7177 {You have used \string\parttoc\space but not
\ifmtc@lot@used@ 7178 \MessageBreak
7179 \string\tableofcontents
7180 \MessageBreak
7181 nor \string\aketableofcontents}
7182 \@mtc@hints@given@true
7183 \fi
7184 \fi
7185 \if@partlof@used@
7186 \if@mtc@lof@used@\else
7187 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0069]{minitoc(hints)}%
7188 {You have used \string\partlof\space but not
7189 \MessageBreak
7190 \string\listoffigures
7191 \MessageBreak
7192 nor \string\akelistoffigures}
7193 \@mtc@hints@given@true
7194 \fi
7195 \fi
7196 \if@partlot@used@
7197 \if@mtc@lot@used@\else
7198 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0070]{minitoc(hints)}%
7199 {You have used \string\partlot\space but not
7200 \MessageBreak
7201 \string\listoftables
7202 \MessageBreak
7203 nor \string\akelistoftables}
7204 \@mtc@hints@given@true
7205 \fi
7206 \fi
7207 \fi

```

W0071

W0069

W0070

```

\if@mtc@chapter@def@ Chapter level commands:
\if@mtc@hints@given@
\if@minitoc@used@ 7208 \if@mtc@chapter@def@
\ifmtc@toc@used@ 7209 \if@minitoc@used@
\if@minilof@used@ 7210 \if@mtc@toc@used@\else
\ifmtc@lof@used@ 7211 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0068]{minitoc(hints)}%
\if@minilot@used@ 7212 {You have used \string\minitoc\space but not
\ifmtc@lot@used@ 7213 \MessageBreak
7214 \string\tableofcontents
7215 \MessageBreak
7216 nor \string\aketableofcontents}
7217 \@mtc@hints@given@true
7218 \fi
7219 \fi

```

W0068

W0066

W0067


```

7220 \if@minilof@used@
7221   \if@mtc@lof@used@\else
7222     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0066]{minitoc(hints)}%
7223     {You have used \string\minilof\space but not
7224       \MessageBreak
7225       \string\listoffigures
7226       \MessageBreak
7227       nor \string\fake\listoffigures}
7228   \@mtc@hints@given@true
7229   \fi
7230 \fi
7231 \if@minilot@used@
7232   \if@mtc@lot@used@\else
7233     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0067]{minitoc(hints)}%
7234     {You have used \string\minilot\space but not
7235       \MessageBreak
7236       \string\listoftables
7237       \MessageBreak
7238       nor \string\fake\listoftables}
7239   \@mtc@hints@given@true
7240   \fi
7241 \fi
7242 \fi

```

```

\if@mtc@section@def@ Section level commands:
\if@mtc@hints@given@
  \if@secttoc@used@ 7243 \if@mtc@section@def@
  \ifmtc@toc@used@ 7244 \if@secttoc@used@
  \if@sectlof@used@ 7245   \if@mtc@toc@used@\else
  \ifmtc@lof@used@ 7246     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0074]{minitoc(hints)}%
  \if@sectlot@used@ 7247     {You have used \string\secttoc\space but not
  \ifmtc@lot@used@ 7248       \MessageBreak
  7249       \string\tableofcontents
  7250       \MessageBreak
  7251       nor \string\fake\tableofcontents}
  7252   \@mtc@hints@given@true
  7253   \fi
  7254 \fi
  7255 \if@sectlof@used@
  7256   \if@mtc@lof@used@\else
  7257     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0072]{minitoc(hints)}%
  7258     {You have used \string\sectlof\space but not
  7259       \MessageBreak
  7260       \string\listoffigures
  7261       \MessageBreak
  7262       nor \string\fake\listoffigures}
  7263   \@mtc@hints@given@true
  7264   \fi
  7265 \fi
  7266 \if@sectlot@used@
  7267   \if@mtc@lot@used@\else
  7268     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0073]{minitoc(hints)}%

```

W0074
W0072
W0073

```

7269      {You have used \string\sectlot\space but not
7270      \MessageBreak
7271      \string\listoftables
7272      \MessageBreak
7273      nor \string\fake\listoftables}
7274    \@mtc@hints@given@true
7275    \fi
7276  \fi
7277 \fi

```

9.79.2.5 Check the number of mini-tables, in case of short extensions

<pre> \mtc@hints@checklongext \if@longextensions@ \if@mtc@part@def@ \value \if@mtc@hints@given@true \if@mtc@chapter@def@ \if@mtc@section@def@ </pre>	<p>If short extensions are used, you can use only 99 mini-tables of each kind. If more are created, the auxiliary files can be overwritten: the hundredth minitoc file <code>\jobname.U100</code> has its name truncated to <code>\jobname.U10</code>, which is already the tenth minitoc file. Thus, we need a hint to signal this situation. The code is rather simple, but the remedy is bitter and costly: either use a better operating system ¹⁷, either redesign the document.</p> <pre> 7278 \def\mtc@hints@checklongext{% 7279 \if@longextensions@ 7280 \else 7281 \if@mtc@part@def@ 7282 \ifnum 99 < \value{ptc}\relax \@mtc@hints@given@true 7283 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0054]{minitoc(hints)}% 7284 {You have used short extensions 7285 \MessageBreak 7286 and more than 99 parts (\arabic{ptc})} 7287 \fi 7288 \fi 7289 \if@mtc@chapter@def@ 7290 \ifnum 99 < \value{mtc}\relax \@mtc@hints@given@true 7291 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0053]{minitoc(hints)}% 7292 {You have used short extensions 7293 \MessageBreak 7294 and more than 99 chapters (\arabic{mtc})} 7295 \fi 7296 \else 7297 \if@mtc@section@def@ 7298 \ifnum 99 < \value{stc}\relax \@mtc@hints@given@true 7299 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0055]{minitoc(hints)}% 7300 {You have used short extensions 7301 \MessageBreak 7302 and more than 99 sections (\arabic{stc})} 7303 \fi 7304 \fi 7305 \fi 7306 \fi} 7307 \mtc@hints@checklongext </pre>	<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; width: fit-content;">W0054</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; width: fit-content;">W0053</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; width: fit-content;">W0055</div>
--	--	---

¹⁷On the long term, a good investment.

9.79.2.6 Final part of the hint about the sectsty package

`\if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@` We test if `sectsty` has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) `minitoc`. See W0037
`\if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@a@` section 9.9.1 on page 275.
`\if@mtc@hints@given@`

```

7308 \if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@\else
7309   \if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@a@
7310     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0037]{minitoc(hints)}%
7311     {The sectsty package should be
7312       \MessageBreak
7313       loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
7314     \@mtc@hints@given@true
7315   \fi
7316 \fi

```

9.79.2.7 Final part of the hint about the varsects package

`\if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@` We test if `varsects` has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) `minitoc`. See W0038
`\if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@a@` section 9.9.2 on page 275.
`\if@mtc@hints@given@`

```

7317 \if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@\else
7318   \if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@a@
7319     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0038]{minitoc(hints)}%
7320     {The varsects package should be
7321       \MessageBreak
7322       loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
7323     \@mtc@hints@given@true
7324   \fi
7325 \fi

```

9.79.2.8 Final part of the hint about the fncychap package

`\if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@` We test if `fncychap` has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) `minitoc`. See W0086
`\if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@a@` section 9.9.3 on page 276.
`\if@mtc@hints@given@`

```

7326 \if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@\else
7327   \if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@a@
7328     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0086]{minitoc(hints)}%
7329     {The fncychap package should be
7330       \MessageBreak
7331       loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
7332     \@mtc@hints@given@true
7333   \fi
7334 \fi

```

9.79.2.9 Final part of the hint about the hangcaption package

`\if@mtc@HgcLoaded@` We test if hangcaption has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See [section 9.9.4](#) on page 276. W0092

`\if@mtc@HgcLoaded@a@`

`\if@mtc@hints@given@`

```

7335 \if@mtc@HgcLoaded@\else
7336   \if@mtc@HgcLoaded@a@
7337     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0092]{minitoc(hints)}%
7338     {The hangcaption package should be
7339       \MessageBreak
7340       loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
7341     \@mtc@hints@given@true
7342   \fi
7343 \fi

```

9.79.2.10 Final part of the hint about the quotchap package

`\if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@` We test if quotchap has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See [section 9.9.5](#) on page 276. W0087

`\if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@a@`

`\if@mtc@hints@given@`

```

7344 \if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@\else
7345   \if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@a@
7346     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0087]{minitoc(hints)}%
7347     {The quotchap package should be
7348       \MessageBreak
7349       loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
7350     \@mtc@hints@given@true
7351   \fi
7352 \fi

```

9.79.2.11 Final part of the hint about the romannum package

`\if@mtc@romannumLoaded@` We test if romannum has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See [section 9.9.6](#) on page 276. W0088

`\if@mtc@romannumLoaded@a@`

`\if@mtc@hints@given@`

```

7353 \if@mtc@romannumLoaded@\else
7354   \if@mtc@romannumLoaded@a@
7355     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0088]{minitoc(hints)}%
7356     {The romannum package should be
7357       \MessageBreak
7358       loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
7359     \@mtc@hints@given@true
7360   \fi
7361 \fi

```

9.79.2.12 Final part of the hint about the sfheaders package

`\if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@` We test if sfheaders has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See [section 9.9.7](#) on page 277. W0089

`\if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@a@`

`\if@mtc@hints@given@`

```

7362 \if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@\else
7363   \if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@a@
7364     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0089]{minitoc(hints)}%
7365     {The sfheaders package should be
7366       \MessageBreak
7367       loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
7368     \@mtc@hints@given@true
7369   \fi
7370 \fi

```

9.79.2.13 Final part of the hint about the alnumsec package

`\if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@` We test if alnumsec has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See [section 9.9.8](#) on page 277. W0090

`\if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@a@`

`\if@mtc@hints@given@`

```

7371 \if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@\else
7372   \if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@a@
7373     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0090]{minitoc(hints)}%
7374     {The alnumsec package should be
7375       \MessageBreak
7376       loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
7377     \@mtc@hints@given@true
7378   \fi
7379 \fi

```

9.79.2.14 Final part of the hint about the captcont package

`\if@mtc@captcontLoaded@` We test if captcont has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See [section 9.9.9](#) on page 277. W0091

`\if@mtc@captcontLoaded@a@`

`\if@mtc@hints@given@`

```

7380 \if@mtc@captcontLoaded@\else
7381   \if@mtc@captcontLoaded@a@
7382     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0091]{minitoc(hints)}%
7383     {The captcont package should be
7384       \MessageBreak
7385       loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
7386     \@mtc@hints@given@true
7387   \fi
7388 \fi

```

9.79.2.15 Final part of the hint about the caption package

`\if@mtc@captionLoaded@` We test if caption has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See [section 9.9.10](#) on page 277. W0033

`\if@mtc@captionLoaded@a@`

`\if@mtc@hints@given@`

```

7389 \if@mtc@captionLoaded@\else
7390   \if@mtc@captionLoaded@a@
7391     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0033]{minitoc(hints)}%
7392     {The caption package should be
7393       \MessageBreak
7394       loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
7395     \@mtc@hints@given@true
7396   \fi
7397 \fi

```

9.79.2.16 Final part of the hint about the caption2 package

`\if@mtc@captionIILoaded@` We test if caption2 has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See [section 9.9.11](#) on page 278. W0034

`\if@mtc@captionIILoaded@a@`

`\if@mtc@hints@given@`

```

7398 \if@mtc@captionIILoaded@\else
7399   \if@mtc@captionIILoaded@a@
7400     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0034]{minitoc(hints)}%
7401     {The caption2 package should be
7402       \MessageBreak
7403       loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
7404     \@mtc@hints@given@true
7405   \fi
7406 \fi

```

9.79.2.17 Final part of the hint about the ccaption package

`\if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@` We test if ccaption has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See [section 9.9.12](#) on page 278. W0035

`\if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@a@`

`\if@mtc@hints@given@`

```

7407 \if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@\else
7408   \if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@a@
7409     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0035]{minitoc(hints)}%
7410     {The ccaption package should be
7411       \MessageBreak
7412       loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
7413     \@mtc@hints@given@true
7414   \fi
7415 \fi

```

9.79.2.18 Final part of the hint about the mcaption package

`\if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@` We test if mcaption has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See section 9.9.13 on page 278. W0036

`\if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@a@`

`\if@mtc@hints@given@`

```

7416 \if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@\else
7417   \if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@a@
7418     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0036]{minitoc(hints)}%
7419     {The mcaption package should be
7420       \MessageBreak
7421       loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
7422     \@mtc@hints@given@true
7423   \fi
7424 \fi

```

9.79.2.19 Final part of the hint about the float package

`\if@mtc@floatLoaded@` We test if float has been loaded. See section 9.9.14 on page 278. I0053

`\if@mtc@hints@given@`

```

7425 \if@mtc@floatLoaded@
7426   \mtcPackageInfo[I0053]{minitoc(hints)}%
7427   {You have loaded the float package;
7428     \MessageBreak
7429     please be aware that the minitoc package
7430     \MessageBreak
7431     facilities can not be used for new types
7432     \MessageBreak
7433     of floats defined by the float package\@gobble}
7434   \@mtc@hints@given@true
7435 \fi

```

9.79.2.20 Final part of the hint about the floatrow package

`\if@mtc@floatrowLoaded@` We test if floatrow has been loaded. See section 9.9.15 on page 278. I0053

`\if@mtc@hints@given@`

```

7436 \if@mtc@floatrowLoaded@
7437   \mtcPackageInfo[I0053]{minitoc(hints)}%
7438   {You have loaded the floatrow package;
7439     \MessageBreak
7440     please be aware that the minitoc package
7441     \MessageBreak
7442     facilities can not be used for new types
7443     \MessageBreak
7444     of floats defined by the floatrow package\@gobble}
7445   \@mtc@hints@given@true
7446 \fi

```

9.79.2.21 Final part of the hint about the trivfloat package

`\if@mtc@trivfloatLoaded@` We test if trivfloat has been loaded. See section 9.9.16 on page 279.
`\if@mtc@hints@given@`

I0053

```

7447 \if@mtc@trivfloatLoaded@
7448   \mtcPackageInfo[I0053]{minitoc(hints)}%
7449   {You have loaded the trivfloat package;
7450   \MessageBreak
7451   please be aware that the minitoc package
7452   \MessageBreak
7453   facilities can not be used for new types
7454   \MessageBreak
7455   of floats defined by the trivfloat package\@gobble}
7456   \@mtc@hints@given@true
7457 \fi

```

9.79.2.22 Final part of the hint about the rotfloat package

`\if@mtc@rotfloatLoaded@` We test if rotfloat has been loaded. See section 9.9.17 on page 279.
`\if@mtc@hints@given@`

I0053

```

7458 \if@mtc@rotfloatLoaded@
7459   \mtcPackageInfo[I0053]{minitoc(hints)}%
7460   {You have loaded the rotfloat package;
7461   \MessageBreak
7462   please be aware that the minitoc package
7463   \MessageBreak
7464   facilities can not be used for new types
7465   \MessageBreak
7466   of floats defined by the rotfloat package\@gobble}
7467   \@mtc@hints@given@true
7468 \fi

```

9.79.2.23 Check if empty mini-tables have been detected

We test for each kind of mini-tables.

`\if@mtc@empty@parttoc@` For parttocs:

W0046

```

7469 \if@mtc@empty@parttoc@
7470   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0046]{minitoc(hints)}%
7471   {You have attempted to insert
7472   \MessageBreak
7473   empty parttocs}
7474   \@mtc@hints@given@true
7475 \fi

```


\if@mtc@empty@partlof@ For partlofs:

W0044

```

7476 \if@mtc@empty@partlof@
7477   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0044]{minitoc(hints)}%
7478   {You have attempted to insert
7479   \MessageBreak
7480   empty partlofs}
7481   \@mtc@hints@given@true
7482 \fi

```

\if@mtc@empty@partlot@ For partlots:

W0045

```

7483 \if@mtc@empty@partlot@
7484   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0045]{minitoc(hints)}%
7485   {You have attempted to insert
7486   \MessageBreak
7487   empty partlots}
7488   \@mtc@hints@given@true
7489 \fi

```

\if@mtc@empty@minitoc@ For minitocs:

W0043

```

7490 \if@mtc@empty@minitoc@
7491   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0043]{minitoc(hints)}%
7492   {You have attempted to insert
7493   \MessageBreak
7494   empty minitocs}
7495   \@mtc@hints@given@true
7496 \fi

```

\if@mtc@empty@minilof@ For minilofs:

W0041

```

7497 \if@mtc@empty@minilof@
7498   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0041]{minitoc(hints)}%
7499   {You have attempted to insert
7500   \MessageBreak
7501   empty minilofs}
7502   \@mtc@hints@given@true
7503 \fi

```

\if@mtc@empty@minilot@ For minilots:

W0042

```

7504 \if@mtc@empty@minilot@
7505   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0042]{minitoc(hints)}%
7506   {You have attempted to insert
7507   \MessageBreak

```

```

7508     empty minilots}
7509     \@mtc@hints@given@true
7510 \fi

```

\if@mtc@empty@secttoc@ For secttocs:

W0049

```

7511 \if@mtc@empty@secttoc@
7512     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0049]{minitoc(hints)}%
7513     {You have attempted to insert
7514     \MessageBreak
7515     empty secttocs}
7516     \@mtc@hints@given@true
7517 \fi

```

\if@mtc@empty@sectlof@ For sectlofs:

W0047

```

7518 \if@mtc@empty@sectlof@
7519     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0047]{minitoc(hints)}%
7520     {You have attempted to insert
7521     \MessageBreak
7522     empty sectlofs}
7523     \@mtc@hints@given@true
7524 \fi

```

\if@mtc@empty@sectlot@ For sectlots:

W0048

```

7525 \if@mtc@empty@sectlot@
7526     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0048]{minitoc(hints)}%
7527     {You have attempted to insert
7528     \MessageBreak
7529     empty sectlots}
7530     \@mtc@hints@given@true
7531 \fi

```

9.79.2.24 Check if obsolete commands have been used

This hint is just a reminder if you have used obsolete commands, which are also signalled in the *document.log* file.

\if@firstpartis@used@ Obsolete macro \firstpartis:

W0051

```

7532 \if@firstpartis@used@
7533     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0051]{minitoc(hints)}%
7534     {You have invoked an obsolete (ignored)

```

```

7535 \MessageBreak
7536 command: \string\firstpartis}
7537 \@mtc@hints@given@true
7538 \fi

```

\if@firstchapteris@used@ Obsolete macro \firstchapteris:

W0050

```

7539 \if@firstchapteris@used@
7540 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0050]{minitoc(hints)}%
7541 {You have invoked an obsolete (ignored)}
7542 \MessageBreak
7543 command: \string\firstchapteris}
7544 \@mtc@hints@given@true
7545 \fi

```

\if@firstsectionis@used@ Obsolete macro \firstsectionis:

W0052

```

7546 \if@firstsectionis@used@
7547 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0052]{minitoc(hints)}%
7548 {You have invoked an obsolete (ignored)}
7549 \MessageBreak
7550 command: \string\firstsectionis}
7551 \@mtc@hints@given@true
7552 \fi

```

9.79.2.25 Check if some hints have been written

\if@mtc@hints@given@ We come at the end of the third part of the hints option: if problems have been detected, a warning is displayed; the warning is not displayed but only written in the *document.log* file if no problems have been detected. And we terminate the \mtc@hints@enddoc macro by a closing brace.

W0024

I0019

```

7553 \if@mtc@hints@given@
7554 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0024]{minitoc(hints)}%
7555 {Some hints have been written
7556 \MessageBreak
7557 in the \jobname.log file}
7558 \else
7559 \mtcPackageInfo[I0019]{minitoc(hints)}%
7560 {No hints have been written
7561 \MessageBreak
7562 in the \jobname.log file.\@gobble}
7563 \fi
7564 }

```

9.80 Processing of options

`\InputIfFileExists` First, if possible, we apply the default language option, english:
`\ExecuteOptions`

```
7565 \InputIfFileExists{english.mld}%
7566 {\ExecuteOptions{english}}%
```

`\mtcPackageError` Else, we signal a severe error and provide the missing default titles:
`\providecommand`

```
\ptctitle 7567 {\mtcPackageError[E0036]{minitoc}%
\plftitle 7568 {Your minitoc installation is incomplete.
\plttitle 7569 \MessageBreak
\mtctitle 7570 The minitoc language object file (.mld),
\mlftitle 7571 \MessageBreak
\mlttitle 7572 english.mld is not found.
\stctitle 7573 \MessageBreak
\slftitle 7574 We will try to continue with default values}%
7575 {See the minitoc documentation.
\slttitle 7576 \MessageBreak
7577 Please fix your minitoc installation.
7578 \MessageBreak
7579 Press <return> to continue}%
7580 \providecommand{\ptctitle}{Table of Contents}%
7581 \providecommand{\plftitle}{List of Figures}%
7582 \providecommand{\plttitle}{List of Tables}%
7583 \providecommand{\mtctitle}{Contents}%
7584 \providecommand{\mlftitle}{Figures}%
7585 \providecommand{\mlttitle}{Tables}%
7586 \providecommand{\stctitle}{Contents}%
7587 \providecommand{\slftitle}{Figures}%
7588 \providecommand{\slttitle}{Tables}%
7589 }%
```



`\ProcessOptions*` Then, we execute all requested options: for most options, it is just setting a flag, or loading a file for the language options.

```
7590 \ProcessOptions*
```

We now examine the flags for some options and execute the necessary actions.

9.80.1 Processing the insection option

`\if@mtc@ss@insection@` For the insection option, we load the placeins package [11] with its options `verbose` and
`\RequirePackage` `section`, after the flafter package (described in [226] and [260, page 286]); the correct loading
`\@ifpackageloaded` is verified:
`\if@mtc@placeinsLoaded@`

```

7591 \if@mtc@ss@insection@
7592   \RequirePackage{flafter}[2000/07/23]%
7593   \RequirePackage[section,verbose]{placeins}[2005/04/18]%
7594   \@ifpackageloaded{placeins}%
7595     {\@mtc@placeinsLoaded@true}{\@mtc@placeinsLoaded@false}%
7596 \fi

```

9.80.2 Processing the notoccite option

\if@mtc@notoccite@ For the notoccite option, we just load the notoccite package [10]:
 \RequirePackage

```

7597 \if@mtc@notoccite@
7598   \RequirePackage{notoccite}%
7599 \fi

```

9.80.3 Processing the listfiles option

\mtc@maf We define the \mtc@maf macro which closes \tf@mtc and reopens it to write into the file
 \tf@mtc *document.maf*. It calls \mtc@maf@long or \mtc@maf@short (long or short extensions),
 \if@longextensions@ then closes \tf@mtc. \mtc@maf@long or \mtc@maf@short writes the names of the exist-
 \mtc@maf@long ing auxiliary files using decrementing loops on the associated counters, and includes *docu-*
 \mtc@maf@short *ment.mtc* in the list (but *not* the *document.maf* ¹⁸ file). We must also check the existence of
 \mtc@addtomaf \jobname.mtc1 if long extensions are used.
 \IfFileExists

```

\jobname 7600 \def\mtc@maf{%
7601   \mtcPackageInfo[I0009]{minitoc}%
7602   {Listing minitoc auxiliary files.
7603   \MessageBreak
7604   Creating the \jobname.maf file\@gobble}
7605   \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
7606   \immediate\openout\tf@mtc \jobname.maf
7607   \if@longextensions@\mtc@maf@long\else\mtc@maf@short\fi
7608   \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}
7609 \def\mtc@addtomaf#1{%
7610   \IfFileExists{#1}{\immediate\write\tf@mtc{#1}}{}}
7611 \def\mtc@maf@long{%
7612   \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.mtc}
7613   \@ifundefined{c@ptc}{\loop\ifnum\c@ptc>\z@{\relax
7614     \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.ptc\arabic{ptc}}
7615     \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.plf\arabic{ptc}}
7616     \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.plt\arabic{ptc}}
7617     \advance\c@ptc\m@ne\repeat}
7618   \@ifundefined{c@mtc}{\mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.mtc1}}{}}
7619   \loop\ifnum\c@mtc>\z@{\relax
7620     \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.mtc\arabic{mtc}}

```

I0009

¹⁸ Some users could made a cleanup using this file as a list of files to delete, so it must not be in the list.

```

7621      \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.mlf\arabic{mtc}}
7622      \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.mlt\arabic{mtc}}
7623      \advance\c@mtc\m@ne\repeat}
7624 \@ifundefined{c@stc}{\loop\ifnum\c@stc>\z@\relax
7625      \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.stc\arabic{stc}}
7626      \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.slf\arabic{stc}}
7627      \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.slt\arabic{stc}}
7628      \advance\c@stc\m@ne\repeat}}
7629 \def\mtc@maf@short{%
7630      \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.mtc}
7631 \@ifundefined{c@ptc}{\loop\ifnum\c@ptc>\z@\relax
7632      \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.P\arabic{ptc}}
7633      \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.G\arabic{ptc}}
7634      \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.U\arabic{ptc}}
7635      \advance\c@ptc\m@ne\repeat}
7636 \@ifundefined{c@mtc}{\loop\ifnum\c@mtc>\z@\relax
7637      \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.M\arabic{mtc}}
7638      \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.F\arabic{mtc}}
7639      \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.T\arabic{mtc}}
7640      \advance\c@mtc\m@ne\repeat}
7641 \@ifundefined{c@stc}{\loop\ifnum\c@stc>\z@\relax
7642      \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.S\arabic{stc}}
7643      \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.H\arabic{stc}}
7644      \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.V\arabic{stc}}
7645      \advance\c@stc\m@ne\repeat}}

```

\if@mtc@listfiles@ If this option is active, we call \mtc@maf in an \AtEndDocument block.

\AtEndDocument

\mtc@maf 7646 \if@mtc@listfiles@{\AtEndDocument{\mtc@maf}}\else\fi

9.80.4 Processing the hints option

\if@mtc@hints@ For the hints option, we set its first part in an \AtBeginDocument block and its third (last) part in an \AtEndDocument block:

\AtBeginDocument

\mtc@hints@begindoc

\AtEndDocument

\mtc@hints@enddoc

```

7647 \if@mtc@hints@
7648   \AtBeginDocument{\mtc@hints@begindoc}%
7649   \AtEndDocument{\mtc@hints@enddoc}%
7650 \fi

```

9.80.5 Saving the sectionning commands

And, at least, we save the definitions of sectionning commands (and of their unstarred and starred branches), for comparaisons (this is a part of the hints option executed in the preamble):

```

\@ifundefined For the \part command:
\mtc@hints@part
  \part 7651 \@ifundefined{part}{}{\let\mtc@hints@part\part}
\mtc@hints@@part 7652 \let\mtc@hints@@part\@part
  \@part 7653 \let\mtc@hints@@spart\@spart}
\mtc@hints@spart
  \@spart

\@ifundefined For the \chapter command:
\mtc@hints@chapter
  \chapter 7654 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}{\let\mtc@hints@chapter\chapter}
\mtc@hints@@chapter 7655 \let\mtc@hints@@chapter\@chapter
  \@chapter 7656 \let\mtc@hints@@schapter\@schapter}
\mtc@hints@schapter
  \@schapter

\@ifundefined For the \section command:
\mtc@hints@section
  \section 7657 \@ifundefined{section}{}{\let\mtc@hints@section\section}
\mtc@hints@@sect 7658 \let\mtc@hints@@sect\@sect
  \@sect 7659 \let\mtc@hints@@ssect\@ssect}
\mtc@hints@sssect
  \@ssect

```

9.81 Trapping the undefined preparation and insertion commands

`\mtc@classck` It may happen that you use a preparation command (like `\dominitoc`) or an insertion command (like `\dominitoc`) in a document using a class where that command is not available (like `article`). To get a better diagnostic for such errors, we intercept such commands by providing a default definition which just emits an error message. These default definitions are made in an `\AtBeginDocument` block.

E0037

```

7660 \def\mtc@classck#1{%
7661   \mtcPackageError[E0037]{minitoc}%
7662     {The \csname #1\endcsname\space command is incompatible
7663       \MessageBreak
7664       with the document class}%
7665   {Correct the source code.
7666     \MessageBreak
7667     Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}%
7668 }%

```

`\AtBeginDocument` An `\AtBeginDocument` bloc:

```
7669 \AtBeginDocument{%
```

`\providecommand` Part-level preparation commands:

```
\doparttoc
```

```
\dopartlof 7670 \providecommand{\doparttoc}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{doparttoc}}%
```

```
\dopartlot 7671 \providecommand{\dopartlof}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{dopartlof}}%
```

```
7672 \providecommand{\dopartlot}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{dopartlot}}%
```

`\dominitoc` Chapter-level preparation commands:

```
\dominilof
```

```
\dominilot 7673 \providecommand{\dominitoc}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{dominitoc}}%
```

```
7674 \providecommand{\dominilof}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{dominilof}}%
```

```
7675 \providecommand{\dominilot}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{dominilot}}%
```

`\dosecttoc` Section-level preparation commands:

```
\dosectlof
```

```
\dosectlot 7676 \providecommand{\dosecttoc}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{dosecttoc}}%
```

```
7677 \providecommand{\dosectlof}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{dosectlof}}%
```

```
7678 \providecommand{\dosectlot}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{dosectlot}}%
```

`\parttoc` Part-level insertion commands:

```
\partlof
```

```
\partlot 7679 \providecommand{\parttoc}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{parttoc}}%
```

```
7680 \providecommand{\partlof}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{partlof}}%
```

```
7681 \providecommand{\partlot}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{partlot}}%
```

`\minitoc` Chapter-level insertion commands:

```
\minilof
```

```
\minilot 7682 \providecommand{\minitoc}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{minitoc}}%
```

```
7683 \providecommand{\minilof}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{minilof}}%
```

```
7684 \providecommand{\minilot}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{minilot}}%
```

`\secttoc` Section-level insertion commands:

```
\sectlof
```

```
\sectlot 7685 \providecommand{\secttoc}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{secttoc}}%
```

```
7686 \providecommand{\sectlof}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{sectlof}}%
```

```
7687 \providecommand{\sectlot}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{sectlot}}%
```

```
7688 }
```

And the package is terminated.

```
7689 \</minitoc>
```


9.82 The `fminitoc.dtx` file

`\jobname` This short file is necessary to create the french documentation. Its rôle is to set `\jobname`
`\input` to `fminitoc` in place of `minitoc`. As `minitoc.ins` generates the `minitoc.lan` and
`fminitoc.lan` files which set a language number `\LANG`, and `minitoc.dtx` reads then the
`\jobname.lan` file, the documentation can be in several languages (english and french here)
in `minitoc.dtx`, the language being selected by `\ifcase\LANG\relax ... \or\relax ...`
`\fi` constructs. The `\relax` primitives are necessary to avoid bad surprises.

```
7690 <fminitoc>
7691 \ProvidesFile{fminitoc.dtx}%
7692           [2007/06/29 minitoc v55 french documentation start file]
7693 \input{minitoc.dtx}
7694 </fminitoc>
```

Chapter 10

Commented code of the mtcoff package

Contents

10.1	Why mtcoff?	443
10.2	Identification of the package	443
10.3	Faking counters and dimensions	444
10.4	Faking simple commands	447
10.5	Faking commands with one optional argument	448
10.6	Disabling the internal commands	449
10.7	Disabling the font commands	449
10.8	Disabling the \mtcset... commands	451
10.9	Disabling the new \l@... commands	451
10.10	Ignore the obsolete commands	451
10.11	Disabling the \mtcselectlanguage and \mtcloadmlo commands	451
10.12	Disabling the commands for the horizontal rules	452
10.13	Disabling the commands for the page numbers	452
10.14	Disabling the mini-table features commands	453
10.15	Disabling miscellaneous flags and commands	454
10.16	Caution for some commands	454
10.17	Disabling commands for “coffee”	456
10.18	Disabling the mtchideinmain... environments	456
10.19	Inhibition of the \mtc@[save restore]XXXdepth internal commands	456
10.20	Disabling the \mtcfixglossary command	456
10.21	Disabling the \mtcfixindex command	457
10.22	Disabling the \mtcfixnomenclature command	457
10.23	Disabling the \addstarred... commands	457

10.1 Why mtcoff?

The minitoc package [131, 132] requires that the user inserts many commands in the source code of her/his document, and not only into the preamble of the document. Hence the concept of a replacement package, mtcoff (means “minitoc off”), which substitutes to all commands and environments of the minitoc package some alternative commands and environments with the same names and syntaxes, but doing nothing (except emitting some harmless warnings, for special cases). This way, to turn off easily the minitoc package, you just have to write, in the preamble of your document, something like:

```
\usepackage[...options...]{minitoc}
%\usepackage{mtcoff}
```

then the minitoc package is activated with the specified options. If you modify this two lines this way:

```
%\usepackage[...options...]{minitoc}
\usepackage{mtcoff}
```

then the minitoc package is deactivated and all its commands and environments are ignored. This is much easier, faster and safer than commenting out all the commands and environments of minitoc. Moreover, this operation is reversible.

10.2 Identification of the package

`\NeedsTeXFormat` First, we identify the package and check the version of L^AT_EX¹; we need the mtcmess package
`\ProvidesPackage` to write messages with unique identifiers.

```
7695 (*mtcoff)
7696 \NeedsTeXFormat{LaTeX2e}%
7697 \ProvidesPackage{mtcoff}[2007/06/29 v55 The mtcoff package]
7698 \RequirePackage{mtcmess}[2006/03/14]
```

¹ This checking is not really useful for the mtcoff package itself, but it is good to check that your version of L^AT_EX is not too old to support minitoc.

10.3 Faking counters and dimensions

```

\count@ As minitoc declares some counters and dimensions registers, we fake them using \count@
\dimen@ or \dimen@. For \mtcskipamount, we must use its default definition, \bigskipamount.
\c@minitocdepth
\mtcindent 7699 \let\c@minitocdepth\count@
\mtcskipamount 7700 \let\mtcindent\dimen@
\bigskipamount 7701 \let\mtcskipamount\bigskipamount
\c@parttocdepth 7702 \let\c@parttocdepth\count@
\mtcindent 7703 \let\ptcindent\dimen@
\c@secttocdepth 7704 \let\c@secttocdepth\count@
\stcindent 7705 \let\stcindent\dimen@

```

```

\c@mtc The basic mini-table counters are provided by \count@:
\c@ptc
\c@stc 7706 \let\c@mtc\count@ \let\c@ptc\count@ \let\c@stc\count@

```

```

\mtcgapbeforeheads The gaps before and after parttoc heads receive their default values:
\mtcgapafterheads
7707 \def\mtcgapbeforeheads{50\p@} \def\mtcgapafterheads{40\p@}

```

```

\@ifundefined We must define the macros for the vertical kernings between the minitables and their before
\kernafterparttoc the bottom rule. The default values are used. We must issue a warning if one of these macros
\kernafterpartlof is used.
\kernafterpartlot
\kernaftersecttoc 7708 \@ifundefined{part}{%}%
\kernaftersectlof 7709 \def\kernafterparttoc{%
\kernaftersectlot 7710 \mtcoffwarn@true
\kernafterminitoc 7711 \mtcPackageWarning[F0008]{mtcoff}%
\kernafterminilof 7712 {The macro \string\kernafterparttoc
7713 \MessageBreak
7714 should not be used out of context
7715 \MessageBreak}%
7716 \kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
7717 \def\kernafterpartlof{%
7718 \mtcoffwarn@true
7719 \mtcPackageWarning[F0008]{mtcoff}%
7720 {The macro \string\kernafterpartlof
7721 \MessageBreak
7722 should not be used out of context
7723 \MessageBreak}%
7724 \kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
7725 \def\kernafterpartlot{%
7726 \mtcoffwarn@true
7727 \mtcPackageWarning[F0008]{mtcoff}%
7728 {The macro \string\kernafterpartlot

```

F0008

```

7729         \MessageBreak
7730         should not be used out of context
7731         \MessageBreak}%
7732     \kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
7733     }%
7734 \@ifundefined{chapter}{%
7735     \@ifundefined{section}{}%
7736     {%
7737     \def\kernaftersecttoc{%
7738         \mtcoffwarn@true
7739         \mtcPackageWarning[F0008]{mtcoff}%
7740         {The macro \string\kernaftersecttoc
7741         \MessageBreak
7742         should not be used out of context
7743         \MessageBreak}%
7744         \kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
7745     \def\kernaftersectlof{%
7746         \mtcoffwarn@true
7747         \mtcPackageWarning[F0008]{mtcoff}%
7748         {The macro \string\kernaftersectlof
7749         \MessageBreak
7750         should not be used out of context
7751         \MessageBreak}%
7752         \kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
7753     \def\kernaftersectlot{%
7754         \mtcoffwarn@true
7755         \mtcPackageWarning[F0008]{mtcoff}%
7756         {The macro \string\kernaftersectlot
7757         \MessageBreak
7758         should not be used out of context
7759         \MessageBreak}%
7760         \kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
7761     }%
7762     }%
7763     {%
7764     \def\kernafterminitoc{%
7765         \mtcoffwarn@true
7766         \mtcPackageWarning[F0008]{mtcoff}%
7767         {The macro \string\kernafterminitoc
7768         \MessageBreak
7769         should not be used out of context
7770         \MessageBreak}%
7771         \kern-.5\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
7772     \def\kernafterminilof{%
7773         \mtcoffwarn@true
7774         \mtcPackageWarning[F0008]{mtcoff}%
7775         {The macro \string\kernafterminilof
7776         \MessageBreak
7777         should not be used out of context
7778         \MessageBreak}%
7779         \kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.0ex}%
7780     \def\kernafterminilot{%
7781         \mtcoffwarn@true
7782         \mtcPackageWarning[F0008]{mtcoff}%

```

```

7783             {The macro \string\kernafterminilot
7784             \MessageBreak
7785             should not be used out of context
7786             \MessageBreak}%
7787         \kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.0ex}%
7788     }%

```

\@ifundefined We must define the macros for the horizontal offsets of the mini-tables. The default values are used. We must issue a warning if one of these macros is used.

F0009

```

\ptcoffset
\plfoffset
\pltoffset 7789 \@ifundefined{part}{}{%
\stcoffset 7790     \def\ptcoffset{%
\slfoffset 7791         \mtcoffwarn@true
\sltoffset 7792         \mtcPackageWarning[F0009]{mtcoff}%
\mtcoffset 7793         {The macro \string\ptcoffset
\slfoffset 7794             \MessageBreak
\slfoffset 7795             should not be used out of context
\mltoffset 7796             \MessageBreak}%
7797         \opt}%
7798     \def\plfoffset{%
7799         \mtcoffwarn@true
7800         \mtcPackageWarning[F0009]{mtcoff}%
7801         {The macro \string\plfoffset
7802             \MessageBreak
7803             should not be used out of context
7804             \MessageBreak}%
7805         \opt}%
7806     \def\pltoffset{%
7807         \mtcoffwarn@true
7808         \mtcPackageWarning[F0009]{mtcoff}%
7809         {The macro \string\pltoffset
7810             \MessageBreak
7811             should not be used out of context
7812             \MessageBreak}%
7813         \opt}%
7814     }%
7815 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}%
7816 \@ifundefined{section}{}{%
7817     {%
7818         \def\stcoffset{%
7819             \mtcoffwarn@true
7820             \mtcPackageWarning[F0009]{mtcoff}%
7821             {The macro \string\stcoffset
7822                 \MessageBreak
7823                 should not be used out of context
7824                 \MessageBreak}%
7825             \opt}%
7826         \def\slfoffset{%
7827             \mtcoffwarn@true
7828             \mtcPackageWarning[F0009]{mtcoff}%
7829             {The macro \string\slfoffset
7830                 \MessageBreak

```

```

7831             should not be used out of context
7832             \MessageBreak}%
7833         Opt}%
7834     \def\sltoffset{%
7835         \mtcoffwarn@true
7836         \mtcPackageWarning[F0009]{mtcoff}%
7837         {The macro \string\sltoffset
7838         \MessageBreak
7839         should not be used out of context
7840         \MessageBreak}%
7841     Opt}%
7842         }%
7843     }%
7844     {%
7845     \def\mtcoffset{%
7846         \mtcoffwarn@true
7847         \mtcPackageWarning[F0009]{mtcoff}%
7848         {The macro \string\mtcoffset
7849         \MessageBreak
7850         should not be used out of context
7851         \MessageBreak}%
7852     Opt}%
7853     \def\slfoffset{%
7854         \mtcoffwarn@true
7855         \mtcPackageWarning[F0009]{mtcoff}%
7856         {The macro \string\slfoffset
7857         \MessageBreak
7858         should not be used out of context
7859         \MessageBreak}%
7860     Opt}%
7861     \def\mltoffset{%
7862         \mtcoffwarn@true
7863         \mtcPackageWarning[F0009]{mtcoff}%
7864         {The macro \string\mltoffset
7865         \MessageBreak
7866         should not be used out of context
7867         \MessageBreak}%
7868     Opt}%
7869         }%

```

10.4 Faking simple commands

```

\fakeableofcontents Some user commands are easy to fake:
\fakeinfofigures
\fakeinfoftables 7870 \let\fakeableofcontents\relax
\mtcskip 7871 \let\fakeinfofigures\relax
7872 \let\fakeinfoftables\relax
7873 \let\mtcskip\relax

```

```

\adjustptc Basic adjustment commands are also easy:
\adjustmtc
\adjuststc 7874 \newcommand{\adjustptc}[1][1]{\relax}
\decrementptc 7875 \newcommand{\adjustmtc}[1][1]{\relax}
\decrementmtc 7876 \newcommand{\adjuststc}[1][1]{\relax}
\decrementstc 7877 \let\decrementptc\relax \let\incrementptc\relax
\incrementptc 7878 \let\decrementmtc\relax \let\incrementmtc\relax
\incrementmtc 7879 \let\decrementstc\relax \let\incrementstc\relax
\incrementstc

\partend The following commands are not directly called by the user, in normal circumstances, but must
\partbegin be faked:
\chapterend
\chapterbegin 7880 \let\partend\relax \let\partbegin\relax
\sectend 7881 \let\chapterend\relax \let\chapterbegin\relax
\sectbegin 7882 \let\sectend\relax \let\sectbegin\relax

```

10.5 Faking commands with one optional argument

`\gobbleopt@` The user commands with an optional argument are faked using the internal \TeX macro `\ifnextchar` (to get the optional argument) and the new utility command `\gobbleopt@`.

```
7883 \def\gobbleopt@[#1]{\relax}
```

```

\@ifnextchar Commands for part level mini-tables:
\doparttoc
\dopartlof 7884 \def\doparttoc{\@ifnextchar[\gobbleopt@]{\gobbleopt@[1]}
\dopartlot 7885 \def\dopartlof{\@ifnextchar[\gobbleopt@]{\gobbleopt@[1]}
\parttoc 7886 \def\dopartlot{\@ifnextchar[\gobbleopt@]{\gobbleopt@[1]}
\partlof 7887 \def\parttoc{\@ifnextchar[\gobbleopt@]{\gobbleopt@[1]}
\partlot 7888 \def\partlof{\@ifnextchar[\gobbleopt@]{\gobbleopt@[1]}
7889 \def\partlot{\@ifnextchar[\gobbleopt@]{\gobbleopt@[1]}

```

```

\@ifnextchar Commands for chapter level mini-tables:
\dominitoc
\dominilof 7890 \def\dominitoc{\@ifnextchar[\gobbleopt@]{\gobbleopt@[1]}
\dominilot 7891 \def\dominilof{\@ifnextchar[\gobbleopt@]{\gobbleopt@[1]}
\minitoc 7892 \def\dominilot{\@ifnextchar[\gobbleopt@]{\gobbleopt@[1]}
\minilof 7893 \def\minitoc{\@ifnextchar[\gobbleopt@]{\gobbleopt@[1]}
\minilot 7894 \def\minilof{\@ifnextchar[\gobbleopt@]{\gobbleopt@[1]}
7895 \def\minilot{\@ifnextchar[\gobbleopt@]{\gobbleopt@[1]}

```



```

\@ifnextchar  Commands for section level mini-tables:
\dosecttoc
\dosectlof 7896 \def\dosecttoc{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
\dosectlot 7897 \def\dosectlof{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
\secttoc 7898 \def\dosectlot{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
\sectlof 7899 \def\secttoc{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
\sectlot 7900 \def\sectlof{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
7901 \def\sectlot{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}

\@ifnextchar  Command \mtcprepare:
\mtcprepare
7902 \def\mtcprepare{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}

```

10.6 Disabling the internal commands

```

\@gobbletwo  We need also to disable some minitoc commands, with \relax (macros with no argument) or
\tf@mtc     \@gobbletwo (macros with two arguments):
\mtc@string
\appendixmtc 7903 \let\tf@mtc\count@
\l@xchapter 7904 \let\mtc@string\relax
\chapter 7905 \let\appendixmtc\relax
\pchapter 7906 \let\l@xchapter\@gobbletwo
\psect 7907 \let\chapter\relax
\l@xpart 7908 \let\pchapter\relax
\part 7909 \let\psect\relax
\l@xsect 7910 \let\l@xpart\@gobbletwo
\sect 7911 \let\part\relax
7912 \let\l@xsect\@gobbletwo
7913 \let\sect\relax

```

10.7 Disabling the font commands

\empty We disable the minitoc font commands (like \mtcSSfont) with \empty, because some users might have used:

```
\renewcommand{\mtcSSfont}{...}
```

which will not work if we use \relax here.

```

\ptcfont  Fonts for part level mini-tables:
\ptcCfont
\ptcSfont 7914 \let\ptcfont\empty
\ptcSSfont 7915 \let\ptcCfont\empty
\ptcSSSfont 7916 \let\ptcSfont\empty
\ptcPfont 7917 \let\ptcSSfont\empty
\ptcSPfont 7918 \let\ptcSSSfont\empty
\plffont 7919 \let\ptcPfont\empty
\plfSfont 7920 \let\ptcSPfont\empty
\pltfont 7921 \let\plffont\empty
\pltSfont 7922 \let\plfSfont\empty
\ptifont 7923 \let\pltfont\empty
          7924 \let\pltSfont\empty
          7925 \let\ptifont\empty

\mtcfont  Fonts for chapter level mini-tables:
\mtcSfont
\mtcSSfont 7926 \let\mtcfont\empty
\mtcSSSfont 7927 \let\mtcSfont\empty
\mtcPfont 7928 \let\mtcSSfont\empty
\mtcSPfont 7929 \let\mtcSSSfont\empty
\mlffont 7930 \let\mtcPfont\empty
\mlfSfont 7931 \let\mtcSPfont\empty
\mltfont 7932 \let\mlffont\empty
\mltSfont 7933 \let\mlfSfont\empty
\mtifont 7934 \let\mltfont\empty
          7935 \let\mltSfont\empty
          7936 \let\mtifont\empty

\stcfont  Fonts for section level mini-tables:
\stcSSfont
\stcSSSfont 7937 \let\stcfont\empty
\stcPfont 7938 \let\stcSSfont\empty
\stcSPfont 7939 \let\stcSSSfont\empty
\slffont 7940 \let\stcPfont\empty
\slfSfont 7941 \let\stcSPfont\empty
\sltfont 7942 \let\slffont\empty
\sltSfont 7943 \let\slfSfont\empty
\stifont 7944 \let\sltfont\empty
          7945 \let\sltSfont\empty
          7946 \let\stifont\empty

```

```

\coffeefont  Font for “coffee” ☕ lines:

```

```

7947 \let\coffeefont\empty

```

10.8 Disabling the `\mtcset...` commands

```

\@gobbletwo These commands use two or three mandatory arguments:
\mtcsetdepth
\mtcsetoffset 7948 \let\mtcsetdepth\@gobbletwo
\mtcsetfont 7949 \let\mtcsetoffset\@gobbletwo
\mtcsettitlefont 7950 \def\mtcsetfont#1#2#3{\empty}
\mtcsettitle 7951 \let\mtcsettitlefont\@gobbletwo
\mtcsetformat 7952 \let\mtcsettitle\@gobbletwo
\mtcsetfeature 7953 \def\mtcsetformat#1#2#3{\empty}
\mtcsetpagenumbers 7954 \def\mtcsetfeature#1#2#3{\empty}
\mtcsetrules 7955 \let\mtcsetpagenumbers\@gobbletwo
7956 \let\mtcsetrules\@gobbletwo

```

10.9 Disabling the new `\l@...` commands

```

\l@starpart The minitoc package defines the \l@starXXX commands to format TOC entries for starred
\l@starchapter sectionning commands. We reset to the unstarred version, when necessary:
\l@starsection
\l@starsubsection 7957 \@ifundefined{part}{}{\let\l@starpart\l@part}
\l@starsubsubsection 7958 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}{\let\l@starchapter\l@chapter}
\l@starparagraph 7959 \@ifundefined{section}{}{\let\l@starsection\l@section}
\l@starsubparagraph 7960 \@ifundefined{subsection}{}{\let\l@starsubsection\l@subsection}
7961 \@ifundefined{subsubsection}{}{\let\l@starsubsubsection\l@subsubsection}
7962 \@ifundefined{paragraph}{}{\let\l@starparagraph\l@paragraph}
7963 \@ifundefined{subparagraph}{}{\let\l@starsubparagraph\l@subparagraph}

```

10.10 Ignore the obsolete commands

```

\@gobble We just ignore the obsolete commands (with one mandatory argument):
\firstpartis
\firstchapteris 7964 \let\firstpartis\@gobble \let\firstchapteris\@gobble \let\firstsectionis\@gobble
\firstsectionis

```

10.11 Disabling the `\mtcselectlanguage` and `\mtcloadmlo` commands

```

\@gobble These command have one mandatory argument:
\mtcselectlanguage
\mtcloadmlo 7965 \let\mtcselectlanguage\@gobble \let\mtcloadmlo\@gobble

```

10.12 Disabling the commands for the horizontal rules

```

\ptcrule   These commands have no argument:
\noptcrule
\mtcrule   7966 \let\ptcrule\relax
\nomtcrule 7967 \let\noptcrule\relax
\stcrule   7968 \let\mtcrule\relax
\nostcrule 7969 \let\nomtcrule\relax
\plfrule   7970 \let\stcrule\relax
\noplfrule 7971 \let\nostcrule\relax
\mlfrule   7972 \let\plfrule\relax
\nomlfrule 7973 \let\noplfrule\relax
\slfrule   7974 \let\mlfrule\relax
\noslfrule 7975 \let\nomlfrule\relax
\pltrule   7976 \let\slfrule\relax
\nopltrule 7977 \let\pltrule\relax
\mltrule   7978 \let\nopltrule\relax
\nomltrule 7979 \let\mltrule\relax
\sltrule   7980 \let\nomltrule\relax
\nosltrule 7981 \let\sltrule\relax
           7982 \let\nosltrule\relax
           7983 \let\nosltrule\relax

```

10.13 Disabling the commands for the page numbers

```

\ptcpagenumbers These commands have no argument:
\noptcpagenumbers
\mtcpagenumbers 7984 \let\mtcpagenumbers\relax
\nomtcpagenumbers 7985 \let\nomtcpagenumbers\relax
\stcpagenumbers 7986 \let\stcpagenumbers\relax
\nostcpagenumbers 7987 \let\nostcpagenumbers\relax
\plfpagenumbers 7988 \let\ptcpagenumbers\relax
\noplfpagenumbers 7989 \let\noptcpagenumbers\relax
\mlfpagenumbers 7990 \let\mlfpagenumbers\relax
\nomlfpagenumbers 7991 \let\nomlfpagenumbers\relax
\slfpagenumbers 7992 \let\slfpagenumbers\relax
\noslfpagenumbers 7993 \let\noslfpagenumbers\relax
\pltpagenumbers 7994 \let\plfpagenumbers\relax
\nopltpagenumbers 7995 \let\noplfpagenumbers\relax
\mltpagenumbers 7996 \let\mltpagenumbers\relax
\nomltpagenumbers 7997 \let\nomltpagenumbers\relax
\sltpagenumbers 7998 \let\sltpagenumbers\relax
\nosltpagenumbers 7999 \let\nosltpagenumbers\relax
8000 \let\pltpagenumbers\relax
8001 \let\nopltpagenumbers\relax

```

We disable the commands for features (like `\beforeparttoc`) with `\empty`, because some users may have used:

which will not work if we use `\relax` here. These commands have no argument,

	Commands for chapter level mini-tables:
<code>\beforeminitoc</code>	
<code>\beforeminilof</code>	
<code>\beforeminilot</code>	8017 <code>\let\beforeminitoc\empty</code>
<code>\afterminitoc</code>	8018 <code>\let\beforeminilof\empty</code>
<code>\afterminilof</code>	8019 <code>\let\beforeminilot\empty</code>
<code>\afterminilot</code>	8020 <code>\let\afterminitoc\empty</code>
<code>\openminitoc</code>	8021 <code>\let\afterminilof\empty</code>
<code>\openminilof</code>	8022 <code>\let\afterminilot\empty</code>
<code>\openminilot</code>	8023 <code>\let\openminitoc\empty</code>
<code>\closeminitoc</code>	8024 <code>\let\openminilof\empty</code>
<code>\closeminilof</code>	8025 <code>\let\openminilot\empty</code>
<code>\closeminilot</code>	8026 <code>\let\closeminitoc\empty</code>
	8027 <code>\let\closeminilof\empty</code>
<code>\thispageminitletstyle</code>	8028 <code>\let\closeminilot\empty</code>
<code>\thispageminilofstyle</code>	8029 <code>\let\thispageminitletstyle\empty</code>
<code>\thispageminilotstyle</code>	8030 <code>\let\thispageminilofstyle\empty</code>
	8031 <code>\let\thispageminilotstyle\empty</code>

```

\beforesecttoc  Commands for section level mini-tables:
\beforesectlof
\beforesectlot 8032 \let\beforesecttoc\empty
\aftersecttoc  8033 \let\beforesectlof\empty
\aftersectlof  8034 \let\beforesectlot\empty
\aftersectlot  8035 \let\aftersecttoc\empty
\opensecttoc   8036 \let\aftersectlof\empty
\opensectlof   8037 \let\aftersectlot\empty
\opensectlot   8038 \let\opensecttoc\empty
\closesecttoc  8039 \let\opensectlof\empty
\closesectlof  8040 \let\opensectlot\empty
\closesectlot  8041 \let\closesecttoc\empty
\closesectlof  8042 \let\closesectlof\empty
\thispagesecttocstyle 8043 \let\closesectlot\empty
\thispagesectlofstyle 8044 \let\thispagesecttocstyle\empty
\thispagesectlotstyle 8045 \let\thispagesectlofstyle\empty
                  8046 \let\thispagesectlotstyle\empty

```

10.15 Disabling miscellaneous flags and commands

```

\if@longextensions@ There are some flags and commands that it is wise to declare:
  \iftightmtc
  \ifktightmtc 8047 \newif\if@longextensions@ \@longextensions@true
\ifundottedmtc 8048 \newif\iftightmtc \tightmtcfalse
  \l@listof 8049 \newif\ifktightmtc \ktightmtcfalse
\ifmtcsecondpart 8050 \newif\ifundottedmtc \undottedmtcfalse
  \chapter 8051 \newif\ifmtcsecondpart \mtcsecondpartfalse
            8052 \let\l@listof\chapter

```

10.16 Caution for some commands

`\AtBeginDocument` Some minitoc commands should eventually be replaced if you decide to *definitely* stop using the minitoc package with your document. So we declare a flag and an `\AtEndDocument` block to signal that you have used these commands:

```

8053 \newif\ifmtcoffwarn@ \mtcoffwarn@false
8054 \AtEndDocument{\ifmtcoffwarn@
8055   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[F0007]{mtcoff}%
8056   {You should scan (backwards) your .log
8057   \MessageBreak
8058   file to find some commands needing
8059   \MessageBreak
8060   to be replaced if you decide to
8061   \MessageBreak
8062   DEFINITELY stop using minitoc for this

```



F0007

```

8063      \MessageBreak
8064      document. It is more wise to keep the
8065      \MessageBreak
8066      \string\usepackage\space lines for minitoc and mtcoff
8067      \MessageBreak
8068      and to comment out only one of them}
8069 \fi}

```

```

\mtcaddchapter Then these commands are disabled and they set the flag and give a warning (useful to get the
\mtcaddsection line number):
\mtcaddpart
\ifmtcoffwarn@ 8070 \newcommand{\mtcaddchapter}[1][\mtcoffwarn@true
\mtc@ck 8071 \mtcPackageWarning[F0004]{mtcoff}%
\addcontentsline 8072 {\protect\mtcaddchapter{...} should be replaced
8073 \MessageBreak
8074 by \protect\addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{...}
8075 \MessageBreak}
8076 \def\mtc@ck{#1}
8077 \ifx\mtc@ck\empty
8078 \else
8079 \addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{#1}%
8080 \fi}
8081 \newcommand{\mtcaddsection}[1][\mtcoffwarn@true
8082 \mtcPackageWarning[F0006]{mtcoff}%
8083 {\protect\mtcaddsection{...} should be replaced
8084 \MessageBreak
8085 by \protect\addcontentsline{toc}{section}{...}
8086 \MessageBreak}
8087 \def\mtc@ck{#1}
8088 \ifx\mtc@ck\empty
8089 \else
8090 \addcontentsline{toc}{part}{#1}%
8091 \fi}
8092 \newcommand{\mtcaddpart}[1][\mtcoffwarn@true
8093 \mtcPackageWarning[F0005]{mtcoff}%
8094 {\protect\mtcaddpart{...} should be replaced
8095 \MessageBreak
8096 by \protect\addcontentsline{toc}{part}{...}
8097 \MessageBreak}
8098 \def\mtc@ck{#1}
8099 \ifx\mtc@ck\empty
8100 \else
8101 \addcontentsline{toc}{part}{#1}%
8102 \fi}

```

F0004

F0006

F0005

10.17 Disabling commands for “coffee”

```

\addcoffeeline We disable the commands relative to “coffee” lines, and the specific version of contents lines
\coffeeline without leaders of dots:
\@gobble
\@Undottedtocline 8103 \def\addcoffeeline#1#2#3{\relax}
\@Undottedtoclinep 8104 \let\coffeeline\@gobble
8105 \let\l@coffee\relax
8106 \def\@Undottedtocline#1#2#3#4#5{\relax}
8107 \def\@Undottedtoclinep#1#2#3#4#5{\relax}

```

10.18 Disabling the mtchideinmain... environments

```

mtchideinmaintoc These environments accept one optional argument:
mtchideinmainlof
mtchideinmainlot 8108 \newenvironment{mtchideinmaintoc}[1][-1]{\empty}{\empty}
8109 \newenvironment{mtchideinmainlof}[1][-1]{\empty}{\empty}
8110 \newenvironment{mtchideinmainlot}[1][-1]{\empty}{\empty}

```

10.19 Inhibition of the \mtc@[save|restore]XXXdepth internal commands

```

\mtc@savetocdepth We must inhibit these commands, inserted in the .toc, .lof and .lot files by the hiding
\mtc@savelofdepth commands. So we will not have to delete these files when switching from the minitoc package
\mtc@savelotdepth to the mtcff package.
\mtc@restoretocdepth
\mtc@restorelofdepth 8111 \let\mtc@savetocdepth\empty
\mtc@restorelotdepth 8112 \let\mtc@savelofdepth\empty
8113 \let\mtc@savelotdepth\empty
8114 \let\mtc@restoretocdepth\empty
8115 \let\mtc@restorelofdepth\empty
8116 \let\mtc@restorelotdepth\empty

```

10.20 Disabling the \mtcfixglossary command

```

\mtcfixglossary This command accepts one optional argument:
8117 \newcommand{\mtcfixglossary}[1][\relax}

```


10.21 Disabling the `\mtcfixindex` command

`\mtcfixindex` This command accepts one optional argument:

```
8118 \newcommand{\mtcfixindex}[1][\relax]
```

10.22 Disabling the `\mtcfixnomenclature` command

`\mtcfixnomenclature` This command accepts one optional argument:

```
8119 \newcommand{\mtcfixnomenclature}[1][\relax]
```

10.23 Disabling the `\addstarred...` commands

`\ifmtcoffwarn@` These commands should be replaced by standard commands, but mtcff simulates and gives a warning, which will be reminded at the end of document:

```
\addstarredpart
\addstarredchapter
\addstarredsection
\addcontentsline
8120 \def\addstarredpart#1{\mtcoffwarn@true
8121   \mtcPackageWarning[F0002]{mtcoff}%
8122   {\protect\addstarredpart{...} should be replaced by
8123     \MessageBreak
8124     \protect\addcontentsline{toc}{part}{...}
8125     \MessageBreak}
8126   \addcontentsline{toc}{part}{#1}}
8127 \def\addstarredchapter#1{\mtcoffwarn@true
8128   \mtcPackageWarning[F0001]{mtcoff}%
8129   {\protect\addstarredchapter{...} should be replaced by
8130     \MessageBreak
8131     \protect\addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{...}
8132     \MessageBreak}
8133   \addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{#1}}
8134 \def\addstarredsection#1{\mtcoffwarn@true
8135   \mtcPackageWarning[F0003]{mtcoff}%
8136   {\protect\addstarredsection{...} should be replaced by
8137     \MessageBreak
8138     \protect\addcontentsline{toc}{section}{...}
8139     \MessageBreak}
8140   \addcontentsline{toc}{section}{#1}}
```

F0002

F0001

F0003

And the mtcff package is terminated.

```
8141 </mtcoff>
```

Chapter 11

Commented code of the mtcmess package

```
\mtcPackageInfo  To make easier the search of a message in the documentation1, we will assign an unique identifier to each message of the minitoc and mtcoff packages. As the standard commands for such messages do not include this feature, we make extended versions, with the same syntax, plus a first optional argument:
\PackageInfo
\MessageBreak
\mtcPackageWarning \PackageWarning
\mtcPackageWarningNoLine 8142 <(*mtcmess)
\PackageWarningNoLine 8143 \ProvidesPackage{mtcmess}[2006/03/14]%
\mtcPackageError 8144 \NeedsTeXFormat{LaTeX2e}[1996/06/01]%
\PackageError 8145 \newcommand{\mtcPackageInfo}[3][[]%
8146     {\PackageInfo{#2}{#1\MessageBreak #3}}%
8147 \newcommand{\mtcPackageWarning}[3][[]%
8148     {\PackageWarning{#2}{#1\MessageBreak #3}}%
8149 \newcommand{\mtcPackageWarningNoLine}[3][[]%
8150     {\PackageWarningNoLine{#2}{#1\MessageBreak #3}}%
8151 \newcommand{\mtcPackageError}[4][[]%
8152     {\PackageError{#2}{#1\MessageBreak #3}{#4}}%
8153 </mtcmess>
```

Hence the first line of the message will contain the package name and the unique identifier of the message.

These macros are defined in a separate package because they are used by at least two packages (minitoc and mtcoff) and because they could be useful for other packages.

¹ For instance, using the search facility of some PDF reader utility.

Chapter 12

Patch for the memoir class

This code must be loaded to fix an *incompatibility* of the minitoc package with some recent versions of the memoir class. This correction is no more necessary after the 2005/09/25 version of memoir.



```
8154 (*mtcpatchmem)
8155 \NeedsTeXFormat{LaTeX2e}[1996/06/01]%
8156 \ProvidesPackage{mtcpatchmem}%
8157   [2007/06/29 v55 Package mtcpatchmem]
8158 \RequirePackage{mtcmess}[2006/03/14]
8159 \mtcPackageInfo[M0001]{mtcpatchmem}%
8160   {mtcpatchmem package to patch the memoir class\@gobble}
8161 \renewcommand{\@m@chapter}[1][1]{%
8162   \def\ch@pt@c{#1}% capture first optional arg
8163   \@ifnextchar[{\@chapter}{\@chapter[]}%
8164 }
8165 \def\@chapter[#1]#2{%
8166 % if |\ch@pt@c| is empty, no [ was found at all. Use #2| as
8167 % entry for all fields.
8168   \ifx\ch@pt@c\@empty
8169     \def\f@rtoc{#2}%
8170     \def\f@rhdr{#2}%
8171   \else
8172 % otherwise at least one [ was found. If|#1| is empty then only
8173 % one was found.
8174     \let\f@rtoc\ch@pt@c
8175     \ifx\@empty#1\@empty
8176       \let\f@rhdr\ch@pt@c
8177     \else
8178       \def\f@rhdr{#1}%
8179     \fi
8180   \fi
8181   \ifnum \c@secnumdepth > \m@ne \relax
8182     \if@mainmatter
8183       \refstepcounter{chapter}%
```

```

8184     \fi
8185   \fi
8186   \chaptermark{\f@rhdr}%
8187   \ifartopt
8188     \@makechapterhead{#2}%
8189     \@afterheading
8190   \else
8191     \insertchapterspace
8192     \if@twocolumn
8193       \@topnewpage[\@makechapterhead{#2}]%
8194     \else
8195       \@makechapterhead{#2}%
8196     \fi
8197     \@afterheading
8198   \fi
8199   \ifnum \c@secnumdepth >\m@ne\relax
8200     \if@mainmatter
8201       \ifanappendix
8202         \addcontentsline{toc}{appendix}{%
8203           \protect\chapternumberline{\thechapter}\f@rtoc}%
8204       \else
8205         \addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{%
8206           \protect\chapternumberline{\thechapter}\f@rtoc}%
8207       \fi
8208     \else
8209       \addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{\f@rtoc}%
8210     \fi
8211   \else
8212     \addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{\f@rtoc}%
8213   \fi
8214   \ifheadnameref\M@gettitle{\f@rhdr}\else\M@gettitle{\f@rtoc}\fi
8215 }
8216 </mtcpatchmem>

```

Chapter 13

Language definition (.mld) and object (.mlo) files

Contents

13.1	“Acadian” language: acadian.mld	466
13.2	“Acadien” language: acadien.mld	466
13.3	“Afrikaan” language: afrikaan.mld	466
13.4	“Afrikaans” language: afrikaans.mld	467
13.5	“Albanian” language: albanian.mld	467
13.6	“American” language: american.mld	467
13.7	“Arab” language: arab.mld	468
13.8	“Arab2” language: arab2.mld	468
13.9	“Arabi” language: arabi.mld	469
13.10	“Arabic” language: arabic.mld	469
13.11	“Armenian” language: armenian.mld	469
13.12	“Australian” language: australian.mld	470
13.13	“Austrian” language: austrian.mld	470
13.14	“Bahasa” language: bahasa.mld	470
13.15	“Bahasai” language: bahasai.mld	471
13.16	“Bahasam” language: bahasam.mld	471
13.17	“Bangla” language: bangla.mld	472
13.18	“Basque” language: basque.mld	472
13.19	“Bicig” language: bicig.mld	473
13.20	“Bicig2” language: bicig2.mld	474
13.21	“Bicig3” language: bicig3.mld	474
13.22	“Bithe” language: bithe.mld	475
13.23	“Brazil” language: brazil.mld	475
13.24	“Brazilian” language: brazilian.mld	476
13.25	“Breton” language: breton.mld	476
13.26	“British” language: british.mld	476
13.27	“Bulgarian” language: bulgarian.mld	477
13.28	“Bulgarianb” language: bulgarianb.mld	477
13.29	“Buryat” language: buryat.mld	478
13.30	“Buryat2” language: buryat2.mld	479

13.31	“Canadian” language: <code>canadian.mld</code>	479
13.32	“Canadien” language: <code>canadien.mld</code>	479
13.33	“Castillian” language: <code>castillan.mld</code>	480
13.34	“Castillian” language: <code>castillian.mld</code>	480
13.35	“Catalan” language: <code>catalan.mld</code>	480
13.36	“Chinese1” language: <code>chinese1.mld</code> and <code>chinese1.mlo</code>	481
13.37	“Chinese2” language: <code>chinese2.mld</code> and <code>chinese2.mlo</code>	481
13.38	“Croatian” language: <code>croatian.mld</code>	482
13.39	“Czech” language: <code>czech.mld</code>	482
13.40	“Danish” language: <code>danish.mld</code>	483
13.41	“Devanagari” language: <code>devanagari.mld</code>	483
13.42	“Dutch” language: <code>dutch.mld</code>	484
13.43	“English” language: <code>english.mld</code>	484
13.44	“English1” language: <code>english1.mld</code>	485
13.45	“English2” language: <code>english2.mld</code>	485
13.46	“Esperant” language: <code>esperant.mld</code>	486
13.47	“Esperanto” language: <code>esperanto.mld</code>	486
13.48	“Estonian” language: <code>estonian.mld</code>	487
13.49	“Ethiopia” language: <code>ethiopia.mld</code>	487
13.50	“Ethiopian” language: <code>ethiopian.mld</code>	488
13.51	“Ethiopian2” language: <code>ethiopian2.mld</code>	488
13.52	“Farsi1” language: <code>farsi1.mld</code> and <code>farsi1.mlo</code>	489
13.53	“Farsi2” language: <code>farsi2.mld</code> and <code>farsi2.mlo</code>	489
13.54	“Farsi3” language: <code>farsi3.mld</code>	490
13.55	“Finnish” language: <code>finnish.mld</code>	490
13.56	“Finnish2” language: <code>finnish2.mld</code>	491
13.57	“Francais” language: <code>francais.mld</code>	491
13.58	“French” language: <code>french.mld</code>	492
13.59	“French1” language: <code>french1.mld</code>	492
13.60	“French2” language: <code>french2.mld</code>	493
13.61	“Frenchb” language: <code>frenchb.mld</code>	494
13.62	“Frenchle” language: <code>frenchle.mld</code>	494
13.63	“Frenchpro” language: <code>frenchpro.mld</code>	494
13.64	“Galician” language: <code>galician.mld</code>	494
13.65	“German” language: <code>german.mld</code>	495
13.66	“Germanb” language: <code>germanb.mld</code>	496
13.67	“Germanb2” language: <code>germanb2.mld</code>	496
13.68	“Greek” language: <code>greek.mld</code>	497
13.69	“Greek-mono” language: <code>greek-mono.mld</code>	497
13.70	“Greek-polydemo” language: <code>greek-polydemo.mld</code>	498
13.71	“Greek-polykatha” language: <code>greek-polykatha.mld</code>	499
13.72	“Guarani” language: <code>guarani.mld</code>	500
13.73	“Hangul1” language: <code>hangul1.mld</code> and <code>hangul1.mlo</code>	501
13.74	“Hangul2” language: <code>hangul2.mld</code> and <code>hangul2.mlo</code>	501
13.75	“Hangul3” language: <code>hangul3.mld</code> and <code>hangul3.mlo</code>	502
13.76	“Hangul4” language: <code>hangul4.mld</code> and <code>hangul4.mlo</code>	502
13.77	“Hangul-u8” language: <code>hangul-u8.mld</code> and <code>hangul-u8.mlo</code>	503
13.78	“Hanja1” language: <code>hanja1.mld</code> and <code>hanja1.mlo</code>	503
13.79	“Hanja2” language: <code>hanja2.mld</code> and <code>hanja2.mlo</code>	504
13.80	“Hanja-u8” language: <code>hanja-u8.mld</code> and <code>hanja-u8.mlo</code>	504
13.81	“Hebrew” language: <code>hebrew.mld</code>	505
13.82	“Hebrew2” language: <code>hebrew2.mld</code>	506
13.83	“Hindi” language: <code>hindi.mld</code>	506

13.84	“Hindi-modern” language: hindi-modern.mld	507
13.85	“Hungarian” language: hungarian.mld	507
13.86	“Icelandic” language: icelandic.mld	508
13.87	“Indon” language: indon.mld	508
13.88	“Indonesian” language: indonesian.mld	508
13.89	“Interlingua” language: interlingua.mld	509
13.90	“Irish” language: irish.mld	509
13.91	“Italian” language: italian.mld	510
13.92	“Italian2” language: italian2.mld	510
13.93	“Japanese” language: japanese.mld and japanese.mlo	511
13.94	“Japanese2” language: japanese2.mld and japanese2.mlo	511
13.95	“Japanese3” language: japanese3.mld and japanese3.mlo	512
13.96	“Japanese4” language: japanese4.mld and japanese4.mlo	512
13.97	“Japanese5” language: japanese5.mld and japanese5.mlo	513
13.98	“Japanese6” language: japanese6.mld and japanese6.mlo	513
13.99	“Kannada” language: kannada.mld	514
13.100	“Khalka” language: khalkha.mld	514
13.101	“Latin” language: latin.mld	514
13.102	“Latin2” language: latin2.mld	515
13.103	“Latinc” language: latinc.mld	516
13.104	“Latinc2” language: latinc2.mld	516
13.105	“Latvian” language: latvian.mld	517
13.106	“Latvian2” language: latvian2.mld	517
13.107	“Letton” language: letton.mld	518
13.108	“Letton2” language: letton2.mld	518
13.109	“Lithuanian” language: lithuanian.mld	518
13.110	“Lithuanian2” language: lithuanian2.mld	519
13.111	“Lowersorbian” language: lowersorbian.mld	519
13.112	“Lsorbian” language: lsorbian.mld	520
13.113	“Magyar” language: magyar.mld	520
13.114	“Magyar2” language: magyar2.mld	521
13.115	“Magyar3” language: magyar3.mld	521
13.116	“Malay” language: malay.mld	522
13.117	“Malayalam-keli” language: malayalam-keli.mld	522
13.118	“Malayalam-omega” language: malayalam-omega.mld and malayalam-omega.mlo	522
13.119	“Malayalam-rachana” language: malayalam-rachana.mld	523
13.120	“Malayalam-rachana2” language: malayalam-rachana2.mld	523
13.121	“Manju” language: manju.mld	524
13.122	“Meyalu” language: meyalu.mld	524
13.123	“Mongol” language: mongol.mld	524
13.124	“Mongolb” language: mongolb.mld	525
13.125	“Mongolian” language: mongolian.mld	526
13.126	“Naustrian” language: naustrian.mld	526
13.127	“Newzealand” language: newzealand.mld	526
13.128	“Ngerman” language: ngerman.mld	527
13.129	“Ngermanb” language: ngermanb.mld	527
13.130	“Ngermanb2” language: ngermanb2.mld	528
13.131	“Norsk” language: norsk.mld	528
13.132	“Norsk2” language: norsk2.mld	529
13.133	“Nynorsk” language: nynorsk.mld	529
13.134	“Nynorsk2” language: nynorsk2.mld	530
13.135	“Polish” language: polish.mld	530

13.136 “Polish2” language: polish2.mld	531
13.137 “Polski” language: polski.mld	531
13.138 “Portuges” language: portuges.mld	532
13.139 “Portuguese” language: portuguese.mld	532
13.140 “Romanian” language: romanian.mld	533
13.141 “Romanian2” language: romanian2.mld	533
13.142 “Romanian3” language: romanian3.mld	534
13.143 “Russian” language: russian.mld	534
13.144 “Russian2m” language: russian2m.mld	535
13.145 “Russian2o” language: russian2o.mld	536
13.146 “Russianb” language: russianb.mld	537
13.147 “Russianc” language: russianc.mld	538
13.148 “Russian-cca” language: russian-cca.mld and russian-cca.mlo	538
13.149 “Russian-cca1” language: russian-cca1.mld and russian-cca1.mlo	539
13.150 “Russian-lh” language: russian-lh.mld and russian-lh.mlo	539
13.151 “Russian-lhcyralt” language: russian-lhcyralt.mld and russian-lhcyralt.mlo	539
13.152 “Russian-lhcyrkoi” language: russian-lhcyrkoi.mld and russian-lhcyrkoi.mlo	540
13.153 “Russian-lhcyrwin” language: russian-lhcyrwin.mld and russian-lhcyrwin.mlo	540
13.154 “Samin” language: samin.mld	541
13.155 “Scottish” language: scottish.mld	541
13.156 “Serbian” language: serbian.mld	542
13.157 “Serbianc” language: serbianc.mld	542
13.158 “Slovak” language: slovak.mld	543
13.159 “Slovene” language: slovene.mld	544
13.160 “Spanish” language: spanish.mld	544
13.161 “Spanish2” language: spanish2.mld	545
13.162 “Spanish3” language: spanish3.mld	545
13.163 “Spanish4” language: spanish4.mld	546
13.164 “Swedish” language: swedish.mld	546
13.165 “Swedish2” language: swedish2.mld	547
13.166 “Thai” language: thai.mld and thai.mlo	547
13.167 “Turkish” language: turkish.mld	548
13.168 “Uighur” language: uighur.mld	548
13.169 “Uighur2” language: uighur2.mld	548
13.170 “Uighur3” language: uighur3.mld	549
13.171 “UKenglish” language: UKenglish.mld	549
13.172 “Ukraineb” language: ukraineb.mld	549
13.173 “Ukrainian” language: ukrainian.mld	550
13.174 “Uppersorbian” language: uppersorbian.mld	550
13.175 “USenglish” language: USenglish.mld	551
13.176 “Usorbian” language: usorbian.mld	551
13.177 “Vietnam” language: vietnam.mld	551
13.178 “Vietnamese” language: vietnamese.mld	552
13.179 “Welsh” language: welsh.mld	552
13.180 “Xalx” language: xalx.mld	553
13.181 “Xalx2” language: xalx2.mld	553
13.182 “Xalx3” language: xalx3.mld	554

This chapter shows the code of each .mld file. A .mld file is a *minitoc language definition* file, which defines the titles of the mini-tables for a given language. It contains often some comments about its origin, if you need further details. It is loaded either via a package option¹ in the \usepackage command for the minitoc package, either via the command:

```
\mtcselectlanguage      \mtcselectlanguage{\<language>}
```

\ptctitle Each .mld file must define the nine following commands (for the mini-tables of contents, mini-lists of figures and mini-lists of tables, at the part, chapter and section levels):

\plftitle	\pltttitle		
\mtctitle	• \ptctitle	• \mtctitle	• \stctitle
\mlftitle	• \plftitle	• \mlftitle	• \slftitle
\mltttitle	• \pltttitle	• \mltttitle	• \sltttitle
\stctitle			
\slftitle			
\sltttitle			

Many .mld files require special fonts adequate for the corresponding language; as this is a language-dependent issue, the user must set up the correct language and font context for each language, like using the babel package [45–47, 65], the CJK system [233, 234], the H_AT_EX system [206, in korean], the Antomega system [210], the ArabT_EX [214, 215], BangT_EX [286], Devanāgarī for T_EX [288], ethiop [37], FarsiT_EX [136]², guarani [39], malayalam [4] et omal [5], MonT_EX [117, 120], or ArmT_EX [121] packages. Note that it is often the *english* name of the language which is used to name the corresponding .mld file.

But for some oriental languages³, the source of the titles use some *exotic encodings*, difficult to manipulate in a .dtx file, the .mld file is then just a wrapper loading a .mlo file⁴, not generated by the .dtx files in the current version of minitoc package. The adequate input encoding must be set up by the user *before* loading the .mld file via \mtcselectlanguage.

To go around this limitation, the minitoc.ins file uses filecontents environments to generate the .mlo files.

Since version #49, the minitoc package checks the presence of the *language.mld* file (and of the *language.mlo* file if necessary) for each language option of the package, before validating the option. If a .mld or .mlo is missing, the corresponding language option is not enabled and a warning message is written in the *document.log* file. But the presence of the *english.mld* file is mandatory, because english is the default language.

If some .mld or .mlo files are missing, the list of this files is given in the .log file.

¹ It can also be a global option for the document.

² By Mohammad GHODSI (ghodsi@rose.ipm.ac.ir) and FarsiT_EX Project Group. See the FarsiT_EX site at <http://www.farsitex.org>

³ Mainly for chinese, farsi (iranian), hangûl (korean), hanja (korean), japanese, malayalam-omega, thai, and russian variants.

⁴ The extension .mlo means *minitoc language object*.



I0050
I0051
E0036
E0038

W0034

13.1 “Acadian” language: `acadian.mld`

The acadian language⁵ is just french, so we load the `french.mld` file (see section 13.58 on page 492):

```
8217 <*acadian>
8218 \ProvidesFile{acadian.mld}[2004/12/14]
8219 \mtcselectlanguage{french}%
8220 </acadian>
```

13.2 “Acadien” language: `acadien.mld`

The “acadien” language⁵ is just french (“acadien” is the french term for “acadian”), so we load the `french.mld` file (see section 13.58 on page 492):

```
8221 <*acadien>
8222 \ProvidesFile{acadien.mld}[2004/12/14]
8223 \mtcselectlanguage{french}%
8224 </acadien>
```

13.3 “Afrikaan” language: `afrikaan.mld`

The titles for the “afrikaan” language⁶ come from the `dutch.dtx` file (by Johannes L. BRAAMS and Stoffel LOMBARD) in the `babel` package [46–48]:

```
8225 <*afrikaan>
8226 \ProvidesFile{afrikaan.mld}[2006/01/13]
8227 %% Afrikaan(s) titles for minitoc.sty
8228 %% from dutch.dtx (babel)
8229 %% Braams, Johannes~L.
8230 \def\ptctitle{Inhoudsopgawe}%
8231 \def\plftitle{Lys van figure}%
8232 \def\plttitle{Lys van tabelle}%
8233 %%
8234 \def\mtctitle{Inhoudsopgawe}%
8235 \def\mlftitle{Lys van figure}%
8236 \def\mlttitle{Lys van tabelle}%
8237 %%
8238 \def\stctitle{Inhoudsopgawe}%
8239 \def\slftitle{Lys van figure}%
8240 \def\slttitle{Lys van tabelle}%
8241 </afrikaan>
```

⁵ Spoken in some parts of the south of the USA, like Louisiane.

⁶ Spoken in South Africa, it has dutch origins; compare with section 13.42 on page 484.

13.4 “Afrikaans” language: afrikaans.mld

The term “afrikaans” is a synonym of “afrikaan”, so we just load afrikaan.mld (see section 13.3 on the preceding page):

```
8242 <*afrikaans>
8243 \ProvidesFile{afrikaans.mld}[2004/12/14]
8244 \mtcselectlanguage{afrikaan}%
8245 </afrikaans>
```

13.5 “Albanian” language: albanian.mld

The titles for the “albanian” language are taken from the albanian.dtx file (with a contribution of Adi Zaimi) in the babel package [46, 47, 92]:

```
8246 <*albanian>
8247 \ProvidesFile{albanian.mld}[2006/01/13]
8248 %% Albanian titles for minitoc.sty.
8249 %% from albabian.dtx (babel)
8250 %% Contribution of Adi Zaimi (zamilst at yahoo.com).
8251 \def\ptctitle{P\ "ermbajta}%
8252 \def\plftitle{Figurat}%
8253 \def\plttitle{Tabelat}%
8254 %%
8255 \def\mtctitle{P\ "ermbajta}%
8256 \def\mlftitle{Figurat}%
8257 \def\mltitle{Tabelat}%
8258 %%
8259 \def\stctitle{P\ "ermbajta}%
8260 \def\slftitle{Figurat}%
8261 \def\slttitle{Tabelat}%
8262 </albanian>
```

13.6 “American” language: american.mld

The “american” language is just like “english”⁷, so we just load english.mld (see section 13.43 on page 484):

```
8263 <*american>
8264 \ProvidesFile{american.mld}[2004/12/14]
8265 \mtcselectlanguage{english}%
8266 </american>
```

⁷ It should be true for the mini-table titles; the languages themselves have some differences, like the hyphenation rules.

13.7 “Arab” language: arab.mld

The titles for the “arab” language are taken from the ArabTeX package [214, 215] (by Klaus LAGALLY), which should be used, with the associated fonts.

```

8267 <*arab>
8268 \ProvidesFile{arab.mld}[1999/03/16]
8269 %% Arabic titles for minitoc.sty
8270 %% Needs arabic fonts (cf. documentation of arabtex)
8271 %% (strings taken from arabtex; to be used with arabtex)
8272 \def\ptctitle{al-mu.htawayAtu}%
8273 \def\plftitle{qA'imaTu a.s-.suwari}%
8274 \def\pltttitle{qA'imaTu al-^gadAwili}
8275 %%
8276 \def\mtctitle{al-mu.htawayAtu}%
8277 \def\mlftitle{qA'imaTu a.s-.suwari}%
8278 \def\mltttitle{qA'imaTu al-^gadAwili}%
8279 %%
8280 \def\stctitle{al-mu.htawayAtu}%
8281 \def\slftitle{qA'imaTu a.s-.suwari}%
8282 \def\slttitle{qA'imaTu al-^gadAwili}%
8283 </arab>

```

13.8 “Arab2” language: arab2.mld

The titles for the “arab2” language are taken from the ArabTeX package [214, 215] (by Klaus LAGALLY), which should be used, with the associated fonts. It is a variant of the “arab” language.

```

8284 <*arab2>
8285 \ProvidesFile{arab2.mld}[2006/03/31]
8286 %% Arabic titles for minitoc.sty. Variant.
8287 %% Needs arabic fonts (cf. documentation of arabtex)
8288 %% (strings taken from arabtex; to be used with arabtex)
8289 {\makeatletter\global\let\mtcArabTok\@tok}%
8290 \def\ptctitle{\mtcArabTok(al-muHtawayAtu)}%
8291 \def\plftitle{\mtcArabTok(qAQAIMaTu aS-Suwari)}%
8292 \def\pltttitle{\mtcArabTok(qAQAIMaTu al-GadAwili)}%
8293 %%
8294 \def\mtctitle{\mtcArabTok(al-muHtawayAtu)}%
8295 \def\mlftitle{\mtcArabTok(qAQAIMaTu aS-Suwari)}%
8296 \def\mltttitle{\mtcArabTok(qAQAIMaTu al-GadAwili)}%
8297 %%
8298 \def\stctitle{\mtcArabTok(al-muHtawayAtu)}%
8299 \def\slftitle{\mtcArabTok(qAQAIMaTu aS-Suwari)}%
8300 \def\slttitle{\mtcArabTok(qAQAIMaTu al-GadAwili)}%
8301 </arab2>

```

13.9 “Arabi” language: arabi.mld

The titles for the “arabi” language are taken from the *Arabi* package [191] (by Youssef JABRI), which should be used, with the associated fonts.

```

8302 <*arabi>
8303 \ProvidesFile{arabi.mld}[2006/07/27]
8304 %% Arabic titles for minitoc.sty.
8305 %% Needs arabic fonts (cf. documentation of the Arabi package,
8306 %% Youssef Jabri)
8307 %% (strings taken from arabi.ldf; to be used with arabi)
8308 \def\ptctitle{\R{\alef\lam\fa\ha\ra\seen}}%
8309 \def\plftitle{\R{\qaf\alef\yahamza\meem\T\space \alef\lam\alefhamza\sheen\kaf\alef\lam}}%
8310 \def\pltttitle{\R{\qaf\alef\yahamza\meem\T\space \alef\lam\jeem\dal\alef\waw\lam}}%
8311 %%
8312 \def\mtctitle{\R{\alef\lam\fa\ha\ra\seen}}%
8313 \def\mlftitle{\R{\qaf\alef\yahamza\meem\T\space \alef\lam\alefhamza\sheen\kaf\alef\lam}}%
8314 \def\mltttitle{\R{\qaf\alef\yahamza\meem\T\space \alef\lam\jeem\dal\alef\waw\lam}}%
8315 %%
8316 \def\stctitle{\R{\alef\lam\fa\ha\ra\seen}}%
8317 \def\slftitle{\R{\qaf\alef\yahamza\meem\T\space \alef\lam\alefhamza\sheen\kaf\alef\lam}}%
8318 \def\sltttitle{\R{\qaf\alef\yahamza\meem\T\space \alef\lam\jeem\dal\alef\waw\lam}}%
8319 %%
8320 </arabi>

```

13.10 “Arabic” language: arabic.mld

The “arabic” language is a synonym for “arab”, so we just load arab.mld (see section 13.7 on the preceding page):

```

8321 <*arabic>
8322 \ProvidesFile{arabic.mld}[2005/02/10]
8323 \mtcselectlanguage{arab}%
8324 </arabic>

```

13.11 “Armenian” language: armenian.mld

The titles for the “armenian” language are taken from the *ArmTeX* package [121] (by Sergueï DACHIAN, Arnak DALALYAN and Vartan AKOPIAN), which should be used, with the associated fonts.

```

8325 <*armenian>
8326 \ProvidesFile{armenian.mld}[1999/06/28]
8327 %% Armenian titles for minitoc.sty

```

```

8328 %% from ArmTeX
8329 %% Sergueï Dachian (Serguei.Dachian@univ-lemans.fr)
8330 \def\ptctitle{Bovandakuthyun}%
8331 \def\plftitle{Patkernerî cank}%
8332 \def\plttitle{Aghyusaknerî cank}%
8333 %%
8334 \def\mtctitle{Bovandakuthyun}%
8335 \def\mlftitle{Patkernerî cank}%
8336 \def\mlttitle{Aghyusaknerî cank}%
8337 %%
8338 \def\stctitle{Bovandakuthyun}%
8339 \def\slftitle{Patkernerî cank}%
8340 \def\slttitle{Aghyusaknerî cank}%
8341 </armenian>

```

13.12 “Australian” language: `australian.mld`

The “australian” language is just like “english”, so we just load `english.mld` (see section 13.43 on page 484):

```

8342 < *australian>
8343 \ProvidesFile{australian.mld}[2006/01/11]
8344 \mtcselectlanguage{english}%
8345 </australian>

```

13.13 “Austrian” language: `austrian.mld`

For the mini-table titles, the “austrian” language is like the “german” language, so we load `german.mld` (see section 13.65 on page 495):

```

8346 < *austrian>
8347 \ProvidesFile{austrian.mld}[2004/12/14]
8348 \mtcselectlanguage{german}%
8349 </austrian>

```

13.14 “Bahasa” language: `bahasa.mld`

The “bahasa” language is just like “bahasai”, so we just load `bahasai.mld` (see section 13.15 on the next page):

```

8350 <*bahasa>
8351 \ProvidesFile{bahasa.mld}[2006/01/11]
8352 \mtcselectlanguage{bahasai}%
8353 </bahasa>

```

13.15 “Bahasai” language: bahasai.mld

The titles of the mini-tables for the “bahasai” language⁸ (bahasa indonesia / bahasa meyalu) are taken from the file `bahasa.dtx` (by Jörg KNAPPEN and Terry MART) in the `babel` package [46, 47, 73]. Specific fonts are needed. See also section 13.16. The word “bahasa” means “language” in bahasa. For other names for this language, see sections 13.14 on the page before, 13.87 on page 508, and 13.88 on page 508.

```

8354 <*bahasai>
8355 \ProvidesFile{bahasai.mld}[2006/01/13]
8356 %% Bahasa Indonesia titles for minitoc.sty
8357 %% From bahasa.dtx in the babel package
8358 %% Knappen, Jörg and Mart, Terry
8359 \def\ptctitle{Daftar Isi}%
8360 \def\plftitle{Daftar Gambar}%
8361 \def\pltttitle{Daftar Tabel}%
8362 %%
8363 \def\mtctitle{Daftar Isi}%
8364 \def\mlftitle{Daftar Gambar}%
8365 \def\mltttitle{Daftar Tabel}%
8366 %%
8367 \def\stctitle{Daftar Isi}%
8368 \def\slftitle{Daftar Gambar}%
8369 \def\sltttitle{Daftar Tabel}%
8370 </bahasai>

```

13.16 “Bahasam” language: bahasam.mld

The titles of the mini-tables for the “bahasam” language (Bahasa Malaysia)⁹ are taken from the file `bahasam.dtx` (by Jörg KNAPPEN, Terry MART and Bob MARGOLIS) in the `babel` package [46, 47, 74]. Specific fonts are needed. See also section 13.14 on the preceding page. For other names for this language, see sections 13.116 on page 522 and 13.122 on page 524.

```

8371 <*bahasam>
8372 \ProvidesFile{bahasam.mld}[2006/12/19]
8373 %% Bahasa Malaysia titles for minitoc.sty

```

⁸ Bahasa is spoken in Indonesia and Malaysia, with different pronunciations and titles but the same writing. Bahasai is the indonesian variant.

⁹ Spoken in Indonesia and Malaysia, with different pronunciations and titles but the same writing. Bahasam is the malaysian variant.

```

8374 %% From bahasam.dtx in the babel package
8375 %% Knappen, Jörg and Mart, Terry and Margolis, Bob
8376 \def\ptctitle{Kandungan}%
8377 \def\plftitle{Senarai Gambar}%
8378 \def\plttitle{Senarai Jadual}%
8379 %%
8380 \def\mtctitle{Kandungan}%
8381 \def\mlftitle{Senarai Gambar}%
8382 \def\mlttitle{Senarai Jadual}%
8383 %%
8384 \def\stctitle{Kandungan}%
8385 \def\slftitle{Senarai Gambar}%
8386 \def\slttitle{Senarai Jadual}%
8387 </bahasam>

```

13.17 “Bangla” language: bangla.mld

The titles for the “bangla” language ¹⁰ are taken from the BangTeX package [286] (by Palash Baran PAL); they need specific fonts.

```

8388 <*bangla>
8389 \ProvidesFile{bangla.mld}[2006/03/31]
8390 %% Bangla titles for minitoc.sty
8391 %% from BangTeX
8392 %% Needs specific fonts
8393 \def\ptctitle{suu\*c*ipotRo}%
8394 \def\plftitle{cho\*b*ir ta\*l*ika}%
8395 \def\plttitle{cho\*k*er ta\*l*ika}%
8396 %%
8397 \def\mtctitle{suu\*c*i}%
8398 \def\mlftitle{cho\*b*ir ta\*l*ika}%
8399 \def\mlttitle{cho\*k*er ta\*l*ika}%
8400 %%
8401 \def\stctitle{suu\*c*i}%
8402 \def\slftitle{cho\*b*ir ta\*l*ika}%
8403 \def\slttitle{cho\*k*er ta\*l*ika}%
8404 </bangla>

```

13.18 “Basque” language: basque.mld

The titles for the “basque” language ¹¹ are taken from the basque.dtx file in the babel package [46, 47, 53], by Juan M. AGUIRREGABIRIA and Julio SÁNCHEZ, with help from Zunbeltz IZAOLA. It seems that 8 bits fonts are preferable.

¹⁰Spoken in Bangladesh and some parts of India.

¹¹Spoken in the Basque country, in the north of Spain and south-west of France.


```

8405 <*basque>
8406 \ProvidesFile{basque.mld}[2006/01/13]
8407 %% Basque titles for minitoc.sty
8408 %% from basque.dtx (babel)
8409 %% Aguirregabiria, Juan M. and Sanchez, Julio
8410 %% Needs special fonts
8411 \def\ptctitle{Gaien Aurkibidea}%
8412 \def\plftitle{Irudien Zerrenda}%
8413 \def\plttitle{Taulen Zerrenda}%
8414 %%
8415 \def\mtctitle{Gaien Aurkibidea}%
8416 \def\mlftitle{Irudien Zerrenda}%
8417 \def\mlttitle{Taulen Zerrenda}%
8418 %%
8419 \def\stctitle{Gaien Aurkibidea}%
8420 \def\slftitle{Irudien Zerrenda}%
8421 \def\slttitle{Taulen Zerrenda}%
8422 </basque>

```

13.19 “Bicig” language: bicig.mld

The titles for the “bicig” language¹² are taken from the MonT_EX package [117, 120]. This language requires specific fonts. See also sections 13.123 on page 524, 13.20 on the next page, and 13.21 on the following page.

```

8423 <*bicig>
8424 \ProvidesFile{bicig.mld}[1999/03/16]
8425 %% Mongol (Bicig) titles for minitoc.sty
8426 %% needs mongol fonts
8427 \def\ptctitle{\bcg{GarciG}}%
8428 \def\plftitle{\bcg{zuraG-un zigsaaIt}}%
8429 \def\plttitle{\bcg{k"usn"agti"iIn jagsaaIt}}%
8430 %%
8431 \def\mtctitle{\bcg{GarciG}}%
8432 \def\mlftitle{\bcg{zuraG-un zigsaaIt}}%
8433 \def\mlttitle{\bcg{k"usn"agti"iIn jagsaaIt}}%
8434 %%
8435 \def\stctitle{\bcg{GarciG}}%
8436 \def\slftitle{\bcg{zuraG-un zigsaaIt}}%
8437 \def\slttitle{\bcg{k"usn"agti"iIn jagsaaIt}}%
8438 </bicig>

```

¹²The bicig is a written form of the mongolian language. It is also known as Uighur. See also section 13.168 on page 548.

13.20 “Bicig2” language: bicig2.mld

The titles for the “bicig2” language¹³ are taken from the MonTeX package [117, 120]. This language requires specific fonts. See also sections 13.123 on page 524, 13.19 on the page before, and 13.21.

```
8439 < *bicig2>
8440 \ProvidesFile{bicig2.mld}[2005/11/16]
8441 %% Mongol (Bicig2) titles for minitoc.sty (needs mongol fonts)
8442 \def\ptctitle{garcag}%
8443 \def\plftitle{zirug-un zigsagalda}%
8444 \def\pltttitle{kuisunukdu-yin zigsagalda}%
8445 %%
8446 \def\mtctitle{garcag}%
8447 \def\mlftitle{zirug-un zigsagalda}%
8448 \def\mltttitle{kuisunukdu-yin zigsagalda}%
8449 %%
8450 \def\stctitle{garcag}%
8451 \def\slftitle{zirug-un zigsagalda}%
8452 \def\sltttitle{kuisunukdu-yin zigsagalda}%
8453 < /bicig2>
```

13.21 “Bicig3” language: bicig3.mld

The titles for the “bicig3” language¹⁴ are taken from the MonTeX package [117, 120]. This language requires specific fonts. See also sections 13.123 on page 524, 13.19 on the page before and 13.20.

```
8454 < *bicig3>
8455 \ProvidesFile{bicig3.mld}[2006/03/31]
8456 %% Mongol (Bicig3) titles for minitoc.sty (needs mongol fonts)
8457 \def\ptctitle{aguulag=a}%
8458 \def\plftitle{zirug-un zigsagalda}%
8459 \def\pltttitle{kuisunukdu-yin zigsagalda}%
8460 %%
8461 \def\mtctitle{aguulag=a}%
8462 \def\mlftitle{zirug-un zigsagalda}%
8463 \def\mltttitle{kuisunukdu-yin zigsagalda}%
8464 %%
8465 \def\stctitle{aguulag=a}%
8466 \def\slftitle{zirug-un zigsagalda}%
8467 \def\sltttitle{kuisunukdu-yin zigsagalda}%
8468 < /bicig3>
```

¹³The bicig, or uighur, is a written form of the mongolian language, bicig2 is a variant. See also section 13.169 on page 548.

¹⁴The bicig, or uighur, is a written form of the mongolian language, bicig3 is a variant. See also section 13.170 on page 549.

13.22 “Bithe” language: `bithe.mld`

The titles for the “bithe” language¹⁵ are taken from the `MonTeX` package [117, 120]. This language requires specific fonts. See also sections 13.123 on page 524 and 13.121 on page 524. The Manju writing, or *bithe* system is a close relative of the Mongolian system; the basical letter shapes are the same. Yet for Manju, a set of diacritics (*dots and circles*) was designed to eliminate all the ambiguities of Mongolian.

```

8469 <*bithe>
8470 \ProvidesFile{bithe.mld}[2005/11/16]
8471 %% Manju (bithe) titles for minitoc.sty (needs mongol fonts)
8472 \def\ptctitle{garcag}%
8473 \def\plftitle{zirug-un? afaha}%
8474 \def\plttitle{kuisunukdu-yin? afaha}%
8475 %%
8476 \def\mtctitle{garcag}%
8477 \def\mlftitle{zirug-un? afaha}%
8478 \def\mlttitle{kuisunukdu-yin? afaha}%
8479 %%
8480 \def\stctitle{garcag}%
8481 \def\slftitle{zirug-un? afaha}%
8482 \def\slttitle{kuisunukdu-yin? afaha}%
8483 </bithe>

```

13.23 “Brazil” language: `brazil.mld`

The titles for the “brazil” language¹⁶ are taken from the `portuges.dtx` file (for portugese titles by Jose Pedro RAMALHETE) in the `babel` package [46, 47, 83]:

```

8484 <*brazil>
8485 \ProvidesFile{brazil.mld}[2006/01/13]
8486 %% Portugues (brazil) titles for minitoc.sty, from portuges.dtx (babel)
8487 %% Ramalhete, Jose Pedro and "de Lima", Arnaldo Viegas
8488 \def\ptctitle{Sum\'ario}%
8489 \def\plftitle{Lista de Figuras}%
8490 \def\plttitle{Lista de Tabelas}%
8491 %%
8492 \def\mtctitle{Sum\'ario}%
8493 \def\mlftitle{Lista de Figuras}%
8494 \def\mlttitle{Lista de Tabelas}%
8495 %%
8496 \def\stctitle{Sum\'ario}%
8497 \def\slftitle{Lista de Figuras}%
8498 \def\slttitle{Lista de Tabelas}%
8499 </brazil>

```

¹⁵The *bithe* is a written form of the *manju* variant of the mongolian language.

¹⁶It is the portuguese dialect spoken in Brazil. Note that these titles are *different* in Brazil and in Portugal. Arnaldo Viegas DE LIMA contributed brasilian translations. See section 13.139 on page 532.

13.24 “Brazilian” language: `brazilian.mld`

The “brazilian” language is just like “brazil”, so we just load `brazil.mld` (see section 13.23 on the preceding page):

```
8500 <{*brazilian}
8501 \ProvidesFile{brazilian.mld}[2005/07/11]
8502 \mtcselectlanguage{brazil}%
8503 </brazilian>
```

13.25 “Breton” language: `breton.mld`

The titles for the “breton” language ¹⁷ are taken from `breton.dtx` file (by Christian ROLLAND) in the `babel` package [46, 47, 84]:

```
8504 <{*breton}
8505 \ProvidesFile{breton.mld}[2006/01/13]
8506 %% Breton titles for minitoc.sty
8507 %% from breton.dtx (babel)
8508 %% Rolland, Christian
8509 \def\ptctitle{Taolenn}%
8510 \def\plftitle{Listenn ar Figurenno\'u}%
8511 \def\plttitle{Listenn an taolenno\'u}%
8512 %%
8513 \def\mtctitle{Taolenn}%
8514 \def\mlftitle{Listenn ar Figurenno\'u}%
8515 \def\mlttitle{Listenn an taolenno\'u}%
8516 %%
8517 \def\stctitle{Taolenn}%
8518 \def\slftitle{Listenn ar Figurenno\'u}%
8519 \def\slttitle{Listenn an taolenno\'u}%
8520 </breton>
```

13.26 “British” language: `british.mld`

The “british” language is just like “english”, so we just load `english.mld` (see section 13.43 on page 484):

```
8521 <{*british}
8522 \ProvidesFile{british.mld}[2005/07/11]
8523 \mtcselectlanguage{english}%
8524 </british>
```

¹⁷Spoken as a local celtic dialect in french Brittany.

13.27 “Bulgarian” language: bulgarian.mld

The titles for the “bulgarian” language are taken from the `bulgarian.dtx` (adapted from russian by Georgi N. BOSHNAKOV) file in the `babel` package [46, 47, 58]; they require specific cyrillic fonts. See also section 13.28.

```

8525 (*bulgarian)
8526 \ProvidesFile{bulgarian.mld}[2007/03/08]
8527 %% Bulgarian titles for minitoc.sty
8528 %% From bulgarian.dtx (babel) (needs special cyrillic fonts)
8529 %% by Boshnakov, Georgi N. <georgi.boshnakov at umist.ac.uk>
8530 \def\ptctitle{%
8531   {\cyr\CYRS\cyrhrdsn\cyrd\cyrhrdsn\cyrr\cyrzh\cyra\cyrn\cyri\cyre}}%
8532 \def\plftitle{%
8533   {\cyr\CYRS\cyrp\cyri\cyr\cyrhrdsn\cyrk\ %
8534     \cyrn\cyra\ \cyrf\cyri\cyrg\cyru\cyrr\cyri\cyrt\cyre}}%
8535 \def\pltttitle{%
8536   {\cyr\CYRS\cyrp\cyri\cyr\cyrhrdsn\cyrk\ %
8537     \cyrn\cyra\ \cyrt\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyri\cyrt\cyre}}%
8538 %%
8539 \def\mtctitle{%
8540   {\cyr\CYRS\cyrhrdsn\cyrd\cyrhrdsn\cyrr\cyrzh\cyra\cyrn\cyri\cyre}}%
8541 \def\mlftitle{%
8542   {\cyr\CYRS\cyrp\cyri\cyr\cyrhrdsn\cyrk\ %
8543     \cyrn\cyra\ \cyrf\cyri\cyrg\cyru\cyrr\cyri\cyrt\cyre}}%
8544 \def\mltttitle{%
8545   {\cyr\CYRS\cyrp\cyri\cyr\cyrhrdsn\cyrk\ %
8546     \cyrn\cyra\ \cyrt\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyri\cyrt\cyre}}%
8547 %%
8548 \def\stctitle{%
8549   {\cyr\CYRS\cyrhrdsn\cyrd\cyrhrdsn\cyrr\cyrzh\cyra\cyrn\cyri\cyre}}%
8550 \def\slftitle{%
8551   {\cyr\CYRS\cyrp\cyri\cyr\cyrhrdsn\cyrk\ %
8552     \cyrn\cyra\ \cyrf\cyri\cyrg\cyru\cyrr\cyri\cyrt\cyre}}%
8553 \def\sltttitle{%
8554   {\cyr\CYRS\cyrp\cyri\cyr\cyrhrdsn\cyrk\ %
8555     \cyrn\cyra\ \cyrt\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyri\cyrt\cyre}}%
8556 \end{bulgarian}

```

13.28 “Bulgarianb” language: bulgarianb.mld

The titles for the “bulgarianb” (upper bulgarian) language are taken from the `russianb.dtx` file (by Olga G. LAPKO, Vladimir VOLOVICH, Werner LEMBERG, and Irina A. MAKHOVAYA) of the `babel` package [46, 47, 75, 224]; they require specific cyrillic fonts. See also section 13.27.

```

8557 (*bulgarianb)
8558 \ProvidesFile{bulgarianb.mld}[2006/03/06]
8559 %% Upper bulgarian titles for minitoc.sty

```

```

8560 %% From russianb.dtx
8561 %% Needs cyrillic fonts for upper bulgarian
8562 \def\ptctitle{%
8563   {\cyr\CYRS\cyrhrdsn\cyrd\cyrhrdsn\cyrr\cyrzh\cyra\cyrn\cyri\cyre}}%
8564 \def\plftitle{% Figuri
8565   {\cyr \CYRF\cyri\cyrg\cyru\cyrr\cyri}}%
8566 \def\pltttitle{% Tablici
8567   {\cyr \CYRT\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyri}}%
8568 %%
8569 \def\mtctitle{% Sydyrzhanie
8570   {\cyr\CYRS\cyrhrdsn\cyrd\cyrhrdsn\cyrr\cyrzh\cyra\cyrn\cyri\cyre}}%
8571 \def\mlftitle{% Figurite
8572   {\cyr \CYRF\cyri\cyrg\cyru\cyrr\cyri}}%
8573 \def\mltttitle{% Tablici
8574   {\cyr \CYRT\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyri}}%
8575 %%
8576 \def\stctitle{% Sydyrzhanie
8577   {\cyr\CYRS\cyrhrdsn\cyrd\cyrhrdsn\cyrr\cyrzh\cyra\cyrn\cyri\cyre}}%
8578 \def\slftitle{% Figuri
8579   {\cyr \CYRF\cyri\cyrg\cyru\cyrr\cyri}}%
8580 \def\slttitle{% Tablici
8581   {\cyr \CYRT\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyri}}%
8582 </bulgarianb>

```

13.29 “Buryat” language: buryat.mld

The titles for the “buryat” language¹⁸ are taken from the MonTeX package [117, 120]. This language requires specific fonts. See also section 13.123 on page 524.

```

8583 <{*buryat}
8584 \ProvidesFile{buryat.mld}[1999/03/16]
8585 %% Buryat titles for minitoc.sty
8586 %% Needs special fonts
8587 \def\ptctitle{{\mnr Gar{\sh}ag}}%
8588 \def\plftitle{{\mnr Zuraga"i jagsaalt}}%
8589 \def\pltttitle{{\mnr X"usn"ag"at"a"i jagsaalt}}%
8590 %%
8591 \def\mtctitle{{\mnr Gar{\sh}ag}}%
8592 \def\mlftitle{{\mnr Zuraga"i jagsaalt}}%
8593 \def\mltttitle{{\mnr X"usn"ag"at"a"i jagsaalt}}%
8594 %%
8595 \def\stctitle{{\mnr Gar{\sh}ag}}%
8596 \def\slftitle{{\mnr Zuraga"i jagsaalt}}%
8597 \def\slttitle{{\mnr X"usn"ag"at"a"i jagsaalt}}%
8598 </buryat>

```

¹⁸Spoken in some regions of Mongolia, in the Buryat republic, near Lake Baikal.

13.30 “Buryat2” language: buryat2.mld

The titles for the “buryat2” language (a variant for the “buryat” language, see section 13.29 on the page before) are taken from the MonTeX package [117, 120]. This language requires specific fonts. See also section 13.123 on page 524.

```

8599 <*buryat2>
8600 \ProvidesFile{buryat2.mld}[1999/03/16]
8601 %% Buryat2 titles for minitoc.sty
8602 %% Needs special fonts
8603 \def\ptctitle{{\mnr Aguulga}}%
8604 \def\plftitle{{\mnr Zuraga"i jagsaalt}}%
8605 \def\pltttitle{{\mnr X"usn"ag"at"a"i jagsaalt}}%
8606 %%
8607 \def\mtctitle{{\mnr Aguulga}}%
8608 \def\mlftitle{{\mnr Zuraga"i jagsaalt}}%
8609 \def\mltttitle{{\mnr X"usn"ag"at"a"i jagsaalt}}%
8610 %%
8611 \def\stctitle{{\mnr Aguulga}}%
8612 \def\slftitle{{\mnr Zuraga"i jagsaalt}}%
8613 \def\slttitle{{\mnr X"usn"ag"at"a"i jagsaalt}}%
8614 </buryat2>

```

13.31 “Canadian” language: canadian.mld

The “canadian” language (note the final “ian”) is just the english language spoken in Canada. We just load the file english.mld (see section 13.43 on page 484):



```

8615 <*canadian>
8616 \ProvidesFile{canadian.mld}[2004/12/14]
8617 \mtcselectlanguage{english}%
8618 </canadian>

```

13.32 “Canadien” language: canadien.mld

The “canadien” language (note the final “ien”) is just the french language spoken in Canada. We just load the file french.mld (see section 13.58 on page 492):



```

8619 <*canadien>
8620 \ProvidesFile{canadien.mld}[2004/12/14]
8621 \mtcselectlanguage{french}%
8622 </canadien>

```

13.33 “Castillan” language: castillan.mld

The “castillan” language is more known as “spanish”, but is spoken mainly in Castile, a part of central Spain. We just load the spanish.mld file (see section 13.160 on page 544):

```
8623 <*castillan>
8624 \ProvidesFile{castillan.mld}[2004/12/14]
8625 %% Castillan (spanish) titles for minitoc.sty
8626 \mtcselectlanguage{spanish}%
8627 </castillan>
```

13.34 “Castillian” language: castillian.mld

“Castillian” is just the english name for “castillan”, so we just load the spanish.mld file (see section 13.160 on page 544):

```
8628 <*castillian>
8629 \ProvidesFile{castillian.mld}[2005/07/01]
8630 %% Castillian (spanish) titles for minitoc.sty
8631 \mtcselectlanguage{spanish}%
8632 </castillian>
```

13.35 “Catalan” language: catalan.mld

The titles for the “catalan” language¹⁹ are taken from the catalan.dtx file (adapted from spanish by Gonçal BADENES and Jörg KNAPPEN) in the babel package [46, 47, 55]:

```
8633 <*catalan>
8634 \ProvidesFile{catalan.mld}[2006/01/13]
8635 %% Catalan titles for minitoc.sty from catalan.dtx (babel) (Badenes, Gonçal)
8636 \def\ptctitle{\'Index}%
8637 \def\plftitle{\'Index de figures}%
8638 \def\plttitle{\'Index de taules}%
8639 %%
8640 \def\mtctitle{\'Index}%
8641 \def\mlftitle{Figures}%
8642 \def\mlttitle{Taules}%
8643 %%
8644 \def\stctitle{\'Index}%
8645 \def\slftitle{Figures}%
8646 \def\slttitle{Taules}%
8647 </catalan>
```

¹⁹Spoken in Catalunya, the eastern part of Spain, around Barcelona.

13.36 “Chinese1” language: chinese1.mld and chinese1.mlo

There are several variants for the chinese language. The “chinese1” language uses titles taken from the Bg5.cap file in the CJK system [233, 234] (by Werner LEMBERG). Special fonts are needed, of course. See also section 13.37.

The titles for the “chinese1” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load chinese1.mlo.

```

8648 <*chinese1>
8649 \ProvidesFile{chinese1.mld}[2005/01/28]
8650 %% From the file file Bg5.cap of the CJK package
8651 %%   for using Asian logographs (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e
8652 %%   created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>
8653 %%
8654 %% Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003)
8655 %% Chinese captions: character set: Big 5, encoding: Big 5
8656 %%
8657 \mtcloadmlo{chinese1}%
8658 </chinese1>

```

13.37 “Chinese2” language: chinese2.mld and chinese2.mlo

The “chinese2” language uses titles taken from the Bg5.cpx file in the CJK system [233, 234] (by Werner LEMBERG). Special fonts are needed, of course. See also section 13.36.

The titles for the “chinese2” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load chinese2.mlo.

```

8659 <*chinese2>
8660 \ProvidesFile{chinese2.mld}[2005/01/28]
8661 %% From the file Bg5.cpx of the CJK package
8662 %% for using Asian logographs (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e
8663 %% created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>
8664 %%
8665 %% Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003)
8666 %% Chinese captions: character set: Big 5, encoding: Big 5, preprocessed
8667 %%
8668 \mtcloadmlo{chinese2}%
8669 </chinese2>

```

13.38 “Croatian” language: `croatian.mld`

The titles for the “croatian” language are taken from the file `croatian.dtx` file (by Alan PAIĆ) in the `babel` package [46, 47, 80]:

```

8670 <*croatian>
8671 \ProvidesFile{croatian.mld}[2006/01/13]
8672 %% Croatian titles for minitoc.sty
8673 %% from croatian.dtx (babel)
8674 %% Pai\'{c}, Alan
8675 \def\ptctitle{Sadr\v{z}aj}%
8676 \def\plftitle{Slike}%
8677 \def\plttitle{Tablice}%
8678 %%
8679 \def\mtctitle{Sadr\v{z}aj}%
8680 \def\mlftitle{Slike}%
8681 \def\mlttitle{Tablice}%
8682 %%
8683 \def\stctitle{Sadr\v{z}aj}%
8684 \def\slftitle{Slike}%
8685 \def\slttitle{Tablice}%
8686 </croatian>

```

13.39 “Czech” language: `czech.mld`

The titles for the “czech” language are taken from the file `czech.dtx` (contributions by Miloš V. LOKAJČEK) in the `babel` package [46, 47, 78]:

```

8687 <*czech>
8688 \ProvidesFile{czech.mld}[2006/01/13]
8689 %% Czech titles for minitoc.sty
8690 %% from czech.dtx (babel)
8691 %% Lokaj{\'\{i}\}\v{c}ek, Milo\v{s} V.
8692 %% Warning: defines \w as a ring accent
8693 \def#w1{\accent'27 #1}
8694 \def\ptctitle{Obsah}%
8695 \def\plftitle{Seznam obr\'azk\u}%
8696 \def\plttitle{Seznam tabulek}%
8697 %%
8698 \def\mtctitle{Obsah}%
8699 \def\mlftitle{Seznam obr\'azk\u}%
8700 \def\mlttitle{Seznam tabulek}%
8701 %%
8702 \def\stctitle{Obsah}%
8703 \def\slftitle{Seznam obr\'azk\u}%
8704 \def\slttitle{Seznam tabulek}%
8705 </czech>

```

13.40 “Danish” language: danish.mld

The titles for the “danish” language are taken from the danish.dtx file (by Henning LARSEN) in the babel package [46, 47, 76]:

```

8706 (*danish)
8707 \ProvidesFile{danish.mld}[2006/01/13]
8708 %% Danish titles for minitoc.sty
8709 %% from danish.dtx (babel)
8710 %% Larsen, Henning
8711 \def\ptctitle{Indholdsfortegnelse}%
8712 \def\plftitle{Figurer}%
8713 \def\plttitle{Tabeller}%
8714 %%
8715 \def\mtctitle{Indholdsfortegnelse}%
8716 \def\mlftitle{Figurer}%
8717 \def\mlttitle{Tabeller}%
8718 %%
8719 \def\stctitle{Indholdsfortegnelse}%
8720 \def\slftitle{Figurer}%
8721 \def\slttitle{Tabeller}%
8722 </danish>

```

13.41 “Devanagari” language: devanagari.mld

The titles for the “devanagari” language are taken from the devanagari.sty file (by Anshuman PANDEY, C. V. RADHAKRISHNAN, Zdeněk WAGNER, John SMITH, Kevin CARMODY, Richard MAHONEY and Dominik WUJASTYK) in the Devanāgarī package [288] (Devanāgarī). See also section 13.83 on page 506. Specific fonts are required. The home page of the package is <http://devnag.sarovar.org>.

```

8723 (*devanagari)
8724 \ProvidesFile{devanagari.mld}[2006/08/25]
8725 %% Devanagari (hindi) titles for minitoc.sty from devanagari.sty by
8726 %% Pandey, Anshuman and Radhakrishnan, C.~V. and Wagner, Zden\v{e}k and
8727 %% Smith, John and Carmody, Kevin and Mahoney, Richard and Wujastyk, Dominik
8728 \def\ptctitle{{\dn Evqy{\rs -\re}\8{s}cF}}%
8729 \def\plftitle{{\dn Ec/o{\qva} kF \8{s}cF}}%
8730 \def\plttitle{{\dn tAElkAao\2 kF \8{s}cF}}%
8731 %%
8732 \def\mtctitle{{\dn Evqy{\rs -\re}\8{s}cF}}%
8733 \def\mlftitle{{\dn Ec/o{\qva} kF \8{s}cF}}%
8734 \def\mlttitle{{\dn tAElkAao\2 kF \8{s}cF}}%
8735 %%
8736 \def\stctitle{{\dn Evqy{\rs -\re}\8{s}cF}}%
8737 \def\slftitle{{\dn Ec/o{\qva} kF \8{s}cF}}%
8738 \def\slttitle{{\dn tAElkAao\2 kF \8{s}cF}}%
8739 </devanagari>

```

13.42 “Dutch” language: dutch.mld

The titles for the “dutch” language are taken from the `dutch.dtx` file (by Johannes L. BRAAMS) in the `babel` package [46–48]:

```
8740 <*dutch>
8741 \ProvidesFile{dutch.mld}[2006/01/13]
8742 % Dutch titles for minitoc.sty
8743 %% from dutch.dtx (babel) (Braams, Johannes~L.)
8744 \def\ptctitle{Inhoudsopgave}%
8745 \def\plftitle{Lijst van figuren}%
8746 \def\pltttitle{Lijst van tabellen}%
8747 %%
8748 \def\mtctitle{Inhoudsopgave}%
8749 \def\mlftitle{Lijst van figuren}%
8750 \def\mltttitle{Lijst van tabellen}%
8751 %%
8752 \def\stctitle{Inhoudsopgave}%
8753 \def\slftitle{Lijst van figuren}%
8754 \def\slttitle{Lijst van tabellen}%
8755 </dutch>
```

13.43 “English” language: english.mld

The titles for the “english” language are taken from the `english.dtx` file (by Johannes L. BRAAMS) in the `babel` package [46, 47, 49]. *The presence of the `english.mld` file is mandatory, because english is the default language.*



See also sections 13.6 on page 467, 13.12 on page 470, 13.26 on page 476, 13.31 on page 479, 13.127 on page 526, 13.171 on page 549, and 13.175 on page 551.

```
8756 <*english>
8757 \ProvidesFile{english.mld}[2006/01/13]
8758 %% English titles for minitoc.sty
8759 %% from english.dtx (babel) (Braams, Johannes~L.)
8760 \def\ptctitle{Table of Contents}%
8761 \def\plftitle{List of Figures}%
8762 \def\pltttitle{List of Tables}%
8763 %%
8764 \def\mtctitle{Contents}%
8765 \def\mlftitle{Figures}%
8766 \def\mltttitle{Tables}%
8767 %%
8768 \def\stctitle{Contents}%
8769 \def\slftitle{Figures}%
8770 \def\slttitle{Tables}%
8771 </english>
```

13.44 “English1” language: english1.mld

The titles for the “english1” language come from the english.dtx file (written by Johannes L. BRAAMS) in the babel package [46, 47, 49], with some adaptations for the part-level titles.

```

8772 <*english1>
8773 \ProvidesFile{english1.mld}[2006/03/30]
8774 %% English titles for minitoc.sty
8775 %% from english.dtx (babel) Braams, Johannes~L.
8776 %% ptctitle, plftitle and pltttitle modified (JPDFD)
8777 \def\ptctitle{\ifnum\value{part}=1\relax
8778   Table of Contents of the First Part\relax
8779   \else Table of Contents of Part~\Roman{part}\fi}%
8780 \def\plftitle{\ifnum\value{part}=1\relax
8781   List of Figures in the First Part\relax
8782   \else List of Figures in Part~\Roman{part}\fi}%
8783 \def\pltttitle{\ifnum\value{part}=1\relax
8784   List of Tables in the First Part\relax
8785   \else List of Tables in Part~\Roman{part}\fi}%
8786 %%
8787 \def\mtctitle{Contents}%
8788 \def\mlftitle{Figures}%
8789 \def\mltttitle{Tables}%
8790 %%
8791 \def\stctitle{Contents}%
8792 \def\slftitle{Figures}%
8793 \def\slttitle{Tables}%
8794 </english1>

```

13.45 “English2” language: english2.mld

The titles for the “english2” language are again taken from the english.dtx file (written by Johannes L. BRAAMS) in the babel package [46, 47, 49], with some adaptations for the titles at the part level.

```

8795 <*english2>
8796 \ProvidesFile{english2.mld}[2006/03/30]
8797 %% English titles for minitoc.sty
8798 %% from english.dtx (babel) Braams, Johannes~L.
8799 %% ptctitle, plftitle and pltttitle modified (JPDFD)
8800 \def\mtcEnglishIIpart{\ifcase\value{part}%
8801 \or the First Part\or the Second Part\or
8802 the Third Part\or the Fourth Part\or the Fifth Part\or
8803 the Sixth Part\or the Seventh Part\or the Eighth Part\or
8804 the Ninth Part\or the Tenth Part\or the Eleventh Part\or
8805 the Twelfth Part\or the Thirteenth Part\or the Fourteenth Part\or
8806 the Fifteenth Part\or the Sixteenth Part\or the Seventeenth Part\or

```

```

8807 the Eighteenth Part\or the Nineteenth Part\or
8808 the Twentieth Part\else Part~\Roman{part}\fi}
8809 \def\ptctitle{Contents of \mtcEnglishIIpart}
8810 \def\plftitle{List of Figures in \mtcEnglishIIpart}
8811 \def\plttitle{List of Tables in \mtcEnglishIIpart}
8812 %%
8813 \def\mtctitle{Contents}%
8814 \def\mlftitle{Figures}%
8815 \def\mlttitle{Tables}%
8816 %%
8817 \def\stctitle{Contents}%
8818 \def\slftitle{Figures}%
8819 \def\slttitle{Tables}%
8820 </english2>

```

13.46 “Esperant” language: `esperant.mld`

The titles for the “esperant” (espéranto) language are taken from the `esperanto.dtx` file (by Marti RUIZ-ALTABA and Jörg KNAPPEN) in the `babel` package [46, 47, 85]. The esperanto (artificial) language was created in the 1877–1885 years by Doctor Lejzer Ludwig ZAMENOF²⁰ (1859–1917) of Warsaw, Poland.

```

8821 <(*esperant)
8822 \ProvidesFile{esperant.mld}[2006/12/19]
8823 %% Esperanto titles for minitoc.sty
8824 %% from esperanto.dtx (babel)
8825 %% Ruiz-Altaba, Marti and Knappen. Jörg
8826 \def\ptctitle{Enhavo}%
8827 \def\plftitle{Listo de figuroj}%
8828 \def\plttitle{Listo de tabeloj}%
8829 %%
8830 \def\mtctitle{Enhavo}%
8831 \def\mlftitle{Listo de figuroj}%
8832 \def\mlttitle{Listo de tabeloj}%
8833 %%
8834 \def\stctitle{Enhavo}%
8835 \def\slftitle{Listo de figuroj}%
8836 \def\slttitle{Listo de tabeloj}%
8837 </esperant>

```

13.47 “Esperanto” language: `esperanto.mld`

The “esperanto” and “esperant” languages are synonyms, so we just load the `esperant.mld` file (see section 13.46):

²⁰ See <http://uea.org/> and <http://www.esperanto-france.org/> for more information.

```

8838 <*esperanto>
8839 \ProvidesFile{esperanto.mld}[2004/12/14]
8840 \mtcselectlanguage{esperant}%
8841 </esperanto>

```

13.48 “Estonian” language: estonian.mld

The titles for the “estonian” language are taken from the `estonian.dtx` file (by Enn SAAR) in the babel package [46, 47, 86]:

```

8842 <*estonian>
8843 \ProvidesFile{estonian.mld}[2006/01/13]
8844 %% Estonian titles for minitoc.sty
8845 %% from estonian.dtx (babel)
8846 %% Saar, Enn
8847 \def\ptctitle{Sisukord}%
8848 \def\plftitle{Joonised}%
8849 \def\plttitle{Tabelid}%
8850 %%
8851 \def\mtctitle{Sisukord}%
8852 \def\mlftitle{Joonised}%
8853 \def\mlttitle{Tabelid}%
8854 %%
8855 \def\stctitle{Sisukord}%
8856 \def\slftitle{Joonised}%
8857 \def\slttitle{Tabelid}%
8858 </estonian>

```

13.49 “Ethiopia” language: ethiopia.mld

The titles for the “ethiopia” language are taken from the `ethiop` package [37] (written by Berhanu BEYENE, Manfred KUDLEK, Olaf KUMMER, and Jochen METZINGER). Specific fonts are needed. See also section 13.51 on the following page.

```

8859 <*ethiopia>
8860 \ProvidesFile{ethiopia.mld}[1999/03/16]
8861 %% Ethiopian titles for minitoc.sty
8862 %% Needs special fonts
8863 \def\ptctitle{yezate}%
8864 \def\plftitle{%
8865   ya\eth@doaltchar{85}'elo\eth@doaltchar{109}
8866   mAwe\eth@doaltchar{187}}%
8867 \def\plttitle{%
8868   yasane\eth@doaltchar{176}ra\eth@doaltchar{149}
8869   mAwe\eth@doaltchar{187}}%

```

```

8870 %%
8871 \def\mtctitle{yezate}%
8872 \def\mlftitle{%
8873     ya\eth@doaltchar{85}'elo\eth@doaltchar{109}
8874     mAwe\eth@doaltchar{187}}%
8875 \def\mltttitle{%
8876     yasane\eth@doaltchar{176}ra\eth@doaltchar{149}
8877     mAwe\eth@doaltchar{187}}%
8878 %%
8879 \def\stctitle{yezate}%
8880 \def\slftitle{%
8881     ya\eth@doaltchar{85}'elo\eth@doaltchar{109}
8882     mAwe\eth@doaltchar{187}}%
8883 \def\sltttitle{%
8884     yasane\eth@doaltchar{176}ra\eth@doaltchar{149}
8885     mAwe\eth@doaltchar{187}}%
8886 </ethiopia>

```

13.50 “Ethiopian” language: `ethiopian.mld`

The “ethiopian” language is just a synonym for the “ethiopia” language, so we just load the `ethiopia.mld` file (see section 13.49 on the page before). See also section 13.49 on the preceding page.

```

8887 <*ethiopian>
8888 \ProvidesFile{ethiopian.mld}[2004/12/14]
8889 %% Needs ethopian special fonts
8890 \mtcselectlanguage{ethiopia}%
8891 </ethiopian>

```

13.51 “Ethiopian2” language: `ethiopian2.mld`

The titles for the “ethiopian2” language (for Omega) are taken from the `ethiop` package [37] (by Berhanu BEYENE, Manfred KUDLEK, Olaf KUMMER, and Jochen METZINGER). Specific fonts are needed. See also section 13.49 on the page before.

```

8892 <*ethiopian2>
8893 \ProvidesFile{ethiopian2.mld}[2006/01/30]
8894 %% Ethiopian titles for minitoc.sty with Omega.
8895 %% Needs special fonts
8896 \def\ptctitle{^^^^12ed^^^^12d8^^^^1275}%
8897 \def\plftitle{^^^^12e8^^^^1225^^^^12d5^^^^120e^^^^127d
8898     ^^^^121b^^^^12cd^^^^132b}%
8899 \def\pltttitle{^^^^12e8^^^^1230^^^^1295^^^^1320^^^^1228^^^^12e5
8900     ^^^^121b^^^^12cd^^^^132b}%

```



```

8901 %%
8902 \def\mtctitle{^12ed^12d8^1275}%
8903 \def\mlftitle{^12e8^1225^12d5^120e^127d
8904   ^121b^12cd^123b}%
8905 \def\mltttitle{^12e8^1230^1295^120^1228^12e5
8906   ^121b^12cd^123b}%
8907 %%
8908 \def\stctitle{^12ed^12d8^1275}%
8909 \def\slftitle{^12e8^1225^12d5^120e^127d
8910   ^121b^12cd^123b}%
8911 \def\sltttitle{^12e8^1230^1295^120^1228^12e5
8912   ^121b^12cd^123b}%
8913 </ethiopian2>

```

13.52 “Farsi1” language: farsi1.mld and farsi1.mlo

There are several variants for the farsi language, spoken in Iran. The “farsi1” language uses titles taken from the `farsi.sty` file in the FarsiTeX [136] system²¹, by Mohammad GHODSI, Behdad ESFAHBOD, Roozbeh POURNADER, Hassan ABOLHASSANI, and others. Special fonts are needed, of course. See also section 13.53.

The titles for the “farsi1” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `farsi1.mlo`.

```

8914 <farsi1>
8915 \ProvidesFile{farsi1.mld}[2005/09/13]
8916 %% From farsi.sty of the FarsiTeX project
8917 %% by Dr Mohammad Ghodsi,
8918 %% Roozbeh Pournader (roozbeh@sharif.edu),
8919 %% Hassan Abolhassani, and others.
8920 %% http://www.farsitex.org
8921 \mtcloadmlo{farsi1}%
8922 </farsi1>

```

13.53 “Farsi2” language: farsi2.mld and farsi2.mlo

There are several variants for the farsi language, spoken in Iran. The “farsi2” language uses titles taken from the `farsi.sty` file in the FarsiTeX system [136]²¹, by Mohammad GHODSI, Roozbeh POURNADER, Behdad ESFAHBOD, Hassan ABOLHASSANI, and others. Special fonts are needed, of course. See also section 13.52.

The titles for the “farsi2” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `farsi2.mlo`.

²¹ By Mohammad GHODSI (ghodsi@rose.ipm.ac.ir) and FarsiTeX Project Group. See the FarsiTeX site at <http://www.farsitex.org>

```

8923 <{*farsi2}
8924 \ProvidesFile{farsi2.mld}[2005/09/13]
8925 %% From farsi.sty of the FarsiTeX project
8926 %% by Dr Mohammad Ghodsi, Roozbeh Pournader (roozbeh@sharif.edu),
8927 %% Hassan Abolhassani, and others.
8928 %% http://www.farsitex.org
8929 \mtcloadmlo{farsi2}%
8930 </farsi2>

```

13.54 “Farsi3” language: farsi3.mld

There are several variants for the farsi language, spoken in Iran. The “farsi3” language uses titles taken from the farsi.ldf file in the *Arabi* system[191], by Youssef JABRI. Special fonts are needed, of course.

```

8931 <{*farsi3}
8932 \ProvidesFile{farsi3.mld}[2006/07/27]
8933 %% From farsi.ldf of the Arabi system
8934 %% by Youssef Jabri.
8935 \def\ptctitle{\FR{\fa\ha\ra\seen\taa\space\meem\nun\dal\ra\jeem\alef\taa}}%
8936 \def\plftitle{\FR{\lam\ya\seen\taa\ \alef\sheen\kaf\alef\lam}}%
8937 \def\pltttitle{\FR{\lam\ya\seen\taa\ \jeem\dal\alef\waw\lam}}%
8938 %%
8939 \def\mtctitle{\FR{\fa\ha\ra\seen\taa\space\meem\nun\dal\ra\jeem\alef\taa}}%
8940 \def\mlftitle{\FR{\lam\ya\seen\taa\ \alef\sheen\kaf\alef\lam}}%
8941 \def\mltttitle{\FR{\lam\ya\seen\taa\ \jeem\dal\alef\waw\lam}}%
8942 %%
8943 \def\stctitle{\FR{\fa\ha\ra\seen\taa\space\meem\nun\dal\ra\jeem\alef\taa}}%
8944 \def\slftitle{\FR{\lam\ya\seen\taa\ \alef\sheen\kaf\alef\lam}}%
8945 \def\sltttitle{\FR{\lam\ya\seen\taa\ \jeem\dal\alef\waw\lam}}%
8946 </farsi3>

```

13.55 “Finnish” language: finnish.mld

The titles for the “finnish” language are taken from the finnish.dtx file (by Mikko KANERVA and Keranen REINO) in the babel package [46, 47, 71]. See also section 13.56 on the following page.

```

8947 <{*finnish}
8948 \ProvidesFile{finnish.mld}[2006/03/20]
8949 %% Finnish titles for minitoc.sty
8950 %% from finnish.dtx (babel)
8951 %% Kanerva, Mikko and Reino, Keranen
8952 \def\ptctitle{Sis\alt{"o}}%
8953 \def\plftitle{Kuvat}%

```

```

8954 \def\pltttitle{Taulukot}%
8955 %%
8956 \def\mtcttitle{Sis\alt{o}}%
8957 \def\mlfttitle{Kuvat}%
8958 \def\mltttitle{Taulukot}%
8959 %%
8960 \def\stcttitle{Sis\alt{o}}%
8961 \def\slfttitle{Kuvat}%
8962 \def\slttitle{Taulukot}%
8963 </finnish>

```

13.56 “Finnish2” language: finnish2.mld

The titles for the “finnish2” language are taken from a variant proposed by the `finnish.dtx` file (by Mikko KANERVA and Keranen REINO) in the `babel` package [46, 47, 71]. See also section 13.55 on the page before.

```

8964 <(*finnish2)
8965 \ProvidesFile{finnish2.mld}[2006/01/13]
8966 %% Finnish titles for minitoc.sty (variant)
8967 %% from finnish.dtx (babel)
8968 %% Kanerva, Mikko and Reino, Keranen
8969 \def\ptcttitle{Sis\allys}%
8970 \def\plfttitle{Kuvat}%
8971 \def\pltttitle{Taulukot}%
8972 %%
8973 \def\mtcttitle{Sis\allys}%
8974 \def\mlfttitle{Kuvat}%
8975 \def\mltttitle{Taulukot}%
8976 %%
8977 \def\stcttitle{Sis\allys}%
8978 \def\slfttitle{Kuvat}%
8979 \def\slttitle{Taulukot}%
8980 </finnish2>

```

13.57 “Francais” language: francais.mld

The “`francais`”²² language is a synonym for the “`french`” language, so we load the file `french.mld` (see section 13.58 on the following page):

```

8981 <(*francais)
8982 \ProvidesFile{francais.mld}[2004/12/14]
8983 \mtcselectlanguage{french}%
8984 </francais>

```

²²The right spelling is “français”, but I did not dare using a cedilla in a file name.

13.58 “French” language: french.mld

The titles for the “french” language are taken from the frenchb.dtx file (by Daniel FLIPO) in the babel package [46, 47, 66]. See also sections 13.1 on page 466, 13.2 on page 466, 13.32 on page 479, 13.57 on the preceding page, 13.61 on page 494, 13.62 on page 494, and 13.63 on page 494.

```

8985 <(*french)
8986 \ProvidesFile{french.mld}[2006/03/21]
8987 %% French titles for minitoc.sty
8988 %% from frenchb.dtx (babel)
8989 %% Flipo, Daniel
8990 \def\ptctitle{Table des mati\`eres}%
8991 \def\plftitle{Liste des figures}%
8992 \def\pltttitle{Liste des tableaux}%
8993 %%
8994 \def\mtctitle{Sommaire}%
8995 \def\mlftitle{Figures}%
8996 \def\mltttitle{Tableaux}%
8997 %%
8998 \def\stctitle{Sommaire}%
8999 \def\slftitle{Figures}%
9000 \def\slttitle{Tableaux}%
9001 </french>

```

13.59 “French1” language: french1.mld

The titles for the “french1” language are taken from the frenchb.dtx (by Daniel FLIPO) file in the babel package [46, 47, 66], with some adaptations for the part-level titles.

```

9002 <(*french1)
9003 \ProvidesFile{french1.mld}[2006/03/29]
9004 %% French titles for minitoc.sty
9005 %% from frenchb.dtx (babel) Flipo, Daniel
9006 %% ptctitle, plftitle and pltttitle modified (JPFD)
9007 \def\ptctitle{\ifnum\value{part}=1\relax
9008   Sommaire de la premi\`ere partie\relax
9009   \else Sommaire de la partie~\Roman{part}\fi}%
9010 \def\plftitle{\ifnum\value{part}=1\relax
9011   Liste des figures de la premi\`ere partie\relax
9012   \else Liste des figures de la partie~\Roman{part}\fi}%
9013 \def\pltttitle{\ifnum\value{part}=1\relax
9014   Liste des tableaux de la premi\`ere partie\relax
9015   \else Liste des tableaux de la partie~\Roman{part}\fi}%
9016 %%
9017 \def\mtctitle{Sommaire}%
9018 \def\mlftitle{Figures}%
9019 \def\mltttitle{Tableaux}%

```

```

9020 %%
9021 \def\stctitle{Sommaire}%
9022 \def\slftitle{Figures}%
9023 \def\sltttitle{Tableaux}%
9024 </french1>

```

13.60 “French2” language: french2.mld

The titles for the “french2” language are taken from the frenchb.dtx file (by Daniel Flipo) in the babel package [46, 47, 66], with some adaptations for the part-level titles²³. See also section 9.5.8 on page 273, for the subtle distinction between “deuxième” and “seconde”. See the mtc-2nd.tex example file in section 4.2 on page 91.

```

9025 <{*french2}
9026 \ProvidesFile{french2.mld}[2006/07/07]
9027 %% French titles for minitoc.sty
9028 %% from frenchb.dtx (babel) Flipo, Daniel
9029 %% ptctitle, plftitle and pltttitle modified (JPFD)
9030 \def\mtcFrenchIIpart{\ifcase\value{part}%
9031 \or premi\‘ere partie\or
9032 {\ifmtcsecondpart seconde\else deuxi\‘eme\fi} partie\or
9033 troisi\‘eme partie\or quatri\‘eme partie\or cinqui\‘eme partie\or
9034 sixi\‘eme partie\or septi\‘eme partie\or huiti\‘eme partie\or
9035 neuvi\‘eme partie\or dixi\‘eme partie\or onzi\‘eme partie\or
9036 douzi\‘eme partie\or treizi\‘eme partie\or quatorzi\‘eme partie\or
9037 quinzi\‘eme partie\or seizi\‘eme partie\or dix-septi\‘eme partie\or
9038 dix-huiti\‘eme partie\or dix-neuvi\‘eme partie\or
9039 vingti\‘eme partie\else partie~\Roman{part}\fi}%
9040 \def\ptctitle{\ifnum\value{part}<1\relax
9041 Sommaire \else
9042 Sommaire de la \mtcFrenchIIpart\fi}%
9043 \def\plftitle{\ifnum\value{part}<1\relax
9044 Liste des figures\else
9045 Liste des figures de la \mtcFrenchIIpart\fi}%
9046 \def\pltttitle{\ifnum\value{part}<1\relax
9047 Liste des tableaux\else
9048 Liste des tableaux de la \mtcFrenchIIpart}%
9049 %%
9050 \def\mtctitle{Sommaire}%
9051 \def\mlftitle{Figures}%
9052 \def\mltttitle{Tableaux}%
9053 %%
9054 \def\stctitle{Sommaire}%
9055 \def\slftitle{Figures}%
9056 \def\sltttitle{Tableaux}%
9057 </french2>

```

²³This is an example of a .mld file needing some support from code in the minitoc package.

13.61 “Frenchb” language: frenchb.mld

The “frenchb” language is a synonym for the “french” language, so we load the french.mld file. See section 13.58 on page 492.

```
9058 <frenchb>
9059 \ProvidesFile{frenchb.mld}[2003/02/11]
9060 \mtcselectlanguage{french}%
9061 </frenchb>
```

13.62 “Frenchle” language: frenchle.mld

The “frenchle” language is a synonym for the “french” language, so we load the french.mld file. See section 13.58 on page 492.

```
9062 <frenchle>
9063 \ProvidesFile{frenchle.mld}[2003/02/20]
9064 \mtcselectlanguage{french}%
9065 </frenchle>
```

13.63 “Frenchpro” language: frenchpro.mld

The “frenchpro” language is a synonym for the “french” language, so we load the french.mld file. See section 13.58 on page 492.

```
9066 <frenchpro>
9067 \ProvidesFile{frenchpro.mld}[2003/02/20]
9068 \mtcselectlanguage{french}%
9069 </frenchpro>
```

13.64 “Galician” language: galician.mld

The titles for the “galician” language²⁴ are taken from the galician.dtx file, derived from the spanish.dtx file (by Javier BEZOS) (by Manuel CARRIBA and Javier A. MÚGICA DE RIVERA) in the babel package [46, 47, 61, 62]:

```
9070 <galician>
9071 \ProvidesFile{galician.mld}[2007/02/01]
```

²⁴Spoken in Galice, in the north-west part of Spain, around Santiago de Compostela.

```

9072 %% Galician titles for minitoc.sty
9073 %% from galician.dtx (babel)
9074 %% Carriba, Manuel (mcarriba@eunetcom.net)
9075 %% Javier A. Múgica de Rivera (jmugica@digi21.net)
9076 \expandafter\ifx\csname chapter\endcsname\relax
9077 \def\ptctitle{\`Indice}%
9078 \else
9079 \def\ptctitle{\`Indice xeral}%
9080 \fi
9081 \def\plftitle{\`Indice de figuras}%
9082 \def\plttitle{\`Indice de cuadros}%
9083 %%
9084 \expandafter\ifx\csname chapter\endcsname\relax
9085 \def\mtctitle{\`Indice}%
9086 \else
9087 \def\mtctitle{\`Indice xeral}%
9088 \fi
9089 \def\mlftitle{\`Indice de figuras}%
9090 \def\mlttitle{\`Indice de cuadros}%
9091 %%
9092 \expandafter\ifx\csname chapter\endcsname\relax
9093 \def\stctitle{\`Indice}%
9094 \else
9095 \def\stctitle{\`Indice xeral}%
9096 \fi
9097 \def\slftitle{\`Indice de figuras}%
9098 \def\slttitle{\`Indice de cuadros}%
9099 </galician>

```

13.65 “German” language: `german.mld`

The titles for the “german” language are taken from the babel package [46, 47]. See also the section 13.13 on page 470.

```

9100 <*german>
9101 \ProvidesFile{german.mld}[1999/03/16]
9102 %% German titles for minitoc.sty
9103 \def\ptctitle{Inhaltsangabe}%
9104 \def\plftitle{Figuren}%
9105 \def\plttitle{Tabellen}%
9106 %%
9107 \def\mtctitle{Inhaltsangabe}%
9108 \def\mlftitle{Figuren}%
9109 \def\mlttitle{Tabellen}%
9110 %%
9111 \def\stctitle{Inhaltsangabe}%
9112 \def\slftitle{Figuren}%
9113 \def\slttitle{Tabellen}%
9114 </german>

```

13.66 “Germanb” language: `germanb.mld`

The “`germanb`” language is a variant for the “`german`” language. The titles are taken from the `germanb.dtx` file (by Johannes L. BRAAMS and Bernd RAICHLE) in the `babel` package [46, 47, 81]:

```

9115 <*germanb>
9116 \ProvidesFile{germanb.mld}[2006/01/13]
9117 %% German titles (variant) for minitoc.sty
9118 %% from germanb.dtx (babel)
9119 %% Braams, Johannes~L. and Raichle, Bernd
9120 \def\ptctitle{Inhaltsverzeichnis}%
9121 \def\plftitle{Abbildungsverzeichnis}%
9122 \def\plttitle{Tabellenverzeichnis}%
9123 %%
9124 \def\mtctitle{Inhaltsverzeichnis}%
9125 \def\mlftitle{Abbildungsverzeichnis}%
9126 \def\mlttitle{Tabellenverzeichnis}%
9127 %%
9128 \def\stctitle{Inhalt}%
9129 \def\slftitle{Abbildungen}%
9130 \def\slttitle{Tabellen}%
9131 </germanb>

```

13.67 “Germanb2” language: `germanb2.mld`

The “`germanb2`” language is a variant for the “`german`” language, with short titles. See also section 13.66. The titles are taken from the file `germanb.dtx` (by Johannes L. BRAAMS and Bernd RAICHLE) in the `babel` package [46, 47]:

```

9132 <*germanb2>
9133 \ProvidesFile{germanb2.mld}[2005/09/27]
9134 %% German titles (variant) for minitoc.sty
9135 \def\ptctitle{Inhalt}%
9136 \def\plftitle{Abbildungen}%
9137 \def\plttitle{Tabellen}%
9138 %%
9139 \def\mtctitle{Inhalt}%
9140 \def\mlftitle{Abbildungen}%
9141 \def\mlttitle{Tabellenverzeichnis}%
9142 %%
9143 \def\stctitle{Inhalt}%
9144 \def\slftitle{Abbildungen}%
9145 \def\slttitle{Tabellen}%
9146 </germanb2>

```


13.68 “Greek” language: greek.mld

The titles for the “greek” language (modern greek) are taken from the greek.dtx file (by Apostolos SYROPOULOS) in the babel package [46, 47, 89]. Greek fonts are required.

```

9147 <*greek>
9148 \ProvidesFile{greek.mld}[2006/01/13]
9149 %% Greek titles for minitoc.sty
9150 %% from greek.dtx (babel)
9151 %% Syropoulos, Apostolos
9152 %% Needs greek fonts.
9153 \def\ptctitle{Perieq'omena}%
9154 \def\plftitle{Kat'alogoc Sqhm'atwn}%
9155 \def\plttitle{Kat'alogoc Pin'akwn}%
9156 %%
9157 \def\mtctitle{Perieq'omena}%
9158 \def\mlftitle{Kat'alogoc Sqhm'atwn}%
9159 \def\mlttitle{Kat'alogoc Pin'akwn}%
9160 %%
9161 \def\stctitle{Perieq'omena}%
9162 \def\slftitle{Kat'alogoc Sqhm'atwn}%
9163 \def\slttitle{Kat'alogoc Pin'akwn}%
9164 </greek>

```

13.69 “Greek-mono” language: greek-mono.mld

The titles for the “greek-mono” language²⁵ are taken from the omega-greek.ldf file (by Alexej M. KRYUKOV and Dmitry IVANOV) in the Antomega project [210]:

```

9165 <*greek – mono>
9166 \ProvidesFile{greek-mono.mld}[2005/02/08]
9167 %% from omega-greek.ldf (Antomega project)
9168 %% Needs Omega
9169 %% Alexej M. Kryukov and Dmitry Ivanov
9170 %%
9171 \def\ptctitle{\localgreek%
9172 {^03a0^03b5^03c1^03b9^03b5^03c7^03cc^03bc%
9173 ^03b5^03bd^03b1}}%
9174 \def\plftitle{\localgreek%
9175 {^039a^03b1^03c4^03ac^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
9176 ^03c2 ^03c3^03c7^03b7^03bc^03ac^03c4^03c9%
9177 ^03bd}}%
9178 \def\plttitle{\localgreek%
9179 {^039a^03b1^03c4^03ac^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
9180 ^03c2 ^03c0^03b9^03bd^03ac^03ba^03c9^03bd}}%
9181 %%

```

²⁵ Monotonic greek, from a recent (1982) but strongly contested – and contestable – reform of the greek language.

```

9182 \def\mtctitle{\localgreek%
9183 {^03a0^03b5^03c1^03b9^03b5^03c7^03cc^03bc%
9184 ^03b5^03bd^03b1}}%
9185 \def\mlftitle{\localgreek%
9186 {^039a^03b1^03c4^03ac^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
9187 ^03c2 ^03c3^03c7^03b7^03bc^03ac^03c4^03c9%
9188 ^03bd}}%
9189 \def\mlftitle{\localgreek%
9190 {^039a^03b1^03c4^03ac^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
9191 ^03c2 ^03c0^03b9^03bd^03ac^03ba^03c9^03bd}}%
9192 %
9193 \def\stctitle{\localgreek%
9194 {^03a0^03b5^03c1^03b9^03b5^03c7^03cc^03bc%
9195 ^03b5^03bd^03b1}}%
9196 \def\slftitle{\localgreek%
9197 {^039a^03b1^03c4^03ac^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
9198 ^03c2 ^03c3^03c7^03b7^03bc^03ac^03c4^03c9%
9199 ^03bd}}%
9200 \def\slftitle{\localgreek%
9201 {^039a^03b1^03c4^03ac^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
9202 ^03c2 ^03c0^03b9^03bd^03ac^03ba^03c9^03bd}}%
9203 </greek – mono>

```

13.70 “Greek-polydemo” language: greek-polydemo.mld

The titles for the “greek-polydemo” language²⁶ are taken from the file `omega-greek.ldf` (by Alexej M. KRYUKOV and Dmitry IVANOV) in the Antomega project [210]:

```

9204 <*greek – polydemo>
9205 \ProvidesFile{greek-polydemo.mld}[2005/02/08]
9206 %% from omega-greek.ldf (Antomega project)
9207 %% Needs Omega
9208 %% Alexej M. Kryukov and Dmitry Ivanov
9209 %%
9210 \def\ptctitle{\localgreek%
9211 {^03a0^03b5^03c1^03b9^03b5^03c7^1f79^03bc%
9212 ^03b5^03bd^03b1}}%
9213 \def\plftitle{\localgreek%
9214 {^039a^03b1^03c4^1f71^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
9215 ^03c2 ^03c3^03c7^03b7^03bc^1f71^03c4^03c9%
9216 ^03bd}}%
9217 \def\pltttitle{\localgreek%
9218 {^039a^03b1^03c4^1f71^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
9219 ^03c2 ^03c0^03b9^03bd^1f71^03ba^03c9^03bd}}%
9220 %
9221 \def\mtctitle{\localgreek%
9222 {^03a0^03b5^03c1^03b9^03b5^03c7^1f79^03bc%
9223 ^03b5^03bd^03b1}}%

```

²⁶Polytonic demotic (popular) greek, for classical greek.

```

9224 \def\mlfttitle{\localgreek%
9225 {^039a^03b1^03c4^1f71^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
9226 ^03c2 ^03c3^03c7^03b7^03bc^1f71^03c4^03c9%
9227 ^03bd}}%
9228 \def\mltttitle{\localgreek%
9229 {^039a^03b1^03c4^1f71^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
9230 ^03c2 ^03c0^03b9^03bd^1f71^03ba^03c9^03bd}}%
9231 %%
9232 \def\stcttitle{\localgreek%
9233 {^03a0^03b5^03c1^03b9^03b5^03c7^1f79^03bc%
9234 ^03b5^03bd^03b1}}%
9235 \def\slfttitle{\localgreek%
9236 {^039a^03b1^03c4^1f71^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
9237 ^03c2 ^03c3^03c7^03b7^03bc^1f71^03c4^03c9%
9238 ^03bd}}%
9239 \def\sltttitle{\localgreek%
9240 {^039a^03b1^03c4^1f71^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
9241 ^03c2 ^03c0^03b9^03bd^1f71^03ba^03c9^03bd}}%
9242 </greek – polydemo>

```

13.71 “Greek-polykatha” language: greek-polykatha.mld

The titles for the “greek-polykatha” language²⁷ are taken from the omega-greek.ldf (by Alexej M. KRYUKOV and Dmitry IVANOV) in the Antomega project [210]:

```

9243 <*greek – polykatha>
9244 \ProvidesFile{greek-polykatha.mld}[2005/02/08]
9245 %% from omega-greek.ldf (Antomega project)
9246 %% Needs Omega
9247 %% Alexej M. Kryukov and Dmitry Ivanov
9248 %%
9249 \def\ptcttitle{\localgreek%
9250 {^03a0^03b5^03c1^03b9^03b5^03c7^1f79^03bc%
9251 ^03b5^03bd^03b1}}%
9252 \def\plfttitle{\localgreek%
9253 {^039a^03b1^03c4^1f71^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
9254 ^03c2 ^03c3^03c7^03b7^03bc^1f71^03c4^03c9%
9255 ^03bd}}%
9256 \def\pltttitle{\localgreek%
9257 {^039a^03b1^03c4^1f71^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
9258 ^03c2 ^03c0^03b9^03bd^1f71^03ba^03c9^03bd}}%
9259 %%
9260 \def\mtcttitle{\localgreek%
9261 {^03a0^03b5^03c1^03b9^03b5^03c7^1f79^03bc%
9262 ^03b5^03bd^03b1}}%

```

²⁷ Polytonic greek, « kathaverousa » (purified) style, a form of the Greek language created during the early XIX-th century by Adamantios KORAI, to purify the language from the Byzantine and non-greek vocabulary. It has now been obsoleted by the demotic (popular) greek, but it has left a very noticeable trace in the modern Greek language.

```

9263 \def\mlftitle{\localgreek%
9264 {^039a^03b1^03c4^1f71^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
9265 ^03c2 ^03c3^03c7^03b7^03bc^1f71^03c4^03c9%
9266 ^03bd}}}%
9267 \def\mltttitle{\localgreek%
9268 {^039a^03b1^03c4^1f71^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
9269 ^03c2 ^03c0^03b9^03bd^1f71^03ba^03c9^03bd}}}%
9270 %%
9271 \def\stctitle{\localgreek%
9272 {^03a0^03b5^03c1^03b9^03b5^03c7^1f79^03bc%
9273 ^03b5^03bd^03b1}}}%
9274 \def\slftitle{\localgreek%
9275 {^039a^03b1^03c4^1f71^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
9276 ^03c2 ^03c3^03c7^03b7^03bc^1f71^03c4^03c9%
9277 ^03bd}}}%
9278 \def\sltttitle{\localgreek%
9279 {^039a^03b1^03c4^1f71^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
9280 ^03c2 ^03c0^03b9^03bd^1f71^03ba^03c9^03bd}}}%
9281 </greek – polykatha>

```

13.72 “Guarani” language: guarani.mld

The “guarani” language is the main language spoken in Paraguay. Very often, a mixture of Guarani and Spanish, known as Jopara, is spoken. The titles are taken from the `guarani.ldf` file by Javier Bezos [39]. A special input encoding (`win-gn.def`) is needed. These files are available on the CTAN archives.

```

9282 <*guarani>
9283 \ProvidesFile{guarani.mld}[2005/08/26]
9284 %% Guarani titles for minitoc.sty from guarani.ldf by Javier Bezos.
9285 %% Input encoding win-gn.def is needed.
9286 %%
9287 \def\ptctitle{\'Indice general}%
9288 \def\plftitle{\'Indice de figuras}%
9289 \def\plttitle{\'Indice de cuadros}%
9290 %%
9291 \def\mtctitle{\'Indice general}%
9292 \def\mlftitle{\'Indice de figuras}%
9293 \def\mltttitle{\'Indice de cuadros}%
9294 %%
9295 \def\stctitle{\'Indice general}%
9296 \def\slftitle{\'Indice de figuras}%
9297 \def\sltttitle{\'Indice de cuadros}%
9298 </guarani>

```

13.73 “Hangul1” language: hangul1.mld and hangul1.mlo

The Korean language was originally written using the Chinese characters; it is now mainly written in Hangûl, the Korean writing system, optionally incorporating Hanja to write Sino-Korean words [348]. See [170, page 150] and [289].

The titles for the “hangul1” language (korean in hangûl script, first variant) are taken from the file hangul.cap of the CJK system [233, 234] (by Werner LEMBERG). Special fonts are needed, of course. See also sections 13.74, 13.75 on the following page, 13.76 on the next page, 13.77 on page 503, 13.78 on page 503, 13.79 on page 504, and 13.80 on page 504.

The titles for the “hangul1” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load hangul1.mlo.

```

9299 <{*hangul1}
9300 \ProvidesFile{hangul1.mld}[2005/01/28]
9301 %% From the file hangul.cap of the CJK package
9302 %% for using Asian logographs (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e
9303 %% created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>
9304 %% Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003) Hangul captions
9305 %% character set: KS X 1001:1992 (=KS C 5601-1992), encoding: EUC (=Wansung)
9306 %%
9307 \mtcloadmlo{hangul1}%
9308 </hangul1>

```

13.74 “Hangul2” language: hangul2.mld and hangul2.mlo

The titles for the “hangul2” language (korean in hangûl script, second variant) are taken from the file hangul.cpx of the CJK system [233, 234] (by Werner LEMBERG). Special fonts are needed, of course. See also sections 13.73, 13.75 on the next page, 13.76 on the following page, 13.77 on page 503, 13.78 on page 503, 13.79 on page 504, and 13.80 on page 504.

The titles for the “hangul2” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load hangul2.mlo.

```

9309 <{*hangul2}
9310 \ProvidesFile{hangul2.mld}[2005/01/28]
9311 %% From the file hangul.cpx of the CJK package
9312 %% for using Asian logographs (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e
9313 %% created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>
9314 %% Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003) Hangul captions
9315 %% character set: KS X 1001:1992 (=KS C 5601-1992),
9316 %% encoding: EUC (=Wansung), preprocessed
9317 %%

```

```
9318 \mtcloadmlo{hangul2}%
9319 </hangul2>
```

13.75 “Hangul3” language: hangul3.mld and hangul3.mlo

The titles for the “hangul3” language (korean in hangŭl script, third variant) are taken from the file hangul2.cap of the CJK system [233, 234] (by Werner LEMBERG). Special fonts are needed, of course. See also sections 13.73 on the page before, 13.74 on the preceding page, 13.76, 13.77 on the following page, 13.78 on the next page, 13.79 on page 504, and 13.80 on page 504.

The titles for the “hangul3” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load hangul3.mlo.

```
9320 (*hangul3)
9321 \ProvidesFile{hangul3.mld}[2005/01/28]
9322 %% From the file hangul2.cap of the CJK package
9323 %% for using Asian logographs (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e
9324 %% created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>
9325 %% Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003) Hangul captions set 2
9326 %% character set: KS X 1001:1992 (=KS C 5601-1992), encoding: EUC (=Wansung)
9327 %%
9328 \mtcloadmlo{hangul3}%
9329 </hangul3>
```

13.76 “Hangul4” language: hangul4.mld and hangul4.mlo

The titles for the “hangul4” language (korean in hangŭl script, fourth variant) are taken from the file hangul2.cpx of the CJK system [233, 234] (by Werner LEMBERG). Special fonts are needed, of course. See also sections 13.73 on the preceding page, 13.74 on the page before, 13.75, 13.77 on the next page, 13.78 on the following page, 13.79 on page 504, and 13.80 on page 504.

The titles for the “hangul4” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load hangul4.mlo.

```
9330 (*hangul4)
9331 \ProvidesFile{hangul4.mld}[2005/01/28]
9332 %% From the file hangul2.cpx of the CJK package
9333 %% for using Asian logographs (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e
9334 %% created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>
```

```

9335 %% Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003) Hangul captions set 2,
9336 %% character set: KS X 1001:1992 (=KS C 5601-1992),
9337 %% encoding: EUC (=Wansung), preprocessed
9338 %%
9339 \mtcloadmlo{hangul4}%
9340 </hangul4>

```

13.77 “Hangul-u8” language: hangul-u8.mld and hangul-u8.mlo

The titles for the “hangul-u8” language (korean in hangûl script, for *Lambda* Λ) are taken from the file `u8hangul.tex` of the H_LA_TE_X system [206, in korean] by Un KOAUNGH. Special fonts are needed, of course. Input encoding is UTF-8.

See also sections 13.73 on page 501, 13.74 on page 501, 13.75 on the page before, 13.76 on the preceding page, 13.78, 13.79 on the following page, and 13.80 on the next page. See [170, page 150] and [289].

The titles for the “hangul-u8” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `hangul-u8.mlo`.

```

9341 <{*hangul-u8}>
9342 \ProvidesFile{hangul-u8.mld}[2006/02/21]
9343 %% From the file u8hangul.tex of the HLATEX package
9344 %% by Koaunghi Un (koaunghi@kornet.net)
9345 %% Hangul captions for Lambda
9346 %%
9347 \mtcloadmlo{hangul-u8}%
9348 </hangul-u8>

```

13.78 “Hanja1” language: hanja1.mld and hanja1.mlo

The titles for the “hanja1” language (korean in the old script hanja, first variant) are taken from the file `hanja.cpx` of the CJK system [233, 234] (by Werner LEMBERG). Special fonts are needed, of course. See also sections 13.73 on page 501, 13.74 on page 501, 13.75 on the preceding page, 13.76 on the page before, 13.77, 13.79 on the next page, and 13.80 on the following page.

The titles for the “hanja1” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `hanja1.mlo`.

```

9349 <{*hanja1}>
9350 \ProvidesFile{hanja1.mld}[2005/01/28]
9351 %% From the file hanja.cpx of the CJK package

```

```

9352%% for using Asian logographs (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e
9353%% created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>
9354%% Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003)
9355%% Hanja captions, character set: KS X 1001:1992 (=KS C 5601-1992),
9356%% encoding: EUC (=Wansung), preprocessed
9357%%
9358\mtcloadmlo{hanja1}%
9359</hanja1>

```

13.79 “Hanja2” language: hanja2.mld and hanja2.mlo

The titles for the “hanja2” language (Korean in the old script hanja, second variant) are taken from the file `hanja.cap` of the CJK system [233, 234] (by Werner LEMBERG). Special fonts are needed, of course. See also sections 13.73 on page 501, 13.74 on page 501, 13.75 on page 502, 13.76 on page 502, 13.77 on the page before, 13.78 on the preceding page, and 13.80.

The titles for the “hanja2” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `hanja2.mlo`.

```

9360<*hanja2>
9361\ProvidesFile{hanja2.mld}[2005/01/28]
9362%% From the file hanja.cap of the CJK package
9363%% for using Asian logographs (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e
9364%% created by Werner Lemberg <a7971428@unet.univie.ac.at>
9365%% Version 4.1.3 (20-Jun-1997)
9366%% Hanja captions, character set: KS X 1001:1992 (=KS C 5601-1992),
9367%% encoding: EUC (=Wansung)
9368%%
9369\mtcloadmlo{hanja2}%
9370</hanja2>

```

13.80 “Hanja-u8” language: hanja-u8.mld and hanja-u8.mlo

The titles for the “hanja-u8” language (korean in hanja script, for *Lambda* Λ) are taken from the file `u8hanja.tex` of the H_AT_EX system [206, in korean] by Un KOAUNGH. Special fonts are needed, of course. Input encoding is UTF-8. See also section 13.73 on page 501, 13.74 on page 501, 13.75 on page 502, 13.76 on page 502, 13.77 on the preceding page, 13.78 on the page before, and 13.79. See [170, page 150] and [289].

The titles for the “hanja-u8” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load hanja-u8.mlo.

```

9371 <*hanja-u8>
9372 \ProvidesFile{hanja-u8.mld}[2006/02/21]
9373 %% From the file hanja-u8.tex of the HLaTeX package
9374 %% by Koaunghi Un (koaunghi@kornet.net)
9375 %% Hanja captions for Lambda
9376 %%
9377 \mtcloadmlo{hanja-u8}%
9378 </hanja-u8>

```

13.81 “Hebrew” language: hebrew.mld

The titles for the “hebrew” language are taken from the ArabTeX package [214, 215] (by Klaus LAGALLY), which should be used, with the associated fonts. See also section 13.82 on the next page.

```

9379 <*hebrew>
9380 \ProvidesFile{hebrew.mld}[2001/02/28]
9381 %% Hebrew titles for minitoc.sty
9382 %% Need hebrew fonts (see arabtex documentation)
9383 \def\ptctitle{\tav\vav\kaf\finalnun\
9384             \ayin\nun\yod\nun\yod\finalmem}%
9385 \def\plftitle{\resh\shin\yod\mem\tav\
9386             \alef\yod\vav\resh\yod\finalmem}%
9387 \def\plttitle{\resh\shin\yod\mem\tav\
9388             \tet\bet\lamed\alef\vav\tav}%
9389 %%
9390 \def\mtctitle{\tav\vav\kaf\finalnun\
9391             \ayin\nun\yod\nun\yod\finalmem}%
9392 \def\mlftitle{\resh\shin\yod\mem\tav\
9393             \alef\yod\vav\resh\yod\finalmem}%
9394 \def\mlttitle{\resh\shin\yod\mem\tav\
9395             \tet\bet\lamed\alef\vav\tav}%
9396 %%
9397 \def\stctitle{\tav\vav\kaf\finalnun\
9398             \ayin\nun\yod\nun\yod\finalmem}%
9399 \def\slftitle{\resh\shin\yod\mem\tav\
9400             \alef\yod\vav\resh\yod\finalmem}%
9401 \def\slttitle{\resh\shin\yod\mem\tav\
9402             \tet\bet\lamed\alef\vav\tav}%
9403 </hebrew>

```

13.82 “Hebrew2” language: hebrew2.mld

The titles for the “hebrew2” language are taken from the file `hebrew.dtx` (by Boris LAVVA and Rama PORRAT) in the `babel` package [46, 47, 77], which should be used, with the associated fonts and encodings. See also section 13.81 on the preceding page.

```

9404 (*hebrew2)
9405 \ProvidesFile{hebrew2.mld}[2006/01/11]
9406 %% From hebrew.dtx in the Babel package.
9407 %% Boris Lavva (lavva@tx.technion.ac.il)
9408 %% Need hebrew fonts.
9409 \def\ptctitle{\@ensure@R{%
9410   \hebtav\hebvav\hebkaf\hebfinalnun\ %
9411   \hebayin\hebnun\hebyod\hebyod\hebnun\hebyod\hebfinalmem}}%
9412 \def\plftitle{\@ensure@R{%
9413   \hebreash\hebshein\hebyod\hebmeme\hebtav\ %
9414   \hebalef\hebyod\hebvav\hebreash\hebyod\hebfinalmem}}%
9415 \def\plttitle{\@ensure@R{%
9416   \hebreash\hebshein\hebyod\hebmeme\hebtav\
9417   \hebtet\hebbet\heblamed\hebalef\hebvav\hebtav}}%
9418 %%
9419 \def\mtctitle{\@ensure@R{%
9420   \hebtav\hebvav\hebkaf\hebfinalnun\ %
9421   \hebayin\hebnun\hebyod\hebyod\hebnun\hebyod\hebfinalmem}}%
9422 \def\mlftitle{\@ensure@R{%
9423   \hebreash\hebshein\hebyod\hebmeme\hebtav\ %
9424   \hebalef\hebyod\hebvav\hebreash\hebyod\hebfinalmem}}%
9425 \def\mlttitle{\@ensure@R{%
9426   \hebreash\hebshein\hebyod\hebmeme\hebtav\
9427   \hebtet\hebbet\heblamed\hebalef\hebvav\hebtav}}%
9428 %%
9429 \def\stctitle{\@ensure@R{%
9430   \hebtav\hebvav\hebkaf\hebfinalnun\ %
9431   \hebayin\hebnun\hebyod\hebyod\hebnun\hebyod\hebfinalmem}}%
9432 \def\slftitle{\@ensure@R{%
9433   \hebreash\hebshein\hebyod\hebmeme\hebtav\ %
9434   \hebalef\hebyod\hebvav\hebreash\hebyod\hebfinalmem}}%
9435 \def\slttitle{\@ensure@R{%
9436   \hebreash\hebshein\hebyod\hebmeme\hebtav\
9437   \hebtet\hebbet\heblamed\hebalef\hebvav\hebtav}}%
9438 (/hebrew2)

```

13.83 “Hindi” language: hindi.mld

The “hindi” language is just like “devanagari”, so we just load `devanagari.mld` (see section 13.41 on page 483):

```

9439 <(*hindi)
9440 \ProvidesFile{hindi.mld}[2006/08/24]
9441 \mtcselectlanguage{devanagari}%
9442 </hindi>

```

13.84 “Hindi-modern” language: hindi-modern.mld

The titles for the “hindi-modern” language are taken from the captions.dn file (by Anshuman PANDEY, C. V. RADHAKRISHNAN, Zdeněk WAGNER, John SMITH, Kevin CARMODY, Richard MAHONEY and Dominik WUJASTYK) in the Devanāgarī package [288] (Devanāgarī) after conversion. See also section 13.41 on page 483. Specific fonts are required. The home page of the package is <http://devnag.sarovar.org>.

```

9443 <(*hindi – modern)
9444 \ProvidesFile{hindi-modern.mld}[2006/08/29]
9445 %% Hindi modern titles for minitoc.sty
9446 %% from captions.dn in ‘Devanagari for TeX’ by
9447 %% Pandey, Anshuman and Radhakrishnan, C.~V. and Wagner, Zden\v{e}k and
9448 %% Smith, John and Carmody, Kevin and Mahoney, Richard and
9449 %% Wujastyk, Dominik
9450 \def\ptctitle{{\dn Evqy{\rs -\re}\8{s}cF}}%
9451 \def\plftitle{{\dn Ec/o{\qva} kF \8{s}cF}}%
9452 \def\plttitle{{\dn tAElkAao\2 kF \8{s}cF}}%
9453 %%
9454 \def\mtctitle{{\dn Evqy{\rs -\re}\8{s}cF}}%
9455 \def\mlftitle{{\dn Ec/o{\qva} kF \8{s}cF}}%
9456 \def\mlttitle{{\dn tAElkAao\2 kF \8{s}cF}}%
9457 %%
9458 \def\stctitle{{\dn Evqy{\rs -\re}\8{s}cF}}%
9459 \def\slftitle{{\dn Ec/o{\qva} kF \8{s}cF}}%
9460 \def\slttitle{{\dn tAElkAao\2 kF \8{s}cF}}%
9461 </hindi – modern>

```

13.85 “Hungarian” language: hungarian.mld

The “hungarian” language is a synonym of the “magyar” language, so we load magyar.mld. See section 13.113 on page 520.

```

9462 <(*hungarian)
9463 \ProvidesFile{hungarian.mld}[2004/12/14]
9464 \mtcselectlanguage{magyar}%
9465 </hungarian>

```

13.86 “Icelandic” language: icelandic.mld

The titles for the “icelandic” language are taken from the `icelandic.dtx` file (by Einar ÁRNASON) in the `babel` package [46, 47, 54]:

```
9466 <*icelandic>
9467 \ProvidesFile{icelandic.mld}[2006/01/13]
9468 %% Icelandic titles for minitoc.sty
9469 %% from icelandic.dtx (babel)
9470 %% Árnason, Einar
9471 %% need inputenc with 8-bits encoding
9472 \def\ptctitle{Efnisyfirlit}%
9473 \def\plftitle{Myndaskrá}%
9474 \def\plttitle{Töfluskrá}%
9475 %%
9476 \def\mtctitle{Efnisyfirlit}%
9477 \def\mlftitle{Myndaskrá}%
9478 \def\mlttitle{Töfluskrá}%
9479 %%
9480 \def\stctitle{Efnisyfirlit}%
9481 \def\slftitle{Myndaskrá}%
9482 \def\slttitle{Töfluskrá}%
9483 </icelandic>
```

13.87 “Indon” language: indon.mld

The “indon” language is just like “bahasai”, so we just load `bahasai.mld` (see section 13.15 on page 471):

```
9484 <*indon>
9485 \ProvidesFile{indon.mld}[2006/01/13]
9486 \mtcselectlanguage{bahasai}%
9487 </indon>
```

13.88 “Indonesian” language: indonesian.mld

The “indonesian” language is just like “bahasai”, so we just load `bahasai.mld` (see section 13.15 on page 471):

```
9488 <*indonesian>
9489 \ProvidesFile{indonesian.mld}[2006/01/13]
9490 \mtcselectlanguage{bahasai}%
9491 </indonesian>
```

13.89 “Interlingua” language: `interlingua.mld`

The titles for the “interlingua” language are taken from the `interlingua.dtx` file (by Peter KLEIWEG) in the `babel` package [46, 47, 72]. Interlingua is an auxiliary language, built from the common vocabulary of Spanish/Portuguese, English, Italian and French, with some normalisation of spelling. The grammar is very easy, more similar to English’s than to neolatin languages²⁸.

```

9492 <*interlingua>
9493 \ProvidesFile{interlingua.mld}[2006/01/13]
9494 %% Interlingua titles for minitoc.sty from interlingua.dtx (babel)
9495 %% Kleiweg, Peter
9496 \def\ptctitle{Contento}%
9497 \def\plftitle{Lista de Figuras}%
9498 \def\pltttitle{Lista de Tabellas}%
9499 %%
9500 \def\mtctitle{Contento}%
9501 \def\mlftitle{Figuras}%
9502 \def\mltttitle{Tabellas}%
9503 %%
9504 \def\stctitle{Contento}%
9505 \def\slftitle{Figuras}%
9506 \def\slttitle{Tabellas}%
9507 </interlingua>

```

13.90 “Irish” language: `irish.mld`

The titles for the “irish” language come from the `irish.dtx` file (by Johannes L. BRAAMS, Marion GUNN and Fraser GRANT) in the `babel` package [46, 47, 50]:

```

9508 <*irish>
9509 \ProvidesFile{irish.mld}[2006/02/28]
9510 %% Irish titles for minitoc.sty from irish.dtx (babel)
9511 %% Braams, Johannes~L. and Gunn, Marion and Grant, Fraser
9512 \def\ptctitle{Cl\'ar \'Abhair}%
9513 \def\plftitle{L\'ear\'aid\'{\i}}%
9514 \def\pltttitle{T\'abla\'{\i}}%
9515 %%
9516 \def\mtctitle{Cl\'ar \'Abhair}%
9517 \def\mlftitle{L\'ear\'aid\'{\i}}%
9518 \def\mltttitle{T\'abla\'{\i}}%
9519 %%
9520 \def\stctitle{Cl\'ar \'Abhair}%
9521 \def\slftitle{L\'ear\'aid\'{\i}}%
9522 \def\slttitle{T\'abla\'{\i}}%
9523 </irish>

```

²⁸The site <http://www.interlingua.com> is mostly written in interlingua (as is <http://interlingua.altervista.org>), in case you want to read some sample of it. You can have a look at the grammar at <http://www.geocities.com/linguablau>.

13.91 “Italian” language: `italian.mld`

The titles for the “italian” language come from the file `italian.dtx` (by Maurizio CODOGNO and Claudio BECCARI) in the `babel` package [46, 47, 64]. See also section 13.92.

```

9524 (*italian)
9525 \ProvidesFile{italian.mld}[2006/01/13]
9526 %% Italian titles for minitoc.sty from italian.dtx (babel)
9527 %% Maurizio Codogno, (mau@beatles.cselt.stet.it)
9528 %% and Claudio Beccari, (beccari@polito.it)
9529 \def\ptctitle{Indice}%
9530 \def\plftitle{Elenco delle figure}%
9531 \def\pltttitle{Elenco delle tabelle}%
9532 %%
9533 \def\mtctitle{Indice}%
9534 \def\mlftitle{Elenco delle figure}%
9535 \def\mltttitle{Elenco delle tabelle}%
9536 %%
9537 \def\stctitle{Indice}%
9538 \def\slftitle{Elenco delle figure}%
9539 \def\slttitle{Elenco delle tabelle}%
9540 \end{italian}

```

13.92 “Italian2” language: `italian2.mld`

The titles for the “italian2” language are the same as for the “italian” language, except at the part level (“Contenuto”). See also section 13.91.

```

9541 (*italian2)
9542 \ProvidesFile{italian2.mld}[2006/01/13]
9543 %% Italian titles for minitoc.sty. Variant, from italian.dtx (babel)
9544 %% Maurizio Codogno, (mau@beatles.cselt.stet.it)
9545 %% and Claudio Beccari, (beccari@polito.it)
9546 \def\ptctitle{Contenuto}%
9547 \def\plftitle{Elenco delle figure}%
9548 \def\pltttitle{Elenco delle tabelle}%
9549 %%
9550 \def\mtctitle{Contenuto}%
9551 \def\mlftitle{Elenco delle figure}%
9552 \def\mltttitle{Elenco delle tabelle}%
9553 %%
9554 \def\stctitle{Contenuto}%
9555 \def\slftitle{Elenco delle figure}%
9556 \def\slttitle{Elenco delle tabelle}%
9557 \end{italian2}

```

13.93 “Japanese” language: `japanese.mld` and `japanese.mlo`

They are several variants for the Japanese titles. The titles for a first variant of the “Japanese” language have been found (by a Google search) on the Web site of Professor Toshiki KUMAZAWA²⁹. But see also other variants in sections 13.94, 13.95 on the next page, 13.96 on the following page, 13.97 on page 513, and 13.98 on page 513. The titles for the “Japanese” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `japanese.mlo`.

```

9558 <*japanese>
9559 \ProvidesFile{japanese.mld}[2006/01/13]
9560 %% Japanese titles for minitoc.sty
9561 %% Needs Japanese fonts (CJK) and special input encoding.
9562 %% From Kumazawa Toshiki
9563 %% kumazawa@biwako.shiga-u.ac.jp
9564 %% http://www.biwako.shiga-u.ac.jp/sensei/kumazawa/tex/minitoc.html
9565 \mtcloadmlo{japanese}%
9566 </japanese>

```

13.94 “Japanese2” language: `japanese2.mld` and `japanese2.mlo`

The titles for the “Japanese2” language (Japanese, second variant) are taken from file JIS.cap of the CJK system [233, 234] (by Werner LEMBERG). Special fonts are needed, of course. See also sections 13.93, 13.95 on the following page, 13.96 on the next page, 13.97 on page 513, and 13.98 on page 513. The titles for the “Japanese2” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `japanese2.mlo`.

```

9567 <*japanese2>
9568 \ProvidesFile{japanese2.mld}[2006/01/13]
9569 %% From the file JIS.cap of the CJK package
9570 %% for using Asian logographs (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e
9571 %% created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>
9572 %%
9573 %% Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003)
9574 %% Japanese captions, character set: JIS X 0208:1997 (or JIS X 0208-1990),
9575 %% encoding: EUC
9576 %%
9577 \mtcloadmlo{japanese2}%
9578 </japanese2>

```

²⁹ <http://www.biwako.shiga-u.ac.jp/sensei/kumazawa/tex/minitoc.html>

13.95 “Japanese3” language: `japanese3.mld` and `japanese3.mlo`

The titles for the “japanese3” language (japanese, third variant) are taken from file `JIS.cpx` of the CJK system [233, 234] (by Werner LEMBERG). Special fonts are needed, of course. See also sections 13.93 on the preceding page, 13.94 on the page before, 13.96, 13.97 on the next page, and 13.98 on the following page. The titles for the “japanese3” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `japanese3.mlo`.

```

9579 <(*japanese3)
9580 \ProvidesFile{japanese3.mld}[2006/01/13]
9581 %% From the file JIS.cpx of the CJK package
9582 %% for using Asian logographs (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e
9583 %% created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>
9584 %%
9585 %% Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003)
9586 %% Japanese captions, character set: JIS X 0208:1997 (or JIS X 0208-1990)
9587 %% encoding: EUC, preprocessed
9588 %%
9589 \mtcloadmlo{japanese3}%
9590 </japanese3>

```

13.96 “Japanese4” language: `japanese4.mld` and `japanese4.mlo`

The titles for the “japanese4” language (japanese, fourth version) are taken from file `SJIS.cap` of the CJK system [233, 234] (by Werner LEMBERG). Special fonts are needed, of course. See also sections 13.93 on the page before, 13.94 on the preceding page, 13.95, 13.97 on the following page, and 13.97 on the next page. The titles for the “japanese4” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `japanese4.mlo`.

```

9591 <(*japanese4)
9592 \ProvidesFile{japanese4.mld}[2006/01/13]
9593 %% From the file SJIS.cap of the CJK package
9594 %% for using Asian logographs (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e
9595 %% created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>
9596 %%
9597 %% Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003)
9598 %% Japanese captions
9599 %% character set: JIS X 0208:1997 (or JIS X 0208-1990), encoding: SJIS
9600 %%
9601 \mtcloadmlo{japanese4}%
9602 </japanese4>

```


13.97 “Japanese5” language: japanese5.mld and japanese5.mlo

The titles for the “japanese5” (japanese, fifth variant) language are taken from file SJIS.cpx of the CJK system [233, 234] (by Werner LEMBERG). Special fonts are needed, of course. See also sections 13.93 on page 511, 13.94 on page 511, 13.95 on the preceding page, 13.96 on the page before, and 13.98. The titles for the “japanese5” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load japanese5.mlo.

```

9603 <*japanese5>
9604 \ProvidesFile{japanese5.mld}[2006/01/13]
9605 %% From the file SJIS.cpx of the CJK package
9606 %% for using Asian logographs (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e
9607 %% created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>
9608 %%
9609 %% Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003)
9610 %% Japanese captions
9611 %% character set: JIS X 0208:1997 (or JIS X 0208-1990),
9612 %% encoding: SJIS, preprocessed
9613 %%
9614 \mtcloadmlo{japanese5}%
9615 </japanese5>

```

13.98 “Japanese6” language: japanese6.mld and japanese6.mlo

The titles for the “japanese6” (japanese, sixth variant) language have been found (by a Google search) on the Web site of Professor Toshiki KUMAZAWA³⁰. See also sections 13.93 on page 511, 13.94 on page 511, 13.95 on the page before, 13.96 on the preceding page, and 13.97. The titles for the “japanese6” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load japanese6.mlo.

```

9616 <*japanese6>
9617 \ProvidesFile{japanese6.mld}[2006/10/31]
9618 %% Japanese6 titles for minitoc.sty
9619 %% Needs japanese fonts (CJK) and special input encoding.
9620 %% From Kumazawa Toshiki
9621 %% kumazawa@biwako.shiga-u.ac.jp
9622 %% http://www.biwako.shiga-u.ac.jp/sensei/kumazawa/tex/minitoc.html
9623 \mtcloadmlo{japanese6}%
9624 </japanese6>

```

³⁰ <http://www.biwako.shiga-u.ac.jp/sensei/kumazawa/tex/minitoc.html>

13.99 “Kannada” language: `kannada.mld`

The Kannada (“kannada”) (or Kannara) language is a dravidian language spoken in the Karnataka state of India. The titles are taken from the `kanlel.sty` package file from the KannadaT_EX project [376]³¹ by C. S. YOGANANDA and K. K. SUBRAMANIAM. Specific fonts are required.

```

9625 <*kannada>
9626 \ProvidesFile{kannada.mld}[2007/02/22]
9627 %% from kanlel.sty of KannadateX
9628 %% (C. S. Yogananda yoga@math.iisc.ernet.in yogacs@users.sarovar.org)
9629 %% (K. K. Subramaniam subbukk@users.sarovar.org)
9630 %%
9631 \def\ptctitle{pariviDi}%
9632 \def\plftitle{citarxgaLa paTiTx}%
9633 \def\plftitle{koVSaTxkagaLa paTiTx}%
9634 %%
9635 \def\mtctitle{pariviDi}%
9636 \def\mlftitle{citarxgaLa paTiTx}%
9637 \def\mlftitle{koVSaTxkagaLa paTiTx}%
9638 %%
9639 \def\stctitle{pariviDi}%
9640 \def\slftitle{citarxgaLa paTiTx}%
9641 \def\slftitle{koVSaTxkagaLa paTiTx}%
9642 </kannada>

```

13.100 “Khalkha” language: `khalkha.mld`

“khalkha” is a synonym for “xalx”, so we just load `xalx.mld` (see sections 13.180 on page 553, 13.181 on page 553, and 13.182 on page 554):

```

9643 <*khalkha>
9644 \ProvidesFile{khalkha.mld}[2005/11/16]
9645 \mtcselectlanguage{xalx}%
9646 </khalkha>

```

13.101 “Latin” language: `latin.mld`

The titles for the “latin” language (medieval) are taken from the `latin.dtx` file (by Claudio BECCARI, Raffaella TABACCO, and Krzysztof Konrad ŻELECHOWSKI) in the `babel` package [46, 47, 56]. See also section 13.102 on the next page.

³¹ <http://Sarovar.org/projects/kannadateX>

```

9647 <*latin>
9648 \ProvidesFile{latin.mld}[2006/01/13]
9649 %% Latin (medieval) titles for minitoc.sty
9650 %% from latin.dtx (babel)
9651 %% Beccari, Claudio and Tabacco, Raffalla and {\.Zelechowski}, Konrad
9652 \def\ptctitle{Index}%
9653 \def\plftitle{Conspectus descriptionum}%
9654 \def\plttitle{Conspectus tabularum}%
9655 %%
9656 \def\mtctitle{Index}%
9657 \def\mlftitle{Conspectus descriptionum}%
9658 \def\mlttitle{Conspectus tabularum}%
9659 %%
9660 \def\stctitle{Index}%
9661 \def\slftitle{Conspectus descriptionum}%
9662 \def\slttitle{Conspectus tabularum}%
9663 </latin>

```

13.102 “Latin2” language: latin2.mld

The titles for the “latin2” language (latin, medieval, abbreviated variant) are taken from the `latin.dtx` (by Claudio BECCARI, Raffaella TABACCO, and Krzysztof Konrad ŻELECHOWSKI) file in the `babel` package [46, 47, 56], but abbreviated. See also section 13.101 on the preceding page.

```

9664 <*latin2>
9665 \ProvidesFile{latin2.mld}[2007/04/06]
9666 %% Latin (medieval) titles (shortened) for minitoc.sty
9667 %% from latin.dtx (babel)
9668 %% Beccari, Claudio and Tabacco, Raffalla and {\.Zelechowski}, Konrad
9669 \def\ptctitle{Index}%
9670 \def\plftitle{Conspectus descriptionum}%
9671 \def\plttitle{Conspectus tabularum}%
9672 %%
9673 \def\mtctitle{Index}%
9674 \def\mlftitle{Descriptiones}%
9675 \def\mlttitle{{Tabul\ae}}%
9676 %%
9677 \def\stctitle{Index}%
9678 \def\slftitle{Descriptiones}%
9679 \def\slttitle{{Tabul\ae}}%
9680 </latin2>

```

13.103 “Latinc” language: latinc.mld

The titles for the “latinc” language (classical) are taken from the `latin.dtx` file (by Claudio BECCARI and Krzysztof Konrad ŻELECHOWSKI) in the `babel` package [46, 47, 56]. See also section 13.104.

```

9681 \*latinc
9682 \ProvidesFile{latinc.mld}[2007/04/13]
9683 %% Latin (classic) titles for minitoc.sty
9684 %% from latin.dtx (babel)
9685 %% Beccari, Claudio and {\Zelevchowski}, Konrad
9686 \def\ptctitle{Index}%
9687 \def\plftitle{Conspectvs descriptionvm}%
9688 \def\plttitle{Conspectvs tabvlarvm}%
9689 %%
9690 \def\mtctitle{Index}%
9691 \def\mlftitle{Conspectvs descriptionvm}%
9692 \def\mlttitle{Conspectvs tabvlarvm}%
9693 %%
9694 \def\stctitle{Index}%
9695 \def\slftitle{Conspectvs descriptionvm}%
9696 \def\slttitle{Conspectvs tabvlarvm}%
9697 \*latinc

```

13.104 “Latinc2” language: latinc2.mld

The titles for the “latinc2” language (latinc, classical, abbreviated variant) are taken from the `latin.dtx` (by Claudio BECCARI and Krzysztof Konrad ŻELECHOWSKI) file in the `babel` package [46, 47, 56], but abbreviated. See also section 13.103.

```

9698 \*latinc2
9699 \ProvidesFile{latinc2.mld}[2007/04/06]
9700 %% Latin (classical) titles (shortened) for minitoc.sty
9701 %% from latin.dtx (babel)
9702 %% Beccari, Claudio and {\Zelevchowski}, Konrad
9703 \def\ptctitle{Index}%
9704 \def\plftitle{Conspectvs descriptionvm}%
9705 \def\plttitle{Conspectvs tabvlarvm}%
9706 %%
9707 \def\mtctitle{Index}%
9708 \def\mlftitle{Descriptiones}%
9709 \def\mlttitle{Tabvlae}%
9710 %%
9711 \def\stctitle{Index}%
9712 \def\slftitle{Descriptiones}%
9713 \def\slttitle{Tabvlae}%
9714 \*latinc2

```

13.105 “Latvian” language: latvian.mld

The titles for the “latvian” language³² come from the latvian.ldf file (by Alexej M. KRYUKOV and Dmitry IVANOV) in the Antomega project [210]. See also section 13.107 on the next page.

```

9715 <{*latvian}
9716 \ProvidesFile{latvian.mld}[2005/02/08]
9717 %% from latvian.ldf (Antomega project). Needs Omega
9718 %% Alexej M. Kryukov and Dmitry Ivanov
9719 %%
9720 \def\ptctitle{\locallatvian{Saturdays}}%
9721 \def\plftitle{\locallatvian{Att^{0113lu saraksts}}}%
9722 \def\pltttitle{\locallatvian{Tabulu saraksts}}%
9723 %%
9724 \def\mtctitle{\locallatvian{Saturdays}}%
9725 \def\mlftitle{\locallatvian{Att^{0113lu saraksts}}}%
9726 \def\mltttitle{\locallatvian{Tabulu saraksts}}%
9727 %%
9728 \def\stctitle{\locallatvian{Saturdays}}%
9729 \def\slftitle{\locallatvian{Att^{0113lu saraksts}}}%
9730 \def\sltttitle{\locallatvian{Tabulu saraksts}}%
9731 </{*latvian}

```

13.106 “Latvian2” language: latvian2.mld

The titles for the “latvian2” language come from the latvian.ldf file (by Andris LASIS and Ivars DRIKIS) at <http://home.lanet.lv/~drikis/TeX/2e/latvian.ldf>. See also section 13.105.

```

9732 <{*latvian2}
9733 % Andris Lasis (andris_lasis@simms.lv) Ivars Drikis (drikis@lanet.lv)
9734 % http://home.lanet.lv/~drikis/TeX/2e/latvian.ldf
9735 \ProvidesFile{latvian2.mld}[2007/06/05]
9736 %%
9737 \def\ptctitle{Saturdays}%
9738 \def\plftitle{Att\= elu r\= ad\={i}t\= ajs}%
9739 \def\pltttitle{Tabulu r\= ad\={i}t\= ajs}%
9740 %%
9741 \def\mtctitle{Saturdays}%
9742 \def\mlftitle{Att\= elu r\= ad\={i}t\= ajs}%
9743 \def\mltttitle{Tabulu r\= ad\={i}t\= ajs}%
9744 %%
9745 \def\stctitle{Saturdays}%
9746 \def\slftitle{Att\= elu r\= ad\={i}t\= ajs}%
9747 \def\sltttitle{Tabulu r\= ad\={i}t\= ajs}%
9748 </{*latvian2}

```

³²Note that “latvian” is the original name for “letton”.

13.107 “Letton” language: `letton.mld`

The “letton” language is a synonym for the “latvian” language, so we just load `latvian.mld`. See section 13.105 on the page before.

```
9749 <{*letton}>
9750 \ProvidesFile{letton.mld}[2005/02/08]
9751 \mtcselectlanguage{latvian}%
9752 </letton>
```

13.108 “Letton2” language: `letton2.mld`

The “letton2” language is a synonym for the “latvian2” language, so we just load `latvian2.mld`. See section 13.106 on the preceding page.

```
9753 <{*letton2}>
9754 \ProvidesFile{letton2.mld}[2007/06/05]
9755 \mtcselectlanguage{latvian2}%
9756 </letton2>
```

13.109 “Lithuanian” language: `lithuanian.mld`

The titles for the “lithuanian” language are taken from the `lithuanian.ldf` file³³ (by Sigitas Tolušis) for the `babel` package [46, 47]. See also section 13.110 on the next page.

```
9757 <{*lithuanian}>
9758 \ProvidesFile{lithuanian.mld}[2006/01/13]
9759 %% Lithuanian titles for minitoc.sty from lithuanian.ldf
9760 %% in http://www.vtex.lt/tex/download/texinput/babel/babel.zip
9761 %% Tolusis, Sigitas (sigitas@vtex.lt)
9762 \def\ptctitle{Turinys}%
9763 \def\plftitle{Paveiksl\protect\c u s\protect\c ara\protect\v sas}%
9764 \def\pltttitle{Lentel\protect\c u s\protect\c ara\protect\v sas}%
9765 %%
9766 \def\mtctitle{Turinys}%
9767 \def\mlftitle{Paveiksl\protect\c u s\protect\c ara\protect\v sas}%
9768 \def\mltttitle{Lentel\protect\c u s\protect\c ara\protect\v sas}%
9769 %%
9770 \def\stctitle{Turinys}%
9771 \def\slftitle{Paveiksl\protect\c u s\protect\c ara\protect\v sas}%
9772 \def\sltttitle{Lentel\protect\c u s\protect\c ara\protect\v sas}%
9773 </lithuanian>
```

³³Found in <http://www.vtex.lt/tex/download/texinput/babel/babel.zip>.

13.110 “Lithuanian2” language: lithuanian2.mld

The titles for the “lithuanian2” language (variant) are taken from the `lithuanian.ldf` file³⁴ (by Sigitas Tolušis) for the `babel` package [46, 47]. See also section 13.109 on the preceding page. The L7x encoding and the Latin Modern fonts are needed.

```

9774 (*lithuanian2)
9775 \ProvidesFile{lithuanian2.mld}[2007/06/05]
9776 %% Lithuanian titles (variant) for minitoc.sty
9777 %% from lithuanian.ldf
9778 %% in http://www.vtex.lt/tex/littex/littex-20060928.tar.gz
9779 %% Tolusis, Sigitas (sigitas@vtex.lt)
9780 \def\ptctitle{Turinys}%
9781 \def\plftitle{Iliustracij\k{u} s\k{a}ra\v{s}as}%
9782 \def\plttitle{Lenteli\k{u} s\k{a}ra\v{s}}%
9783 %%
9784 \def\mtctitle{Turinys}%
9785 \def\mlftitle{Iliustracij\k{u} s\k{a}ra\v{s}as}%
9786 \def\mlttitle{Lenteli\k{u} s\k{a}ra\v{s}}%
9787 %%
9788 \def\stctitle{Turinys}%
9789 \def\slftitle{Iliustracij\k{u} s\k{a}ra\v{s}as}%
9790 \def\slttitle{Lenteli\k{u} s\k{a}ra\v{s}}%
9791 </lithuanian2>

```

13.111 “Lowersorbian” language: lowersorbian.mld

The titles for the “lowersorbian” language³⁵ are taken from the `lsorbian.dtx` file (by Eduard WERNER) in the `babel` package [46, 47, 90]. See also section 13.174 on page 550. A shorter language name is `lsorbian` (see section 13.112 on the following page).

```

9792 (*lowersorbian)
9793 \ProvidesFile{lowersorbian.mld}[2006/02/28]
9794 %% Lower sorbian titles for minitoc.sty
9795 %% from lsorbian.dtx (babel)
9796 %% Werner, Eduard
9797 \def\ptctitle{Wop\'simje\'se}%
9798 \def\plftitle{Zapis wobrazow}%
9799 \def\plttitle{Zapis tabulkow}%
9800 %%
9801 \def\mtctitle{Wop\'simje\'se}%
9802 \def\mlftitle{Zapis wobrazow}%
9803 \def\mlttitle{Zapis tabulkow}%

```

³⁴ Found in <http://www.vtex.lt/tex/littex/littex-20060928.tar.gz>

³⁵ Lower sorbian. Sorbian, or wendisch, is a member of the west slavic subgroup of indo-european languages spoken in Lower Lusatia in the german *länder* of Saxony and Brandenburg. The Sorbs are descendants of the Wends, the german name for the slavic tribes who occupied the area between the Elbe and Saale rivers in the west and the Odra (Oder) river in the east during the medieval period (vi-th century).

```

9804 %%
9805 \def\stctitle{Wop\'simje\'se}%
9806 \def\slftitle{Zapis wobrazow}%
9807 \def\sltttitle{Zapis tabulkow}%
9808 </lowersorbian>

```

13.112 “Lsorbian” language: lsorbian.mld

The “lsorbian” language is a synonym for “lowersorbian”, so we just load `lowersorbian.mld`. See section 13.111 on the page before.

```

9809 <*lsorbian>
9810 \ProvidesFile{lsorbian.mld}[2006/01/23]
9811 %% Lower sorbian titles for minitoc.sty
9812 %% from lsorbian.dtx (babel)
9813 %% Werner, Eduard
9814 \selectlanguage{lowersorbian}%
9815 </lsorbian>

```

13.113 “Magyar” language: magyar.mld

The titles for the “magyar” language are taken from the `magyar.dtx` (by József BÉRCES and Árpád BÍRÓ, with help from Attila KOPPANYI) file in the `babel` package [46, 47, 57]. A synonym of “magyar” is “hungarian” (see section 13.85 on page 507). See also sections 13.114 on the next page and 13.115 on the following page for variants (it seems that `magyar.dtx` might have evolved).

```

9816 <*magyar>
9817 \ProvidesFile{magyar.mld}[2006/03/08]
9818 %% Magyar titles for minitoc.sty
9819 %% from magyar.dtx (babel)
9820 %% Bíró, Árpád and Bérces, József
9821 \def\ptctitle{Tartalom}%
9822 \def\plftitle{\'Abr\'ak}%
9823 \def\pltttitle{T\'abl\'azatok}%
9824 %%
9825 \def\mtctitle{Tartalom}%
9826 \def\mlftitle{\'Abr\'ak}%
9827 \def\mltttitle{T\'abl\'azatok}%
9828 %%
9829 \def\stctitle{Tartalom}%
9830 \def\slftitle{\'Abr\'ak}%
9831 \def\sltttitle{T\'abl\'azatok}%
9832 </magyar>

```


13.114 “Magyar2” language: magyar2.mld

The titles for the “magyar2” language are taken from a variant proposed in the `magyar.dtx` file of the `babel` package [46, 47] (by József BÉRCES, Árpád BÍRÓ, and Attila KOPPANYI). See also sections 13.113 on the page before and 13.115.

```

9833 <*magyar2>
9834 \ProvidesFile{magyar.mld}[2006/03/08]
9835 %% Magyar2 titles for minitoc.sty (variant)
9836 %% from magyar.dtx (babel)
9837 %% Bíró, Árpád and Bérces, József
9838 \def\ptctitle{Tartalom}%
9839 \def\plftitle{\`Abr\`ak list\`aja}%
9840 \def\pltttitle{T\`abl\`azatok list\`aja}%
9841 %%
9842 \def\mtctitle{Tartalom}%
9843 \def\mlftitle{\`Abr\`ak list\`aja}%
9844 \def\mltttitle{T\`abl\`azatok list\`aja}%
9845 %%
9846 \def\stctitle{Tartalom}%
9847 \def\slftitle{\`Abr\`ak list\`aja}%
9848 \def\slttitle{T\`abl\`azatok list\`aja}%
9849 </magyar2>

```

13.115 “Magyar3” language: magyar3.mld

The titles for the “magyar3” language (third variant of magyar) are taken from the `magyar.dtx` file (by József BÉRCES, Árpád BÍRÓ, and Attila KOPPANYI) in the `babel` package [46, 47, 57]. See also sections 13.113 on the page before and 13.114.

```

9850 <*magyar3>
9851 \ProvidesFile{magyar3.mld}[2006/03/08]
9852 %% Magyar3 titles for minitoc.sty (variant)
9853 %% from magyar.dtx (babel)
9854 %% Bíró, Árpád and Bérces, József
9855 \def\ptctitle{Tartalomjegyz\`ek}%
9856 \def\plftitle{\`Abr\`ak jegyz\`eke}%
9857 \def\pltttitle{T\`abl\`azatok jegyz\`eke}%
9858 %%
9859 \def\mtctitle{Tartalomjegyz\`ek}%
9860 \def\mlftitle{\`Abr\`ak jegyz\`eke}%
9861 \def\mltttitle{T\`abl\`azatok jegyz\`eke}%
9862 %%
9863 \def\stctitle{Tartalomjegyz\`ek}%
9864 \def\slftitle{\`Abr\`ak jegyz\`eke}%
9865 \def\slttitle{T\`abl\`azatok jegyz\`eke}%
9866 </magyar3>

```

13.116 “Malay” language: malay.mld

The “malay” language is just like “bahasam”, so we just load bahasam.mld (see section 13.16 on page 471):

```
9867 <*malay>
9868 \ProvidesFile{malay.mld}[2006/01/11]
9869 \mtcselectlanguage{bahasam}%
9870 </malay>
```

13.117 “Malayalam-keli” language: malayalam-keli.mld

The titles for the “malayalam-keli” language³⁶, with the “Keli” fonts, are taken from the malayalam package [4] by A. J. ALEX. This language requires specific fonts. See also sections 13.119 on the following page and 13.120 on the next page.

```
9871 <*malayalam – keli>
9872 \ProvidesFile{malayalam-keli.mld}[2006/01/13]
9873 %% Malayalam: Keli fonts
9874 \def\ptctitle{\mm \X{<68>}\X{<197>}\X{<83>}\X{<161>}\<119>}%
9875 \def\plftitle{\mm \X{<78>}\<110>}\X{<123>}\<88>}\X{<167>}\X{<196>}}%
9876 \def\pltttitle{\mm \X{<116>}\<83>}\X{<95>}\<110>}\X{<102>}\<112>}\X{<73>}\X{<196>}}%
9877 %%
9878 \def\mtctitle{\mm \X{<68>}\X{<197>}\X{<83>}\X{<161>}\<119>}%
9879 \def\mlftitle{\mm \X{<78>}\<110>}\X{<123>}\<88>}\X{<167>}\X{<196>}}%
9880 \def\mltttitle{\mm \X{<116>}\<83>}\X{<95>}\<110>}\X{<102>}\<112>}\X{<73>}\X{<196>}}%
9881 %%
9882 \def\stctitle{\mm \X{<68>}\X{<197>}\X{<83>}\X{<161>}\<119>}%
9883 \def\slftitle{\mm \X{<78>}\<110>}\X{<123>}\<88>}\X{<167>}\X{<196>}}%
9884 \def\sltttitle{\mm \X{<116>}\<83>}\X{<95>}\<110>}\X{<102>}\<112>}\X{<73>}\X{<196>}}%
9885 </malayalam – keli>
```

13.118 “Malayalam-omega” language: malayalam-omega.mld and malayalam-omega.mlo

This is the Malayalam language implementation “malayalam-omega” based on *Lambda* (Λ) (the version of \LaTeX for Omega) via the omal package [5] (by A. J. ALEX) of the Malayalam-Omega project³⁷. As the titles contain characters in a special encoding, we must load a .mlo file. A lot of fonts are available via options of the omal package.

³⁶The Malayalam language is spoken from the western coast of Malabar to the extreme southern India, mainly in the Kerala state. It is one of the dravidian languages strongly bound to the Tamil language. The alphabet and the script are dated from the 8th or 9th centuries.

³⁷<http://Sarovar.org/projects/malayalam>

```

9886 (*malayalam – omega)
9887 \ProvidesFile{malayalam-omega.mld}[2006/02/13]
9888 %% from omal.sty (Alex A.J. indicTeX@gmail.com)
9889 \mtcloadmlo{malayalam-omega}%
9890 /malayalam – omega)

```

13.119 “Malayalam-rachana” language: malayalam-rachana.mld

The titles for the “malayalam-rachana” language, with the traditionnal “Rachana” fonts (old lipi), are taken from the malayalam package [4] by A. J. ALEX. This language requires specific fonts. See also sections 13.117 on the preceding page and 13.120.

```

9891 (*malayalam – rachana)
9892 \ProvidesFile{malayalam-rachana.mld}[2005/06/07]
9893 %% Malayalam: Rachana fonts, traditionnal.
9894 \def\ptctitle{\mm \X{<68>}\X{<201>}\X{<83>}\X{<183>}\<119>}%
9895 \def\plftitle{\mm \X{<78>}\<111>}\X{<C<94>}\X{<186>}\X{<179>}}%
9896 \def\pltttitle{\mm \X{<117>}\<83>}\X{<95>}\<111>}\X{<F<59>}\X{<73>}\X{<179>}}%
9897 %%
9898 \def\mtctitle{\mm \X{<68>}\X{<201>}\X{<83>}\X{<183>}\<119>}%
9899 \def\mlftitle{\mm \X{<78>}\<111>}\X{<C<94>}\X{<186>}\X{<179>}}%
9900 \def\mltttitle{\mm \X{<117>}\<83>}\X{<95>}\<111>}\X{<F<59>}\X{<73>}\X{<179>}}%
9901 %%
9902 \def\stctitle{\mm \X{<68>}\X{<201>}\X{<83>}\X{<183>}\<119>}%
9903 \def\slftitle{\mm \X{<78>}\<111>}\X{<C<94>}\X{<186>}\X{<179>}}%
9904 \def\sltttitle{\mm \X{<117>}\<83>}\X{<95>}\<111>}\X{<F<59>}\X{<73>}\X{<179>}}%
9905 /malayalam – rachana)

```

13.120 “Malayalam-rachana2” language: malayalam-rachana2.mld

The titles for the “malayalam-rachana2” language, with the reformed “Rachana” fonts (new lipi), are taken from the malayalam package [4] by A. J. ALEX. This language requires specific fonts. See also sections 13.117 on the preceding page and 13.119.

```

9906 (*malayalam – rachana2)
9907 \ProvidesFile{malayalam-rachana2.mld}[2006/01/13]
9908 %% Malayalam: Rachana fonts, reformed.
9909 \def\ptctitle{\mm \X{<68>}\X{<201>}\X{<83>}\X{<183>}\<119>}%
9910 \def\plftitle{\mm \X{<78>}\<111>}\X{<125>}\<88>}\X{<186>}\X{<179>}}%
9911 \def\pltttitle{\mm \X{<117>}\<83>}\X{<95>}\<111>}\X{<106>}\<113>}\X{<73>}\X{<179>}}%
9912 %%
9913 \def\mtctitle{\mm \X{<68>}\X{<201>}\X{<83>}\X{<183>}\<119>}%

```

```

9914 \def\mlftitle{\mm \X{\<78>\<111>}\X{\<125>\<88>}\X{\<186>}\X{\<179>}}%
9915 \def\mltttitle{\mm \X{\<117>\<83>}\X{\<95>\<111>}\X{\<106>\<113>}\X{\<73>}\X{\<179>}}%
9916 %%
9917 \def\stctitle{\mm \X{\<68>}\X{\<201>}\X{\<83>}\X{\<183>}\<119>}%
9918 \def\slftitle{\mm \X{\<78>\<111>}\X{\<125>\<88>}\X{\<186>}\X{\<179>}}%
9919 \def\sltttitle{\mm \X{\<117>\<83>}\X{\<95>\<111>}\X{\<106>\<113>}\X{\<73>}\X{\<179>}}%
9920 \</malayalam – rachana2>

```

13.121 “Manju” language: manju.mld

The “manju” language is a synonym for “bithe”, so we just load `bithe.mld` (see section 13.22 on page 475):

```

9921 \<manju>
9922 \ProvidesFile{manju.mld}[2005/11/16]
9923 \mtcselectlanguage{bithe}%
9924 \</manju>

```

13.122 “Meyalu” language: meyalu.mld

The “meyalu” language is just like “bahasam”, so we just load `bahasam.mld` (see section 13.16 on page 471):

```

9925 \<meyalu>
9926 \ProvidesFile{meyalu.mld}[2006/01/13]
9927 \mtcselectlanguage{bahasam}%
9928 \</meyalu>

```

13.123 “Mongol” language: mongol.mld

The titles for the “mongol” language are taken from the `MonTeX` package [117, 120] (by Oliver CORFF and Dorjpalam DORJ). This language requires specific fonts. See also sections 13.19 on page 473, 13.20 on page 474, 13.21 on page 474, 13.22 on page 475, 13.29 on page 478, 13.30 on page 479, 13.180 on page 553, 13.181 on page 553, and 13.182 on page 554.

```

9929 \<mongol>
9930 \ProvidesFile{mongol.mld}[1999/03/16]
9931 %% Mongol (xalx) titles for minitoc.sty
9932 %% Needs mongol fonts
9933 \def\ptctitle{{\mnr Garqig}}%

```

```

9934 \def\plfttitle{{\mnr Zurgi"in jagsaalt}}%
9935 \def\pltttitle{{\mnr X"usn"agti"in jagsaalt}}%
9936 %%
9937 \def\mtcttitle{{\mnr Garqig}}%
9938 \def\mlfttitle{{\mnr Zurgi"in jagsaalt}}%
9939 \def\mltttitle{{\mnr X"usn"agti"in jagsaalt}}%
9940 %%
9941 \def\stcttitle{{\mnr Garqig}}%
9942 \def\slfttitle{{\mnr Zurgi"in jagsaalt}}%
9943 \def\slttitle{{\mnr X"usn"agti"in jagsaalt}}%
9944 </mongol>

```

13.124 “Mongolb” language: mongolb.mld

This is an other variant for the mongolian titles, taken from the mongolian.dtx file [21] (by Dorjgotov БАТМУНКХ) for the babel package [46, 47] (hence the final “b” in “mongolb”).

The titles for the “mongolb” language use cyrillic characters and the X2 and T2 encodings and are derived from the russianb.dtx file (by Olga G. ЛАПКО, Vladimir VOLOVICH and Werner LEMBERG).

```

9945 (*mongolb)
9946 \ProvidesFile{mongolb.mld}[2007/01/29]
9947 %% Mongolian titles for minitoc.sty
9948 %% From mongolian.dtx for the babel package
9949 %% Dorjgotov Batmunkh (batmunkh@num.edu.mn)
9950 %% Needs some cyrillic fonts and special cyrillic encoding T2 and X2.
9951 %% Vladimir Volovich (TeX@vzv.vsu.ru) and Werner Lemberg (wl@gnu.org)
9952 %%
9953 \expandafter\ifx\csname chapter\endcsname\relax
9954   \def\ptcttitle{{\cyr\CYRA\cyrg\cyru\cyru\cyrl\cyrg\cyra}}\relax%
9955 \else\relax
9956   \def\ptcttitle{{\cyr\CYRG\cyra\cyrr\cyrch\cyri\cyrg}}\relax%
9957 \fi
9958 \def\plfttitle{{{\cyr\CYZ\cyru\cyrr\cyrg\cyri\cyrishrt\cyrn
9959   \ \cyrzh\cyra\cyrg\cyrs\cyra\cyra\cyrl\cyrt}}}%
9960 \def\pltttitle{{{\cyr\CYRH\cyry\cyrs\cyrn\cyrerev\cyrg\cyrt\cyri\cyrishrt\cyrn
9961   \ \cyrzh\cyra\cyrg\cyrs\cyra\cyra\cyrl\cyrt}}}%
9962 %%
9963 \expandafter\ifx\csname chapter\endcsname\relax
9964   \def\mtcttitle{{\cyr\CYRA\cyrg\cyru\cyru\cyrl\cyrg\cyra}}\relax%
9965 \else\relax
9966   \def\mtcttitle{{\cyr\CYRG\cyra\cyrr\cyrch\cyri\cyrg}}\relax%
9967 \fi
9968 \def\mlfttitle{{{\cyr\CYZ\cyru\cyrr\cyrg\cyri\cyrishrt\cyrn
9969   \ \cyrzh\cyra\cyrg\cyrs\cyra\cyra\cyrl\cyrt}}}%
9970 \def\mltttitle{{{\cyr\CYRH\cyry\cyrs\cyrn\cyrerev\cyrg\cyrt\cyri\cyrishrt\cyrn
9971   \ \cyrzh\cyra\cyrg\cyrs\cyra\cyra\cyrl\cyrt}}}%
9972 %%
9973 \expandafter\ifx\csname chapter\endcsname\relax

```

```

9974 \def\stctitle{{\cyr\CYRA\cyrg\cyru\cyru\cyr\cyrg\cyra}}\relax%
9975 \else\relax
9976 \def\stctitle{{\cyr\CYRG\cyra\cyrr\cyrch\cyri\cyrg}}\relax%
9977 \fi
9978 \def\slfttitle{{{cyr\CYZ\cyru\cyrr\cyrg\cyri\cyrishrt\cyrn
9979 \ \cyrzh\cyra\cyrg\cyrs\cyra\cyra\cyr\cyrt}}}%
9980 \def\sltttitle{{\cyr\CYRH\cyr\cyrs\cyrn\cyrerev\cyrg\cyrt\cyri\cyrishrt\cyrn
9981 \ \cyrzh\cyra\cyrg\cyrs\cyra\cyra\cyr\cyrt}}}%
9982 </mongolb>

```

13.125 “Mongolian” language: mongolian.mld

This is an other name for the “mongolb” language, because the babel package [46, 47] uses the name “mongolian”. We just load mongolb.mld. See section 13.124 on the page before.

```

9983 <(*mongolian)
9984 \ProvidesFile{mongolian.mld}[2007/02/05]
9985 %% Mongolian titles for minitoc.sty
9986 %% From mongolian.dtx for the babel package
9987 %% Dorjgotov Batmunkh (batmunkh@num.edu.mn)
9988 %% Needs some cyrillic fonts and special cyrillic encoding T2 and X2.
9989 %% Vladimir Volovich (TeX@vzv.vsu.ru) and Werner Lemberg (wl@gnu.org)
9990 %%
9991 \mtcselectlanguage{mongolb}%
9992 </mongolian>

```

13.126 “Naustrian” language: naustrian.mld

The “naustrian” language is a synonym of the “ngermanb” language (a revised version of the germanb variant of the german language), so we just load the ngermanb.mld file. See also section 13.129 on the following page.

```

9993 <(*naustrian)
9994 \ProvidesFile{naustrian.mld}[2004/12/14]
9995 \mtcselectlanguage{ngermanb}%
9996 </naustrian>

```

13.127 “Newzealand” language: newzealand.mld

The “newzealand” language is just like “english”, so we just load english.mld (see section 13.43 on page 484):

```

9997 <*newzealand>
9998 \ProvidesFile{newzealand.mld}[2006/01/11]
9999 \mtcselectlanguage{english}%
10000 </newzealand>

```

13.128 “Ngerman” language: ngerman.mld

The “ngerman” language is a synonym of the “ngermanb” language³⁸, so we just load the `ngermanb.mld` file. See also section 13.129.

```

10001 <*ngerman>
10002 \ProvidesFile{ngerman.mld}[2004/12/14]
10003 \mtcselectlanguage{ngermanb}%
10004 </ngerman>

```

13.129 “Ngermanb” language: ngermanb.mld

The titles for the “ngermanb” language³⁹ are taken from the file `ngermanb.dtx` file (by Bernd RAICHLE and Walter SCHMIDT) in the `babel` package [46, 47, 82]. See also sections 13.126 on the page before, and 13.128.

```

10005 <*ngermanb>
10006 \ProvidesFile{ngermanb.mld}[2006/01/13]
10007 %% New german (B) titles for minitoc.sty from ngermanb.dtx (babel)
10008 %% Raichle, Bernd and Schmidt, Walter
10009 \def\ptctitle{Inhaltsverzeichnis}% % oder nur: Inhalt
10010 \def\plftitle{Abbildungsverzeichnis}%
10011 \def\pltttitle{Tabellenverzeichnis}%
10012 %%
10013 \def\mtctitle{Inhalt}%
10014 \def\mlftitle{Abbildungsverzeichnis}%
10015 \def\mltttitle{Tabellenverzeichnis}%
10016 %%
10017 \def\stctitle{Inhalt}%
10018 \def\slftitle{Abbildungsverzeichnis}%
10019 \def\slttitle{Tabellenverzeichnis}%
10020 </ngermanb>

```

³⁸ A revised version of the `germanb` variant of the german language.

³⁹ A variant of the german language, with revised spelling.

13.130 “Ngermanb2” language: ngermanb2.mld

The titles for the “ngermanb2” language (revised spelling and short titles) are taken from taken from the `ngermanb.dtx` file (by Bernd RAICHLE and Walter SCHMIDT) in the `babel` package [46, 47, 82], and abbreviated. See also section 13.129 on the page before.

```
10021 <*ngermanb2>
10022 \ProvidesFile{ngermanb2.mld}[2005/09/27]
10023 %% New german (B) short (2) titles for minitoc.sty
10024 \def\ptctitle{Inhalt}%
10025 \def\plftitle{Abbildungen}%
10026 \def\pltttitle{Tabellen}%
10027 %%
10028 \def\mtctitle{Inhalt}%
10029 \def\mlftitle{Abbildungen}%
10030 \def\mltttitle{Tabellen}%
10031 %%
10032 \def\stctitle{Inhalt}%
10033 \def\slftitle{Abbildungen}%
10034 \def\slttitle{Tabellen}%
10035 </ngermanb2>
```

13.131 “Norsk” language: norsk.mld

The titles for the “norsk” language (or *bokmål*, “language of the kingdom”) are taken from the `norsk.dtx` file (by Johannes L. BRAAMS, Håvard HELSTRUP, Alv Kjetil HOLME, Per Steinar IVERSEN, Terje Engeset PETTERST and Rune KLEVELAND) in the `babel` package [46, 47, 51], with help from Dag LANGMYHR. See also section 13.133 on the following page.

```
10036 <*norsk>
10037 \ProvidesFile{norsk.mld}[2006/01/13]
10038 %% Norsk titles for minitoc.sty from norsk.dtx (babel)
10039 %% Braams, Johannes~L. and Helstrup, Haavard and Holme, Alv Kjetil and
10040 %% Iversen, Per Steinar and Petterst, Terje Engeset and Kleveland, Rune
10041 %% Thanks to Dag Langmyhr (dag@ifi.uio.no)
10042 \def\ptctitle{Innhold}%
10043 \def\plftitle{Figurer}%
10044 \def\pltttitle{Tabeller}%
10045 %%
10046 \def\mtctitle{Innhold}%
10047 \def\mlftitle{Figurer}%
10048 \def\mltttitle{Tabeller}%
10049 %%
10050 \def\stctitle{Innhold}%
10051 \def\slftitle{Figurer}%
10052 \def\slttitle{Tabeller}%
10053 </norsk>
```


13.132 “Norsk2” language: norsk2.mld

The titles for the “norsk2” language (or *bokmål*, “language of the kingdom”) are taken from the `babel` package [46, 47, 51], with help from Dag LANGMYHR. These are variants of the titles of section 13.131 on the page before.

```
10054 (*norsk2)
10055 \ProvidesFile{norsk2.mld}[2005/09/27]
10056 %% Short norsk titles for minitoc.sty
10057 %% Thanks to Dag Langmyhr (dag@ifi.uio.no)
10058 \def\ptctitle{Innhold}%
10059 \def\plftitle{Figurliste}%
10060 \def\plttitle{Tabelliste}%
10061 %%
10062 \def\mtctitle{Innhold}%
10063 \def\mlftitle{Figurliste}%
10064 \def\mlttitle{Tabelliste}%
10065 %%
10066 \def\stctitle{Innhold}%
10067 \def\slftitle{Figurliste}%
10068 \def\slttitle{Tabelliste}%
10069 \end{file}
```

13.133 “Nynorsk” language: nynorsk.mld

The titles for the “nynorsk” language⁴⁰ are taken from `norsk.dtx` file (by Johannes L. BRAAMS, Håvard HELSTRUP, Alv Kjetil HOLME, Per Steinar IVERSEN, Terje Engeset PETTERST and Rune KLEVELAND) in the `babel` package [46, 47, 51], with help from Dag LANGMYHR. See also section 13.131 on the preceding page.

```
10070 (*nynorsk)
10071 \ProvidesFile{nynorsk.mld}[2006/01/13] %% Nynorsk titles from norsk.dtx (babel)
10072 %% Braams, Johannes~L. and Helstrup, Haavard and Holme, Alv Kjetil and
10073 %% Iversen, Per Steinar and Petterst, Terje Engeset and Kleveland, Rune
10074 %% Thanks to Dag Langmyhr (dag@ifi.uio.no)
10075 \def\mtctitle{Innhald}%
10076 \def\mlftitle{Figurar}%
10077 \def\mlttitle{Tabellar}%
10078 %%
10079 \def\ptctitle{Innhald}%
10080 \def\plftitle{Figurar}%
10081 \def\plttitle{Tabellar}%
10082 %%
10083 \def\stctitle{Innhald}%
10084 \end{file}
```

⁴⁰Created around 1800 by Ivar ÅSSEN to make a real independent and national norwegian language, in reaction to danish, from the various dialects spoken in the country. But nynorsk has never gained much popularity outside rural regions.

```

10084 \def\slfttitle{Figurar}%
10085 \def\sltttitle{Tabellar}%
10086 </nynorsk>

```

13.134 “Nynorsk2” language: nynorsk2.mld

The titles for the “nynorsk2” language are variants of the titles of the “nynorsk” language. See also section 13.133 on the page before.

```

10087 <{*nynorsk2}
10088 \ProvidesFile{nynorsk.mld}[1999/03/16]
10089 %% Nynorsk titles for minitoc.sty. Thanks to Dag Langmyhr (dag@ifi.uio.no)
10090 \def\mtctitle{Innhald}%
10091 \def\mlfttitle{Figurliste}%
10092 \def\mltttitle{Tabelliste}%
10093 %%
10094 \def\ptctitle{Innhald}%
10095 \def\plfttitle{Figurliste}%
10096 \def\pltttitle{Tabelliste}%
10097 %%
10098 \def\stctitle{Innhald}%
10099 \def\slfttitle{Figurliste}%
10100 \def\sltttitle{Tabelliste}%
10101 </nynorsk2>

```

13.135 “Polish” language: polish.mld

The titles for the “polish” language are taken from the polish.dtx file (by Elmar SCHALÜCK and Michael JANICH) in the babel package [46, 47, 87]. See also sections 13.136 on the following page and 13.137 on the next page.

```

10102 <{*polish}
10103 \ProvidesFile{polish.mld}[2006/01/13]
10104 %% Polish titles for minitoc.sty from polish.dtx (babel)
10105 %% Schalück, Elmar and Janich, Michael
10106 \def\ptctitle{Spis rzeczy}%
10107 \def\plfttitle{Spis rysunk\`ow}%
10108 \def\pltttitle{Spis tablic}%
10109 %%
10110 \def\mtctitle{Spis rzeczy}%
10111 \def\mlfttitle{Spis rysunk\`ow}%
10112 \def\mltttitle{Spis tablic}%
10113 %%
10114 \def\stctitle{Spis rzeczy}%
10115 \def\slfttitle{Spis rysunk\`ow}%

```

```
10116 \def\sltttitle{Spis tablic}%
10117 </polish>
```

13.136 “Polish2” language: polish2.mld

The titles for the “polish2” language⁴¹ are taken from the omega-polish.ldf (by Alexej M. KRYUKOV and Dmitry IVANOV) in the Antomega project [210]. See also sections 13.135 on the preceding page and 13.137.

```
10118 <*polish2>
10119 \ProvidesFile{polish2.mld}[2005/02/08]
10120 %% from omega-polish.ldf (Antomega project)
10121 %% Needs Omega
10122 %% Alexej M. Kryukov and Dmitry Ivanov
10123 %%
10124 \def\ptctitle{\localpolish{Spis tre^^^^00b1ci}}%
10125 \def\plftitle{\localpolish{Spis rysunk^^^^00adw}}%
10126 \def\pltttitle{\localpolish{Spis tablic}}%
10127 %%
10128 \def\mtctitle{\localpolish{Spis tre^^^^00b1ci}}%
10129 \def\mlftitle{\localpolish{Spis rysunk^^^^00adw}}%
10130 \def\mltttitle{\localpolish{Spis tablic}}%
10131 %%
10132 \def\stctitle{\localpolish{Spis tre^^^^00b1ci}}%
10133 \def\slftitle{\localpolish{Spis rysunk^^^^00adw}}%
10134 \def\sltttitle{\localpolish{Spis tablic}}%
10135 </polish2>
```

13.137 “Polski” language: polski.mld

The titles for the “polski” language (variant for polish) are taken from the polski.dtx file (by Mariusz OLKO and Marcin WOLIŃSKI) in the PLaTeX package [281, 358]. See also sections 13.135 on the preceding page and 13.136.

```
10136 <*polski>
10137 \ProvidesFile{polski.mld}[2006/02/28]
10138 %% Polski titles for minitoc.sty
10139 %% from polski.dtx (PLaTeX)
10140 %% Olko, Mariusz and Woliński, Marcin.
10141 %%
10142 \def\ptctitle{Spis tre\'sci}%
10143 \def\plftitle{Spis rysunk\'ow}%
10144 \def\pltttitle{Spis tabel}%
10145 %%
```

⁴¹ “Polish2” is a variant of “polish”.

```

10146 \def\mtctitle{Spis rysunk\'ow}%
10147 \def\mlftitle{Spis rysunk\'ow}%
10148 \def\mltttitle{Spis tabel}%
10149 %%
10150 \def\stctitle{Spis rysunk\'ow}%
10151 \def\slftitle{Spis rysunk\'ow}%
10152 \def\slttitle{Spis tabel}%
10153 </polski>

```

13.138 “Portuges” language: portuges.mld

The name “portuges” is another spelling for “portuguese” (see section 13.139), so we just load portuguese.mld:

```

10154 <{*portuges}
10155 \ProvidesFile{portuges.mld}[2005/06/07]
10156 \mtcselectlanguage{portuguese}%
10157 </portuges>

```

13.139 “Portuguese” language: portuguese.mld

The titles for the “portuguese” language are taken from the portuges.dtx file (by Jose Pedro RAMALHETE) in the babel package [46, 47, 83].

See also section 13.23 on page 475, because the titles are different in Brazil, even if the language is also portuguese.

```

10158 <{*portuguese}
10159 \ProvidesFile{portuguese.mld}[2006/01/13]
10160 %% Portuguese titles for minitoc.sty
10161 %% from portuges.dtx (babel)
10162 %% Ramalhete, Jose Pedro
10163 \def\ptctitle{Conte\'udo}%
10164 \def\plftitle{Lista de Figuras}%
10165 \def\pltttitle{Lista de Tabelas}%
10166 %%
10167 \def\mtctitle{Conte\'udo}%
10168 \def\mlftitle{Lista de Figuras}%
10169 \def\mltttitle{Lista de Tabelas}%
10170 %%
10171 \def\stctitle{Conte\'udo}%
10172 \def\slftitle{Lista de Figuras}%
10173 \def\slttitle{Lista de Tabelas}%
10174 </portuguese>

```

13.140 “Romanian” language: `romanian.mld`

The titles for the “romanian” language come from the `romanian.dtx` file (by Umstatter HORST and Robert JUHASZ) in the `babel` package [46, 47, 69].

```

10175 <*romanian>
10176 \ProvidesFile{romanian.mld}[2006/01/13]
10177 %% Romanian titles for minitoc.sty
10178 %% from romanian.dtx (babel)
10179 %% Horst, Umstatter and Juhasz, Robert
10180 \def\ptctitle{Cuprins}%
10181 \def\plftitle{List\u{a} de figuri}%
10182 \def\plttitle{List\u{a} de tabele}%
10183 %%
10184 \def\mtctitle{Cuprins}%
10185 \def\mlftitle{List\u{a} de figuri}%
10186 \def\mlttitle{List\u{a} de tabele}%
10187 %%
10188 \def\stctitle{Cuprins}%
10189 \def\slftitle{List\u{a} de figuri}%
10190 \def\slttitle{List\u{a} de tabele}%
10191 </romanian>

```

13.141 “Romanian2” language: `romanian2.mld`

The titles for the “romanian2” language come from the `romanian.dtx` file (by Adrian REZUȘ and Bernd RAICHLE) in the `RomanianTeX` package [307]. See also sections 13.140 and 13.142 on the next page. Alas, `RomanianTeX` is not compatible with the `babel` package [46, 47].

```

10192 <*romanian2>
10193 \ProvidesFile{romanian2.mld}[2006/08/03]
10194 %% Romanian titles for minitoc.sty from RomanianTeX (romanian.dtx)
10195 %% Adrian Rezus (adriaan@cs.kun.nl) and
10196 %% Bernd Raichle (raichle@azu.Informatik.Uni-Stuttgart.de)
10197 \def\ptctitle{Cuprins}%
10198 \def\plftitle{Lista de figuri}%
10199 \def\plttitle{Lista de tabele}%
10200 %%
10201 \def\mtctitle{Cuprins}%
10202 \def\mlftitle{Lista de figuri}%
10203 \def\mlttitle{Lista de tabele}%
10204 %%
10205 \def\stctitle{Cuprins}%
10206 \def\slftitle{Lista de figuri}%
10207 \def\slttitle{Lista de tabele}%
10208 </romanian2>

```

13.142 “Romanian3” language: `romanian3.mld`

The titles for the “romanian3” language come from the `romanian.dtx` file (by Adrian REZUȘ and Bernd RAICHLE) in the RomanianTeX package [307]. See also sections 13.140 on the preceding page and 13.141 on the page before. Alas, RomanianTeX is not compatible with the `babel` package [46, 47].

```

10209 <*romanian3>
10210 \ProvidesFile{romanian3.mld}[2006/08/03]
10211 %% Romanian titles for minitoc.sty from RomanianTeX (romanian.dtx) variant.
10212 %% Adrian Rezuș (adriaan@cs.kun.nl) and
10213 %% Bernd Raichle (raichle@azu.Informatik.Uni-Stuttgart.de)
10214 \def\ptctitle{Tabla de materii}%
10215 \def\plttitle{Indice de figuri}%
10216 \def\plttitle{Tabele}%
10217 %%
10218 \def\mtctitle{Tabla de materii}%
10219 \def\mlttitle{Indice de figuri}%
10220 \def\mlttitle{Tabele}%
10221 %%
10222 \def\stctitle{Tabla de materii}%
10223 \def\slttitle{Indice de figuri}%
10224 \def\slttitle{Tabele}%
10225 </romanian3>

```

13.143 “Russian” language: `russian.mld`

The titles for the “russian” language are taken from the `babel` package [46, 47]. Specific cyrillic fonts are required.

```

10226 <*russian>
10227 \ProvidesFile{russian.mld}[1999/03/16]
10228 %% Russian titles for minitoc.sty
10229 \def\ptctitle{Oglavlenie}%
10230 \def\plftitle{Pere{\cz}en{\mz} risunkov}%
10231 \def\plttitle{Pere{\cz}en{\mz} tablic}%
10232 %%
10233 \def\mtctitle{Oglavlenie}%
10234 \def\mlftitle{Pere{\cz}en{\mz} risunkov}%
10235 \def\mlttitle{Pere{\cz}en{\mz} tablic}%
10236 %%
10237 \def\stctitle{Oglavlenie}%
10238 \def\slftitle{Pere{\cz}en{\mz} risunkov}%
10239 \def\slttitle{Pere{\cz}en{\mz} tablic}%
10240 </russian>

```

13.144 “Russian2m” language: russian2m.mld

The titles for the “russian2m” language (“russian2m” is a modern variant of “russian”) are taken from the russian2m.ldf file (by Alexej M. KRYUKOV and Dmitry IVANOV) in the Antomega project [210]. Specific cyrillic fonts are required. See also section 13.143 on the preceding page.

```

10241 <*russian2m>
10242 \ProvidesFile{russian2m.mld}[2005/02/08]
10243 %% from russian2m.ldf (Antomega project, russian modern)
10244 %% Needs Omega and cyrillic fonts
10245 %% Alexej M. Kryukov and Dmitry Ivanov
10246 %%
10247 \def\ptctitle{\localrussian%
10248 {^041e^0433^043b^0430^0432^043b^0435^043d%
10249 ^0438^0435}}%
10250 \def\plftitle{\localrussian%
10251 {^0421^043f^0438^0441^043e^043a ^0438^043b%
10252 ^043b^044e^0441^0442^0440^0430^0446^0438%
10253 ^0439}}%
10254 \def\pltttitle{\localrussian%
10255 {^0421^043f^0438^0441^043e^043a ^0442^0430%
10256 ^0431^043b^0438^0446}}%
10257 %%
10258 \def\mtctitle{\localrussian%
10259 {^041e^0433^043b^0430^0432^043b^0435^043d%
10260 ^0438^0435}}%
10261 \def\mlftitle{\localrussian%
10262 {^0421^043f^0438^0441^043e^043a ^0438^043b%
10263 ^043b^044e^0441^0442^0440^0430^0446^0438%
10264 ^0439}}%
10265 \def\mltttitle{\localrussian%
10266 {^0421^043f^0438^0441^043e^043a ^0442^0430%
10267 ^0431^043b^0438^0446}}%
10268 %%
10269 \def\stctitle{\localrussian%
10270 {^041e^0433^043b^0430^0432^043b^0435^043d%
10271 ^0438^0435}}%
10272 \def\slftitle{\localrussian%
10273 {^0421^043f^0438^0441^043e^043a ^0438^043b%
10274 ^043b^044e^0441^0442^0440^0430^0446^0438%
10275 ^0439}}%
10276 \def\sltttitle{\localrussian%
10277 {^0421^043f^0438^0441^043e^043a ^0442^0430%
10278 ^0431^043b^0438^0446}}%
10279 </russian2m>

```

13.145 “Russian2o” language: russian2o.mld

The titles for the “russian2o” language (“russian2o” is an old variant of “russian”) are taken from the omega-russian.ldf file (by Alexej M. KRYUKOV and Dmitry IVANOV) in the Antomega project [210]. Specific cyrillic fonts are required. See also section 13.143 on page 534.

```

10280 (*russian2o)
10281 \ProvidesFile{russian2o.mld}[2005/02/08]
10282 %% from russian2o.mld (Antomega project - russian old)
10283 %% Needs Omega and cyrillic fonts
10284 %% Alexej M. Kryukov and Dmitry Ivanov
10285 %%
10286 \def\ptctitle{\localrussian%
10287 {^041e^0433^043b^0430^0432^043b^0435^043d%
10288 ^0456^0435}}%
10289 \def\plftitle{\localrussian%
10290 {^0421^043f^0438^0441^043e^043a^044a ^0438%
10291 ^043b^043b^044e^0441^0442^0440^0430^0446%
10292 ^0456^0439}}%
10293 \def\plttitle{\localrussian%
10294 {^0421^043f^0438^0441^043e^043a^044a ^0442%
10295 ^0430^0431^043b^0438^0446^044a}}%
10296 %%
10297 \def\mtctitle{\localrussian%
10298 {^041e^0433^043b^0430^0432^043b^0435^043d%
10299 ^0456^0435}}%
10300 \def\mlftitle{\localrussian%
10301 {^0421^043f^0438^0441^043e^043a^044a ^0438%
10302 ^043b^043b^044e^0441^0442^0440^0430^0446%
10303 ^0456^0439}}%
10304 \def\mlttitle{\localrussian%
10305 {^0421^043f^0438^0441^043e^043a^044a ^0442%
10306 ^0430^0431^043b^0438^0446^044a}}%
10307 %%
10308 \def\stctitle{\localrussian%
10309 {^041e^0433^043b^0430^0432^043b^0435^043d%
10310 ^0456^0435}}%
10311 \def\slftitle{\localrussian%
10312 {^0421^043f^0438^0441^043e^043a^044a ^0438%
10313 ^043b^043b^044e^0441^0442^0440^0430^0446%
10314 ^0456^0439}}%
10315 \def\slttitle{\localrussian%
10316 {^0421^043f^0438^0441^043e^043a^044a ^0442%
10317 ^0430^0431^043b^0438^0446^044a}}%
10318 </russian2o>

```


13.146 “Russianb” language: russianb.mld

The titles for the “russianb” language (“russianb” is a variant of “russian”) are taken from the russianb.dtx file (by Olga G. LAPKO, Vladimir VOLOVICH, Werner LEMBERG, and Irina A. МАКHOVAYA) in the babel package [46, 47, 75, 224]. Specific cyrillic fonts are required. See also section 13.143 on page 534. The parttoc title varies depending on the presence of chapters defined or not by the document class.

```

10319 <*russianb>
10320 \ProvidesFile{russianb.mld}[2006/02/15]
10321 %% Russian (russianb) titles for minitoc.sty
10322 %% from russianb.dtx (babel)
10323 %% Lapko, Olga and Volovitch, Vladimir and Lemberg, Werner
10324 \expandafter\ifx\csname chapter\endcsname\relax
10325 \def\ptctitle{%
10326   {\cyr\CYRS\cyro\cyrd\cyre\cyrr\cyrzh\cyra\cyrn\cyri\cyre}}%
10327 \else
10328 \def\ptctitle{%
10329   {\cyr \CYRO\CYRg\CYRL\CYRa\CYRv\CYRL\CYRe\CYRn\CYRi\CYRe}}%
10330 \fi
10331 \def\plftitle{%
10332   {\cyr \CYRS\CYRp\CYRi\CYRs\CYRo\CYRk\space
10333     \CYRi\CYRL\CYRL\CYRyu\CYRs\CYRt\CYRr\CYRa\CYRc\CYRi\CYRishrt}}%
10334 \def\plttitle{%
10335   {\cyr \CYRS\CYRp\CYRi\CYRs\CYRo\CYRk\space
10336     \CYRt\CYRa\CYRb\CYRL\CYRi\CYRc}}%
10337 %%
10338 \def\mtctitle{%
10339   {\cyr \CYRO\CYRg\CYRL\CYRa\CYRv\CYRL\CYRe\CYRn\CYRi\CYRe}}%
10340 \def\mlftitle{%
10341   {\cyr \CYRS\CYRp\CYRi\CYRs\CYRo\CYRk\space
10342     \CYRi\CYRL\CYRL\CYRyu\CYRs\CYRt\CYRr\CYRa\CYRc\CYRi\CYRishrt}}%
10343 \def\mlttitle{%
10344   {\cyr \CYRS\CYRp\CYRi\CYRs\CYRo\CYRk\space
10345     \CYRt\CYRa\CYRb\CYRL\CYRi\CYRc}}%
10346 %%
10347 \def\stctitle{%
10348   {\cyr \CYRO\CYRg\CYRL\CYRa\CYRv\CYRL\CYRe\CYRn\CYRi\CYRe}}%
10349 \def\slftitle{%
10350   {\cyr \CYRS\CYRp\CYRi\CYRs\CYRo\CYRk\space
10351     \CYRi\CYRL\CYRL\CYRyu\CYRs\CYRt\CYRr\CYRa\CYRc\CYRi\CYRishrt}}%
10352 \def\slttitle{%
10353   {\cyr \CYRS\CYRp\CYRi\CYRs\CYRo\CYRk\space
10354     \CYRt\CYRa\CYRb\CYRL\CYRi\CYRc}}%
10355 </russianb>

```

13.147 “Russianc” language: russianc.mld

The titles for the “russianc” language (“russianc” is a variant of “russian”, used in the part of Mongolia under russian influence) are taken from the file `russian.def` in the `MonTeX` package [117, 120]. Specific cyrillic fonts are required. See also section 13.143 on page 534.

```

10356 <*russianc>
10357 \ProvidesFile{russianc.mld}[1999/03/16]
10358 %% Russian titles for minitoc.sty
10359 %% Needs cyrillic fonts
10360 \def\ptctitle{\xalx{Oglawlenie}}%
10361 \def\plftitle{\xalx{Spisok risunkow}}%
10362 \def\pltttitle{\xalx{Spisok tablic}}%
10363 %%
10364 \def\mtctitle{\xalx{Soderjanie}}%
10365 \def\mlftitle{\xalx{Spisok risunkow}}%
10366 \def\mltttitle{\xalx{Spisok tablic}}%
10367 %%
10368 \def\stctitle{\xalx{Soderjanie}}%
10369 \def\slftitle{\xalx{Spisok risunkow}}%
10370 \def\slttitle{\xalx{Spisok tablic}}%
10371 </russianc>

```

13.148 “Russian-cca” language: russian-cca.mld and russian-cca.mlo

They are several variants for the russian titles with the `cmcyralt` fonts. The titles for a first variant of the “russian-cca” are taken from the `russian.sty` (by Victor Boyko and Vadim MASLOV) file in the `cmcyralt` package [44].

The titles for the “russian-cca” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `russian-cca.mlo`.

```

10372 <*russian - cca>
10373 \ProvidesFile{russian-cca.mld}[2006/03/08]
10374 %% Russian-cca titles for minitoc.sty
10375 %% From russian.sty in the cmcyralt package
10376 %% Vadim Maslov (vadik@cs.umd.edu) and Victor Boyko (vb1890@cs.nyu.edu)
10377 %% Needs cmcyralt fonts and special input encoding.
10378 \mtcloadmlo{russian-cca}%
10379 </russian - cca>

```

13.149 “Russian-cca1” language: **russian-cca1.mld** and **russian-cca1.mlo**

They are several variants for the russian titles with the cmcyralt fonts. The titles for the “russian-cca1” language are taken from the cmcyralt.sty file (by Vadim MASLOV, Alexander HARIN and Vadim V. ZHYTNIKOV) in the cmcyralt package[177].

The titles for the “russian-cca1” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load russian-cca1.mlo.

```
10380 (*russian – cca1)
10381 \ProvidesFile{russian-cca1.mld}[2006/03/08]
10382 %% Russian-cca1 titles for minitoc.sty
10383 %% From cmcyralt.sty in the cmcyralt package
10384 %% cmcyr fonts in alt encoding
10385 %% Vadim Maslov (vadik@cs.umd.edu) and Alexander Harin (harin@lourie.und.ac.za)
10386 %% and Vadim V. Zhytnikov (vvzhy@phy.ncu.edu.tw)
10387 \mtcloadmlo{russian-cca1}%
10388 </russian – cca1>
```

13.150 “Russian-lh” language: **russian-lh.mld** and **russian-lh.mlo**

The russian titles for the LH fonts (“russian-lh” language) are taken from the russian.sty file (by Sergei O. NAUMOV) in the LH package [269].

The titles for the “russian-lh” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load russian-lh.mlo.

```
10389 (*russian – lh)
10390 \ProvidesFile{russian-lh.mld}[2006/03/08]
10391 %% Russian-lh titles for minitoc.sty from russian.sty in the LH package
10392 %% LH fonts in special encoding. By Sergei O. Naumov (serge@astro.unc.edu)
10393 \mtcloadmlo{russian-lh}%
10394 </russian – lh>
```

13.151 “Russian-lhcyralt” language: **russian-lhcyralt.mld** and **russian-lhcyralt.mlo**

The russian titles for the LHCYRALT fonts (“russian-lhcyralt” language) are taken from the lhcyralt.sty file (by Vadim V. ZHYTNIKOV) in the lhcyr package [378].

The titles for the “russian-lhcyralt” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `russian-lhcyralt.mlo`. The input encoding is ALT (code page CP866).

```
10395 <*russian – lhcyralt>
10396 \ProvidesFile{russian-lhcyralt.mld}[2006/03/10]
10397 %% Russian-lhcyralt titles for minitoc.sty
10398 %% From lhcyralt.sty in the LHCYR package
10399 %% LHCYRALT fonts in special encoding ALT (CP866)
10400 %% Vadim V. Zhytnikov (vvzhy@td.lpi.ac.ru)
10401 \mtcloadmlo{russian-lhcyralt}%
10402 </russian – lhcyralt>
```

13.152 “Russian-lhcyrkoi” language: `russian-lhcyrkoi.mld` and `russian-lhcyrkoi.mlo`

The russian titles for the LHCYRKOI fonts (“russian-lhcyrkoi” language) are taken from the `lhcyrkoi.sty` file (by Vadim V. ZHYTNIKOV) in the `lhcyr` package [378].

The titles for the “russian-lhcyrkoi” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `russian-lhcyrkoi.mlo`. The input encoding is KOI-8.

```
10403 <*russian – lhcyrkoi>
10404 \ProvidesFile{russian-lhcyrkoi.mld}[2006/03/13]
10405 %% Russian-lhcyrkoi titles for minitoc.sty
10406 %% From lhcyrkoi.sty in the LHCYR package
10407 %% LHCYRKOI fonts in special encoding KOI-8
10408 %% Vadim V. Zhytnikov (vvzhy@td.lpi.ac.ru)
10409 \mtcloadmlo{russian-lhcyrkoi}%
10410 </russian – lhcyrkoi>
```

13.153 “Russian-lhcyrwin” language: `russian-lhcyrwin.mld` and `russian-lhcyrwin.mlo`

The russian titles for the LHCYRWIN fonts (“russian-lhcyrwin” language) are taken from the `lhcyrwin.sty` file (by Vadim V. ZHYTNIKOV) in the `lhcyr` package [378].

The titles for the “russian-lhcyrwin” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `russian-lhcyrwin.mlo`. The input encoding is the code page CP1251.

```

10411 <*russian – lhcyrwin>
10412 \ProvidesFile{russian-lhcyrwin.mld}[2006/03/13]
10413 %% Russian-lhcyrwin titles for minitoc.sty
10414 %% From lhcyrwin.sty in the LHCYR package
10415 %% LHCYRWIN fonts in special encoding CP1251
10416 %% Vadim V. Zhytnikov (vvzhy@td.lpi.ac.ru)
10417 \mtcloadmlo{russian-lhcyrwin}%
10418 </russian – lhcyrwin>

```

13.154 “Samin” language: `samin.mld`

The titles for the “samin” language⁴² come from the `samin.dtx` file (by Regnor JERNsLETTEN) in the `babel` package [46, 47, 70]. Specific fonts are required.

```

10419 <*samin>
10420 \ProvidesFile{samin.mld}[2006/01/13]
10421 %% North Sámi (samin) titles for minitoc.sty
10422 %% from samin.dtx (babel)
10423 %% Jernsletten, Regnor
10424 \def\ptctitle{Sisdoallu}%
10425 \def\plftitle{Govvosat}%
10426 \def\plttitle{Tabeallat}%
10427 %%
10428 \def\mtctitle{Sisdoallu}%
10429 \def\mlftitle{Govvosat}%
10430 \def\mlttitle{Tabeallat}%
10431 %%
10432 \def\stctitle{Sisdoallu}%
10433 \def\slftitle{Govvosat}%
10434 \def\slttitle{Tabeallat}%
10435 </samin>

```

13.155 “Scottish” language: `scottish.mld`

The titles for the “scottish” language come from the `scottish.dtx` file (by Fraser GRANT) in the `babel` language [46, 47, 67]:

```

10436 <*scottish>
10437 \ProvidesFile{scottish.mld}[2006/01/13]
10438 %% Scottish titles for minitoc.sty from scottish.dtx (babel)
10439 %% Grant, Fraser

```

⁴²Several Sámi dialects/languages are spoken in Finland, Norway, Sweden, and on the Kola Peninsula (Russia). The alphabets differ, so there will eventually be a need for more `.dtx` files for, e.g., Lule and South Sámi. Hence the (artificial) name `samin.dtx` (and not `sami.dtx` or the like) in the North Sámi case. This note is copied and adapted from the `samin.dtx` file. These dialects and languages are part of the Finnic group.

```

10440 \def\ptctitle{Cl\'ar-obrach}%
10441 \def\plftitle{LiostaDhealbh}%
10442 \def\plttitle{LiostaChl\'ar}%
10443 %%
10444 \def\mtctitle{Cl\'ar-obrach}%
10445 \def\mlftitle{LiostaDhealbh}%
10446 \def\mlttitle{LiostaChl\'ar}%
10447 %%
10448 \def\stctitle{Cl\'ar-obrach}%
10449 \def\slftitle{LiostaDhealbh}%
10450 \def\slttitle{LiostaChl\'ar}%
10451 </scottish>

```

13.156 “Serbian” language: serbian.mld

The titles for the “serbian” (serbocroatian) language are taken from the `serbian.dtx` file (by Dejan MUHAMEDAGIĆ and Jankovic SLOBODAN) in the `babel` package [46, 47, 79].

Serbocroatian is spoken by Serbs, Croats and Chernogors, but only Serbs and Chernogors use the cyrillic alphabet (a variant). See also section 13.157.

```

10452 <*serbian>
10453 \ProvidesFile{serbian.mld}[2006/01/13]
10454 %% Serbian titles for minitoc.sty from serbian.dtx (babel)
10455 %% Muhamedagi\'{c}, Dejan and Slobodan, Jankovic
10456 \def\ptctitle{Sadr\v{z}aj}%
10457 \def\plftitle{Slike}%
10458 \def\plttitle{Tabele}%
10459 %%
10460 \def\mtctitle{Sadr\v{z}aj}%
10461 \def\mlftitle{Slike}%
10462 \def\mlttitle{Tabele}%
10463 %%
10464 \def\stctitle{Sadr\v{z}aj}%
10465 \def\slftitle{Slike}%
10466 \def\slttitle{Tabele}%
10467 </serbian>

```

13.157 “Serbianc” language: serbianc.mld

The titles for the “serbianc” language⁴³ have been gently provided by Marko ÈEHAJA and Frank KÜSTER. Cyrillic fonts are required. Serbocroatian is spoken by Serbs, Croats and Chernogors, but only Serbs and Chernogors use the cyrillic alphabet (a variant). See also section 13.156.

⁴³The “serbianc” language is written with cyrillic characters.

```

10468 (*serbianc)
10469 \ProvidesFile{serbianc.mld}[2006/01/13]
10470 %% Provides titles for minitoc.sty in Serbian Cyrillic
10471 %%
10472 %% Marko Ćehaja Internut@Thetaworld.Org
10473 %% Frank Küster, Biozentrum der Univ. Basel, frank@kuesterei.ch
10474 %% Abt. Biophysikalische Chemie
10475 \def\ptctitle{%
10476   {\cyr\CYRS\cyra\cyrd\cyrr\cyrzh\cyra\cyrje}}%
10477 \def\plftitle{%
10478   {\cyr\CYRS\cyrl\cyri\cyrk\cyre}}%
10479 \def\pltttitle{\cyr\CYRT\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyre}%
10480 %%
10481 \def\mtctitle{%
10482   {\cyr\CYRS\cyra\cyrd\cyrr\cyrzh\cyra\cyrje}}%
10483 \def\mlftitle{%
10484   {\cyr\CYRS\cyrl\cyri\cyrk\cyre}}%
10485 \def\mltttitle{\cyr\CYRT\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyre}%
10486 %%
10487 \def\stctitle{%
10488   {\cyr\CYRS\cyra\cyrd\cyrr\cyrzh\cyra\cyrje}}%
10489 \def\slftitle{%
10490   {\cyr\CYRS\cyrl\cyri\cyrk\cyre}}%
10491 \def\sltttitle{\cyr\CYRT\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyre}%
10492 </serbianc>

```

13.158 “Slovak” language: slovak.mld

The titles for the “slovak” language are taken from the slovak.dtx file (by Jana CHLEBÍKOVÁ and Tobias SCHLEMMER) in the babel package [46, 47, 63]. Using the T1 font encoding is recommended.

```

10493 (*slovak)
10494 \ProvidesFile{slovak.mld}[2006/01/13]
10495 %% Slovak titles for minitoc.sty
10496 %% from slovak.dtx (babel)
10497 %% Chlebíková, Jana and Schlemmer, Tobias
10498 \def\ptctitle{Obsah}%
10499 \def\plftitle{Zoznam obr\'azkov}%
10500 \def\pltttitle{Zoznam tabuliek}%
10501 %%
10502 \def\mtctitle{Obsah}%
10503 \def\mlftitle{Zoznam obr\'azkov}%
10504 \def\mltttitle{Zoznam tabuliek}%
10505 %%
10506 \def\stctitle{Obsah}%
10507 \def\slftitle{Zoznam obr\'azkov}%
10508 \def\sltttitle{Zoznam tabuliek}%
10509 </slovak>

```

13.159 “Slovene” language: slovene.mld

The titles for the “slovene” language come from the slovene.dtx file (by Danilo ZAVRTANIK and Leon ŽLAJPAH) in the babel package [46, 47, 93]:

```

10510 <*slovene>
10511 \ProvidesFile{slovene.mld}[2006/01/13]
10512 %% Slovene titles for minitoc.sty from slovene.dtx (babel)
10513 %% Zavrtanik, Danilo and \v{Z}lajpah, Leon
10514 \def\ptctitle{Kazalo}%
10515 \def\plftitle{Slike}%
10516 \def\plttitle{Tabele}%
10517 %%
10518 \def\mtctitle{Kazalo}%
10519 \def\mlftitle{Slike}%
10520 \def\mlttitle{Tabele}%
10521 %%
10522 \def\stctitle{Kazalo}%
10523 \def\slftitle{Slike}%
10524 \def\slttitle{Tabele}%
10525 </slovene>

```

13.160 “Spanish” language: spanish.mld

The titles for the “spanish” language are taken from the spanish.dtx file (by Javier BEZOS, initially by Julio SÁNCHEZ) in the babel package [38, 46, 47]. Note that the “spanish” language is in fact “castillan” (see section 13.33 on page 480). Other languages are spoken in Spain: “basque” (section 13.18 on page 472), “catalan” (section 13.35 on page 480), and “galician” (section 13.64 on page 494). Note that “spanish2” is a version of “spanish” with shorter titles (see section 13.161 on the following page). And “spanish3” (see section 13.162 on the next page) is a version for the Antomega [210] project; some titles are different. And “spanish4” is a variant of “spanish” where \ptctitle is shorter for articles (section 13.163 on page 546).

```

10526 <*spanish>
10527 \ProvidesFile{spanish.mld}[2006/02/15]
10528 %% Spanish titles for minitoc.sty from spanish.dtx (babel)
10529 %% Bezos, Javier
10530 \expandafter\ifx\csname chapter\endcsname\relax
10531 \def\ptctitle{\'Indice}\else\def\ptctitle{\'Indice General}%
10532 \fi
10533 \def\plftitle{\'Indice de Figuras}%
10534 \def\plttitle{\'Indice de Tablas}%
10535 %%
10536 \def\mtctitle{\'Indice}%
10537 \def\mlftitle{\'Indice de Figuras}%
10538 \def\mlttitle{\'Indice de Tablas}%
10539 %%

```



```

10540 \def\stctitle{\'Indice}%
10541 \def\slftitle{\'Indice de Figuras}%
10542 \def\sltttitle{\'Indice de Tablas}%
10543 </spanish>

```

13.161 “Spanish2” language: spanish2.mld

The titles for the “spanish2” language are taken from the `spanish.dtx` file in the `babel` package [38, 46, 47], but made shorter for chapter and section levels. See section 13.160 on the page before.

```

10544 <*spanish2>
10545 \ProvidesFile{spanish2.mld}[2005/03/31]
10546 %% Spanish titles for minitoc.sty
10547 \def\ptctitle{\'Indice General}%
10548 \def\plftitle{\'Indice de Figuras}%
10549 \def\pltttitle{\'Indice de Tablas}%
10550 %%
10551 \def\mtctitle{Contenido}%
10552 \def\mlftitle{Figuras}%
10553 \def\mltttitle{Tablas}%
10554 %%
10555 \def\stctitle{Contenido}%
10556 \def\slftitle{Figuras}%
10557 \def\sltttitle{Tablas}%
10558 </spanish2>

```

13.162 “Spanish3” language: spanish3.mld

The titles for the “spanish3” language are taken from the `omega-spanish.ldf` file (by Alexej M. KRYUKOV) of the Antomega project [210]. See section 13.160 on the preceding page.

```

10559 <*spanish3>
10560 \ProvidesFile{spanish3.mld}[2005/09/06]
10561 %% Spanish titles for minitoc.sty
10562 %% from omega-spanish.ldf of the \pack{Antomega} project.
10563 \def\ptctitle{\localspanish{^^^00cdndice general}}%
10564 \def\plftitle{\localspanish{^^^00cdndice de figuras}}%
10565 \def\pltttitle{\localspanish{^^^00cdndice de cuadros}}%
10566 %%
10567 \def\mtctitle{\localspanish{^^^00cdndice general}}%
10568 \def\mlftitle{\localspanish{^^^00cdndice de figuras}}%
10569 \def\mltttitle{\localspanish{^^^00cdndice de cuadros}}%
10570 %%

```

```

10571 \def\stctitle{\localspanish{^^^^00cdndice general}}%
10572 \def\slftitle{\localspanish{^^^^00cdndice de figuras}}%
10573 \def\sltttitle{\localspanish{^^^^00cdndice de cuadros}}%
10574 </spanish3>

```

13.163 “Spanish4” language: spanish4.mld

The titles for the “spanish4” language are taken from the `spanish.dtx` file (by Javier Bezos) from the `CervanTeX` package [41]. The title of the parttocs is shorter for articles. See also section 13.160 on page 544.

```

10575 <*spanish4>
10576 \ProvidesFile{spanish4.mld}[2006/01/19]
10577 %% Spanish titles for minitoc.sty from spanish.dtx (in CervanTeX)
10578 %% Bezos, Javier
10579 \expandafter\ifx\csname chapter\endcsname\relax
10580 \def\ptctitle{\'Indice}%
10581 \else \def\ptctitle{\'Indice general}%
10582 \fi
10583 \def\plftitle{\'Indice de figuras}%
10584 \def\plttitle{\'Indice de cuadros}%
10585 %%
10586 \def\mtctitle{\'Indice}%
10587 \def\mlftitle{\'Indice de figuras}%
10588 \def\mltttitle{\'Indice de cuadros}%
10589 %%
10590 \def\stctitle{\'Indice}%
10591 \def\slftitle{\'Indice de figuras}%
10592 \def\sltttitle{\'Indice de cuadros}%
10593 </spanish4>

```

13.164 “Swedish” language: swedish.mld

The titles for the “swedish” language are taken from the `swedish.dtx` file (by Sten HELLMAN and Erik ÖSTHOLS, with a correction by Jan Michael RYNNING) in the `babel` package [46, 47, 68]. See also section 13.165 on the following page.

```

10594 <*swedish>
10595 \ProvidesFile{swedish.mld}[2006/01/13]
10596 %% Swedish titles for minitoc.sty from swedish.dtx (babel)
10597 %% Hellman, Sten and Östhols, Erik
10598 \def\ptctitle{Inneh\csname aa\endcsname ll}%
10599 \def\plftitle{Figurer}%
10600 \def\plttitle{Tabeller}%
10601 %%

```

```

10602 \def\mtctitle{Inneh\csname aa\endcsname ll}%
10603 \def\mlftitle{Figurer}%
10604 \def\mltttitle{Tabeller}%
10605 %%
10606 \def\stctitle{Inneh\csname aa\endcsname ll}%
10607 \def\slftitle{Figurer}%
10608 \def\slttitle{Tabeller}%
10609 </swedish>

```

13.165 “Swedish2” language: `swedish2.mld`

The titles for the “swedish2” language (variant for `swedish`) are taken from the `rapport.doc` file (by Sven MATTISSEN) in the `SLATEX` package [248]. See also section 13.164 on the page before.

```

10610 <{*swedish2}
10611 \ProvidesFile{swedish2.mld}[2006/04/04]
10612 %% Swedish2 titles for minitoc.sty from rapport.doc (slatex)
10613 %% Mattisson, Sven (sven@tde.lu.se)
10614 \def\ptctitle{Inneh\csname aa\endcsname ll}%
10615 \def\plftitle{Figurf\"orteckning}%
10616 \def\plttitle{Tabellf\"orteckning}%
10617 %%
10618 \def\mtctitle{Inneh\csname aa\endcsname ll}%
10619 \def\mlftitle{Figurf\"orteckning}%
10620 \def\mltttitle{Tabellf\"orteckning}%
10621 %%
10622 \def\stctitle{Inneh\csname aa\endcsname ll}%
10623 \def\slftitle{Figurf\"orteckning}%
10624 \def\slttitle{Tabellf\"orteckning}%
10625 </swedish2>

```

13.166 “Thai” language: `thai.mld` and `thai.mlo`

The titles for the “thai” language come from the `thaicjk.ldf` file (by Werner LEMBERG) and use fonts of the CJK system [233, 234]. The `thailatex` package [250] (by Surapant MEKNAVIN, Theppitak KAROONBOONYANAN, Chanop SILPA-ANAN and Veerathanabutr POONLAP) provides the same titles in its `thai.ldf` file.

The titles for the “thai” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `thai.mlo`.

```

10626 <{*thai}
10627 \ProvidesFile{thai.mld}[2005/01/28]
10628 %% from thaicjk.ldf CJK 4.5.2 Thai support for the babel system

```

```

10629 %% by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>
10630 %%
10631 \mtcloadmlo{thai}%
10632 </thai>

```

13.167 “Turkish” language: `turkish.mld`

The titles for the “turkish” language are taken from the `turkish.dtx` file (by Mustafa BURC, Pierre A. MACKEY and Turgut UYAR) in the `babel` package [46, 47, 59]:

```

10633 <*turkish>
10634 \ProvidesFile{turkish.mld}[2006/01/13]
10635 %% Turkish titles for minitoc.sty
10636 %% from turkish.dtx (babel)
10637 %% Burc, Mustafa
10638 \def\ptctitle{\.I\c cindekiler}%
10639 \def\plftitle{\c Sekiller Listesi}%
10640 \def\pltttitle{Tablolar\in Listesi}%
10641 %%
10642 \def\mtctitle{\.I\c cindekiler}%
10643 \def\mlftitle{\c Sekiller Listesi}%
10644 \def\mltttitle{Tablolar\in Listesi}%
10645 %%
10646 \def\stctitle{\.I\c cindekiler}%
10647 \def\slftitle{\c Sekiller Listesi}%
10648 \def\sltttitle{Tablolar\in Listesi}%
10649 </turkish>

```

13.168 “Uighur” language: `uighur.mld`

The “uighur” and “bicig” languages are synonyms, so we just load the `bicig.mld` file (see section 13.19 on page 473):

```

10650 <*uighur>
10651 \ProvidesFile{uighur.mld}[2006/05/31]
10652 \mtcselectlanguage{bicig}%
10653 </uighur>

```

13.169 “Uighur2” language: `uighur2.mld`

The “uighur2” and “bicig2” languages are synonyms, so we just load the `bicig2.mld` file (see section 13.20 on page 474):

```
10654 <*uighur2>
10655 \ProvidesFile{uighur2.mld}[2006/05/31]
10656 \mtcselectlanguage{bicig2}%
10657 </uighur2>
```

13.170 “Uighur3” language: uighur3.mld

The “uighur3” and “bicig3” languages are synonyms, so we just load the bicig3.mld file (see section 13.19 on page 473):

```
10658 <*uighur3>
10659 \ProvidesFile{uighur3.mld}[2006/05/31]
10660 \mtcselectlanguage{bicig3}%
10661 </uighur3>
```

13.171 “UKenglish” language: UKenglish.mld

The “UKenglish” language is just like “english” (“UK” is for “United Kingdom”), so we just load english.mld (see section 13.43 on page 484):

```
10662 <*UKenglish>
10663 \ProvidesFile{UKenglish.mld}[2005/07/11]
10664 \mtcselectlanguage{english}%
10665 </UKenglish>
```

13.172 “Ukraineb” language: ukraineb.mld

The “ukraineb” language is a synonym for “ukrainian”, so we just load ukrainian.mld. See section 13.173 on the following page.

```
10666 <*ukraineb>
10667 \ProvidesFile{ukraineb.mld}[2006/12/19]
10668 %% Ukranian titles for minitoc.sty from ukraineb.dtx (babel)
10669 %% Andrij Shvaika, Olga Lapko
10670 \selectlanguage{ukrainian}%
10671 </ukraineb>
```

13.173 “Ukrainian” language: ukrainian.mld

The titles for the “ukrainian” language come from the `ukraineb.dtx` file (by Olga G. LAPKO and Andrij M. SHVAIKA) in the `babel` package [46, 47, 88]. Cyrillic fonts are required. Another language name is `ukraineb` (see section 13.172 on the page before).

```

10672 <*ukrainian>
10673 \ProvidesFile{ukrainian.mld}[2006/01/33]
10674 %% Ukraine titles for minitoc.sty
10675 %% from ukraineb.dtx (babel)
10676 %% Shvaika, Andrij and Lapko, Olga
10677 %% Needs cyrillic fonts
10678 \def\mtctitle{{\cyr\CYZ\cyrm\cyrii\cyr\cyrt}}%
10679 \def\mlftitle{{\cyr\CYRP\cyre\cyrr\cyre\cyrl\cyrii\cyrk
10680 \ \cyrii\cyrl\cyryu\cyr\cyrt\cyrr\cyra\cyrc\cyrii\cyrishrt}}%
10681 \def\mltttitle{{\cyr\CYRP\cyre\cyrr\cyre\cyrl\cyrii\cyrk
10682 \ \cyrt\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyr\cyrsftsn}}%
10683 %%
10684 \def\ptctitle{{\cyr\CYZ\cyrm\cyrii\cyr\cyrt}}%
10685 \def\plftitle{{\cyr\CYRP\cyre\cyrr\cyre\cyrl\cyrii\cyrk
10686 \ \cyrii\cyrl\cyryu\cyr\cyrt\cyrr\cyra\cyrc\cyrii\cyrishrt}}%
10687 \def\pltttitle{{\cyr\CYRP\cyre\cyrr\cyre\cyrl\cyrii\cyrk
10688 \ \cyrt\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyr\cyrsftsn}}%
10689 %%
10690 \def\stctitle{{\cyr\CYZ\cyrm\cyrii\cyr\cyrt}}%
10691 \def\slftitle{{\cyr\CYRP\cyre\cyrr\cyre\cyrl\cyrii\cyrk
10692 \ \cyrii\cyrl\cyryu\cyr\cyrt\cyrr\cyra\cyrc\cyrii\cyrishrt}}%
10693 \def\sltttitle{{\cyr\CYRP\cyre\cyrr\cyre\cyrl\cyrii\cyrk
10694 \ \cyrt\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyr\cyrsftsn}}%
10695 </ukrainian>

```

13.174 “Upporsorbian” language: uppsorbian.mld

The titles for the “uppersorbian” language⁴⁴ are taken from the `usorbian.dtx` file (by Eduard WERNER) in the `babel` package [46, 47, 91]. See also section 13.111 on page 519. A shorter language name is `usorbian` (see section 13.176 on the next page).

```

10696 <*uppersorbian>
10697 \ProvidesFile{uppersorbian.mld}[2006/02/38]
10698 %% Upper sorbian titles for minitoc.sty from usorbian.dtx (babel)
10699 %% Needs cyrillic fonts
10700 %% Werner, Eduard
10701 %%
10702 \def\ptctitle{Wobsah}%

```

⁴⁴Upper sorbian. Sorbian, or wendisch, is a member of the west slavic subgroup of indo-european languages spoken in Upper Lusatia in the german *länder* of Saxony and Brandenburg. The Sorbs are descendents of the Wends, the german name for the slavic tribes who occupied the area between the Elbe and Saale rivers in the west and the Odra (Oder) river in the east during the medieval period (vi-th century).

```

10703 \def\plftitle{Zapis wobrazow}%
10704 \def\pltttitle{Zapis tabulkow}%
10705 %%
10706 \def\mtctitle{Wobsah}%
10707 \def\mlftitle{Zapis wobrazow}%
10708 \def\mltttitle{Zapis tabulkow}%
10709 %%
10710 \def\stctitle{Wobsah}%
10711 \def\slftitle{Zapis wobrazow}%
10712 \def\slttitle{Zapis tabulkow}%
10713 \</uppersorbian>

```

13.175 “USenglish” language: USenglish.mld

The “USenglish” language (“US” is for “United States (of America)”) is just like “english”⁴⁵, so we just load `english.mld` (see section 13.43 on page 484):

```

10714 \<*USenglish>
10715 \ProvidesFile{USenglish.mld}[2005/07/11]
10716 \mtcselectlanguage{english}%
10717 \</USenglish>

```

13.176 “Usorbian” language: usorbian.mld

The “usorbian” language is a synonym for “uppersorbian”, so we just load `uppersorbian.mld`. See section 13.174 on the page before.

```

10718 \<*usorbian>
10719 \ProvidesFile{usorbian.mld}[2006/01/23]
10720 %% Upper sorbian titles for minitoc.sty
10721 %% from usorbian.dtx (babel)
10722 %% Werner, Eduard
10723 \selectlanguage{uppersorbian}%
10724 \</usorbian>

```

13.177 “Vietnam” language: vietnam.mld

The titles for the “vietnam” language are taken from the `vietnam` package [235] (by Werner LEMBERG and Thế Thành HÀN). Vietnamese fonts are required. See also section 13.178 on the following page.

⁴⁵It should be true for the mini-table titles; the languages themselves have some differences, like the hyphenation rules.

```

10725 <*vietnam>
10726 \ProvidesFile{vietnam.mld}[1999/03/16]
10727 %% vietnamese titles for minitoc.sty
10728 \def\ptctitle{M\du{c} l\du{c}}%
10729 \def\plftitle{Danh s\ 'ach h\ 'inh v\~e}%
10730 \def\plttitle{Danh s\ 'ach b\h{a}ng}%
10731 %%
10732 \def\mtctitle{M\du{c} l\du{c}}%
10733 \def\mlftitle{Danh s\ 'ach h\ 'inh v\~e}%
10734 \def\mlttitle{Danh s\ 'ach b\h{a}ng}%
10735 %%
10736 \def\stctitle{M\du{c} l\du{c}}%
10737 \def\slftitle{Danh s\ 'ach h\ 'inh v\~e}%
10738 \def\slttitle{Danh s\ 'ach b\h{a}ng}%
10739 </vietnam>

```

13.178 “Vietnamese” language: vietnamese.mld

The “vietnamese” language is just a synonym for the “vietnam” language. So we just load `vietnam.mld`. Vietnamese fonts are required. See also section [13.177](#) on the page before.

```

10740 <*vietnamese>
10741 \ProvidesFile{vietnamese.mld}[2004/12/14]
10742 \mtcselectlanguage{vietnam}%
10743 </vietnamese>

```

13.179 “Welsh” language: welsh.mld

The titles for the “welsh” language come from the `welsh.dtx` file (by Johannes L. BRAAMS) in the `babel` package [[46](#), [47](#), [52](#)]:

```

10744 <*welsh>
10745 \ProvidesFile{welsh.mld}[1999/12/06]
10746 %% Welsh titles for minitoc.sty, from welsh.dtx (babel), by Braams, Johannes~L.
10747 \def\ptctitle{Cynnwys}%
10748 \def\plftitle{Rhestr Ddarluniau}%
10749 \def\plttitle{Rhestr Dablau}%
10750 %%
10751 \def\mtctitle{Cynnwys}%
10752 \def\mlftitle{Rhestr Ddarluniau}%
10753 \def\mlttitle{Rhestr Dablau}%
10754 %%
10755 \def\stctitle{Cynnwys}%
10756 \def\slftitle{Rhestr Ddarluniau}%
10757 \def\slttitle{Rhestr Dablau}%
10758 </welsh>

```


13.180 “Xalx” language: xalx.mld

The titles for the “xalx” language are taken from the MonTeX package [117, 120] (by Oliver CORFF and Dorjpalam DORJ). Xalx or Khalkha is the name of the Mongolian nationality residing in Mongolia proper. Their dialect forms the basis of Mongolian written with Cyrillic letters. See also sections 13.100 on page 514, 13.181, and 13.182 on the following page.

```

10759 <*xalx>
10760 \ProvidesFile{xalx.mld}[2005/11/16]
10761 %% Mongol (xalx) titles for minitoc.sty
10762 \def\ptctitle{{\mnr Garqig}}%
10763 \def\plftitle{{\mnr Zurgi"in jagsaalt}}%
10764 \def\plttitle{{\mnr X"usn"agti"in jagsaalt}}%
10765 %%
10766 \def\mtctitle{{\mnr Garqig}}%
10767 \def\mlftitle{{\mnr Zurgi"in jagsaalt}}%
10768 \def\mlttitle{{\mnr X"usn"agti"in jagsaalt}}%
10769 %%
10770 \def\stctitle{{\mnr Garqig}}%
10771 \def\slftitle{{\mnr Zurgi"in jagsaalt}}%
10772 \def\slttitle{{\mnr X"usn"agti"in jagsaalt}}%
10773 </xalx>

```

13.181 “Xalx2” language: xalx2.mld

The titles for the “xalx2” language are taken from the MonTeX package [117, 120] (by Oliver CORFF and Dorjpalam DORJ). This is a variant for the “xalx” language (see section 13.180).

```

10774 <*xalx2>
10775 \ProvidesFile{xalx2.mld}[2006/03/31]
10776 %% Mongol (xalx2) titles for minitoc.sty
10777 \def\ptctitle{{\mnr Aguulga}}%
10778 \def\plftitle{{\mnr Zurgi"in jagsaalt}}%
10779 \def\plttitle{{\mnr X"usn"agti"in jagsaalt}}%
10780 %%
10781 \def\mtctitle{{\mnr Aguulga}}%
10782 \def\mlftitle{{\mnr Zurgi"in jagsaalt}}%
10783 \def\mlttitle{{\mnr X"usn"agti"in jagsaalt}}%
10784 %%
10785 \def\stctitle{{\mnr Aguulga}}%
10786 \def\slftitle{{\mnr Zurgi"in jagsaalt}}%
10787 \def\slttitle{{\mnr X"usn"agti"in jagsaalt}}%
10788 </xalx2>

```

13.182 “Xalx3” language: xalx3.mld

The titles for the “xalx3” language are taken from the MonTeX package [117, 120] (by Oliver CORFF and Dorjpalam DORJ). This is an other variant for the “xalx” language (see section 13.180 on the preceding page).

```
10789 <*xalx3>
10790 \ProvidesFile{xalx3.mld}[2006/03/31]
10791 %% Mongol (xalx3) titles for minitoc.sty
10792 \def\ptctitle{\xalx{Soderjanie}}%
10793 \def\plftitle{\xalx{Spisok risunkow}}%
10794 \def\plttitle{\xalx{Spisok tablic}}%
10795 %%
10796 \def\mtctitle{\xalx{Soderjanie}}%
10797 \def\mlftitle{\xalx{Spisok risunkow}}%
10798 \def\mlttitle{\xalx{Spisok tablic}}%
10799 %%
10800 \def\stctitle{\xalx{Soderjanie}}%
10801 \def\slftitle{\xalx{Spisok risunkow}}%
10802 \def\slttitle{\xalx{Spisok tablic}}%
10803 </xalx3>
```

Part III

Complements

Contents of the Third Part

Bibliography	557	Index	625
Changes history	591		

Bibliography

- [1] Paul W. ABRAHAMS, Karl BERRY, and Kathryn A. HARGREAVES. *T_EX for the Impatient*, September 2003. <mailto:impatient@tug.org>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/info/impatient/book.pdf>. 557, 630, 632, 654, 681, 682
- [2] Paul W. ABRAHAMS, Karl BERRY, and Kathryn A. HARGREAVES. *T_EX pour l'Impatient*, September 2004. French translation of [1] by Marc CHAUEMANCHE, <mailto:marc.chaudemanche@groupe-mma.fr>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/info/impatient/fr/fbook.pdf>. 630, 632, 654, 681, 682
- [3] Stéphane AICARDI. *Codages de caractères ASCII, latin-1, UTF-8, etc*, March 2006. Journées Mathrice, Nantes. Available from: <http://www.mathrice.org/rencontres/mars.2006/codages.pdf>. 630, 681
- [4] A. J. ALEX. *Typesetting Malayalam Using L^AT_EX 2_ε*, April 2003. <mailto:alexaj@myrealbox.com>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/language/malayalam/doc/mm-usr.pdf>. 43, 207, 465, 522, 523, 631, 664, 679, 681
- [5] A. J. ALEX. *Typesetting Malayalam Using Ω*, January 2006. <mailto:indicTeX@gmail.com>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/omega/latex/contrib/malayalam-omega/doc/manual-malayalam.pdf>. 43, 207, 465, 522, 631, 677, 679, 681
- [6] Mark ALFORD. *How to create Japanese language documents under GNU/Linux using L^AT_EX* [online], March 2006. Available from: http://www.physics.wustl.edu/~alford/tex/japanese_latex.html. <mailto:alford@wuphys.wustl.edu>. 631, 681
- [7] AMERICAN MATHEMATICAL SOCIETY. *Instructions for Preparation of Papers and Monographs: A_MS-L^AT_EX*. Providence, Rhode Island, 1999. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/amslatex/classes/instr-l.pdf>. 87, 210, 631, 634
- [8] Walter APPEL, Céline CHEVALIER, Emmanuel CORNET, Sébastien DESREUX, Jean-Julien FLECK, and Paul PICHAREAU. *L^AT_EX pour l'impatient*. In Céline CHEVALIER, editor, *Technique & Pratique*, page 128. H & K, 68, boulevard de Port-Royal, 75005 Paris, July 2005. <mailto:contact@H-K.fr>, see http://www.h-k.fr/liens/tp/latex_pour_l_impatient.html. 631, 634, 642, 644, 653, 681, 682, 684, 685

- [9] Jouko ARPONEN. *Practical \LaTeX Guide* [online], August 2004. Available from: http://www.helsinki.fi/~tfo_www/instr/latex-guide.html. 631, 681
- [10] Donald ARSENEAU. *The notoccite package*, July 2000. <mailto:asnd@triumf.ca>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/misc/notoccite.sty>. 51, 87, 234, 251, 274, 301, 304, 307, 404, 437, 631, 677, 679, 681
- [11] Donald ARSENEAU. *The placeins package*, June 2002. <mailto:asnd@triumf.ca>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/placeins/>. 29, 87, 219, 222, 236, 251, 412, 419, 436, 631, 679, 681, 685
- [12] Donald ARSENEAU. *The cite package*, November 2003. <mailto:asnd@triumf.ca>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/cite/cite.sty>. 621, 631, 634, 678, 681
- [13] Donald ARSENEAU. *The overcite package*, May 2003. <mailto:asnd@triumf.ca>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/cite/overcite.sty>. 212, 631, 678, 679, 681
- [14] Donald ARSENEAU. *The wrapfig package*, January 2003. <mailto:asnd@triumf.ca>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/contrib/macros/latex/contrib/wrapfig/>. 137, 229, 242, 631, 680, 681, 698
- [15] Donald ARSENEAU. *The chapterbib package*, February 2004. <mailto:asnd@reg.triumf.ca>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/cite/chapterbib.sty>. 59, 214, 230, 631, 634, 678, 681
- [16] Donald ARSENEAU. *The url package*, June 2005. <mailto:asnd@triumf.ca>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/misc/url.sty>. 631, 680, 681, 696
- [17] Helmer ASLAKSEN. *Chinese \TeX Using the CJK \LaTeX Package, Unicode TrueType Fonts and pdf \TeX under Windows* [online], February 2007. Available from: <http://www.math.nus.edu.sg/aslaksen/cs/cjk.html>. <mailto:aslaksen@math.nus.edu.sg>. 631, 634, 678, 681
- [18] Helmer ASLAKSEN. *Reading and Writing Chinese Characters and Pinyin on the Web Using Unicode* [online], February 2007. Available from: <http://www.math.nus.edu.sg/aslaksen/read.html>. <mailto:aslaksen@math.nus.edu.sg>. 631, 634, 678, 681
- [19] Iain Menzies BANKS. *Against a Dark Background*. Bantam Books, 1993. 99
- [20] Pierre BASSO and Stephan ULRICH. *The bibtopic package*, August 2002. <mailto:Pierre.Basso@lim.univ-mrs.fr>, <mailto:stefanulrich@users.sourceforge.net>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/bibtopic/bibtopic.pdf>. 59, 212, 632, 678, 681, 685, 696

- [21] Dorjgotov BATMUNKH. *Mongolian support from the babel system*, March 2007. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/language/mongolian/babel/mongolian.pdf>. 525, 632, 681
- [22] David BAUSUM. *T_EX: Reference and Examples*. Kluwer Academic Publishers, <mailto:davidb@jvlnet.com>, April 2002. See [23]. 559, 632, 681
- [23] David BAUSUM. *T_EX: Reference and Examples* [online], January 2006. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/utilities/plain/trm.html>. <mailto:davidb@jvlnet.com>, see [22]. 559, 632, 681
- [24] Benjamin BAYART. *Joli manuel pour L^AT_EX 2_ε*. Guide local pour l'ESIEE, December 1995. <mailto:bayartb@edgard.fdn.fr>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/info/JMPL.ps.gz>. 48, 632, 681
- [25] Benjamin BAYART, Thierry BAYET, Prakash COUNTCHAM, Éric DEPARDIEU, Jean-Pierre F. DRUCBERT, Mathieu GOUTELLE, Yvon HENEL, Florence HENRY, Loïc JOLY, Christophe JORSSSEN, Erwan LE PENNEC, Nicolas MARKEY, Françoise MARRE-FOURNIER, Sébastien MENGIN, Josselin NOIREL, Bruno PIGUET, Éric STREIT, Thomas VAN OUDENHOVE DE SAINT GÉRY, and Damien WYART. *Foire aux questions du groupe fr.comp.text.tex (version 3.0α)* [online], November 2004. Available from: <http://faqfctt.fr.eu.org/>. <mailto:bayartb@edgard.fdn.fr>. 632, 642, 643, 645, 654, 655, 659, 662, 664, 676, 681, 682, 683, 684, 685, 693, 696, 698
- [26] Claudio BECCARI. *Graphics in L^AT_EX*. *The PracT_EX Journal*, 1, February 2007. <mailto:claudio.beccari@polito.it>. Available from: <http://tug.org/pracjourn/2007-1/beccari/beccari-1.pdf>. 632, 681
- [27] Claudio BECCARI and Apostolos SYROPOULOS. *New Greek Fonts and the greek option of the babel package*. *TUGboat*, 19(4):419–425, December 1998. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb19-4/tb61becc.pdf>. 632, 681, 685, 694
- [28] Emmanuel BEFFARA. *Rubber Manual 1.0* [online], July 2005. Available from: <http://www.pps.jussieu.fr/~beffara/soft/rubber/doc.html>. <mailto:emmanuel.beffara@pps.jussieu.fr>. 60, 237, 632, 681, 689, 695
- [29] Rachid BELMOUHOUB. *Lire et écrire l'arabe*. In Cécile DESPRAIRIES, editor, *Langues orientales*. Larousse, Paris, March 2006. 632, 644, 681, 682
- [30] Alexander BERDNIKOV and Olga A. GRINEVA. *Some Problems with Accents in T_EX: Letters with Multiple Accents and Accents Varying for Uppercase/Lowercase Letters*. In *Congrès EuroT_EX'98*, volume 28-29 of *Cahiers GUTenberg*, pages 44–55, St. Malo, March 1998. Available from: <http://www.gutenberg.eu.org/pub/GUTenberg/publicationsPDF/28-29-berdnikovc.pdf>. 632, 654, 681, 682
- [31] Alexander BERDNIKOV, Olga G. LAPKO, Mikhail KOLODIN, Andrew JANISHEVSKY, and Alexey BURYKIN. *Alphabets Necessary for Various Cyrillic Writing Systems (Towards X2 and T2 Encodings)*. In *Congrès EuroT_EX'98*, volume 28-29 of *Cahiers GUTenberg*, pages 33–43, St. Malo, March 1998. Available from: <http://www.gutenberg.eu.org/pub/GUTenberg/publicationsPDF/28-29-berdnikovb.pdf>. 632, 633, 662, 681, 683

- [32] Alexander BERDNIKOV, Olga G. LAPKO, Mikhail KOLODIN, Andrew JANISHEVSKY, and Alexey BURYKIN. *Cyrillic encodings for \LaTeX 2 ϵ multi-language documents*. *TUGboat*, 19(4):403–416, 1998. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb19-4/tb61berd.pdf>. 632, 633, 662, 681, 683
- [33] Alexander BERDNIKOV, Olga G. LAPKO, Mikhail KOLODIN, Andrew JANISHEVSKY, and Alexey BURYKIN. *The Encoding Paradigm in \LaTeX 2 ϵ and the Projected X2 Encoding for Cyrillic Texts*. In *Congrès Euro \TeX* , volume 28-29 of *Cahiers GUTenberg*, pages 17–31, March 1998. Available from: <http://www.gutenberg.eu.org/pub/GUTenberg/publicationsPDF/28-29-berdnikova.pdf>. 632, 633, 662, 681, 683
- [34] Jens BERGER. *The hypernat package*, July 2001. <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/help/Catalogue/entries/hypernat.html>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/contrib/misc/hypernat.sty>. 632, 655, 679, 681
- [35] Karl BERRY. *Filenames for fonts*. *TUGboat*, 11(4):517–520, November 1990. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb11-4/tb30berry.pdf>. 579, 632, 681
- [36] Karl BERRY. *Fontname*, September 2005. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/fontname/fontname.pdf>. 632, 681
- [37] Berhanu BEYENE, Manfred KUDLEK, Olaf KUMMER, and Jochen METZINGER. *Ethiopian Language Support for the Babel Package*. Universität Aamburg, December 1998. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/language/ethiopia/ethiop/doc/ethiodoc.ps>. 43, 218, 465, 487, 488, 632, 646, 660, 667, 679, 681, 683, 684
- [38] Javier BEZOS. *Spanish support from the babel system*, February 2004. <mailto:jbezos@wanadoo.es> or <mailto:babel@braams.cistron.nl>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/spanish.dtx>. 544, 545, 632, 681
- [39] Javier BEZOS. *Typesetting Guaraní with \TeX* , July 2004. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/language/guarani/guarani.pdf>. 43, 221, 465, 500, 632, 654, 679, 681
- [40] Javier BEZOS. *The titlesec and titletoc packages*, January 2005. <http://www.texytipografia.com/contact.php>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/titlesec/titlesec.pdf>. 87, 240, 412, 632, 679, 681, 695
- [41] Javier BEZOS. *Estilo spanish para el sistema babel*, February 2007. <mailto:jbezos@wanadoo.es>. Available from: <http://www.texytipografia.com/archive/spanish.pdf>. 43, 546, 632, 634, 678, 681
- [42] Giuseppe BILOTTA. *The \aleph (Aleph) Project*. *TUGboat*, 25(1):105–107, July 2004. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb25-1/bilotta.pdf>. 234, 631, 632, 678, 681
- [43] Denis BITOUZÉ and Jean-Côme CHARPENTIER. *\LaTeX* . In *Collection Synthex*, page 304. Pearson Education France, September 2006. 632, 634, 681

- [44] Victor BOYKO. *The russian.sty file*, January 1995. Available from:
<ftp://ftp.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/cmcyralt/russian.sty>. 538, 633, 635, 664, 679, 681, 683
- [45] Johannes L. BRAAMS. *Babel, a multilingual style-option system for use with L^AT_EX's standard document styles*. TUGboat, 12(2):291–301, June 1991. Available from:
<http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb12-2/tb32braa.pdf>. 465, 632, 633, 678, 681
- [46] Johannes L. BRAAMS. *Babel, a multilingual package for use with L^AT_EX's standard document classes*, June 2004. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/babel.pdf>. 38, 43, 74, 211, 218, 249, 465, 466, 467, 471, 472, 475, 476, 477, 480, 482, 483, 484, 485, 486, 487, 490, 491, 492, 493, 494, 495, 496, 497, 506, 508, 509, 510, 514, 515, 516, 518, 519, 520, 521, 525, 526, 527, 528, 529, 530, 532, 533, 534, 537, 541, 542, 543, 544, 545, 546, 548, 550, 552, 633, 681
- [47] Johannes L. BRAAMS. *Babel, a multilingual package for use with L^AT_EX's standard document classes (user)*, June 2004. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/user.pdf>. 38, 43, 74, 211, 218, 249, 465, 466, 467, 471, 472, 475, 476, 477, 480, 482, 483, 484, 485, 486, 487, 490, 491, 492, 493, 494, 495, 496, 497, 506, 508, 509, 510, 514, 515, 516, 518, 519, 520, 521, 525, 526, 527, 528, 529, 530, 532, 533, 534, 537, 541, 542, 543, 544, 545, 546, 548, 550, 552, 632, 633, 678, 681
- [48] Johannes L. BRAAMS. *Dutch language support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/dutch.dtx>. 466, 484, 633, 681
- [49] Johannes L. BRAAMS. *English support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/english.dtx>. 484, 485, 633, 681
- [50] Johannes L. BRAAMS. *Irish support from the babel system*, March 2005. With help from Marion GUNN and Fraser GRANT, <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:fraser@cernvm>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/irish.dtx>. 509, 633, 654, 681, 682
- [51] Johannes L. BRAAMS. *Norsk support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, Håvard HELSTRUP (<mailto:haavard@cernvm>) and Alv Kjetil HOLME (<mailto:holmea@cernvm>); the “nynorsk” variant has been supplied by Per Steinar IVERSEN (<mailto:iversen@vxcern.cern.ch>) and Terje Engeset PETTERST (<mailto:terjeep@vsfys1.fi.uib.no>); Rune KLEVELAND (<mailto:runekl@math.uio.no>) added the shorthand definitions. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/norsk.dtx>. 528, 529, 633, 655, 658, 659, 681, 682, 683, 684, 685
- [52] Johannes L. BRAAMS. *Welsh support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/welsh.dtx>. 552, 633, 681

- [53] Johannes L. BRAAMS, Juan M. AGUIRREGABIRIA, Julio SANCHEZ, and Zunbeltz IZAOLA. *Basque support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:lg.ehu.es>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/basque.dtx>. 472, 630, 633, 658, 681, 682, 684, 690
- [54] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Einar ÁRNASON. *Icelandic support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:einar@lif.hi.is>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/icelandic.dtx>. 508, 631, 633, 681
- [55] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Gonçal BADENES. *Catalan language support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:badenes@imec.be>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/catalan.dtx>. 480, 632, 633, 681
- [56] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Claudio BECCARI. *Latin support from the babel system*, November 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:claudio.beccari@polito.it>, with help from Krzysztof Konrad ŻELECHOWSKI, (<mailto:kkz@alfa.mimuw.edu.pl>). Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/latin.dtx>. 514, 515, 516, 632, 633, 681, 685, 698
- [57] Johannes L. BRAAMS, Árpád BÍRÓ, and József BÉRCES. *Magyar support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, with help from Attila KOPPANYI (<mailto:attila@cernvm.cern.ch>). Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/magyar.dtx>. 520, 521, 632, 633, 659, 681, 683
- [58] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Georgi N. BOSHPANOV. *Bulgarian language support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:georgi.boshnakov@umist.ac.uk>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/bulgarian.dtx>. 477, 633, 681
- [59] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Mustafa BURC. *Turkish support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:rz6001@rziris01.rz.uni-hamburg.de>, with help from Pierre A. MACKEY and Turgut UYAR (<mailto:uyar@cs.itu.edu.tr>). Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/turkish.dtx>. 548, 633, 664, 681, 683, 685, 696
- [60] Johannes L. BRAAMS, David P. CARLISLE, Alan JEFFREY, Leslie LAMPORT, Frank MITTELBACH, Chris A. ROWLEY, and Rainer SCHÖPF. *The L^AT_EX 2_ε Sources*, 2003. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/base>. 633, 659, 660, 668, 681, 683, 684, 689, 690
- [61] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Manuel CARRIBA. *Galician support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:mcarriba@eunetcom.net>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/galician.dtx>. 494, 633, 634, 681

- [62] Johannes L. BRAAMS, Manuel CARRIBA, and Javier A. MÚGICA DE RIVERA. *Estilo galician para o sistema babel*, January 2007. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:mcarriba@eunetcom.net>, <mailto:jmugica@digi21.net>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/language/dalician/galician.pdf>. 494, 633, 634, 675, 681, 684
- [63] Johannes L. BRAAMS, Jana CHLEBÍKOVÁ, and Tobias SCHLEMMER. *Slovak support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:chlebikj@mff.uniba.cs>, <mailto:Tobias.Schlemmer@web.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/slovak.dtx>. 543, 633, 634, 681, 684, 690
- [64] Johannes L. BRAAMS, Maurizio CODOGNO, and Claudio BECCARI. *Italian support from the babel system*, November 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:mau@beatles.cselt.stet.it>, <mailto:beccari@polito.it>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/italian.dtx>. 510, 632, 633, 635, 681
- [65] Johannes L. BRAAMS, Victor EIJKHOUT, and Nico POPPELIER. *The development of national L^AT_EX styles*. *TUGboat*, 10(3):401–406, November 1989. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb10-3/tb25braams.pdf>. 465, 632, 633, 645, 678, 681, 682, 684, 687
- [66] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Daniel FLIPO. *French support from the babel system*, February 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:Daniel.Flipo@univ-lille1.fr>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/frenchb.dtx>. 492, 493, 633, 653, 681, 682
- [67] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Fraser GRANT. *Scottish support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:fraser@cernvm>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/scottish.dtx>. 541, 633, 654, 681, 682
- [68] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Sten HELLMAN. *Swedish support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:hellman@cernvm.cern.ch>; enhancements for version 2.0 by Erik ÖSTHOLS (erik_osthols@yahoo.com). Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/swedish.dtx>. 546, 633, 655, 678, 681, 682, 684
- [69] Johannes L. BRAAMS, Umstatter HORST, and Robert JUHASZ. *Romanian support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:hhu@cernvm.cern.ch>, <mailto:robertj@uni-paderborn.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/romanian.dtx>. 533, 633, 655, 659, 681, 682, 683
- [70] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Regnor JERNSLETEN. *North Sami support from the babel system*, February 2004. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:Regnor.Jernsletten@sami.uit.no> or <mailto:Regnor.Jernsletten@eunet.no>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/samin.dtx>. 541, 633, 659, 681, 683

- [71] Johannes L. BRAAMS, Mikko KANERVA, and Keranen REINO. *Finnish support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:kanerva@cernvm>, <mailto:keranen@cernvm>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/finnish.dtx>. 490, 491, 633, 659, 681, 683, 684, 688
- [72] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Peter KLEIWEG. *Interlingua support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:kleiweg@let.rug.nl>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/interlingua.dtx>. 509, 633, 659, 681, 683
- [73] Johannes L. BRAAMS, Jörg KNAPPEN, and Terry MART. *Bahasa Indonesia support from the babel system*, November 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:joerg.knappen@alpha.ntp.springer.de>, <mailto:mart@vkpmzd.kph.uni-mainz.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/bahasa.dtx>. 471, 633, 659, 664, 681, 683
- [74] Johannes L. BRAAMS, Jörg KNAPPEN, Terry MART, and Bob MARGOLIS. *Bahasa Malaysia support from the babel system*, November 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:joerg.knappen@alpha.ntp.springer.de>, <mailto:mart@vkpmzd.kph.uni-mainz.de>, <mailto:bob.margolis@ntlworld.com>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/bahasam.dtx>. 471, 633, 659, 664, 681, 683
- [75] Johannes L. BRAAMS, Olga G. LAPKO, Vladimir VOLOVICH, and Werner LEMBERG. *Russian support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:cyrtug@mir.msk.su>, <mailto:TeX@vvv.vsu.ru> et <mailto:wl@gnu.org>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/russianb.dtx>. 477, 537, 633, 662, 681, 683, 685, 697
- [76] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Henning LARSEN. *Danish language support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:larsen@cernvm.cern.ch>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/danish.dtx>. 483, 633, 662, 681, 683
- [77] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Boris LAVVA. *Hebrew language support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/hebrew.dtx>. 506, 633, 662, 681, 683
- [78] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Miloš V. LOKAJČEK. *Czech language support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:lokajick@cernvm>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/czech.dtx>. 482, 633, 663, 681, 683
- [79] Johannes L. BRAAMS, Dejan MUHAMEDAGIĆ, and Jankovic SLOBODAN. *Serbocroatian support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:dejan@yunix.com>, <mailto:slobodan@archimed.filfak.ac.ni.yu>. Available

- from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/serbian.dtx>.
542, 633, 675, 681, 684, 691
- [80] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Alan PAIĆ. *Croatian language support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:paica@cernvm.cern.ch>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/croatian.dtx>. 482, 633, 680, 681, 684
- [81] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Bernd RAICHLE. *German support from the babel system*, February 2004. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:raichle@azu.Informatik.Uni-Stuttgart.de>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/germanb.dtx>. 496, 633, 681, 684, 688
- [82] Johannes L. BRAAMS, Bernd RAICHLE, and Walter SCHMIDT. *New German support from the babel system*, February 2004. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:raichle@azu.Informatik.Uni-Stuttgart.de>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/ngermanb.dtx>. 527, 528, 633, 681, 684, 688, 690
- [83] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Jose Pedro RAMALHETE. *Portuguese support from the babel system*, March 2005. Arnaldo Viegas DE LIMA contributed brasilian translations and suggestions for enhancements. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:jramalhe@cernvm>, mailto:Jose-Pedro_Ramalhete@macmail, arnaldo@vnet.ibm.com. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/portuges.dtx>. 475, 532, 633, 643, 681, 684, 688
- [84] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Christian ROLLAND. *Breton language support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:Christian.Rolland@univ-brest.fr>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/breton.dtx>. 476, 633, 681, 684, 689
- [85] Johannes L. BRAAMS, Marti RUIZ-ALTABA, and Jörg KNAPPEN. *Esperanto support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:ruizaltb@cernvm.cern.ch>, <mailto:knappen@vkpmzd.kph.uni-mainz.de>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/esperanto.dtx>. 486, 633, 659, 681, 683, 684, 689
- [86] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Enn SAAR. *Estonian support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:saar@aai.ee>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/estonian.dtx>. 487, 633, 681, 684, 689
- [87] Johannes L. BRAAMS, Elmar SCHALÜCK, and Michael JANICH. *Polish support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:elmar@uni-paderborn.de>, <mailto:massa@uni-paderborn.de>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/polish.dtx>. 530, 633, 658, 681, 683, 684, 690

- [88] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Andrij SHVAIKA. *Ukrainian support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:ashv@icmp.lviv.ua>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/ukraineb.dtx>. 550, 633, 681, 684, 691
- [89] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Apostolos SYROPOULOS. *Greek support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:apostolo@platon.ee.duth.gr> or <mailto:apostolo@obelix.ee.duth.gr>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/greek.dtx>. 497, 633, 681, 685, 694
- [90] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Eduard WERNER. *Lower Sorbian support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:edi@kaihh.hanse.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/lisorbian.dtx>. 519, 633, 681, 685, 698
- [91] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Eduard WERNER. *Upper Sorbian support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:edi@kaihh.hanse.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/usorbian.dtx>. 550, 633, 681, 685, 698
- [92] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Adi ZAIMI. *Albanian support from the babel system*, November 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:zami1st@yahoo.com>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/albabian.dtx>. 467, 633, 681, 685, 698
- [93] Johannes L. BRAAMS, Danilo ZAVRTANIK, and Leon ŽLAJPAH. *Slovene support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:leon.zlajpah@ijs.si>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/slovene.dtx>. 544, 633, 681, 685, 698
- [94] Felix BRAUN. *Die Documentklasse jura*, July 1998. <mailto:fbraun@atdot.org>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/jura/>. 87, 210, 222, 410, 631, 633, 635, 659, 678, 681
- [95] Jim BREEN. *Jim BREEN's Japanese Page* [online], September 2006. Available from: <http://www.csse.monash.edu.au/~jwb/japanese.html>. <mailto:jwb@csse.monash.edu.au>. 633, 681
- [96] Peter BREITENLOHNER. *The ϵ -T_EX manual (version 2)*. The \mathcal{N} -S Team, Max-Planck-Institut für Physik, München, February 1998. Available from: http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/systems/e-tex/v2/doc/etex_man.pdf. 215, 218, 234, 269, 633, 646, 679, 681
- [97] Gyöngyi BUJDOSÓ and Ferenc WETTL. *On the localization of T_EX in Hungary*. *TUGboat*, 23(1):21–26, March 2002. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb23-1/bujdoswettl.pdf>. 567, 633, 681, 685, 698

- [98] Gyöngyi BUJDOSÓ and Ferenc WETTL. *Adapter T_EX à la langue hongroise*. *Cahiers GUTenberg*, 44:3–15, November 2004. French translation of [97] by Jean-Michel HUFFLEN. Available from: <http://www.gutenberg.eu.org/pub/GUTenberg/publicationsPDF/42-hufflen.pdf>. 633, 681, 685, 698
- [99] Samuele CARCAGNO. *My L_AT_EX Notes, The Messy Notes of a L_AT_EX User*. Available from: http://xoomer.alice.it/sam_psy/soft/my_latex_notes.pdf. 633, 681
- [100] David CARELLA. *Règles typographiques et normes: Mise en pratique avec L_AT_EX*. Vuibert, Paris, January 2006. 633, 681
- [101] David P. CARLISLE. *The xr package*, May 1994. <mailto:carlisle@cs.man.ac.uk>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/required/tools/xr.pdf>. 27, 242, 313, 633, 680, 681, 698
- [102] David P. CARLISLE. *The afterpage package*, October 1995. <mailto:carlisle@cs.man.ac.uk>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/required/tools/afterpage.pdf>. 210, 609, 630, 633, 678, 681
- [103] David P. CARLISLE. *The file ltxdoc.dtx for use with L_AT_EX 2_ε*, August 1999. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/base/ltxdoc.dtx>. 25, 215, 225, 633, 635, 664, 681
- [104] David P. CARLISLE. *The xr-hyper package*, March 2000. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/hyperref/xr-hyper.sty>. 242, 633, 680, 681, 698
- [105] David P. CARLISLE. *The ifthen package*, May 2001. <mailto:carlisle@cs.man.ac.uk>. Available from: <http://www.ifi.uio.no/it/latex-links/ifthen.pdf>. 222, 633, 681
- [106] David P. CARLISLE. *The textcase package*, October 2004. <mailto:carlisle@cs.man.ac.uk>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/textcase/textcase.pdf>. 633, 679, 681, 694
- [107] David P. CARLISLE. *The color package*, November 2005. <mailto:carlisle@cs.man.ac.uk>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/required/graphics/color.dtx>. 117, 633, 635, 679, 681
- [108] David P. CARLISLE and Sebastian RAHTZ. *Back referencing from bibliographical citations*, October 2006. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/hyperref/backref.pdf>. 632, 633, 678, 681, 684, 688
- [109] Winston CHANG. *L_AT_EX 2_ε Cheat Sheet*, October 2006. Available from: <http://www.stdout.org/~winston/latex/latexsheet.pdf>. 634, 681
- [110] Jean-Pascal CHAUVET. *About Kanji* [online], June 1999. Available from: <http://www2.gol.com/users/jpc/Japan/Kanji/>. <mailto:jpc@gol.com>. 634, 681
- [111] Pehong CHEN and Michael A. HARRISON. *Index preparation and processing*. *Software – Practice and Experience*, 19(9):897–915, 1988. 634, 654, 681, 682

- [112] Otfried CHEONG. *Using TrueType Fonts in Pdf \TeX* [online], September 2005. Available from: <http://ipe.comp.geom.org/pdftex.html>. <mailto:otfried@tclab.kaist.ac.kr>. 634, 681
- [113] Pai H. CHOU. *How to make \TeX (te \TeX) handle unicode and CJK in MacOSX* [online], December 2004. Available from: <http://www.ece.uci.edu/~chou/unicode-tex.html>. <mailto:chou@ece.uci.edu>. 217, 634, 678, 681
- [114] Steven Douglas COCHRAN. *The subfigure package*, March 1995. <mailto:sds@cs.cmu.edu>, <mailto:cochran@ieee.org>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/obsolete/macros/latex/contrib/subfigure/subfigure.pdf>. 33, 87, 143, 230, 239, 635, 679, 681, 693
- [115] Steven Douglas COCHRAN. *The captcont package*, February 2002. <mailto:sds@cs.cmu.edu>, <mailto:cochran@ieee.org>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/captcont/>. 53, 75, 87, 212, 254, 277, 633, 635, 678, 681
- [116] Steven Douglas COCHRAN. *The subfig Package*, January 2004. <mailto:sds@cs.cmu.edu>, <mailto:cochran@ieee.org>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/subfig/subfig.pdf>. 33, 87, 150, 212, 230, 239, 392, 635, 679, 681, 693
- [117] Oliver CORFF. *Mon \TeX – A Quick Guide* (draft), July 2002. <mailto:corff@zedat.fu-berlin.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/language/mongolian/montex/doc/mlsquick.pdf>. 43, 207, 227, 465, 473, 474, 475, 478, 479, 524, 538, 553, 554, 642, 669, 679, 681
- [118] Oliver CORFF. *Some Notes on the Pentaglot Dictionary* [online], April 2002. Available from: <http://userpage.fu-berlin.de/~corff/im/Buch.Pentaglot.html>. <mailto:corff@zedat.fu-berlin.de>. 228, 642, 681
- [119] Oliver CORFF. *Infosystem Mongolei* [online], July 2004. Available from: <http://userpage.fu-berlin.de/~corff/infomong.html>. An Internet-based Journal on Mongolian Affairs. 227, 642, 681
- [120] Oliver CORFF and Dorjpalam DORJ. *Mon \TeX – Mongolian for \TeX 2 ϵ , Implementation Level System Documentation*, July 2002. <mailto:corff@zedat.fu-berlin.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/language/mongolian/montex/doc/montex.pdf>. 43, 207, 227, 465, 473, 474, 475, 478, 479, 524, 538, 553, 554, 642, 645, 669, 679, 681, 682
- [121] Sergueï DACHIAN, Arnak DALALYAN, and Vartan AKOPIAN. *Arm \TeX : a System for Writing in Armenian with \TeX and \TeX (written in armenian)*, June 1999. <mailto:Serguei.Dachian@univ-lemans.fr>, <http://www.scf.usc.edu/~vakopian/programs/progs.html>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/language/armtex/v2.0/manual.ps>. 43, 211, 465, 469, 596, 631, 643, 678, 681
- [122] Patrick W. DALY. *Graphics and Colour with \TeX* , June 1998. D-37191 Katlenburg-Lindnau, Federal Republic of Germany. Available from: <http://tex.loria.fr/graph-pack/grf/grf.pdf>. 643, 681

- [123] Patrick W. DALY. *A package to Set Margins to Full Page*, February 1999. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/preprint/fullpage.pdf>. 140, 141, 150, 643, 653, 679, 681
- [124] Patrick W. DALY. *Natural Sciences Citations and References (Author-Year and Numerical Schemes)*, February 2007. This paper describes the natbib package (version 8.0), <mailto:daly@mps.mpg.de>. Available from: <http://ftp.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/natbib/natbib.pdf>. 212, 231, 622, 643, 676, 679, 681
- [125] Patrick W. DALY. *Reference sheet for natbib package*, February 2007. <mailto:daly@mps.mpg.de>. Available from: <http://ftp.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/natbib/natnotes.pdf>. 212, 231, 622, 643, 676, 679, 681
- [126] Bernard DESGRAUPES. *METAFONT, Guide pratique*. Vuibert, Paris, March 1999. 215, 644, 682
- [127] Bernard DESGRAUPES. *L^AT_EX, Apprentissage, guide et référence*. Vuibert, Paris, second edition, March 2003. 644, 682
- [128] Bernard DESGRAUPES. *Passeport pour Unicode*. Vuibert, Paris, April 2005. 217, 644, 682
- [129] Antoni R. DILLER. *L^AT_EX, Line by Line (Tips and Techniques for Document Processing)*. John Wiley & Sons, Chicester, second edition, January 1993. <mailto:A.R.Diller@cs.bham.ac.uk>. Available from: <http://www.cs.bham.ac.uk/~ard/latex/latex.html>. 644, 682
- [130] Jean-Pierre F. DRUCBERT. *The shorttoc package*, August 2002. <mailto:jean-pierre.drucbert@onera.fr>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/shorttoc/shorttoc.dtx>. 20, 99, 238, 592, 645, 679, 682, 691
- [131] Jean-Pierre F. DRUCBERT. *Le paquetage minitoc*, June 2007. <mailto:jean-pierre.drucbert@onera.fr>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/minitoc/fminitoc.pdf>. 99, 443, 645, 667, 679, 682
- [132] Jean-Pierre F. DRUCBERT. *The minitoc package*, June 2007. <mailto:jean-pierre.drucbert@onera.fr>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/minitoc/minitoc.pdf>. 99, 443, 588, 625, 645, 667, 679, 682
- [133] Victor EIJKHOUT. *T_EX by Topic: A T_EXnician's Reference*. Addison-Wesley, Wokingham (England), 1992. <mailto:victor@eijkhout.net>. Available from: <http://www.cs.utk.edu/~eijkhout/texbytopic-a4.pdf>. 645, 682
- [134] Victor EIJKHOUT. *The comment package*, October 1999. <mailto:victor@eijkhout.net>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/comment/>. 642, 645, 679, 682

- [135] Victor EIJKHOUT and Johannes L. BRAAMS. *Introduction to the Dutch \LaTeX document classes*, February 1994. Available from: <http://http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/ntgclass/classdoc.pdf>. 633, 645, 681, 682
- [136] Behdad ESFAHBOD and Roozbeh POURNADER. *Farsi \LaTeX and the Iranian \LaTeX Community*. *TUGboat*, 22(3):41–44, 2003. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb23-1/farsitex.pdf>. 43, 219, 465, 489, 646, 648, 653, 679, 682, 684, 687
- [137] Mike FABIAN. *CJK Support in SuSe Linux*, March 2005. Available from: <http://www.suse.de/~mfabian/suse-cjk.pdf>. 634, 648, 678, 682
- [138] Robin FAIRBAIRNS. *The UK \LaTeX FAQ. Your 396 Questions Answered*, November 2005. Version 3.15a. Available from: <ftp://cam.ctan.org/tex-archive/help/uk-tex-faq/newfaq.pdf>. 648, 682
- [139] Simon FEAR. *Publication quality tables in \LaTeX (with the booktabs package)*, March 2003. In the absence of the author, contact Danie ELS, <mailto:dnjels@sun.ac.za>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/booktabs/booktabs.pdf>. 21, 212, 633, 645, 648, 678, 682
- [140] Jürgen FENN. *Managing Citations and Your Bibliography with Bib \LaTeX* . *The Prac \LaTeX Journal*, 2(4), October 2006. Available from: <http://tug.org/pracjourn/2006-4/fenn/fenn.pdf>. 649, 682
- [141] Michael J. FERGUSON. *Report on multilingual activities*. *TUGboat*, 11(4):514–516, November 1990. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb11-4/tb30ferguson.pdf>. 649, 682
- [142] Peter FLOM. *\LaTeX for academics and researchers who (think they) don't need it*. *The Prac \LaTeX Journal*, 1(4), November 2005. <mailto:flom@ndri.org> and <http://cduhr.ndri.org>. Available from: <http://tug.org/pracjourn/2005-4/flom/flom.pdf>. 653, 682
- [143] Peter FLOM, Hans HAGEN, Joe HOGG, Nicola L. C. TALBOT, Philip TAYLOR, Christina THIELE, and David WALDEN. *What is \LaTeX ?* *The Prac \LaTeX Journal*, 1(3), July 2005. <mailto:nlct@cmp.uea.ac.uk> and <mailto:dave@walden-family.com>. Available from: <http://tug.org/pracjourn/2005-3/walden-what/what/all.pdf>. 653, 654, 655, 682, 685, 694, 695, 698
- [144] Peter L. FLOM. *A \LaTeX Fledgling Struggles to Take Flight*. *The Prac \LaTeX Journal*, 1(2), April 2005. <mailto:flom@ndri.org> and <http://cduhr.ndri.org>. Available from: <http://tug.org/pracjourn/2005-2/flom/flom.pdf>. 653, 682
- [145] Peter FLYNN. *A categorized search of CTAN*. *The Prac \LaTeX Journal*, 1(3), July 2005. Available from: <http://tug.org/pracjourn/2005-3/flynn/flynn.pdf>. 653, 682
- [146] Peter FLYNN. *Formatting information. A beginner's introduction to typesetting with \LaTeX* , March 2005. <mailto:peter.silmaril.ie>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/tex/info/beginlatex/beginlatex-3.6.pdf>. 653, 682

- [147] Peter FLYNN. *Rolling your own Document Class: Using \LaTeX to keep away from the Dark Side*. *The Prac \TeX Journal*, 2(4), October 2006. Available from: <http://tug.org/pracjourn/2006-4/flynn/flynn.pdf>. 653, 682
- [148] Peter FLYNN. *The very short guide to typesetting with \LaTeX* , April 2007. Available from: <http://latex.silmaril.ie/veryshortguide/veryshortguide.pdf>. 653, 682
- [149] Federico GARCIA. *Capabilities of PDF interactivity*. *The Prac \TeX Journal*, 2(4), November 2006. Available from: <http://tug.org/pracjourn/2006-4/garcia1/garcia1.pdf>. 653, 682
- [150] Hubert GÄSSLEIN and Rolf NIEPRASCHK. *The pict2e package*, August 2004. <mailto:HubertJG@open.min.de>, <mailto:Rolf.Niepraschk@ptb.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/pict2e/pict2e.pdf>. 57, 653, 676, 679, 682, 684, 685
- [151] Maarten GELDERMAN. *A short introduction to font characteristics*. *TUGboat*, 20(2):96–104, June 1999. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb20-2/tb63geld.pdf>. 653, 682
- [152] Chuck GENSCHTE and John WARNOCK. *PDF Reference*, November 2004. Available from: <http://partners.adobe.com/public/developer/en/pdf/PDFReference16.pdf>. 236, 653, 682, 685, 698
- [153] Helen GILHOOLY and Rozenn ETIENNE. *Lire et écrire le japonais*. In Cécile DESPRAIRIES, editor, *Langues orientales*. Larousse, Paris, March 2006. 644, 646, 653, 682
- [154] Michel GOOSSENS, Frank MITTELBACH, Sebastian RAHTZ, Denis B. ROEGEL, and Herbert VOSS. *The \LaTeX Graphics Companion*. Tools and Techniques for Computer Typesetting. Addison-Wesley Professional, Reading, Massachusetts, second edition, August 2007. 654, 668, 682, 684, 685, 688, 689, 697
- [155] Michel GOOSSENS, Sebastian RAHTZ, Eitan M. GURARI, ROSS MOORE, and Robert S. SUTOR. *The \LaTeX Web Companion: Integrating \TeX , HTML, and XML*. Tools and Techniques for Computer Typesetting. Addison-Wesley, Reading, Massachusetts, June 1999. 654, 669, 682, 684, 685, 688, 694
- [156] George GRÄTZER. *First Steps into \LaTeX* . Birkhäuser, Boston, August 1999. 654, 682
- [157] George GRÄTZER. *Math into \LaTeX* . Birkhäuser and Springer-Verlag, Boston, third edition, 2000. 654, 682
- [158] Norman GRAY. *The urlbst package*, March 2007. <http://purl.org/nxg/dist/urlbst> and <http://www.astro.gla.ac.uk/users/norman/>. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/urlbst/urlbst.pdf>. 217, 220, 241, 254, 612, 654, 682, 695, 696
- [159] George D. GREENWADE. *The Comprehensive \TeX Archive Network (CTAN)*. *TUGboat*, 14(3):342–351, October 1993. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb14-3/tb40green.pdf>. 654, 682
- [160] Enrico GREGORIO. *Babel, how to enjoy writing in different languages*. *The Prac \TeX Journal*, 1, February 2007. <mailto:Enrico.Gregorio@sci.univr.it>. Available from: <http://tug.org/pracjourn/2007-1/gregorio/gregorio.pdf>. 654, 669, 682, 684

- [161] Hans HAGEN. *Aleph* 8, July 2004. Available from:
<http://www.pragma-ade.com/general/manuals/aleph.pdf>. 234, 631, 654, 678, 682
- [162] Hans HAGEN. *Typographic Programming*, 2004. Version préliminaire. Available from:
<http://www.pragma-ade.com/general/manuals/style.pdf>. 654, 682
- [163] Thế Thành HÀN. *The pdfTeX Program*. In *EuroTeX'98 Proceedings*, volume 28-29 of *Cahiers GUTenberg*, pages 197–219, March 1998. Available from:
<http://www.gutenberg.eu.org/pub/GUTenberg/publicationsPDF/28-29-han.pdf>. 216, 654, 682
- [164] Thế Thành HÀN. *Micro-typographic extensions to the TeX typesetting system*. *TUGboat*, 21(4):317–434, October 2000. Doctoral dissertation (Faculty of Informatics, Masarik University, Brno, Czech Republic). Available from:
<http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb21-4/tb69thanh.pdf>. 654, 682
- [165] Thế Thành HÀN, Sebastian RAHTZ, Hans HAGEN, Hartmut HENKEL, and Paweł JACKOWSKI. *The pdfTeX user manual*, February 2006. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/systems/pdftex/manual/pdftex-a.pdf>. 654, 682, 684, 688
- [166] Thorsten HANSEN. *The bibunits package*, May 2004.
<mailto:thorsten.hansen@psychol.uni-giessen.de>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/bibunits/bibunits.pdf>. 59, 212, 230, 632, 654, 678, 682
- [167] Thorsten HANSEN. *The multibib package*, January 2004.
<mailto:thorsten.hansen@psychol.uni-giessen.de>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/multibib/multibib.pdf>. 59, 230, 654, 675, 679, 682
- [168] Patrick HAPPEL. *The lipsum package*, January 2005. <mailto:patrick.happel@rub.de>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/lipsum/lipsum.pdf>. 89, 93, 224, 615, 654, 663, 679, 682
- [169] Yannis HARALAMBOUS. *Arabic, Persian and Ottoman TeX for Mac and PC*. *TUGboat*, 11(4):520–524, November 1990. Available from:
<http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb11-4/tb30hara.pdf>. 654, 682
- [170] Yannis HARALAMBOUS. *Fontes et codages*. O'Reilly France, April 2004.
<mailto:xavier@editions-oreilly.fr>. Available from:
<http://www.oreilly.fr/catalogue/284177273X.desc.html>. 501, 503, 504, 654, 682
- [171] Yannis HARALAMBOUS. *Voyage au centre de TeX: composition, paragraphage, césure*. *Cahiers GUTenberg*, 44:75–125, November 2004. Available from: <http://www.gutenberg.eu.org/pub/GUTenberg/publicationsPDF/44-haralambous.pdf>. 654, 682
- [172] Yannis HARALAMBOUS and John PLAICE. *First applications of Ω: Greek, Arabic, Khmer, Poetica, ISO 10646/Unicode, etc*. *TUGboat*, 15(3):344–352, 1994. 234, 654, 682, 684, 685

- [173] Yannis HARALAMBOUS and John PLAICE. Ω , a \TeX extension including Unicode and featuring lex-like filtering processes. In Wlodek BZYL and Tomasz PLATA-PRZECHELEWSKI, editors, *Proceedings of the European \TeX Conference*, pages 153–166, Gdańsk, Poland, 1994. GUST. 234, 573, 654, 682, 684, 685
- [174] Yannis HARALAMBOUS and John PLAICE. *The Design and Use of a Multiple-Alphabet Font with Omega*. MAPS, 27:27–37, 2000. Available from: http://www.ntg.nl/maps/pdf/24_7.pdf. 654, 682, 684, 685
- [175] Yannis HARALAMBOUS and John PLAICE. *Traitement automatique des langues et compositions sous Omega*. Cahiers GUTenberg, 39-40:139–166, May 2001. Available from: <http://www.gutenberg.eu.org/publications/cahiers/r25-cahiers39-40/131-yannis.html>. 654, 682, 684, 685
- [176] Yannis HARALAMBOUS, John PLAICE, and Éric PICHERAL. Ω , une extension de \TeX incluant UNICODE et des filtres de type lex. Cahiers GUTenberg, 20:55–80, June 1995. French translation of [173]. Available from: <http://www.gutenberg.eu.org/pub/GUTenberg/publicationsPS/20-yannis.ps.gz>. 234, 654, 682, 684, 685
- [177] Alexander HARIN, Vadim V. ZHYTNIKOV, and Vadim MASLOV. *The cmcyralt.sty file*, December 1994. Available from: <ftp://ftp.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/cmcyralt/cmcyralt.sty>. 539, 635, 654, 664, 679, 682, 683, 685, 698
- [178] Stephen HARTKE. *A Survey of Free Math Fonts for \TeX and \LaTeX* . The Prac \TeX Journal, 2(1), February 2006. Available from: <http://tug.org/pracjourn/2006-1/hartke/hartke.pdf>. 654, 682
- [179] Jim HEFFERON. *CTAN for Starters*. The Prac \TeX Journal, 1(1), January 2005. <mailto:ftpmaint@tug.ctan.org>. Available from: <http://tug.org/pracjourn/2005-1/hefferon/hefferon.pdf>.
- [180] Jim HEFFERON. *Minutes in Less Than Hours: Using \LaTeX Resources*. The Prac \TeX Journal, 1(4), October 2005. <mailto:ftpmaint@tug.ctan.org>. Available from: <http://tug.org/pracjourn/2005-4/hefferon/hefferon.pdf>. 655, 682
- [181] Jim HEFFERON. *What I Wish I Had . . . When I Was A Lad — Using \LaTeX resources*. The Prac \TeX Journal, 2(4), November 2006. <mailto:ftpmaint@tug.ctan.org>. Available from: <http://tug.org/pracjourn/2006-4/hefferon/hefferon.pdf>. 655, 682
- [182] Thomas HENLICH. *The Marvosym Font Package*, May 2006. The font was designed by Martin VOGEL, <http://marvosym.de>, <mailto:thomas@henloch.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/fonts/psfonts/marvodoc.pdf>. 227, 655, 664, 679, 682, 685, 697
- [183] Stephan HENNIG. *The mcaption package*, September 2005. <mailto:stephanhennig@arcor.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/mcaption/mcaption.pdf>. 53, 71, 87, 225, 278, 655, 664, 679, 682

- [184] Taco HOEKWATER, Hartmut HENKEL, and Hans HAGEN. *LUA_TE_X Reference*, March 2007. <http://www.luatex.org/>. Available from: <http://context.aanhet.net/svn/luatex/luatexref-t.pdf>. 234, 654, 655, 664, 679, 682
- [185] Alan HOENIG. *T_EX Unbound*. Oxford University Press, Oxford New York, 1998. L^AT_EX & T_EX Strategies for Fonts, Graphics , & More. 655, 682
- [186] Klaus HÖPPNER. *Strategies for including graphics in L^AT_EX documents*. *The PracT_EX Journal*, 1(3), July 2005. Available from: <http://tug.org/pracjourn/2005-3/hoeppner/hoeppner.pdf>. 655, 682
- [187] Don HOSEK. *The morefloats package*, July 1990. <mailto:dhosek@ymir.claremont.edu>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/misc/morefloats.sty>. 655, 669, 679, 682
- [188] Jean-Michel HUFFLEN. *Typographie: les conventions, la tradition, les goûts, . . . , et L^AT_EX*. In *Congrès GUTenberg 2000, Toulouse*, volume 35-36 of *Cahiers GUTenberg*, pages 169–214, may 2000. Available from: <http://www.gutenberg.eu.org/pub/GUTenberg/publicationsPDF/35-hufflen.pdf>. 655, 682
- [189] Hiroya IKEDA. *pL^AT_EX 2_ε*, September 2001. In japanese, <mailto:ike@kobitosan.net>. Available from: <http://www.kobitosan.net/ike/latex/handhtml/index.html>. 236, 658, 679, 682, 685
- [190] Tetsuo IWAKUMA and Tetsuo FURUKAWA. *A Guide to use Macros and Style Files in L^AT_EX*⁴⁶, August 1994. <mailto:bear@hashi1.civil.tohoku.ac.jp> and furakawa@hagi.ces.kyutech.ac.jp. Available from: http://www.moire.usherbrooke.ca/Intranet/Doc/LATEX_HOWTO/styleuse.pdf. 653, 658, 682
- [191] Youssef JABRI. *Typesetting Arabic and Farsi with the Arabi package. The Users Guide*, February 2006. <mailto:yjabri@ensa.univ-oujda.ac.ma>, École des sciences appliquées, Boîte 696, Oujda, Maroc. Available from: http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/language/arabic/arabi/doc/latex/arabi/user_guide.pdf. 38, 43, 210, 469, 490, 617, 631, 658, 678, 682
- [192] Paweł JACKOWSKI. *T_EX beauties and oddities* [online], 2007. Available from: <http://www.pawcoo.com/>. 658, 683
- [193] Alan JEFFREY. *PostScript font support in L^AT_EX 2_ε*. *TUGboat*, 15(3):263–268, September 1994. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb15-3/tb44jeff.pdf>. 659, 683, 684, 689
- [194] Alan JEFFREY and L^AT_EX3 PROJECT TEAM. *The file ltnews.dtx for use with L^AT_EX 2_ε*, July 2001. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/doc/ltnews.cls>. 25, 215, 225, 635, 659, 662, 664, 683

⁴⁶This document is somewhat obsolete.

- [195] Zhuhan JIANG. *The vruler package*, October 1996.
<mailto:zhuhan@neumann.une.edu.au>, and look at
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/help/Catalogue/entries/vruler.html>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/misc/vruler.sty>. 659, 680, 683,
 697
- [196] David M. JONES. *The hangcaption package*, August 1992.
<mailto:dmjones@theory.lcs.mit.edu>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex209/contrib/misc/hangcaption.sty>. 52,
 78, 87, 221, 255, 276, 654, 659, 679, 683
- [197] Akira KAKUTO. *W32T_EX* [online], March 2007. Available from:
<http://www.fsci.fuk.kindai.ac.jp/kakuto/win32-ptex/web2c75-e.html>.
<mailto:kakuto@fuk.kindai.ac.jp>. 236, 659, 679, 683, 685
- [198] Ki-Joo KIM. *A BibT_EX Guide via Examples*, April 2004.
<mailto:kijoo2000@yahoo.com>. Available from:
http://www.geocities.com/bibtex_guide.pdf. 659, 683
- [199] Ki-Joo KIM. *How to Create PDF from E_T_X*, April 2004.
<mailto:kijoo2000@yahoo.com>. Available from:
<http://www.geocities.com/latex2pdf.pdf>. 659, 683
- [200] Ki-Joo KIM. *E_T_X Fonts*, November 2005. <mailto:kijoo2000@yahoo.com>. Available
 from: http://www.geocities.com/latex_fonts.pdf. 659, 683
- [201] Ingo KLÖCKL. *E_T_X – Tipps und Tricks*. Dpunkt. Verlag GmbH, Ringstraße 19,
 69115 Heidelberg, <mailto:i.kloeckl@2k-software.de>, January 2002. 659, 683
- [202] Donald E. KNUTH. *Computer Modern Typefaces*, volume E of *Computers and
 Typesetting*. Addison-Wesley, Reading, Massachusetts, 1986. 35, 215, 659, 683
- [203] Donald E. KNUTH. *The T_EXbook*, volume A of *Computers and Typesetting*.
 Addison-Wesley, Reading, Massachusetts, 16th edition, 1989. Revised to cover T_EX3,
 1991. 213, 223, 239, 240, 575, 659, 683
- [204] Donald E. KNUTH. *The METAFONTbook*, volume C of *Computers and Typesetting*.
 Addison-Wesley, Reading, Massachusetts, 1993. With the final corrections of 1993.
 215, 659, 683
- [205] Donald E. KNUTH. *Le T_EXbook, Composition informatique*. Vuibert, Paris, 2003.
 French translation of [203], by Jean-Côme CHARPENTIER. 213, 223, 239, 240, 634, 659,
 681, 683
- [206] Un KOAUNGH. *H_ET_EX: a E_T_X package for the Korean language support*, April 2005.
 In korean. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/language/korean/HLaTeX/hlguide.pdf>. 207, 221,
 465, 503, 504, 655, 659, 679, 683
- [207] Markus KOHM and Jens-Uwe MORAWSKI. *KOMA-Script, ein wandelbares
 E_T_X 2_ε-Paket*, July 2006. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/koma-script/scrguide.pdf>. 40,
 49, 61, 74, 87, 145, 164, 207, 212, 223, 230, 238, 253, 254, 411, 610, 635, 659, 669,
 683, 684, 690

- [208] Helmut KOPKA and Patrick W. DALY. *Guide to \LaTeX* . Tools and Techniques for Computer Typesetting. Addison Wesley, Reading, Massachusetts, fourth edition, February 2004. 235, 643, 659, 681, 683
- [209] Siep KROONENBERG. *NFSS: using font families in \LaTeX 2 ϵ* . *MAPS*, 11:52–54, 1999. <mailto:siepo@cybercomm.nl>. Available from: http://www.ntg.nl/maps/pdf/22_13.pdf. 660, 683
- [210] Alexej M. KRYUKOV and Dmitry IVANOV. *Typesetting multilingual documents with ANTOMEGA*, September 2003. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/systems/omega/contrib/antomega/doc/omega/antomega/antomega.pdf>. 43, 210, 465, 497, 498, 499, 517, 531, 535, 536, 544, 545, 631, 658, 660, 678, 682, 683
- [211] Markus G. KUHN. *Effective scientific electronic publishing* [online], June 2006. Available from: <http://www.cl.cam.ac.uk/~mgk25/publ-tips.html>. <mailto:mgk25@cl.cam.ac.uk>. 660, 683
- [212] Frank KÜSTER. *alnumsec.sty: Using alphanumeric section numbering with standard sectioning commands*, February 2005. <mailto:frank@kuesterei.ch>, Biozentrum der Univ. Basel, Abt. Biophysikalische Chemie. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/alnumsec/>. 53, 75, 87, 210, 254, 277, 631, 660, 678, 683
- [213] Thomas LACHAND-ROBERT. *La maîtrise de \TeX et \LaTeX* . Masson, Paris, December 1997. 660, 683
- [214] Klaus LAGALLY. *Arab \TeX —Typetting Arabic with vowels and ligatures*. In *Proceedings of the 7th European \TeX Conference*, pages 153–172, Prague, 1992. CsTUG. <mailto:lagallyk@acm.org>. Available from: http://www.ntg.nl/maps/pdf/20_22.pdf. 38, 43, 211, 465, 468, 505, 631, 660, 678, 683
- [215] Klaus LAGALLY. *Arab \TeX Version 3*, October 2003. <mailto:lagallyk@acm.org>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/language/arabtex/doc/html/arabtex.htm>. 38, 43, 211, 465, 468, 505, 631, 660, 678, 683
- [216] Leslie LAMPORT. *MakeIndex, An Index Processor For \LaTeX* , 1987. Technical report, Electronic document in *MakeIndex* distribution. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/indexing/makeindex/doc/makeindex.pdf>. 660, 683
- [217] Leslie LAMPORT. *\LaTeX : A Document Preparation System — User’s Guide and Reference Manual*. Addison-Wesley, Reading, Massachusetts, second edition, June 1994. 57, 223, 660, 683
- [218] Leslie LAMPORT, Victor EIJKHOUT, and Johannes L. BRAAMS. *NTG Document Classes for \LaTeX version 2 ϵ* , June 2004. Available from: <http://http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/ntgclass/ntgclass.pdf>. 633, 645, 660, 681, 682, 683
- [219] Leslie LAMPORT, \LaTeX 3 PROJECT TEAM, and Johannes L. BRAAMS. *Producing proceedings articles with \LaTeX 2 ϵ* , November 1995. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/base/proc.dtx>. 25, 215, 633, 635, 660, 662, 681, 683, 687

- [220] Leslie LAMPORT, Frank MITTELBACH, and Johannes L. BRAAMS. *Standard Document Classes for L^AT_EX version 2e*, September 2005. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/base/classes.dtx>. 25, 58, 70, 207, 211, 212, 215, 237, 631, 633, 634, 635, 660, 668, 681, 683, 684, 689
- [221] Leslie LAMPORT, Frank MITTELBACH, and Rainer SCHÖPF. *Standard Letter Document Class for L^AT_EX version 2e*, April 1999. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/base/letter.dtx>. 59, 215, 224, 633, 635, 660, 663, 668, 681, 683, 684, 690
- [222] Olga G. LAPKO. *Full Cyrillic: How Many Languages?* In Mimi BURBANK and Christina THIELE, editors, *Proceedings of TUG'96*, pages 164–170, Dubna, 1996. JINR. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb17-2/tb51olga.pdf>. 662, 683
- [223] Olga G. LAPKO. *The floatrow package*, July 2005. <mailto:Lapko.O@g23.relcom.ru>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/floatrow/floatrow.pdf>. 30, 53, 87, 166, 219, 256, 271, 278, 623, 653, 662, 679, 683
- [224] Olga G. LAPKO and Irina A. MAKHOVAYA. *The Style russianb for Babel: Problems and solutions*. *TUGboat*, 16(4):364–372, 1995. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb16-4/tb49olga.pdf>. 38, 477, 537, 662, 664, 683
- [225] L^AT_EX3 PROJECT TEAM. *Default docstrip headers*. *TUGboat*, 19(2):137–138, June 1998. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb19-2/tb59ltdocstrip.pdf>. 21, 644, 662, 679, 683
- [226] L^AT_EX3 PROJECT TEAM. *L^AT_EX 2_ε Kernel (Output Routine)*, July 2000. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/base/ltoutput.dtx>. 30, 236, 436, 653, 662, 679, 683
- [227] L^AT_EX3 PROJECT TEAM. *L^AT_EX 2_ε for authors*, July 2001. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/doc/usrguide.pdf>. 207, 662, 683
- [228] L^AT_EX3 PROJECT TEAM. *L^AT_EX 2_ε for Class and Package writers*, December 2003. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/doc/clsguide.pdf>. 207, 662, 683
- [229] L^AT_EX3 PROJECT TEAM. *L^AT_EX 2_ε font selection*, February 2004. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/doc/fntguide.pdf>. 207, 231, 297, 374, 378, 662, 683
- [230] L^AT_EX3 PROJECT TEAM. *L^AT_EX font encodings*, January 2006. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/doc/encguide.pdf>. 217, 231, 662, 683
- [231] Olivier LECARME. *L^AT_EX en bref*, August 2004. Available from: <http://deptinfo.unice.fr/~ol/L3MI/LaTeX/latexenbref.pdf>. 662, 683
- [232] Philipp LEHMAN. *The Font Installation Guide*, December 2004. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/info/Type1fonts/fontinstallationguide/fontinstallationguide.pdf>. 662, 683

- [233] Werner LEMBERG. *The CJK package for \LaTeX 2 ϵ — Multilingual support beyond babel*. TUGboat, 18(3):214–224, 1997. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb18-3/cjkintro600.pdf>. 38, 43, 214, 239, 240, 465, 481, 501, 502, 503, 504, 511, 512, 513, 547, 634, 662, 678, 683
- [234] Werner LEMBERG. *The CJK package* [online], October 2006. Available from: <http://cjk.ffii.org/>. 38, 43, 214, 239, 240, 465, 481, 501, 502, 503, 504, 511, 512, 513, 547, 634, 662, 678, 683
- [235] Werner LEMBERG and Thế Thành HÀN. *The vietnam package*, October 2006. <mailto:wl@gnu.org>, <mailto:hanthethanh@gmx.net>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/language/vietnamese/vntex/tex/latex/vntex/>. 43, 551, 654, 662, 680, 682, 683, 696
- [236] Knut LICKERT. *\LaTeX 2 ϵ for people in associations: minutes.sty*, March 2007. <mailto:knut@lickert.net> et <http://tex.lickert.net/packages/minutes/index.html>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/minutes/minutes.pdf>. 227, 297, 402, 663, 668, 679, 683
- [237] Ulf A. LINDGREN. *FncyChap VI.33*, August 2005. <mailto:ulf.a.lindgren@ericsson.com>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/fncychap/fncychap.pdf>. 52, 74, 87, 220, 254, 276, 653, 663, 679, 683
- [238] Anselm LINGNAU. *An Improved Environment for Floats*, November 2001. <mailto:anselm@strathspey.org>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/float/float.dtx>. 30, 53, 87, 166, 219, 256, 271, 278, 623, 653, 663, 679, 683
- [239] Maurizio LORETI. *The sfheaders package*, September 1997. <mailto:loreti@padova.infn.it> and <http://wwwcdf.pd.infn.it/~loreti/mlo.html>, University of Padova – Department of Physics, Via F. Marzolo, 8 – 35131 PADOVA – Italy. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/sfheaders/>. 53, 75, 87, 238, 254, 277, 663, 679, 683, 691
- [240] Tim P. LOVE. *Advanced \LaTeX* , September 1994. <mailto:tpl@eng.cam.ac.uk>. Available from: http://www.moire.usherbrooke.ca/Intranet/Doc/LATEX_HOWTO/latex-advanced.pdf. 664, 683
- [241] Tim P. LOVE. *Producing HTML and PDF files with \LaTeX* [online], March 2006. Available from: <http://www-h.eng.cam.ac.uk/help/tpl/textprocessing/makingWWWdocs.html>. <mailto:tpl@eng.cam.ac.uk>. 664, 683
- [242] Vincent LOZANO. *Tout ce que vous avez toujours voulu savoir sur \LaTeX sans jamais oser le demander*, September 2006. <mailto:lozano@enise.fr>. Available from: <http://cours.enise.fr/info/latex/guide-local.pdf>. 664, 683
- [243] Ken LUNDE. *Understanding Japanese Information Processing*. O'Reilly & Associates, Inc, September 1993. 207, 214, 579, 664, 683

- [244] Ken LUNDE. *Online companion of “Understanding Japanese Information Processing”*, 1996. See [243]. Available from:
<ftp://ftp.ora.com/pub/examples/nutshell/ujip/doc/cjk.inf>. 207, 214, 664, 683
- [245] Ken LUNDE. *CJKV Information Processing*. O’Reilly & Associates, Inc, January 1999. 664, 683
- [246] Nicolas MARKEY. *Split your bibliography into categories*, December 2005.
<mailto:markey@lsv.ens-cachan.fr>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/splitbib/splitbib.pdf>. 59, 239, 664, 679, 683, 692
- [247] Nicolas MARKEY. *Tame the BeaST (The B to X of BibTeX)*, June 2005.
<mailto:markey@lsv.ens-cachan.fr>. Available from:
http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/info/bibtex/tamethebeast/ttb_en.pdf. 207, 212, 664, 683
- [248] Sven MATTISSON. *SETEX: Swedish speaking version of L^AT_EX* [online], November 1989. Available from: <http://ftp.dante.de/tex-archive/language/swedish/slatex/slatex.1>.
<mailto:sven@tde.lu.se>. 43, 239, 547, 664, 679, 683, 691
- [249] Rowland McDONNELL. *The sectsty package v2.0.2*, April 2002.
<mailto:rowland.mcdonnell@physics.org>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/sectsty/>. 52, 69, 87, 132, 238, 252, 275, 664, 679, 683, 690
- [250] Surapant MEKNAVIN, Theppitak KAROONBOONYANAN, Chanop SILPA-ANAN, and Veerathanabutr POONLAP. *The thailatex package*, March 2006.
<mailto:surapan@nectec.or.th>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/language/thailatex/>. 240, 547, 659, 664, 679, 683, 684, 687, 691, 694
- [251] Frank MITTELBACH. *ε-T_EX: Guidelines for future T_EX*. *TUGboat*, 11(3):337–345, September 1990. Available from:
<http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb11-3/tb29mitt.pdf>. 646, 668, 679, 684
- [252] Frank MITTELBACH. *Comments on “Filenames for Fonts” [35]*. *TUGboat*, 13(1):51–53, April 1992. Available from:
<http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb13-1/tb34mittfont.pdf>. 668, 684
- [253] Frank MITTELBACH. *L^AT_EX 2_ε Encoding Interfaces*, June 1995. Available from:
<http://www.latex-project.org/papers/encoding-concepts.pdf>. 217, 231, 668, 684
- [254] Frank MITTELBACH. *Producing slides with L^AT_EX 2_ε*, August 1997. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/base/slides.dtx>. 215, 635, 668, 684, 691
- [255] Frank MITTELBACH. *An environment for multicolumn output*, July 2000.
<mailto:Frank.Mittelbach@latex-project.org>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/required/tools/multicol.pdf>. 90, 117, 231, 668, 675, 679, 684
- [256] Frank MITTELBACH. *The varoref package*, April 2003. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/tools/varoref.pdf>. 143, 668, 680, 684, 696

- [257] Frank MITTELBACH. *The doc and shortverb packages*, January 2004. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/tex-archive/macros/latex/base/doc.dtx>. 21, 644, 668, 679, 684, 691
- [258] Frank MITTELBACH. *The dblacnt package*, April 2005. The current maintainer is Werner LEMBERG, <mailto:wl@gnu.org>, <mailto:frank.mittelbach@latex-project.org>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/language/vietnamese/vntex/tex/latex/vntex/dblacnt.sty>. 216, 611, 643, 662, 668, 679, 683, 684
- [259] Frank MITTELBACH, Denys DUCHIER, Johannes L. BRAAMS, Marcin WOLIŃSKI, and Mark WOODING. *The docstrip program*, January 2004. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/tex-archive/macros/latex/base/docstrip.dtx>. 633, 644, 645, 668, 679, 681, 682, 684, 685, 698
- [260] Frank MITTELBACH, Michel GOOSSENS, Johannes L. BRAAMS, David P. CARLISLE, and Chris A. ROWLEY. *The L^AT_EX Companion 2*. Tools and Techniques for Computer Typesetting. Addison-Wesley Professional, Reading, Massachusetts, second edition, April 2004. 30, 149, 207, 225, 230, 236, 436, 633, 653, 654, 668, 679, 681, 682, 684, 689
- [261] Frank MITTELBACH, Michel GOOSSENS, Johannes L. BRAAMS, David P. CARLISLE, and Chris A. ROWLEY. *Der L^AT_EX-Begleiter*. Pearson Studium, second edition, October 2005. German version. 633, 654, 668, 681, 682, 684, 689
- [262] Frank MITTELBACH, Michel GOOSSENS, Johannes L. BRAAMS, David P. CARLISLE, and Chris A. ROWLEY. *L^AT_EX Companion*. Pearson Education France, Paris, second edition, 2005. French translation by Jacques ANDRÉ, Benoît BELET, Jean-Côme CHARPENTIER, Jean-Michel HUFFLEN, and Yves SOULET. 606, 631, 632, 633, 634, 654, 655, 668, 681, 682, 684, 685, 689, 692
- [263] Frank MITTELBACH and Chris A. ROWLEY. *Language Information in Structured Documents: A Model for Mark-up and Rendering*. TUGboat, 18(3):199–205, September 1997. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb18-3/tb56lang.pdf>. 668, 684, 689
- [264] Frank MITTELBACH, Chris A. ROWLEY, Alan JEFFREY, and David P. CARLISLE. *The main structure of documents*, January 2004. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/base/ltxclass.dtx>. 633, 659, 668, 681, 683, 684, 689
- [265] Young Joon MOON. *How to make and view a Japanese PDF file*, June 2002. <mailto:director@research-j.org>. Available from: <http://e-japanese-online.com/english/japanese-computing/platex/Free-Japanese-PDF-authoring-EV003.pdf>. 669, 684
- [266] Lapo Filippo MORI. *L^AT_EXpedia: the future of L^AT_EX documentation*. *The PracT_EX Journal*, 3(1), February 2007. <mailto:mori@northwestern.edu> and <http://www.lapomori.com/>. Available from: <http://tug.org/pracjourn/2007-1/mori2/mori2.pdf>. 669, 684
- [267] Lapo Filippo MORI. *Tables in L^AT_EX 2_ε: Packages and Methods*. *The PracT_EX Journal*, 1, February 2007. <mailto:mori@northwestern.edu> and <http://www.lapomori.com/>. Available from: <http://tug.org/pracjourn/2007-1/mori/mori.pdf>. 669, 684

- [268] Michael A. MORRISON. *ET_EX Links* [online], December 1999. Available from: <http://www.nhn.ou.edu/~morrison/LaTeX/index.html>. <mailto:morrison@mail.nhn.ou.edu>. 669, 684
- [269] Sergei O. NAUMOV. *LaTeX2e support for LH family of fonts*, April 1995. Available from: <http://web.mit.edu/texsrc/source/latex/LH/russian.sty>. 539, 663, 676, 679, 684
- [270] Frank NEUKAM, Markus KOHM, Axel KIELHORN, and Jens-Uwe MORAWSKI. *The KOMA-Script Bundle*, March 2005. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/koma-script/scrguien.pdf>. 40, 49, 61, 74, 87, 145, 164, 207, 212, 223, 230, 238, 253, 254, 411, 610, 635, 659, 669, 676, 683, 684, 690
- [271] Tim NULL. *\begin{here} % getting started: A ET_EX Survivor's Guide*. *The PracT_EX Journal*, 1(2), April 2005. <mailto:tim@timnull.com>. Available from: <http://tug.org/pracjourn/2005-2/null-bh02/null-bh02.pdf>. 677, 684
- [272] Tim NULL. *\begin{here} % getting started: Topic #1: Creating my first ET_EX article, Part 3*. *The PracT_EX Journal*, 1(3), July 2005. <mailto:tim@timnull.com>. Available from: <http://tug.org/pracjourn/2005-3/null-bh03/null-bh03.pdf>. 677, 684
- [273] Heiko OBERDIEK. *PDF information and navigation elements with hyperref, pdfT_EX, and thumbpdf*. In *EuroT_EX'99 Proceedings*. TUG, 1999. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/hyperref/doc/paper.pdf>. 87, 655, 677, 679, 684
- [274] Heiko OBERDIEK. *The ifpdf package*, February 2006. <mailto:oberdiek@uni-freiburg.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/oberdiek/ifpdf.pdf>. 658, 677, 679, 684
- [275] Heiko OBERDIEK. *The hypcap package*, April 2007. <mailto:oberdiek@uni-freiburg.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/oberdiek/hypcap.pdf>. 655, 677, 679, 684
- [276] Heiko OBERDIEK and Sebastian RAHTZ. *ChangeLog for the hyperref bundle*, May 2007. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/hyperref/ChangeLog.pdf>. 87, 655, 677, 679, 684, 688
- [277] Heiko OBERDIEK and Sebastian RAHTZ. *Hypertext marks in ET_EX*, May 2007. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/hyperref/hyperref.pdf>. 87, 655, 677, 679, 684, 688
- [278] Heiko OBERDIEK and Sebastian RAHTZ. *README for the hyperref bundle*, February 2007. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/hyperref/README.pdf>. 87, 655, 677, 679, 684, 688
- [279] Tobias OETIKER, Hubert PARTL, Helene HYNÄ, and Elisabeth SCHLEGL. *Une courte (?) introduction à ET_EX 2_ε*. *Cahiers GUTenberg*, special issue number 2, February 2003. French translation of [280] by Matthieu HERRB, adaptation and complements by

- Daniel FLIPO. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/info/lshort/french/flshort-3.20.pdf>. 207, 653, 655, 677, 680, 682, 684, 690
- [280] Tobias OETIKER, Hubert PARTL, Helene HYNÄ, and Elisabeth SCHLEGL. *The Not So Short Introduction to L^AT_EX 2_ε*, May 2006. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/info/lshort/english/lshort.pdf>. 207, 214, 223, 581, 655, 677, 680, 682, 684, 690
- [281] Mariuz OLKO and Marcin WOLIŃSKI. *L^AT_EX 2_ε po polsku czyli P^AL^AT_EX (wersja 1.3.1)*, May 2003. In polish. Available from:
<http://www.tug.org/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/platex/polski.dtx>. 43, 236, 531, 677, 679, 684, 685, 698
- [282] Tanguy ORTOLO and Jeanne LEGRAND. *L^AT_EX à 200%*. O'Reilly France, November 2006. Unavailable. 662, 678, 683, 684
- [283] Scott PAKIN. *How to Package Your L^AT_EX Package*, November 2004. <mailto:scott+dtx@pakin.org>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/info/dtxut/dtxut.pdf>. 680, 684
- [284] Scott PAKIN. *The Comprehensive L^AT_EX Symbols List*, September 2005. <mailto:scott+dtx@pakin.org>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/info/symbols/comprehensive/>. 680, 684
- [285] Scott PAKIN. *The newcommand.py utility*, January 2005. <mailto:scott+dtx@pakin.org>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/support/newcommand/newcommand.pdf>. 676, 680, 684, 695
- [286] Palash Baran PAL. *Bangtex: a package for typesetting documents in Bangla using the T_EX/L^AT_EX systems* [online], January 2001. Available from:
<http://www.saha.ac.in/theory/palashbaran.pal/bangtex/bangtex.html>. 43, 211, 465, 472, 632, 678, 680, 684
- [287] Anshuman PANDEY. *Typesetting Bengali in T_EX*. *TUGboat*, 20(2):119–126, 1999. <mailto:apandey@u.washington.edu>. Available from:
<http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb20-2/tb63pand.pdf>. 680, 684
- [288] Anshuman PANDEY, John SMITH, Dominik WUJASTYK, Zdeněk WAGNER, and Kevin CARMODY. *Devanāgarī for T_EX*, May 2006. <mailto:apandey@u.washington.edu>, <mailto:jds10@cam.ac.uk>, <mailto:d.wujastyk@ucl.ac.uk>, <mailto:zdenek.wagner@gmail.com> and <mailto:i@kevincarmody.org>, home page: <http://devnag.sarovar.org/>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/language/devanagari/velthuis/doc/generic/velthuis/manual.pdf>. 43, 217, 221, 465, 483, 507, 634, 644, 679, 680, 681, 684, 685, 692, 698
- [289] Minje Byeng-sen PARK. *Histoire de l'imprimerie coréenne des origines à 1910*. Maisson-Neuve & Larose, Paris, September 2003. 501, 503, 504, 680, 684
- [290] Oren PATASHNIK. *BibT_EXing*, February 1988. Documentation for general BibT_EX users. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/biblio/bibtex/contrib/doc/btxdoc.pdf>. 212, 681, 684

- [291] Oren PATASHNIK. *Designing BibTeX Styles*, February 1988. The part of BibTeX's documentation that's not meant for general users. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/biblio/bibtex/contrib/doc/btxhak.pdf>. 212, 681, 684
- [292] Jonathan PECHTA, Federico ZENITH, Holger DANIELSSON, and Jeroen WIJNHOUT. *CJK Support* [online], March 2006. Available from:
<http://sourceforge.net/Documentation/html/cjk.html>. Part of [294]. 634, 643, 678, 681, 684, 685, 698
- [293] Jonathan PECHTA, Federico ZENITH, Holger DANIELSSON, and Jeroen WIJNHOUT. *Document Encoding* [online], March 2006. Available from:
<http://sourceforge.net/Documentation/html/lang.html>. Part of [294]. 643, 681, 684, 685, 698
- [294] Jonathan PECHTA, Federico ZENITH, Holger DANIELSSON, and Jeroen WIJNHOUT. *The Kile Handbook* [online], March 2006. Available from:
<http://sourceforge.net/Documentation/html/>. 583, 643, 681, 684, 685, 698
- [295] Kasper PEETERS. *HyperTeX FAQ* [online], March 2004. Available from:
<http://arxiv.org/hypertext/>. 222, 241, 655, 679, 681, 684
- [296] Karel PÍŠKA. *Cyrillic Alphabets*. In Mimi BURBANK and Christina THIELE, editors, *Proceedings of TUG'96*, pages 1–7, Dubna, 1996. JINR. Available from:
<http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb17-2/tb51pisk.pdf>. 633, 681, 684, 685, 695
- [297] John PLAICE and Yannis HARALAMBOUS. *The latest developments in Ω* . *TUGboat*, 17(2):181–183, June 1996. Available from:
<http://omega.enstb.org/papers/latest-omega9papers/latest-omega96.pdf>. 234, 654, 682, 684, 685
- [298] John PLAICE and Yannis HARALAMBOUS. *Typesetting French, German and English in Ω* . In *Congrès EuroTeX'98*, volume 28-29 of *Cahiers GUTenberg*, St. Malo, March 1998. 234, 654, 682, 684, 685
- [299] Hilmar PREUSSE, Christian FAULHAMMER, and Ulrich SCHWARTZ. *What is a minimal working example?*, May 2006. version 0.4.1e. Available from:
<http://www.latex-einfuehrung.de/mini-en.pdf>. 56, 648, 682, 684, 687, 690
- [300] C. V. RADHAKRISHNAN. *LT_εX Tutorial, A Primer*, September 2003. Floor III, SJP Buildings, Cotton Hills, Trivandrum 695014, India. Available from:
<http://www.tug.org.in/tutorials.html>. 684, 688
- [301] Sebastian RAHTZ. *hyperref package options*, September 2006. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/hyperref/doc/options.pdf>. 87, 684, 688
- [302] Sebastian RAHTZ. *Section name references in LT_εX*, May 2007. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/hyperref/nameref.pdf>. 675, 679, 684, 688
- [303] Sebastian RAHTZ and LEONOR BARROCA. *A style option for rotated objects in LT_εX*, September 1997. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/rotating/rotating.dtx>. 237, 632, 679, 681, 684, 688, 689

- [304] Sebastian RAHTZ and Heiko OBERDIEK. *The hyperref package* [online], August 2003. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/applications/hyperref>. This page points to the package documentation and its distribution. 61, 71, 87, 221, 226, 241, 242, 250, 275, 416, 655, 677, 679, 684, 688
- [305] Sebastian RAHTZ and Heiko OBERDIEK. *Hypertext marks in L^AT_EX: a manual for hyperref*, September 2006. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/hyperref/doc/manual.pdf>. 87, 118, 655, 677, 679, 684, 688
- [306] Bernd RAICHLE, Rolf NIEPRASCHK, and Thomas HAFNER. *Fragen und Antworten (FAQ) über das Textsatzsystem T_EX und DANTE*, Deutschsprachige Anwendervereinigung T_EX e.V., September 2003. Version 72. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/faq/de-tex-faq/de-tex-faq.pdf>. 654, 676, 682, 684, 688
- [307] Adrian REZUȘ and Bernd RAICHLE. *Romanian T_EX*, October 1996. <mailto:adriaan@cs.kun.nl>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/language/romanian/RomanianTeX/romanian.dtx>. 533, 534, 679, 684, 688, 689
- [308] Yuri ROBBERS, Markus KOHM, and Rasmus Pank ROULUND. *Replacing L^AT_EX 2_ε standard classes by KOMA-Script*. *The PracT_EX Journal*, 3, August 2006. <mailto:yuri.robbers@gmail.com>, mailto:rasmus_pank@yahoo.dk and <http://www.komascript.de>. Available from: <http://tug.org/pracjourn/2006-3/robbers/robbers.pdf>. 40, 49, 61, 74, 87, 145, 164, 212, 223, 230, 238, 253, 254, 411, 610, 635, 659, 683, 684, 689, 690
- [309] Will ROBERTSON. *Productivity with macros and packages*. *The PracT_EX Journal*, 2(3), 2006. <mailto:wspr81@gmail.com>. Available from: <http://tug.org/pracjourn/2006-3/robertson/robertson.pdf>. 684, 689
- [310] Christian ROLLAND. *L^AT_EX par la pratique*. O'Reilly France, October 1999. <mailto:Rolland.Christian@wanafoo.fr>. 684, 689
- [311] Chris A. ROWLEY. *Models and languages for formatted documents*. *TUGboat*, 20(3):189–195, September 1999. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb29-3/tb64rowl.pdf>. 684, 689
- [312] Young RYU. *The T_X Fonts*, December 2000. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/fonts/txfonts/doc/txfontsdockA4.pdf>. 35, 241, 680, 684, 689, 696
- [313] Eddie SAUDRAIS. *Et les fontes, man ? Gestion des fontes avec L^AT_EX 2_ε*, June 2001. <mailto:eddie.saudrais@wanadoo.fr>. Available from: <http://perso.orange.fr/eddie.saudrais/latex/fontedoc.zip>. 684, 690
- [314] Eddie SAUDRAIS. *Le petit typographe rationnel*, 2005. <mailto:eddie.saudrais@wanadoo.fr>. Available from: <http://perso.orange.fr/eddie.saudrais/prepa/typo.pdf>. 684, 690
- [315] Walter SCHMIDT. *Using common PostScript fonts with L^AT_EX*. *PSNFSS Version 9.2*, September 2004. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/psnfss/psnfss2e.pdf>. 684, 690

- [316] Walter SCHMIDT. *Font selection in LaTeX: The most frequently asked questions*. *The PracTeX Journal*, 2(1), February 2006. Available from: <http://tug.org/pracjourn/2006-1/schmidt/schmidt.pdf>. 684, 690
- [317] Thomas A. SCHMITZ. *Mastering texmf-trees*. *The PracTeX Journal*, 3(1), February 2007. <mailto:thomas.schmitz@uni-bonn.de>, <http://www.uni-bonn.de/www/Philologie/Personnal/Schmitz.html>. Available from: <http://tug.org/pracjourn/2007-1/schmitz/schmitz.pdf>. 684, 690
- [318] Martin SCHRÖDER. *The multitoc package*, June 1999. <mailto:martin.schroeder@acm.org>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/ms/multitoc.dtx>. 92, 231, 675, 679, 684, 690
- [319] Elizabeth SCURFIELD, Lianyi SONG, and Charles GREThER. *Lire et écrire le chinois*. In Cécile DESPRAIRIES, editor, *Langues orientales*. Larousse, Paris, March 2006. 644, 654, 682, 684, 685, 690, 692
- [320] Michael SHELL and David HOADLEY. *BibTeX Tips and FAQ*, January 2007. <http://www.michaelshell.org/>. Available from: <http://www.ctan.org/tex-archive/biblio/bibtex/contrib/doc/btxFAQ.pdf>. 212, 655, 682, 684, 691
- [321] Sindhu SINGH. *Our Introduction to LaTeX*. *The PracTeX Journal*, 2(4), October 2006. Available from: <http://tug.org/pracjourn/2006-4/singh/singh.pdf>. 684, 691
- [322] Axel SOMMERFELDT. *The rotfloat package*, January 2004. <mailto:rotfloat@sommerfeldt.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/rotfloat/rotfloat.pdf>. 53, 87, 166, 219, 237, 256, 271, 279, 623, 679, 685, 689, 692
- [323] Axel SOMMERFELDT. *The caption2 package*, April 2007. <mailto:caption@sommerfee.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/caption/caption2.pdf>. 53, 71, 87, 212, 278, 633, 678, 685, 692
- [324] Axel SOMMERFELDT. *Setzen von Abbildungs- und Tabellenbeschriftungen mit dem caption-Paket*, April 2007. <mailto:caption@sommerfee.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/caption/anleitung.pdf>. 87, 633, 678, 685, 692
- [325] Axel SOMMERFELDT. *Typesetting captions with the caption package*, April 2007. <mailto:caption@sommerfee.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/caption/caption.pdf>. 53, 71, 87, 212, 277, 633, 678, 685, 692
- [326] D. P. STORY. *Using LaTeX to Create Quality PDF Documents for the World Wide Web* [online], November 1999. Available from: <http://www.math.uakron/~dpstory/latx2pdf.html>. <mailto:dpstory@uakron.edu>. 685, 693
- [327] Apostolos SYROPOULOS, Antonis TSOLOMITIS, and Nick SOFRONIOU. *Digital Typography Using LaTeX*. Springer, October 2002. Available from: <http://ocean1.ee.duth.gr/LaTeXBook/>. 685, 692, 694, 695

- [328] Nicola L. C. TALBOT. *Creating a PDF document using PDF \LaTeX* , July 2004. <mailto:nlct@cmp.uea.ac.uk>, School of Computing Sciences, University of East Anglia, Norwich. NR5 7TJ, United Kingdom. Available from: <http://theoval.sys.uea.ac.uk/~nlct/latex/pdfdoc/pdfdoc-a4.pdf>. 685, 694
- [329] Nicola L. C. TALBOT. *\LaTeX for UEA Administrative Work*, September 2004. <mailto:nlct@cmp.uea.ac.uk>, School of Computing Sciences, University of East Anglia, Norwich. NR5 7TJ, United Kingdom. Available from: http://theoval.sys.uea.ac.uk/~nlct/latex/admin/admin_a4.pdf. 685, 694
- [330] Nicola L. C. TALBOT. *Using \LaTeX to Write a PhD Thesis*, July 2006. <mailto:nlct@cmp.uea.ac.uk>, School of Computing Sciences, University of East Anglia, Norwich. NR5 7TJ, United Kingdom. Available from: http://theoval.sys.uea.ac.uk/~nlct/latex/thesis/thesis_a4.pdf. 685, 694
- [331] Nicola L. C. TALBOT. *Writing a Thesis in \LaTeX : hints, tips and advice*, October 2006. <mailto:nlct@cmp.uea.ac.uk>, School of Computing Sciences, University of East Anglia, Norwich. NR5 7TJ, United Kingdom. Available from: <http://theoval.sys.uea.ac.uk/~nlct/latex/lms/lms.pdf>. 685, 694
- [332] Nicola L. C. TALBOT. *Creating a \LaTeX Minimal Example*, June 2007. <mailto:nlct@cmp.uea.ac.uk>, School of Computing Sciences, University of East Anglia, Norwich. NR5 7TJ, United Kingdom. Available from: <http://theoval.sys.uea.ac.uk/~nlct/latex/minexample/minexample.pdf>. 56, 685, 694
- [333] Nicola L. C. TALBOT. *Creating Flow Frames for Posters, Brochures or Magazines using flowfram.sty*, March 2007. <mailto:nlct@cmp.uea.ac.uk>, School of Computing Sciences, University of East Anglia, Norwich. NR5 7TJ, United Kingdom. Available from: <http://ftp.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/ffuserguide.pdf>. 78, 87, 220, 256, 415, 623, 653, 679, 685, 694
- [334] Nicola L. C. TALBOT. *Creating Flow Frames for Posters, Brochures or Magazines using flowfram.sty v 1.07*, March 2007. <mailto:nlct@cmp.uea.ac.uk>, School of Computing Sciences, University of East Anglia, Norwich. NR5 7TJ, United Kingdom. Available from: <http://ftp.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/flowfram.pdf>. 78, 87, 220, 256, 415, 623, 653, 679, 685, 694
- [335] Nicola L. C. TALBOT. *\LaTeX for Complete Novices*, May 2007. <mailto:nlct@cmp.uea.ac.uk>, School of Computing Sciences, University of East Anglia, Norwich. NR5 7TJ, United Kingdom. Available from: http://theoval.cmp.uea.ac.uk/~nlct/latex/novices/novices_a4.pdf. 685, 694
- [336] Daniel TAUPIN[†]. *The varsects package*, November 1998. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/taupin/varsects.sty>. 52, 72, 87, 242, 253, 275, 680, 685, 694, 696
- [337] Kresten Krab THORUP, Frank JENSEN, and Chris A. ROWLEY. *The calc package (Infix notation arithmetic in \LaTeX)*, August 2005. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/required/tools/calc.dtx>. 21, 212, 633, 659, 678, 683, 684, 685, 689, 695
- [338] Karsten TINNEFELD. *The quotchap document style*, February 1998. <mailto:tinnefeld@irb.cs.uni-dortmund.de>. Available from:

- <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/quotchap/>. 53, 74, 87, 237, 254, 276, 679, 685, 688, 695
- [339] Mark TRETTIN. *Une liste des péchés des utilisateurs de \LaTeX 2 ϵ (ou Commandes et extensions obsolètes, et quelques autres erreurs)*. <mailto:Mark@Trettin@gmx.de>, <mailto:juergen.fen@gmx.de> and <mailto:Yvon.Henel@wanadoo.fr>, June 2004. English translation by Jürgen FENN, french translation by Yvon HENEL. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/info/l2tabu/french/l2tabufr-heavy.pdf>. 649, 655, 682, 685, 695
- [340] Mark TRETTIN. *An essential guide to \LaTeX 2 ϵ usage (Obsolete commands and packages)*. <mailto:Mark@Trettin@gmx.de> and <mailto:juergen.fen@gmx.de>, June 2006. English translation by Jürgen FENN. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/info/l2tabu/english/l2tabuen.pdf>. 649, 682, 685, 695
- [341] GROUPE DE TRAVAIL TWS-TDS⁴⁷. *TDS: une structure de répertoires pour les fichiers \TeX* , June 2004. French translation of [342] by Jean-Côme CHARPENTIER, with a postface by Fabrice POPINEAU. Available from: <http://www.gutenberg.eu.org/publications/publicationsPDF/44-twg-tds.pdf>. 239, 240, 246, 634, 681, 684, 685, 687, 696
- [342] TUG WORKING GROUP ON A \TeX DIRECTORY STRUCTURE (TWG-TDS). *A Directory Structure for \TeX Files*, June 2004. <mailto:tds@tug.org>. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/tds/tds.pdf>. 239, 240, 246, 587, 685, 696
- [343] Hideo UMEKI. *The geometry package*, July 2002. <mailto:hideo.umeki@toshiba.co.jp>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/contrib/macros/latex/contrib/geometry/manual.pdf>. 117, 221, 653, 679, 685, 696
- [344] *The Unicode Standard* [online], February 2006. Available from: <http://unicode.org>. 217
- [345] Piet VAN OOSTRUM. *\TeX Implementations*, November 2002. <mailto:piet@cs.uu.nl>, Department of Computer Science, Padualaan 14, De Uithof, PO Box 80.089, 3508 TB, Utrecht, The Netherlands. Available from: <http://www.cs.uu.nl/~piet/teximpl.pdf>. 685, 696
- [346] Thomas VAN OUDENHOVE DE SAINT GÉRY. *Bibliographie avec Bib \TeX* , 2003. Available from: http://www.enstimac.fr/~vanouden/LaTeX/contrib/Pres_Bibtex.tar.gz. 685, 696
- [347] Timothy VAN ZANDT. *Documentation for fancybox.sty: Box tips and tricks for \LaTeX* , September 2000. <mailto:tvz@Princeton.EDU>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/fancybox/fancybox.pdf>. 648, 679, 685, 696
- [348] Suki K. VENKATESAN. *Moving from bytes to words to semantics*. *TUGboat*, 26(2):165–169, August 2005. Proceedings of the 2005 Annual Meeting. 501, 685, 696

⁴⁷TWS-TDS = TUG Working Group on a \TeX Directory Structure (TWG-TDS).

- [349] Didier VERNA, Bernd JAEHNE, and Tony ROBERTS. *The minitoc-hyper package*, May 1999. **This package is obsolete, use now the minitoc package** [132], <mailto:verna@inf.enst.fr>, <mailto:Bernd.Jaehne@aeon.de>, <mailto:aroberts@usq.edu.au>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/hyperref/minitoc-hyper.sty>. 61, 226, 250, 658, 667, 679, 683, 684, 685, 689, 696
- [350] Boris VEYTSMAN. *Notes on principles and T_EX implementation*. *The PracT_EX Journal*, 2(4), October 2006. <mailto:borisv@lk.net>. Available from: <http://tug.org/pracjourn/2006-4/veytsman-design/veytsman-design.pdf>. 685, 696
- [351] Boris VEYTSMAN, Bernd SCHANDL, Lee NETHERTON, and C. V. RADHAKRISHNAN. *hypernat A Package to create a Nomenclature*, September 2005. <http://sarovar.org/projects/nomencl>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/contrib/nomencl/nomencl.pdf>. 51, 139, 230, 400, 676, 679, 684, 685, 688, 690, 696
- [352] André VIOLANTE. *BT_EX: Notions de base*. Dunod, January 2007. Unavailable. 685, 697
- [353] Carl F. VOEGELIN and Florence M. VOEGELIN. *Classification and Index of the World Languages*. Elsevier, Amsterdam, December 1977. 685, 697
- [354] Vladimir VOLOVICH, Werner LEMBERG, and L^AT_EX3 PROJECT TEAM. *Cyrillic language support in BT_EX*, March 1999. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/doc/cyrguide.pdf>. 207, 662, 683, 685, 697
- [355] Stephan P. VON BECHTOLSHEIM. *T_EX in practice: Comments on a 4-volumes, 1400-pages series on T_EX*. *TUGboat*, 11(3):409–412, September 1990. <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb11-3/tb29bechtolsheim.pdf>. 685, 697
- [356] Stephan P. VON BECHTOLSHEIM. *T_EX in Practice*. Springer Verlag, Berlin, Germany / Heidelberg, Germany / London, UK / etc., 1992.
1. Basics.
 2. Paragraphs, Maths and Fonts.
 3. Tokens, Macros.
 4. Output Routines.
- (Une approche progressive des secrets de T_EX). 280, 685, 697
- [357] Douglas WAUD and Tim NULL. *\begin{here}*. *The PracT_EX Journal*, 1(1), January 2005. <mailto:douglas.waud@umassmed.edu>, <http://users.umassmed.edu/douglas.waud/>, and <mailto:tim@timnull.com>. Available from: <http://tug.org/pracjourn/2005-1/waud/waud.pdf>. 677, 684, 685, 698
- [358] Staszek WAWRYKIEWICZ. *P_ET_EX i pdfP_ET_EX*, May 2005. In polish, <mailto:staw@gust.org.pl>. Available from: <http://www.gust.org.pl/doc/poczatki/platex.html>. 43, 236, 531, 679, 685, 698
- [359] Daphne WEST and Anna SITNIKOVA-RIOLAND. *Lire et écrire le russe*. In Cécile DESPRAIRIES, editor, *Langues orientales*. Larousse, Paris, January 2006. 644, 682, 684, 685, 691, 698

- [360] Graham WILLIAMS. *Graham Williams' T_EX Catalogue*. *TUGboat*, 21(1):17–90, 2000.
Last version at: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/help/Catalogue/catalogue.html>.
Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb21-1/tb66catal.pdf>. 685, 698
- [361] Peter R. WILSON. *The stdclsdv package*, July 2000.
<mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/stdclsdv/stdclsdv.pdf>. 237,
239, 679, 685, 693, 698
- [362] Peter R. WILSON. *The needspace package*, January 2003.
<mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/misc/needspace.sty>. 57, 231,
676, 679, 685, 698
- [363] Peter R. WILSON. *The tocloft package*, September 2003.
<mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/tocloft/tocloft.pdf>. 43, 63, 70,
77, 87, 117, 132, 229, 230, 240, 412, 680, 685, 695, 698
- [364] Peter R. WILSON. *The abstract package*, April 2004.
<mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/abstract/abstract.pdf>. 52, 69,
87, 209, 252, 415, 630, 678, 685, 698
- [365] Peter R. WILSON. *The appendix package*, April 2004.
<mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/appendix/appendix.pdf>. 63,
87, 210, 251, 410, 631, 678, 685, 698
- [366] Peter R. WILSON. *The tocbibind package*, May 2004.
<mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/tocbibind/tocbibind.pdf>. 49,
87, 95, 100, 104, 147, 228, 230, 240, 251, 411, 680, 685, 695, 698
- [367] Peter R. WILSON. *The tocvsec2 package*, May 2004.
<mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/tocvsec2/tocvsec2.pdf>. 680,
685, 695, 698
- [368] Peter R. WILSON. *The ccaption package*, March 2005.
<mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/ccaption/ccaption.pdf>. 53, 71,
87, 213, 278, 634, 678, 685, 698
- [369] Peter R. WILSON. *The docmfp package*, March 2005.
<mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/docmfp/docmfp.pdf>. 644, 679,
685, 698
- [370] Peter R. WILSON. *The Memoir Class*, September 2005.
<mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/memoir/memman.pdf>. 63, 64,
71, 87, 225, 251, 253, 279, 288, 414, 635, 664, 685, 698

- [371] Peter R. WILSON. *The Memoir Class (Addendum)*, December 2005.
<mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/memoir/memmanadd.pdf>. 63,
64, 71, 87, 225, 251, 253, 279, 288, 414, 635, 664, 685, 698
- [372] Peter R. WILSON. *The romannum package*, May 2005.
<mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/romannum/romannum.pdf>.
53, 75, 87, 237, 254, 276, 679, 685, 689, 698
- [373] Peter R. WILSON. *The memoir standard class*. *The PracT_EX Journal*, 3, August 2006.
<mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from:
<http://tug.org/pracjourn/2006-3/wilson/wilson.pdf>. 63, 64, 71, 87, 225, 251, 253, 279,
288, 414, 635, 664, 685, 698
- [374] Peter R. WILSON and Donald ARSENEAU. *The ifmtarg package*, March 2000.
<mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>, <mailto:asnd@triumf.ca>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/misc/ifmtarg.sty>. 222, 280,
631, 658, 679, 681, 685, 698
- [375] Joseph A. WRIGHT. *Quick floats in L_AT_EX*, June 2007.
<mailto:joseph.wright@morningstar2.co.uk>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/trivfloat/trivfloat.pdf>. 53, 87,
166, 241, 256, 271, 279, 623, 680, 685, 695, 698
- [376] C. S. YOGANANDA and K. K. SUBRAMANIAM. *KannadaT_EX* [online], April 2004.
Available from: <http://sarovar.org/projects/kannadatex/>.
<mailto:yoga@math.iisc.ernet.in>, <mailto:yogacs@users.sarovar.org>,
<mailto:subbuk@users.sarovar.org>. 223, 514, 659, 679, 685, 693, 698
- [377] Charlie S. ZENDER. *L_AT_EX Cheat Sheet*, August 2006. <mailto:zender@uci.edu>,
Department of Earth Science, University of California, Irvine, CA 92697-3100.
Available from: <http://www.dust.ess.uci.edu/doc/ltx/ltx.pdf>. 685, 698
- [378] Vadim V. ZHYTNIKOV and Vadim MASLOV. *The LHCYR collection* [online], December
1998. Available from:
<http://ftp.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/supported/lhcyr/>.
<mailto:vvzhy@td.lpi.ac.ru>, <mailto:vadik@cs.umd.edu>. 539, 540, 663, 679, 685, 698

Changes history

★ version 00

- 1990/10/01
 - Original version, by Nigel WARD.
- 1991/11/01
 - Revised to reuse `\chapter`, `\section`, `\subsection` commands transparently, generate toc-file-name automatically, assorted other cleanup (by Dan JURAFSKY).

★ version 01

- 1993/06/01
 - New design, to avoid allocating a newwrite, or file descriptor, for each chapter (a deadly sin!) (Jean-Pierre F. DRUCBERT).
 - Added `\chapterend` to terminate the scope of a minitoc. (*If you forgot putting `\chapterend` at the end of each chapter, an entry for the next chapter will appear in each minitoc.*) (Thanks to Yufan Hu).
 - Replaced the `minipage` environment by a `verse` environment, to allow a minitoc being split across pages.
 - All the layout of the minitoc is in the command, so if somebody wants to redefine that layout, he has just to rewrite it (and only it).
 - You can inhibit the minitoc for the next chapter by preceding it with `\minitocno`. (`\minitocyes` is useless for the user, because it is implicit *after* the `\chapter*` pseudo-chapters).
 - Problems: you *must* have `\chapterend` to terminate each chapter with a minitoc. How about avoiding this constraint?
 - The depth of the minitoc is user-adjustable with the counter `minitocdepth` (similar to `tocdepth` for the table of contents).
 - At least three passes (3) of \LaTeX are necessary to get correct minitocs (the first pass creates the `.mtc(X)` files, the second uses them (but they may contain wrong page numbers) and recreates them, the third should be ok).
 - Works with `\chapter[xxx]{yyy}` and floating bodies. Works with two columns (but the minitoc is composed in one column; how to make it to spread over the two columns?).
 - Some mods added to work with `xr` (external references). `xr` version 5 is much more tolerant.

★ version 02

- 1993/07/05
 - Added compatibility with hangcaption (the package hangcaption (if present) must be loaded *before* the minitoc package). *Beware* to options modifying `\@caption`.

W00092

※ version 03

- 1993/07/09
 - Version 3 not released (buggy).

★ version 04

- 1993/07/09
 - Added `\if@realch` to avoid contents lines from pseudo-chapters to go into the toc.
 - The package mtcoff allows you to use a \LaTeX document with minitoc commands and to make them transparent: just replace the minitoc package by mtcoff.

★ version 05

- 1993/07/13
 - Added a selection mechanism to not write spurious things in the minitocs.

★ version 06

- 1993/07/15
 - Fixed problems about chapters in the toc, removed obsolete `\caption` stuff (filters are much better) added compatibility with toch (toch makes a table of chapters; if used, must be loaded *before* minitoc; in fact, it is the ancestor of the shorttoc [130] package).

★ version 07

- 1993/07/22
 - (*major differences*) Completely rewritten, using tricks from xr (the version 5, by David P. CARLISLE). The info for minitocs is directly stolen from the .toc file. `\chapterend` and `\minitocno` are suppressed, `\minitoc`, `\dominitoc` and `\faketableofcontents` added.

★ version 08

- 1993/07/29
 - Spacing adjustments.

★ version 09

- 1993/08/04
 - Added mods for MS-DOS (search for MS-DOS, uncomment; search for UNIX, comment out). MS-DOS allows only 3 characters for extensions in file names (what a pity!).

★ version 10

- 1993/08/05
 - Works now with appendices. Detects now the obsolete versions of `latex.tex` (`\@inputcheck` or `\reset@font` not defined).

★ version 11

- 1993/08/18
 - Added `\mtcSfont`, font for section entries, `\mtcSSfont` for subsection entries, `\mtcSSSfont` for subsubsection entries, `\mtcPfont` for paragraph entries, `\mtcSPfont` for subparagraph entries.

★ version 12

- 1993/12/16
 - Use `\kern` in place of `\vspace*`, and added penalties (`\nopagebreak`) to avoid a page break just before last `\mtc@rule`.
 - Also added a `samepage` environnement.
 - Removed old commented out lines from previous versions.

★ version 13

- 1993/12/17
 - Added `\minilof` and `\minilot` stuff. For MS-DOS, uncomment the definition of `\SHORTEXT`.

★ version 14

- 1994/01/03
 - Corrected space under `minitoc/lof/lot` and added a `\raggedright` setting to avoid “underfull” warnings.
 - Corrected some spacing problems (avoiding ~’s). `\mtifont` is changed from `\normalsize\bf` to `\large\bf`.
 - Some modifications suggested by Donald ARSENEAU (thanks): `\@newread` becomes `\newread`, not outer version of `\newread`; `\empty` replaced by `\relax` in the spare definition of `\reset@font`.
 - Removed the setting of `\clubpenalty` and `\widowpenalty` to 10 000 (done by `\samepage`), and `\noindent`.
 - Simplified processing of optional argument in `\minitoc`, `\minilof` and `\minilot`.

★ version 15

- 1994/01/27
 - Added `\parttoc`, `\partlof` and `\partlot` for books, `\secttoc`, `\sectlof` and `\sectlot` for articles, with some commands and parameters parallel to those for mini-tables.
- 1994/01/27
 - Added `\parttoc`, `\partlof` and `\partlot` for books, `\secttoc`, `\sectlof` and `\sectlot` for articles, with some commands and parameters parallel to those for mini-tables.

★ version 16

- 1994/02/02
 - Bug fixes (typos).

★ version 17

- 1994/06/23
 - ‘n’ (null) synonym of ‘e’ (empty) in the optional argument of `\minitoc`, `\dominitoc`, and siblings.
 - Compatibility with “ $\text{\LaTeX 2}_{\epsilon}$ ”. Thanks to Denis B. ROEGEL (who found the problem) and Frank MITTELBACH (who gave the hints to solve).

★ version 18

- 1994/06/26
 - Make minitoc really compatible with $\text{\LaTeX 2}_{\epsilon}$.
 - Introduce the language files as options. Many thanks to Michel GOOSSENS (via Frank MITTELBACH) who was inspired by the code of the `babel` package (by Johannes L. BRAAMS).

★ version 19

- 1994/08/16
 - Added stuff for numbering of chapters (parts, sections) not starting at 1. `\firstchapteris` etc. commands added.
 - `\mtcrule`, `\nomtcrule` etc. commands added.
 - Corrected a bug in `\c@mti`.
 - Corrected `mtcswedish.sty` (Jan Michael RYNNING).
 - Corrected appendix in articles.

★ version 20

- 1994/08/25
 - Corrected spacing before and after minitocs and siblings.
 - Added the `\mtcpagenumbers` and `\nomtcpagenumbers` commands (and siblings) to make minitocs with/without page numbers. Default: with page numbers.

- Corrected (difficult bug) appendix in articles.
- Corrected vertical spacing.
- Corrected a problem with chapters numbered with uppercase roman numbers.

★ version 21

- 1994/09/07
 - Corrected typos in `minitoc` and `minitoc.tex`.

★ version 22

- 1994/10/10
 - Corrected typos in `minitoc`.

★ version 23

- 1994/11/08
 - Added a missing line in `\sectlof`.
 - Works with document classes resetting chapter (or section) number at each part (thanks to Denis B. ROEGEL).
 - Added the notion of “absolute numbering” for the mini-tables.
 - Removed stuff for `\firstchapteris` and co. These commands are obsolete.
 - Removed appendix stuff.

★ version 24

- 1994/12/21
 - The `\protect` commands have been removed from the `.toc`, `.lot` and `.lot` files, so some internal macros have been corrected to be compatible with the \LaTeX 2 ϵ release of December 1994. Thanks to Denis B. ROEGEL who did the work.

★ version 25

- 1996/09/13
 - Updated `mtcnorsk.sty` and added `mtcnynorsk.sty` on a suggestion from Dag LANGMYHR.

★ version 26

- 1996/11/14
 - Language specific files are now named `language.mld` (replacing `mtclanguage.sty`) because they are not packages and it makes shorter names.
 - Added `breton`, `estonian`, `germanb`, `greek`, `irish`, `russianb`, `scottish`, `lower` and `upper sorbian`; renamed “esperanto” by “esperant” like in the `babel` package.

★ version 27

- 1996/12/20
 - Corrections for starred sectionning commands.
 - `english.mld` loaded as default language.
 - Added `vietnam.mld` and `arab.mld`.
 - Renamed `minitocoff` into `mtcoff` to keep the name short.

★ version 28

- 1997/10/29
 - Added the `afrikaan(s)`, `brazil`, and `ethiopia(n)` languages.
 - Added autoconfiguration of extensions.
 - Added the `shorttext` package option.
 - Added *coffee* stuff.
 - Added `\addstarred` stuff (for starred chapter stuff).
 - Fixed bug in `parttocs`.
- 1998/06/15
 - A typo corrected by Donald ARSENEAU: `{\let@dottedtocline@undottedtocline}}` should probably be `{\let\@dottedtocline\@undottedtocline}}` (a backslash was missing after `\let`). Thanks to him.
 - Added the `bahasa` language.
- 1998/12/03
 - Added the `tight` and `loose` package options.

★ version 29

- 1999/03/16
 - Added the `bicig`, `buryat`, `mongol` and `russianc` languages.
- 1999/06/28
 - Added the `armenian` language (from `ArmTEX` [121]).
- 1999/07/23
 - Added the `dotted/undotted` package options (default: `dotted`).
- 1999/07/29
 - Added `lithuanian.mld`.

★ version 30

- 1999/12/06
 - Added the `basque`, `ngermanb`, `serbian`, `ukraineb`, and `welsh` languages.
 - Corrected a bug in `\sltname` definition (`mlt` should be `slt`).

★ version 31

- 2000/04/04
 - Added compatibility with the `hyperref` package, thanks to Heiko OBERDIEK, who has also simplified some code and fixed the infamous `\chapter*` bug.

★ version 32

- 2000/08/08
 - Added very (too) numerous new commands for the mini-table features: `\beforeparttoc`, `\beforepartlof`, `\beforepartlot`, `\afterparttoc`, `\afterpartlof`, `\afterpartlot`, `\thispageparttocstyle`, `\thispagepartlofstyle`, and `\thispagepartlotstyle`.
 - Documentation improved by Stefan ULRICH.
 - `\nomtcrule` corrected.

★ version 33

- 2000/12/07
 - Added new adjustment commands: `\mtcaddchapter`, `\mtcaddsection`, and `\mtcaddpart`. These commands add stuff in the `.toc`, `.lof` and `.lot` files for the `\chapter*` (`\section*` and `\part*`) problem. From a suggestion by Karl F. EVERITT.
- 2000/12/08
 - Corrected a feature in `\mtcaddchapter` and co. with a blank optional argument.

★ version 34

- 2000/12/13
 - Added in the documentation a section for use with the `tocbibind` package.
 - Added `.mld` files for alternate names of languages: so, `american.mld` just loads `english.mld`, which contains the real definitions.

I0046

★ version 35

- 2001/01/09
 - Added macros to test if a file is “empty” (i.e., empty, blank or inexistent) or “non empty” (i.e., useful). I used some code from Stephan P. VON BECHTOLSHEIM.
 - Added the `checkfiles/nocheckfiles` package options.
 - Replaced `\The@chapter` by `\The@mtc`.
- 2001/02/26
 - Added `bulgarian.mld`, `hebrew.mld`, `icelandic.mld`, `latin.mld`, and `samin.mld`.
- 2001/03/09
 - Added `\mtcselectlanguage`.
- 2001/06/01
 - Fixed the `estonian` package option (missing).
- 2001/07/04
 - Added the `interlingua` language.

★ version 36

- 2002/02/11
 - Corrected an interaction with `\tableofcontents` which creates a `\chapter*` or a `\section*`, perturbing `mtc/stc` counters (problem signalled by Frank MITTELBACH).
- 2002/02/18
 - Corrected a spacing problem with empty titles (problem signalled by Frank MITTELBACH).
 - Workaround for the `\parttoc-\chapter*` problem.
- 2002/02/19
 - Added `\mtcskip` and `\mtcskipamount`.
- 2002/02/27
 - Fixed test for empty files.
- 2002/03/13
 - Added the `bangla` language.
- 2002/03/15
 - Reduced depth of `\mtc@strutbox`.

※ version 37

- 2003/01/24
 - Version #37 dropped.

★ version 38

- 2003/01/24
 - `pt` becomes `\@pt` and `0pt` becomes `\z@`.
 - `\hrule` and `\vrule` replaced by `\rule` (*L^AT_EX*).
 - Added `\mtc@zrule` for zero-dims rules.
 - Added the `frenchb` language (synonym of `french`).
- 2003/01/30
 - Changed the test for empty titles.
 - Added the `flsection` and `flsectionb` package options.
- 2003/01/31
 - The `tight` and `loose` package options are applied to `\parttoc` (Thomas LEONHARDT).
- 2003/02/07
 - Package options `flsection` and `flsectionb` removed and replaced by the `insection` package option (like `flsectionb`).
- 2003/02/11
 - Corrected numbering of `SLF`, `SLT`.
- 2003/02/20
 - Added `frenchle` and `frenchpro` language options (synonyms of `french`).

- Corrected secttocs, at least.
- 2003/03/18
 - Corrected some vertical spacings and struts (I added some mods by Frank MITTELBACH, many thanks to him.). A lot of cleaning remains to do, but the release seems to be needed now.

★ version 39

- 2003/04/09
 - Modern font commands for compatibility with the memoir class.
 - `\nomtcpagenumbers` and memoir class.
- 2003/06/08
 - Added `\@filesfalse` and `\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile` for the notoccite package (requested by Donald ARSENEAU); added the notoccite package option (loads the notoccite package).
- 2004/09/08
 - Added language options and .mld files for dialects: canadian (english), acadian, acadien, canadien (french), naustrian, ngerman (ngermanb).
 - Added comments in .mld files using special fonts.
 - Documentation: added a paragraph about making a TOC for appendices, eventually not listed in the main TOC.
- 2004/09/17
 - Corrections in the documentation; corrections about rules.

★ version 40

- 2004/12/09
 - Added the japanese and castillan languages.
 - Removed the test on the presence of the multicol package in `minitoc.tex`, because multicol is a required package.
 - Added a figure in `minitoc.tex` about the need of three compilations.
 - Added some infos in `minitoc.bug`.
 - Added a paragraph about a problem with the appendix package.
- 2004/12/13
 - Updated `fminitoc.bib` and `minitoc.bib`.
- 2004/12/14
 - Added the `hints` package option. This option is still experimental; your advice is welcome.
- 2004/12/20
 - Added `fminitoc.pdf` (french documentation in PDF format).

★ version 41

- 2005/01/05
 - Corrections in documentation.
 - Message added if some sectioning commands are not available.
 - Replaced `\typeout` commands in `minitoc` by the `\PackageInfo` or `\PackageWarning` commands; with the line number when useful (`\@gobble` if no line number). Hence, the package is less verbose (`\PackageInfo` writes only in the `document.log` file, not on the terminal).
- 2005/01/06
 - Added the `\mtcsetfont` (Benjamin BAYART) and `\mtcsetttitlefont` commands, with a much simpler syntax.
- 2005/01/10
 - Added bibliography.
- 2005/01/11
 - $\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}$ classes: `amsart` and `amsproc` are incompatible with `minitoc`, `amsbook` needs precautions.
- 2005/01/12
 - Added `\mtcsetformat`.
- 2005/01/18
 - Added `\mtcsetttitle`.
 - Added a hint for recommending the `insection` package option.
- 2005/01/19
 - Added a hint about the presence of `\dominitoc` and `co`.
 - Added a hint about consistency of `\dominitoc`/`\minitoc` and `co`.
 - Improved documentation about hints.
- 2005/01/20
 - Added a hint about using short extensions with more than 99 parts or 99 chapters or 99 sections.
- 2005/01/25
 - `\ptifont: \Huge\bfseries` becomes `\LARGE\bfseries`.
- 2005/01/26
 - Added `\mtcsetpagenumbers`.
- 2005/01/28
 - Added many new language files: `serbianc.mld`, `chinese1.mld`, `chinese2.mld`, `hangul1.mld`, `hangul2.mld`, `hangul3.mld`, `hangul4.mld`, `hanja1.mld`, `hanja2.mld`, `japanese2.mld`, `japanese3.mld`, `japanese4.mld`, `japanese5.mld`, `thai.mld`.
- 2005/02/02
 - Added `\mtcsetrules`.
- 2005/02/03

- Added `\plfrule`, `\noplfrule`, `\mlfrule`, `\nomlfrule`, `\slfrule`, `\noslfrule`, `\pltrule`, `\nopltrule`, `\mltrule`, `\nomltrule`, `\sltrule`, `\nosltrule`.
- 2005/02/04
 - Added the `mtchideinmaintoc` environment.
- 2005/02/08
 - Added `latvian.mld`, `letton.mld`, `greek-mono.mld`, `greek-polydemo.mld`, `greek-polykatha.mld`, `polish2.mld`, `russian2m.mld`, and `russian2o.mld` as new language files.
- 2005/02/09
 - Added the `mtchideinmainlof` and `mtchideinmainlot` environments.
- 2005/02/10
 - Added tests on the `mtchideinmain*` environments.
- 2005/02/14
 - Added `\mtcfixindex`.

※ version 42

- 2005/02/14
 - Version 42 not released.
 - Replaced “language” by “langue” in the french documentation.
- 2005/02/15
 - Fixed a minor typo.
- 2005/02/16
 - Upgraded `\mtcfixindex`.
- 2005/02/21
 - Added `\mtcsettitle`, forgotten to be inserted in v41.

★ version 43

- 2005/02/21
 - Version 43: consolidation of v40, v41 and v42.
- 2005/02/24
 - Fixed a big bug in `\mtcsetformat`.
 - Fixed a bug in `mtcoeff.sty` about `\mtcfixindex`.
- 2005/03/02
 - Fixed the `\mtcset...` macros.
 - Moved history to the end of package code.
 - Added the `INSTALL` file and a chapter about installation.
- 2005/03/07
 - Fixed a typo (Benjamin BAYART).
 - Completed the hint about consistency of `\dominitoc`/`\minitoc` and `co`.

- 2005/03/08
 - Added a hint about consistency of `\minitoc` and `\tableofcontents`.
- 2005/03/09
 - Added comments about fonts.
- 2005/03/10
 - Corrections in documentation.
- 2005/03/11
 - Added `\mtcsetfeature`.
- 2005/03/14
 - Added `bulgarianb.mld` (upper bulgarian).
- 2005/03/15
 - Added `*[-\baselineskip]` after the `\\` after the top rule of each part level mini-table.
- 2005/03/16
 - Corrections in the arguments of `\mtcsetfeature`.
- 2005/03/18
 - Removed `\markboth` for `minitocs (...)` and `secttocs (...)`.
- 2005/03/21
 - Added `spanish2.mld`.
- 2005/03/22
 - Added a hint for the abstract package.
- 2005/04/07
 - Corrected the `stc@verse` environment.
 - Added `finnish2.mld`, `latin2.mld`, and `magyar2.mld`.
- 2005/04/08
 - Renamed `portuges.mld` as `portugues.mld`.
- 2005/04/12
 - Correction in `\mtcskip`.
 - First version in `.dtx` format.
- 2005/04/14
 - Removed `\ypart`, `\ychapter`, `\ysection`, and stuff; unused.
- 2005/05/11
 - Corrected a typo in `\@dosectlot`.
 - Added `\mtcfixglossary`.
 - Print the documentation with “oneside” to have all marginal notes on left. Added the (extended to 54 floats) code of `morefloats` (Don HOSEK) to allow more `marginpars` and floats.
 - Added `minitoc.ist` to format the index correctly.
- 2005/05/26

- Fixed rules in parttocs, partlofs and partlots.
- 2005/05/30
 - Fixed chapter-level entries in parttocs, when page numbers must be removed.
 - Added a hint about the `sectsty` package (must be loaded *before* `minitoc`).
- 2005/06/01
 - Added a hint about attempts to insert empty mini-tables.
 - Added a hint about the use of obsolete commands.
 - The mini-lists of figures or tables should not be printed empty even if `tocdepth < 1`.
- 2005/06/02
 - Added the notion of depth for mini-tables of figures/tables.
 - Added `\mtcsetdepth`.
 - The `hints` option is the default and no more considered as experimental.
- 2005/06/03
 - Added an error message in `\mtcsetdepth` if the counter is not available.
- 2005/06/06
 - Added `portuges.mld`, which loads `portugues.mld`.
- 2005/06/07
 - Added three variants for the malayalam language: `malayalam-keli.mld`, `malayalam-rachana.mld`, and `malayalam-rachana2.mld`.
- 2005/06/14
 - Added method for bilingual documentation.
- 2005/06/15
 - Added `fminitoc.ist` to format correctly the index in french.
- 2005/06/16
 - Changed “Liste des Tables” by “Liste des Tableaux” in `french.mld`, and in the french documentation, to stick to the choices of the `babel` package.
- 2005/06/17
 - The file `fminitoc.dtx` is now generated by `minitoc.ins`.
- 2005/06/21
 - Added “OUT”, “NON”, “oui”, “non”, “O”, and “o” as true/false keywords.
 - Compacted the code about detection of short/long extensions.
- 2005/06/22
 - Added “VRAI”, “FAUX”, “vrai”, “faux”, “V”, and “v” as true/false keywords.
- 2005/06/23
 - Correctly set the `\ifFTR` flag to have the names of months in the right language in the bibliography.
- 2005/06/29

- Set the flag `\mtcoffwarn@true` in `mtcoff` if a command `\mtcadd...` is found.
- 2005/07/01
 - Added `castillian.mld`.
 - Renamed `portugues.mld` as `portuguese.mld`.
- 2005/07/11
 - Added `brazilian.mld`, `british.mld`, `UKenglish.mld`, and `USenglish.mld`.
- 2005/07/12
 - Suppressed “General:” in the changes history.
- 2005/07/13
 - Replaced some `\PackageWarning` commands by `\PackageInfo`.
- 2005/07/18
 - Restoring the correspondence of each language option with a `.mld` file.
- 2005/07/20
 - Improving the `mtchideinmainlof` and `mtchideinmainlot` environments.
- 2005/07/21
 - Removing unused some flags `\if@mtc@setpagenumbers@act@` and `\if@mtc@setrules@act@`.
 - Added the `\decrementptc`, `\decrementmtc`, and `\decrementstc` commands.
- 2005/07/22
 - Corrected a bug in `mtcoff`.
 - Improved some messages in `mtcoff`.
 - Added a test on the version of the `placeins` package.
- 2005/08/23
 - Added a note about `\FloatBarrier`.
- 2005/08/24
 - Added a note about an alignment problem in the `minitocs`. Updated `minitoc.bug`.
 - Made two versions of the `mtchideinmainlof` and `mtchideinmainlot` environments, depending on the presence of the corresponding depth counter.
 - The memoir class is incompatible if too recent.
- 2005/08/25
 - Added a comment about the position of the `\do...` preparation commands.
 - Corrections in the `mtchideinmainlof` and `mtchideinmainlot` environments.
- 2005/08/26
 - Added `guarani.mld`.
- 2005/08/29
 - Added `\incrementptc`, `\incrementmtc`, and `\incrementstc`.

- Added an optional argument to `\adjustptc`, `\adjustmtc`, and `\adjuststc`.
 - Added the `k-tight` and `k-loose` package options.
- 2005/09/02
 - Added a patch for the recent version of the `memoir` class.
- 2005/09/06
 - Added `spanish3.mld`.
- 2005/09/08
 - Use `\mtcselectlanguage` in language options and in “secondary” `.mld` files.
- 2005/09/09
 - Added `\mtcloadmlo` to be used in some `.mld` files to load a `.mlo` file.
- 2005/09/12
 - Added a test to forbid direct calls of `\mtcloadmlo` by the user.
- 2005/09/13
 - Added `farsi1.mld`, `farsi1.mlo`, `farsi2.mld`, and `farsi2.mlo`.
 - Added a note about the `rubber` tool.
- 2005/09/15
 - Added `mtcglo.ist` to format the glossary.
- 2005/09/16
 - Removed the page numbers in the glossary. Done in the `*mk` scripts.

★ version 44

- 2005/09/26
 - Changes history (glossary) typeset in `RaggedRight`.
- 2005/09/27
 - Added `germanb2.mld`, `ngermanb2.mld`, `norsk2.mld`, and `nynorsk2.mld`.
- 2005/09/28
 - New method for history: embedded lists on 3 levels.
 - Removed `mtcglo.ist`.
- 2005/09/29
 - Cleaned the `*mk` scripts.
 - Added the `listfiles` package option.
- 2005/09/30
 - Corrected typos.
 - Added the name of the `.maf` file in the message of the `listfiles` package option.
 - Improved the cleaning in the `*mk` scripts, using a `.maf` file.
- 2005/10/03
 - Load the patch for the `memoir` class only if necessary; do not load it if `memoir` is dated after 2005/09/25.

- Added a remark in the FAQ chapter (and `minitoc.bug`) about precautions to take with the starred sectioning commands.
- 2005/10/04
 - Added the `nolistfiles` package option.
 - Added a hint about the `caption`, `caption2`, `ccaption`, and `mcaption` packages (they must be loaded *before* `minitoc`).
- 2005/10/05
 - Fixed typos in the documentation.
 - Fixed some marginal notes in the commented code.
- 2005/10/06
 - Minor corrections in the documentation.
 - Use the `xargs` Unix command in the `*mk` scripts to remove the auxiliary files.
- 2005/10/07
 - Minor corrections in the documentation.
 - Added a short intro to the “Frequently Asked Questions” chapter and to `minitoc.bug`.
- 2005/11/02
 - Minor corrections in the documentation.
- 2005/11/04
 - Minor corrections in the documentation.
- 2005/11/07
 - Begin adding the “Jargon” chapter.
- 2005/11/08
 - Added the french L^AT_EX Companion [262].
- 2005/11/09
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
 - Adding `minitoc.pre` in `minitoc.l`.
 - Adding a note about the need of running `imk` before `emk` or `fmk`.
- 2005/11/10
 - Fixed typos in the documentation.
 - Added a note about a problem with `minitoc`, `hyperref` and `memoir`.
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
- 2005/11/14
 - Fixed typos in the documentation.
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
 - Improve the notes about the `memoir` class.
- 2005/11/15
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
 - Improve the notes about the `memoir` class.
 - Added `\plfSfont`, `\pltSfont`, `\mlfSfont`, `\mltSfont`, `\slfSfont`, and `\sltSfont` for subfigures and subtables entries in the mini-tables.

- 2005/11/16
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
 - Fixed a bug about fonts for subfigures and subtables entries in the mini-tables.
 - Added `bicig2.mld`, `bi the.mld`, `manju.mld`, `xalx.mld`, and `khalkha.mld`.
- 2005/11/17
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
 - Added testing via internal *quarks* commands in `\mtcsetfont`.
- 2005/11/18
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
 - Fixed typos in the documentation.
- 2005/11/21
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
- 2005/11/22
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
- 2005/11/23
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
 - Updating the bibliography.
- 2005/11/24
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
- 2005/11/25
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
 - Changed “table” into “tableau” in the french doc, where necessary.
 - Updating the bibliography.
- 2005/11/28
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
 - Fixed typos in the documentation.
- 2005/11/29
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
 - Fixed typos in the documentation.
 - Fixed typos in the bibliography.
 - Updating the bibliography.
- 2005/11/30
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
 - Avoid some warnings “Token not allowed” from `pdftex`.
- 2005/12/01
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
- 2005/12/02
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
 - Reordering a long sequence of citations.

- Added `mailto:` in the mailing URLs.
- 2005/12/05
 - Fixed typos in the documentation.
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
 - Added a hint about the `varsects` package (must be loaded *before* `minitoc`).
- 2005/12/06
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
 - Correcting an hyperlink in the bibliography (for the `xr` package).
 - Attempting to avoid broken URLs, using `quote`, footnotes and `\par`.
- 2005/12/07
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
 - Updating the bibliography.
 - Corrections of layout (some headers, a table).
 - In the warning message of the hint about a number of mini-tables greater than 99 (if short extensions), give the effective number.
 - Reduce the width of some info, warning or error messages.
- 2005/12/08
 - Corrections of layout (some headers).
- 2005/12/09
 - Corrections of french quotes.
 - Added some PDF options.
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
 - Corrected an URL to the $\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}$ in the bibliography.
- 2005/12/19
 - Made some messages shorter (mainly by removing stars).
- 2005/12/21
 - Correction of typos.
 - Added some labels.
 - Added a chapter with the (explained) messages. Not yet sorted.
 - The documentation needs 4 \LaTeX runs.
- 2005/12/22
 - Made some messages shorter.
 - Corrections in the list of messages.
 - Updating the bibliography.
- 2005/12/23
 - Improving the placement of floats on pages of floats: to the top.
- 2006/01/03
 - Corrections in the documentation (thanks to Markus GLEISZNER).
 - Added `addsec.tex`
- 2006/01/04

- Corrected the flag `\ifundottedmtc`.
 - Correction to make `addsec.tex` work.
- 2006/01/05
 - Added “*” as keyword for the first argument of `\mtcsetpagenumbers` and `\mtcsetrules` (asked by Markus GLEISZNER).
 - Removed “`\MessageBreak`” from the index.
- 2006/01/06
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
 - Corrected the bibliography entry about BangTeX.
 - Updated the bibliography.
 - Used the `afterpage` package [102] in the documentation to fix a float positioning problem.
- 2006/01/09
 - Corrections in the documentation.
 - Fixing a float positioning problem.
- 2006/01/10
 - Corrections in the documentation.
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
 - Updated the bibliography.
 - Added the bahasam language.
 - Added the albanian language.
 - Added the hebrew2 language.
- 2006/01/11
 - Updated the bibliography.
 - Updated the documentation for the albanian, bahasa, bahasam, and hebrew2 languages.
 - Updated `french.mld` (removing abusive uppercase letters).
 - Corrected the `italian.mld` file. Added the `italian2` language.
 - Added the australian and newzealand languages (english).
 - Renamed the bahasa language as `bahasai`; bahasa is synonym of `bahasai`.
 - Added the malay and meyalu languages, synonyms of `bahasam`.
 - Added the indon and indonesian languages, synonyms of `bahasai`.
- 2006/01/12
 - Updated the bibliography.
 - Updated the acknowledgements.
 - Added references to the new bibliographic entries.
- 2006/01/13
 - Fixed an instability in page breaks in the documentation of `japanese3.mld`.
 - Added comments in some `.mld` files.
 - Added `magyar3.mld`.
 - Updated `lithuanian.mld`.

- 2006/01/16
 - Correction in `\mtcaddsection`.
- 2006/01/17
 - Correction in `\mtcfixindex` and `\mtcfixglossary`.
 - Updated the bibliography.
 - Limitation of the initial depth of displayed bookmarks.
- 2006/01/18
 - Added some comments in point 34 of the FAQ (and in `minitoc.bug`) about the initialization of fonts.
 - Added `romanian2.mld` and `romanian3.mld`.
 - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/01/19
 - Updated the bibliography.
 - Load some packages before `hyperref`.
 - Added `spanish4.mld`.
- 2006/01/23
 - Corrected the table about default titles.
 - Corrected the keywords for `\mtcsetfont`.
 - Added `lowersorbian.mld`, `uppersorbian.mld`, and `ukrainian.mld`.
- 2006/01/24
 - Updated documentation for `lowersorbian.mld`, `uppersorbian.mld`, and `ukrainian.mld`.
- 2006/01/25
 - Corrections in the documentation.
 - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/01/26
 - Added a hint about the KOMA-Script classes [207, 270, 308], and an entry in the FAQ chapter (and in `minitoc.bug`).
- 2006/01/27
 - Updated the bibliography.
 - Added a note in documentation of `serbian.mld` and `serbianc.mld`.
- 2006/01/30
 - Added `ethiopian2.mld` (for Omega).
- 2006/01/31
 - Simplifications in the “Messages” chapter.
 - Corrections in the “Jargon” chapter.
- 2006/02/01
 - Corrections in the documentation.
 - Added the “Postface” chapter.
- 2006/02/02

- Corrections in the “Postface” chapter.
 - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/02/06
 - Corrections in the documentation.
 - Updated the bibliography.
 - Added package `dblacont` [258] for the “The pdfTeX Program” entry in the bibliography. Its author’s first name needs a double accent (Thế Thành HÀN).
- 2006/02/07
 - Corrections in the documentation.
 - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/02/09
 - Corrections in the documentation.
- 2006/02/10
 - Corrections in the documentation.
 - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/02/13
 - Added `malayalam-omega.mld` and `malayalam-omega.mlo`.
 - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/02/14
 - Added `kannada.mld`.
 - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/02/15
 - Corrections in `russianb.mld` and `spanish.mld`.
 - Corrections in the documentation and the bibliography.
 - Place `\mtcfixglossary` before `\mtcfixindex`.
- 2006/02/16
 - Added a citation from Donald ARSENEAU.
 - Updated the bibliography.
 - Updated the acknowledgments.
- 2006/02/17
 - Updated the bibliography.
 - Updated the jargon.
- 2006/02/20
 - Added `u8hangul.mld`, `u8hangul.mlo`, `u8hanja.mld`, and `u8hanja.mlo`.
- 2006/02/21
 - Renamed languages `u8hangul` and `u8hanja` into `hangul-u8` and `hanja-u8`.
 - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/02/22
 - Added a hint about repeated preparation commands.
 - Moved up the declaration of some flags relative to the `hints` option.

- Added `\mtcprepare`.
- 2006/02/23
 - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/02/24
 - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/02/27
 - Corrections in the documentation.
 - Added `minitoc.pre` to class 6.
- 2006/02/28
 - Corrections in the documentation.
 - Corrected the position of tables in the “Jargon” chapter.
 - Corrected `irish.mld`, `lsorbian.mld` and `usorbian.mld`.
 - Added `polski.mld`.
- 2006/03/01
 - Hints about the `jura` class and the `alphanum` package, incompatible with `minitoc`.
- 2006/03/02
 - Use bibliographic styles with an URL field, built with the help of `urlbst` [158].
- 2006/03/06
 - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/03/08
 - Corrections in `magyar.mld`, `magyar2.mld`, and `magyar3.mld`.
 - Added `russian-cca.mld`, `russian-cca1.mld`, and `russian-lh.mld`, with their `.mlo` files.
- 2006/03/09
 - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/03/10
 - Update the bibliography.
 - Added `russian-lhcyralt.mld`, `russian-lhcyrkoi.mld`, and `russian-lhcyrwin.mld`, with their `.mlo` files.
- 2006/03/13
 - Corrections in the documentation.
- 2006/03/14
 - Added the `mtcmess` package.
- 2006/03/16
 - The messages are now numbered.
 - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/03/20
 - Corrections in the documentation.
- 2006/03/21

W0029

W0025

- Update the bibliography.
- 2006/03/22
 - Update the jargon.
- 2006/03/28
 - Corrections in the documentation.
 - Update the jargon.
- 2006/03/29
 - Added FAQ 37 about .mld files and babel.
 - Added french1.mld and french2.mld.
 - Update the jargon.
- 2006/03/30
 - Added english1.mld and english2.mld.

★ version 45

- 2006/03/31
 - Suppression of the PostScript versions of the documentation.
 - Added arab2.mld, bicig3.mld, buryat2.mld, xalx2.mld, and xalx3.mld.
- 2006/04/03
 - Corrections in the documentation.
- 2006/04/04
 - Added swedish2.mld.
 - The `insection` package option loads also the `flafter` package.
- 2006/04/05
 - Corrections in the documentation.
 - Added `lamed.eps` and `lamed.pdf` as images for the *Lamed* logo (built from `lamed.tex`).
 - Reordering of the chapters in the user's manual (part I).
- 2006/04/06
 - Use `sectsty` to better format section titles.
- 2006/04/07
 - Corrections in the documentation.
 - Added `\ifmtcsecondpart` to check if the document has exactly 2 parts.
- 2006/04/10
 - Corrections in the documentation.
- 2006/04/11
 - Corrections in the documentation.
- 2006/04/12
 - Corrections in the documentation.
- 2006/04/13

- In the `insection` package option, load the `flafter` package *before* the `placeins` package.
 - Added a figure about the float barriers.
- 2006/04/27
 - Added notes in FAQ 20, about the use with the `appendix` package.
 - Added comments about the `insection` option.
 - Update the bibliography.
 - Begin correction of the `mtchideinmaintoc` environment.
- 2006/05/02
 - Added notes in `minitoc.bug`, point 20, about the use with the `appendix` package.
 - End correction of the `mtchideinmaintoc` environment.
 - Analogous corrections in the `mtchideinmainlof` and `mtchideinmainlot` environments.
 - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/05/03
 - Added notes about the `mtchideinmainlof` and `mtchideinmainlot` environments.
 - Added `hide1.tex` and `hide2.tex`.
 - Added a hint about the `fncychap` package (must be loaded *before* `minitoc`). W0086
 - Added a hint about the `quotchap` package (must be loaded *before* `minitoc`). W0087
 - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/05/04
 - Update the bibliography.
 - Added a hint about the `romannum` package (must be loaded *before* `minitoc`). W0088
 - Added a hint about the `sfheaders` package (must be loaded *before* `minitoc`). W0089
 - Added a hint about the `alnumsec` package (must be loaded *before* `minitoc`). W0090
 - Corrections in the documentation.
- 2006/05/05
 - Corrections in the documentation.
- 2006/05/24
 - Corrections in the documentation.
 - Renamed `hide.tex` to `hide1.tex`.
 - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/05/30
 - Corrections in the documentation.
 - Use `\MakeUpperCase` in `\markboth` for page styles.
- 2006/05/31
 - Update the bibliography.
 - Added a hint about the `captcont` package (must be loaded *before* `minitoc`).
 - Corrections in the documentation.

- Added `uighur.mld`, `uighur2.mld`, and `uighur3.mld` (as synonyms for the `bicig` variants).
- 2006/06/01
 - Corrections in the documentation.
 - Added description of `MonTeX` in the jargon.
 - Added a comment about the `imk` script in `INSTALL` and the “Installation” chapter.
 - Added an entry about “package” in the jargon.
 - Added the `mtc-apx.tex` example file.
 - Added FAQ 44 and the `\mtcgapbeforeheads` and `\mtcgapafterheads` commands.
- 2006/06/02
 - Corrections in the documentation.
 - Update the bibliography.
 - Added the `gaps.tex` example file.
- 2006/06/05
 - Corrections in the documentation.
 - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/06/06
 - Corrections in the documentation.
 - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/06/08
 - Corrections in the documentation.
 - Spacing correction in `french2.mld`.

★ version 46

- 2006/06/09
 - Corrections in the documentation and the bibliography.
- 2006/06/21
 - Update the bibliography.
 - Comment about the `thailatex` package.
- 2006/06/22
 - Generate some example files with `minitoc.dtx/minitoc.ins`.
 - Added chapter “Example files”.
- 2006/06/23
 - Renamed chapter “Example files” as “Examples of documents”.
 - Use the `lipsum` package [168] in some of the examples of documents.
 - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/06/27
 - Update the examples of documents.
 - Added the `second.tex` example file.

- 2006/06/29
 - Added the `amem.tex`, `mem.tex` and `mem1.tex` example files.
- 2006/06/30
 - Added the `fo1.tex`, `fo2.tex` and `scr.tex` example files.
- 2006/07/03
 - Added the `subf.tex` example file.
 - Corrections about the depth of `minilofs`, `minilots` and `siblings`.
- 2006/07/04
 - Added the `tsfc.tex` and `tbi.tex` example files.
 - Corrections in the bibliography.
- 2006/07/07
 - Corrections of typos.
 - Corrections in the bibliography.
 - Added the `2c.tex` and `mtc-bo.tex` example files.
 - Correction in `french2.mld`.
- 2006/07/10
 - Correction in `minilots` and `minilofs` (and `siblings`) about depth.
 - Added the `hop.tex` and `cri.tex` example files.
 - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/07/11
 - Added the `livre.tex`, `ch0.tex`, `tlc.tex` and `mu.tex` example files.
 - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/07/12
 - Update the jargon.
- 2006/07/13
 - Corrections in the documentation.
 - The not released versions are flagged by `✱` in place of `★`.
- 2006/07/17
 - The “About this document” section becomes a starred first chapter.
- 2006/07/18
 - Added the `hir.tex` and `hia.tex` example files.
- 2006/07/19
 - Update the bibliography.
 - Corrections in `add.tex` and `addsec.tex` for the index.
 - Added the `xmk` script to typeset the examples into PDF documents.
 - Updated the scripts to treat the examples.
- 2006/07/20
 - Do not forget `\jobname.mtc1` in the list of files.
 - In the scripts, the backup directory (OLD) is now `/tmp/‘whoami’/OLD`.
 - In the scripts, the repartition directories (`CL[0-9]`) are now `/tmp/‘whoami’/CL[0-9]`.

★ version 47

- 2006/07/26
 - Corrections in the documentation and the bibliography.
 - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/07/27
 - Added `arabi.mld` and `farsi3.mld` (from the `Arabi` system [191]).
 - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/07/28
 - Update the jargon.
- 2006/07/31
 - Fixed `\l@xsection`.
 - Fixed some spacings in mini-tables.
- 2006/08/01
 - Added a `\kernafter...` vertical kern between each minitable and its bottom rule.
 - Added point 45 of the FAQ.
- 2006/08/03
 - Minor correction in warning message `F0008`.
 - Update the bibliography.
 - Fixed a bug in `romanian2.mld` and `romanian3.mld`.
 - Shortened the result of some example documents by using the `report` class in place of the `book` class (hence using one side printing).

★ version 48

- 2006/08/04
 - Fixed typos.
- 2006/08/22
 - Update the bibliography.
 - No preamble in `add.bib`.
- 2006/08/23
 - Corrections in the TOC formatting.
 - Increasing `\textwidth`.
 - Correction of the preamble problem in `add.bib` and all generated files.
- 2006/08/24
 - Remove comments about spurious lines in preamble of generated files.
 - Added `devanagari.mld` and `hindi.mld`.
- 2006/08/25
 - Update the bibliography.
 - Added `hindi-modern.mld`.
 - Corrected the `\name` macro (for the documentation).

- 2006/08/28
 - Corrections in the bibliography.
 - Correction (conversion) in `hindi-modern.mld`.
- 2006/08/29
 - Added error E0036 if `english.mld` is not found to set the default titles.
- 2006/08/31
 - Update the bibliography.
 - Modified the `plainurl.bst` to have family names of authors and editors in small caps and years in old style digits. Titles are in emphasis. The `frplain1.bst` style is also updated.
- 2006/09/01
 - Update the bibliography.
 - The bibliographic styles `plainurl.bst` and `frplain1.bst` are renamed `en-mtc.bst` and `fr-mtc.bst`.
- 2006/09/05
 - Update the bibliography.
 - Renamed `add.bib` to `mtc-add.bib`.
 - Renamed `add.tex` to `mtc-add.tex`.
 - Renamed `addsec.tex` to `mtc-ads.tex`.
 - Renamed `2c.tex` to `mtc-2c.tex`.
 - The `listfiles` package option is now active by default.
- 2006/09/07
 - Renamed `app-mem.tex` to `mtc-amm.tex`.
 - Renamed `apx.tex` to `mtc-apx.tex`.
 - Renamed `bo.tex` to `mtc-bo.tex`.
 - Renamed `ch0.tex` to `mtc-ch0.tex`.
 - Renamed `cri.tex` to `mtc-cri.tex`.
 - Renamed `fo1.tex` to `mtc-fo1.tex`.
 - Renamed `fo2.tex` to `mtc-fo2.tex`.
 - Renamed `gaps.tex` to `mtc-gap.tex`.
 - Renamed `hia.tex` to `mtc-hia.tex`.
 - Renamed `hir.tex` to `mtc-hir.tex`.
 - Renamed `hide1.tex` to `mtc-hi1.tex`.
 - Renamed `hide2.tex` to `mtc-hi2.tex`.
 - Renamed `hop.tex` to `mtc-hop.tex`.
 - Renamed `livre.tex` to `mtc-liv.tex`.
 - Renamed `mem.tex` to `mtc-mem.tex`.
 - Renamed `mem1.tex` to `mtc-mm1.tex`.
 - Renamed `mini-art.tex` to `mtc-art.tex`.
 - Renamed `minitoc-ex.tex` to `mtc-bk.tex`.
 - Renamed `mu.tex` to `mtc-mu.tex`.
 - Renamed `scr.tex` to `mtc-scr.tex`.

- Renamed `second.tex` to `mtc-2nd.tex`.
- Renamed `subf.tex` to `mtc-sbf.tex`.
- Renamed `tbi.tex` to `mtc-tbi.tex`.
- Renamed `tlc.tex` to `mtc-tlc.tex`.
- Renamed `tsfc.tex` to `mtc-tsf.tex`.
- 2006/09/08
 - Updated the bibliography (added the Pentaglot).
 - Corrected the format of two tables about NFSS.
 - Example documents in alphabetical order in their chapter.
- 2006/09/11
 - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/09/12
 - Added a figure about systems derived from \TeX and \LaTeX .
- 2006/09/13
 - Added the `mtc-syn.tex` example document file.

★ version 49

- 2006/09/14
 - Slightly modified the layout of the list of files (“Installation” chapter).
 - Simplifications in the scripts.
 - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/09/18
 - Updated the bibliography.
 - Added point 46 in the FAQ and example file `mtc-tlo.tex`.
- 2006/09/26
 - Updated the bibliography.
 - Corrections in the bibliography and the bibliographic styles.
- 2006/09/29
 - Better error messages about undefined preparation and insertion commands.
 - Updated the bibliography.
 - Added “+” and “-” as synonyms for “on” and “off”, respectively.
- 2006/10/20
 - Corrections in the bibliography.
 - Fixed typos.
 - Updated the bibliography.
 - Added a table of some encodings.
- 2006/10/31
 - Suppressed the “Summary” entry in the summary, but added it in the Table of Contents.
 - Improving some tables.
 - Added the `japanese6.mld` and `japanese6.mlo` files.

- Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/11/03
 - Corrections in the bibliography.
 - Corrections in formatting a citation from Donald ARSENEAU.
 - Combine four figures in one (with sub-figures).
 - Added (in the memento) a table of the classes and packages which are incompatible or need precautions with minitoc.
 - Added a hint about the hangcaption package (must be loaded *before* minitoc).
- 2006/11/06
 - Completed the list of the standard classes.
- 2006/11/09
 - Added a validation of the language options with the presence of the .mld and .mlo files.
 - Added notes about the mandatory presence of the english.mld file.
- 2006/11/13
 - The validation of the language options writes only informative messages in the *document.log* file and, if necessary, gives only one warning message.

W0092

★ version 50

- 2006/11/17
 - Removed old examples of documents: mtc-adds.tex, mtc-amem.tex, mtc-book.tex, mtc-gaps.tex, mtc-mem1.tex, mtc-subf.tex, and mtc-tsfc.tex.
 - Updated the bibliography.
 - Added the tmk script and a table describing a TDS structure for minitoc.
 - Added an item about the TDS in the jargon.
 - Updated the INSTALL file and the “Installation” chapter.
- 2006/11/29
 - Added the warning message W0094 with the list of the missing minitoc languages files (.mld and .mlo).
 - Corrections in the bibliography.
 - Updated the INSTALL file and the “Installation” chapter.
 - Changed the names of the scratch directories in some scripts.
 - Updated the bibliography.
 - Added the file minitoc-tds.zip (a ZIP archive of a TDS-compliant hierarchy of all files of the package) to the distribution.

★ version 51

- 2006/12/18
 - Improving the index: packages and classes, scripts, tools, names, examples, extensions, options, language options.

- 2006/12/20
 - Improving the index: names.
 - Updated some `.mld` files with names of the authors of titles.
- 2007/01/09
 - Miscellaneous corrections.
 - The names of some internal macros are shortened to fit into the margin.
 - Added a `\ProvidesFile` command to the example files.
 - Indexing the environments (not perfect).
 - Indexing the files.
 - Renamed the file “catalog” into “CATALOG”.
 - Indexing the counters and depth counters.
 - The example files are in their own directory in the (proposed) TDS hierarchy.

★ version 52

- 2007/01/11
 - Correction of index ordering.
 - Default option in boldface in the index.
 - Adding some informations about authors for language specific titles.
 - Updated the bibliography.
- 2007/01/12
 - Added fake sections in the “Examples of documents” chapter.
 - Removed the preparation of the documentation in PostScript format.
- 2007/01/15
 - Added the `cmk` script to convert the documentation from PDF format into PostScript format.
 - Removed `duplex2v.pro`.
- 2007/01/17
 - Indexing the referenced commands.
- 2007/01/18
 - Corrected the name `Thế Thành HÀN` (first name before last name, the english way).
 - Corrected some other names.
- 2007/01/19
 - Added `mongolb.mld` and `mongolb.mlo`.
 - Removed `mongolb.mlo` (new cyrillic encodings T2 and X2 in `mongolb.mld`).
 - Added the example file `mtc-3co.tex`.
 - Trying to use a recent version of the `cite` [12] package (2003/11/04, 4.01) to allow sorting, but still clashes with `hyperref`.
- 2007/01/26
 - Balancing the columns in the index.
- 2007/01/29

- Correction of the indexing of the environments.
- 2007/01/31
 - Improving the index layout.
 - Updated `galician.mld`.
- 2007/02/05
 - Added `mongolian.mld` which loads `mongolb.mld`.
- 2007/02/09
 - Indexing the names of authors.
 - Updated the bibliography.
- 2007/02/12
 - Updated the acknowledgements.

★ version 53

- 2007/02/13
 - Added the example file `mtc-fko.tex`.
 - Corrected `\kernafterminitoc` and `siblings`.
- 2007/02/19
 - Updated the bibliography.
 - Bibliographic references for packages and classes in the index.
- 2007/03/02
 - Added a header to the index, to explain notations.
 - Updated the bibliography.
 - Changed the style of page and line numbers in the index.
 - Updated `kannada.mld`.
 - Dangerous bend symbols are now in the right margin.
- 2007/03/06
 - Improved the presentation of example files.
 - Using the `natbib` package [124, 125] to sort the sequences of citations.
- 2007/03/09
 - Correction in table 7.2 on page 245.
 - Renamed `minitoc-texmf.zip` into `minitoc-tds.zip`.
- 2007/03/19
 - Use the `sort&compress` option of the `natbib` package [124, 125] to compress the sequences of citations; the `hypernat` package must also be loaded (after `natbib` and `hyperref`).
 - Updated the bibliography.
- 2007/03/22
 - Added changing the title of the `parttoc` for appendices in `mtc-apx.tex`.

★ version 54

- 2007/03/27
 - Added the “open” and “close” features.
 - Indexing the features.
 - Added the `mtc-ocf.tex` example file.
- 2007/04/06
 - Added the “`\mtcfixnomenclature`” command.
 - Added the `mtc-nom.tex` example file.
 - Updated the bibliography.
 - Corrected the last argument of `\mtcsetfeature` and siblings, using `\mtc@toks`.
 - Some mini-tables are set on two columns in the manual.
 - Indexing the messages. Messages noted in the right margin.
 - Corrected a bug in `mtcoff`.
 - Added `latinc.mld` and `latinc2.mld` for classical latin.
- 2007/04/12
 - Added internal hyperlinks for messages.
 - Load the `hypcap` package for hyperlinks in the documentation.
- 2007/06/06
 - Added `\mtcoffset` and `co.` for an horizontal offset of a mini-table.
 - Added `\mtcsetoffset` for an horizontal offset of a mini-table type.
 - Added the `mtc-ofs.tex` example file.
 - Added flagging of macros in example files.
 - The 2007 section in the “Postface” chapter was garbled.
 - More internal links in the documentation.
 - Updated the bibliography.
 - Added a clickable table of all messages.
 - Improved column breaks in the index.
 - Added a local minitoc in the “Jargon” chapter.
 - Added `lithuanian2.mld`.
 - Added `latvian2.mld` and `letton2.mld`.
 - Grouped `.mld/.mlo` pairs in table 7.1 on page 244.

★ version 55

- 2007/06/12
 - Added a hint (warning W0097) about the `flowfram` [333, 334] package (incompatible). W0097
 - Added a *hint* (I0053) about the `float` [238], `floatrow` [223], `trivfloat` [375], and `rotfloat` [322] packages. I0053
- 2007/06/22
 - Regrouping some marginal notes about messages; improving their positions.
 - Improve page breaks in the documentation.

- Updated the bibliography.
 - Corrected a bug about minitocs in appendices for the memoir class.
- 2007/06/29
 - Changed the color of hyperlinks.
 - Revised the format of the headers.
 - Corrected some `\mtcset...` commands to use `\edef` to correctly evaluate `\mtc@toks`.

Index

In this index, italic style numbers (*123*) are page numbers, normal roman numbers (123) are code line references for usage, bold roman numbers (**123**) are code line references for definitions; colored numbers in square brackets, like this: \hookrightarrow [132], are bibliographic references, eventually sorted and compressed.

The names of commands, environments, files, suffixes, options, features, messages identifiers⁴⁸, and languages, are in typewriter font (**bold** for default options or the default language). The names of tools, packages and classes are in sans serif font. The people names are in roman for the first names, in SMALL CAPS for the family names, separated by a comma, the family name first⁴⁹, like in “LAMPOR, Leslie” in the index.

Symbols

.F (extension)	53, 54, 208, 302	.lof (extension)	27, 54, 57, 60–62, 67, 155, 182–184, 208, 211, 282, 284–286, 310, 311, 319, 338, 345, 360, 367, 456, 597
.G (extension)	53, 54, 208, 338	.log (extension)	30, 32, 51, 54, 56, 79, 147, 154, 165, 172, 173, 205, 208, 221, 267, 269, 286, 410, 434, 435, 465, 600, 620
.H (extension)	53, 54, 208, 360	.lot (extension)	27, 54, 57, 60, 62, 67, 155, 183, 184, 208, 211, 282, 284–286, 311, 321, 322, 338, 347, 361, 369, 456, 595, 597
.M (extension)	53, 54, 208, 299	.maf (extension)	51, 79, 157, 208, 224, 253, 405, 437, 605
.P (extension)	53, 54, 208, 338	.mld (extension)	20, 35, 38, 43, 69, 74, 80, 157, 166, 172, 190, 199, 201, 208, 210, 214, 243, 245, 249–251, 253, 255, 267, 401, 405–407, 461, 465, 493, 595, 597, 599, 604, 605, 609, 613, 620, 621
.S (extension)	53, 54, 209, 360	.mlf (extension)	27, 53, 54, 208, 302, 311
.T (extension)	53, 54, 209, 305	.mlo (extension)	20, 38, 43, 69, 158, 166, 172, 191, 208, 214, 219, 243, 245, 253, 255, 267, 401, 402, 405, 407, 461, 465, 522, 605, 612, 620
.U (extension)	53, 54, 209, 338	.mlt (extension)	27, 53, 54, 208, 305, 311
.V (extension)	53, 54, 209, 361		
.aux (extension)	54, 57, 59, 62, 207, 211, 274		
.bst (extension)	217, 220, 241, 244–246, 255, 618		
.cls (extension)	208		
.dtx (extension)	43, 208, 247, 252, 253, 465, 541, 602		
.ins (extension)	208, 247, 252		
.ist (extension)	220, 226, 244–246, 602, 603, 605		
.lan (extension)	220, 226, 244–246, 441		

⁴⁸The messages identifiers appear in the right margin of the text, near the points of usage.

⁴⁹For some oriental names (like japanese, korean, vietnamese or indian names), it is sometimes difficult to know which is the first or the last name.

- .mtc (extension) . 27, 51, 53, 54, 57, 58, 60, 208, 281, 286, 287, 299, 311, 437, 591
- .mtc1 (extension) 286, 437, 616
- .pdf (extension) 245
- .plf (extension) 30, 53, 54, 208, 338
- .plt (extension) 30, 53, 54, 208, 338
- .pre (extension) 226, 244–246, 606, 612
- .ptc (extension) 30, 53, 54, 208, 338
- .slf (extension) 29, 53, 54, 209, 360
- .slt (extension) 29, 53, 54, 209, 361
- .stc (extension) 29, 53, 54, 209, 360
- .sty (extension) . . 209, 235, 243, 246, 247, 249, 595
- .tar (extension) 247
- .tex (extension) 155, 209
- .tgz (extension) 247
- .toc (extension) 27, 49, 54, 57, 58, 60–62, 67, 155, 183, 184, 209, 211, 249, 282, 284–286, 293, 295, 310, 311, 316, 338, 342, 360, 365, 456, 592, 595, 597
- .zip (extension) 247
- /tmp/‘whoami’.imk (file) 246
- /tmp/‘whoami’.rmk (file) 247
- /tmp/‘whoami’.tmk (file) 246, 247
- /tmp/‘whoami’/OLD (file) 616
- \@@dominilof **3733, 3771**
- \@@dominilot **3752, 3771**
- \@@dominitoc (command) 311
- \@@dominitoc **3699, 3714, 3771**
- \@@dopartlof 4434, **4454**
- \@@dopartlot 4453, **4454**
- \@@doparttoc 4415, **4454**
- \@@dosectlof 5054, **5074**
- \@@dosectlot 5073, **5074**
- \@@dosecttoc 5035, **5074**
- \@M . 1468, 1478, 3187, 3625, 3648, 3660, 4364, 4944, 4945, 4975
- \@Undottedtocline (command) 309
- \@Undottedtocline **3643, 6375, 8103**
- \@Undottedtoclinep (command) . . 309, 310
- \@Undottedtoclinep . **3655, 3668**, 3680, 3683, 3686, 3691, 3694, 3697, **8103**
- \@addtoreset 942, 1195
- \@afterheading . **4112, 4119, 4126**, 8189, 8197
- \@afterindenttrue 3186, 3647, 3659
- \@caption (command) 592
- \@centercr 3408, **4137**, 4730
- \@chapter (command) 52, 284, 308, 417
- \@chapter . . **1, 3119, 3627, 6918, 7654**, 8163, 8165
- \@dominilof **3704**, 3772
- \@dominilof@used@false 2903
- \@dominilof@used@true 3744
- \@dominilot **3709**, 3773
- \@dominilot@used@false 2904
- \@dominilot@used@true 3763
- \@dominitoc (command) 311
- \@dominitoc **3699**, 3771
- \@dominitoc@used@false 2902
- \@dominitoc@used@true (command) . . . 311
- \@dominitoc@used@true 3725
- \@dopartlof **4386**, 4455
- \@dopartlof@used@false 2897
- \@dopartlof@used@true 4427
- \@dopartlot **4390**, 4456
- \@dopartlot@used@false 2898
- \@dopartlot@used@true 4446
- \@doparttoc **4382**, 4454
- \@doparttoc@used@false 2896
- \@doparttoc@used@true 4408
- \@dosectlof **5006**, 5075
- \@dosectlof@used@false 2909
- \@dosectlof@used@true 5047
- \@dosectlot (command) 602
- \@dosectlot **5010**, 5076
- \@dosectlot@used@false 2910
- \@dosectlot@used@true 5066
- \@dosecttoc **5002**, 5074
- \@dosecttoc@used@false 2908
- \@dosecttoc@used@true 5028
- \@dotsep (command) 43, 44, 382
- \@dotsep . **5681**, 5694, 5699, 5704, 5709, 5714, 5719, 5724, 5729, 5734
- \@dottedtocline (command) 70, 288, 310, 330, 333, 336, 352, 355, 358
- \@dottedtocline . **176, 3468, 3540, 3608, 3625, 3668**, 3680, 3683, 3686, 3691, 3694, 3697, **4194, 4271, 4346, 4364, 4791, 4861, 4928, 4944**
- \@dottedxxxline **2449**
- \@ensure@R 9409, 9412, 9415, 9419, 9422, 9425, 9429, 9432, 9435
- \@fileswf@false (command) 599
- \@fileswf@false . 3472, 3544, 3612, 4201, 4275, 4350, 4796, 4865, 4933
- \@firstchapteris@used@false 2912
- \@firstchapteris@used@true 3372
- \@firstoftwo 3021
- \@firstpartis@used@false 2911
- \@firstpartis@used@true 4063
- \@firstsectionis@used@false 2913
- \@firstsectionis@used@true 4701
- \@gobble (command) 600
- \@gobble **7964, 7965, 8103**
- \@gobblethree (command) 405
- \@gobblethree **6417, 6498**

- \@gobbletwo (command) 449
- \@gobbletwo **7903, 7948**
- \@hangfrom **4965**
- \@ifclasslater 3013
- \@ifclassloaded . . . **2988, 6737, 6837, 6846, 6861, 6884**
- \@ifnextchar (command) . 299, 302, 305, 448
- \@ifnextchar . . **3419, 3489, 3557, 3699, 3704, 3709, 4149, 4215, 4289, 4394, 4742, 4809, 4876, 5014, 5295, 7884, 7890, 7896, 7902, 8163**
- \@ifpackagelater 6827
- \@ifpackageloaded **2941, 2958, 2960, 2962, 2964, 2966, 2968, 2970, 2972, 2974, 2976, 2978, 2980, 2982, 2984–2987, 6713, 6721, 6729, 6761, 6769, 6777, 6870, 6891, 7591**
- \@ifpackagewith **6777, 6870**
- \@ifundefined (command) 284, 285, 295, 322, 370
- \@ifundefined . **2799, 2817, 5295, 5794, 5870, 6199, 6242, 6285, 6379, 6396, 6899, 6918, 6937, 7651, 7654, 7657, 7708, 7789**
- \@input (command) 317, 320, 322, 343, 345, 347
- \@input **3877, 3942, 4003, 6328, 6348**
- \@inputcheck (command) 59, 287, 593
- \@inputcheck . . **3043, 3170, 3861, 3873, 3890, 3927, 3938, 3955, 3988, 3999, 4016, 4539, 4540, 4551, 4567, 4599, 4600, 4611, 4627, 4659, 4660, 4671, 4687, 5143, 5144, 5155, 5171, 5203, 5204, 5215, 5231, 5263, 5264, 5275, 5291**
- \@longextensions@false (command) . . . 286
- \@longextensions@false . . 3143, 3148, 6393
- \@longextensions@true (command) . . . 286
- \@longextensions@true 3145, 8047
- \@m@mchapter 8161
- \@mainaux **2921**
- \@makechapterhead . 1465, 8188, 8193, 8195
- \@makephead@c **4126**
- \@makephead@l **4112**
- \@makephead@r **4119**
- \@makeschapterhead 1475
- \@minilof@used@false 2900
- \@minilof@used@true (command) 302
- \@minilof@used@true 3491
- \@minilot@used@false 2901
- \@minilot@used@true (command) 305
- \@minilot@used@true 3559
- \@minitoc@used@false 2899
- \@minitoc@used@true (command) 299
- \@minitoc@used@true 3421
- \@mkboth **3338, 4164, 4230, 4305**
- \@mtc@FEfalse (command) 287
- \@mtc@FEfalse 3052, 3062
- \@mtc@FEtrue (command) 287
- \@mtc@FEtrue 3044, 3055, 3060
- \@mtc@HgcLoaded@a@false 2859
- \@mtc@HgcLoaded@a@true 2965
- \@mtc@HgcLoaded@false 2858
- \@mtc@HgcLoaded@true 2964
- \@mtc@Himlof@false 6133, 6164
- \@mtc@Himlof@true 6140, 6158
- \@mtc@Himlot@false 6166, 6181, 6197
- \@mtc@Himlot@true 6173, 6191
- \@mtc@Himtoc@false 6118, 6131, 6148
- \@mtc@Himtoc@true 6125
- \@mtc@LIfalse 3047, 3051, 3052
- \@mtc@LItrue 3043, 3055
- \@mtc@abstract@loaded@false 6704
- \@mtc@abstract@loaded@true 6871
- \@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@a@false 2867
- \@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@a@true 2973
- \@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@false 2866
- \@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@true 2972
- \@mtc@captcontLoaded@a@false 2853
- \@mtc@captcontLoaded@a@true 2975
- \@mtc@captcontLoaded@false 2852
- \@mtc@captcontLoaded@true 2974
- \@mtc@captionIILoaded@a@false 2847
- \@mtc@captionIILoaded@a@true 2979
- \@mtc@captionIILoaded@false 2846
- \@mtc@captionIILoaded@true 2978
- \@mtc@captionLoaded@a@false 2845
- \@mtc@captionLoaded@a@true 2977
- \@mtc@captionLoaded@false 2844
- \@mtc@captionLoaded@true 2976
- \@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@a@false 2849
- \@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@a@true 2981
- \@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@false 2848
- \@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@true 2980
- \@mtc@chapter@def@false 2883, 2884
- \@mtc@chapter@def@true 2884
- \@mtc@chapter@undef@false 2890
- \@mtc@chapter@undef@true 2889, 2890
- \@mtc@checkfilesfalse 6388
- \@mtc@checkfilestrue 3045, 6387
- \@mtc@empty@minilof@false 2876
- \@mtc@empty@minilof@true 3501
- \@mtc@empty@minilot@false 2877
- \@mtc@empty@minilot@true 3569
- \@mtc@empty@minitoc@false 2875
- \@mtc@empty@minitoc@true 3431
- \@mtc@empty@partlof@false 2873
- \@mtc@empty@partlof@true 4227, 4302
- \@mtc@empty@partlot@false 2874

\@mtc@empty@parttoc@false	2872	\@mtc@memoirnew@false	2841, 2997
\@mtc@empty@parttoc@true	4161	\@mtc@memoirnew@true	2999
\@mtc@empty@sectlof@false	2879	\@mtc@misslang@false	6422
\@mtc@empty@sectlof@true	4821	\@mtc@misslang@true	6426, 6442, 6455, 6471
\@mtc@empty@sectlot@false	2880	\@mtc@notoccite@false	2936
\@mtc@empty@sectlot@true	4888	\@mtc@notoccite@true	6391
\@mtc@empty@secttoc@false	2878	\@mtc@part@def@false	2881, 2882
\@mtc@empty@secttoc@true	4754	\@mtc@part@def@true	2882
\@mtc@floatLoaded@false	2868	\@mtc@part@undef@false	2888
\@mtc@floatLoaded@true	2984	\@mtc@part@undef@true	2887, 2888
\@mtc@floatrowLoaded@false	2869	\@mtc@placeinsLoaded@false	2839, 7595
\@mtc@floatrowLoaded@true	2985	\@mtc@placeinsLoaded@true	7595
\@mtc@fncychapLoaded@a@false	2857	\@mtc@quotchapLoaded@a@false	2861
\@mtc@fncychapLoaded@a@true	2963	\@mtc@quotchapLoaded@a@true	2967
\@mtc@fncychapLoaded@false	2856	\@mtc@quotchapLoaded@false	2860
\@mtc@fncychapLoaded@true	2962	\@mtc@quotchapLoaded@true	2966
\@mtc@hints@false	6703	\@mtc@romannumLoaded@a@false	2863
\@mtc@hints@given@false	2837	\@mtc@romannumLoaded@a@true	2969
\@mtc@hints@given@true	3714, 3733, 3752, 4397, 4416, 4435, 5017, 5036, 5055, 5315, 6714, 6722, 6730, 6738, 6746, 6754, 6762, 6770, 6780, 6797, 6812, 6828, 6838, 6847, 6855, 6862, 6873, 6885, 6892, 6906, 6925, 6945, 6997, 7007, 7016, 7025, 7036, 7045, 7054, 7065, 7074, 7093, 7102, 7111, 7122, 7131, 7140, 7151, 7160, 7182, 7193, 7204, 7217, 7228, 7239, 7252, 7263, 7274, 7282, 7290, 7298, 7314, 7323, 7332, 7341, 7350, 7359, 7368, 7377, 7386, 7395, 7404, 7413, 7422, 7434, 7445, 7456, 7467, 7474, 7481, 7488, 7495, 7502, 7509, 7516, 7523, 7530, 7537, 7544, 7551	\@mtc@romannumLoaded@false	2862
\@mtc@hints@true	2835, 6702	\@mtc@romannumLoaded@true	2968
\@mtc@hints@w@false	2836, 6899, 6918, 6937	\@mtc@rotfloatLoaded@false	2871
\@mtc@hints@w@true	6901, 6903, 6905, 6920, 6922, 6924, 6940, 6942, 6944, 6997	\@mtc@rotfloatLoaded@true	2987
\@mtc@hyper@used@false	2942	\@mtc@sect@floats@false	2838
\@mtc@hyper@used@true	2945	\@mtc@sect@floats@true	6982–6985
\@mtc@insellang@false	6328, 6346, 6373	\@mtc@section@def@false	2885, 2886
\@mtc@insellang@true	6330	\@mtc@section@def@true	2886
\@mtc@listfiles@false	6416	\@mtc@section@undef@false	2892
\@mtc@listfiles@true	6414, 6415	\@mtc@section@undef@true	2891, 2892
\@mtc@lof@used@false	6706, 6959	\@mtc@sectstyLoaded@a@false	2843
\@mtc@lof@used@true	6966, 6975	\@mtc@sectstyLoaded@a@true	2959
\@mtc@lot@used@false	6707, 6960	\@mtc@sectstyLoaded@false	2842
\@mtc@lot@used@true	6969, 6978	\@mtc@sectstyLoaded@true	2958
\@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@a@false	2851	\@mtc@setdepth@false	6035
\@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@a@true	2983	\@mtc@setdepth@true	6030, 6033
\@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@false	2850	\@mtc@setfeature@false	5975, 5992
\@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@true	2982	\@mtc@setfeature@true	5969, 5973
\@mtc@memoirLoaded@false	2840, 2994	\@mtc@setfont@false	5435, 5453, 5493–5496, 5499, 5500, 5503, 5504, 5507–5513, 5516–5520, 5523–5527, 5530–5537, 5540–5545, 5548–5553
\@mtc@memoirLoaded@true	2989	\@mtc@setfont@true	5430, 5433, 5491
		\@mtc@setformat@false	5742, 5758
		\@mtc@setformat@true	5736, 5740
		\@mtc@setoffset@false	6079
		\@mtc@setoffset@true	6074, 6077
		\@mtc@setpagenumbers@false	5792, 5817, 5839
		\@mtc@setpagenumbers@true	5814
		\@mtc@setrules@false	5868, 5893, 5915
		\@mtc@setrules@true	5890
		\@mtc@setttitle@false	5618
		\@mtc@setttitle@true	5613, 5616
		\@mtc@setttitlefont@false	5577

- \@mtc@settitlefont@true 5572, 5575
- \@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@a@false 2865
- \@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@a@true 2971
- \@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@false 2864
- \@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@true 2970
- \@mtc@spn@ok@false 5836
- \@mtc@spn@ok@true 5834
- \@mtc@sru@ok@false 5912
- \@mtc@sru@ok@true 5910
- \@mtc@ss@insection@false 6396
- \@mtc@ss@insection@true 6411
- \@mtc@toc@used@false 6705, 6958
- \@mtc@toc@used@true 6963, 6972
- \@mtc@trivfloatLoaded@false 2870
- \@mtc@trivfloatLoaded@true 2986
- \@mtc@varsectsLoaded@a@false 2855
- \@mtc@varsectsLoaded@a@true 2961
- \@mtc@varsectsLoaded@false 2854
- \@mtc@varsectsLoaded@true 2960
- \@mtcfixglossary@false 6221, 6223
- \@mtcfixglossary@true . . . 6225, 6227, 6229
- \@mtcfixindex@false 6264, 6266
- \@mtcfixindex@true 6268, 6270, 6272
- \@mtcfixnomenclature@false . . 6307, 6309
- \@mtcfixnomenclature@true . . 6311, 6313, 6315
- \@mtcpatchmemoir@false 2988
- \@mtcpatchmemoir@true 3009
- \@namedef (command) 372
- \@namedef **5364, 5373, 5382, 5419, 5654**
- \@nameuse (command) 372
- \@nameuse **5364, 5432, 5451, 5574, 5615, 5755, 5757, 5832, 5851, 5889, 5926, 5989, 5991, 6032, 6076**
- \@newread (command) 593
- \@nobreakfalse 3331, 3479, 3551, 3619, 4208, 4282, 4357, 4803, 4870, 4938
- \@part (command) 52, 282, 337, 416
- \@part **1, 3075, 4369, 6899, 7651**
- \@partlof@used@false 2894
- \@partlof@used@true 4217
- \@partlot@used@false 2895
- \@partlot@used@true 4292
- \@parttoc@used@false 2893
- \@parttoc@used@true 4151
- \@plus 3645, 3657
- \@pnumwidth (command) 43, 44
- \@pnumwidth . . 3665, **5663**, 5692, 5697, 5702, 5707, 5712, 5717, 5722, 5727, 5732
- \@pnumwith (command) 381
- \@pt (command) 598
- \@resetfont **4019, 4039**
- \@schapter (command) 52, 284, 308, 417
- \@schapter **1, 3632, 6918, 7654**
- \@secondoftwo 3021
- \@sect (command) 52, 283, 359, 360, 417
- \@sect . . . **1, 3108, 4948, 4955, 4994, 6937, 7657**
- \@sectlof@used@false 2906
- \@sectlof@used@true 4811
- \@sectlot@used@false 2907
- \@sectlot@used@true 4878
- \@secttoc@used@false 2905
- \@secttoc@used@true 4744
- \@spart (command) 52, 282, 337, 416
- \@spart **1, 3075, 4369, 6899, 7651**
- \@ssect (command) 52, 283, 359, 417
- \@ssect **1, 3108, 6937, 7657**
- \@starttoc (command) 286, 293
- \@svsec **4965**
- \@svsechd **4965**
- \@tempdima . . . 3189, 3650, 3651, 3662, 3663
- \@tempskipa **4965**
- \@tocfile (command) 299, 302, 305
- \@tocfile **3422, 3427, 3430, 3475, 3492, 3497, 3500, 3547, 3560, 3565, 3568, 3615, 4150, 4157, 4194, 4216, 4223, 4271, 4290, 4298, 4346, 4743, 4750, 4791, 4810, 4817, 4861, 4877, 4884, 4928**
- \@tocrmarg (command) 43, 44, 382
- \@tocrmarg 3185, 3646, 3658, **5672**, 5693, 5698, 5703, 5708, 5713, 5718, 5723, 5728, 5733
- \@topnewpage **4112, 4119, 4126, 8193**
- \@undottedtocline (command) 288
- \@undottedtocline . . **3181, 3468, 3540, 3608, 4194, 4271, 4346, 4791, 4861, 4928**
- \@width 3381
- \@xsect **4965**
- \ 1, **3408, 3466, 3480, 3536, 3552, 3604, 3620, 4137**
- \jobname.lan (file) 441
- \jobname.mtc (file) 286
- \jobname.mtc1 (file) 286
- [] 20, 21, 25, 27, 29, 30, 33, 35, 38, 40, 43, 48, 49, 51–53, 56–61, 63, 64, 69–72, 74, 75, 77, 78, 87, 89, 90, 92, 93, 95, 99, 100, 104, 117, 118, 132, 137, 139–141, 143, 145, 147, 149, 150, 164, 166, 207, 209–231, 234–242, 246, 249–256, 269, 271, 274–280, 288, 297, 301, 304, 307, 313, 374, 378, 392, 400, 402, 404, 410–412, 414–416, 419, 436, 437, 443, 465–469, 471–548, 550–554, 557–590, 592, 596, 606, 609–612, 615, 617, 621–623
- \~ 10729, 10733, 10737
- 2c.tex (old example document) 616, 618

\u 1753, 7425, 7436, 7447, 7458, 8533,
8534, 8536, 8537, 8542, 8543, 8545,
8546, 8551, 8552, 8554, 8555, 8936,
8937, 8940, 8941, 8944, 8945, 9383,
9385, 9387, 9390, 9392, 9394, 9397,
9399, 9401, 9410, 9413, 9416, 9420,
9423, 9426, 9430, 9433, 9436, 9959,
9961, 9969, 9971, 9979, 9981, 10680,
10682, 10686, 10688, 10692, 10694

A

\a@tok 8289
ABOLHASSANI, Hassan 258, 489
above (option of placeins) 29–31, 186
ABRAHAMS, Paul W. 258, \hookrightarrow [1, 2]
abstract (package) 52, 69, 87, 163, 209, 252, 415,
602, \hookrightarrow [364]
abstract (environment) 52, 69
ABU EL-ATA, Nabil 258
acadian (language option) 466, 599
acadian.mld (file) 244, 245, 466
acadien (language option) 38, 466, 599
acadien.mld (file) 244, 245, 466
\accent 8693
add.bib (old example document) . . . 617, 618
add.tex (old example document) . . . 616, 618
ADDABBO, Tommaso 258
\addappheadtotoc (command) 63, 105
\addappheadtotoc 892
\addcoffeeline (command) 227, 402
\addcoffeeline 6375, 8103
\addcontentsline (command) . 33, 49, 50, 63,
204, 205
\addcontentsline 1, 28, 477,
532, 533, 826, 827, 968, 1228, **1323**,
2029, **2630**, **3085**, 3112–3115, 3121–
3124, **3340**, **3627**, 4371–4373, **4948**,
4955, **4965**, **6221**, **6264**, **6307**, **8070**,
8120, 8202, 8205, 8209, 8212
addsec.tex (old example document) . 608, 609,
616, 618
\addst@rred (command) 308
\addst@rred **3340**, **3362**, **3637**
\addstarred (command) 596
\addstarredchapter (command) 33, 204, 250,
308
\addstarredchapter . . . 1, **1323**, **3637**, **8120**
\addstarredpart (command) . . . 33, 204, 308
\addstarredpart 1, **3637**, **8120**

\addstarredsection (command) 33, 204, 295,
308
\addstarredsection 1, 1053, **3362**, **3637**, **8120**
\addto (command) 74
\addtocontents (command) 62, 63
\addtocontents . . 1, **1423**, **3632**, **4369**, **4994**,
6119, **6133**, **6166**, **6375**
\addtocontentsline 1227
\addtocounter (command) 33, 49
\addtocounter 1, 1214, **3072**, 3375–3377, **3877**,
3942, **4003**, 4066–4068, 4565, 4625,
4685, 4703–4705, 5169, 5229, 5289
\addtolength . . **1438**, **2019**, 3414, 3415, 4144,
4145, 4737, 4738
addtotoc (option of abstract) 52, 69, 163, 209
\addvspace 2796
\adjustmtc (command) . 33, 34, 49, 63, 86, 97,
145, 209, 285, 296, 605
\adjustmtc 1, **525**, **876**, 894, **2642**, **3120**, **3366**,
7874
\adjustptc (command) 33, 34, 86, 92, 209, 253,
282, 324, 605
\adjustptc . . . 1, 29, **1678**, **3085**, **4054**, **7874**
\adjuststc (command) 33, 34, 63, 86, 104, 209,
284, 349, 605
\adjuststc 1, **819**, **3111**, **4697**, **7874**
\ae 9675, 9679
afrikaan (language option) 38, 466, 467
afrikaan.mld (file) 244, 245, 466, 467
afrikaans (language option) 38, 467
afrikaans.mld (file) 244, 245, 467
after (feature) 47, 48, 80, 85, 141, 192, 209, 219,
291, 292
\afterminilof (command) 47, 85, 304
\afterminilof **3292**, **3552**, **8017**
\afterminilot (command) 47, 85, 307
\afterminilot **3292**, **3620**, **8017**
\afterminitoc (command) 47, 85, 301
\afterminitoc **3292**, **3480**, **8017**
afterpage (package) 210, 609, \hookrightarrow [102]
\afterpartlof (command) . . 47, 85, 334, 597
\afterpartlof **3285**, **4284**, **8002**
\afterpartlot (command) . . 47, 85, 336, 597
\afterpartlot **3285**, **4359**, **8002**
\afterparttoc (command) . . 47, 85, 331, 597
\afterparttoc **3285**, **4210**, **8002**
\aftersectlof (command) 47, 85, 356
\aftersectlof **3295**, **4872**, **8032**
\aftersectlot (command) 47, 85, 358
\aftersectlot **3295**, **4940**, **8032**
\aftersecttoc (command) 47, 85, 353
\aftersecttoc **3295**, **4805**, **8032**
AGUIRREGABIRIA, Juan M. 258, 472, \hookrightarrow [53]
AICARDI, Stéphane 258, \hookrightarrow [3]

- AKOPIAN, Vartan 211, 258, 469, \hookrightarrow [121]
albanian (language option) 38, 467
albanian.dtx (file) 467
albanian.mld (file) 244, 245, 467
\alef 8308–8310, 8312–8314, 8316–
8318, 8935–8937, 8939–8941, 8943–
8945, 9386, 9388, 9393, 9395, 9400,
9402
\alefhamza 8309, 8313, 8317
Aleph (package) 223, 234, \hookrightarrow [42, 161]
ALEX, A. J. 258, 522, 523, \hookrightarrow [4, 5]
ALFORD, Mark 258, \hookrightarrow [6]
\alloc@ 3127
alnumsec (package) . . 53, 75, 87, 188, 210, 254,
277, 429, 614, \hookrightarrow [212]
\Alph 1550, 1551
alphanum (package) . . 52, 74, 87, 173, 210, 410,
612, \hookrightarrow [94]
amem.tex (old example document) 616
american (language option) 38, 467
american.mld (file) . . 244, 245, 407, 467, 597
amsart (class) . . 52, 65, 87, 173, 210, 414, 600,
 \hookrightarrow [7]
amsart.cls (file) 210
amsbook (class) . . 52, 65, 87, 163, 210, 414, 600,
 \hookrightarrow [7]
amsbook.cls (file) 210
amsproc (class) . . 52, 65, 87, 174, 210, 414, 600,
 \hookrightarrow [7]
amsproc.cls (file) 210
ANDRÉ, Jacques 258, \hookrightarrow [262]
ANDRIEUX, Jérôme 258
ANGELI, Ralf 258
Antomega (package) . . 210, 465, 497–499, 517,
531, 535, 536, 544, 545, \hookrightarrow [210]
app-mem.tex (old example document) 618
APPEL, Walter 258, \hookrightarrow [8]
appendices (environment) . . 63, 105, 210, 228
appendix (package) 52, 63, 64, 87, 164, 210, 251,
410, 599, 614, \hookrightarrow [365]
\appendix (command) 62
\appendix . . 1, 27, 537, 830, 1131, **1393**, **2523**,
3351, 3797, 4495
\appendix@mtcck . . . 5481, 5509, 5518, 5525,
5532, 5542, 5550
\appendixmtc **7903**
apx.tex (old example document) 618
arab (language option) 38, 468, 469
arab.mld (file) . . . 211, 244, 245, 468, 469, 596
arab2 (language option) 38, 468
arab2.mld (file) 211, 244, 245, 468, 613
Arabi (package) 38, 43, 210, 469, 490, 617,
 \hookrightarrow [191]
arabi (language option) 38, 469
arabi.mld (file) 210, 244, 245, 469, 617
arabic (language option) 38, 210, 211, 469
\arabic . . **3781**, **3901**, **3962**, **5114**, **6119**, **6133**,
6166
arabic.ldf (file) 210
arabic.mld (file) 211, 244, 245, 469
ArabTeX (package) . . 38, 43, 211, 465, 468, 505,
 \hookrightarrow [214, 215]
ARADIAN, Achod André 258
armenian (language option) 38, 211, 469
armenian.mld (file) 211, 244, 245, 469
ArmTeX (package) 43, 211, 465, 469, 596,
 \hookrightarrow [121]
ÁRNASON, Einar 258, 508, \hookrightarrow [54]
ARNOLD, Tim 258, 314
ARPONEN, Jouko 258, \hookrightarrow [9]
ARSENEAU, Donald . 29, 30, 51, 87, 234, 251, 258,
274, 280, 285, 301, 304, 307, 593, 596,
599, 611, 620, \hookrightarrow [10–16, 374]
article (class) . . 25, 36, 37, 58, 60, 70, 100, 106,
128, 149, 200, 201, 211, 215, 216, 223,
225, 228–230, 236, 238, 242, 283, 291,
325, 439, \hookrightarrow [220]
ASLASKEN, Helmer 258, \hookrightarrow [17, 18]
ASPINALL, David 258
ÅSSEN, Ivar 258, 529
\AtBeginDocument (command) . . 74, 174, 177,
211, 275–279, 294, 324, 348, 382, 409,
410, 416, 438–440
\AtBeginDocument . . **2915**, **2941**, **2958**, **2960**,
2962, **2964**, **2966**, **2968**, **2970**, **2972**,
2974, **2976**, **2978**, **2980**, **2982**, **2984**–
2987, **3332**, **4048**, **4690**, **5662**, **6133**,
6166, **6379**, **6704**, **6899**, **7647**, **7669**,
8053
\AtEndDocument (command) 211, 410, 419, 438,
454
\AtEndDocument **2921**, **6498**, **6704**, **6981**, **7646**,
7647, 8054
australian (language option) 38, 470
australian.mld (file) 244, 245, 470
austrian (language option) 38, 470
austrian.mld (file) 244, 245, 470
\author 2028
\ayin 9384, 9391, 9398

B

- babel (package) 38, 43, 74, 124, 211, 218, 249, 465–467, 471, 472, 475–477, 480, 482–487, 490–497, 506, 508–510, 514–516, 518–521, 525–530, 532–534, 537, 541–546, 548, 550, 552, 594, 595, 603, 613, \hookrightarrow [45, 47, 65]
- BACHMANN, Philipp 258
- backref (package) \hookrightarrow [108]
- BADENES, Gonçal 258, 480, \hookrightarrow [55]
- bahasa (language option) 38, 470
- bahasa.dtx (file) 471
- bahasa.mld (file) 244, 245, 470
- bahasai (language option) 38, 470, 471, 508
- bahasai.mld (file) 244, 245, 470, 471, 508
- bahasam (language option) 38, 471, 522, 524
- bahasam.dtx (file) 471
- bahasam.mld (file) 244, 245, 471, 522, 524
- BALGARENSKY, Marin 258
- bangla (language option) 38, 211, 472, 598
- bangla.mld (file) 244, 245, 472
- BangTeX (package) 43, 211, 465, 472, 609, \hookrightarrow [286]
- BARROCA, Leonor 87, 258, \hookrightarrow [303]
- \baselineskip 2249
- \baselinestretch 1541
- basque (language option) 38, 472
- basque.dtx (file) 472
- basque.mld (file) 244, 245, 472
- BASSO, Pierre 258, \hookrightarrow [20]
- BATMUNKH, Dorjgotov 258, 525, \hookrightarrow [21]
- BAUDAIS, Jean-Yves 258
- BAUSUM, David 258, \hookrightarrow [22, 23]
- BAYART, Benjamin 48, 252, 258, 372, 600, 601, \hookrightarrow [24, 25]
- BAYET, Thierry 258, \hookrightarrow [25]
- \bcg 8427–8429, 8431–8433, 8435–8437
- BECCARI, Claudio 258, 510, 514–516, \hookrightarrow [26, 27, 56, 64]
- BEFFARA, Emmanuel 60, 258, \hookrightarrow [28]
- before (feature) 47, 48, 80, 85, 141, 192, 211, 219, 291, 292
- \beforeminilof (command) 47, 85, 303
- \beforeminilof 3279, 3505, 8017
- \beforeminilot (command) 47, 85, 306
- \beforeminilot 3279, 3573, 8017
- \beforeminitoc (command) 47, 85, 300
- \beforeminitoc 3279, 3435, 8017
- \beforepartlof (command) 47, 85, 332, 597
- \beforepartlof 3272, 4229, 8002
- \beforepartlot (command) 47, 85, 334, 597
- \beforepartlot 3272, 4304, 8002
- \beforeparttoc (command) 47, 85, 250, 291, 329, 453, 597
- \beforeparttoc 3272, 4163, 8002
- \beforesectlof (command) 47, 85, 354
- \beforesectlof 3282, 4823, 8032
- \beforesectlot (command) 47, 85, 356
- \beforesectlot 3282, 4890, 8032
- \beforesecttoc (command) 47, 85, 351
- \beforesecttoc 3282, 4756, 8032
- \begingroup 3018, 3327, 3468, 3540, 3608, 4194, 4271, 4346, 4791, 4861, 4928, 4973
- BELET, Benoît 258, \hookrightarrow [262]
- BELMOUHOU, Rachid 258, \hookrightarrow [29]
- below (option of placeins) 29–31, 187
- BÉRCES, József 258, 520, 521, \hookrightarrow [57]
- BERDNIKOV, Alexander 258, \hookrightarrow [30–33]
- BERGER, Jens 258, \hookrightarrow [34]
- BERRY, Karl 258, \hookrightarrow [1, 2, 35, 36]
- \bet 9388, 9395, 9402
- BEYENE, Berhanu 258, 487, 488, \hookrightarrow [37]
- BEZOS, Javier 87, 258, 494, 500, 544, 546, \hookrightarrow [38–41]
- \bfseries (command) 233
- \bfseries 1470, 1472, 1496, 1499, 1521, 1526, 1530, 1533, 1772, 1775, 1820, 1823, 2024, 2465–2469, 2471–2474, 3390, 3395, 4079, 4088, 4092, 4102, 4710, 4718
- Bg5.cap (file) 481
- Bg5.cpx (file) 481
- \bibitem 2293, 2642
- \bibliography (command) 49, 145
- \bibliography 1, 525, 819
- \bibliographystyle 525, 819
- bibtopic (package) 59, 212, \hookrightarrow [20]
- bibtotoc (option of KOMA-Script) 49, 145
- bibtotocnumbered (option of KOMA-Script) 49
- bibunit (environment) 212
- bibunits (package) 59, 212, 230, \hookrightarrow [166]
- bicig (language option) 38, 228, 473, 474, 548
- bicig.mld (file) 244, 245, 473, 548
- bicig2 (language option) 38, 474, 548
- bicig2.mld (file) 244, 245, 474, 548, 607
- bicig3 (language option) 38, 474, 549
- bicig3.mld (file) 244, 245, 474, 549, 613
- \bigskipamount (command) 28, 29, 80, 268, 444
- \bigskipamount 1, 2795, 7699
- BILORTA, Giuseppe 234, 258, \hookrightarrow [42]
- Bíró, Árpád 258, 520, 521, \hookrightarrow [57]
- bithe (language option) 38, 228, 475, 524
- bithe.mld (file) 244, 245, 475, 524, 607
- BRITOUZÉ, Denis 258, \hookrightarrow [43]

- BLOCH, Laurent 258
 bo.tex (old example document) 618
 book (class) 25, 36, 37, 45, 46, 48, 58, 60, 70, 75,
 111, 131, 200, 201, 212, 215, 216, 220,
 223, 229, 237, 238, 242, 283, 284, 291,
 325, 617, \hookrightarrow [220]
 book.cls (file) 70
 booktabs (package) 21, 212, \hookrightarrow [139]
 BOSHPAKOV, Georgi N. 258, 477, \hookrightarrow [58]
 BOUGETTE, Patrice 258
 BOURBONNAIS, Daniel 258
 BOYKO, Victor 258, 538, \hookrightarrow [44]
 BRAAMS, Johannes L. . . . 43, 211, 249, 258, 466,
 484, 485, 496, 509, 528, 529, 552, 594,
 \hookrightarrow [45–93, 135, 218–221, 259–262]
 BRAUN, Felix 87, 210, 222, 258, \hookrightarrow [94]
 brazil (language option) 38, 475, 476
 brazil.mld (file) 244, 245, 475, 476
 brazilian (language option) 38, 476
 brazilian.mld (file) 244, 245, 476, 604
 BREEN, Jim 258, \hookrightarrow [95]
 BREITENLOHNER, Peter 258, \hookrightarrow [96]
 breton (language option) 38, 476
 breton.dtx (file) 476
 breton.mld (file) 244, 245, 476
 british (language option) 38, 476
 british.mld (file) 244, 245, 476, 604
 BUJDOSÓ, Gyöngyi 258, \hookrightarrow [97, 98]
 bulgarian (language option) 38, 477
 bulgarian.dtx (file) 477
 bulgarian.mld (file) 244, 245, 477, 597
 bulgarianb (language option) 38, 477
 bulgarianb.mld (file) . . . 43, 244, 245, 477, 602
 BURBANK, Mimi 258, \hookrightarrow [296]
 BURC, Mustafa 258, 548, \hookrightarrow [59]
 buryat (language option) 38, 478, 479
 buryat.mld (file) 244, 245, 478
 buryat2 (language option) 38, 479
 buryat2.mld (file) 244, 245, 479, 613
 BURYKIN, Alexey 258, \hookrightarrow [31–33]
- C**
- \c@lofdepth . . . 3332, 3536, 4048, 4268, 4269,
 4690, 4858, 4859
 \c@lotdepth (command) 307
 \c@lotdepth . . . 3332, 3604, 4048, 4343, 4344,
 4690, 4925, 4926
 \c@minilofdepth (command) 304
 \c@minilofdepth 3536
 \c@minilotdepth (command) 307
 \c@minilotdepth 3604
 \c@minitocdepth (command) 300
 \c@minitocdepth 3466, 7699
 \c@mtc . . . 3340, 7619, 7623, 7636, 7640, 7706
 \c@mti (command) 594
 \c@mti 3397, 3435, 3505, 3573, 3714, 3733, 3752
 \c@page 2003
 \c@partlofdepth 4268
 \c@partlotdepth 4343
 \c@parttocdepth 4192, 7699
 \c@ptc . . . 3340, 7613, 7617, 7631, 7635, 7706
 \c@pti . . . 4104, 4126, 4168, 4236, 4311, 4397,
 4416, 4435
 \c@secnumdepth 1469, 4965, 4978, 4987, 8181,
 8199
 \c@sectlofdepth 4856
 \c@sectlotdepth 4923
 \c@secttocdepth 4789, 7699
 \c@stc . . . 3340, 7624, 7628, 7641, 7645, 7706
 \c@sti 4719, 4758, 4826, 4893, 5017, 5036, 5055
 \c@tocdepth (command) 300, 304
 \c@tocdepth . . . 3183, 3466, 3644, 3656, 4192,
 4789, 4856, 4923
 calc (package) 21, 212, \hookrightarrow [337]
 canadian (language option) 38, 479, 599
 canadian.mld (file) 244, 245, 479
 canadien (language option) 38, 479, 599
 canadien.mld (file) 244, 245, 479
 captcont (package) 53, 75, 87, 188, 212, 254, 277,
 429, 614, \hookrightarrow [115]
 caption (package) 53, 71, 87, 175, 212, 213, 253,
 277, 430, 606, \hookrightarrow [325]
 \caption (command) 28, 221, 592
 \caption 67, 70, 73,
 76, 85, 88, 91, 94, 102, 105, 108, 111,
 129, 132, 135, 138, 145, 148, 153, 156,
 163, 166, 169, 172, 446, 449, 467, 470,
 511, 514, 520, 523, 548, 551, 557, 560,
 572, 575, 581, 584, 657, 660, 677, 680,
 716, 719, 725, 728, 743, 746, 765, 768,
 805, 808, 814, 817, 837, 840, 846, 849,
 859, 862, 868, 871, 1034, 1047, 1089,
 1115, 1146, 1300, 1306, 1319, 1360,
 1384, 1409, 1861, 1865, 1870, 1874,
 1881, 1886, 1890, 1909, 1913, 1918,
 1922, 1929, 1934, 1938, 1964, 1972,
 1983, 1991, 2494, 2541, 2767
 caption2 (package) 53, 71, 87, 175, 212, 213, 253,
 278, 430, 606, \hookrightarrow [323, 324]
 \captions (command) 74
 captions.dn (file) 507
 CARCAGNO, Samuele 258, \hookrightarrow [99]
 CARDI, Olivier 258
 CARELLA, David 258, \hookrightarrow [100]
 CARLISLE, David P. . . 27, 219, 242, 258, 313, 592,
 \hookrightarrow [60, 101–108, 260–262, 264]

- CARMODY, Kevin 258, 483, 507, \hookrightarrow [288]
 CARRIBA, Manuel 258, 494, \hookrightarrow [61, 62]
 CASPAR, Régis 258
 castillan (language option) 38, 480, 544
 castillan.mld (file) 244, 245, 480
 castillian (language option) 38
 castillian.mld (file) 244, 245, 480, 604
 catalan (language option) 38, 480, 544
 catalan.dtx (file) 480
 catalan.mld (file) 244, 245, 480
 CATALOG (file) 213, 244, 245, 621
 ccaption (package) 53, 71, 87, 176, 213, 253, 278,
 430, 606, \hookrightarrow [368]
 \centering 1962, 1970, 1981, 1989, 2482, 2534,
 2710, 2731, 4130
 CervanT_EX (package) 43, 546, \hookrightarrow [41]
 \cftpagenumbersoff 215,
 1446, 3202–3206, 3213–3216, 3225–
 3230, 3232, 3234, 3236, 3238, 3240,
 3242
 \cftpagenumberson 3196–3200, 3208–3211,
 3218–3223, 3231, 3233, 3235, 3237,
 3239, 3241
 \cftsecfont 215, 2208, 2210, 2217
 \cftsecindent 1438
 \cftsecnumwidth 1438
 \cftsetrmarg 2019
 \cftsubsecfont 2208, 2210, 2217
 \cftsubsecindent 1438, 2019
 \cftsubsecnumwidth 1438
 \cftsubsubsecindent 1438
 \cftsubsubsecnumwidth 1438
 ch0.tex (old example document) 616, 618
 \ch@pt@c 8162, 8166, 8168, 8174, 8176
 CHANG, Winston 258, \hookrightarrow [109]
 \chapbegin (command) 311
 \chapterbegin 3699
 \chapter (command) 25–28, 36, 37, 45, 48, 50,
 52, 58, 62, 64, 66, 67, 69, 77, 82, 135,
 156, 161, 162, 167, 168, 170, 172, 174,
 211, 212, 216, 237, 238, 283, 284, 286,
 291–293, 295, 297, 298, 302, 305, 308,
 310, 314–316, 325, 326, 328, 329, 331,
 332, 334–336, 348, 404, 416, 417, 439,
 591
 chapter (counter) 272
 \chapter 1, 13, 20, 35, 42, 63, 78, 96,
 126, 140, 159, 176, 191, 196, 201, 218,
 220, 238, 245, 255, 264, 300, 301, 304,
 305, 310, 311, 340, 437, 472, 487, 501,
 538, 562, 887, 892, 1095, 1172, 1218,
 1286, 1323, 1345, 1365, 1396, 1559,
 1634, 1662, 1678, 1747, 1777, 1828,
 1895, 1916, 1956, 2029, 2179, 2224,
 2249, 2322, 2337, 2363, 2411, 2476,
 2523, 2562, 2567, 2572, 2578, 2610,
 2612, 2628, 2630, 2724, 3004, 3092,
 3118, 3119, 3272, 3285, 3348, 3362,
 3419, 3489, 3557, 3637, 3781, 4492,
 6202, 6227, 6245, 6270, 6288, 6313,
 6899, 6918, 7654, 8047
 \chapter* (command) 33, 34, 71, 86, 92, 96,
 236, 251, 284, 295, 591, 597, 598
 \chapter* . 472, 1323, 1634, 1678, 2562, 2610,
 2628, 2630
 \chapter@mtcck 5480, 5508, 5517, 5524, 5531,
 5541, 5549
 \chapterbegin 3632, 3877, 3942, 4003, 7880
 chapterbib (package) 59, 214, 230, \hookrightarrow [15]
 \chapterend (command) 63, 591, 592
 \chapterend 3632, 3877, 3942, 4003, 7880
 \chapterfont 2019
 \chaptermark 8186
 \chapternumberline 8203, 8206
 \chardef 3127
 CHARPENTIER, Jean-Côme 258,
 \hookrightarrow [43, 205, 262, 341]
 CHAUVET, Jean-Pascal 258, \hookrightarrow [110]
 checkfiles (default option) 29, 32, 60, 157,
 177–179, 214, 234, 251, 403, 597
 CHEN, Pehong 258, \hookrightarrow [111]
 CHEONG, Otfried 258, \hookrightarrow [112]
 CHEVALIER, Céline 258, \hookrightarrow [8]
 chinese1 (language option) 38, 481
 chinese1.mld (file) 244, 245, 481, 600
 chinese1.mlo (file) 244, 245, 481
 chinese2 (language option) 38, 481
 chinese2.mld (file) 244, 245, 481, 600
 chinese2.mlo (file) 244, 245, 481
 CHLEBÍKOVÁ, Jana 258, 543, \hookrightarrow [63]
 CHOU, Pai H. 258, \hookrightarrow [113]
 cite (package) 621, \hookrightarrow [12]
 \cite (command) 51, 79, 214, 234
 \cite 1, 453, 664, 750, 2283, 2284
 CJK (package) 38, 43, 214, 240,
 241, 465, 481, 501–504, 511–513, 547,
 \hookrightarrow [17, 18, 113, 137, 233, 234, 292]
 Classes
 amsart 52, 65, 87, 173, 210, 414, 600, \hookrightarrow [7]
 amsbook 52, 65, 87, 163, 210, 414, 600,
 \hookrightarrow [7]
 amsproc 52, 65, 87, 174, 210, 414, 600,
 \hookrightarrow [7]
 article 25, 36, 37, 58, 60, 70, 100, 106, 128,
 149, 200, 201, 211, 215, 216, 223, 225,
 228–230, 236, 238, 242, 283, 291, 325,
 439, \hookrightarrow [220]

- book . 25, 36, 37, 45, 46, 48, 58, 60, 70, 75,
111, 131, 200, 201, 212, 215, 216, 220,
223, 229, 237, 238, 242, 283, 284, 291,
325, 617, ⇨[220]
- jura 52, 74, 87, 174, 210, 222, 410, 415, 612,
⇨[94]
- letter 25, 59, 201, 215, 223, 224, 238,
⇨[221]
- ltnews 25, 215, 225, ⇨[194]
- ltxdoc 25, 215, 225, ⇨[103]
- memoir 52, 63–65, 71, 87, 105, 135,
136, 159, 161, 162, 164, 198, 206, 225,
228–230, 243, 251, 253, 257, 270, 279,
288, 314, 414, 459, 599, 604–606, 624,
⇨[370, 371, 373]
- proc 25, 215, 236, 238, ⇨[219]
- report 25, 36, 37, 45, 46, 48, 58,
60, 70, 74, 75, 111, 129, 200, 201, 215,
216, 220, 223, 229, 237, 238, 242, 283,
284, 291, 325, 617, ⇨[220]
- scrartcl . 40, 49, 52, 74, 87, 164, 223, 237,
238, ⇨[207, 270, 308]
- scrbook . 40, 49, 52, 74, 87, 124, 130, 164,
223, 229, 238, ⇨[207, 270, 308]
- scrlettr 223, ⇨[207, 270, 308]
- scrlettr2 223, ⇨[207, 270, 308]
- screprt . 40, 49, 52, 74, 87, 145, 164, 223,
230, 238, ⇨[207, 270, 308]
- slides 215, ⇨[254]
- \cleardoublepage (command) . 46–48, 71, 85,
131, 291, 292, 328
- \cleardoublepage . 1, 1985, 2001, **3276, 3289**
- \clearpage (command) . . 46, 48, 71, 291, 328
- CLEGG, Marian 258
- close (feature) 47, 48, 80, 85, 140–142, 192, 215,
219, 230, 256, 291, 293, 301, 304, 307,
330, 333, 336, 352, 355, 358, 623
- \closeminilof (command) 47, 85
- \closeminilof 3302, **3540, 8017**
- \closeminilot (command) 47, 85
- \closeminilot 3303, **3608, 8017**
- \closeminitoc (command) 47, 85
- \closeminitoc 3301, **3468, 8017**
- \closeout 3068, 3071, **3141, 3771–3773,**
3785, 3797, 3830, 3877, 3905, 3942,
3966, 4003, 4454–4456, 4474, 4488,
4562, 4586, 4622, 4646, 4682, 5074–
5076, 5095, **5114, 5166, 5191, 5226,**
5251, 5286, 7605, 7608
- \closepartlof (command) 47, 85
- \closepartlof 3299, **4271, 8002**
- \closepartlot (command) 47, 85
- \closepartlot 3300, **4346, 8002**
- \closeparttoc (command) 47, 85
- \closeparttoc 3298, **4194, 8002**
- \closesectlof (command) 47, 85
- \closesectlof 3305, **4861, 8032**
- \closesectlot (command) 47, 85
- \closesectlot 3306, **4928, 8032**
- \closesecttoc (command) 47, 85
- \closesecttoc 3304, **4791, 8032**
- \clubpenalty (command) 593
- cmcyralt (package) 538, 539, ⇨[44, 177]
- cmcyralt.sty (file) 539
- cmk (script) . . 215, 220, 226, 244–246, 254, 621
- COCHRAN, Steven Douglas . . 33, 53, 75, 87, 258,
⇨[114–116]
- CODOGNO, Maurizio 258, 510, ⇨[64]
- \coffee (command) 315
- \coffee **3827, 4492, 5098**
- \coffee font (command) 297
- \coffee font **3396, 3643, 4039, 7947**
- \coffeeline (command) 227, 402
- \coffeeline **6375, 8103**
- color (package) 117, ⇨[107]
- \colorbox 1510
- \columnbreak 1498, 1515
- \columnsep 1506
- \columnseprule 1505
- \columnwidth . . **3366, 3381, 3435, 3485, 3505,**
3573, 4072, 4180, 4248, 4327, 4697,
4773, 4840, 4907, 5337, 5346, 5355
- Commands
 - \@@dominitoc 311
 - \@Undottedtocline 309
 - \@Undottedtoclinep 309, 310
 - \@caption 592
 - \@chapter 52, 284, 308, 417
 - \@dominitoc 311
 - \@dominitoc@used@true 311
 - \@dosectlot 602
 - \@dotsep 43, 44, 382
 - \@dottedtocline 70, 288, 310, 330, 333,
336, 352, 355, 358
 - \@fileswfal se 599
 - \@gobble 600
 - \@gobblethree 405
 - \@gobbletwo 449
 - \@ifnextchar 299, 302, 305, 448
 - \@ifundefined . 284, 285, 295, 322, 370
 - \@input . . . 317, 320, 322, 343, 345, 347
 - \@inputcheck 59, 287, 593
 - \@longextensions@false 286
 - \@longextensions@true 286
 - \@minilof@used@true 302
 - \@minilot@used@true 305
 - \@minitoc@used@true 299

- \@mtc@FFfalse 281
- \@mtc@FFtrue 281
- \@namedef 372
- \@nameuse 372
- \@newread 593
- \@part 52, 282, 337, 416
- \@pnumwidth 43, 44
- \@pnumwith 381
- \@pt 598
- \@schapter 52, 284, 308, 417
- \@sect 52, 283, 359, 360, 417
- \@spart 52, 282, 337, 416
- \@ssect 52, 283, 359, 417
- \@starttoc 286, 293
- \@tocfile 299, 302, 305
- \@tocrmarg 43, 44, 382
- \@undottedtocline 288
- \addappheadtotoc 63, 105
- \addcoffeeline 227, 402
- \addcontentsline 33, 49, 50, 63, 204, 205
- \addst@rred 308
- \addstarred 596
- \addstarredchapter . . 33, 204, 250, 308
- \addstarredpart 33, 204, 308
- \addstarredsection . . 33, 204, 295, 308
- \addto 74
- \addtocontents 62, 63
- \addtocounter 33, 49
- \adjustmtc . . 33, 34, 49, 63, 86, 97, 145,
209, 285, 296, 605
- \adjustptc . 33, 34, 86, 92, 209, 253, 282,
324, 605
- \adjuststc . 33, 34, 63, 86, 104, 209, 284,
349, 605
- \afterminilof 47, 85, 304
- \afterminilot 47, 85, 307
- \afterminitoc 47, 85, 301
- \afterpartlof 47, 85, 334, 597
- \afterpartlot 47, 85, 336, 597
- \afterparttoc 47, 85, 331, 597
- \aftersectlof 47, 85, 356
- \aftersectlot 47, 85, 358
- \aftersecttoc 47, 85, 353
- \appendix 62
- \AtBeginDocument . . 74, 174, 177, 211,
275–279, 294, 324, 348, 382, 409, 410,
416, 438–440
- \AtEndDocument . . 211, 410, 419, 438, 454
- \beforeminilof 47, 85, 303
- \beforeminilot 47, 85, 306
- \beforeminitoc 47, 85, 300
- \beforepartlof 47, 85, 332, 597
- \beforepartlot 47, 85, 334, 597
- \beforeparttoc . . 47, 85, 250, 291, 329,
453, 597
- \beforesectlof 47, 85, 354
- \beforesectlot 47, 85, 356
- \beforesecttoc 47, 85, 351
- \bfseries 233
- \bibliography 49, 145
- \bigskipamount . . . 28, 29, 80, 268, 444
- \c@lotdepth 307
- \c@minilofdepth 304
- \c@minilotdepth 307
- \c@minitocdepth 300
- \c@mti 594
- \c@tocdepth 300, 304
- \caption 28, 221, 592
- \captions 74
- \chapbegin 311
- \chapter 25–28, 36, 37, 45, 48, 50,
52, 58, 62, 64, 66, 67, 69, 77, 82, 135,
156, 161, 162, 167, 168, 170, 172, 174,
211, 212, 216, 237, 238, 283, 284, 286,
291–293, 295, 297, 298, 302, 305, 308,
310, 314–316, 325, 326, 328, 329, 331,
332, 334–336, 348, 404, 416, 417, 439,
591
- \chapter* . 33, 34, 71, 86, 92, 96, 236, 251,
284, 295, 591, 597, 598
- \chapterend 63, 591, 592
- \cite 51, 79, 214, 234
- \cleardoublepage . . 46–48, 71, 85, 131,
291, 292, 328
- \clearpage 46, 48, 71, 291, 328
- \closeminilof 47, 85
- \closeminilot 47, 85
- \closeminitoc 47, 85
- \closepartlof 47, 85
- \closepartlot 47, 85
- \closeparttoc 47, 85
- \closesectlof 47, 85
- \closesectlot 47, 85
- \closesecttoc 47, 85
- \clubpenalty 593
- \coffee 315
- \coffee font 297
- \coffeeline 227, 402
- \contentsline . . 61, 282, 284, 285, 311
- \count@ 444
- \csname 323, 373, 376
- \decrementmtc . . . 34, 86, 209, 296, 604
- \decrementptc . 34, 86, 209, 253, 324, 604
- \decrementstc . . . 34, 86, 209, 349, 604
- \def 73
- \df@mtlf 297
- \df@mtilt 297

- \df@mtitc 297
- \dimen@ 444
- \do@mtilf 297
- \do@mtilt 297
- \do@mtitc 297
- \documentclass 28, 30, 32, 77, 124, 208,
214, 219, 236
- \dominilof .. 27, 28, 39, 40, 82, 86, 162,
168, 181, 185, 236, 302, 310, 311, 337
- \dominilot .. 27, 28, 39, 40, 82, 86, 163,
168, 181, 186, 236, 305, 310, 311, 337
- \dominitoc 27, 28, 39, 40, 49, 54,
60, 77, 82, 86, 146, 160, 162, 169, 181,
185, 236, 242, 249, 252, 298, 299, 310,
311, 337, 360, 439, 592, 594, 600, 601
- \dominitoc@ 311
- \dopartlof .. 28, 32, 39, 40, 81, 86, 162,
169, 181, 185, 236, 337–339
- \dopartlot .. 28, 32, 39, 40, 81, 86, 163,
169, 181, 185, 236, 337–339
- \doparttoc .. 28, 32, 39, 40, 52, 62, 81, 86,
160, 169, 182, 185, 236, 286, 337, 338,
418, 419, 421
- \dosectlof .. 28, 30, 40, 83, 86, 162, 169,
182, 186, 236, 270, 360, 361
- \dosectlot .. 28, 30, 40, 52, 83, 86, 163,
170, 182, 186, 236, 270, 286, 361, 362
- \dosecttoc .. 28, 30, 40, 83, 86, 160, 170,
182, 186, 236, 349, 360, 361
- \edef 257, 323, 385, 624
- \else 269
- \empty ... 46–48, 85, 291, 449, 453, 593
- \endcsname 323, 373, 376
- \endmtc@verse 298
- \endmtchideinmainlof 68, 86, 229
- \endmtchideinmainlot 68, 86, 129, 229
- \endptc@verse 327
- \enlargethispage 57
- \expandafter 373
- \fake@starttoc 293
- \fakelistoffigures . 28, 30, 32, 80–83,
182–184, 293
- \fakelistoftables 28, 30, 32, 52, 80–83,
183, 184, 293
- \faketableofcontents .. 28, 30, 32, 52,
54, 80–83, 92, 183, 184, 293, 418, 423,
592
- \fi 243, 269, 441
- \figure 318
- \firstchapteris 27, 49, 53, 88, 167, 179,
209, 213, 219, 296, 435, 594, 595
- \firstpartis .. 27, 49, 53, 88, 167, 179,
209, 219, 324, 434
- \firstsectionis 27, 49, 53, 88, 168, 179,
209, 219, 349, 435
- \FloatBarrier 29, 219, 236, 604
- \footnotesize 233
- \frontmatter 77
- \gdef 280
- \gobbleopt@ 448
- \hline 330, 332, 335, 352, 354, 357
- \hrule 296, 598
- \Huge 233
- \huge 233
- \if@mtc@Himtoc@ 395
- \if@mtc@hints@ 269
- \if@mtc@hints@given@ 269
- \if@mtc@hints@w@ 269
- \if@mtc@insellang@ 401, 402
- \if@mtc@memoirLoaded@ 288
- \if@mtc@mislang 405
- \if@mtc@setpagenumbers@act@ ... 604
- \if@mtc@setrules@act@ 604
- \if@mtcfixglossary@ 398
- \if@partlof@used@ 331
- \if@partlot@used@ 334
- \if@parttoc@used@ 328
- \if@realch 592
- \if@sectlof@used@ 353
- \if@sectlot@used@ 356
- \if@secttoc@used@ 351
- \ifcase 220, 243, 441
- \ifFTR 603
- \ifmtcsecondpart 613
- \ifnum 359
- \ifthenelse 222
- \ifundottedmtc 309, 609
- \incrementmtc ... 34, 86, 209, 296, 604
- \incrementptc 34, 86, 209, 253, 324, 604
- \incrementstc ... 34, 86, 209, 349, 604
- \itemindent 298, 327
- \itemsep 298, 327
- \itshape 233
- \jobname .. 220, 222, 281, 286, 287, 299,
302, 305, 310, 311, 318, 321, 426, 437,
441, 616
- \kern 296, 593
- \kernafterminilof 77, 84
- \kernafterminilot 77, 84
- \kernafterminitoc 77, 84, 622
- \kernafterpartlof 77, 84
- \kernafterpartlot 77, 84
- \kernafterparttoc 77, 84, 255
- \kernaftersectlof 77, 84
- \kernaftersectlot 77, 84
- \kernaftersecttoc 77, 84
- \ktightmtcfalse 41, 80

- \ktightmtctrue 41, 80
- \l@chapter 70, 285, 308, 330
- \l@coffee 402
- \l@paragraph 70, 371
- \l@part 70, 282
- \l@section 70, 284, 371
- \l@subparagraph 70
- \l@subsection 70, 337
- \l@subsubsection 70
- \l@xchapter 285, 308
- \l@xpart 282, 337
- \l@xssect 284
- \l@xsection 617
- \LANG 220, 441
- \LARGE 233
- \Large 233
- \large 233
- \let 72, 73, 596
- \linebreak 57
- \linewidth 44
- \list 298
- \list{ } 327
- \listoffigures .. 21, 28, 30, 32, 49, 65,
80–83, 182–184, 286
- \listoftables .. 21, 28, 30, 32, 49, 52, 65,
80–83, 145, 183, 184, 286
- \listparindent 298, 327
- \mainmatter 77
- \makeatletter 70, 225
- \makeatother 70, 225
- \MakeUpperCase 614
- \markboth 71, 328, 602, 614
- \markright 71
- \mdseries 233
- \MessageBreak 609
- \minilof .. 21, 28, 32, 36, 39, 40, 82, 86,
181, 182, 222, 298, 301, 302, 305, 353,
593
- \minilof@ 302, 309
- \minilot .. 21, 28, 32, 36, 39, 40, 82, 86,
181, 183, 222, 298, 305, 356, 593
- \minilot@ 305
- \minitoc 21, 27, 28, 32, 33, 36, 37,
39, 40, 54, 58, 66, 77, 82, 86, 115, 181,
183, 222, 249, 252, 298, 299, 301, 311,
328, 350, 592–594, 600–602
- \minitoc@ 297, 299, 309
- \minitocno 591, 592
- \minitocyes 591
- \MLF@contentsline 318
- \MLF@next 319
- \mlf@setform 304, 383
- \MLF@test 319
- \mlffont 35, 36, 82, 303
- \mlfoffset 82
- \mlfpagenumbers 45, 84
- \mlfrule 45, 84, 601
- \mlfSfont 35, 36, 41, 82, 606
- \mlftitle 35, 36, 82, 465
- \MLT@contentsline 321
- \MLT@next 321
- \mlt@setform 307, 383
- \MLT@test 322
- \mltfont 35, 36, 82, 306
- \mltoffset 82
- \mltpagenumbers 45, 84
- \mltrule 45, 84, 601
- \mltSfont 35, 36, 82, 606
- \mlttitle 35, 36, 82, 465
- \mtc@admisslanguage 405
- \mtc@BBR 285
- \mtc@CkFile 281, 299, 302, 306
- \MTC@contentsline 314, 317, 323
- \mtc@featparam@ 391
- \mtc@featparam@abbrev 392
- \mtc@featparam@third 391, 392
- \mtc@fparam@abbrev 385
- \mtc@glofix@level 397
- \mtc@hints@begindoc ... 409, 410, 418
- \mtc@hints@chapter 416
- \mtc@hints@enddoc 410, 419, 435
- \mtc@hints@part 416
- \mtc@hints@section 416
- \mtc@hook@beforeinputfile . 274, 301,
304, 307, 599
- \mtc@ifmtarg 280, 282, 284, 285
- \mtc@ixfix@level 399
- \mtc@level@abbrev 375
- \mtc@listmisslanguages 405
- \mtc@maf 437, 438
- \mtc@maf@long 437
- \mtc@maf@short 437
- \mtc@mta@abbrev 375
- \mtc@mtade@abbrev 393
- \mtc@mtaof@abbrev 394
- \mtc@mtatf@abbrev 379
- \mtc@mtati@abbrev 380
- \mtc@mtf@abbrev 384
- \mtc@mtfeat@abbrev 391, 392
- \mtc@mttpn@abbrev 386
- \mtc@mttru@abbrev 389
- \MTC@next 316
- \mtc@nomencifix@level 400
- \mtc@onebacksect 283
- \mtc@pns@abbrev 387
- \mtc@rule 296, 593
- \mtc@rusw@abbrev 389

- \mtc@savetocdepth 395
- \mtc@setform 301, 382
- \mtc@setlangopt 407
- \mtc@setlangoptm 407
- \mtc@setlangopto 407
- \mtc@string 285
- \mtc@strutbox 598
- \MTC@test 317
- \mtc@toks . . 256, 257, 285, 315, 318, 321,
323, 341, 344, 346, 363, 366, 368, 623,
624
- \mtc@verse 298
- \mtc@While 281
- \MTC@WriteCoffeeline 323, 363
- \MTC@WriteContentsline 318, 321, 323,
341, 344, 346, 363, 366, 368
- \mtc@zrule 285, 598
- \mtcaddchapter . . 34, 49, 50, 52, 65, 69,
71, 86, 92, 96, 145, 147, 204, 209, 228,
251, 285, 597
- \mtcaddpart 34, 71, 86, 92, 204, 209, 282,
597
- \mtcaddsection . 34, 52, 69, 71, 86, 100,
205, 209, 228, 254, 284, 597, 610
- \mtcfixglossary . 50, 86, 167, 168, 189,
197, 209, 252, 254, 397, 398, 456, 602,
610, 611
- \mtcfixindex . 50, 86, 98, 104, 167, 168,
189, 198, 209, 252, 254, 398, 399, 457,
601, 610, 611
- \mtcfixnomenclature . 50, 86, 140, 172,
202, 209, 256, 400, 457, 623
- \mtcfont 28, 34, 36, 37, 82, 300
- \mtcgapafterheads 75, 81, 229, 254, 615
- \mtcgapbeforeheads . . 75, 81, 229, 254,
615
- \mtchideinmainlof 68, 86, 229
- \mtchideinmainlot 68, 86, 128, 129, 229
- \mtcindent . 28, 44, 82, 90, 268, 296, 298
- \mtcloadmlo . . . 199, 253, 401, 451, 605
- \mtcoffset 28, 82, 256, 298, 623
- \mtcwarn@true 604
- \mtcpagenumbers 45, 84, 594
- \mtcPfont 35, 37, 71, 82, 593
- \mtcprepare . . 28, 40, 86, 165, 222, 236,
254, 370, 449, 612
- \mtcrule 45, 84, 594
- \mtcselectlanguage 35, 37,
39, 69, 74, 80, 155, 157, 158, 190, 191,
199, 251, 253, 401, 407, 451, 465, 597,
605
- \mtcsetdepth . 28, 30, 32, 42, 65, 80–83,
158, 192, 253, 392, 393, 603
- \mtcsetfeature 47, 48, 80, 85, 158, 192,
196, 209, 211, 215, 219, 235, 252, 256,
293, 390, 391, 602, 623
- \mtcsetfont 28, 30, 32, 41, 64, 65,
71, 73, 77, 80, 155, 158, 193, 197, 252,
297, 374, 377, 378, 600, 607, 610
- \mtcsetformat 44, 80, 93, 159, 193, 194,
197, 252, 301, 304, 307, 330, 333, 336,
352, 355, 358, 381, 382, 384, 600, 601
- \mtcsetoffset 28, 30, 32, 42, 43, 80–83,
141, 155, 166, 203, 230, 256, 394, 623
- \mtcsetpagenumbers 46, 77, 80, 84, 194,
195, 252, 254, 385, 388, 600, 609
- \mtcsetpagenumbers@ 386
- \mtcsetrules . 45, 80, 84, 195, 252, 254,
388, 600, 609
- \mtcsetrules@ 388
- \mtcsettitle 35, 37, 39, 41,
42, 65, 69, 80, 155, 159, 196, 252, 380,
392, 394, 600, 601
- \mtcsettitlefont . 41, 64, 65, 80, 159,
196, 252, 297, 378, 380, 600
- \mtcSfont 28, 34, 37, 64, 71, 82, 593
- \mtcskip . 28, 29, 80, 251, 268, 598, 602
- \mtcskipamount 28, 29, 80, 251, 268, 444,
598
- \mtcSPfont 35, 37, 71, 82, 83, 593
- \mtcSSfont . . 35, 37, 41, 71, 82, 449, 593
- \mtcSSSfont 35, 37, 65, 71, 82, 593
- \mtctitle 35, 36, 42, 65, 82, 465
- \mtifont . 35, 36, 82, 300, 303, 306, 593
- \name 617
- \newcommand 43
- \newfloat 219
- \newif 269
- \newread 285, 593
- \newtheorem 219
- \newwrite 248, 286
- \noindent 593
- \nomlfpagenumbers 45, 84
- \nomlfrule 45, 84, 601
- \nomltpagenumbers 45, 84
- \nomltrule 45, 84, 601
- \nomtcpagenumbers . . . 45, 84, 594, 599
- \nomtcrule 45, 84, 594, 597
- \nopagebreak 593
- \noplfpagenumbers 45, 84
- \noplfrule 45, 84, 601
- \nopltpagenumbers 45, 84
- \nopltrule 45, 84, 601
- \noptcpagenumbers 45, 84
- \noptcrule 45, 84
- \normalsize 36, 233
- \noslfpagenumbers 45, 84

- \noslfrule 45, 84, 601
- \nosltpagenumbers 45, 84
- \nosltrule 45, 84, 601
- \nostcpagenumbers 45, 84
- \nostcrule 45, 84
- \numwidth 44
- \openminilof 47, 85
- \openminilot 47, 85
- \openminitoc 47, 85
- \openpartlof 47, 85
- \openpartlot 47, 85
- \openparttoc 47, 85
- \opensectlof 47, 85
- \opensectlot 47, 85
- \opensecttoc 47, 85
- \or 243, 441
- \outer 285
- \PackageError 230, 252
- \PackageInfo 230, 252, 600, 604
- \PackageWarning 230, 252, 600, 604
- \PackageWarningNoLine 230
- \pagestyle 48
- \par 608
- \paragraph 216, 238
- \parsep 40, 298, 327
- \parskip 40, 268, 298, 327
- \part 26, 32, 50, 52, 59, 62, 81, 160, 167,
170, 172, 174, 189, 202, 211, 212, 216,
237, 238, 282, 286, 308, 310, 324, 328,
331, 334, 337, 340, 344, 346, 416, 439
- \part* 71, 86, 92, 282, 295, 337, 597
- \partbegin 62, 337
- \partlof 32, 36, 39, 40, 81, 86, 181, 183,
222, 326, 328, 331, 594
- \partlof@ 331
- \partlot 32, 36, 39, 40, 81, 86, 181, 183,
222, 326, 328, 334, 594
- \partlot@ 334
- \partoc 328
- \partopsep 327
- \parttoc 21, 32, 36, 37, 39, 40, 52,
62, 81, 86, 92, 182, 184, 222, 326, 328,
418, 419, 421, 423, 594, 598
- \parttoc@ 328
- \PLF@contentsline 344
- \PLF@next 344
- \plf@setform 333, 383
- \PLF@test 345
- \plffont 36, 72, 73, 81
- \plfoffset 81
- \plfpagenumbers 45, 84
- \plfrule 45, 84, 601
- \plfSfont 36, 72, 73, 81, 606
- \plftitle 36, 37, 81, 465
- \PLT@contentsline 346
- \PLT@next 347
- \plt@setform 336, 383
- \PLT@test 347
- \pltfont 36, 72, 73, 81
- \pltoffset 81
- \pltpagenumbers 45, 84
- \plrulerule 45, 84, 601
- \pltSfont 36, 72, 73, 81, 606
- \plttitle 36, 37, 81, 465
- \printglossary 49
- \printindex 50
- \printnomenclature 50
- \protect 57, 61, 595
- \ProvidesFile 621
- \ProvidesPackage 155
- \PTC@contentsline 340
- \PTC@next 342
- \ptc@rule 325
- \ptc@setform 330, 382
- \PTC@test 343
- \ptc@verse 327
- \ptcCfont 32, 35, 37, 72, 73, 81, 325
- \ptcfont 32, 35–37, 41, 72, 73, 81
- \ptcindent 32, 81, 327
- \ptcoffset 32, 81, 327
- \ptcpagenumbers 45, 84
- \ptcPfont 35, 37, 72, 73, 81
- \ptcrule 45, 84
- \ptcSfont 32, 35, 37, 72, 73, 81
- \ptcSPfont 35, 37, 72, 73, 81
- \ptcSSfont 35, 37, 72, 73, 81
- \ptcSSSfont 35, 37, 72, 73, 81
- \ptctitle 36, 37, 81, 465, 544
- \ptifont 36, 37, 41, 65, 81, 600
- \quad 34
- \raggedright 593
- \relax 308, 337, 441, 449, 453, 593
- \renewcommand 28, 30, 32, 35–37, 39, 43,
64, 69, 73, 75, 76, 268, 269, 449, 453
- \renewcommand* 70
- \reset@font 59, 287, 593
- \rmfamily 233
- \rule 598
- \samepage 593
- \scriptsize 233
- \scshape 233
- \sectbegin 360
- \sectend 63, 360
- \sectfont 124
- \section 25, 26, 29–31, 50, 52, 66, 83,
156, 161, 167, 168, 170, 172, 177, 211,
212, 216, 236–238, 283, 286, 308, 310,

- 348, 350, 353, 356, 359, 363, 366, 368,
404, 416, 417, 439, 591
- \section* . 33, 71, 86, 251, 283, 295, 597,
598
- \sectlof 30, 36, 40, 52, 83, 86, 182, 184,
222, 350, 353, 419, 594, 595
- \sectlof@ 353
- \sectlot 30, 36, 40, 52, 83, 86, 182, 184,
222, 350, 356, 419, 594
- \sectlot@ 356
- \secttoc . 29, 30, 36, 37, 40, 83, 86, 182,
184, 222, 349, 350, 594
- \secttoc@ 350, 351
- \setcounter 28, 30, 32, 58, 62, 81–83, 395
- \setlength 28, 30, 32, 75
- \sffamily 233
- \SHORTEXT 593
- \shorttoc 20
- \SLF@contentsline 366
- \SLF@next 366
- \slf@setform 355, 383
- \SLF@test 367
- \slffont 36, 39, 83
- \slfoffset 83
- \slfpagenumbers 45, 84
- \slfrule 45, 84, 601
- \slfSfont 36, 39, 83, 606
- \slftitle 36, 39, 83, 465
- \slshape 233
- \SLT@contentsline 368
- \SLT@next 368
- \slt@setform 358, 384
- \SLT@test 369
- \sltfont 36, 39, 83
- \sltname 596
- \sltoffset 83
- \sltpagenumbers 45, 84
- \sltrule 45, 84, 601
- \sltSfont 36, 39, 83, 606
- \slttitle 36, 39, 65, 83, 465
- \small 233
- \space 34
- \special 221, 222
- \starchapter 315
- \starsection 359
- \STC@contentsline 363
- \STC@next 364
- \stc@rule 349
- \stc@setform 352, 383
- \STC@test 365
- \stcfont 30, 36, 37, 83
- \stcindent 30, 83, 349
- \stcoffset 30, 83, 350
- \stcpagenumbers 45, 84
- \stcPfont 37, 39, 83
- \stcrule 45, 84
- \stcSPfont 37, 39
- \stcSSfont 30, 37, 39, 83
- \stcSSSfont 37, 39, 83
- \stctitle 36, 39, 83, 465
- \stepcounter 33, 282–284
- \stifont 36, 39, 83
- \subparagraph 216, 238
- \subsection 216, 238, 359, 591
- \subsubsection 216, 238
- \table 321
- \tableofcontents 21, 28, 30, 32,
49, 52, 58, 62, 64, 77, 80–83, 183, 184,
251, 286, 293, 418, 423, 598, 602
- \tableofcontents* 135
- \textbf 233
- \textit 233
- \textmd 233
- \textrm 233
- \textsc 233
- \textsf 233
- \textsl 233
- \texttt 233
- \textup 233
- \textwidth 617
- \tf@mtc 267, 286, 437
- \The@chapter 597
- \The@mtc 296, 597
- \themtc 296
- \Thepart 324
- \theptc 324
- \thispageminilofstyle . . . 47, 85, 303
- \thispageminilotstyle . . . 47, 85, 306
- \thispageminilotstyle . . . 47, 85, 299
- \thispagepartlofstytle . . . 47, 85, 597
- \thispagepartlotstyle . . . 47, 85, 597
- \thispageparttocstyle 47, 85, 291, 597
- \thispagesectlofstytle 47, 85
- \thispagesectlotstyle 47, 85
- \thispagesecttocstyle 47, 85
- \thispagestyle 47, 48, 85, 291
- \tightmtcfalse 40, 80
- \tightmtctrue 40, 80
- \tiny 233
- \topsep 298, 327
- \ttfamily 233
- \typeout 600
- \undottedmtcfalse 80
- \undottedmtctrue 80
- \upshape 233
- \usepackage 27–30, 32, 77, 205, 209, 235,
236, 443, 465

- `\vrule` 598
- `\vspace*` 593
- `\widowpenalty` 593
- `\xchapter` 318, 321
- `\xdef` 395
- `\ychapter` 602
- `\ypart` 602
- `\ysection` 602
- `\z@` 598
- comment (package) \hookrightarrow [134]
- `\contentsline` (command) . 61, 282, 284, 285, 311
- `\contentsline` **1, 3085, 3111, 3120, 3699, 3877, 3942, 4003, 4019**, 4555, 4615, 4675, 5159, 5219, 5279
- COOK, David B. 258
- `\copy` 3132, 3136
- CORFF, Oliver . 258, 524, 553, 554, \hookrightarrow [117–120]
- CORNET, Emmanuel 258, \hookrightarrow [8]
- `\count@` (command) 444
- `\count@` **7699**
- COUNTCHAM, Prakash 258, \hookrightarrow [25]
- Counters
 - chapter 272
 - mtc . 86, 281, 284, 285, 293, 296, 314, 315, 318, 321, 375, 598
 - part 271, 272
 - ptc . 86, 281, 282, 293, 324, 337, 340, 344, 346
 - section 272
 - stc . 86, 281, 283, 284, 293, 349, 363, 366, 368, 598
- `cri.tex` (old example document) . . . 616, 618
- croatian (language option) 38, 482
- `croatian.dtx` (file) 482
- `croatian.mld` (file) 244, 245, 482
- `\csname` (command) 323, 373, 376
- `\cyr` . 8531, 8533, 8536, 8540, 8542, 8545, 8549, 8551, 8554, 8563, 8565, 8567, 8570, 8572, 8574, 8577, 8579, 8581, 9954, 9956, 9958, 9960, 9964, 9966, 9968, 9970, 9974, 9976, 9978, 9980, 10326, 10329, 10332, 10335, 10339, 10341, 10344, 10348, 10350, 10353, 10476, 10478, 10482, 10484, 10485, 10488, 10490, 10678, 10679, 10681, 10684, 10685, 10687, 10690, 10691, 10693
- `\CYRA` 9954, 9964, 9974
- `\CYRa` 10329, 10333, 10336, 10339, 10342, 10345, 10348, 10351, 10354
- `\cyr` 8531, 8534, 8537, 8540, 8543, 8546, 8549, 8552, 8555, 8563, 8567, 8570, 8574, 8577, 8581, 9954, 9956, 9959, 9961, 9964, 9966, 9969, 9971, 9974, 9976, 9979, 9981, 10326, 10476, 10479, 10482, 10485, 10488, 10491, 10680, 10682, 10686, 10688, 10692, 10694
- `\CYRb` 10336, 10345, 10354
- `\cyrb` 8537, 8546, 8555, 8567, 8574, 8581, 10479, 10485, 10491, 10682, 10688, 10694
- `\CYRc` 10333, 10336, 10342, 10345, 10351, 10354
- `\cyr c` 8537, 8546, 8555, 8567, 8574, 8581, 10479, 10485, 10491, 10680, 10682, 10686, 10688, 10692, 10694
- `\cyrch` 9956, 9966, 9976
- `\cyrd` 8531, 8540, 8549, 8563, 8570, 8577, 10326, 10476, 10482, 10488
- `\CYRe` 10329, 10339, 10348
- `\cyre` 8531, 8534, 8537, 8540, 8543, 8546, 8549, 8552, 8555, 8563, 8570, 8577, 10326, 10478, 10479, 10484, 10485, 10490, 10491, 10679, 10681, 10685, 10687, 10691, 10693
- `\cyrerev` 9960, 9970, 9980
- `\CYRF` 8565, 8572, 8579
- `\cyrf` 8534, 8543, 8552
- `\CYRG` 9956, 9966, 9976
- `\CYRg` 10329, 10339, 10348
- `\cyr g` 8534, 8543, 8552, 8565, 8572, 8579, 9954, 9956, 9958–9961, 9964, 9966, 9968–9971, 9974, 9976, 9978–9981
- `\CYRH` 9960, 9970, 9980
- `\cyrhrdsn` 8531, 8533, 8536, 8540, 8542, 8545, 8549, 8551, 8554, 8563, 8570, 8577
- `\CYRi` 10329, 10332, 10333, 10335, 10336, 10339, 10341, 10342, 10344, 10345, 10348, 10350, 10351, 10353, 10354
- `\cyri` 8531, 8533, 8534, 8536, 8537, 8540, 8542, 8543, 8545, 8546, 8549, 8551, 8552, 8554, 8555, 8563, 8565, 8567, 8570, 8572, 8574, 8577, 8579, 8581, 9956, 9958, 9960, 9966, 9968, 9970, 9976, 9978, 9980, 10326, 10478, 10479, 10484, 10485, 10490, 10491, 10682, 10688, 10694
- `\cyrii` 10678–10681, 10684–10687, 10690–10693
- `\CYRishrt` 10333, 10342, 10351
- `\cyrishrt` 9958, 9960, 9968, 9970, 9978, 9980, 10680, 10686, 10692
- `\cyrje` 10476, 10482, 10488
- `\CYRk` 10332, 10335, 10341, 10344, 10350, 10353

- \cyrk 8533,
8536, 8542, 8545, 8551, 8554, 10478,
10484, 10490, 10679, 10681, 10685,
10687, 10691, 10693
 - \CYRl 10329, 10333, 10336, 10339, 10342,
10345, 10348, 10351, 10354
 - \cyr1 8537, 8546, 8555, 8567, 8574, 8581, 9954,
9959, 9961, 9964, 9969, 9971, 9974,
9979, 9981, 10478, 10479, 10484,
10485, 10490, 10491, 10679–10682,
10685–10688, 10691–10694
 - \cyrn 10678, 10684, 10690
 - \CYRn 10329, 10339, 10348
 - \cyrn 8531, 8534, 8537, 8540, 8543, 8546, 8549,
8552, 8555, 8563, 8570, 8577, 9958,
9960, 9968, 9970, 9978, 9980, 10326
 - \CYRO 10329, 10339, 10348
 - \CYRo 10332, 10335, 10341, 10344, 10350, 10353
 - \cyro 10326
 - \CYRp 10679, 10681, 10685, 10687, 10691, 10693
 - \CYRr 10332, 10335, 10341, 10344, 10350, 10353
 - \cyrp 8533, 8536, 8542, 8545, 8551, 8554
 - \CYRr 10333, 10342, 10351
 - \cyrR 8531, 8534, 8540, 8543, 8549, 8552, 8563,
8565, 8570, 8572, 8577, 8579, 9956,
9958, 9966, 9968, 9976, 9978, 10326,
10476, 10482, 10488, 10679–10681,
10685–10687, 10691–10693
 - \CYRS 8531, 8533, 8536, 8540, 8542, 8545, 8549,
8551, 8554, 8563, 8570, 8577, 10326,
10332, 10335, 10341, 10344, 10350,
10353, 10476, 10478, 10482, 10484,
10488, 10490
 - \CYRs 10332, 10333, 10335, 10341, 10342,
10344, 10350, 10351, 10353
 - \cyrS 8533,
8536, 8542, 8545, 8551, 8554, 9959–
9961, 9969–9971, 9979–9981, 10678,
10680, 10684, 10686, 10690, 10692
 - \cyrSftsn 10682, 10688, 10694
 - \CYRT . . 8567, 8574, 8581, 10479, 10485, 10491
 - \CYRt 10333, 10336, 10342, 10345, 10351, 10354
 - \cyrT 8534,
8537, 8543, 8546, 8552, 8555, 9959–
9961, 9969–9971, 9979–9981, 10678,
10680, 10682, 10684, 10686, 10688,
10690, 10692, 10694
 - \cyru 8534, 8543, 8552, 8565, 8572, 8579, 9954,
9958, 9964, 9968, 9974, 9978
 - \CYRv 10329, 10339, 10348
 - \cyrY 9960, 9970, 9980
 - \CYRyu 10333, 10342, 10351
 - \cyrYU 10680, 10686, 10692
 - \CYRZ . . 9958, 9968, 9978, 10678, 10684, 10690
 - \cyrzh 8531,
8540, 8549, 8563, 8570, 8577, 9959,
9961, 9969, 9971, 9979, 9981, 10326,
10476, 10482, 10488
 - \cz 10230, 10231, 10234, 10235, 10238, 10239
 - czech (language option) 38, 482
 - czech.dtx (file) 482
 - czech.mld (file) 244, 245, 482
- ## D
- DACHIAN, Sergueï 211, 258, 469, ⇨[121]
 - DAERR, Adrian 258
 - \dal . 8310, 8314, 8318, 8935, 8937, 8939, 8941,
8943, 8945
 - DALALYAN, Arnak 211, 258, 469, ⇨[121]
 - DALY, Patrick W. 258, ⇨[122–125, 208]
 - DANIELSSON, Holger 258, ⇨[292–294]
 - danish (language option) 38, 483
 - danish.dtx (file) 483
 - danish.mld (file) 244, 245, 483
 - dblacnt (package) 216, 611, ⇨[258]
 - \DeclareOption 6383, 6387, 6389, 6391, 6392,
6396, 6414, 6422, 6468, 6520, 6702
 - \decrementmtc (command) . . 34, 86, 209, 296,
604
 - \decrementmtc 1, 2576, 3366, 7874
 - \decrementptc (command) . . 34, 86, 209, 253,
324, 604
 - \decrementptc 1, 4054, 7874
 - \decrementstc (command) . . 34, 86, 209, 349,
604
 - \decrementstc 1, 4697, 7874
 - \def (command) 73
 - DE LIMA, Arnaldo Viegas 258, 475, ⇨[83]
 - DEMOUSTIER, Sébastien 258
 - DEPARDIEU, Éric 258, ⇨[25]
 - Depth counters
 - lofdepth 33, 224, 294, 324, 348
 - lotdepth . . . 33, 224, 294, 307, 324, 348
 - minilofdepth . . 33, 217, 226, 294, 304
 - minilotdepth 33, 217, 226, 307
 - minitocdepth . 21, 27, 28, 32, 42, 65, 70,
82, 217, 226, 296, 300, 591
 - mtcoffset 42
 - partlofdepth . . 33, 217, 235, 324, 333
 - partlotdepth . . 33, 217, 236, 324, 336
 - parttocdepth . 21, 32, 81, 217, 236, 324,
330
 - secnumdepth 216, 217
 - sectlofdepth . . . 33, 217, 238, 348, 355
 - sectlotdepth . 33, 65, 217, 238, 348, 358

- secttocdepth . 30, 32, 83, 217, 238, 349, 352
- tocdepth 33, 62, 70, 81–83, 217, 240, 296, 300, 304, 395, 591, 603
- De Rydt, Ben 258
- DESGRAUPES, Bernard 258, \hookrightarrow [126–128]
- DESPRAIRIES, Cécile . 258, \hookrightarrow [29, 153, 319, 359]
- DESREUX, Sébastien 258, \hookrightarrow [8]
- Devanāgarī (package) . . 43, 217, 221, 465, 483, 507, \hookrightarrow [288]
- devanagari (language option) 38, 221, 483, 506
- devanagari.mld (file) 244, 245, 255, 483, 506, 617
- devanagari.sty (file) 217, 483
- \df@mtic 3435, 3505, 3573
- \df@mtilf (command) 297
- \df@mtilf 3397, 3402, 3512, 3733
- \df@mtilt (command) 297
- \df@mtilt 3397, 3402, 3580, 3752
- \df@mtitc (command) 297
- \df@mtitc 3397, 3402, 3442, 3714
- \df@pti 4168, 4236, 4311
- \df@ptilf 4134, 4242, 4416
- \df@ptilt 4134, 4317, 4435
- \df@ptitc 4134, 4174, 4397
- \df@sti 4758, 4826, 4893
- \df@stilf 4724, 4832, 5036
- \df@stilt 4724, 4899, 5055
- \df@stitc 4724, 4765, 5017
- DILLER, Antoni R. 258, \hookrightarrow [129]
- \dimen@ (command) 444
- \dimen@ 7699
- \divide 2696
- \dn 8728–8730, 8732–8734, 8736–8738, 9450–9452, 9454–9456, 9458–9460
- \do@mtilf (command) 297
- \do@mtilf 3397, 3402, 3507–3512, 3514, 3524, 3528
- \do@mtilt (command) 297
- \do@mtilt 3397, 3402, 3575–3580, 3582, 3592, 3596
- \do@mtitc (command) 297
- \do@mtitc 3397, 3402, 3435, 3505, 3573
- \do@ptilf 4134, 4236, 4248
- \do@ptilt 4134, 4311, 4327
- \do@ptitc 4134, 4168, 4180
- \do@stilf 4724, 4826, 4840
- \do@stilt 4724, 4893, 4907
- \do@stitc 4724, 4758, 4773
- doc (package) 21, \hookrightarrow [257]
- docmfp (package) \hookrightarrow [369]
- docstrip (package) 21, \hookrightarrow [225, 259]
- document (environment) 52, 77, 220, 236
- \documentclass (command) 28, 30, 32, 77, 124, 208, 214, 219, 236
- \documentclass 2, 53, 116, 177, 205, 225, 280, 315, 410, 411, 622, 877, 923, 1175, 1176, 1431, 1628, 1679, 1738, 1758, 1798, 1846, 1896, 1944, 1996, 2168, 2204, 2239, 2313, 2347, 2398, 2450, 2507, 2556, 2599, 2650, 2686
- \dominilof (command) . 27, 28, 39, 40, 82, 86, 162, 168, 181, 185, 236, 302, 310, 311, 337
- \dominilof 1, 59, 122, 428, 1205, 1950, 2475, 2719, 3489, 3699, 3704, 3737, 5295, 7044, 7128, 7673, 7890
- \dominilof@ 3708, 3733
- \dominilot (command) . 27, 28, 39, 40, 82, 86, 163, 168, 181, 186, 236, 305, 310, 311, 337
- \dominilot 1, 60, 123, 428, 1205, 1895, 3557, 3699, 3709, 3756, 5295, 7053, 7137, 7673, 7890
- \dominilot@ 3713, 3752
- \dominitoc (command) . 27, 28, 39, 40, 49, 54, 60, 77, 82, 86, 146, 160, 162, 169, 181, 185, 236, 242, 249, 252, 298, 299, 310, 311, 337, 360, 439, 592, 594, 600, 601
- \dominitoc 1, 10, 213, 236, 338, 428, 876, 1205, 1557, 1627, 1678, 1747, 1757, 1804, 1950, 2029, 2179, 2224, 2238, 2320, 2363, 2411, 2515, 2555, 2602, 3419, 3699, 3718, 5295, 7035, 7119, 7673, 7890
- \dominitoc@ (command) 311
- \dominitoc@ 3699, 3703, 3714
- \dopartlof (command) . 28, 32, 39, 40, 81, 86, 162, 169, 181, 185, 236, 337–339
- \dopartlof 1, 636, 945, 1205, 4382, 4394, 4420, 5295, 7015, 7099, 7670, 7884
- \dopartlof@ 4395, 4416
- \dopartlot (command) . 28, 32, 39, 40, 81, 86, 163, 169, 181, 185, 236, 337–339
- \dopartlot 1, 636, 950, 1205, 4382, 4394, 4439, 5295, 7024, 7108, 7670, 7884
- \dopartlot@ 4396, 4435
- \doparttoc (command) 28, 32, 39, 40, 52, 62, 81, 86, 160, 169, 182, 185, 236, 286, 337, 338, 418, 419, 421
- \doparttoc 1, 10, 187, 296, 636, 945, 1205, 1678, 1757, 1804, 4382, 4394, 4401, 5295, 7006, 7090, 7670, 7884

- `\doparttoc@` 4394, **4397**
 - DORJ, Dorjpalam . . . 258, 524, 553, 554, \hookrightarrow [120]
 - `\dosectlof` (command) 28, 30, 40, 83, 86, 162, 169, 182, 186, 236, 270, 360, 361
 - `\dosectlof` 1, **636**, **945**, **2838**, **5006**, **5014**, 5040, **5295**, 6990, 7073, 7157, **7676**, **7896**
 - `\dosectlof@` 5015, **5036**
 - `\dosectlot` (command) . 28, 30, 40, 52, 83, 86, 163, 170, 182, 186, 236, 270, 286, 361, 362
 - `\dosectlot` 1, **636**, **945**, **1845**, **2838**, **5010**, **5014**, 5059, **5295**, 6992, 7082, 7166, **7676**, **7896**
 - `\dosectlot@` 5016, **5055**
 - `\dosecttoc` (command) 28, 30, 40, 83, 86, 160, 170, 182, 186, 236, 349, 360, 361
 - `\dosecttoc` 1, **636**, **945**, **2662**, **5002**, **5014**, 5021, **5295**, 7064, 7148, **7676**, **7896**
 - `\dosecttoc@` 5014, **5017**
 - `\dotfil` 421, 423, 630, 632
 - `\dotfill` 422, 631
 - dotted** (default option) . . 46, 79, 250, 403, 596
 - DRIKIS, Ivars 258, 517
 - DRUCBERT, Jean-Pierre F. . . 25, \hookrightarrow [25, 130–132]
 - DUCHIER, Denys 258, \hookrightarrow [259]
 - DUDDING, Lyndon 63, 258
 - DUNG, Ta Quang 258
 - `duplex2v.pro` (file) 621
 - `dutch` (language option) 38, 484
 - `dutch.dtx` (file) 466, 484
 - `dutch.mld` (file) 244, 245, 484
- E**
- E0001 (message) 189
 - E0002 (message) 189
 - E0003 (message) 189
 - E0004 (message) 190
 - E0005 (message) 190
 - E0006 (message) 190
 - E0007 (message) 191
 - E0008 (message) 191
 - E0009 (message) 191, 393
 - E0010 (message) 192
 - E0011 (message) 192, 391
 - E0012 (message) 192, 391
 - E0013 (message) 193, 375
 - E0014 (message) 193, 375
 - E0015 (message) 193
 - E0016 (message) 194, 385
 - E0017 (message) 194, 386
 - E0018 (message) 194
 - E0019 (message) 195, 389
 - E0020 (message) 195
 - E0021 (message) 196, 380, 384
 - E0022 (message) 196, 379
 - E0023 (message) 196
 - E0024 (message) 197
 - E0025 (message) 197
 - E0026 (message) 197, 398
 - E0027 (message) 198, 399
 - E0028 (message) 198, 280
 - E0029 (message) 198
 - E0030 (message) 198
 - E0031 (message) 199
 - E0032 (message) 199
 - E0033 (message) 199
 - E0034 (message) 200
 - E0035 (message) 200, 404
 - E0036 (message) 200
 - E0037 (message) 201, 439
 - E0038 (message) 201, 406
 - E0039 (message) 202
 - E0040 (message) 202, 400
 - E0041 (message) 202
 - E0042 (message) 203, 394
 - E0043 (message) 203
 - `\e@mti` **3397**, **3435**, **3505**, **3573**, **3714**, **3733**, **3752**
 - `\e@pti` . . . **4104**, **4110**, **4168**, **4236**, **4311**, **4397**, **4416**, **4435**
 - `\e@sti` **4719**, **4758**, **4826**, **4893**, **5017**, **5036**, **5055**
 - `\edef` (command) 257, 323, 385, 624
 - `\edef` 3775, 3883, 3897, 3948, 3958, 4009, 4458, 4560, 4570, 4620, 4630, 4680, 4969, 5078, 5164, 5174, 5224, 5234, 5284, 5449, 5467, 5562, 5591, 5602, 5632, 5643, 5755, 5772, 5781, 5832, 5851, 5908, 5926, 5989, 6007, 6008, 6020, 6049, 6093, 6421
 - ÈEHAJA, Marko 258, 542
 - EUKHOUT, Victor . . . 258, \hookrightarrow [65, 133–135, 218]
 - Els, Danie 258, \hookrightarrow [139]
 - `\else` (command) 269
 - `\em` 2298, 2305
 - `emk` (script) 217, 222, 237, 244–247, 606
 - `\emph` 2074, 2076, 2143, 2154
 - `\empty` (command) 46–48, 85, 291, 449, 453, 593
 - `\empty` **2208**, **2217**, 3273–3275, 3279–3284, 3286–3288, 3292–3306, 3308–3310, 3314–3319, 6417, **7914**, 7950, 7953, 7954, 8002–8046, 8077, 8088, 8099, 8108–8116
 - `en-mtc.bst` (file) 217, 244–246, 255, 618
 - `\endcsname` (command) 323, 373, 376
 - `\endgroup` 3023, 3331, 3479, 3551, 3619, 4208, 4282, 4357, 4803, 4870, 4938, 4976
 - `\endlist` 3418, 4148, 4741

- `\endmtc@verse` (command) 298
- `\endmtc@verse` 323, 3418
- `\endmtchideinmainlof` (command) 68, 86, 229
- `\endmtchideinmainlof` 115, 149
- `\endmtchideinmainlot` (command) . . 68, 86, 129, 229
- `\endmtchideinmainlot` . 115, 157, 1880, 1928
- `\endptc@verse` (command) 327
- `\endptc@verse` 4137
- `\endstc@verse` 4741
- english** (default language option) . 38, 79, 436, 467, 470, 476, 479, 484, 526, 549, 551, 599
- `english.dtx` (file) 484, 485
- `english.mld` (file) 35, 37–39, 157, 200, 243–245, 406, 407, 465, 467, 470, 476, 479, 484, 526, 549, 551, 596, 597, 618, 620
- `english1` (language option) 38, 485
- `english1.mld` (file) 244, 245, 485, 613
- `english2` (language option) 38, 485
- `english2.mld` (file) 244, 245, 485, 613
- `\enlargethispage` (command) 57
- `\enlargethispage` 1
- Environments
 - `abstract` 52, 69
 - `appendices` 63, 105, 210, 228
 - `bibunit` 212
 - `document` 52, 77, 220, 236
 - `figure` 212, 239, 241
 - `filecontents` 43, 219, 402, 465
 - `margincap` 225
 - `minipage` 137, 591
 - `mtc@verse` 92, 93, 298, 300, 301, 303, 304, 307, 382, 383
 - `mtchideinmainlof` . 66, 67, 86, 189, 198, 209, 229, 252, 396, 456, 601, 604, 614
 - `mtchideinmainlot` . 66, 67, 86, 190, 199, 209, 229, 252, 396, 456, 601, 604, 614
 - `mtchideinmaintoc` 66, 86, 116, 117, 190, 199, 209, 228, 252, 395, 456, 601, 614
 - `multicols` 90, 93, 119, 140–142, 231
 - `pageUn` 119
 - `ptc@verse` . . 327, 330, 333, 336, 382, 383
 - `quote` 57, 608
 - `samepage` . . 300, 301, 303, 304, 306, 307, 329, 331, 332, 334–336, 351, 353, 354, 356–358, 593
 - `sidewaysfigure` 237
 - `sidewaystable` 237
 - `stc@verse` . . 350, 352, 355, 358, 383, 384, 602
 - `subappendices` 210
 - `tabbing` 57
 - `table` 212, 239, 241
 - `tabular` 57, 300, 303, 306, 330, 332, 335, 352, 354, 357
 - `thebibliography` 138, 149
 - `verse` 34, 298, 327, 350, 591
 - `wrapfigure` 137, 229, 242
 - `wraptable` 242
- ESFAHBOD, Behdad 258, 489, [↪](#)[136]
- esperant (language option) 38, 486
- `esperant.mld` (file) 244, 245, 486
- esperanto (language option) 38, 486
- `esperanto.dtx` (file) 486
- `esperanto.mld` (file) 244, 245, 486
- ESSER, Thomas 258
- estonian (language option) 38, 487, 597
- `estonian.dtx` (file) 487
- `estonian.mld` (file) 244, 245, 487
- ε -TeX (package) 215, 218, 234, 269, [↪](#)[96, 251]
- `\eth@doaltchar` 8865, 8866, 8868, 8869, 8873, 8874, 8876, 8877, 8881, 8882, 8884, 8885
- ethiop (package) . 43, 218, 465, 487, 488, [↪](#)[37]
- ethiopia (language option) 38, 487, 488
- `ethiopia.mld` (file) 244, 245, 487, 488
- ethiopian (language option) 38, 218, 488
- `ethiopian.mld` (file) 244, 245
- ethiopian2 (language option) 38, 488
- `ethiopian2.mld` (file) 244, 245, 488, 610
- `ethopian.mld` (file) 488
- ETIENNE, Gilhooly 258, [↪](#)[153]
- EVERITT, Karl F. 258, 597
- Examples
 - `mtc-2c.pdf` 245
 - `mtc-2c.tex` 90, 228, 244, 245, 618
 - `mtc-2nd.pdf` 245
 - `mtc-2nd.tex` . 91, 228, 244, 245, 274, 493, 619
 - `mtc-3co.pdf` 245
 - `mtc-3co.tex` . 92, 228, 231, 244, 245, 256, 621
 - `mtc-add.bib` 228, 244, 245, 618
 - `mtc-add.pdf` 245
 - `mtc-add.tex` 51, 95, 96, 228, 244, 245, 618
 - `mtc-ads.pdf` 245
 - `mtc-ads.tex` . 51, 100, 228, 244, 245, 618
 - `mtc-amm.pdf` 245
 - `mtc-amm.tex` . 63, 105, 228, 244, 245, 618
 - `mtc-apx.pdf` 245
 - `mtc-apx.tex` . 66, 89, 106, 228, 244, 245, 615, 618
 - `mtc-art.pdf` 245
 - `mtc-art.tex` . . . 106, 228, 244, 245, 618
 - `mtc-bk.pdf` 245

- mtc-bk.tex . . . 111, 229, 244, 245, 618
- mtc-bo.pdf 245
- mtc-bo.tex . 117, 229, 244, 245, 616, 618
- mtc-ch0.pdf 245
- mtc-ch0.tex . . . 122, 229, 244, 245, 618
- mtc-cri.pdf 245
- mtc-cri.tex . . . 123, 229, 244, 245, 618
- mtc-fko.pdf 245
- mtc-fko.tex 124, 229, 244, 245, 256, 622
- mtc-fo1.pdf 245
- mtc-fo1.tex 125, 126, 229, 244, 245, 618
- mtc-fo2.pdf 245
- mtc-fo2.tex . . . 126, 229, 244, 245, 618
- mtc-gap.pdf 245
- mtc-gap.tex . 75, 89, 128, 229, 244, 245, 618
- mtc-hi1.pdf 245
- mtc-hi1.tex . 67, 89, 128, 229, 244, 245, 618
- mtc-hi2.pdf 245
- mtc-hi2.tex . 68, 89, 128, 229, 244, 245, 618
- mtc-hia.pdf 245
- mtc-hia.tex . . . 128, 229, 244, 245, 618
- mtc-hir.pdf 245
- mtc-hir.tex . . . 129, 229, 244, 245, 618
- mtc-hop.pdf 245
- mtc-hop.tex . . . 130, 229, 244, 245, 618
- mtc-liv.pdf 245
- mtc-liv.tex . . . 131, 229, 244, 245, 618
- mtc-mem.pdf 245
- mtc-mem.tex . . . 135, 229, 244, 245, 618
- mtc-mm1.pdf 245
- mtc-mm1.tex . . . 136, 229, 244, 245, 618
- mtc-mu.pdf 245
- mtc-mu.tex . . . 137, 229, 244, 245, 618
- mtc-nom.pdf 245
- mtc-nom.tex 139, 230, 244, 245, 256, 623
- mtc-ocf.pdf 245
- mtc-ocf.tex 140, 215, 230, 235, 244, 245, 256, 623
- mtc-ofs.pdf 245
- mtc-ofs.tex 141, 230, 244, 245, 256, 623
- mtc-sbf.pdf 245
- mtc-sbf.tex . . . 143, 230, 244, 245, 619
- mtc-scr.pdf 245
- mtc-scr.tex . . . 145, 230, 244, 245, 618
- mtc-syn.pdf 245
- mtc-syn.tex . . . 146, 230, 244, 245, 619
- mtc-tbi.pdf 245
- mtc-tbi.tex . . . 147, 230, 244, 245, 619
- mtc-tlc.pdf 245
- mtc-tlc.tex . . . 149, 230, 244, 245, 619
- mtc-tlo.pdf 245
- mtc-tlo.tex . 78, 89, 150, 230, 244, 245, 619
- mtc-tsf.pdf 245
- mtc-tsf.tex . . . 150, 230, 244, 245, 619
- \ExecuteOptions **7565**
- \expandafter (command) 373
- \expandafter . . 3048, 3328, 3343, 3348, 3351, 3356, 3779, 3783, 3797, 3812, 3815, 3818, 3821, 3824, 3827, 3830, 3844, 3847, 3850, 3853, 3856, 3860, 3867, 3870, 3875, 3891, 3893, 3900, 3903, 3917, 3921, 3926, 3933, 3937, 3940, 3955, 3956, 3961, 3964, 3978, 3982, 3987, 3994, 3998, 4001, 4016, 4017, 4024, 4029, 4461, 4463, 4477, 4492, 4495, 4498, 4501, 4504, 4507, 4510, 4513, 4516, 4519, 4522, 4525, 4528, 4531, 4534, 4538, 4545, 4549, 4552, 4567, 4568, 4573, 4575, 4589, 4593, 4598, 4605, 4609, 4612, 4627, 4628, 4633, 4635, 4649, 4653, 4658, 4665, 4669, 4672, 4687, 4688, 4956, 5081, 5084, 5099, 5102, 5105, 5108, 5111, 5129, 5132, 5135, 5138, 5142, 5149, 5153, 5156, 5171, 5172, 5177, 5180, 5195, 5198, 5202, 5209, 5213, 5216, 5231, 5232, 5237, 5240, 5255, 5258, 5262, 5269, 5273, 5276, 5291, 5292, 5396, 5397, 5417, 5418, 5425, 5434, 5452, 5492–5496, 5498–5500, 5502–5504, 5506–5513, 5515–5520, 5522–5527, 5529–5537, 5539–5545, 5547–5553, 5562, 5576, 5602, 5617, 5643, 5741, 5757, 5781, 5795, 5816, 5835, 5855, 5871, 5892, 5911, 5930, 5963–5966, 5968, 5974, 5991, 6020, 6034, 6053, 6066, 6078, 6097, 6110, 6224, 6226, 6228, 6267, 6269, 6271, 6310, 6312, 6314, 9076, 9084, 9092, 9953, 9963, 9973, 10324, 10530, 10579
- \ext@subfigure **2449**
- Extensions
 - .F 53, 54, 208, 302
 - .G 53, 54, 208, 338
 - .H 53, 54, 208, 360
 - .M 53, 54, 208, 299
 - .P 53, 54, 208, 338
 - .S 53, 54, 209, 360
 - .T 53, 54, 209, 305
 - .U 53, 54, 209, 338
 - .V 53, 54, 209, 361
 - .aux 54, 57, 59, 62, 207, 211, 274
 - .bst 217, 220, 241, 244–246, 255, 618

- .cls 208
- .dtx 43, 208, 247, 252, 253, 465, 541, 602
- .ins 208, 247, 252
- .ist 220, 226, 244–246, 602, 603, 605
- .lan 220, 226, 244–246, 441
- .lof . 27, 54, 57, 60–62, 67, 155, 182–184,
208, 211, 282, 284–286, 310, 311, 319,
338, 345, 360, 367, 456, 597
- .log . 30, 32, 51, 54, 56, 79, 147, 154, 165,
172, 173, 205, 208, 221, 267, 269, 286,
410, 434, 435, 465, 600, 620
- .lot . 27, 54, 57, 60, 62, 67, 155, 183, 184,
208, 211, 282, 284–286, 311, 321, 322,
338, 347, 361, 369, 456, 595, 597
- .maf . 51, 79, 157, 208, 224, 253, 405, 437,
605
- .mld 20, 35, 38, 43, 69, 74, 80, 157,
166, 172, 190, 199, 201, 208, 210, 214,
243, 245, 249–251, 253, 255, 267, 401,
405–407, 461, 465, 493, 595, 597, 599,
604, 605, 609, 613, 620, 621
- .mlf 27, 53, 54, 208, 302, 311
- .mlo 20, 38, 43, 69, 158, 166, 172, 191, 208,
214, 219, 243, 245, 253, 255, 267, 401,
402, 405, 407, 461, 465, 522, 605, 612,
620
- .mlt 27, 53, 54, 208, 305, 311
- .mtc . . 27, 51, 53, 54, 57, 58, 60, 208, 281,
286, 287, 299, 311, 437, 591
- .mtc1 286, 437, 616
- .pdf 245
- .plf 30, 53, 54, 208, 338
- .plt 30, 53, 54, 208, 338
- .pre 226, 244–246, 606, 612
- .ptc 30, 53, 54, 208, 338
- .slf 29, 53, 54, 209, 360
- .slt 29, 53, 54, 209, 361
- .stc 29, 53, 54, 209, 360
- .sty . . . 209, 235, 243, 246, 247, 249, 595
- .tar 247
- .tex 155, 209
- .tgz 247
- .toc 27, 49, 54, 57, 58, 60–62, 67, 155, 183,
184, 209, 211, 249, 282, 284–286, 293,
295, 310, 311, 316, 338, 342, 360, 365,
456, 592, 595, 597
- .zip 247
- F0004 (message) 204
- F0005 (message) 204
- F0006 (message) 205
- F0007 (message) 205
- F0008 (message) 205, 444
- F0009 (message) 205, 446
- \f@rhdr 8170, 8176, 8178, 8186, 8214
- \f@rtoc . . 8169, 8174, 8203, 8206, 8209, 8212,
8214
- \fa 8308, 8312, 8316, 8935, 8939, 8943
- FABIAN, Mike 258, ↪[137]
- FAIRBAIRNS, Robin 258, ↪[138]
- \fake@starttoc (command) 293
- \fake@starttoc 3320
- \fakelistoffigures (command) . 28, 30, 32,
80–83, 182–184, 293
- \fakelistoffigures . 951, 1212, 1953, 3320,
6970, 7192, 7227, 7262, 7870
- \fakelistoftables (command) 28, 30, 32, 52,
80–83, 183, 184, 293
- \fakelistoftables . . 951, 1211, 3320, 6970,
7203, 7238, 7273, 7870
- \faketableofcontents (command)
28, 30, 32, 52, 54, 80–83, 92, 183, 184,
293, 418, 423, 592
- \faketableofcontents . . 188, 296, 951, 1211,
1558, 2411, 2662, 3320, 6970, 7181,
7216, 7251, 7870
- fancybox (package) ↪[347]
- farsi (language option) 210, 219
- farsi.ldf (file) 210, 490
- farsi.sty (file) 219, 489
- farsi1 (language option) 38, 489
- farsi1.mld (file) 244, 245, 489, 605
- farsi1.mlo (file) 244, 245, 489, 605
- farsi2 (language option) 38, 489
- farsi2.mld (file) 244, 245, 489, 605
- farsi2.mlo (file) 244, 245, 489, 605
- farsi3 (language option) 38, 490
- farsi3.mld (file) 210, 244, 245, 490, 617
- FarsiTeX (package) . 43, 219, 465, 489, ↪[136]
- FAULHAMMER, Christian 258, ↪[299]
- \fbox 2483, 2488, 2491, 2493, 2705
- \fboxrule 2703
- \fboxsep 2703
- FEAR, Simon 258, ↪[139]
- Features
 - after . 47, 48, 80, 85, 141, 192, 209, 219,
291, 292
 - before 47, 48, 80, 85, 141, 192, 211, 219,
291, 292
 - close . 47, 48, 80, 85, 140–142, 192, 215,
219, 230, 256, 291, 293, 301, 304, 307,
330, 333, 336, 352, 355, 358, 623

F

- F0001 (message) 203
- F0002 (message) 204
- F0003 (message) 204

- open 47, 48, 80, 85, 140–142, 192, 219, 230,
235, 256, 291, 293, 301, 304, 307, 330,
333, 336, 352, 355, 358, 623
pagestyle . . . 47, 48, 80, 85, 219, 235, 291,
293, 390
FENN, Jürgen 258, ↪[140, 339, 340]
FERGUSON, Michael J. 258, ↪[141]
FESSLER, Jeff 258
\fi (command) 243, 269, 441
\figbox . . . 2704, 2734, 2739, 2744, 2749, 2754,
2759, 2764
\figure (command) 318
figure (environment) 212, 239, 241
\figure 3917, 4589, 5194
\figure@mtcck . . . 5487, 5493, 5503, 5510, 5526,
5534, 5552
filecontents (environment) . 43, 219, 402, 465
Files
/tmp/‘whoami’.imk 246
/tmp/‘whoami’.rmk 247
/tmp/‘whoami’.tmk 246, 247
/tmp/‘whoami’/OLD 616
\jobname.lan 441
\jobname.mtc 286
\jobname.mtc1 286
acadian.mld 244, 245, 466
acadien.mld 244, 245, 466
afrikaan.mld 244, 245, 466, 467
afrikaans.mld 244, 245, 467
albanian.dtx 467
albanian.mld 244, 245, 467
american.mld . . . 244, 245, 407, 467, 597
amsart.cls 210
amsbook.cls 210
amsproc.cls 210
arab.mld . . . 211, 244, 245, 468, 469, 596
arab2.mld 211, 244, 245, 468, 613
arabi.mld 210, 244, 245, 469, 617
arabic.ldf 210
arabic.mld 211, 244, 245, 469
armenian.mld 211, 244, 245, 469
australian.mld 244, 245, 470
austrian.mld 244, 245, 470
bahasa.dtx 471
bahasa.mld 244, 245, 470
bahasai.mld 244, 245, 470, 471, 508
bahasam.dtx 471
bahasam.mld 244, 245, 471, 522, 524
bangla.mld 244, 245, 472
basque.dtx 472
basque.mld 244, 245, 472
Bg5.cap 481
Bg5.cpx 481
bicig.mld 244, 245, 473, 548
bicig2.mld 244, 245, 474, 548, 607
bicig3.mld 244, 245, 474, 549, 613
bithe.mld 244, 245, 475, 524, 607
book.cls 70
brazil.mld 244, 245, 475, 476
brazilian.mld 244, 245, 476, 604
breton.dtx 476
breton.mld 244, 245, 476
british.mld 244, 245, 476, 604
bulgarian.dtx 477
bulgarian.mld 244, 245, 477, 597
bulgarianb.mld . . . 43, 244, 245, 477, 602
buryat.mld 244, 245, 478
buryat2.mld 244, 245, 479, 613
canadian.mld 244, 245, 479
canadien.mld 244, 245, 479
captions.dn 507
castillan.mld 244, 245, 480
castillian.mld 244, 245, 480, 604
catalan.dtx 480
catalan.mld 244, 245, 480
CATALOG 213, 244, 245, 621
chinese1.mld 244, 245, 481, 600
chinese1.mlo 244, 245, 481
chinese2.mld 244, 245, 481, 600
chinese2.mlo 244, 245, 481
cmcyralt.sty 539
croatian.dtx 482
croatian.mld 244, 245, 482
czech.dtx 482
czech.mld 244, 245, 482
danish.dtx 483
danish.mld 244, 245, 483
devanagari.mld . . . 244, 245, 255, 483, 506,
617
devanagari.sty 217, 483
duplex2v.pro 621
dutch.dtx 466, 484
dutch.mld 244, 245, 484
en-mtc.bst 217, 244–246, 255, 618
english.dtx 484, 485
english.mld 35, 37–39, 157, 200,
243–245, 406, 407, 465, 467, 470, 476,
479, 484, 526, 549, 551, 596, 597, 618,
620
english1.mld 244, 245, 485, 613
english2.mld 244, 245, 485, 613
esperant.mld 244, 245, 486
esperanto.dtx 486
esperanto.mld 244, 245, 486
estonian.dtx 487
estonian.mld 244, 245, 487
ethiopia.mld 244, 245, 487, 488

- ethiopian.mld 244, 245
- ethiopian2.mld 244, 245, 488, 610
- ethopian.mld 488
- farsi.ldf 210, 490
- farsi.sty 219, 489
- farsi1.mld 244, 245, 489, 605
- farsi1.mlo 244, 245, 489, 605
- farsi2.mld 244, 245, 489, 605
- farsi2.mlo 244, 245, 489, 605
- farsi3.mld 210, 244, 245, 490, 617
- finnish.dtx 490, 491
- finnish.mld 244, 245, 490
- finnish2.mld 244, 245, 491, 602
- fminitoc.bib 220, 244–246, 599
- fminitoc.dtx 62, 220, 243–247, 441, 603
- fminitoc.ins 246
- fminitoc.ist 220, 244–246, 603
- fminitoc.lan 220, 244–246, 441
- fminitoc.pdf 220, 244–246, 599
- fminitoc.ps 220
- fr-mtc.bst 220, 244–246, 255, 618
- franc.sty 244
- francais.mld 244, 245, 491
- frbib.sty 244
- french.mld 35, 37, 39, 244, 245, 466, 479, 491, 492, 494, 603, 609
- french1.mld 244, 245, 492, 613
- french2.mld .91, 244, 245, 274, 493, 613, 615, 616
- frenchb.dtx 492, 493
- frenchb.mld 244, 245, 494
- frenchle.mld 244, 245, 494
- frenchpro.mld 244, 245, 494
- frnew.sty 244
- frplain1.bst 255, 618
- galician.dtx 494
- galician.mld 244, 245, 494, 622
- german.mld 244, 245, 470, 495
- germanb.dtx 496
- germanb.mld 244, 245, 496
- germanb2.mld 244, 245, 496, 605
- greek-mono.mld 210, 244, 245, 497, 601
- greek-polydemo.mld 210, 244, 245, 498, 601
- greek-polykatha.mld 210, 244, 245, 499, 601
- greek.dtx 497
- greek.mld 244, 245, 497
- guarani.ldf 221, 500
- guarani.mld 244, 245, 500, 604
- hangul-u8.mld 244, 245, 503
- hangul-u8.mlo 244, 245, 503
- hangul.cap 501
- hangul.cpx 501
- hangul1.mld 244, 245, 501, 600
- hangul1.mlo 244, 245, 501
- hangul2.cap 502
- hangul2.cpx 502
- hangul2.mld 244, 245, 501, 600
- hangul2.mlo 244, 245, 501
- hangul3.mld 244, 245, 502, 600
- hangul3.mlo 244, 245, 502
- hangul4.mld 244, 245, 502, 600
- hangul4.mlo 244, 245, 502
- hanja-u8.mld 244, 245, 504
- hanja-u8.mlo 244, 245, 504, 505
- hanja.cap 504
- hanja.cpx 503
- hanja1.mld 244, 245, 503, 600
- hanja1.mlo 244, 245, 503
- hanja2.mld 244, 245, 504, 600
- hanja2.mlo 244, 245, 504
- hebrew.dtx 506
- hebrew.mld 211, 244, 245, 505, 597
- hebrew2.mld 211, 244, 245, 506
- hindi-modern.mld . 244, 245, 255, 507, 617, 618
- hindi.mld 244, 245, 255, 506, 617
- hungarian.mld 244, 245, 507
- icelandic.dtx 508
- icelandic.mld 244, 245, 508, 597
- indon.mld 244, 245, 508
- indonesian.mld 244, 245, 508
- INSTALL 222, 244, 245, 252, 255, 601, 615, 620
- interlingua.dtx 509
- interlingua.mld 244, 245, 509
- irish.dtx 509
- irish.mld 244, 245, 509, 612
- italian.dtx 510
- italian.mld 244, 245, 510, 609
- italian2.mld 244, 245, 510
- japanese.mld 43, 244, 245, 511
- japanese.mlo 244, 245, 511
- japanese2.mld 244, 245, 511, 600
- japanese2.mlo 244, 245, 511
- japanese3.mld . 244, 245, 512, 600, 609
- japanese3.mlo 244, 245, 512
- japanese4.mld 244, 245, 512, 600
- japanese4.mlo 244, 245, 512
- japanese5.mld 244, 245, 513, 600
- japanese5.mlo 244, 245, 513
- japanese6.mld . 244, 245, 255, 513, 619
- japanese6.mlo . 244, 245, 255, 513, 619
- JIS.cap 511
- JIS.cpx 512
- kanlel.sty 514

- kannada.mld . . . 244, 245, 514, 611, 622
- khalkha.mld 244, 245, 514, 607
- lamed.eps 244–246, 613
- lamed.pdf 244–246, 613
- lamed.tex 244–246, 613
- latex.fmt 59
- latex.tex 59, 593
- latin.dtx 514–516
- latin.mld 244, 245, 514, 597
- latin2.mld 244, 245, 515, 602
- latinc.mld 244, 245, 256, 516, 623
- latinc2.mld 244, 245, 256, 516, 623
- latvian.ldf 517
- latvian.mld 210, 244, 245, 517, 518, 601
- latvian2.mld 244, 245, 256, 517, 518, 623
- letton.mld 244, 245, 518, 601
- letton2.mld 244, 245, 256, 518, 623
- lhcyralt.sty 539
- lhcyrkoi.sty 540
- lhcyrwin.sty 540
- lithuanian.ldf 518, 519
- lithuanian.mld 244, 245, 518, 596, 609
- lithuanian2.mld 244, 245, 256, 519, 623
- lowersorbian.mld . 244, 245, 519, 520, 610
- lsorbian.dtx 519
- lsorbian.mld 244, 245, 520, 612
- magyar.dtx 520, 521
- magyar.mld 244, 245, 507, 520, 612
- magyar2.mld 244, 245, 521, 602, 612
- magyar3.mld 244, 245, 521, 609, 612
- malay.mld 244, 245, 522
- malayalam-keli.mld . 244, 245, 522, 603
- malayalam-omega.mld 244, 245, 522, 611
- malayalam-omega.mlo 244, 245, 522, 611
- malayalam-rachana.mld . 244, 245, 523, 603
- malayalam-rachana2.mld 244, 245, 523, 603
- manju.mld 244, 245, 524, 607
- memoir.cls 225, 279
- meyalu.mld 244, 245, 524
- minitoc-hyper.sty 226
- minitoc-tds.zip 227, 244, 246, 247, 255, 620, 622
- minitoc.bib 226, 244–246, 599
- minitoc.bug . 51, 56, 226, 244–246, 253, 254, 599, 604, 606, 610, 614
- minitoc.dtx . 62, 220, 222, 226, 243–247, 253, 402, 441, 615
- minitoc.ins . 43, 219, 220, 222, 226, 230, 243–246, 402, 441, 465, 603, 615
- minitoc.ist 226, 244–246, 602
- minitoc.l 226, 243–245, 606
- minitoc.lan 220, 226, 244–246, 441
- minitoc.pdf 226, 244–246
- minitoc.pre 226, 244–246, 606, 612
- minitoc.ps 226
- minitoc.sty 226, 243–245, 267
- minitoc.sum 227, 244–246
- minitoc.tex 595, 599
- mongol.mld 244, 245, 524
- mongolb.mld 244, 245, 255, 256, 525, 526, 621, 622
- mongolb.mlo 255, 621
- mongolian.dtx 525
- mongolian.mld . 244, 245, 256, 526, 622
- mtc-apx.tex 622
- mtc-cri.log 123
- mtcglo.ist 605
- mtcmess.sty 243–245
- mtcnorsk.sty 595
- mtcnynorsk.sty 595
- mtcoff.sty 243–245, 601
- mtcpatchmem.sty 243–245
- mtcswedish.sty 594
- naustrian.mld 244, 245, 526
- newzealand.mld 244, 245, 526
- ngerman.mld 244, 245, 527
- ngermanb.dtx 527, 528
- ngermanb.mld 244, 245, 526, 527
- ngermanb2.mld 244, 245, 528, 605
- norsk.dtx 528, 529
- norsk.mld 244, 245, 528
- norsk2.mld 244, 245, 529, 605
- nynorsk.mld 244, 245, 529
- nynorsk2.mld 244, 245, 530, 605
- OLD 616
- omega-greek.ldf 497–499
- omega-polish.ldf 531
- omega-russian.ldf 536
- omega-spanish.ldf 545
- omega.sty 210
- placeins.sty 30
- placeins.txt 30, 236
- plain.bst 217, 220
- plainurl.bst 255, 618
- polish.dtx 530
- polish.mld 244, 245, 530
- polish2.mld 210, 244, 245, 531, 601
- polski.dtx 531
- polski.mld 244, 245, 531, 612
- portuges.dtx 475, 532
- portuges.mld 244, 245, 532, 602, 603
- portugues.mld 602–604
- portuguese.mld 244, 245, 532, 604
- rapport.doc 547

- README 244, 245
 romanian.dtx 533, 534
 romanian.mld 244, 245, 533
 romanian2.mld . 244, 245, 533, 610, 617
 romanian3.mld . 244, 245, 534, 610, 617
 russian-cca.mld ... 244, 245, 538, 612
 russian-cca.mlo 244, 245, 538
 russian-cca1.mld . 244, 245, 539, 612
 russian-cca1.mlo 244, 245, 539
 russian-lh.mld 244, 245, 539, 612
 russian-lh.mlo 244, 245, 539
 russian-lhcyralt.mld .. 244, 245, 539, 612
 russian-lhcyralt.mlo .. 244, 245, 539, 540
 russian-lhcyrkoi.mld .. 244, 245, 540, 612
 russian-lhcyrkoi.mlo .. 244, 245, 540
 russian-lhcyrwin.mld .. 244, 245, 540, 612
 russian-lhcyrwin.mlo .. 244, 245, 540
 russian.def 538
 russian.mld 244, 245, 534
 russian.sty 538, 539
 russian2m.ldf 535
 russian2m.mld . 210, 244, 245, 535, 601
 russian2o.mld . 210, 244, 245, 536, 601
 russianb.dtx 477, 525, 537
 russianb.mld 244, 245, 537, 611
 russianc.mld 244, 245, 538
 samin.dtx 541
 samin.mld 244, 245, 541, 597
 scottish.dtx 541
 scottish.mld 244, 245, 541
 scrbook.cls 124
 serbian.dtx 542
 serbian.mld 244, 245, 542, 610
 serbianc.mld 43, 244, 245, 542, 600, 610
 SJIS.cap 512
 SJIS.cpx 513
 slovak.dtx 543
 slovak.mld 244, 245, 543
 slovene.dtx 544
 slovene.mld 244, 245, 544
 spanish.dtx 494, 544–546
 spanish.mld ... 244, 245, 480, 544, 611
 spanish2.mld 244, 245, 545, 602
 spanish3.mld . 210, 244, 245, 545, 605
 spanish4.mld 244, 245, 546, 610
 swedish.dtx 546
 swedish.mld 244, 245, 546
 swedish2.mld 244, 245, 547, 613
 thai.ldf 547
 thai.mld 244, 245, 547, 600
 thai.mlo 244, 245, 547
 thaicjk.ldf 547
 titletoc.sty 240
 tocloft.pdf 77
 TODO 240, 244, 245
 turkish.dtx 548
 turkish.mld 244, 245, 548
 u8hangul.mld 611
 u8hangul.mlo 611
 u8hangul.tex 503
 u8hanja.mld 611
 u8hanja.mlo 611
 u8hanja.tex 504
 uighur.mld 244, 245, 548, 615
 uighur2.mld 244, 245, 548, 615
 uighur3.mld 244, 245, 549, 615
 UKenglish.mld 244, 245, 549, 604
 ukraineb.dtx 550
 ukraineb.mld 244, 245, 549
 ukrainian.mld . 244, 245, 549, 550, 610
 uppersorbian.mld . 244, 245, 550, 551, 610
 USenglish.mld 244, 245, 551, 604
 usorbian.dtx 550
 usorbian.mld 244, 245, 551, 612
 vietnam.mld ... 244, 245, 551, 552, 596
 vietnamese.mld 244, 245, 552
 welsh.dtx 552
 welsh.mld 244, 245, 552
 while.tip 280
 win-gn.def 500
 xalx.mld 244, 245, 514, 553, 607
 xalx2.mld 244, 245, 553, 613
 xalx3.mld 244, 245, 554, 613
 \finalmem 9384, 9386, 9391, 9393, 9398, 9400
 \finalnun 9383, 9390, 9397
 finnish (language option) 38, 490
 finnish.dtx (file) 490, 491
 finnish.mld (file) 244, 245, 490
 finnish2 (language option) 38, 491
 finnish2.mld (file) 244, 245, 491, 602
 \firstchapteris (command) .. 27, 49, 53, 88, 167, 179, 209, 213, 219, 296, 435, 594, 595
 \firstchapteris **1, 3366**, 7543, **7964**
 \firstpartis (command) 27, 49, 53, 88, 167, 179, 209, 219, 324, 434
 \firstpartis **1, 4054**, 7536, **7964**
 \firstsectionis (command) .. 27, 49, 53, 88, 168, 179, 209, 219, 349, 435
 \firstsectionis **1, 4697**, 7550, **7964**
 FISCHER, Ulrike 258

flafter (package) 30, 236, 436, 613, 614,
 ↪[226, 260]
 FLECK, Jean-Julien 258, ↪[8]
 FLIPO, Daniel 258, 492, 493, ↪[66, 279]
 float (package) 30, 53, 87, 166, 219, 237, 256,
 271, 278, 431, 623, ↪[238]
 \FloatBarrier (command) 29, 219, 236, 604
 \FloatBarrier **1, 1022, 1095**
 floatrow (package) 30, 53, 87, 166, 219, 256, 271,
 278, 431, 623, ↪[223]
 FLOM, Peter L. 258, ↪[142–144]
 flowfram (package) 52, 78, 87, 173, 256, 415, 623,
 ↪[333, 334]
 flowframe (package) 220
 flsection (option) 251, 598
 flsectionnb (option) 251, 598
 \flushbottom 939, 1191
 \flushcolumns **2361, 2406**
 FLYNN, Peter 258, ↪[145–148]
 fminitoc.bib (file) 220, 244–246, 599
 fminitoc.dtx (file) 62, 220, 243–247, 441, 603
 fminitoc.ins (file) 246
 fminitoc.ist (file) 220, 244–246, 603
 fminitoc.lan (file) 220, 244–246, 441
 fminitoc.pdf (file) 220, 244–246, 599
 fminitoc.ps (file) 220
 fmk (script) 220, 222, 237, 244–247, 606
 fncychap (package) 52, 74, 87, 187, 220, 254,
 276, 427, 614, ↪[237]
 fo1.tex (old example document) 616, 618
 fo2.tex (old example document) 616, 618
 \footnotesize (command) 233
 \footnotesize 2660
 Fox, Jim 258
 \FR 8935–8937, 8939–8941, 8943–8945
 fr-mtc.bst (file) 220, 244–246, 255, 618
 \frac 2326
 franc (package) 91, 220, 245, 246
 franc.sty (file) 244
 francais (language option) 38, 491
 francais.mld (file) 244, 245, 491
 frbib (package) 220, 245, 246
 frbib.sty (file) 244
 french (language option) 38, 479, 491, 492, 494,
 598, 599
 french.mld (file) 35, 37, 39, 244, 245, 466, 479,
 491, 492, 494, 603, 609
 french1 (language option) 38, 492
 french1.mld (file) 244, 245, 492, 613
 french2 (language option) 38, 91, 228, 493
 french2.mld (file) . 91, 244, 245, 274, 493, 613,
 615, 616
 frenchb (language option) 38, 494
 frenchb.dtx (file) 492, 493

frenchb.mld (file) 244, 245, 494
 frenchle (language option) 38, 494, 598
 frenchle.mld (file) 244, 245, 494
 frenchpro (language option) 38, 494, 598
 frenchpro.mld (file) 244, 245, 494
 frnew (package) 91, 220, 245, 246
 frnew.sty (file) 244
 \frontmatter (command) 77
 \frontmatter 212
 frplain1.bst (file) 255, 618
 fullpage (package) 140, 141, 150, ↪[123]
 \fup 2018, 2041, 2043, 2109
 FÜRNISS, Danny M. 258
 FURUKAWA, Tetsuo 258, ↪[190]
 \fussy 1022, 1286

G

galician (language option) 38, 494, 544
 galician.dtx (file) 494
 galician.mld (file) 244, 245, 494, 622
 gaps 75
 gaps.tex (old example document) 615, 618
 GARCIA, Federico 258, ↪[149]
 GARCÍA MORATE, Diego 258
 GÄSSLEIN, Hubert 57, 258, ↪[150]
 \gdef (command) 280
 \gdef 3020, 3022, 3363, 3378, 3782, 3902, 3963,
 4932, 4949, 5083, 5116, 5179, 5239
 GELDERMAN, Maarten 258, ↪[151]
 GENSCHTE, Chuck 258, ↪[152]
 geometry (package) 117, 221, ↪[343]
 german (language option) 38, 124, 470, 495, 496
 german.mld (file) 244, 245, 470, 495
 germanb (language option) 38, 496, 527
 germanb.dtx (file) 496
 germanb.mld (file) 244, 245, 496
 germanb2 (language option) 38, 496
 germanb2.mld (file) 244, 245, 496, 605
 GHODSI, Mohammad 258, 465, 489, ↪[136]
 GILHOOLY, Helen 258, ↪[153]
 GLEISZNER, Markus 258, 608, 609
 \global 2893–2913, 2917, 2919, 2930, 2933,
 2942, 2945, 3051, 3331, 3338, 3339,
 3421, 3479, 3491, 3551, 3559, 3619,
 3722, 3725, 3741, 3744, 3760, 3763,
 4151, 4165, 4208, 4217, 4231, 4232,
 4282, 4292, 4306, 4307, 4357, 4405,
 4408, 4424, 4427, 4443, 4446, 4744,
 4803, 4811, 4870, 4878, 4938, 5025,
 5028, 5044, 5047, 5063, 5066, 6125,
 6131, 6140, 6148, 6158, 6164, 6173,
 6181, 6191, 6197, 6705–6707, 6958–

- 6960, 6963, 6966, 6969, 6972, 6975,
6978, 8289
- \glqq 1753
- \gobbleopt@ (command) 448
- \gobbleopt@ **7883**, 7884–7902
- GONTSHARUK, Vitali 258
- \goodap **2459**
- GOOSSENS, Michel 258, 594,
↪[154, 155, 260–262]
- GOUTELLE, Mathieu 258, ↪[25]
- GRANT, Fraser 258, 509, 541, ↪[50, 67]
- GRÄTZER, George 258, ↪[156, 157]
- GRAY, Norman 241, 258, ↪[158]
- greek (language option) 38, 497
- greek-mono (language option) 38, 43, 497
- greek-mono.mld (file) 210, 244, 245, 497, 601
- greek-polydemo (language option) . 38, 43, 498
- greek-polydemo.mld (file) 210, 244, 245, 498,
601
- greek-polykatha (language option) 38, 43, 499
- greek-polykatha.mld (file) 210, 244, 245, 499,
601
- greek.dtx (file) 497
- greek.mld (file) 244, 245, 497
- GREENWADE, George D. 258, ↪[159]
- GREGORIO, Enrico 258, ↪[160]
- GRENON, Loïc 258
- GRETHER, Charles 258, ↪[319]
- GRINEVA, Olga A. 258, ↪[30]
- GROT, Sébastien 258
- \grqq 1753
- guarani (package) . . . 43, 221, 465, 500, ↪[39]
- guarani (language option) 38, 221, 500
- guarani.ldf (file) 221, 500
- guarani.mld (file) 244, 245, 500, 604
- GUIGNARD, Micael 258
- GUNN, Marion 258, 509, ↪[50]
- GURARI, Eitan M. 258, ↪[155]
- H**
- \ha 8308, 8312, 8316, 8935, 8939, 8943
- HAFNER, Thomas 258, ↪[306]
- HAGEN, Hans . . . 258, ↪[143, 161, 162, 165, 184]
- HAMZI, Boumediene 259
- HÀN, Thế Thành 216, 259, 551, 611, 621,
↪[163–165, 235]
- hangcaption (package) 52, 78, 87, 188, 221, 255,
276, 428, 592, 620, ↪[196]
- hangul-u8 (language option) 38, 503
- hangul-u8.mld (file) 244, 245, 503
- hangul-u8.mlo (file) 244, 245, 503
- hangul.cap (file) 501
- hangul.cpx (file) 501
- hangul1 (language option) 38, 501
- hangul1.mld (file) 244, 245, 501, 600
- hangul1.mlo (file) 244, 245, 501
- hangul2 (language option) 38, 501
- hangul2.cap (file) 502
- hangul2.cpx (file) 502
- hangul2.mld (file) 244, 245, 501, 600
- hangul2.mlo (file) 244, 245, 501
- hangul3 (language option) 38, 502
- hangul3.mld (file) 244, 245, 502, 600
- hangul3.mlo (file) 244, 245, 502
- hangul4 (language option) 38, 502
- hangul4.mld (file) 244, 245, 502, 600
- hangul4.mlo (file) 244, 245, 502
- hanja-u8 (language option) 38, 504, 505
- hanja-u8.mld (file) 244, 245, 504
- hanja-u8.mlo (file) 244, 245, 504, 505
- hanja.cap (file) 504
- hanja.cpx (file) 503
- hanja1 (language option) 38, 503
- hanja1.mld (file) 244, 245, 503, 600
- hanja1.mlo (file) 244, 245, 503
- hanja2 (language option) 38, 504
- hanja2.mld (file) 244, 245, 504, 600
- hanja2.mlo (file) 244, 245, 504
- HANSEN, Thorsten 259, ↪[166, 167]
- HAPPEL, Patrick 259, ↪[168]
- HARALAMBOUS, Yannis 234, 259,
↪[169–176, 297, 298]
- HARGREAVES, Kathryn A. 259, ↪[1, 2]
- HARIN, Alexander 259, 539, ↪[177]
- HARRIS, Russel L. 259
- HARRISON, Michael A. 259, ↪[111]
- HARTKE, Stephen 259, ↪[178]
- \hb@xt@ 3665
- HEAP, Danny 259
- \hebalef . 9414, 9417, 9424, 9427, 9434, 9437
- \hebayin 9411, 9421, 9431
- \hebbet 9417, 9427, 9437
- \hebfinalmem . . 9411, 9414, 9421, 9424, 9431,
9434
- \hebfinalnun 9410, 9420, 9430
- \hebkafe 9410, 9420, 9430
- \heblamed 9417, 9427, 9437
- \hebmem . . 9413, 9416, 9423, 9426, 9433, 9436
- \hebnun 9411, 9421, 9431
- \hebreash . 9413, 9414, 9416, 9423, 9424, 9426,
9433, 9434, 9436
- hebrew (language option) 38, 211, 505
- hebrew.dtx (file) 506
- hebrew.mld (file) . . . 211, 244, 245, 505, 597
- hebrew2 (language option) 38, 506
- hebrew2.mld (file) 211, 244, 245, 506

- `\hebshin` . 9413, 9416, 9423, 9426, 9433, 9436
 - `\hebtav` . . 9410, 9413, 9416, 9417, 9420, 9423, 9426, 9427, 9430, 9433, 9436, 9437
 - `\hebtet` 9417, 9427, 9437
 - `\hebvav` . . 9410, 9414, 9417, 9420, 9424, 9427, 9430, 9434, 9437
 - `\hebyod` . . 9411, 9413, 9414, 9416, 9421, 9423, 9424, 9426, 9431, 9433, 9434, 9436
 - HEFFERON, Jim 259, \hookrightarrow [180, 181]
 - HEIDER, André 259
 - HEIN, Thorsten 259
 - HELLMAN, Sten 259, 546, \hookrightarrow [68]
 - HELSTRUP, Håvard 259, 528, 529, \hookrightarrow [51]
 - HENEL, Yvon 259, \hookrightarrow [25, 339]
 - HENKEL, Hartmut 259, \hookrightarrow [184]
 - HENLICH, Thomas 259, \hookrightarrow [182]
 - HENNIG, Stephan 53, 71, 87, 259, \hookrightarrow [183]
 - HENRY, Florence 259, \hookrightarrow [25]
 - HERBORN, Stephen 259
 - here (package) 219
 - HESOLL, Jörg 259
 - hia.tex (old example document) . . . 616, 618
 - hide.tex (old example document) 614
 - hide1.tex (old example document) . . 614, 618
 - hide2.tex (old example document) . . 614, 618
 - hindi (language option) 38, 221, 506
 - hindi-modern (language option) . 38, 221, 507
 - hindi-modern.mld (file) . 244, 245, 255, 507, 617, 618
 - hindi.mld (file) 244, 245, 255, 506, 617
 - hint (option) 56
 - hints** (default option) . . . 51–53, 56, 69, 71, 72, 74, 75, 78, 79, 159, 165, 173, 221, 234, 252, 253, 269, 272, 409, 410, 419, 435, 438, 599, 603, 611
 - hir.tex (old example document) . . . 616, 618
 - H_{La}TeX (package) . . 221, 465, 503, 504, \hookrightarrow [206]
 - `\hline` (command) 330, 332, 335, 352, 354, 357
 - `\hline` . . . 3458, 3528, 3596, **4180, 4248, 4327, 4773, 4840, 4907**
 - HOADLEY, David 259, \hookrightarrow [320]
 - HOEKWATER, Taco 259, \hookrightarrow [184]
 - HOENIG, Alan 259, \hookrightarrow [185]
 - HOGG, Joe 259, \hookrightarrow [143]
 - HØGHOLM, Morten 259
 - HOLME, Alv Kjetil 259, 528, 529, \hookrightarrow [51]
 - hop.tex (old example document) . . . 616, 618
 - HÖPPNER, Klaus 259, \hookrightarrow [186]
 - HORST, Umstatter 259, 533, \hookrightarrow [69]
 - HOSEK, Don 259, 602, \hookrightarrow [187]
 - `\hrule` (command) 296, 598
 - `\hrule` . . . 1539, 3381, 5340–5342, 5349–5351, 5358–5360
 - Hu, Yufan 259, 591
 - HUFFLEN, Jean-Michel 259, \hookrightarrow [188, 262]
 - `\Huge` (command) 233
 - `\Huge` 1470, 1472, 1479
 - `\huge` (command) 233
 - `\huge` 2024
 - hungarian (language option) 38, 507, 520
 - hungarian.mld (file) 244, 245, 507
 - HUSEBY, Dave W. 259
 - HYNA, Helene 259, \hookrightarrow [279, 280]
 - hypcap (package) 623, \hookrightarrow [275]
 - hypernat (package) 622, \hookrightarrow [34]
 - hyperref (package) 52, 61, 62, 71, 87, 118, 145, 156, 173, 174, 177, 221, 226, 241, 242, 247, 250, 253, 275, 313, 416, 597, 606, 610, 621, 622, \hookrightarrow [273, 276–278, 304, 305]
 - HyperTeX (package) . . . 221, 222, 241, \hookrightarrow [295]
- ## I
- I0000 (message) 155
 - I0001 (message) 21, 156
 - I0002 (message) 156, 286
 - I0003 (message) 156, 284
 - I0004 (message) 156
 - I0005 (message) 156, 275
 - I0006 (message) . . . 53, 157, 299, 302, 306, 329, 331, 334, 351, 354, 356
 - I0007 (message) 157
 - I0008 (message) 157
 - I0009 (message) 157, 437
 - I0010 (message) 157
 - I0011 (message) 158
 - I0012 (message) 158
 - I0013 (message) 158
 - I0014 (message) 158
 - I0015 (message) 158
 - I0016 (message) 159
 - I0017 (message) 159
 - I0018 (message) 159
 - I0019 (message) 159
 - I0020 (message) 159
 - I0021 (message) 160
 - I0022 (message) 160
 - I0023 (message) 160
 - I0024 (message) 160
 - I0025 (message) 160
 - I0026 (message) 160
 - I0027 (message) 161
 - I0028 (message) 161
 - I0029 (message) 161
 - I0030 (message) 161
 - I0031 (message) 161

- I0032 (message) 162
 I0033 (message) . . 162, 314, 315, 318, 321, 340, 341, 344, 346, 363, 364, 366, 368
 I0034 (message) 162
 I0035 (message) 162
 I0036 (message) 162
 I0037 (message) 163
 I0038 (message) 163
 I0039 (message) 163
 I0040 (message) . 52, 69, 163, 209, 252, 415, 602
 I0041 (message) 163, 210, 414
 I0042 (message) . . . 63, 164, 210, 251, 410, 599
 I0043 (message) . 40, 49, 74, 164, 223, 252, 254, 411, 603, 610
 I0044 (message) 164, 414
 I0045 (message) . . 164, 312, 313, 338, 339, 361, 362
 I0046 (message) 165, 240, 251, 411, 597
 I0047 (message) 63, 165, 240, 412
 I0048 (message) 165, 370
 I0049 (message) 165, 410
 I0050 (message) 166
 I0051 (message) 166
 I0052 (message) 166
 I0053 (message) . . . 53, 166, 219, 237, 241, 256, 431, 432, 623
 icelandic (language option) 38, 508
 icelandic.dtx (file) 508
 icelandic.mld (file) 244, 245, 508, 597
 idxtotoc (option of KOMA-Script) 49
 \if@dominilof@used@ . 2899, 3733, 7029, 7115
 \if@dominilot@used@ . 2899, 3752, 7029, 7115
 \if@dominitoc@used@ . 2899, 3699, 3714, 7029, 7115
 \if@dopartlof@used@ . 2893, 4416, 7000, 7086
 \if@dopartlot@used@ . 2893, 4435, 7000, 7086
 \if@doparttoc@used@ . 2893, 4397, 7000, 7086
 \if@dosectlof@used@ . 2905, 5036, 6982, 7058, 7144
 \if@dosectlot@used@ . 2905, 5055, 6982, 7058, 7144
 \if@dosecttoc@used@ . 2905, 5017, 7058, 7144
 \if@filesw 2927, 3328
 \if@firstchapteris@used@ . 2911, 3366, 7539
 \if@firstpartis@used@ . . 2911, 4054, 7532
 \if@firstsectionis@used@ . . . 2911, 7546
 \if@longextensions 3422
 \if@longextensions@ . 3141, 3422, 3492, 3560, 3785, 3797, 3830, 3905, 3966, 4150, 4216, 4290, 4465, 4479, 4577, 4637, 4743, 4810, 4877, 5086, 5114, 5182, 5242, 6392, 7278, 7600, 8047
 \if@mainmatter 8182, 8200
 \if@minilof@used@ . . 2899, 3490, 7029, 7115, 7208
 \if@minilot@used@ . . 2899, 3558, 7029, 7115, 7208
 \if@minitoc@used@ . . 2899, 3420, 7029, 7115, 7208
 \if@mtc@abstract@loaded@ 6704
 \if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@ . 2862, 2972, 7371
 \if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@a@ . . 2862, 2972, 7371
 \if@mtc@captcontLoaded@ . 2844, 2974, 7380
 \if@mtc@captcontLoaded@a@ . . 2844, 2974, 7380
 \if@mtc@captionIILoaded@ . 2844, 2978, 7398
 \if@mtc@captionIILoaded@a@ . . 2844, 2978, 7398
 \if@mtc@captionLoaded@ . . 2844, 2976, 7389
 \if@mtc@captionLoaded@a@ . 2844, 2976, 7389
 \if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@ . 2844, 2980, 7407
 \if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@a@ . . 2844, 2980, 7407
 \if@mtc@chapter@def@ . . . 2883, 7029, 7115, 7208, 7278
 \if@mtc@chapter@undef@ . . 2889, 4696, 5294
 \if@mtc@checkfiles 3043, 6387
 \if@mtc@empty@minilof@ . . 2872, 3497, 7497
 \if@mtc@empty@minilot@ . . 2877, 3565, 7504
 \if@mtc@empty@minitoc@ . . 2872, 3427, 7490
 \if@mtc@empty@partlof@ 2872, 7476
 \if@mtc@empty@partlot@ 2872, 7483
 \if@mtc@empty@parttoc@ 2872, 7469
 \if@mtc@empty@sectlof@ 2872, 7518
 \if@mtc@empty@sectlot@ 2872, 7525
 \if@mtc@empty@secttoc@ 2878, 7511
 \if@mtc@FE . 3043, 3427, 3435, 3497, 3505, 3565, 3573, 4157, 4168, 4223, 4236, 4298, 4311, 4750, 4758, 4817, 4826, 4884, 4893
 \if@mtc@floatLoaded@ 2868, 2984, 7425
 \if@mtc@floatrowLoaded@ . 2868, 2985, 7436
 \if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@ . 2854, 2962, 7326
 \if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@a@ . . 2854, 2962, 7326
 \if@mtc@HgcLoaded@ 2854, 2964, 7335
 \if@mtc@HgcLoaded@a@ 2854, 2964, 7335
 \if@mtc@Himlof@ 6133
 \if@mtc@Himlot@ 6166
 \if@mtc@Himtoc@ (command) 395
 \if@mtc@Himtoc@ 6118, 6119
 \if@mtc@hints@ (command) 269
 \if@mtc@hints@ . 2835, 3714, 3733, 3752, 4397, 4416, 4435, 5017, 5036, 5055, 5314, 6702, 6957, 7647
 \if@mtc@hints@giben@ 2835

- \if@mtc@hints@given@ (command) 269
- \if@mtc@hints@given@ . . . 2837, **6713**, **6721**,
6729, **6737**, **6761**, **6769**, **6777**, **6837**,
6846, **6861**, **6870**, **6884**, **6891**, **6899**,
6918, **6937**, **6987**, **7000**, **7029**, **7058**,
7086, **7115**, **7144**, **7173**, **7208**, **7243**,
7308, **7317**, **7326**, **7335**, **7344**, **7353**,
7362, **7371**, **7380**, **7389**, **7398**, **7407**,
7416, **7425**, **7436**, **7447**, **7458**, **7553**
- \if@mtc@hints@given@true **7278**
- \if@mtc@hints@w@ (command) 269
- \if@mtc@hints@w@ . . **2835**, **6899**, **6918**, **6937**,
6987
- \if@mtc@hyper@used@ **2941**, **6899**, **6918**, **6937**
- \if@mtc@insellang@ (command) . . *401*, *402*
- \if@mtc@insellang@ **6328**, **6348**
- \if@mtc@LI **3043**
- \if@mtc@listfiles@ **6414**, **7646**
- \if@mtc@lof@used@ . **6704**, **6957**, **6961**, **6970**,
7186, 7221, 7256
- \if@mtc@lot@used@ . **6704**, **6957**, **6961**, **6970**,
7197, 7232, 7267
- \if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@ . **2844**, **2982**, **7416**
- \if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@a@ . . **2844**, **2982**,
7416
- \if@mtc@memoirLoaded@ (command) . . . 288
- \if@mtc@memoirLoaded@ . . **2839**, **2988**, **3194**
- \if@mtc@memoirnew@ **2839**, **2988**
- \if@mtc@misslang (command) *405*
- \if@mtc@misslang **6422**, **6468**, **6498**
- \if@mtc@notoccite@ **2936**, **6391**, **7597**
- \if@mtc@part@def@ . **2881**, **7000**, **7086**, **7173**,
7278
- \if@mtc@part@undef@ **2887**
- \if@mtc@placeinsLoaded@ . **2839**, **6987**, **7591**
- \if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@ . **2854**, **2966**, **7344**
- \if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@a@ . . **2854**, **2966**,
7344
- \if@mtc@romannumLoaded@ . **2862**, **2968**, **7353**
- \if@mtc@romannumLoaded@a@ . . **2862**, **2968**,
7353
- \if@mtc@rotfloatLoaded@ . **2868**, **2987**, **7458**
- \if@mtc@sect@floats@ . . . **2838**, **6982**, **6987**
- \if@mtc@section@def@ . . . **2885**, **4696**, **5293**,
6982, **7058**, **7144**, **7243**, **7278**
- \if@mtc@section@undef@ **2891**
- \if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@ . . **2839**, **2958**, **7308**
- \if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@a@ **2839**, **2958**, **7308**
- \if@mtc@setdepth@ **6030**, **6032**, **6051**
- \if@mtc@setfeature@ **5969**, **5991**, **6010**
- \if@mtc@setfont@ . . **5430**, **5432**, **5451**, **5470**,
5555
- \if@mtc@setformat@ **5736**, **5774**
- \if@mtc@setoffset@ **6074**, **6076**, **6095**
- \if@mtc@setpagenumbers@ **5792**, **5834**
- \if@mtc@setpagenumbers@act@ (command)
604
- \if@mtc@setrules@ **5868**, **5889**
- \if@mtc@setrules@act@ (command) *604*
- \if@mtc@settitle@ **5613**, **5615**, **5634**
- \if@mtc@settitlefont@ . . . **5572**, **5574**, **5593**
- \if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@ **2862**, **2970**, **7362**
- \if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@a@ . **2862**, **2970**,
7362
- \if@mtc@spn@ok@ **5792**, **5834**
- \if@mtc@sru@ok@ **5868**, **5910**
- \if@mtc@ss@insection@ . . . **6396**, **6777**, **7591**
- \if@mtc@toc@used@ . **6704**, **6957**, **6961**, **6970**,
7175, 7210, 7245
- \if@mtc@trivfloatLoaded@ **2868**, **2986**, **7447**
- \if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@ . **2854**, **2960**, **7317**
- \if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@a@ . . **2854**, **2960**,
7317
- \if@mtcfixglossary@ (command) 398
- \if@mtcfixglossary@ **6221**
- \if@mtcfixindex@ **6264**
- \if@mtcfixnomclature@ **6307**
- \if@mtcfixnomenclature@ 6307, 6316
- \if@mtcpatchmemoir@ **2988**, **3011**
- \if@partlof@used@ (command) 331
- \if@partlof@used@ . **2893**, **4216**, **7000**, **7086**,
7173
- \if@partlot@used@ (command) 334
- \if@partlot@used@ . **2893**, **4290**, **7000**, **7086**,
7173
- \if@parttoc@used@ (command) 328
- \if@parttoc@used@ . **2893**, **4150**, **7000**, **7086**,
7173
- \if@realch (command) 592
- \if@sectlof@used@ (command) 353
- \if@sectlof@used@ . **2905**, **4810**, **6982**, **7058**,
7144, **7243**
- \if@sectlot@used@ (command) 356
- \if@sectlot@used@ . **2905**, **4877**, **6982**, **7058**,
7144, **7243**
- \if@secttoc@used@ (command) 351
- \if@secttoc@used@ . **2905**, **4743**, **7058**, **7144**,
7243
- \if@setrules@false **5910**
- \if@twocolumn **4112**, **4119**, **4126**
- \if@twoside 2002
- \ifanappendix 8201
- \ifartopt 8187
- \ifcase (command) 220, 243, 441
- \ifdim 4972
- \IfFileExists . 3012, 3057, **5295**, **6328**, **6348**,
6422, **6468**, **7600**

- `\ifFTR` (command) 603
- `\ifheadnameref` 8214
- `\ifkightmtc` **1, 2939, 3408, 4137, 4730, 6383, 8047**
- `ifmtarg` (package) 222, 280, ⇨[374]
- `\ifmtc@lof@used@` **7173, 7208, 7243**
- `\ifmtc@lot@used@` **7173, 7208, 7243**
- `\ifmtc@toc@used@` **7173, 7208, 7243**
- `\ifmtcoffwarn@` **8053, 8070, 8120**
- `\ifmtcsecondpart` (command) 613
- `\ifmtcsecondpart` 290, **290, 2914, 2915, 2921, 8047**, 9032
- `\ifnum` (command) 359
- `\ifodd` 2003
- `ifpdf` (package) ⇨[274]
- `\ifscan@allowed` 418, 627
- `ifthen` (package) 222
- `\ifthenelse` (command) 222
- `\iftightmtc` **1, 2939, 3408, 4137, 4730, 6383, 8047**
- `\ifundottedmtc` (command) 309, 609
- `\ifundottedmtc` **3181**, 3670, 3673, 3676, **3678, 3688, 6389, 8047**
- `\ignorespaces` **3627**
- `IkEDA, Hiroya` 259, ⇨[189]
- `imk` (script) 217, 220, 222, 237, 244–247, 606, 615
- `\immediate` 2929, 2932, 3046, 3058, 3066–3068, 3070, 3071, 3144–3149, 3166–3169, 3329, 3771–3773, 3794, 3795, 3808, 3809, 3841, 3842, 3885, 3886, 3914, 3915, 3950, 3951, 3975, 3976, 4011, 4012, 4022, 4040, 4454–4456, 4474, 4475, 4488, 4489, 4562, 4563, 4586, 4587, 4622, 4623, 4646, 4647, 4682, 4683, 5074–5076, 5095, 5096, 5126, 5127, 5166, 5167, 5191, 5192, 5226, 5227, 5251, 5252, 5286, 5287, 7605, 7606, 7608, 7610
- `\in` 10640, 10644, 10648
- `\incrementmtc` (command) 34, 86, 209, 296, 604
- `\incrementmtc` **1, 3366, 7874**
- `\incrementptc` (command) 34, 86, 209, 253, 324, 604
- `\incrementptc` **1, 4054, 7874**
- `\incrementstc` (command) 34, 86, 209, 349, 604
- `\incrementstc` **1, 4697, 7874**
- `indon` (language option) 38, 508
- `indon.mld` (file) 244, 245, 508
- `indonesian` (language option) 38, 508
- `indonesian.mld` (file) 244, 245, 508
- `\input` **3141, 7690**
- `\InputIfFileExists` 6331, 6350, **7565**
- `insection` (option) 29, 52, 79, 100, 108, 175, 180, 186, 187, 200, 222, 236, 251, 252, 254, 404, 419, 436, 598, 600, 613, 614
- `\insertchapterspace` 8191
- `INSTALL` (file) 222, 244, 245, 252, 255, 601, 615, 620
- `\interlinepenalty` 1468, 1478, 3187, 3648, 3660, 4975
- `interlingua` (language option) 38, 509
- `interlingua.dtx` (file) 509
- `interlingua.mld` (file) 244, 245, 509
- `intoc` (option of `nomencl`) 139, 140
- `irish` (language option) 38, 509
- `irish.dtx` (file) 509
- `irish.mld` (file) 244, 245, 509, 612
- `italian` (language option) 38, 510
- `italian.dtx` (file) 510
- `italian.mld` (file) 244, 245, 510, 609
- `italian2` (language option) 38, 510
- `italian2.mld` (file) 244, 245, 510
- `\itemindent` (command) 298, 327
- `\itemindent` **3408**, 3463, 3533, 3601, **4137**, 4191, 4264, 4339, 4732, 4733, 4787, 4854, 4921
- `\itemsep` (command) 298, 327
- `\itemsep` **3408, 4137**, 4732
- `\itshape` (command) 233
- `IVANOV, Dmitry` 210, 259, 497–499, 517, 531, 535, 536, ⇨[210]
- `IVERSEN, Per Steinar` 259, 528, 529, ⇨[51]
- `IWAKUMA, Tetsuo` 259, ⇨[190]
- `IZAOLA, Zunbeltz` 259, 472, ⇨[53]

J

- `JABRI, Youssef` 210, 259, 469, 490, ⇨[191]
- `JACKOWSKI, Paweł` 259, ⇨[192]
- `JAEGNE, Bernd` 61, 226, 250, 259, 313, 317, ⇨[349]
- `JALAM, Radwan` 259
- `JANICH, Michael` 259, 530, ⇨[87]
- `japanese` (language option) 38, 511
- `japanese.mld` (file) 43, 244, 245, 511
- `japanese.mlo` (file) 244, 245, 511
- `japanese2` (language option) 38, 511
- `japanese2.mld` (file) 244, 245, 511, 600
- `japanese2.mlo` (file) 244, 245, 511
- `japanese3` (language option) 38, 512
- `japanese3.mld` (file) 244, 245, 512, 600, 609
- `japanese3.mlo` (file) 244, 245, 512
- `japanese4` (language option) 38, 512
- `japanese4.mld` (file) 244, 245, 512, 600

- japanese4.mlo (file) 244, 245, 512
japanese5 (language option) 38, 513
japanese5.mld (file) 244, 245, 513, 600
japanese5.mlo (file) 244, 245, 513
japanese6 (language option) 38, 513
japanese6.mld (file) 244, 245, 255, 513, 619
japanese6.mlo (file) 244, 245, 255, 513, 619
\jeem 8310, 8314, 8318, 8935, 8937, 8939, 8941, 8943, 8945
JEFFREY, Alan 259, ⇨[60, 193, 194, 264]
JENSEN, Frank 259, ⇨[337]
JERNSLETEN, Regnor 259, 541, ⇨[70]
JIANG, Zhuhan 76, 259, ⇨[195]
JIS.cap (file) 511
JIS.cpx (file) 512
\jobname (command) 220, 222, 281, 286, 287, 299, 302, 305, 310, 311, 318, 321, 426, 437, 441, 616
\jobname 3066, 3069, 3070, **3141**, 3330, 3427, 3430, 3475, 3497, 3500, 3547, 3565, 3568, 3615, 3771–3773, 3787, 3788, 3791, 3792, 3801, 3802, 3805, 3806, 3834, 3835, 3838, 3839, 3886, 3907, 3908, 3911, 3912, 3951, 3968, 3969, 3972, 3973, 4012, 4157, 4160, 4204, 4223, 4226, 4278, 4298, 4301, 4353, 4454–4456, 4467, 4468, 4471, 4472, 4481, 4482, 4485, 4486, 4563, 4579, 4580, 4583, 4584, 4623, 4639, 4640, 4643, 4644, 4683, 4750, 4753, 4799, 4817, 4820, 4868, 4884, 4887, 4936, 5074–5076, 5088, 5089, 5092, 5093, 5119, 5120, 5123, 5124, 5167, 5184, 5185, 5188, 5189, 5227, 5244, 5245, 5248, 5249, 5287, **5295**, 6507, 7557, 7562, **7600**, **7690**
JOLY, Loïc 259, ⇨[25]
JONES, David M. 52, 78, 87, 259, ⇨[196]
JORSSEN, Christophe 259, ⇨[25]
JUHÁSZ, Robert 259, 533, ⇨[69]
JUNGE, Stefan 259
jura (class) 52, 74, 87, 174, 210, 222, 410, 415, 612, ⇨[94]
JURAFSKY, Dan 25, 248, 259, 591
- ## K
- k-loose** (default option) 41, 79, 223, 253, 274, 350, 403, 605
k-tight (option) 41, 61, 79, 145, 223, 253, 274, 298, 327, 350, 403, 605
\kaf . 8309, 8313, 8317, 8936, 8940, 8944, 9383, 9390, 9397
KAKUTO, Akira 259, ⇨[197]
KANERVA, Mikko 259, 490, 491, ⇨[71]
kanlel.sty (file) 514
kannada (language option) 38, 514
kannada.mld (file) 244, 245, 514, 611, 622
KannadaT_EX (package) 223, 514, ⇨[376]
KAROONBOONYANAN, Theppitak 259, 547, ⇨[250]
KASTRUP, David 259
\kern (command) 296, 593
\kern 2407, 2408, 2800–2802, 2807–2809, 2813–2815, 3381, 3450, 3520, 3588, 4178, 4250, 4325, 4773, 4840, 4907, 5340–5342, 5349–5351, 5358–5360, 7716, 7724, 7732, 7744, 7752, 7760, 7771, 7779, 7787
\kernafterminilof (command) 77, 84
\kernafterminilof **2799**, 3553, **7708**
\kernafterminilot (command) 77, 84
\kernafterminilot **2799**, 3621, **7708**
\kernafterminitoc (command) 77, 84, 622
\kernafterminitoc **2799**, 3481, **7708**
\kernafterpartlof (command) 77, 84
\kernafterpartlof **2799**, 4284, **7708**
\kernafterpartlot (command) 77, 84
\kernafterpartlot **2799**, 4359, **7708**
\kernafterparttoc (command) 77, 84, 255
\kernafterparttoc **2799**, 4210, **7708**
\kernaftersectlof (command) 77, 84
\kernaftersectlof **2799**, 4872, 4940, **7708**
\kernaftersectlot (command) 77, 84
\kernaftersectlot **2799**, **7708**
\kernaftersecttoc (command) 77, 84
\kernaftersecttoc **2799**, 4805, **7708**
KERYELL, Ronan 220, 259
khalkha (language option) 38, 514
khalkha.mld (file) 244, 245, 514, 607
KIELHORN, Axel 87, 259, ⇨[270]
KIM, Ki-Joo 259, ⇨[198–200]
KLEB, Bil 52, 259
KLEIWEG, Peter 259, 509, ⇨[72]
KLEVELAND, Rune 259, 528, 529, ⇨[51]
KLÖCKL, Ingo 259, ⇨[201]
KNAPPEN, Jörg 259, 471, 480, 486, ⇨[73, 74, 85]
KNUTH, Donald E. 215, 231, 232, 234, 239, 259, ⇨[202–205]
KOAUNGH, Un 221, 260, 503, 504, ⇨[206]
KOHM, Markus 87, 259, ⇨[207, 270, 308]
KOPKA, Helmut 259, ⇨[208]
KOPPANYI, Attila 259, 520, 521, ⇨[57]
KORAI, Adamantios 259, 499
KRAKOVIAK, Vincent 259
KRATT, Kai 259

KRONZUCKER, Thankmar 259
 KROONENBERG, Siep 259, \hookrightarrow [209]
 KRYUKOV, Alexej M. 210, 259, 497–499, 517, 531,
 535, 536, 545, \hookrightarrow [210]
`\ktightmtcfalse` (command) 41, 80
`\ktightmtcfalse` 1, 2940, 6386, 8049
`\ktightmtctrue` (command) 41, 80
`\ktightmtctrue` 1, 6385
 KUDLEK, Manfred 259, 487, 488, \hookrightarrow [37]
 KUHN, Markus G. 259, \hookrightarrow [211]
 KULZER, Florian 259
 KUMAZAWA, Toshiki 259, 511, 513
 KUMMER, Olaf 259, 487, 488, \hookrightarrow [37]
 KÜSTER, Frank . . . 53, 75, 87, 259, 542, \hookrightarrow [212]

L

`\l@chapter` (command) 70, 285, 308, 330
`\l@chapter` 176, 3120, 3625, 4199, 4200, 5329,
 5331, 7958
`\l@chapter@SVPN` 4199, 4200
`\l@coffee` (command) 402
`\l@coffee` 6375, 8105
`\l@listof` 5328, 8047
`\l@mti` . . . 3397, 3402, 3435, 3505, 3573, 3714,
 3733, 3752
`\l@paragraph` (command) 70, 371
`\l@paragraph` 176, 5335, 7962
`\l@part` (command) 70, 282
`\l@part` 176, 3085, 5330, 7957
`\l@pchapter` 4364
`\l@psect` 4364
`\l@pti` . . . 4104, 4112, 4134, 4168, 4236, 4311,
 4397, 4416, 4435
`\l@schapter` 4944
`\l@section` (command) 70, 284, 371
`\l@section` 176, 3111, 5328, 5332, 7959
`\l@starchapter` 5328, 7957
`\l@starparagraph` 5328, 7957
`\l@starpart` 5328, 7957
`\l@starsection` 5328, 7957
`\l@starsubparagraph` 5328, 7957
`\l@starsubsection` 5328, 7957
`\l@starsubsubsection` 5328, 7957
`\l@sti` . . . 4719, 4724, 4758, 4826, 4893, 5017,
 5036, 5055
`\l@subfigure` 2449
`\l@subparagraph` (command) 70
`\l@subparagraph` 176, 5336, 7963
`\l@subsection` (command) 70, 337
`\l@subsection` 176, 5333, 7960
`\l@subsubsection` (command) 70
`\l@subsubsection` 176, 5334, 7961

`\l@xchapter` (command) 285, 308
`\l@xchapter` 3120, 3625, 7903
`\l@xpart` (command) 282, 337
`\l@xpart` 3085, 4364, 7903
`\l@xsect` (command) 284
`\l@xsect` 3111, 4944, 7903
`\l@xsection` (command) 617
`\l@xsection` 3111, 4944
`\label` . . . 2036, 2116, 2249, 2492, 2495, 2527,
 2531, 2550, 2733, 2738, 2743, 2748,
 2753, 2758, 2763, 2768
`\labelitemi` 1522, 1527
`\labelsep` 3464, 3534, 3602, 4191, 4265, 4340,
 4788, 4855, 4922
`\labelwidth` . . . 3463, 3533, 3601, 4191, 4264,
 4339, 4787, 4854, 4921
 LABORDE, Stéphane 259
 LACHAND-ROBERT, Thomas 259, \hookrightarrow [213]
 LAGALLY, Klaus 38, 211, 259, 468, 505,
 \hookrightarrow [214, 215]
`\lam` . 8308–8310, 8312–8314, 8316–8318, 8936,
 8937, 8940, 8941, 8944, 8945
`\lamed` 9388, 9395, 9402
`lamed.eps` (file) 244–246, 613
`lamed.pdf` (file) 244–246, 613
`lamed.tex` (file) 244–246, 613
 LAMPORT, Leslie . . . 223, 259, \hookrightarrow [60, 216–221]
 LANARI, Fabio 259
`\LANG` (command) 220, 441
 LANGE, Robert 259
 LANGMYHR, Dag 259, 528, 529, 595
`\LangSig` 2245, 2281
 Language options
 acadian 466, 599
 acadien 38, 466, 599
 afrikaan 38, 466, 467
 afrikaans 38, 467
 albanian 38, 467
 american 38, 467
 arab 38, 468, 469
 arab2 38, 468
 arabi 38, 469
 arabic 38, 210, 211, 469
 armenian 38, 211, 469
 australian 38, 470
 austrian 38, 470
 bahasa 38, 470
 bahasai 38, 470, 471, 508
 bahasam 38, 471, 522, 524
 bangla 38, 211, 472, 598
 basque 38, 472
 bicig 38, 228, 473, 474, 548
 bicig2 38, 474, 548
 bicig3 38, 474, 549

- bithe 38, 228, 475, 524
- brazil 38, 475, 476
- brazilian 38, 476
- breton 38, 476
- british 38, 476
- bulgarian 38, 477
- bulgarianb 38, 477
- buryat 38, 478, 479
- buryat2 38, 479
- canadian 38, 479, 599
- canadien 38, 479, 599
- castillan 38, 480, 544
- castillian 38
- catalan 38, 480, 544
- chinese1 38, 481
- chinese2 38, 481
- croatian 38, 482
- czech 38, 482
- danish 38, 483
- devanagari 38, 221, 483, 506
- dutch 38, 484
- english** (default) .. 38, 79, 436, 467, 470, 476, 479, 484, 526, 549, 551, 599
- english1 38, 485
- english2 38, 485
- esperant 38, 486
- esperanto 38, 486
- estonian 38, 487, 597
- ethiopia 38, 487, 488
- ethiopian 38, 218, 488
- ethiopian2 38, 488
- farsi 210, 219
- farsi1 38, 489
- farsi2 38, 489
- farsi3 38, 490
- finnish 38, 490
- finnish2 38, 491
- francais 38, 491
- french .. 38, 479, 491, 492, 494, 598, 599
- french1 38, 492
- french2 38, 91, 228, 493
- frenchb 38, 494
- frenchle 38, 494, 598
- frenchpro 38, 494, 598
- galician 38, 494, 544
- german 38, 124, 470, 495, 496
- germanb 38, 496, 527
- germanb2 38, 496
- greek 38, 497
- greek-mono 38, 43, 497
- greek-polydemo 38, 43, 498
- greek-polykatha 38, 43, 499
- guarani 38, 221, 500
- hangul-u8 38, 503
- hangul1 38, 501
- hangul2 38, 501
- hangul3 38, 502
- hangul4 38, 502
- hanja-u8 38, 504, 505
- hanja1 38, 503
- hanja2 38, 504
- hebrew 38, 211, 505
- hebrew2 38, 506
- hindi 38, 221, 506
- hindi-modern 38, 221, 507
- hungarian 38, 507, 520
- icelandic 38, 508
- indon 38, 508
- indonesian 38, 508
- interlingua 38, 509
- irish 38, 509
- italian 38, 510
- italian2 38, 510
- japanese 38, 511
- japanese2 38, 511
- japanese3 38, 512
- japanese4 38, 512
- japanese5 38, 513
- japanese6 38, 513
- kannada 38, 514
- khalkha 38, 514
- latin 38, 514
- latin2 38, 515
- latinc 38, 516
- latinc2 38, 516
- latvian 38, 517, 518
- latvian2 38, 517, 518
- letton 38, 517, 518
- letton2 38, 518
- lithuanian 38, 518
- lithuanian2 38, 519
- lowersorbian 38, 519, 520
- lsorbian 38, 519, 520
- magyar 38, 507, 520
- magyar2 38, 521
- magyar3 38, 521
- malay 38, 522
- malayalam-keli 38, 522
- malayalam-omega 38, 43, 465, 522
- malayalam-rachana 38, 523
- malayalam-rachana2 38, 523
- manju 38, 475, 524
- meyalu 38, 524
- mongol 38, 524
- mongolb 38, 525
- mongolian 38, 526
- naustrian 38, 526, 599

- newzealand 38, 526
- ngerman 38, 527, 599
- ngermanb 38, 526, 527, 599
- ngermanb2 38, 528
- norsk 38, 528
- norsk2 38, 529
- nynorsk 38, 529, 530
- nynorsk2 38, 530
- polish 38, 530, 531
- polish2 38, 43, 531
- polski 38, 236, 531
- portuges 38, 532
- portuguese 38, 532
- romanian 38, 533
- romanian2 38, 533
- romanian3 38, 534
- russian 38, 534–538
- russian-cca 38, 538
- russian-cca1 38, 539
- russian-lh 38, 539
- russian-lhcyralt 38, 539, 540
- russian-lhcyrkoi 38, 540
- russian-lhcyrwin 38, 540
- russian2m 38, 43, 535
- russian2o 38, 43, 536
- russianb 38, 537
- russianc 38, 538
- samin 38, 541
- scottish 38, 541
- serbian 38, 542
- serbianc 38, 542
- slovak 38, 543
- slovene 38, 544
- spanish 38, 480, 544
- spanish2 38, 544, 545
- spanish3 38, 43, 544, 545
- spanish4 38, 544, 546
- swedish 38, 546
- swedish2 38, 547
- thai 38, 547
- turkish 38, 548
- uighur 38, 548
- uighur2 38, 548
- uighur3 38, 549
- UKenglish 38, 549
- ukraineb 38, 549, 550
- ukrainian 38, 549, 550
- uppersorbian 38, 550, 551
- USenglish 38, 551
- usorbian 38, 550, 551
- vietnam 38, 551, 552
- vietnamese 38, 552
- welsh 38, 552
- xalx 38, 514, 553, 554
- xalx2 38, 553
- xalx3 38, 554
- LAPKO, Olga G. 87, 219, 259, 477, 525, 537, 550,
↪[31–33, 75, 222–224]
- \LARGE (command) 233
- \LARGE 4102
- \Large (command) 233
- \Large 2026, 2221, 4088
- \large (command) 233
- \large 1496, 1521, 1526, 1530, 1533, 1745,
3395, 4718
- LARSEN, Henning 259, 483, ↪[76]
- LASGOUTTES, Jean-Marc 259
- LASIS, Andris 259, 517
- latex.fmt (file) 59
- latex.tex (file) 59, 593
- L^AT_EX3 PROJECT TEAM,
↪[194, 219, 225–230, 354]
- latin (language option) 38, 514
- latin.dtx (file) 514–516
- latin.mld (file) 244, 245, 514, 597
- latin2 (language option) 38, 515
- latin2.mld (file) 244, 245, 515, 602
- latinc (language option) 38, 516
- latinc.mld (file) 244, 245, 256, 516, 623
- latinc2 (language option) 38, 516
- latinc2.mld (file) 244, 245, 256, 516, 623
- latvian (language option) 38, 517, 518
- latvian.ldf (file) 517
- latvian.mld (file) 210, 244, 245, 517, 518, 601
- latvian2 (language option) 38, 517, 518
- latvian2.mld (file) 244, 245, 256, 517, 518, 623
- LAUFFENBURGER, Jean-Philippe 259
- LAUNAY, Arnaud 259
- LAUVERNET, Claire 259
- LAVVA, Boris 259, 506, ↪[77]
- \ldots 1702, 1706, 1710, 2673, 2682
- LEBACQ, André 259
- LECARME, Olivier 259, ↪[231]
- \leftmargin 3413, 3414, 3462, 3532, 3600,
4141, 4144, 4190, 4263, 4338, 4736,
4737, 4786, 4853, 4920
- \leftskip 3185, 3189, 3190, 3646, 3651, 3658,
3663
- LEGRAND, Jeanne 259, ↪[282]
- LEHMAN, Philipp 259, ↪[232]
- LEMBERG, Werner 214, 259, 477, 481,
501–504, 511–513, 525, 537, 547, 551,
↪[75, 233–235, 258, 354]
- LEONHARDT, Thomas 259, 598
- LE PENNEC, Erwan 259, ↪[25]
- LEPOLOZEC, Stéphane 259
- \let (command) 72, 73, 596

- LE THUAUT, Julien 259
letter (class) 25, 59, 201, 215, 223, 224, 238,
 ↪[221]
letton (language option) 38, 517, 518
letton.mld (file) 244, 245, 518, 601
letton2 (language option) 38, 518
letton2.mld (file) 244, 245, 256, 518, 623
LEWENBERG, Adam 259
LH (package) 539, ↪[269]
lhcyr (package) 539, 540, ↪[378]
lhcyralt.sty (file) 539
lhcyrkoi.sty (file) 540
lhcyrwin.sty (file) 540
LICKERT, Knut 227, 259, 402, ↪[236]
LINDGREN, Ulf A. 52, 74, 87, 259, ↪[237]
\linebreak (command) 57
\linebreak 1
\linewidth (command) 44
\linewidth 1494, 1503, 1511, 2249
LINGNAU, Anselm 87, 219, 259, ↪[238]
lipsum (package) 89, 93, 224, 615, ↪[168]
\lipsum 17, 19, 24, 26, 39, 41, 46,
 48, 241, 243, 248, 250, 252, 258, 260,
 262, 268, 270, 272, 343–366, 369–404,
 889, 891, 897, 900, 904, 909, 913, 915,
 960, 962, 964, 966, 969, 971, 973, 975,
 977, 979, 981, 983, 985, 987, 989, 991,
 993, 995, 997, 999, 1001, 1003, 1005,
 1007, 1009, 1011, 1013, 1015, 1017,
 1019, 1021, 1027, 1029, 1038, 1040,
 1042, 1051, 1056, 1058, 1060, 1062,
 1064, 1066, 1076, 1078, 1080, 1082,
 1084, 1092, 1094, 1104, 1106, 1108,
 1110, 1120, 1122, 1133, 1137, 1139,
 1141, 1150, 1156, 1158, 1160, 1162,
 1164, 1220, 1222, 1224, 1226, 1229,
 1231, 1233, 1235, 1237, 1239, 1241,
 1243, 1245, 1247, 1249, 1251, 1253,
 1255, 1257, 1259, 1261, 1263, 1265,
 1267, 1269, 1271, 1273, 1275, 1277,
 1279, 1281, 1283, 1285, 1293, 1295,
 1310, 1312, 1314, 1322, 1325, 1328,
 1331, 1334, 1337, 1340, 1347, 1349,
 1351, 1353, 1355, 1362, 1364, 1373,
 1375, 1377, 1379, 1386, 1388, 1390,
 1392, 1400, 1402, 1404, 1417, 1419,
 1421, 1427, 1782, 1784, 1786, 1788,
 1790, 1792, 1794, 1830, 1832, 1834,
 1836, 1838, 1840, 1842, 1859, 1863,
 1867, 1872, 1876, 1879, 1884, 1888,
 1892, 1907, 1911, 1915, 1920, 1924,
 1927, 1932, 1936, 1940, 1960, 1968,
 1979, 1987, 2184, 2186, 2188, 2190,
 2194, 2196, 2198, 2200, 2231, 2233,
 2235, 2421–2446
\list (command) 298
\list 3408, 4137, 4731
\list{} (command) 327
listfiles (default option) 51, 60, 79, 157, 208,
 224, 234, 253, 255, 405, 437, 605, 618
\listoffigures (command) 21, 28, 30, 32, 49,
 65, 80–83, 182–184, 286
\listoffigures 1, 61,
 124, 431, 639, 1211, 1950, 2475, 2639,
 2719, 3102, 6961, 7190, 7225, 7260
\listoftables (command) 21, 28, 30, 32, 49,
 52, 65, 80–83, 145, 183, 184, 286
\listoftables 1, 62,
 125, 431, 639, 1213, 1845, 1895, 2521,
 3102, 6961, 7201, 7236, 7271
\listparindent (command) 298, 327
\listparindent 3408, 3464, 3534, 3602, 4137,
 4191, 4265, 4340, 4733, 4788, 4855,
 4922
liststotoc (option of KOMA-Script) 49, 145
liststotocnumbered (option of KOMA-Script)
 49
lithuanian (language option) 38, 518
lithuanian.ldf (file) 518, 519
lithuanian.mld (file) 244, 245, 518, 596, 609
lithuanian2 (language option) 38, 519
lithuanian2.mld (file) 244, 245, 256, 519, 623
livre.tex (old example document) 616, 618
LOBEL, Pierre 259
\localgreek 9171, 9174, 9178, 9182, 9185,
 9189, 9193, 9196, 9200, 9210, 9213,
 9217, 9221, 9224, 9228, 9232, 9235,
 9239, 9249, 9252, 9256, 9260, 9263,
 9267, 9271, 9274, 9278
\locallatvian 9720–9722, 9724–9726,
 9728–9730
\localpolish 10124–10126, 10128–10130,
 10132–10134
\localrussian 10247, 10250, 10254, 10258,
 10261, 10265, 10269, 10272, 10276,
 10286, 10289, 10293, 10297, 10300,
 10304, 10308, 10311, 10315
\localspanish 10563–10565, 10567–10569,
 10571–10573
lofdepth (depth counter) 33, 224, 294, 324, 348
LOKAJČEK, Miloš V. 259, 482, ↪[78]
LOMBARD, Stoffel 259, 466
loose (default option) 40, 79, 223, 224, 240, 250,
 274, 350, 403, 596, 598
LORETI, Maurizio 53, 75, 87, 259, ↪[239]
LORINO, Tristan 259

lotdepth (depth counter) 33, 224, 294, 307, 324, 348
 LOVE, Tim 259, ⇨[240, 241]
 lowersorbian (language option) . 38, 519, 520
 lowersorbian.mld (file) 244, 245, 519, 520, 610
 LOZANO, Vincent 259, ⇨[242]
 lsorbian (language option) 38, 519, 520
 lsorbian.dtx (file) 519
 lsorbian.mld (file) 244, 245, 520, 612
 ltnews (class) 25, 215, 225, ⇨[194]
 ltxdoc (class) 25, 215, 225, ⇨[103]
 LuaTEX (package) 234, ⇨[184]
 LUECKING, Daniel H. 259
 LUNDE, Ken 214, 259, ⇨[243–245]
 LYHNE, Anders 259

M

M0001 (message) 206
 \M@gettitle 8214
 MacKAY, Pierre A. 259, 548, ⇨[59]
 MADSEN, Lars 259
 magyar (language option) 38, 507, 520
 magyar.dtx (file) 520, 521
 magyar.mld (file) 244, 245, 507, 520, 612
 magyar2 (language option) 38, 521
 magyar2.mld (file) 244, 245, 521, 602, 612
 magyar3.mld (file) 244, 245, 521, 609, 612
 MAHONEY, Richard 259, 483, 507
 \mainmatter (command) 77
 \mainmatter 217
 \makeatletter (command) 70, 225
 \makeatletter 328, 417, 626, 942, 1194, 1464, 1999, 2454, 3327, 3469, 3541, 3609, 3700, 3705, 3710, 4195, 4272, 4347, 4383, 4387, 4391, 4792, 4862, 4929, 5003, 5007, 5011, 8289
 \makeatother (command) 70, 225
 \makeatother . 335, 420, 629, 942, 1196, 1481, 2010, 2456
 \makenomenclature 2316
 \maketitle 2031
 \MakeUpperCase (command) 614
 \MakeUpperCase 3434, 3504, 3572, 4164, 4230, 4305, 4758, 4824, 4891
 MAKHOVAYA, Irina A. 259, 477, 537, ⇨[224]
 malay (language option) 38, 522
 malay.mld (file) 244, 245, 522
 malayalam (package) . . 43, 465, 522, 523, ⇨[4]
 malayalam-keli (language option) . . 38, 522
 malayalam-keli.mld (file) . 244, 245, 522, 603

malayalam-omega (language option) 38, 43, 465, 522
 malayalam-omega.mld (file) 244, 245, 522, 611
 malayalam-omega.mlo (file) 244, 245, 522, 611
 malayalam-rachana (language option) 38, 523
 malayalam-rachana.mld (file) . 244, 245, 523, 603
 malayalam-rachana2 (language option) 38, 523
 malayalam-rachana2.mld (file) 244, 245, 523, 603
 manju (language option) 38, 475, 524
 manju.mld (file) 244, 245, 524, 607
 margincap (environment) 225
 MARGOLIS, Bob 259, 471, ⇨[74]
 \markboth (command) 71, 328, 602, 614
 \markboth 3338, 3339, 4165, 4231, 4232, 4306, 4307
 MARKEY, Nicolas 259, ⇨[25, 246, 247]
 \markright (command) 71
 MARR, Marcus 259
 MARRE-FOURNIER, Françoise 259, ⇨[25]
 MART, Terry 259, 471, ⇨[73, 74]
 marvosym (package) 227, ⇨[182]
 MASLOV, Vadim 259, 538, 539, ⇨[44, 177]
 MASSIAS, Henri 65, 259
 MATTHIAS, Andreas 259
 MATTISSON, Sven 259, 547, ⇨[248]
 mcaption (package) . . 53, 71, 87, 176, 225, 253, 278, 431, 606, ⇨[183]
 McDONNELL, Rowland . 52, 69, 87, 259, ⇨[249]
 McKAY, Ben 259
 \mdseries (command) 233
 \mdseries . 933, 1778, 1826, 3389, 3396, 4078, 4091, 4093, 4709
 \meem 8309, 8310, 8313, 8314, 8317, 8318, 8935, 8939, 8943
 MEKNAVIN, Surapant 259, 547, ⇨[250]
 \mem 9385, 9387, 9392, 9394, 9399, 9401
 mem.tex (old example document) . . . 616, 618
 mem1.tex (old example document) . . 616, 618
 memoir (class) 52, 63–65, 71, 87, 105, 135, 136, 159, 161, 162, 164, 198, 206, 225, 228–230, 243, 251, 253, 257, 270, 279, 288, 314, 414, 459, 599, 604–606, 624, ⇨[370, 371, 373]
 memoir.cls (file) 225, 279
 MENGIN, Sébastien 259, ⇨[25]
 \MessageBreak (command) 609
 \MessageBreak . 2992, 3003, 3005, 3007, 3098, 3156, 3161, 3163, 3173, 3178, 3370, 3719, 3721, 3738, 3740, 3757, 3759, 3865, 3931, 3992, 4061, 4402, 4404, 4421, 4423, 4440, 4442, 4543, 4603, 4663, 4699, 5022, 5024, 5041, 5043,

5060, 5062, 5147, 5207, 5267, 5318,
 5320, 5322, 5324, 5439, 5441, 5443,
 5446, 5457, 5459, 5461, 5464, 5560,
 5566, 5569, 5581, 5583, 5585, 5588,
 5598, 5600, 5606, 5609, 5622, 5624,
 5626, 5629, 5639, 5641, 5647, 5650,
 5746, 5748, 5750, 5753, 5762, 5764,
 5766, 5769, 5779, 5785, 5788, 5822,
 5825, 5827, 5829, 5843, 5846, 5848,
 5858, 5863, 5898, 5901, 5903, 5905,
 5918, 5921, 5923, 5933, 5938, 5979,
 5981, 5983, 5986, 5997, 5999, 6001,
 6004, 6016, 6018, 6024, 6027, 6039,
 6041, 6043, 6046, 6056, 6059, 6064,
 6071, 6083, 6085, 6087, 6090, 6100,
 6103, 6108, 6115, 6203, 6205, 6213,
 6215, 6237, 6246, 6248, 6256, 6258,
 6280, 6289, 6291, 6299, 6301, 6323,
 6333, 6337, 6339, 6342, 6344, 6353,
 6356, 6358, 6360, 6363, 6365, 6370,
 6401, 6403, 6406, **6417**, 6430, 6432,
 6434, 6436, 6446, 6448, 6450, 6452,
 6459, 6461, 6463, 6475, 6477, 6479,
 6481, 6484, 6486, **6498**, 6711, 6717,
 6719, 6725, 6727, 6733, 6735, 6741,
 6743, 6749, 6751, 6757, 6759, 6765,
 6767, 6773, 6775, 6783, 6785, 6787,
 6789, 6791, 6793, 6800, 6802, 6804,
 6806, 6808, 6815, 6817, 6819, 6821,
 6823, 6831, 6833, 6841, 6843, 6850,
 6852, 6858, 6860, 6865, 6867, 6876,
 6878, 6880, 6882, 6888, 6890, 6895,
 6897, 6909, 6914, 6928, 6933, 6948,
 6953, 6991, 6993, 6995, 7005, 7014,
 7023, 7034, 7043, 7052, 7063, 7072,
 7081, 7091, 7100, 7109, 7120, 7129,
 7138, 7149, 7158, 7167, 7178, 7180,
 7189, 7191, 7200, 7202, 7213, 7215,
 7224, 7226, 7235, 7237, 7248, 7250,
 7259, 7261, 7270, 7272, 7285, 7293,
 7301, 7312, 7321, 7330, 7339, 7348,
 7357, 7366, 7375, 7384, 7393, 7402,
 7411, 7420, 7428, 7430, 7432, 7439,
 7441, 7443, 7450, 7452, 7454, 7461,
 7463, 7465, 7472, 7479, 7486, 7493,
 7500, 7507, 7514, 7521, 7528, 7535,
 7542, 7549, 7556, 7561, 7569, 7571,
 7573, 7576, 7578, 7603, 7663, 7666,
 7713, 7715, 7721, 7723, 7729, 7731,
 7741, 7743, 7749, 7751, 7757, 7759,
 7768, 7770, 7776, 7778, 7784, 7786,
 7794, 7796, 7802, 7804, 7810, 7812,
 7822, 7824, 7830, 7832, 7838, 7840,
 7849, 7851, 7857, 7859, 7865, 7867,

8057, 8059, 8061, 8063, 8065, 8067,
 8073, 8075, 8084, 8086, 8095, 8097,
 8123, 8125, 8130, 8132, 8137, 8139,
8142

Messages

E0001	189
E0002	189
E0003	189
E0004	190
E0005	190
E0006	190
E0007	191
E0008	191
E0009	191, 393
E0010	192
E0011	192, 391
E0012	192, 391
E0013	193, 375
E0014	193, 375
E0015	193
E0016	194, 385
E0017	194, 386
E0018	194
E0019	195, 389
E0020	195
E0021	196, 380, 384
E0022	196, 379
E0023	196
E0024	197
E0025	197
E0026	197, 398
E0027	198, 399
E0028	198, 280
E0029	198
E0030	198
E0031	199
E0032	199
E0033	199
E0034	200
E0035	200, 404
E0036	200
E0037	201, 439
E0038	201, 406
E0039	202
E0040	202, 400
E0041	202
E0042	203, 394
E0043	203
F0001	203
F0002	204
F0003	204
F0004	204
F0005	204

F0006	205	I0047	63, 165, 240, 412
F0007	205	I0048	165, 370
F0008	205, 444	I0049	165, 410
F0009	205, 446	I0050	166
I0000	155	I0051	166
I0001	21, 156	I0052	166
I0002	156, 286	I0053	53, 166, 219, 237, 241, 256, 431, 432, 623
I0003	156, 284	M0001	206
I0004	156	W0001	167
I0005	156, 275	W0002	167
I0006	53, 157, 299, 302, 306, 329, 331, 334, 351, 354, 356	W0003	167, 296
I0007	157	W0004	167, 324
I0008	157	W0005	168, 349
I0009	157, 437	W0006	168
I0010	157	W0007	168
I0011	158	W0008	168
I0012	158	W0009	168
I0013	158	W0010	169
I0014	158	W0011	169
I0015	158	W0012	169
I0016	159	W0013	169
I0017	159	W0014	169
I0018	159	W0015	170
I0019	159	W0016	170
I0020	159	W0017	58, 170
I0021	160	W0018	170
I0022	160	W0019	170
I0023	160	W0020	171, 238, 404
I0024	160	W0021	59, 171
I0025	160	W0022	59, 171
I0026	160	W0023	173
I0027	161	W0024	173
I0028	161	W0025	173, 210
I0029	161	W0026	173, 210
I0030	161	W0027	174, 210
I0031	161	W0028	174
I0032	162	W0029	174, 222
I0033	162, 314, 315, 318, 321, 340, 341, 344, 346, 363, 364, 366, 368	W0030	174
I0034	162	W0031	175
I0035	162	W0032	175
I0036	162	W0033	175, 212, 430
I0037	163	W0034	175, 212, 430, 465
I0038	163	W0035	176, 213, 430
I0039	163	W0036	176, 225, 431
I0040	52, 69, 163, 209, 252, 415, 602	W0037	52, 69, 176, 238, 427
I0041	163, 210, 414	W0038	52, 72, 176, 242, 253, 427, 608
I0042	63, 164, 210, 251, 410, 599	W0039	176
I0043	40, 49, 74, 164, 223, 252, 254, 411, 603, 610	W0040	177
I0044	164, 414	W0041	177, 433
I0045	164, 312, 313, 338, 339, 361, 362	W0042	177, 433
I0046	165, 240, 251, 411, 597	W0043	177, 433
		W0044	178, 433

- W0045 178, 433
- W0046 178, 432
- W0047 178, 434
- W0048 179, 434
- W0049 179, 434
- W0050 179, 435
- W0051 179, 434
- W0052 179, 435
- W0053 180
- W0054 180
- W0055 180
- W0056 29, 52, 180, 222, 419
- W0057 181
- W0058 181
- W0059 181
- W0060 181
- W0061 181
- W0062 182
- W0063 182
- W0064 182
- W0065 182
- W0066 182
- W0067 183
- W0068 183
- W0069 183
- W0070 183
- W0071 184
- W0072 184
- W0073 184
- W0074 184
- W0075 185
- W0076 185
- W0077 185
- W0078 185
- W0079 185
- W0080 186
- W0081 186
- W0082 186
- W0083 186
- W0084 186
- W0085 187
- W0086 52, 74, 187, 220, 427, 614
- W0087 53, 74, 187, 237, 428, 614
- W0088 53, 75, 187, 237, 428, 614
- W0089 53, 75, 188, 238, 429, 614
- W0090 53, 75, 188, 210, 429, 614
- W0091 53, 75, 188, 212, 429
- W0092 52, 78, 188, 221, 255, 428, 592, 620
- W0093 171
- W0094 172
- W0095 172
- W0096 172
- W0097 172, 220, 256, 623
- METZINGER, Jochen 259, 487, 488, \hookrightarrow [37]
- meyalu (language option) 38, 524
- meyalu.mld (file) 244, 245, 524
- MICHOV, Yanick 259
- mini-art.tex (old example document) . . . 618
- \minilof (command) 21, 28, 32, 36,
39, 40, 82, 86, 181, 182, 222, 298, 301,
302, 305, 353, 593
- \minilof 1, 64, 79, 100, 127, 141, 160,
437, 505, 542, 567, **1286**, 1414, **1956**,
2476, **2724**, **3489**, 7042, 7130, 7223,
7682, **7890**
- \minilof@ (command) 302, 309
- \minilof@ **3489**, 3490, **3668**
- \minilof@mtcck 5474, 5515
- minilofdepth (depth counter) 33, 217, 226, 294,
304
- \minilot (command) 21, 28, 32, 36, 39, 40, 82,
86, 181, 183, 222, 298, 305, 356, 593
- \minilot . . . 1, 65, 80, 100, 127, 142, 161, **437**,
507, 544, 569, **1286**, 1415, **1895**, **1916**,
3557, 7051, 7139, 7234, **7682**, **7890**
- \minilot@ (command) 305
- \minilot@ **3557**, 3558, **3668**
- \minilot@mtcck 5477, 5522
- minilotdepth (depth counter) 33, 217, 226, 307
- minipage (environment) 137, 591
- minitoc (package) 24, 263, \hookrightarrow [131, 132]
- \minitoc (command) 21, 27, 28, 32, 33, 36, 37,
39, 40, 54, 58, 66, 77, 82, 86, 115, 181,
183, 222, 249, 252, 298, 299, 301, 311,
328, 350, 592–594, 600–602
- \minitoc . . . 1, 14, 21, 36, 43, 218, 220, **238**, 239,
246, **254**, 256, **264**, 266, 341, **437**, 503,
540, 565, **876**, **892**, 1219, **1286**, 1345,
1346, 1369, **1396**, 1513, 1560, **1634**,
1662, **1678**, **1747**, **1777**, 1829, **1956**,
2029, **2179**, **2224**, **2249**, **2322**, **2337**,
2363, **2411**, **2416**, **2418**, **2523**, **2578**,
2612, **2630**, **3419**, 7033, 7121, 7212,
7682, **7890**
- minitoc-ex.tex (old example document) . 618
- minitoc-hyper (package) 61, 226, \hookrightarrow [349]
- minitoc-hyper.sty (file) 226
- minitoc-tds.zip (file) 227, 244, 246, 247, 255,
620, 622
- minitoc.bib (file) 226, 244–246, 599
- minitoc.bug (file) . . . 51, 56, 226, 244–246, 253,
254, 599, 604, 606, 610, 614
- minitoc.dtx (file) . . . 62, 220, 222, 226, 243–247,
253, 402, 441, 615
- minitoc.ins (file) . . . 43, 219, 220, 222, 226, 230,
243–246, 402, 441, 465, 603, 615
- minitoc.ist (file) 226, 244–246, 602

- minitoc.l (file) 226, 243–245, 606
- minitoc.lan (file) 220, 226, 244–246, 441
- minitoc.pdf (file) 226, 244–246
- minitoc.pre (file) 226, 244–246, 606, 612
- minitoc.ps (file) 226
- minitoc.sty (file) 226, 243–245, 267
- minitoc.sum (file) 227, 244–246
- minitoc.tex (file) 595, 599
- \minitoc@ (command) 297, 299, 309
- \minitoc@ **3419**, 3420, **3668**
- \minitoc@mtcck 5471, 5506
- minitocdepth (depth counter) 21, 27, 28, 32, 42,
65, 70, 82, 217, 226, 296, 300, 591
- \minitocno (command) 591, 592
- minitocoff (package) 249, 250, 596
- \minitocyces (command) 591
- minutes (package) 227, 297, 402, ↪[236]
- MITTELBACH, Frank 223, 224,
249, 259, 297, 326, 349, 594, 598, 599,
↪[60, 154, 220, 221, 251–264]
- \MLF@ **3940**, 3942
- \MLF@contentsline (command) 318
- \MLF@contentsline **3901**, **3942**
- \MLF@explist **3899**, **3926**
- \MLF@line 3939, **3940**
- \MLF@list **3896**, **3899**, **3926**, **3942**
- \MLF@lof **3899**, **3927**, **3942**
- \MLF@loop **3896**, **3927**
- \MLF@next (command) 319
- \MLF@next **3704**, **3896**, **3926**
- \mlf@pgno 3250, 3251
- \MLF@read **3927**, **3938**, **3942**
- \mlf@rule **3381**, **3505**, 3554, **5346**
- \mlf@setform (command) 304, 383
- \mlf@setform **3540**, **5711**
- \MLF@test (command) 319
- \MLF@test **3940**, **3942**
- \mlf@dotsep **5681**, 5714
- \mlffont (command) 35, 36, 82, 303
- \mlffont **1**, **3389**, **3505**, **7926**
- \mlflofrmarg **5672**
- \mlfname **3905**
- \mlfoffset (command) 82
- \mlfoffset **2817**, **3531**
- \mlfpagenumbers (command) 45, 84
- \mlfpagenumbers **3231**, **3244**, **3250**, **3263**, **7984**
- \mlfpnumwidth **5663**, 5712
- \mlfrule (command) 45, 84, 601
- \mlfrule **5346**, **7966**
- \mlfSfont (command) 35, 36, 41, 82, 606
- \mlfSfont **1**, **3389**, **7926**
- \mlftitle (command) 35, 36, 82, 465
- \mlftitle **1**, 3504,
3514, 3524, 3528, **6488**, **7567**, **8217**,
8235, 8256, 8277, 8295, 8313, 8335,
8364, 8381, 8398, 8416, 8432, 8447,
8462, 8477, 8493, 8514, 8541, 8571,
8592, 8608, 8641, 8680, 8699, 8716,
8733, 8749, 8765, 8788, 8814, 8831,
8852, 8872, 8903, 8940, 8957, 8974,
8995, 9018, 9051, 9089, 9108, 9125,
9140, 9158, 9185, 9189, 9224, 9263,
9292, 9392, 9422, 9455, 9477, 9501,
9517, 9534, 9551, 9636, 9637, 9657,
9674, 9691, 9708, 9725, 9742, 9767,
9785, 9802, 9826, 9843, 9860, 9879,
9899, 9914, 9938, 9968, 10014, 10029,
10047, 10063, 10076, 10091, 10111,
10129, 10147, 10168, 10185, 10202,
10234, 10261, 10300, 10340, 10365,
10429, 10445, 10461, 10483, 10503,
10519, 10537, 10552, 10568, 10587,
10603, 10619, 10643, 10679, 10707,
10733, 10752, 10767, 10782, 10797
- \mlftocrmarg 5676, 5713
- \MLT@ **4001**, 4003
- \MLT@contentsline (command) 321
- \MLT@contentsline **3962**, **4003**
- \MLT@explist **3960**, **3987**
- \MLT@line 4000, **4001**
- \MLT@list **3957**, **3960**, **3987**, **4003**
- \MLT@loop **3957**, **3988**
- \MLT@lot **3960**, **3988**, **4003**
- \MLT@next (command) 321
- \MLT@next **3709**, **3957**, **3987**
- \mlt@pgno 3256, 3257
- \MLT@read **3988**, **3999**, **4003**
- \mlt@rule **3381**, **3573**, 3622, **5355**
- \mlt@setform (command) 307, 383
- \mlt@setform **3608**, **5726**
- \MLT@test (command) 322
- \MLT@test **4001**, **4003**
- \mlt@dotsep **5681**
- \mltfont (command) 35, 36, 82, 306
- \mltfont **1**, **3389**, **3573**, **7926**
- \mlttitle 8257
- \mltlofrmarg **5672**
- \mltname **3966**
- \mltoffset (command) 82
- \mltoffset **2817**, **3599**, **7789**
- \mltpagenumbers (command) 45, 84
- \mltpagenumbers **3237**, **3244**, **3250**, **3256**,
3263, **7984**
- \mltpnumwidth **5663**
- \mltrule (command) 45, 84, 601
- \mltrule **5355**, **7966**
- \mltSfont (command) 35, 36, 82, 606

- `\mltSfont` **1, 3389, 7926**
- `\mltttitle` (command) 35, 36, 82, 465
- `\mltttitle` **1, 3572**,
3582, 3592, 3596, **6488, 7567, 8217**,
8236, 8278, 8296, 8314, 8336, 8365,
8382, 8399, 8417, 8433, 8448, 8463,
8478, 8494, 8515, 8544, 8573, 8593,
8609, 8642, 8681, 8700, 8717, 8734,
8750, 8766, 8789, 8815, 8832, 8853,
8875, 8905, 8941, 8958, 8975, 8996,
9019, 9052, 9090, 9109, 9126, 9141,
9159, 9228, 9267, 9293, 9394, 9425,
9456, 9478, 9502, 9518, 9535, 9552,
9658, 9675, 9692, 9709, 9726, 9743,
9768, 9786, 9803, 9827, 9844, 9861,
9880, 9900, 9915, 9939, 9970, 10015,
10030, 10048, 10064, 10077, 10092,
10112, 10130, 10148, 10169, 10186,
10203, 10219, 10220, 10235, 10265,
10304, 10343, 10366, 10430, 10446,
10462, 10485, 10504, 10520, 10538,
10553, 10569, 10588, 10604, 10620,
10644, 10681, 10708, 10734, 10753,
10768, 10783, 10798
- `\mlttocrmarg` 5679
- `\mm` 9874–9876, 9878–9880, 9882–9884,
9894–9896, 9898–9900, 9902–9904,
9909–9911, 9913–9915, 9917–9919
- `\mnr` 8587–8589, 8591–8593, 8595–8597,
8603–8605, 8607–8609, 8611–8613,
9933–9935, 9937–9939, 9941–9943,
10762–10764, 10766–10768, 10770–
10772, 10777–10779, 10781–10783,
10785–10787
- mongol (language option) 38, 524
- mongol.mld (file) 244, 245, 524
- mongolb (language option) 38, 525
- mongolb.mld (file) 244, 245, 255, 256, 525, 526,
621, 622
- mongolb.mlo (file) 255, 621
- mongolian (language option) 38, 526
- mongolian.dtx (file) 525
- mongolian.mld (file) . 244, 245, 256, 526, 622
- MonTeX (package) 43, 227, 465,
473–475, 478, 479, 524, 538, 553, 554,
615, ⇨[117, 120]
- MOON, Young Joon 259, ⇨[265]
- MOORE, ROSS 259, ⇨[155]
- MORAWSKI, Jens-Uwe 87, 259, ⇨[207, 270]
- morefloats (package) 602, ⇨[187]
- MORI, Lapo Filippo 259, ⇨[160, 266, 267]
- MORRISON, Michael A. 259, ⇨[268]
- mtc (counter) . 86, 281, 284, 285, 293, 296, 314,
315, 318, 321, 375, 598
- mtc-2c.pdf (example document) 245
- mtc-2c.tex (example document) . 90, 228, 244,
245, 618
- mtc-2nd.pdf (example document) 245
- mtc-2nd.tex (example document) 91, 228, 244,
245, 274, 493, 619
- mtc-3co.pdf (example document) 245
- mtc-3co.tex (example document) 92, 228, 231,
244, 245, 256, 621
- mtc-add.bib (example document) 228, 244, 245,
618
- mtc-add.pdf (example document) 245
- mtc-add.tex (example document) . 51, 95, 96,
228, 244, 245, 618
- mtc-adds.tex (old example document) . . . 620
- mtc-ads.pdf (example document) 245
- mtc-ads.tex (example document) 51, 100, 228,
244, 245, 618
- mtc-amem.tex (old example document) . . . 620
- mtc-amm.pdf (example document) 245
- mtc-amm.tex (example document) 63, 105, 228,
244, 245, 618
- mtc-apx.pdf (example document) 245
- mtc-apx.tex (example document) 66, 89, 106,
228, 244, 245, 615, 618
- mtc-apx.tex (file) 622
- mtc-art.pdf (example document) 245
- mtc-art.tex (example document) 106, 228, 244,
245, 618
- mtc-bk.pdf (example document) 245
- mtc-bk.tex (example document) 111, 229, 244,
245, 618
- mtc-bo.pdf (example document) 245
- mtc-bo.tex (example document) 117, 229, 244,
245, 616, 618
- mtc-book.tex (old example document) . . . 620
- mtc-ch0.pdf (example document) 245
- mtc-ch0.tex (example document) 122, 229, 244,
245, 618
- mtc-cri.log (file) 123
- mtc-cri.pdf (example document) 245
- mtc-cri.tex (example document) 123, 229, 244,
245, 618
- mtc-fko.pdf (example document) 245
- mtc-fko.tex (example document) 124, 229, 244,
245, 256, 622
- mtc-fo1.pdf (example document) 245
- mtc-fo1.tex (example document) 125, 126, 229,
244, 245, 618
- mtc-fo2.pdf (example document) 245
- mtc-fo2.tex (example document) 126, 229, 244,
245, 618
- mtc-gap.pdf (example document) 245

- `mtc-gap.tex` (example document) 75, 89, 128, 229, 244, 245, 618
`mtc-gaps.tex` (old example document) . . . 620
`mtc-hi1.pdf` (example document) 245
`mtc-hi1.tex` (example document) 67, 89, 128, 229, 244, 245, 618
`mtc-hi2.pdf` (example document) 245
`mtc-hi2.tex` (example document) 68, 89, 128, 229, 244, 245, 618
`mtc-hia.pdf` (example document) 245
`mtc-hia.tex` (example document) 128, 229, 244, 245, 618
`mtc-hir.pdf` (example document) 245
`mtc-hir.tex` (example document) 129, 229, 244, 245, 618
`mtc-hop.pdf` (example document) 245
`mtc-hop.tex` (example document) 130, 229, 244, 245, 618
`mtc-liv.pdf` (example document) 245
`mtc-liv.tex` (example document) 131, 229, 244, 245, 618
`mtc-mem.pdf` (example document) 245
`mtc-mem.tex` (example document) 135, 229, 244, 245, 618
`mtc-mem1.tex` (old example document) . . . 620
`mtc-mm1.pdf` (example document) 245
`mtc-mm1.tex` (example document) 136, 229, 244, 245, 618
`mtc-mu.pdf` (example document) 245
`mtc-mu.tex` (example document) 137, 229, 244, 245, 618
`mtc-nom.pdf` (example document) 245
`mtc-nom.tex` (example document) 139, 230, 244, 245, 256, 623
`mtc-ocf.pdf` (example document) 245
`mtc-ocf.tex` (example document) 140, 215, 230, 235, 244, 245, 256, 623
`mtc-ofs.pdf` (example document) 245
`mtc-ofs.tex` (example document) 141, 230, 244, 245, 256, 623
`mtc-sbf.pdf` (example document) 245
`mtc-sbf.tex` (example document) 143, 230, 244, 245, 619
`mtc-scr.pdf` (example document) 245
`mtc-scr.tex` (example document) 145, 230, 244, 245, 618
`mtc-subf.tex` (old example document) . . . 620
`mtc-syn.pdf` (example document) 245
`mtc-syn.tex` (example document) 146, 230, 244, 245, 619
`mtc-tbi.pdf` (example document) 245
`mtc-tbi.tex` (example document) 147, 230, 244, 245, 619
`mtc-tlc.pdf` (example document) 245
`mtc-tlc.tex` (example document) 149, 230, 244, 245, 619
`mtc-tlo.pdf` (example document) 245
`mtc-tlo.tex` (example document) 78, 89, 150, 230, 244, 245, 619
`mtc-tsfc.pdf` (example document) 245
`mtc-tsfc.tex` (example document) 150, 230, 244, 245, 619
`mtc-tsfc.tex` (old example document) . . . 620
`\MTC@` **3875, 3877**
`\mtc@While` 3029, 3031, 3036
`\mtc@admisslanguage` (command) 405
`\mtc@admisslanguage` **6417, 6422, 6468**
`\mtc@addtomaf` **7600**
`\mtc@arg@dotinterval` 5655
`\mtc@arg@numwidth` 5661
`\mtc@arg@pagenumwidth` 5659
`\mtc@arg@tocrightmargin` 5657
`\mtc@BBR` (command) 285
`\mtc@BBR` . **3127, 3461, 3466, 3531, 3536, 3599, 3604, 4189, 4192, 4262, 4266, 4337, 4341, 4785, 4789, 4852, 4856, 4919, 4923**
`\mtc@Body` **3043**
`\mtc@bottom@rule` . . **3480, 3485, 3552, 3620**
`\mtc@ck` **8070**
`\mtc@CkFile` (command) . . 281, 299, 302, 306
`\mtc@CkFile` . . **3043, 3427, 3497, 3565, 4157, 4223, 4298, 4750, 4817, 4884**
`\mtc@CkStr` **3043, 3435, 3505, 3573, 4168, 4236, 4311, 4758, 4826, 4893**
`\mtc@classck` **7660**
`\MTC@contentsline` (command) 314, 317, 323
`\MTC@contentsline` **3781, 3877**
`\mtc@dot` **4019**
`\mtc@EndWhile` **3018, 3043**
`\MTC@explist` **3778, 3860**
`\mtc@featparam@` (command) 391
`\mtc@featparam@abbrev` (command) . . . 392
`\mtc@featparam@abbrev` . . **5971, 5991, 6010**
`\mtc@featparam@third` (command) 391, 392
`\mtc@featparam@third` **5991, 6010**
`\mtc@featureparam@after` 5956
`\mtc@featureparam@before` 5954
`\mtc@featureparam@close` 5960
`\mtc@featureparam@open` 5958
`\mtc@featureparam@pagestyle` 5962
`\mtc@fparam@abbrev` (command) 385
`\mtc@fparam@abbrev` **5738, 5757, 5774**
`\mtc@glofix@level` (command) 397
`\mtc@glofix@level` . **6199, 6222, 6231–6233, 6239**
`\mtc@hints@chapter` **6918, 7654**

- \mtc@hints@@part **6899, 7651**
- \mtc@hints@schapter **6918, 7654**
- \mtc@hints@ssect **6937, 7657**
- \mtc@hints@spart **6899, 7651**
- \mtc@hints@ssect **6937, 7657**
- \mtc@hints@beginndoc (command) . 409, 410, 418
- \mtc@hints@beginndoc **6704, 6980, 7647**
- \mtc@hints@chapter (command) 416
- \mtc@hints@chapter **6899, 6918, 7654**
- \mtc@hints@checklongext **7278**
- \mtc@hints@endndoc (command) 410, 419, 435
- \mtc@hints@endndoc . **6704, 6981, 7553, 7647**
- \mtc@hints@part (command) 416
- \mtc@hints@part **6899, 7651**
- \mtc@hints@section (command) 416
- \mtc@hints@section **6899, 6937, 7657**
- \mtc@hook@beforeinputfile (command) 274, 301, 304, 307, 599
- \mtc@hook@beforeinputfile .. **2936, 3468, 3540, 3608, 4194, 4271, 4346, 4791, 4861, 4928**
- \mtc@hstrut .. **3127, 4259, 4334, 4848, 4915**
- \mtc@hstrutbox **3127**
- \mtc@ifmtarg (command) . 280, 282, 284, 285
- \mtc@ifmtarg .. **3018, 3052, 3085, 3111, 3120**
- \mtc@ixfix@level (command) 399
- \mtc@ixfix@level .. **6242, 6265, 6274–6276, 6282**
- \mtc@level@abbrev (command) 375
- \mtc@level@abbrev **5451, 5469, 5555**
- \MTC@line **3873, 3875**
- \MTC@list **3774, 3778, 3860, 3877**
- \mtc@listmisslanguages (command) ... 405
- \mtc@listmisslanguages **6417, 6498**
- \mtc@LML **6417**
- \MTC@loop **3774, 3861**
- \mtc@ltypetable@minilof 5948
- \mtc@ltypetable@minilot 5949
- \mtc@ltypetable@minitoc 5947
- \mtc@ltypetable@partlof 5945
- \mtc@ltypetable@partlot 5946
- \mtc@ltypetable@parttoc 5944
- \mtc@ltypetable@ssectlof 5951
- \mtc@ltypetable@ssectlot 5952
- \mtc@ltypetable@ssecttoc 5950
- \mtc@maf (command) 437, 438
- \mtc@maf **7600, 7646**
- \mtc@maf@long (command) 437
- \mtc@maf@long **7600**
- \mtc@maf@short (command) 437
- \mtc@maf@short **7600**
- \mtc@markboth . **3338, 3434, 3504, 3572, 4164, 4230, 4305, 4758, 4824, 4891**
- \mtc@mta@abbrev (command) 375
- \mtc@mta@abbrev **5432, 5469, 5555**
- \mtc@mtade@abbrev (command) 393
- \mtc@mtade@abbrev **6032, 6051**
- \mtc@mtaof@abbrev (command) 394
- \mtc@mtaof@abbrev **6076, 6095**
- \mtc@mtatf@abbrev (command) 379
- \mtc@mtatf@abbrev **5574, 5593**
- \mtc@mtati@abbrev (command) 380
- \mtc@mtati@abbrev **5615, 5634**
- \mtc@mtf@abbrev (command) 384
- \mtc@mtf@abbrev **5738, 5774**
- \mtc@mtfeat@abbrev (command) .. 391, 392
- \mtc@mtfeat@abbrev **5971, 6010**
- \mtc@mttprn@abbrev (command) 386
- \mtc@mttprn@abbrev **5813, 5834**
- \mtc@mttru@abbrev (command) 389
- \mtc@mttru@abbrev **5889, 5910**
- \MTC@next (command) 316
- \MTC@next **3699, 3774, 3860**
- \mtc@nomenclfix@level (command) 400
- \mtc@nomenclfix@level **6285, 6308, 6317–6319, 6325**
- \mtc@noX **5853, 5855, 5910**
- \mtc@onebackchap 3073
- \mtc@onebackchapter **3072**
- \mtc@onebackpart **3072**
- \mtc@onebacksect (command) 283
- \mtc@onebacksect **3074, 3102**
- \mtc@onebacksection **3072**
- \mtc@param **4019**
- \mtc@pgno 3244, 3245, **3468, 3540, 3608**
- \mtc@pns@abbrev (command) 387
- \mtc@pns@abbrev **5813, 5834**
- \mtc@pns@abbrevX 5852
- \MTC@read **3861, 3873, 3877**
- \mtc@restorelofdepth 6153, **8111**
- \mtc@restoretocdepth 6186, 6198, **8111**
- \mtc@restoretocdepth ... **6119, 6149, 6165, 6182, 8111**
- \mtc@Rline **3043**
- \mtc@rule (command) 296, 593
- \mtc@rule **3381, 3435, 3485, 5337**
- \mtc@rusw@abbrev (command) 389
- \mtc@rusw@abbrev **5889, 5910**
- \mtc@rusw@abbrevX 5927
- \mtc@savelofdepth 6152, 6159, **8111**
- \mtc@savelotdepth 6185, 6192, **8111**
- \mtc@savetocdepth (command) 395
- \mtc@savetocdepth . **6119, 6143, 6176, 8111**
- \mtc@schapter **3632**
- \mtc@ssectlevel@chapter 5419
- \mtc@ssectlevel@figure 5426

- \mtc@sectlevel@paragraph 5423
- \mtc@sectlevel@section 5420
- \mtc@sectlevel@subfigure 5428
- \mtc@sectlevel@subparagraph 5424
- \mtc@sectlevel@subsection 5421
- \mtc@sectlevel@subsubsection 5422
- \mtc@sectlevel@subtable 5429
- \mtc@sectlevel@table 5427
- \mtc@setform (command) 301, 382
- \mtc@setform **3468, 5696**
- \mtc@setlangopt (command) 407
- \mtc@setlangopt **6422, 6520**
- \mtc@setlangoptm (command) 407
- \mtc@setlangoptm **6468, 6520**
- \mtc@setlangopto (command) 407
- \mtc@setlangopto **6422, 6520**
- \mtc@string (command) 285
- \mtc@string .. **3127, 3877, 3942, 4003, 4019, 4039, 4554, 4614, 4674, 5158, 5218, 5278, 7903**
- \mtc@strut **3127, 3468, 3540, 3608, 4194, 4271, 4346, 4791, 4861, 4928**
- \mtc@strutbox (command) 598
- \mtc@strutbox **3127**
- \mtc@sv@fklistoffigures **6970**
- \mtc@sv@fklistoftables **6970**
- \mtc@sv@fktableofcontents **6970**
- \mtc@sv@listoffigures **6961**
- \mtc@sv@listoftables **6961**
- \mtc@sv@lofdepth **6133**
- \mtc@sv@lotdepth **6166**
- \mtc@sv@tableofcontents **6961**
- \mtc@sv@tocdepth **6119, 6133, 6166**
- \mtc@svchapter **3119**
- \mtc@svf@tocdepth **6133**
- \mtc@svpart **3075, 4369**
- \mtc@svsection **3108**
- \mtc@svspart **3075**
- \mtc@svss **3108**
- \mtc@svt@tocdepth **6166**
- \MTC@test (command) 317
- \MTC@test **3875, 3877**
- \mtc@tmp@name **5469, 5555**
- \mtc@tmpde@name **6051**
- \mtc@tmpfeat@name **6010**
- \mtc@tmpfm@name **5774**
- \mtc@tmpof@name **6095**
- \mtc@tmppn@name **5834, 5910**
- \mtc@tmptf@name **5593**
- \mtc@tmpti@name **5634**
- \MTC@toc **3778, 3861, 3877**
- \mtc@toks (command) 256, 257, 285, 315, 318, 321, 323, 341, 344, 346, 363, 366, 368, 623, 624
- \mtc@toks **3127, 3811, 3917, 3978, 4019, 4039, 4491, 4589, 4649, 5098, 5194, 5254, 5555, 5593, 5634, 5775, 5780, 5781, 6013, 6019, 6020, 6051, 6095**
- \mtc@typetable@minilof 5368
- \mtc@typetable@minilot 5369
- \mtc@typetable@minitoc 5367
- \mtc@typetable@partlof 5365
- \mtc@typetable@partlot 5366
- \mtc@typetable@parttoc 5364
- \mtc@typetable@sectlof 5371
- \mtc@typetable@sectlot 5372
- \mtc@typetable@secttoc 5370
- \mtc@typetitle@minilof 5377
- \mtc@typetitle@minilot 5378
- \mtc@typetitle@minitoc 5376
- \mtc@typetitle@partlof 5374
- \mtc@typetitle@partlot 5375
- \mtc@typetitle@parttoc 5373
- \mtc@typetitle@sectlof 5380
- \mtc@typetitle@sectlot 5381
- \mtc@typetitle@secttoc 5379
- \mtc@v ... **3127, 3454, 3458, 3524, 3528, 3592, 3596, 4180, 4248, 4327, 4773, 4840, 4907**
- \mtc@verse (command) 298
- mtc@verse (environment) 92, 93, 298, 300, 301, 303, 304, 307, 382, 383
- \mtc@verse **323, 3408**
- \mtc@While (command) 281
- \mtc@While **3018, 3043**
- \mtc@WhileBody **3018**
- \mtc@WhileCondition **3018**
- \mtc@WhileNext **3018**
- \mtc@WhilePreCondition **3018**
- \MTC@WriteCoffeeline (command) 323, 363
- \MTC@WriteCoffeeline **3827, 4039, 4505, 5098**
- \MTC@WriteContentsLine . **4462, 5082, 5178, 5238**
- \MTC@WriteContentsline (command) .. 318, 321, 323, 341, 344, 346, 363, 366, 368
- \MTC@WriteContentsline . **3812, 3844, 3917, 3978, 4019, 4492, 4519, 4589, 4649, 5098, 5129, 5194, 5254**
- \mtc@xifmtarg **3018**
- \mtc@YN@F 5393
- \mtc@YN@f 5392
- \mtc@YN@FALSE 5389
- \mtc@YN@false 5388
- \mtc@YN@FAUX 5391
- \mtc@YN@faux 5390
- \mtc@YN@N 5387
- \mtc@YN@n 5386

- \mtc@YN@NO 5385
- \mtc@YN@no 5384
- \mtc@YN@NON 5394
- \mtc@YN@non 5395
- \mtc@YN@O 5415
- \mtc@YN@o 5416
- \mtc@YN@OFF 5383
- \mtc@YN@off 5382
- \mtc@YN@ON 5400
- \mtc@YN@on 5399
- \mtc@YN@OUI 5413
- \mtc@YN@oui 5414
- \mtc@YN@T 5408
- \mtc@YN@t 5407
- \mtc@YN@TRUE 5406
- \mtc@YN@true 5405
- \mtc@YN@V 5412
- \mtc@YN@v 5411
- \mtc@YN@VRAI 5410
- \mtc@YN@vrai 5409
- \mtc@YN@Y 5404
- \mtc@YN@y 5403
- \mtc@YN@YES 5402
- \mtc@YN@yes 5401
- \mtc@zrule (command) 285, 598
- \mtc@zrule **3127, 3461, 3483, 3531, 3555, 3599,**
3623, 4189, 4210, 4262, 4284, 4337,
4359, 4785, 4805, 4852, 4872, 4919,
4940
- \mtcaddchapter (command) 34, 49,
50, 52, 65, 69, 71, 86, 92, 96, 145, 147,
204, 209, 228, 251, 285, 597
- \mtcaddchapter **1, 12, 176, 431, 472, 475, 476,**
479, 480, 485, 486, 534, 1634, 1678,
2521, 2562, 2607, 2610, 2628, 2630,
2639, 3120, 8070
- \mtcaddpart (command) . 34, 71, 86, 92, 204,
209, 282, 597
- \mtcaddpart **1, 1678, 1954, 3085, 8070**
- \mtcaddsection (command) 34, 52, 69, 71, 86,
100, 205, 209, 228, 254, 284, 597, 610
- \mtcaddsection . **1, 176, 639, 682, 828, 1022,**
3111, 8070
- \mtcArabTok 8289–8292, 8294–8296,
8298–8300
- \mtcdotsep **5681, 5699**
- \mtcEnglishIIpart 8800, 8809–8811
- \mtcfixglossary (command) 50, 86, 167, 168,
189, 197, 209, 252, 254, 397, 398, 456,
602, 610, 611
- \mtcfixglossary . **1, 6204, 6210, 6212, 6221,**
8117
- \mtcfixindex (command) 50, 86, 98, 104, 167,
168, 189, 198, 209, 252, 254, 398, 399,
457, 601, 610, 611
- \mtcfixindex . . . **1, 530, 531, 824, 6247, 6253,**
6255, 6264, 8118
- \mtcfixnomclature 6296
- \mtcfixnomenclature (command) 50, 86, 140,
172, 202, 209, 256, 400, 457, 623
- \mtcfixnomenclature . . **1, 2335, 6290, 6298,**
6307, 8119
- \mtcfont (command) . . 28, 34, 36, 37, 82, 300
- \mtcfont **1, 1167, 3389, 3435, 7926**
- \mtcFrenchIIpart . . 9030, 9042, 9045, 9048
- \mtcgapafterheads (command) . 75, 81, 229,
254, 615
- \mtcgapafterheads . . . **193, 198, 2797, 4112,**
4119, 4126, 7707
- \mtcgapbeforeheads (command) 75, 81, 229,
254, 615
- \mtcgapbeforeheads . . **193, 198, 2797, 4112,**
4119, 4126, 7707
- mtcglo.ist (file) 605
- \mtchideinmainlof (command) . . 68, 86, 229
- mtchideinmainlof (environment) . 66, 67, 86,
189, 198, 209, 229, 252, 396, 456, 601,
604, 614
- \mtchideinmainlof **115, 144**
- \mtchideinmainlot (command) . 68, 86, 128,
129, 229
- mtchideinmainlot (environment) . 66, 67, 86,
190, 199, 209, 229, 252, 396, 456, 601,
604, 614
- \mtchideinmainlot . . . **115, 152, 1868, 1916**
- mtchideinmaintoc (environment) 66, 86, 116,
117, 190, 199, 209, 228, 252, 395, 456,
601, 614
- \mtcindent (command) 28, 44, 82, 90, 268, 296,
298
- \mtcindent . **224, 234, 323, 1167, 1448, 1741,**
2238, 2406, 2418, 2793, 3381, 3408,
3461, 3531, 3599, 7699
- \mtcloadmlo (command) 199, 253, 401, 451, 605
- \mtcloadmlo . . **6348, 7965, 8657, 8668, 8921,**
8929, 9307, 9318, 9328, 9339, 9347,
9358, 9369, 9377, 9565, 9577, 9589,
9601, 9614, 9623, 9889, 10378, 10387,
10393, 10401, 10409, 10417, 10631
- \mtclofrmarg **5672**
- mtcmess (package) 155, 230, 254, 443, 458, 612
- mtcmess.sty (file) 243–245
- \mtcname **3785, 3797, 3830**
- mtcnorsk.sty (file) 595
- mtcnynorsk.sty (file) 595

- mtcoff (package) 33, 54, 57, 95, 153,
154, 203–206, 230, 249, 250, 442, 443,
456–458, 592, 596, 604, 623
- mtcoff.sty (file) 243–245, 601
- \mtcoffset (command) . 28, 82, 256, 298, 623
- mtcoffset (depth counter) 42
- \mtcoffset **2817, 3461, 7789**
- \mtcoffwarn@false 8053
- \mtcoffwarn@true (command) 604
- \mtcoffwarn@true . . 7710, 7718, 7726, 7738,
7746, 7754, 7765, 7773, 7781, 7791,
7799, 7807, 7819, 7827, 7835, 7846,
7854, 7862, 8070, 8081, 8092, 8120,
8127, 8134
- \mtcPackageError . . 3014, 5437, 5455, 5564,
5579, 5604, 5620, 5645, 5744, 5760,
5783, 5820, 5841, 5896, 5916, 5977,
5995, 6022, 6037, 6054, 6068, 6081,
6098, 6112, 6122, 6128, 6137, 6145,
6155, 6161, 6170, 6178, 6188, 6194,
6208, 6235, 6251, 6278, 6294, 6321,
6335, 6354, 6368, 6399, **6468, 7567,**
7660, 8142
- \mtcPackageInfo . . . **2786**, 2941, 2990, 2997,
2999, 3001, 3079, 3092, 3094, 3100,
3118, 3141, 3152, 3154, 3429, 3499,
3567, 3717, 3736, 3755, 3786, 3790,
3800, 3804, 3833, 3837, 3869, 3906,
3910, 3935, 3967, 3971, 3996, 4159,
4225, 4300, 4400, 4419, 4438, 4466,
4470, 4480, 4484, 4547, 4578, 4582,
4607, 4638, 4642, 4667, 4752, 4819,
4886, 5020, 5039, 5058, 5087, 5091,
5118, 5122, 5151, 5183, 5187, 5211,
5243, 5247, 5271, **5295**, 5558, 5596,
5637, 5777, 5856, 5861, 5931, 5936,
6014, 6062, 6106, 6332, 6351, 6428,
6444, 6457, 6709, 6723, 6731, 6739,
6747, 6755, 6763, 6839, 6863, 6874,
7426, 7437, 7448, 7459, 7559, 7601,
8142, 8159
- \mtcPackageWarning 3368, 3863, 3929, 3990,
4059, 4541, 4601, 4661, 4697, 5145,
5205, 5265, 7711, 7719, 7727, 7739,
7747, 7755, 7766, 7774, 7782, 7792,
7800, 7808, 7820, 7828, 7836, 7847,
7855, 7863, 8071, 8082, 8093, 8121,
8128, 8135, **8142**
- \mtcPackageWarningNoLine 3076, 3096, 3159,
3171, 3176, 6201, 6211, 6244, 6254,
6287, 6297, 6394, **6422, 6498**, 6715,
6771, 6781, 6798, 6813, 6829, 6848,
6856, 6886, 6893, 6907, 6912, 6926,
6931, 6946, 6951, 6989, 7003, 7012,
7021, 7032, 7041, 7050, 7061, 7070,
7079, 7089, 7098, 7107, 7118, 7127,
7136, 7147, 7156, 7165, 7176, 7187,
7198, 7211, 7222, 7233, 7246, 7257,
7268, 7283, 7291, 7299, 7310, 7319,
7328, 7337, 7346, 7355, 7364, 7373,
7382, 7391, 7400, 7409, 7418, 7470,
7477, 7484, 7491, 7498, 7505, 7512,
7519, 7526, 7533, 7540, 7547, 7554,
8055, **8142**
- \mtcpagenumbers (command) 45, 84, 594
- \mtcpagenumbers **1198, 3195, 3244, 3263, 7984**
- mtcpatchmem (package) 153, 154, 206, 230, 243,
459
- mtcpatchmem.sty (file) 243–245
- \mtcPfont (command) 35, 37, 71, 82, 593
- \mtcPfont **1, 176**, 1189, **3389, 7926**
- \mtcpnumwidth **5663**, 5697
- \mtcprepare (command) . 28, 40, 86, 165, 222,
236, 254, 370, 449, 612
- \mtcprepare **1, 5295, 7902**
- \mtcprepare@ **5295**
- \mtcrule (command) 45, 84, 594
- \mtcrule **5337, 7966**
- \mtcsecondpartfalse 2914, 2919, 2925, 2933,
8051
- \mtcsecondparttrue 2917, 2923, 2930
- \mtcselectlanguage (command) 35, 37,
39, 69, 74, 80, 155, 157, 158, 190, 191,
199, 251, 253, 401, 407, 451, 465, 597,
605
- \mtcselectlanguage **1, 176, 6328**, 6425, 6470,
7965, 8217, 8219, 8223, 8244, 8265,
8323, 8344, 8348, 8352, 8502, 8523,
8617, 8621, 8626, 8631, 8840, 8890,
8983, 9060, 9064, 9068, 9441, 9464,
9486, 9490, 9645, 9751, 9755, 9869,
9923, 9927, 9991, 9995, 9999, 10003,
10156, 10652, 10656, 10660, 10664,
10716, 10742
- \mtcsetdepth (command) . 28, 30, 32, 42, 65,
80–83, 158, 192, 253, 392, 393, 603
- \mtcsetdepth **1, 1678, 2464, 2476, 2657, 2724,**
6031, 6038, 6055, 6063, 6069, 6073,
7948
- \mtcsetfeature (command) 47, 48, 80, 85, 158,
192, 196, 209, 211, 215, 219, 235, 252,
256, 293, 390, 391, 602, 623
- \mtcsetfeature . . **1, 2359–2361, 2406, 3320,**
5969, 5978, 5996, 6015, 6023, **7948**
- \mtcsetfont (command) 28, 30, 32, 41, 64, 65,
71, 73, 77, 80, 155, 158, 193, 197, 252,
297, 374, 377, 378, 600, 607, 610

- `\mtcsetfont` . . . **1**, **176**, **211**, **1744**, **1771**, **1774**,
1777, **1820**, **1823**, **1826**, **2212**, **2464**,
2657, **5430**, **5431**, 5438, 5456, 5559,
5565, **7948**
- `\mtcsetformat` (command) 44, 80, 93, 159, 193,
194, 197, 252, 301, 304, 307, 330, 333,
336, 352, 355, 358, 381, 382, 384, 600,
601
- `\mtcsetformat` **1**, **323**, **3468**, **3540**, **3608**, **5691**,
5736, 5745, 5761, 5778, 5784, **7948**
- `\mtcsetoffset` (command) 28, 30, 32,
42, 43, 80–83, 141, 155, 166, 203, 230,
256, 394, 623
- `\mtcsetoffset` **1**, **2416**, **2418**, **6075**, 6082, 6099,
6107, 6113, 6117, **7948**
- `\mtcsetpagenumber@` **5812**
- `\mtcsetpagenumbers` (command) 46, 77, 80, 84,
194, 195, 252, 254, 385, 388, 600, 609
- `\mtcsetpagenumbers` **1**, **5794**, 5821, 5842, **7948**
- `\mtcsetpagenumbers@` (command) 386
- `\mtcsetpagenumbers@` **5794**, 5812
- `\mtcsetrules` (command) 45, 80, 84, 195, 252,
254, 388, 600, 609
- `\mtcsetrules` **1**, **5870**, 5897, 5917, **7948**
- `\mtcsetrules@` (command) 388
- `\mtcsetrules@` **5870**, **5888**
- `\mtcsettitle` (command) 35, 37, 39, 41,
42, 65, 69, 80, 155, 159, 196, 252, 380,
392, 394, 600, 601
- `\mtcsettitle` . . . **1**, 30, **176**, **1744**, **2221**, **5613**,
5614, 5621, 5638, 5646, **7948**
- `\mtcsettitlefont` (command) . 41, 64, 65, 80,
159, 196, 252, 297, 378, 380, 600
- `\mtcsettitlefont` **1**, **1744**, **2221**, **5572**, **5573**,
5580, 5597, **7948**
- `\mtcSfont` (command) 28, 34, 37, 64, 71, 82, 593
- `\mtcSfont` **1**, **176**, **1167**, **3389**, **7926**
- `\mtcskip` (command) 28, 29, 80, 251, 268, 598,
602
- `\mtcskip` **1**, **437**, 504, 506,
541, 543, 566, 568, **648**, 712, 735, 739,
801, 833, 855, **955**, 1025, 1055, 1074,
1095, **1286**, 1517, **2416**, **2418**, **2476**,
2724, **2793**, **7870**
- `\mtcskipamount` (command) . . 28, 29, 80, 251,
268, 444, 598
- `\mtcskipamount` **1**, **2793**, **7699**
- `\mtcSPfont` (command) 35, 37, 71, 82, 83, 593
- `\mtcSPfont` **1**, **176**, 1189, **3389**, **7926**
- `\mtcSSfont` (command) 35, 37, 41, 71, 82, 449,
593
- `\mtcSSfont` **1**, **176**, **1167**, **3389**, **7926**
- `\mtcSSSfont` (command) 35, 37, 65, 71, 82, 593
- `\mtcSSSfont` **1**, **176**, 1189, **3389**, **7926**
- `\mtcsv@listoffigures` **3102**
- `\mtcsv@listoftables` **3102**
- `\mtcsv@tableofcontents` **3102**
- `mtcswedish.sty` (file) 594
- `\mtctitle` (command) . 35, 36, 42, 65, 82, 465
- `\mtctitle` **1**, **1448**,
3434, **3435**, **3505**, **3573**, **6488**, **7567**,
8217, 8234, 8255, 8276, 8294, 8312,
8334, 8363, 8380, 8397, 8415, 8431,
8446, 8461, 8476, 8492, 8513, 8539,
8569, 8591, 8607, 8640, 8679, 8698,
8715, 8732, 8748, 8764, 8787, 8813,
8830, 8851, 8871, 8902, 8939, 8956,
8973, 8994, 9017, 9050, 9085, 9087,
9107, 9124, 9139, 9157, 9182, 9221,
9260, 9291, 9390, 9419, 9454, 9476,
9500, 9516, 9533, 9550, 9635, 9656,
9673, 9690, 9707, 9724, 9741, 9766,
9784, 9801, 9825, 9842, 9859, 9878,
9898, 9913, 9937, 9964, 9966, 10013,
10028, 10046, 10062, 10075, 10090,
10110, 10128, 10146, 10167, 10184,
10201, 10218, 10233, 10258, 10297,
10338, 10364, 10428, 10444, 10460,
10481, 10502, 10518, 10536, 10551,
10567, 10586, 10602, 10618, 10642,
10678, 10706, 10732, 10751, 10766,
10781, 10796
- `\mtctocrmarg` 5673, 5698
- `\mtifont` (command) 35, 36, 82, 300, 303, 306,
593
- `\mtifont` **1**, **3389**, **3435**, **3505**, **3573**, **7926**
- `mu.tex` (old example document) 616, 618
- MÚGICA DE RIVERA, Javier A. . . 259, 494, ⇨[62]
- MUHAMEDAGIĆ, Dejan 259, 542, ⇨[79]
- multibib (package) 59, 230, ⇨[167]
- multicol (package) . . . 90, 117, 231, 599, ⇨[255]
- multicols (environment) 90, 93, 119, 140–142,
231
- `\multicolumnmtc` **323**
- `\multicolumnmtoc` 322
- multitoc (package) 92, ⇨[318]
- mypatches (package) 91
- `\mz` 10230, 10231, 10234, 10235, 10238, 10239

N

- `\n@mti` **3397**, **3435**, **3505**, **3573**, **3714**, **3733**, **3752**
- `\n@pti` . . . **4104**, **4110**, **4168**, **4236**, **4311**, **4397**,
4416, **4435**
- `\n@sti` **4719**, **4758**, **4826**, **4893**, **5017**, **5036**, **5055**
- `\name` (command) 617
- `nameref` (package) ⇨[302]

- natbib (package) . . . 212, 231, 622, \hookrightarrow [124, 125]
- NAUMOV, Sergei O. 259, 539, \hookrightarrow [269]
- naustrian (language option) 38, 526, 599
- naustrian.mld (file) 244, 245, 526
- needspace (package) 57, 231, \hookrightarrow [362]
- \NeedsTeXFormat . . . **2786, 7695**, 8144, 8155
- NETHERTON, Lee 259, \hookrightarrow [351]
- NEUKAM, Frank 87, 259, \hookrightarrow [270]
- \newblock 2296, 2298, 2304, 2305
- \newbox 3130, 3134
- newcommand (tool) \hookrightarrow [285]
- \newcommand (command) 43
- \newcommand 327, 2245, **2459**, 2693, 2704, 3085,
3111, 3120, 3375, 4066, 4703, 5431,
5573, 5614, 5737, 5794, 5812, 5870,
5888, 5970, 6031, 6075, 6119, 6120,
6152, 6153, 6185, 6186, 6222, 6265,
6308, 6378, 6423, 6439, 6468, 7874–
7876, 8070, 8081, 8092, 8117–8119,
8145, 8147, 8149, 8151
- \newcounter . . **3332, 3366, 4048, 4054, 4690**,
4702, 4706
- \newdimen 2692
- \newenvironment . . . 1492, 6121, 6136, 6154,
6169, 6187, 8108–8110
- \newfloat (command) 219
- \newif (command) 269
- \newif 418, 627, 2835–2881,
2883, 2885, 2887, 2889, 2891, 2893–
2914, 2936, 2939, 2940, 2942, 2988,
3043–3045, 3143, 3181, 5430, 5572,
5613, 5736, 5792, 5793, 5868, 5869,
5969, 6030, 6074, 6118, 6133, 6166,
6221, 6264, 6307, 6328, 6396, 6414,
6422, 6704–6707, 8047–8051, 8053
- \newlength 2793, 4075, 4708
- \newread (command) 285, 593
- \newread **3127**, 3174
- \newskip 2794
- \newtheorem (command) 219
- \newtoks **3127**
- \newwrite (command) 248, 286
- \newwrite **2792**, 3328
- newzealand (language option) 38, 526
- newzealand.mld (file) 244, 245, 526
- ngerman (language option) 38, 527, 599
- ngerman.mld (file) 244, 245, 527
- ngermanb (language option) . . 38, 526, 527, 599
- ngermanb.dtx (file) 527, 528
- ngermanb.mld (file) 244, 245, 526, 527
- ngermanb2 (language option) 38, 528
- ngermanb2.mld (file) 244, 245, 528, 605
- NGUYEN, Cuong 259
- NICOLAS, Julien 259
- NIEPRASCHK, Rolf 57, 259, \hookrightarrow [150, 306]
- nocheckfiles (option) . . 32, 53, 177–179, 214,
234, 251, 403, 597
- \nocite 525, 819
- nohints (option) 52, 79, 221, 234, 409
- \noindent (command) 593
- \noindent 3451, 3521, 3589, 4179, 4251, 4326,
4774, 4841, 4908
- NOIREL, Josselin 259, \hookrightarrow [25]
- nolistfiles (option) . . . 51, 79, 234, 405, 606
- nomencl (package) 51, 139, 140, 230, 400,
 \hookrightarrow [351]
- \nomenclature **2322, 2337**
- \nomlfpagenumbers (command) 45, 84
- \nomlfpagenumbers . 1203, **3231, 3244, 3250**,
7984
- \nomlfrule (command) 45, 84, 601
- \nomlfrule **5346, 7966**
- \nomltpagenumbers (command) 45, 84
- \nomltpagenumbers . 1204, **3237, 3244, 3250**,
3256, 7984
- \nomltrule (command) 45, 84, 601
- \nomltrule **5355, 7966**
- \nomtcpagenumbers (command) . 45, 84, 594,
599
- \nomtcpagenumbers . 1202, **1448, 3195, 3244**,
7984
- \nomtcrule (command) 45, 84, 594, 597
- \nomtcrule 1201, **1448, 5337, 7966**
- \noopsort 526, 820
- \nopagebreak (command) 593
- \noplfpagenumbers (command) 45, 84
- \noplfpagenumbers **3231, 3255, 7984**
- \noplfrule (command) 45, 84, 601
- \noplfrule **5346, 7966**
- \nopltpagenumbers (command) 45, 84
- \nopltpagenumbers **3237, 3261, 7984**
- \nopltrule (command) 45, 84, 601
- \nopltrule **5355, 7966**
- \noptcpagenumbers (command) 45, 84
- \noptcpagenumbers **3217, 3249, 7984**
- \noptcrule (command) 45, 84
- \noptcrule **1198, 5337, 7966**
- \normalcolor 3665
- \normalfont 211, 216, 1467, 1477, 3665
- \normalsize (command) 36, 233
- \normalsize . . 1772, 1775, 1778, 1820, 1823,
1826, 2210, 2211, 2215, 2216, 2219,
2220, 4091–4093
- norsk (language option) 38, 528
- norsk.dtx (file) 528, 529
- norsk.mld (file) 244, 245, 528
- norsk2 (language option) 38, 529

norsk2.mld (file) 244, 245, 529, 605
 \noslfpagenumbers (command) 45, 84
 \noslfpagenumbers **3231**, 3253, **7984**
 \noslfrule (command) 45, 84, 601
 \noslfrule **5346**, **7966**
 \nosltpagenumbers (command) 45, 84
 \nosltpagenumbers **3237**, 3259, **7984**
 \nosltrule (command) 45, 84, 601
 \nosltrule **5355**, **7966**
 \nostcpagenumbers (command) 45, 84
 \nostcpagenumbers **3207**, 3247, **7984**
 \nostcrule (command) 45, 84
 \nostcrule **5337**, **7966**
 notoccite (package) 51, 87, 234, 251, 274, 301,
 304, 307, 404, 437, 599, \hookrightarrow [10]
 notoccite (option) 51, 79, 234, 274, 404, 437,
 599
 nottoc (option of tocbibind) 148
 NULL, Tim 259, \hookrightarrow [271, 272, 357]
 \numberline 1228, **4965**
 \numwidth (command) 44
 \nun 8935, 8939, 8943, 9384, 9391, 9398
 nynorsk (language option) 38, 529, 530
 nynorsk.mld (file) 244, 245, 529
 nynorsk2 (language option) 38, 530
 nynorsk2.mld (file) 244, 245, 530, 605

O

OBERDIEK, Heiko 61, 87, 226, 250, 259, 313, 317,
 323, 597, \hookrightarrow [273–278, 304, 305]
 \oe 2107, 2137
 OETIKER, Tobias 259, \hookrightarrow [279, 280]
 OLD (file) 616
 Old Examples
 2c.tex 616, 618
 add.bib 617, 618
 add.tex 616, 618
 addsec.tex 608, 609, 616, 618
 amem.tex 616
 app-mem.tex 618
 apx.tex 618
 bo.tex 618
 ch0.tex 616, 618
 cri.tex 616, 618
 fo1.tex 616, 618
 fo2.tex 616, 618
 gaps.tex 615, 618
 hia.tex 616, 618
 hide.tex 614
 hide1.tex 614, 618
 hide2.tex 614, 618
 hir.tex 616, 618

hop.tex 616, 618
 livre.tex 616, 618
 mem.tex 616, 618
 mem1.tex 616, 618
 mini-art.tex 618
 minitoc-ex.tex 618
 mtc-adds.tex 620
 mtc-amem.tex 620
 mtc-book.tex 620
 mtc-gaps.tex 620
 mtc-mem1.tex 620
 mtc-subf.tex 620
 mtc-tsfc.tex 620
 mu.tex 616, 618
 scr.tex 616, 618
 second.tex 615, 619
 subf.tex 616, 619
 tbi.tex 616, 619
 tlc.tex 616, 619
 tsfc.tex 616, 619
 OLKO, Mariusz 259, 531, \hookrightarrow [281]
 omal (package) 43, 465, 522, \hookrightarrow [5]
 omega-greek.ldf (file) 497–499
 omega-polish.ldf (file) 531
 omega-russian.ldf (file) 536
 omega-spanish.ldf (file) 545
 omega.sty (file) 210
 oneside (option of *many classes*) 602
 open (feature) 47, 48, 80, 85, 140–142, 192, 219,
 230, 235, 256, 291, 293, 301, 304, 307,
 330, 333, 336, 352, 355, 358, 623
 \openin **3861**, **3927**, **3988**
 \openminilof (command) 47, 85
 \openminilof **3298**, **3540**, **8017**
 \openminilot (command) 47, 85
 \openminilot **3298**, **3608**, **8017**
 \openminitoc (command) 47, 85
 \openminitoc **3298**, **3468**, **8017**
 \openout 3066, 3070, **3141**, 3329, **3785**, **3797**,
 3830, **3877**, **3905**, **3942**, **3966**, **4003**,
 4475, 4489, 4563, 4587, 4623, 4647,
 4683, 5096, **5114**, 5167, 5192, 5227,
 5252, 5287, 7606
 \openpartlof (command) 47, 85
 \openpartlof **3298**, **4271**, **8002**
 \openpartlot (command) 47, 85
 \openpartlot **3298**, **4346**, **8002**
 \openparttoc (command) 47, 85
 \openparttoc **3298**, **4194**, **8002**
 \opensectlof (command) 47, 85
 \opensectlof **3298**, **4861**, **8032**
 \opensectlot (command) 47, 85
 \opensectlot **3298**, **4928**, **8032**
 \opensecttoc (command) 47, 85

`\opensecttoc` 3298, 4791, 8032
 Options
 above (placeins) 29–31, 186
 addtotoc (abstract) ... 52, 69, 163, 209
 below (placeins) 29–31, 187
 bibtotoc (KOMA-Script) 49, 145
 bibtotocnumbered (KOMA-Script) ... 49
 checkfiles (default) ... 29, 32, 60, 157,
 177–179, 214, 234, 251, 403, 597
 dotted (default) ... 46, 79, 250, 403, 596
 flsection 251, 598
 flsectionb 251, 598
 hint 56
 hints (default) ... 51–53, 56, 69, 71, 72,
 74, 75, 78, 79, 159, 165, 173, 221, 234,
 252, 253, 269, 272, 409, 410, 419, 435,
 438, 599, 603, 611
 idxtotoc (KOMA-Script) 49
 insection . 29, 52, 79, 100, 108, 175, 180,
 186, 187, 200, 222, 236, 251, 252, 254,
 404, 419, 436, 598, 600, 613, 614
 intoc (nomencl) 139, 140
 k-loose (default) . 41, 79, 223, 253, 274,
 350, 403, 605
 k-tight . 41, 61, 79, 145, 223, 253, 274,
 298, 327, 350, 403, 605
 listfiles (default) . 51, 60, 79, 157, 208,
 224, 234, 253, 255, 405, 437, 605, 618
 liststotoc (KOMA-Script) 49, 145
 liststotocnumbered (KOMA-Script) . 49
 loose (default) 40, 79, 223, 224, 240, 250,
 274, 350, 403, 596, 598
 nocheckfiles 32, 53, 177–179, 214, 234,
 251, 403, 597
 nohints 52, 79, 221, 234, 409
 nolistfiles 51, 79, 234, 405, 606
 notoccite 51, 79, 234, 274, 404, 437, 599
 nottoc (tocbibind) 148
 oneside (*many classes*) 602
 parindent (KOMA-Script) 40
 parskip (KOMA-Script) 40
 section (placeins) . 29, 31, 52, 175, 436
 shorttext . 52, 58, 79, 171, 211, 238, 250,
 404, 596
 sort&compress (natbib) 622
 tight . 40, 61, 79, 145, 223, 224, 240, 250,
 274, 298, 327, 350, 403, 596, 598
 undotted 46, 61, 79, 250, 403, 596
 verbose (placeins) 29, 436
`\or` (command) 243, 441
 ORTOLO, Tanguy 259, [↪\[282\]](#)
`\osection` 2356
 ÖSTHOLS, Erik 259, 546, [↪\[68\]](#)
 OTT, Jörg 259

`\outer` (command) 285
 overcite (package) 212, [↪\[13\]](#)

P

`\pack` 10562
`\PackageError` (command) 230, 252
`\PackageError` 8142
`\PackageInfo` (command) . 230, 252, 600, 604
`\PackageInfo` 8142
 Packages
 abstract 52, 69, 87, 163, 209, 252, 415, 602,
 [↪\[364\]](#)
 afterpage 210, 609, [↪\[102\]](#)
 Aleph 223, 234, [↪\[42, 161\]](#)
 alnumsec . 53, 75, 87, 188, 210, 254, 277,
 429, 614, [↪\[212\]](#)
 alphanum . 52, 74, 87, 173, 210, 410, 612,
 [↪\[94\]](#)
 Antomega . 210, 465, 497–499, 517, 531,
 535, 536, 544, 545, [↪\[210\]](#)
 appendix 52, 63, 64, 87, 164, 210, 251, 410,
 599, 614, [↪\[365\]](#)
 Arabi . 38, 43, 210, 469, 490, 617, [↪\[191\]](#)
 ArabTeX 38, 43, 211, 465, 468, 505,
 [↪\[214, 215\]](#)
 ArmTeX . 43, 211, 465, 469, 596, [↪\[121\]](#)
 babel 38, 43, 74, 124, 211,
 218, 249, 465–467, 471, 472, 475–477,
 480, 482–487, 490–497, 506, 508–510,
 514–516, 518–521, 525–530, 532–534,
 537, 541–546, 548, 550, 552, 594, 595,
 603, 613, [↪\[45, 47, 65\]](#)
 backref [↪\[108\]](#)
 BangTeX . 43, 211, 465, 472, 609, [↪\[286\]](#)
 bibtopic 59, 212, [↪\[20\]](#)
 bibunits 59, 212, 230, [↪\[166\]](#)
 booktabs 21, 212, [↪\[139\]](#)
 calc 21, 212, [↪\[337\]](#)
 captcont 53, 75, 87, 188, 212, 254, 277, 429,
 614, [↪\[115\]](#)
 caption 53, 71, 87, 175, 212, 213, 253, 277,
 430, 606, [↪\[325\]](#)
 caption2 53, 71, 87, 175, 212, 213, 253, 278,
 430, 606, [↪\[323, 324\]](#)
 ccaption 53, 71, 87, 176, 213, 253, 278, 430,
 606, [↪\[368\]](#)
 CervanTeX 43, 546, [↪\[41\]](#)
 chapterbib 59, 214, 230, [↪\[15\]](#)
 cite 621, [↪\[12\]](#)
 CJK 38, 43, 214, 240,
 241, 465, 481, 501–504, 511–513, 547,
 [↪\[17, 18, 113, 137, 233, 234, 292\]](#)

- cmcyralt 538, 539, \hookrightarrow [44, 177]
- color 117, \hookrightarrow [107]
- comment \hookrightarrow [134]
- dblaccnt 216, 611, \hookrightarrow [258]
- Devanāgarī . . 43, 217, 221, 465, 483, 507,
 \hookrightarrow [288]
- doc 21, \hookrightarrow [257]
- docmfp \hookrightarrow [369]
- docstrip 21, \hookrightarrow [225, 259]
- ε -T_EX . . . 215, 218, 234, 269, \hookrightarrow [96, 251]
- ethiop 43, 218, 465, 487, 488, \hookrightarrow [37]
- fancybox \hookrightarrow [347]
- FarsiT_EX 43, 219, 465, 489, \hookrightarrow [136]
- flafter . . . 30, 236, 436, 613, 614, \hookrightarrow [226, 260]
- float . . . 30, 53, 87, 166, 219, 237, 256, 271,
278, 431, 623, \hookrightarrow [238]
- floatrow . . 30, 53, 87, 166, 219, 256, 271, 278,
431, 623, \hookrightarrow [223]
- flowfram . . . 52, 78, 87, 173, 256, 415, 623,
 \hookrightarrow [333, 334]
- flowframe 220
- fnycchap . . . 52, 74, 87, 187, 220, 254, 276,
427, 614, \hookrightarrow [237]
- franc 91, 220, 245, 246
- frbib 220, 245, 246
- frnew 91, 220, 245, 246
- fullpage 140, 141, 150, \hookrightarrow [123]
- geometry 117, 221, \hookrightarrow [343]
- guarani 43, 221, 465, 500, \hookrightarrow [39]
- hangcaption . . 52, 78, 87, 188, 221, 255, 276,
428, 592, 620, \hookrightarrow [196]
- here 219
- H_AT_EX 221, 465, 503, 504, \hookrightarrow [206]
- hypcap 623, \hookrightarrow [275]
- hypernat 622, \hookrightarrow [34]
- hyperref . . . 52, 61, 62, 71, 87, 118, 145, 156,
173, 174, 177, 221, 226, 241, 242, 247,
250, 253, 275, 313, 416, 597, 606, 610,
621, 622, \hookrightarrow [273, 276–278, 304, 305]
- HyperT_EX 221, 222, 241, \hookrightarrow [295]
- ifmtarg 222, 280, \hookrightarrow [374]
- ifpdf \hookrightarrow [274]
- ifthen 222
- KannadaT_EX 223, 514, \hookrightarrow [376]
- LH 539, \hookrightarrow [269]
- lhcyr 539, 540, \hookrightarrow [378]
- lipsum 89, 93, 224, 615, \hookrightarrow [168]
- Lu_AT_EX 234, \hookrightarrow [184]
- malayalam 43, 465, 522, 523, \hookrightarrow [4]
- marvosym 227, \hookrightarrow [182]
- mcaption . . . 53, 71, 87, 176, 225, 253, 278,
431, 606, \hookrightarrow [183]
- minitoc 24, 263, \hookrightarrow [131, 132]
- minitoc-hyper 61, 226, \hookrightarrow [349]
- minitocoff 249, 250, 596
- minutes 227, 297, 402, \hookrightarrow [236]
- MonT_EX . . . 43, 227, 465, 473–475, 478, 479,
524, 538, 553, 554, 615, \hookrightarrow [117, 120]
- morefloats 602, \hookrightarrow [187]
- mtcmess 155, 230, 254, 443, 458, 612
- mtcoff 33, 54, 57, 95, 153, 154, 203–206,
230, 249, 250, 442, 443, 456–458, 592,
596, 604, 623
- mtcpatchmem . . 153, 154, 206, 230, 243, 459
- multibib 59, 230, \hookrightarrow [167]
- multicol 90, 117, 231, 599, \hookrightarrow [255]
- multitoc 92, \hookrightarrow [318]
- mypatches 91
- nameref \hookrightarrow [302]
- natbib 212, 231, 622, \hookrightarrow [124, 125]
- needspace 57, 231, \hookrightarrow [362]
- nomenc 51, 139, 140, 230, 400, \hookrightarrow [351]
- notoccite . . . 51, 87, 234, 251, 274, 301, 304,
307, 404, 437, 599, \hookrightarrow [10]
- omal 43, 465, 522, \hookrightarrow [5]
- overcite 212, \hookrightarrow [13]
- pict2e 57, \hookrightarrow [150]
- placeins . . . 29, 30, 52, 87, 175, 186, 187, 219,
222, 236, 251, 270, 412, 419, 436, 604,
614, \hookrightarrow [11]
- P_AT_EX 43, 236, 531, \hookrightarrow [281, 358]
- P_AT_EX 2_ε 236, \hookrightarrow [189, 197]
- quotchap . . . 53, 74, 87, 187, 237, 254, 276,
428, 614, \hookrightarrow [338]
- RomanianT_EX 533, 534, \hookrightarrow [307]
- romannum . . . 53, 75, 87, 187, 237, 254, 276,
428, 614, \hookrightarrow [372]
- rotating 237, \hookrightarrow [303]
- rotfloat . . . 53, 87, 166, 219, 237, 256, 271, 279,
432, 623, \hookrightarrow [322]
- sectsty 52, 69, 87, 132, 176, 238, 252, 270,
275, 427, 603, 613, \hookrightarrow [249]
- sfheaders . . . 53, 75, 87, 188, 238, 254, 277,
429, 614, \hookrightarrow [239]
- shorttoc 20, 238, 592, \hookrightarrow [130]
- shortverb \hookrightarrow [257]
- S_AT_EX 43, 239, 547, \hookrightarrow [248]
- splitbib 59, 239, \hookrightarrow [246]
- stdclsdv 237, 239, \hookrightarrow [361]
- subfig 33, 87, 150, 212, 230, 239, 392,
 \hookrightarrow [116]
- subfigure . . . 33, 87, 143, 230, 239, \hookrightarrow [114]
- textcase \hookrightarrow [106]
- thailatex 240, 547, 615, \hookrightarrow [250]
- titlesec 52, 87, 240, \hookrightarrow [40]
- titletoc 52, 87, 177, 240, 412, \hookrightarrow [40]

- tocibind . . . 49, 52, 64, 87, 95, 97, 98, 100,
 104, 145, 147–149, 165, 228, 230, 240,
 251, 411, 597, \hookrightarrow [366]
 toch 592
 tocloft . 52, 63–65, 70, 77, 78, 87, 117, 118,
 132, 165, 229, 230, 240, 412, \hookrightarrow [363]
 tocvsec2 \hookrightarrow [367]
 trivfloat 53, 87, 166, 241, 256, 271, 279, 432,
 623, \hookrightarrow [375]
 txfonts 35, 241, \hookrightarrow [312]
 url \hookrightarrow [16]
 varioref 143, \hookrightarrow [256]
 varsects 52, 72, 87, 176, 242, 253, 270, 275,
 427, 608, \hookrightarrow [336]
 vietnam 43, 551, \hookrightarrow [235]
 vruler 76, \hookrightarrow [195]
 wrapfig 137, 229, 242, \hookrightarrow [14]
 xr . . . 27, 242, 313, 591, 592, 608, \hookrightarrow [101]
 xr-hyper 242, \hookrightarrow [104]
 \PackageWarning (command) . . 230, 252, 600,
 604
 \PackageWarning **8142**
 \PackageWarningNoLine (command) . . . 230
 \PackageWarningNoLine **8142**
 \pagebreak 3484, 3556, 3624, 4213, 4287, 4362,
 4808, 4875, 4943
 \pagenumbering **2515, 2523**
 \pageref 2771
 \pagestyle (command) 48
 pagestyle (feature) . . 47, 48, 80, 85, 219, 235,
 291, 293, 390
 \pagestyle **1, 1543**
 pageUn (environment) 119
 Palić, Alan 259, 482, \hookrightarrow [80]
 PAKIN, Scott 259, \hookrightarrow [283–285]
 PAL, Palash Baran 259, 472, \hookrightarrow [286]
 PANDEY, Anshuman . 259, 483, 507, \hookrightarrow [287, 288]
 \par (command) 608
 \paragraph (command) 216, 238
 \paragraph 1039, 1061, 1081, 1109, 1313, 1335,
 1354, 1387, **3812, 4492, 5098**
 \paragraph* **1323**
 \paragraph@mtcck 5485
 \parbox 1511, 2709
 parindent (option of KOMA-Script) 40
 PARK, Minje Byeng-sen 259, \hookrightarrow [289]
 \parsep (command) 40, 298, 327
 \parsep **1, 3408, 4137, 4734**
 \parskip (command) 40, 268, 298, 327
 \parskip (option of KOMA-Script) 40
 \parskip **1, 2793, 4137, 4177, 4245, 4320, 4768,**
4835, 4902
 \part (command) 26, 32, 50, 52, 59, 62, 81, 160,
 167, 170, 172, 174, 189, 202, 211, 212,
 216, 237, 238, 282, 286, 308, 310, 324,
 328, 331, 334, 337, 340, 344, 346, 416,
 439
 part (counter) 271, 272
 \part **1, 189, 192, 197, 298, 302,**
 308, 648, 734, **954, 1067, 1095, 1215,**
1323, 1393, 1696, 1712, 1725, 1757,
1804, 1954, 3075, 3343, 3637, 4462,
4574, 4634, 6209, 6225, 6252, 6268,
 6295, 6311, **6899, 7651**
 \part* (command) 71, 86, 92, 282, 295, 337, 597
 \part* **1678, 1954**
 \part@mtcck . . . 5479, 5507, 5516, 5523, 5530,
 5540, 5548
 \partbegin (command) 62, 337
 \partbegin . . **1, 1424, 4369, 4564, 4624, 4684,**
7880
 \partend **4369, 4554, 4614, 4674, 7880**
 PARTL, Hubert 259, \hookrightarrow [279, 280]
 \partlof (command) 32, 36, 39, 40, 81, 86, 181,
 183, 222, 326, 328, 331, 594
 \partlof . . **1, 648, 735, 954, 1069, 1095, 1215,**
1323, 4104, 4149, 4215, 7013, 7101,
 7188, **7679, 7884**
 \partlof@ (command) 331
 \partlof@ **3678, 4215, 4216**
 \partlof@mtcck 5473, 5498
 partlofdepth (depth counter) 33, 217, 235, 324,
 333
 \partlot (command) 32, 36, 39, 40, 81, 86, 181,
 183, 222, 326, 328, 334, 594
 \partlot . . **1, 648, 735, 954, 1070, 1095, 1215,**
4104, 4149, 4289, 7022, 7110, 7199,
7679, 7884
 \partlot@ (command) 334
 \partlot@ **3678, 4289, 4290**
 \partlot@mtcck 5476, 5502
 partlotdepth (depth counter) 33, 217, 236, 324,
 336
 \partoc (command) 328
 \partopsep (command) 327
 \partopsep 3410, **4137, 4733**
 \parttoc (command) 21, 32, 36, 37, 39, 40, 52,
 62, 81, 86, 92, 182, 184, 222, 326, 328,
 418, 419, 421, 423, 594, 598
 \parttoc **1, 31, 190, 195, 200, 296,**
 309, **648, 735, 954, 1068, 1095, 1215,**
1323, 1393, 1678, 1770, 1771, 1774,
1777, 1818, 1820, 1823, 1826, 4104,
4149, 7004, 7092, 7177, 7679, 7884
 \parttoc@ (command) 328
 \parttoc@ **3678, 4149, 4150**
 \parttoc@mtcck 5470, 5492

- parttocdepth (depth counter) . 21, 32, 81, 217, 236, 324, 330
- PATASHNIK, Oren 212, 259, \hookrightarrow [290, 291]
- \pchapter **4364, 4492, 7903**
- PECHTA, Jonathan 259, \hookrightarrow [292–294]
- PEETERS, Kasper 259, \hookrightarrow [295]
- PELGER, Matthias 259
- People
- ABOLHASSANI, Hassan 258, 489
- ABRAHAMS, Paul W. 258, \hookrightarrow [1, 2]
- ABU EL-ATA, Nabil 258
- ADDABBO, Tommaso 258
- AGUIRREGABIRIA, Juan M. . 258, 472, \hookrightarrow [53]
- ARCARDI, Stéphane 258, \hookrightarrow [3]
- AKOPIAN, Vartan . . . 211, 258, 469, \hookrightarrow [121]
- ALEX, A. J. 258, 522, 523, \hookrightarrow [4, 5]
- ALFORD, Mark 258, \hookrightarrow [6]
- ANDRÉ, Jacques 258, \hookrightarrow [262]
- ANDRIEUX, Jérôme 258
- ANGELI, Ralf 258
- APPEL, Walter 258, \hookrightarrow [8]
- ARADIAN, Achod André 258
- ÁRNASON, Einar 258, 508, \hookrightarrow [54]
- ARNOLD, Tim 258, 314
- ARPONEN, Jouko 258, \hookrightarrow [9]
- ARSENEAU, Donald . 29, 30, 51, 87, 234, 251, 258, 274, 280, 285, 301, 304, 307, 593, 596, 599, 611, 620, \hookrightarrow [10–16, 374]
- ASLASKEN, Helmer 258, \hookrightarrow [17, 18]
- ASPINALL, David 258
- ÅSSEN, Ivar 258, 529
- BACHMANN, Philipp 258
- BADENES, Gonçal 258, 480, \hookrightarrow [55]
- BALGARENSKY, Marin 258
- BARROCA, Leonor 87, 258, \hookrightarrow [303]
- BASSO, Pierre 258, \hookrightarrow [20]
- BATMUNKH, Dorjgotov . . 258, 525, \hookrightarrow [21]
- BAUDAIS, Jean-Yves 258
- BAUSUM, David 258, \hookrightarrow [22, 23]
- BAYART, Benjamin . 48, 252, 258, 372, 600, 601, \hookrightarrow [24, 25]
- BAYET, Thierry 258, \hookrightarrow [25]
- BECCARI, Claudio . . . 258, 510, 514–516, \hookrightarrow [26, 27, 56, 64]
- BEFFARA, Emmanuel 60, 258, \hookrightarrow [28]
- BELET, Benoît 258, \hookrightarrow [262]
- BELMOUHOUB, Rachid 258, \hookrightarrow [29]
- BÉRCES, József 258, 520, 521, \hookrightarrow [57]
- BERDNIKOV, Alexander . . 258, \hookrightarrow [30–33]
- BERGER, Jens 258, \hookrightarrow [34]
- BERRY, Karl 258, \hookrightarrow [1, 2, 35, 36]
- BEYENE, Berhanu . . . 258, 487, 488, \hookrightarrow [37]
- BEZOS, Javier . . 87, 258, 494, 500, 544, 546, \hookrightarrow [38–41]
- BILOTTA, Giuseppe 234, 258, \hookrightarrow [42]
- BÍRÓ, Árpád 258, 520, 521, \hookrightarrow [57]
- BITOUZÉ, Denis 258, \hookrightarrow [43]
- BLOCH, Laurent 258
- BOSNAKOV, Georgi N. . . 258, 477, \hookrightarrow [58]
- BOUGETTE, Patrice 258
- BOURBONNAIS, Daniel 258
- BOYKO, Victor 258, 538, \hookrightarrow [44]
- BRAAMS, Johannes L. 43, 211, 249, 258, 466, 484, 485, 496, 509, 528, 529, 552, 594, \hookrightarrow [45–93, 135, 218–221, 259–262]
- BRAUN, Felix . . . 87, 210, 222, 258, \hookrightarrow [94]
- BREEN, Jim 258, \hookrightarrow [95]
- BREITENLOHNER, Peter 258, \hookrightarrow [96]
- BUJDOSÓ, Gyöngyi 258, \hookrightarrow [97, 98]
- BURBANK, Mimi 258, \hookrightarrow [296]
- BURC, Mustafa 258, 548, \hookrightarrow [59]
- BURYKIN, Alexey 258, \hookrightarrow [31–33]
- CARCAGNO, Samuele 258, \hookrightarrow [99]
- CARDI, Olivier 258
- CARELLA, David 258, \hookrightarrow [100]
- CARLISLE, David P. . 27, 219, 242, 258, 313, 592, \hookrightarrow [60, 101–108, 260–262, 264]
- CARMODY, Kevin . . 258, 483, 507, \hookrightarrow [288]
- CARRIBA, Manuel . . . 258, 494, \hookrightarrow [61, 62]
- CASPAR, Régis 258
- CHANG, Winston 258, \hookrightarrow [109]
- CHARPENTIER, Jean-Côme 258, \hookrightarrow [43, 205, 262, 341]
- CHAUVET, Jean-Pascal 258, \hookrightarrow [110]
- CHEN, Pehong 258, \hookrightarrow [111]
- CHEONG, Otfried 258, \hookrightarrow [112]
- CHEVALIER, Céline 258, \hookrightarrow [8]
- CHLEBÍKOVÁ, Jana 258, 543, \hookrightarrow [63]
- CHOU, Pai H. 258, \hookrightarrow [113]
- CLEGG, Marian 258
- COCHRAN, Steven Douglas . 33, 53, 75, 87, 258, \hookrightarrow [114–116]
- CODOGNO, Maurizio 258, 510, \hookrightarrow [64]
- COOK, David B. 258
- CORFF, Oliver 258, 524, 553, 554, \hookrightarrow [117–120]
- CORNET, Emmanuel 258, \hookrightarrow [8]
- COUNTCHAM, Prakash 258, \hookrightarrow [25]
- DACHIAN, Serguei . . 211, 258, 469, \hookrightarrow [121]
- DAERR, Adrian 258
- DALALYAN, Arnak . . 211, 258, 469, \hookrightarrow [121]
- DALY, Patrick W. . . 258, \hookrightarrow [122–125, 208]
- DANIELSSON, Holger . . . 258, \hookrightarrow [292–294]
- DE LIMA, Arnaldo Viegas . 258, 475, \hookrightarrow [83]
- DEMOUSTIER, Sébastien 258
- DEPARDIEU, Éric 258, \hookrightarrow [25]
- DE RYDT, Ben 258

- DESGRAUPES, Bernard . . . 258, ⇨[126–128]
 DESPRAIRIES, Cécile 258,
 ⇨[29, 153, 319, 359]
 DESREUX, Sébastien 258, ⇨[8]
 DILLER, Antoni R. 258, ⇨[129]
 DORJ, Dorjpalam 258, 524, 553, 554,
 ⇨[120]
 DRIKIS, Ivars 258, 517
 DRUCBERT, Jean-Pierre F. 25,
 ⇨[25, 130–132]
 DUCHIER, Denys 258, ⇨[259]
 DUDDING, Lyndon 63, 258
 DUNG, Ta Quang 258
 ÈHAJA, Marko 258, 542
 EIJKHOUT, Victor . 258, ⇨[65, 133–135, 218]
 ELS, Danie 258, ⇨[139]
 ESFAHBOD, Behdad 258, 489, ⇨[136]
 ESSER, Thomas 258
 ETIENNE, Gilhooly 258, ⇨[153]
 EVERITT, Karl F. 258, 597
 FABIAN, Mike 258, ⇨[137]
 FAIRBAIRNS, Robin 258, ⇨[138]
 FAULHAMMER, Christian 258, ⇨[299]
 FEAR, Simon 258, ⇨[139]
 FENN, Jürgen 258, ⇨[140, 339, 340]
 FERGUSON, Michael J. 258, ⇨[141]
 FESSLER, Jeff 258
 FISCHER, Ulrike 258
 FLECK, Jean-Julien 258, ⇨[8]
 FLIPO, Daniel . . . 258, 492, 493, ⇨[66, 279]
 FLOM, Peter L. 258, ⇨[142–144]
 FLYNN, Peter 258, ⇨[145–148]
 FOX, Jim 258
 FÜRNISS, Danny M. 258
 FURUKAWA, Tetsuo 258, ⇨[190]
 GARCIA, Federico 258, ⇨[149]
 GARCÍA MORATE, Diego 258
 GÄSSLEIN, Hubert 57, 258, ⇨[150]
 GELDERMAN, Maarten 258, ⇨[151]
 GENSCHE, Chuck 258, ⇨[152]
 GHODSI, Mohammad . 258, 465, 489, ⇨[136]
 GILHOOPLY, Helen 258, ⇨[153]
 GLEISZNER, Markus 258, 608, 609
 GONTSHARUK, Vitali 258
 GOOSSENS, Michel 258, 594,
 ⇨[154, 155, 260–262]
 GOUTELLE, Mathieu 258, ⇨[25]
 GRANT, Fraser . . . 258, 509, 541, ⇨[50, 67]
 GRÄTZER, George 258, ⇨[156, 157]
 GRAY, Norman 241, 258, ⇨[158]
 GREENWADE, George D. 258, ⇨[159]
 GREGORIO, Enrico 258, ⇨[160]
 GRENON, Loïc 258
 GREYER, Charles 258, ⇨[319]
 GRINEVA, Olga A. 258, ⇨[30]
 GROT, Sébastien 258
 GUIGNARD, Micael 258
 GUNN, Marion 258, 509, ⇨[50]
 GURARI, Eitan M. 258, ⇨[155]
 HAFNER, Thomas 258, ⇨[306]
 HAGEN, Hans 258,
 ⇨[143, 161, 162, 165, 184]
 HAMZI, Boumediene 259
 HÀN, Thế Thành . . 216, 259, 551, 611, 621,
 ⇨[163–165, 235]
 HANSEN, Thorsten 259, ⇨[166, 167]
 HAPPEL, Patrick 259, ⇨[168]
 HARALAMBOUS, Yannis 234, 259,
 ⇨[169–176, 297, 298]
 HARGREAVES, Kathryn A. 259, ⇨[1, 2]
 HARIN, Alexander 259, 539, ⇨[177]
 HARRIS, Russel L. 259
 HARRISON, Michael A. 259, ⇨[111]
 HARTKE, Stephen 259, ⇨[178]
 HEAP, Danny 259
 HEFFERON, Jim 259, ⇨[180, 181]
 HEIDER, André 259
 HEIN, Thorsten 259
 HELLMAN, Sten 259, 546, ⇨[68]
 HELSTRUP, Håvard . . . 259, 528, 529, ⇨[51]
 HENEL, Yvon 259, ⇨[25, 339]
 HENKEL, Hartmut 259, ⇨[184]
 HENLICH, Thomas 259, ⇨[182]
 HENNIG, Stephan . . . 53, 71, 87, 259, ⇨[183]
 HENRY, Florence 259, ⇨[25]
 HERBORN, Stephen 259
 HESOLL, Jörg 259
 HOADLEY, David 259, ⇨[320]
 HOEKWATER, Taco 259, ⇨[184]
 HOENIG, Alan 259, ⇨[185]
 HOGG, Joe 259, ⇨[143]
 HØGHOLM, Morten 259
 HOLME, Alv Kjetil . . . 259, 528, 529, ⇨[51]
 HÖPPNER, Klaus 259, ⇨[186]
 HORST, Umstatter 259, 533, ⇨[69]
 HOSEK, Don 259, 602, ⇨[187]
 HU, Yufan 259, 591
 HUFFLEN, Jean-Michel . . 259, ⇨[188, 262]
 HUSEBY, Dave W. 259
 HYNÄ, Helene 259, ⇨[279, 280]
 IKEDA, Hiroya 259, ⇨[189]
 IVANOV, Dmitry . 210, 259, 497–499, 517, 531,
 535, 536, ⇨[210]
 IVERSEN, Per Steinar . . 259, 528, 529, ⇨[51]
 IWAKUMA, Tetsuo 259, ⇨[190]
 IZAOLA, Zunbeltz 259, 472, ⇨[53]
 JABRI, Youssef . . . 210, 259, 469, 490, ⇨[191]

- JACKOWSKI, Paweł 259, ⇨[192]
 JAEHNE, Bernd . 61, 226, 250, 259, 313, 317,
 ⇨[349]
 JALAM, Radwan 259
 JANICH, Michael 259, 530, ⇨[87]
 JEFFREY, Alan . 259, ⇨[60, 193, 194, 264]
 JENSEN, Frank 259, ⇨[337]
 JERNSTETTEN, Regnor 259, 541, ⇨[70]
 JIANG, Zhuhan 76, 259, ⇨[195]
 JOLY, Loïc 259, ⇨[25]
 JONES, David M. . . 52, 78, 87, 259, ⇨[196]
 JORSSSEN, Christophe 259, ⇨[25]
 JUHASZ, Robert 259, 533, ⇨[69]
 JUNGE, Stefan 259
 JURAFSKY, Dan 25, 248, 259, 591
 KAKUTO, Akira 259, ⇨[197]
 KANERVA, Mikko . . . 259, 490, 491, ⇨[71]
 KAROONBOONYANAN, Theppitak . . 259, 547,
 ⇨[250]
 KASTRUP, David 259
 KERYELL, Ronan 220, 259
 KIELHORN, Axel 87, 259, ⇨[270]
 KIM, Ki-Joo 259, ⇨[198–200]
 KLEB, Bil 52, 259
 KLEIWEG, Peter 259, 509, ⇨[72]
 KLEVELAND, Rune . . . 259, 528, 529, ⇨[51]
 KLÖCKL, Ingo 259, ⇨[201]
 KNAPPEN, Jörg 259, 471, 480, 486,
 ⇨[73, 74, 85]
 KNUTH, Donald E. . 215, 231, 232, 234, 239,
 259, ⇨[202–205]
 KOAUNGH, Un . 221, 260, 503, 504, ⇨[206]
 KOHM, Markus . 87, 259, ⇨[207, 270, 308]
 KOPKA, Helmut 259, ⇨[208]
 KOPPANYI, Attila . . . 259, 520, 521, ⇨[57]
 KORAI, Adamantios 259, 499
 KRAKOVIACK, Vincent 259
 KRATT, Kai 259
 KRONZUCKER, Thankmar 259
 KROONENBERG, Siep 259, ⇨[209]
 KRYUKOV, Alexej M. . . 210, 259, 497–499,
 517, 531, 535, 536, 545, ⇨[210]
 KUDLEK, Manfred . . . 259, 487, 488, ⇨[37]
 KUHN, Markus G. 259, ⇨[211]
 KULZER, Florian 259
 KUMAZAWA, Toshiki 259, 511, 513
 KUMMER, Olaf 259, 487, 488, ⇨[37]
 KÜSTER, Frank . 53, 75, 87, 259, 542, ⇨[212]
 LABORDE, Stéphane 259
 LACHAND-ROBERT, Thomas . . . 259, ⇨[213]
 LAGALLY, Klaus . . . 38, 211, 259, 468, 505,
 ⇨[214, 215]
 LAMPORT, Leslie . 223, 259, ⇨[60, 216–221]
 LANARI, Fabio 259
 LANGE, Robert 259
 LANGMYHR, Dag 259, 528, 529, 595
 LAPKO, Olga G. . 87, 219, 259, 477, 525, 537,
 550, ⇨[31–33, 75, 222–224]
 LARSEN, Henning 259, 483, ⇨[76]
 LASGOUTTES, Jean-Marc 259
 LASIS, Andris 259, 517
 L^AT_EX3 PROJECT TEAM, . . ⇨[194, 219, 225–
 230, 354]
 LAUFFENBURGER, Jean-Philippe 259
 LAUNAY, Arnaud 259
 LAUVERNET, Claire 259
 LAVVA, Boris 259, 506, ⇨[77]
 LEBACQ, André 259
 LECARME, Olivier 259, ⇨[231]
 LEGRAND, Jeanne 259, ⇨[282]
 LEHMAN, Philipp 259, ⇨[232]
 LEMBERG, Werner 214, 259, 477, 481,
 501–504, 511–513, 525, 537, 547, 551,
 ⇨[75, 233–235, 258, 354]
 LEONHARDT, Thomas 259, 598
 LE PENNEC, Erwan 259, ⇨[25]
 LEPOLOZEC, Stéphane 259
 LE THUAUT, Julien 259
 LEWENBERG, Adam 259
 LICKERT, Knut 227, 259, 402, ⇨[236]
 LINDGREN, Ulf A. . 52, 74, 87, 259, ⇨[237]
 LINGNAU, Anselm . . . 87, 219, 259, ⇨[238]
 LOBEL, Pierre 259
 LOKAJČEK, Miloš V. . . . 259, 482, ⇨[78]
 LOMBARD, Stoffel 259, 466
 LORETI, Maurizio . 53, 75, 87, 259, ⇨[239]
 LORINO, Tristan 259
 LOVE, Tim 259, ⇨[240, 241]
 LOZANO, Vincent 259, ⇨[242]
 LUECKING, Daniel H. 259
 LUNDE, Ken 214, 259, ⇨[243–245]
 LYHNE, Anders 259
 MacKAY, Pierre A. 259, 548, ⇨[59]
 MADSEN, Lars 259
 MAHONEY, Richard 259, 483, 507
 MAKHOVAYA, Irina A. . 259, 477, 537, ⇨[224]
 MARGOLIS, Bob 259, 471, ⇨[74]
 MARKEY, Nicolas . . . 259, ⇨[25, 246, 247]
 MARR, Marcus 259
 MARRE-FOURNIER, Françoise . . 259, ⇨[25]
 MART, Terry 259, 471, ⇨[73, 74]
 MASLOV, Vadim . 259, 538, 539, ⇨[44, 177]
 MASSIAS, Henri 65, 259
 MATTHIAS, Andreas 259
 MATTISSON, Sven 259, 547, ⇨[248]
 McDONNELL, Rowland 52, 69, 87, 259,
 ⇨[249]

- McKAY, Ben 259
 MEKNAVIN, Surapant . . . 259, 547, ⇨[250]
 MENGIN, Sébastien 259, ⇨[25]
 METZINGER, Jochen . . 259, 487, 488, ⇨[37]
 MICHOU, Yanick 259
 MITTELBACH, Frank 223, 224,
 249, 259, 297, 326, 349, 594, 598, 599,
 ⇨[60, 154, 220, 221, 251–264]
 MOON, Young Joon 259, ⇨[265]
 MOORE, ROSS 259, ⇨[155]
 MORAWSKI, Jens-Uwe 87, 259, ⇨[207, 270]
 MORI, Lapo Filippo 259, ⇨[160, 266, 267]
 MORRISON, Michael A. 259, ⇨[268]
 MÚGICA DE RIVERA, Javier A. . . . 259, 494,
 ⇨[62]
 MUHAMEDAGIĆ, Dejan . . . 259, 542, ⇨[79]
 NAUMOV, Sergei O. 259, 539, ⇨[269]
 NETHERTON, Lee 259, ⇨[351]
 NEUKAM, Frank 87, 259, ⇨[270]
 NGUYEN, Cuong 259
 NICOLAS, Julien 259
 NIEPRASCHK, Rolf . . . 57, 259, ⇨[150, 306]
 NOIREL, Josselin 259, ⇨[25]
 NULL, Tim 259, ⇨[271, 272, 357]
 OBERDIEK, Heiko 61, 87, 226, 250, 259, 313,
 317, 323, 597, ⇨[273–278, 304, 305]
 OETIKER, Tobias 259, ⇨[279, 280]
 OLKO, Mariusz 259, 531, ⇨[281]
 ORTOLO, Tanguy 259, ⇨[282]
 ÖSTHOLS, Erik 259, 546, ⇨[68]
 OTT, Jörg 259
 PAIĆ, Alan 259, 482, ⇨[80]
 PAKIN, Scott 259, ⇨[283–285]
 PAL, Palash Baran 259, 472, ⇨[286]
 PANDEY, Anshuman 259, 483, 507,
 ⇨[287, 288]
 PARK, Minje Byeng-sen 259, ⇨[289]
 PARTL, Hubert 259, ⇨[279, 280]
 PATASHNIK, Oren . . . 212, 259, ⇨[290, 291]
 PECHTA, Jonathan 259, ⇨[292–294]
 PEETERS, Kasper 259, ⇨[295]
 PELGER, Matthias 259
 PETTERST, Terje Engeset . . . 259, 528, 529,
 ⇨[51]
 PICAUREAU, Paul 259, ⇨[8]
 PICAL, Éric 259, ⇨[176]
 PIGUET, Bruno 259, ⇨[25]
 PÍŠKA, Karel 259, ⇨[296]
 PLAICE, John 234, 259,
 ⇨[172–176, 297, 298]
 POONLAP, Veerathanabutr 259, 547, ⇨[250]
 POPINEAU, Fabrice 259, ⇨[341]
 POPPELIER, Nico 259, ⇨[65]
 PORRAT, Rama 259, 506
 POSSAMAÏ, Camille-Aimé 259
 POURNADER, Roozbeh . . . 259, 489, ⇨[136]
 PREUSSE, Hilmar 259, ⇨[299]
 RADHAKRISHNAN, C. V. 259, 483, 507,
 ⇨[300, 351]
 RAHTZ, Sebastian 87, 259, ⇨[108, 154, 155,
 165, 276–278, 301–305]
 RAICHLÉ, Bernd . . . 259, 496, 527, 528, 533,
 534, ⇨[81, 82, 306, 307]
 RAMALHETE, Jose Pedro 259, 475, 532,
 ⇨[83]
 REINO, Keranen 259, 490, 491, ⇨[71]
 REZUŞ, Adrian 259, 533, 534, ⇨[307]
 ROBBERS, Yuri 259, ⇨[308]
 ROBERTS, A. J. “Tony” . . . 61, 226, 250, 259,
 317, ⇨[349]
 ROBERTSON, Will 259, ⇨[309]
 ROEGEL, Denis B. 249, 259, 594, 595,
 ⇨[154]
 ROLLAND, Christian . . 259, 476, ⇨[84, 310]
 ROULUND, Rasmus Pank 259, ⇨[308]
 ROWLEY, Chris A. 259,
 ⇨[60, 193, 260–264, 311, 337]
 RUIZ-ALTABA, Marti 259, 486, ⇨[85]
 RYNNING, Jan Michael 259, 546, 594
 RYU, Young 259, ⇨[312]
 SAAR, Enn 259, 487, ⇨[86]
 SAMSOEN, David 259
 SÁNCHEZ, Julio 259, 472, 544, ⇨[53]
 SANGEUX, Morgan 259
 SAUDRAIS, Eddie 259, ⇨[313, 314]
 SCHALÜCK, Elmar 259, 530, ⇨[87]
 SCHANDL, Bernd 259, ⇨[351]
 SCHLEGL, Elisabeth 259, ⇨[279, 280]
 SCHLEMMER, Tobias 259, 543, ⇨[63]
 SCHMIDT, Walter 259, 527, 528,
 ⇨[82, 315, 316]
 SCHMITZ, Thomas A. 259, ⇨[317]
 SCHNEIDER, Uwe 259
 SCHÖPF, Rainer 259, ⇨[60, 221]
 SCHRÖDER, Martin 92, 259, ⇨[318]
 SCHWARTZ, Ulrich 259, ⇨[299]
 SCURFIELD, Elizabeth 259, ⇨[319]
 SHELL, Michael 259, ⇨[320]
 SHIN, Jungshik 259
 SHOUKAT, Ali 259
 SHVAIKA, Andriy M. 259, 550, ⇨[88]
 SILPA-ANAN, Chanop . . . 259, 547, ⇨[250]
 SINGH, Sindhu 259, ⇨[321]
 SITNIKOVA-RIOLAND, Anna . . . 259, ⇨[359]
 SLOBODAN, Jankovic 259, 542, ⇨[79]
 SMITH, John 259, 483, 507, ⇨[288]
 SOCHA, Robin S. 259

- SOFRONIOU, Nick 259, [↔\[327\]](#)
 SOMMERFELDT, Axel . . . 53, 71, 87, 212, 219,
 259, [↔\[322–325\]](#)
 SONG, Lianyi 259, [↔\[319\]](#)
 SOULET, Yves 259, [↔\[262\]](#)
 STEINER, Arjen 259
 STORY, D. P. 259, [↔\[326\]](#)
 STREIT, Éric 259, [↔\[25\]](#)
 STUBNER, Ralf 259
 SUBRAMANIAM, K. K. . . . 259, 514, [↔\[376\]](#)
 SUTOR, Robert S. 259, [↔\[155\]](#)
 SWOYER, Chris 259
 SYROPOULOS, Apostolos 259, 497,
[↔\[27, 89, 327\]](#)
 TABACCO, Raffaella 259, 514, 515
 TALBOT, Nicola L. C. 87, 259,
[↔\[143, 328–335\]](#)
 TAUPIN[†], Daniel . . . 52, 72, 87, 260, [↔\[336\]](#)
 TAYLOR, Philip 260, [↔\[143\]](#)
 THIELE, Christina 260, [↔\[143, 296\]](#)
 THORUP, Kresten Krab 260, [↔\[337\]](#)
 THUREAU, Aurélien 260
 TINNEFELD, Karsten . . . 53, 74, 87, 260, [↔\[338\]](#)
 'T LAM, Ton 260
 TOLUŠIS, Sigitas 260, 518, 519
 TORDELLA, Laurent 260
 TRETIN, Mark 260, [↔\[339, 340\]](#)
 TRUU, Ahto 260
 TSOLOMITIS, Antonis 260, [↔\[327\]](#)
 TWS-TDS, [↔\[341, 342\]](#)
 ULRICH, Stefan 35, 260, 597, [↔\[20\]](#)
 UMEKI, Hideo 260, [↔\[343\]](#)
 UYAR, Turgut 260, 548, [↔\[59\]](#)
 VAARIO, Jari 260
 VAN OOSTRUM, Piet 260, [↔\[345\]](#)
 VAN OUDENHOVE DE SAINT GÉRY, Thomas 260,
[↔\[25, 346\]](#)
 VAN ZANDT, Timothy 260, [↔\[347\]](#)
 VAQUIN, Vincent 260
 VENKATESAN, Suki K. 260, [↔\[348\]](#)
 VERNA, Didier . . . 61, 226, 250, 260, 313, 317,
[↔\[349\]](#)
 VESCO, Sylvain 260
 VEYTSMAN, Boris 260, [↔\[350, 351\]](#)
 VIAL, Alexandre 260
 VIOLANTE, André 260, [↔\[352\]](#)
 VOEGELIN, Carl F. 260, [↔\[353\]](#)
 VOEGELIN, Florence M. 260, [↔\[353\]](#)
 VOGEL, Martin 260, [↔\[182\]](#)
 VOLOVICH, Vladimir . . . 260, 477, 525, 537,
[↔\[75, 354\]](#)
 VON BECHTOLSHEIM, Stephan P. 260, 280, 597,
[↔\[355, 356\]](#)
 VOSS, Herbert 260, [↔\[154\]](#)
 WAGNER, Zdeněk . . . 260, 483, 507, [↔\[288\]](#)
 WALDEN, David 260, [↔\[143\]](#)
 WARD, Nigel 25, 248, 260, 591
 WARNOCK, John 260, [↔\[152\]](#)
 WAUD, Douglas 260, [↔\[357\]](#)
 WAWRYKIEWICZ, Staszek 260, [↔\[358\]](#)
 WEBANCK, Stephan B. 260
 WERNER, Eduard 260, 519, 550, [↔\[90, 91\]](#)
 WEST, Daphne 260, [↔\[359\]](#)
 WETTL, Ferenc 260, [↔\[97, 98\]](#)
 WIJNHOUT, Jeroen 260, [↔\[292–294\]](#)
 WILLIAMS, Graham 260, [↔\[360\]](#)
 WILSON, Peter R. 49, 52, 53, 63, 64,
 69, 71, 75, 87, 209, 210, 225, 260, 280,
[↔\[361–373, 373, 374\]](#)
 WOLIŃSKI, Marcin . . . 260, 531, [↔\[259, 281\]](#)
 WOLKOWSKI, Élisabeth 260
 WOODING, Mark 260, [↔\[259\]](#)
 WRIGHT, Joseph A. . . . 87, 241, 260, [↔\[375\]](#)
 WRIGHT, Tim 260
 WUJASTYK, Dominik . . . 260, 483, 507, [↔\[288\]](#)
 WYART, Damien 260, [↔\[25\]](#)
 YOGANANDA, C. S. 260, 514, [↔\[376\]](#)
 ZAIMI, Adi 260, 467, [↔\[92\]](#)
 ZAMENOF, Lejzer Ludwig 260, 486
 ZAVRTANIK, Danilo 260, 544, [↔\[93\]](#)
 ŻELECHOWSKI, Krzysztof Konrad 260,
 514–516, [↔\[56\]](#)
 ZENDER, Charlie S. 260, [↔\[377\]](#)
 ZENITH, Federico 260, [↔\[292–294\]](#)
 ZHYTNIKOV, Vadim V. 260, 539, 540,
[↔\[177, 378\]](#)
 ZIEGENHAGEN, Uwe 260
 ŽLAJPAH, Leon 260, 544, [↔\[93\]](#)
 PETTERST, Terje Engeset . . . 259, 528, 529, [↔\[51\]](#)
 \pfill 422, 631
 \pfloffset **2817**
 PICAUREAU, Paul 259, [↔\[8\]](#)
 PICAL, Éric 259, [↔\[176\]](#)
 pict2e (package) 57, [↔\[150\]](#)
 PIGUET, Bruno 259, [↔\[25\]](#)
 PÍŠKA, Karel 259, [↔\[296\]](#)
 placeins (package) . . . 29, 30, 52, 87, 175, 186, 187,
 219, 222, 236, 251, 270, 412, 419, 436,
 604, 614, [↔\[11\]](#)
 placeins.sty (file) 30
 placeins.txt (file) 30, 236
 PLAICE, John 234, 259, [↔\[172–176, 297, 298\]](#)
 plain.bst (file) 217, 220
 plainurl.bst (file) 255, 618
 L^AT_EX (package) 43, 236, 531, [↔\[281, 358\]](#)
 L^AT_EX₂_ε (package) 236, [↔\[189, 197\]](#)
 \PLF@ 4612, 4614

- \PLF@contentsline (command) 344
- \PLF@contentsline **4574, 4614**
- \PLF@explist **4572, 4598**
- \PLF@line **4610, 4612**
- \PLF@list **4569, 4572, 4598, 4614**
- \PLF@lof **4572, 4599, 4614**
- \PLF@loop **4569, 4599**
- \PLF@next (command) 344
- \PLF@next **4386, 4569, 4598**
- \plf@pgno 3254, 3255, **4271**
- \PLF@read **4599, 4610, 4614**
- \plf@rule **3381, 4248, 4284, 5346**
- \plf@setform (command) 333, 383
- \plf@setform **4271, 5706**
- \PLF@test (command) 345
- \PLF@test **4612, 4614, 4614**
- \PLF@WriteContentsLine **4574**
- \plfdotsep **5681, 5709, 5729, 5734**
- \plffont (command) 36, 72, 73, 81
- \plffont **1, 1804, 4077, 4090, 4245, 7914**
- \plfname **4574, 4577**
- \plfoffset (command) 81
- \plfoffset 2819, **4266, 7789**
- \plfpagenumbers (command) 45, 84
- \plfpagenumbers ... **3231, 3254, 3263, 7984**
- \plfpnumwidth **5663, 5707, 5727, 5732**
- \plfrule (command) 45, 84, 601
- \plfrule **5346, 7966**
- \plfSfont (command) 36, 72, 73, 81, 606
- \plfSfont **1, 1804, 4077, 4090, 7914**
- \plftitle (command) 36, 37, 81, 465
- \plftitle **1, 4230, 4236, 4248, 6488, 7567, 8217,**
8231, 8252, 8273, 8291, 8309, 8331,
8360, 8377, 8394, 8412, 8428, 8443,
8458, 8473, 8489, 8510, 8532, 8564,
8588, 8604, 8637, 8676, 8695, 8712,
8729, 8745, 8761, 8780, 8810, 8827,
8848, 8864, 8897, 8936, 8953, 8970,
8991, 9010, 9043, 9081, 9104, 9121,
9136, 9154, 9174, 9178, 9213, 9252,
9288, 9385, 9412, 9451, 9473, 9497,
9513, 9530, 9547, 9632, 9633, 9653,
9670, 9687, 9704, 9721, 9738, 9763,
9781, 9798, 9822, 9839, 9856, 9875,
9895, 9910, 9934, 9958, 10010, 10025,
10043, 10059, 10080, 10095, 10107,
10125, 10143, 10164, 10181, 10198,
10230, 10250, 10289, 10331, 10361,
10425, 10441, 10457, 10477, 10499,
10515, 10533, 10548, 10564, 10583,
10599, 10615, 10639, 10685, 10703,
10729, 10748, 10763, 10778, 10793
- \plftocmarg **5672, 5708, 5728, 5733**
- \PLT@ 4672, 4674
- \PLT@contentsline (command) 346
- \PLT@contentsline **4634, 4674**
- \PLT@explist **4632, 4658**
- \PLT@line **4670, 4672**
- \PLT@list **4629, 4632, 4658, 4674**
- \PLT@loop **4629, 4659**
- \PLT@lot **4632, 4659, 4674**
- \PLT@next (command) 347
- \PLT@next **4390, 4629, 4658, 5010**
- \plt@pgno 3260, 3261, **4346**
- \PLT@read **4659, 4670, 4674**
- \plt@rule **3381, 4327, 4360, 5355**
- \plt@setform (command) 336, 383
- \plt@setform **4346, 5721**
- \PLT@test (command) 347
- \PLT@test **4672, 4674, 4674**
- \PLT@WriteContentsLine **4634**
- \pltdotsep **5681, 5724**
- \pltfont (command) 36, 72, 73, 81
- \pltfont **1, 1804, 4077, 4090, 4320, 7914**
- \pltname **4634, 4637**
- \pltoffset (command) 81
- \pltoffset **2817, 4341, 7789**
- \pltpagenumbers (command) 45, 84
- \pltpagenumbers ... **3237, 3260, 3263, 7984**
- \pltpnumwidth **5663, 5722**
- \pltrule (command) 45, 84, 601
- \pltrule **5355, 7966**
- \pltSfont (command) 36, 72, 73, 81, 606
- \pltSfont **1, 1804, 4077, 4090, 7914**
- \plttitle (command) 36, 37, 81, 465
- \plttitle **1, 4305,**
4311, 4327, 6488, 7567, 8217, 8232,
8253, 8274, 8292, 8310, 8332, 8361,
8378, 8395, 8413, 8429, 8444, 8459,
8474, 8490, 8511, 8535, 8566, 8589,
8605, 8638, 8677, 8696, 8713, 8730,
8746, 8762, 8783, 8811, 8828, 8849,
8867, 8899, 8937, 8954, 8971, 8992,
9013, 9046, 9082, 9105, 9122, 9137,
9155, 9217, 9256, 9289, 9387, 9415,
9452, 9474, 9498, 9514, 9531, 9548,
9654, 9671, 9688, 9705, 9722, 9739,
9764, 9782, 9799, 9823, 9840, 9857,
9876, 9896, 9911, 9935, 9960, 10011,
10026, 10044, 10060, 10081, 10096,
10108, 10126, 10144, 10165, 10182,
10199, 10215, 10216, 10231, 10254,
10293, 10334, 10362, 10426, 10442,
10458, 10479, 10500, 10516, 10534,
10549, 10565, 10584, 10600, 10616,

- 10640, 10687, 10704, 10730, 10749,
10764, 10779, 10794
- \plttocrmarg **5672**, 5723
- pmk (script) 236, 244–247
- polish (language option) 38, 530, 531
- polish.dtx (file) 530
- polish.mld (file) 244, 245, 530
- polish2 (language option) 38, 43, 531
- polish2.mld (file) ... 210, 244, 245, 531, 601
- polski (language option) 38, 236, 531
- polski.dtx (file) 531
- polski.mld (file) 244, 245, 531, 612
- POONLAP, Veerathanabutr 259, 547, ⇨[250]
- POPINEAU, Fabrice 259, ⇨[341]
- POPPELIER, Nico 259, ⇨[65]
- PORRAT, Rama 259, 506
- portuges (language option) 38, 532
- portuges.dtx (file) 475, 532
- portuges.mld (file) .. 244, 245, 532, 602, 603
- portugues.mld (file) 602–604
- portuguese (language option) 38, 532
- portuguese.mld (file) 244, 245, 532, 604
- POSSAMAÏ, Camille-Aimé 259
- POURNADER, Roozbeh 259, 489, ⇨[136]
- PREUSSE, Hilmar 259, ⇨[299]
- \printglossary (command) 49
- \printglossary **1**
- \printindex (command) 50
- \printindex **1**, 530, **530**, **824**
- \printnomenclature (command) 50
- \printnomenclature **1**, **2335**
- proc (class) 25, 215, 236, 238, ⇨[219]
- \ProcessOptions 7590
- \ProcessOptions* **7590**
- \protect (command) 57, 61, 595
- \protect **1**, 1228, 1424, 3633, 3634, 4378, 4379,
4980, 4989, 4997, 6126, 6127, 6132,
6143, 6144, 6149, 6159, 6160, 6165,
6176, 6177, 6182, 6192, 6193, 6198,
6376, 8072, 8074, 8083, 8085, 8094,
8096, 8122, 8124, 8129, 8131, 8136,
8138, 8203, 8206, 9763, 9764, 9767,
9768, 9771, 9772
- \providecommand ... 2018, **2208**, **2217**, **6488**,
7567, **7670**
- \ProvidesFile (command) 621
- \ProvidesFile . 3, 54, 117, 178, 206, 227, 281,
316, 412, 623, 878, 924, 1177, 1432,
1629, 1681, 1739, 1759, 1799, 1848,
1897, 1945, 1997, 2170, 2205, 2240,
2314, 2348, 2399, 2451, 2508, 2557,
2600, 2651, 2687, 7691, 8218, 8222,
8226, 8243, 8247, 8264, 8268, 8285,
8303, 8322, 8326, 8343, 8347, 8351,
8355, 8372, 8389, 8406, 8424, 8440,
8455, 8470, 8485, 8501, 8505, 8522,
8526, 8558, 8584, 8600, 8616, 8620,
8624, 8629, 8634, 8649, 8660, 8671,
8688, 8707, 8724, 8741, 8757, 8773,
8796, 8822, 8839, 8843, 8860, 8888,
8893, 8915, 8924, 8932, 8948, 8965,
8982, 8986, 9003, 9026, 9059, 9063,
9067, 9071, 9101, 9116, 9133, 9148,
9166, 9205, 9244, 9283, 9300, 9310,
9321, 9331, 9342, 9350, 9361, 9372,
9380, 9405, 9440, 9444, 9463, 9467,
9485, 9489, 9493, 9509, 9525, 9542,
9559, 9568, 9580, 9592, 9604, 9617,
9626, 9644, 9648, 9665, 9682, 9699,
9716, 9735, 9750, 9754, 9758, 9775,
9793, 9810, 9817, 9834, 9851, 9868,
9872, 9887, 9892, 9907, 9922, 9926,
9930, 9946, 9984, 9994, 9998, 10002,
10006, 10022, 10037, 10055, 10071,
10088, 10103, 10119, 10137, 10155,
10159, 10176, 10193, 10210, 10227,
10242, 10281, 10320, 10357, 10373,
10381, 10390, 10396, 10404, 10412,
10420, 10437, 10453, 10469, 10494,
10511, 10527, 10545, 10560, 10576,
10595, 10611, 10627, 10634, 10651,
10655, 10659, 10663, 10667, 10673,
10697, 10715, 10719, 10726, 10741,
10745, 10760, 10775, 10790
- \ProvidesPackage (command) 155
- \ProvidesPackage .. **2786**, **7695**, 8143, 8156
- \ps@chapterverso 2000, 2009
- \ps@empty 2000, 2009
- \psect **4364**, **7903**
- ptc (counter) . 86, 281, 282, 293, 324, 337, 340,
344, 346
- \PTC@ 4552, 4554
- \PTC@contentsline (command) 340
- \PTC@contentsline **4462**, **4554**
- \PTC@explist **4460**, **4538**
- \PTC@line **4550**, **4552**
- \PTC@list **4457**, **4460**, **4538**, **4554**
- \PTC@loop **4457**, **4539**
- \PTC@next (command) 342
- \PTC@next **4382**, **4457**, **4538**
- \ptc@pgno 3248, 3249, **4194**
- \PTC@read **4539**, **4550**, **4554**
- \ptc@rule (command) 325
- \ptc@rule **4072**, **4180**, **4210**, **4359**, **5337**
- \ptc@setform (command) 330, 382
- \ptc@setform **4194**, **5691**
- \ptc@spart **4369**

`\PTC@test` (command) 343
`\PTC@test` **4552, 4554**
`\PTC@toc` **4460, 4539, 4554**
`\ptc@verse` (command) 327
`ptc@verse` (environment) 327, 330, 333, 336, 382, 383
`\ptc@verse` **4137**
`\ptcCfont` (command) 32, 35, 37, 72, 73, 81, 325
`\ptcCfont` **1, 4090, 7914**
`\ptcdotsep` **5681, 5694**
`\ptcfont` (command) 32, 35–37, 41, 72, 73, 81
`\ptcfont` **1, 1804, 4077, 4090, 4177, 7914**
`\ptcindent` (command) 32, 81, 327
`\ptcindent` **4075, 4137, 4189, 4262, 4337, 7703**
`\ptcname` **4462, 4479**
`\ptcoffset` (command) 32, 81, 327
`\ptcoffset` **2817, 4192, 7789**
`\ptcpagenumbers` (command) 45, 84
`\ptcpagenumbers` **3217, 3248, 3263, 7984**
`\ptcPfont` (command) 35, 37, 72, 73, 81
`\ptcPfont` **1, 1804, 4077, 4090, 7914**
`\ptcpnumwidth` **5663, 5692**
`\ptcrule` (command) 45, 84
`\ptcrule` **5337, 7966**
`\ptcSfont` (command) 32, 35, 37, 72, 73, 81
`\ptcSfont` **1, 4077, 4090, 7914**
`\ptcSPfont` (command) 35, 37, 72, 73, 81
`\ptcSPfont` **1, 1804, 4077, 4090, 7914**
`\ptcSSfont` (command) 35, 37, 72, 73, 81
`\ptcSSfont` **1, 1804, 4077, 4090, 7914**
`\ptcSSSfont` (command) 35, 37, 72, 73, 81
`\ptcSSSfont` **1, 1804, 4077, 4090, 7914**
`\ptctitle` (command) 36, 37, 81, 465, 544
`\ptctitle` **1, 4164, 4168, 4180, 6488, 7567, 8217, 8230, 8251, 8272, 8290, 8308, 8330, 8359, 8376, 8393, 8411, 8427, 8442, 8457, 8472, 8488, 8509, 8530, 8562, 8587, 8603, 8636, 8675, 8694, 8711, 8728, 8744, 8760, 8777, 8809, 8826, 8847, 8863, 8896, 8935, 8952, 8969, 8990, 9007, 9040, 9077, 9079, 9103, 9120, 9135, 9153, 9171, 9210, 9249, 9287, 9383, 9409, 9450, 9472, 9496, 9512, 9529, 9546, 9631, 9652, 9669, 9686, 9703, 9720, 9737, 9762, 9780, 9797, 9821, 9838, 9855, 9874, 9894, 9909, 9933, 9954, 9956, 10009, 10024, 10042, 10058, 10079, 10094, 10106, 10124, 10142, 10163, 10180, 10197, 10214, 10229, 10247, 10286, 10325, 10328, 10360, 10424, 10440, 10456, 10475, 10498, 10514, 10531, 10547, 10563, 10580, 10581, 10598,**

10614, 10638, 10684, 10702, 10728, 10747, 10762, 10777, 10792

`\ptctocrmarg` **5672, 5693**
`\ptifont` (command) 36, 37, 41, 65, 81, 600
`\ptifont` **1, 4077, 4090, 4112, 4119, 4126, 4180, 4248, 4327, 7914**

Q

`\qaf` 8309, 8310, 8313, 8314, 8317, 8318
`\quad` (command) 34
`\quad` 1470, 2736, 2746, 2751, 2761
`quotchap` (package) 53, 74, 87, 187, 237, 254, 276, 428, 614, \hookrightarrow [338]
`quote` (environment) 57, 608
`\qva` 8729, 8733, 8737, 9451, 9455, 9459

R

`\r@mti` **3397, 3435, 3505, 3573, 3714, 3733, 3752**
`\r@pti` **4104, 4119, 4168, 4236, 4311, 4397, 4416, 4435**
`\r@sti` **4719, 4758, 4826, 4893, 5017, 5036, 5055**
`\ra` 8308, 8312, 8316, 8935, 8939, 8943
 RADHAKRISHNAN, C. V. 259, 483, 507, \hookrightarrow [300, 351]
`\raggedbottom` 939, 1191
`\raggedcolumns` 332, **2361, 2406**
`\raggedright` (command) 593
`\raggedright` 1477, **2019, 2485, 3445, 3515, 3583, 4116, 4177, 4245, 4320, 4768, 4835, 4902**
 RAHTZ, Sebastian 87, 259, \hookrightarrow [108, 154, 155, 165, 276–278, 301–305]
 RAICHLE, Bernd 259, 496, 527, 528, 533, 534, \hookrightarrow [81, 82, 306, 307]
 RAMALHETE, Jose Pedro 259, 475, 532, \hookrightarrow [83]
`rapport.doc` (file) 547
`\re` 8728, 8732, 8736, 9450, 9454, 9458
`\read` 3046, 3127, **3873, 3938, 3999**, 4551, 4611, 4671, 5155, 5215, 5275
`README` (file) 244, 245
`\ref` 2106, 2499, 2771–2775, 2778, 2781
`\refstepcounter` **4965, 8183**
 REINO, Keranen 259, 490, 491, \hookrightarrow [71]
`\relax` (command) 308, 337, 441, 449, 453, 593
`\removelastskip` 331
`\renewcommand` (command) 28, 30, 32, 35–37, 39, 43, 64, 69, 73, 75, 76, 268, 269, 449, 453
`\renewcommand` **176, 193, 194, 198, 199, 216, 322, 933, 935, 1186–1188, 1454, 1522, 1527, 1541, 1550, 1551, 2025, 2210, 2217, 2455, 8161**

- `\renewcommand*` (command) 70
- `report` (class) 25, 36, 37, 45, 46, 48, 58,
60, 70, 74, 75, 111, 129, 200, 201, 215,
216, 220, 223, 229, 237, 238, 242, 283,
284, 291, 325, 617, \hookrightarrow [220]
- `\RequirePackage` . . . **2786**, 3013, **7591**, **7597**,
7698, 8158
- `\reset@font` (command) 59, 287, 593
- `\reset@font` . . **3170**, 3447, 3454, 3458, 3517,
3524, 3528, 3585, 3592, 3596, 4023,
4028, 4041, 4043, 4177, 4182, 4186,
4247, 4254, 4258, 4322, 4329, 4333,
4770, 4778, 4782, 4837, 4844, 4849,
4904, 4911, 4916
- `\resh` 9385–9387, 9392–9394, 9399–9401
- REZUŞ, Adrian 259, 533, 534, \hookrightarrow [307]
- `\rightmargin` . . 3413, 3415, 3462, 3532, 3600,
4141, 4145, 4190, 4263, 4338, 4736,
4738, 4786, 4853, 4920
- `\rightskip` 3185, 3646, 3658
- `\rmfamily` (command) 233
- `\rmfamily` 933, 1772,
1820, 2219, 2220, 2465–2469, 2471–
2474, 3389, 3390, 3395, 3396, 4078,
4079, 4088, 4091–4093, 4102, 4709,
4710, 4718
- `rmk` (script) 237, 244–247
- ROBBERS, Yuri 259, \hookrightarrow [308]
- ROBERTS, A. J. “Tony” . . 61, 226, 250, 259, 317,
 \hookrightarrow [349]
- ROBERTSON, Will 259, \hookrightarrow [309]
- ROEGEL, Denis B. . . 249, 259, 594, 595, \hookrightarrow [154]
- ROLLAND, Christian 259, 476, \hookrightarrow [84, 310]
- `\Roman` . . . 8779, 8782, 8785, 8808, 9009, 9012,
9015, 9039
- romanian (language option) 38, 533
- `romanian.dtx` (file) 533, 534
- `romanian.mld` (file) 244, 245, 533
- `romanian2` (language option) 38, 533
- `romanian2.mld` (file) . . 244, 245, 533, 610, 617
- `romanian3` (language option) 38, 534
- `romanian3.mld` (file) . . 244, 245, 534, 610, 617
- RomanianTeX (package) . . . 533, 534, \hookrightarrow [307]
- `romannum` (package) . . 53, 75, 87, 187, 237, 254,
276, 428, 614, \hookrightarrow [372]
- `rotating` (package) 237, \hookrightarrow [303]
- `rotfloat` (package) . . 53, 87, 166, 219, 237, 256, 271,
279, 432, 623, \hookrightarrow [322]
- ROULUND, Rasmus Pank 259, \hookrightarrow [308]
- ROWLEY, Chris A. 259,
 \hookrightarrow [60, 193, 260–264, 311, 337]
- `\rs` 8728, 8732, 8736, 9450, 9454, 9458
- `\ru` 2693, 2717
- `rubber` (tool) 60, 237, 605, \hookrightarrow [28]
- RUIZ-ALTABA, Marti 259, 486, \hookrightarrow [85]
- `\rule` (command) 598
- `\rule` 1494, 1503,
3131, 3135, 3139, 3488, 4073, 4707,
5343–5345, 5352–5354, 5361–5363
- ruussian (language option) 38, 534–538
- ruussian-cca (language option) 38, 538
- `ruussian-cca.mld` (file) . . . 244, 245, 538, 612
- `ruussian-cca.mlo` (file) 244, 245, 538
- ruussian-cca1 (language option) 38, 539
- `ruussian-cca1.mld` (file) . . . 244, 245, 539, 612
- `ruussian-cca1.mlo` (file) 244, 245, 539
- ruussian-lh (language option) 38, 539
- `ruussian-lh.mld` (file) 244, 245, 539, 612
- `ruussian-lh.mlo` (file) 244, 245, 539
- ruussian-lhcyralt (language option) . . 38, 539,
540
- `ruussian-lhcyralt.mld` (file) . . 244, 245, 539,
612
- `ruussian-lhcyralt.mlo` (file) . . 244, 245, 539,
540
- ruussian-lhcyrkoi (language option) . . 38, 540
- `ruussian-lhcyrkoi.mld` (file) . . 244, 245, 540,
612
- `ruussian-lhcyrkoi.mlo` (file) . . 244, 245, 540
- ruussian-lhcyrwin (language option) . . 38, 540
- `ruussian-lhcyrwin.mld` (file) . . 244, 245, 540,
612
- `ruussian-lhcyrwin.mlo` (file) . . 244, 245, 540
- `ruussian.def` (file) 538
- `ruussian.mld` (file) 244, 245, 534
- `ruussian.sty` (file) 538, 539
- ruussian2m (language option) 38, 43, 535
- `ruussian2m.ldf` (file) 535
- `ruussian2m.mld` (file) . . 210, 244, 245, 535, 601
- `ruussian2o` (language option) 38, 43, 536
- `ruussian2o.mld` (file) . . 210, 244, 245, 536, 601
- ruussianb (language option) 38, 537
- `ruussianb.dtx` (file) 477, 525, 537
- `ruussianb.mld` (file) 244, 245, 537, 611
- ruussianc (language option) 38, 538
- `ruussianc.mld` (file) 244, 245, 538
- RYNNING, Jan Michael 259, 546, 594
- RYU, Young 259, \hookrightarrow [312]

S

- SAAR, Enn 259, 487, \hookrightarrow [86]
- `\samepage` (command) 593
- `samepage` (environment) . . 300, 301, 303, 304, 306,
307, 329, 331, 332, 334–336, 351, 353,
354, 356–358, 593
- `samin` (language option) 38, 541

- samin.dtx (file) 541
 samin.mld (file) 244, 245, 541, 597
 SAMSOEN, David 259
 SÁNCHEZ, Julio 259, 472, 544, ⇨[53]
 SANGEUX, Morgan 259
 SAUDRAIS, Eddie 259, ⇨[313, 314]
 \scan@allowedtrue 419, 628
 SCHALÜCK, Elmar 259, 530, ⇨[87]
 SCHANDL, Bernd 259, ⇨[351]
 \schapter **1, 4944**
 SCHLEGL, Elisabeth 259, ⇨[279, 280]
 SCHLEMMER, Tobias 259, 543, ⇨[63]
 SCHMIDT, Walter 259, 527, 528, ⇨[82, 315, 316]
 SCHMITZ, Thomas A. 259, ⇨[317]
 SCHNEIDER, Uwe 259
 SCHÖPF, Rainer 259, ⇨[60, 221]
 SCHRÖDER, Martin 92, 259, ⇨[318]
 SCHWARTZ, Ulrich 259, ⇨[299]
 scottish (language option) 38, 541
 scottish.dtx (file) 541
 scottish.mld (file) 244, 245, 541
 scr.tex (old example document) 616, 618
 scrartcl (class) 40, 49, 52, 74, 87, 164, 223, 237,
 238, ⇨[207, 270, 308]
 scrbook (class) 40, 49, 52, 74, 87, 124, 130, 164,
 223, 229, 238, ⇨[207, 270, 308]
 scrbook.cls (file) 124
 Scripts
 cmk 215, 220, 226, 244–246, 254, 621
 emk 217, 222, 237, 244–247, 606
 fmk 220, 222, 237, 244–247, 606
 imk 217, 220, 222, 237, 244–247, 606, 615
 pmk 236, 244–247
 rmk 237, 244–247
 tmk 240, 244–247, 255, 620
 xmk 242, 244–247, 616
 \scriptsize (command) 233
 scrlettr (class) 223, ⇨[207, 270, 308]
 scrlettr2 (class) 223, ⇨[207, 270, 308]
 scrreprt (class) 40, 49, 52, 74, 87, 145, 164, 223,
 230, 238, ⇨[207, 270, 308]
 \scshape (command) 233
 \scshape 2210, 2211, 2215, 2216, 2219–2221
 SCURFIELD, Elizabeth 259, ⇨[319]
 secnumdepth (depth counter) 216, 217
 second.tex (old example document) 615, 619
 \sectbegin (command) 360
 \sectbegin **4994, 5158, 5218, 5278, 7880**
 \sectend (command) 63, 360
 \sectend **4994, 5158, 5218, 5278, 7880**
 \sectfont (command) 124
 \sectfont **1744**
 \section (command) 25, 26, 29–31,
 50, 52, 66, 83, 156, 161, 167, 168, 170,
 172, 177, 211, 212, 216, 236–238, 283,
 286, 308, 310, 348, 350, 353, 356, 359,
 363, 366, 368, 404, 416, 417, 439, 591
 section (counter) 272
 section (option of placeins) 29, 31, 52, 175, 436
 \section **1, 955, 1095, 1678, 1777, 1845, 1868,**
 2029, 2179, 2224, 2322, 2337, 2363,
 2421, 2523, 2578, 2612, 2662, 3092,
 3108, 3637, 3812, 4492, 4955, 5082,
 5178, 5238, 6899, 6937, 7657
 \section* (command) 33, 71, 86, 251, 283, 295,
 597, 598
 \section* **682, 1022, 1227, 1323, 2630**
 \section@mtcck 5482, 5533, 5543, 5551
 \sectionfont **2019**
 \sectlof (command) 30, 36, 40, 52, 83, 86, 182,
 184, 222, 350, 353, 419, 594, 595
 \sectlof **1, 648, 712, 739, 801,**
 833, 855, **955, 1022, 1095, 4809, 6992,**
 7071, 7159, 7258, **7685, 7896**
 \sectlof@ (command) 353
 \sectlof@ **3688, 4809, 4810**
 \sectlof@mtcck 5475, 5539
 sectlofdepth (depth counter) 33, 217, 238, 348,
 355
 \sectlot (command) 30, 36, 40, 52, 83, 86, 182,
 184, 222, 350, 356, 419, 594
 \sectlot **1, 648, 712,**
 739, 801, 833, 855, **1022, 1095, 1845,**
 1868, 4876, 6992, 7080, 7168, 7269,
 7685, 7896
 \sectlot@ (command) 356
 \sectlot@ **3688, 4876, 4877**
 \sectlot@mtcck 5478, 5547
 sectlotdepth (depth counter) 33, 65, 217, 238,
 348, 358
 sectsty (package) 52, 69, 87, 132, 176, 238, 252,
 270, 275, 427, 603, 613, ⇨[249]
 \secttoc (command) 29, 30, 36, 37, 40, 83, 86,
 182, 184, 222, 349, 350, 594
 \secttoc **1, 648, 712, 739,**
 801, 833, 855, **955, 1024, 1055, 1072,**
 1073, **1095, 2662, 4742, 7062, 7150,**
 7247, **7685, 7896**
 \secttoc@ (command) 350, 351
 \secttoc@ **3688, 4742, 4743**
 \secttoc@mtcck 5472, 5529
 secttocdepth (depth counter) 30, 32, 83, 217,
 238, 349, 352
 \seen 8308, 8312, 8316, 8935–8937, 8939–8941,
 8943–8945
 \selectlanguage 9814, 10670, 10723
 serbian (language option) 38, 542

- serbian.dtx (file) 542
- serbian.mld (file) 244, 245, 542, 610
- serbianc (language option) 38, 542
- serbianc.mld (file) 43, 244, 245, 542, 600, 610
- \setcounter (command) . . 28, 30, 32, 58, 62, 81–83, 395
- \setcounter 1, 8, 639, 929, 930, 1097, 1167, 1367, 1512, 2019, 2459, 2506, 2523, 2719, 3321–3323, 3332, 3366, 3701, 3702, 3706, 3707, 3711, 3712, 4048, 4054, 4382, 4386, 4390, 4690, 4702, 4706, 5004, 5005, 5008, 5009, 5012, 5013, 6051, 6095, 6119, 6133, 6166, 6379
- \setlength (command) 28, 30, 32, 75
- \setlength . 234, 325, 931, 1031, 1044, 1086, 1112, 1143, 1185, 1297, 1303, 1316, 1357, 1381, 1406, 1438, 1450, 1505, 1506, 1743, 2243, 2406, 2418, 2653, 2657, 2795
- \setvruler 186
- \sf 935, 1188
- \sffamily (command) 233
- \sffamily 1470, 1472, 1479, 2024
- shheaders (package) . 53, 75, 87, 188, 238, 254, 277, 429, 614, ⇨[239]
- \sffoffset 2817
- \sh 8587, 8591, 8595
- \sheen . . 8309, 8313, 8317, 8936, 8940, 8944
- SHELL, Michael 259, ⇨[320]
- \shin 9385, 9387, 9392, 9394, 9399, 9401
- SHIN, Jungshik 259
- \SHORTEXT (command) 593
- shorttext (option) 52, 58, 79, 171, 211, 238, 250, 404, 596
- shorttoc (package) 20, 238, 592, ⇨[130]
- \shorttoc (command) 20
- shortverb (package) ⇨[257]
- SHOUKAT, Ali 259
- SHVAIKA, Andrij M. 259, 550, ⇨[88]
- sidewaysfigure (environment) 237
- sidewaystable (environment) 237
- \sigma 2331, 2332
- SILPA-ANAN, Chanop 259, 547, ⇨[250]
- SINGH, Sindhu 259, ⇨[321]
- SITNIKOVA-RIOLAND, Anna 259, ⇨[359]
- \sixt@n 3127
- SJIS.cap (file) 512
- SJIS.cpx (file) 513
- SL_AT_EX (package) 43, 239, 547, ⇨[248]
- \SLF@ 5216, 5218
- \SLF@contentsline (command) 366
- \SLF@contentsline 5178, 5218
- \SLF@explist 5176, 5202
- \SLF@line 5214
- \SLF@list 5173, 5176, 5202, 5218
- \SLF@lof 5176, 5203, 5218
- \SLF@loop 5173, 5203
- \SLF@next (command) 366
- \SLF@next 5006, 5173, 5202
- \slf@pgno 3252, 3253, 4861
- \SLF@read 5203, 5214, 5218
- \slf@rule 3381, 4840, 4873, 5346
- \slf@setform (command) 355, 383
- \slf@setform 4861, 5716
- \SLF@test (command) 367
- \SLF@test 5214, 5218
- \slf@dotsep 5681, 5719
- \slffont (command) 36, 39, 83
- \slffont 1, 4709, 4835, 7937
- \slflotrmarg 5672
- \slfname 5178, 5182
- \slfoffset (command) 83
- \slfoffset 2826, 4856, 7789
- \slfpagenumbers (command) 45, 84
- \slfpagenumbers . . 3231, 3252, 3263, 7984
- \slfpnumwidth 5663, 5717
- \slfrule (command) 45, 84, 601
- \slfrule 5346, 7966
- \slfSfont (command) 36, 39, 83, 606
- \slfSfont 1, 4709, 7937
- \slftitle (command) 36, 39, 83, 465
- \slftitle 1, 4824, 4826, 4840, 6488, 7567, 8217, 8239, 8260, 8281, 8299, 8317, 8339, 8368, 8385, 8402, 8420, 8436, 8451, 8466, 8481, 8497, 8518, 8550, 8578, 8596, 8612, 8645, 8684, 8703, 8720, 8737, 8753, 8769, 8792, 8818, 8835, 8856, 8880, 8909, 8944, 8961, 8978, 8999, 9022, 9055, 9097, 9112, 9129, 9144, 9162, 9196, 9200, 9235, 9274, 9296, 9399, 9432, 9459, 9481, 9505, 9521, 9538, 9555, 9640, 9641, 9661, 9678, 9695, 9712, 9729, 9746, 9771, 9789, 9806, 9830, 9847, 9864, 9883, 9903, 9918, 9942, 9978, 10018, 10033, 10051, 10067, 10084, 10099, 10115, 10133, 10151, 10172, 10189, 10206, 10238, 10272, 10311, 10349, 10369, 10433, 10449, 10465, 10489, 10507, 10523, 10541, 10556, 10572, 10591, 10607, 10623, 10647, 10691, 10711, 10737, 10756, 10771, 10786, 10801
- \slftocrmarg 5677, 5718
- slides (class) 215, ⇨[254]
- SLOBODAN, Jankovic 259, 542, ⇨[79]

- `\sloppy` 955, 1217
- slovak (language option) 38, 543
- slovak.dtx (file) 543
- slovak.mld (file) 244, 245, 543
- slovene (language option) 38, 544
- slovene.dtx (file) 544
- slovene.mld (file) 244, 245, 544
- `\slshape` (command) 233
- `\slshape` 2466, 2468, 2471, 2473, 3396
- `\SLT@` 5276, 5278
- `\SLT@contentsline` (command) 368
- `\SLT@contentsline` 5238, 5278
- `\SLT@explist` 5236, 5262
- `\SLT@line` 5274
- `\SLT@list` 5233, 5236, 5262, 5278
- `\SLT@loop` 5233, 5263
- `\SLT@lot` 5236, 5263, 5278
- `\SLT@next` (command) 368
- `\SLT@next` 5013, 5233, 5262
- `\slt@pgno` 3258, 3259, 4928
- `\SLT@read` 5263, 5274, 5278
- `\slt@rule` 3381, 4909, 4941, 5355
- `\slt@setform` (command) 358, 384
- `\slt@setform` 4928, 5731
- `\SLT@test` (command) 369
- `\SLT@test` 5274, 5278
- `\sltdotsep` 5681
- `\sltfont` (command) 36, 39, 83
- `\sltfont` 1, 4709, 4902, 7937
- `\sltlotrmarg` 5672
- `\sltname` (command) 596
- `\sltname` 5238, 5242
- `\sltoffset` (command) 83
- `\sltoffset` 2817, 4923, 7789
- `\sltpagenumbers` (command) 45, 84
- `\sltpagenumbers` ... 3237, 3258, 3263, 7984
- `\sltpnumwidth` 5663
- `\sltrule` (command) 45, 84, 601
- `\sltrule` 5355, 7966
- `\sltSfont` (command) 36, 39, 83, 606
- `\sltSfont` 1, 4709, 7937
- `\sltttitle` (command) 36, 39, 65, 83, 465
- `\sltttitle` 1, 4891, 4893, 4907, 6488, 7567, 8217, 8240, 8261, 8282, 8300, 8318, 8340, 8369, 8386, 8403, 8421, 8437, 8452, 8467, 8482, 8498, 8519, 8553, 8580, 8597, 8613, 8646, 8685, 8704, 8721, 8738, 8754, 8770, 8793, 8819, 8836, 8857, 8883, 8911, 8945, 8962, 8979, 9000, 9023, 9056, 9098, 9113, 9130, 9145, 9163, 9239, 9278, 9297, 9401, 9435, 9460, 9482, 9506, 9522, 9539, 9556, 9662, 9679, 9696, 9713, 9730, 9747, 9772, 9790, 9807, 9831, 9848, 9865, 9884, 9904, 9919, 9943, 9980, 10019, 10034, 10052, 10068, 10085, 10100, 10116, 10134, 10152, 10173, 10190, 10207, 10223, 10224, 10239, 10276, 10315, 10352, 10370, 10434, 10450, 10466, 10491, 10508, 10524, 10542, 10557, 10573, 10592, 10608, 10624, 10648, 10693, 10712, 10738, 10757, 10772, 10787, 10802
- `\slttocrmarg` 5680
- `\small` (command) 233
- SMITH, John 259, 483, 507, \hookrightarrow [288]
- SOCHA, Robin S. 259
- SOFRONIOU, Nick 259, \hookrightarrow [327]
- SOMMERFELDT, Axel .. 53, 71, 87, 212, 219, 259, \hookrightarrow [322–325]
- SONG, Lianyi 259, \hookrightarrow [319]
- `sort&compress` (option of `natbib`) 622
- SOULET, Yves 259, \hookrightarrow [262]
- `\space` (command) 34
- spanish (language option) 38, 480, 544
- spanish.dtx (file) 494, 544–546
- spanish.mld (file) ... 244, 245, 480, 544, 611
- spanish2 (language option) 38, 544, 545
- spanish2.mld (file) 244, 245, 545, 602
- spanish3 (language option) .. 38, 43, 544, 545
- spanish3.mld (file) .. 210, 244, 245, 545, 605
- spanish4 (language option) 38, 544, 546
- spanish4.mld (file) 244, 245, 546, 610
- `\spart` 1
- `\special` (command) 221, 222
- `splitbib` (package) 59, 239, \hookrightarrow [246]
- `\sqrt` 2341
- `\star` 1522, 1527
- `\starchapter` (command) 315
- `\starchapter` 3699, 3830, 4519
- `\starparagraph` 3844, 4519, 5129
- `\starpert` 4477
- `\starsection` (command) 359
- `\starsection` 3844, 4519, 4955, 5114
- `\starsubparagraph` 3844, 4519, 5129
- `\starsubsection` 3844, 4519, 5129
- `\starsubsubsection` 3844, 4519, 5129
- stc (counter) . 86, 281, 283, 284, 293, 349, 363, 366, 368, 598
- `\STC@` 5156, 5158
- `\STC@contentsline` (command) 363
- `\STC@contentsline` 5082, 5158
- `\STC@explist` 5080, 5142
- `\STC@line` 5154, 5156
- `\STC@list` 5077, 5080, 5142, 5158
- `\STC@loop` 5077, 5143

- `\STC@next` (command) 364
- `\STC@next` **5002, 5077, 5142**
- `\stc@pgno` 3246, 3247, **4791**
- `\STC@read` **5143, 5154, 5158**
- `\stc@rule` (command) 349
- `\stc@rule` **4697, 4773, 4805, 4872, 4907, 4940, 5337**
- `\stc@sect` **4994**
- `\stc@setform` (command) 352, 383
- `\stc@setform` **4791, 5701**
- `\STC@test` (command) 365
- `\STC@test` **5156, 5158**
- `\STC@toc` **5080, 5143, 5158**
- `stc@verse` (environment) 350, 352, 355, 358, 383, 384, 602
- `\stc@verse` 4730
- `\stcdotsep` **5681, 5704**
- `\stcfont` (command) 30, 36, 37, 83
- `\stcfont` **1, 918, 4709, 4768, 7937**
- `\stcindent` (command) 30, 83, 349
- `\stcindent` **918, 2657, 4697, 4736, 4785, 4852, 4919, 7699**
- `\stclotrmargin` **5672**
- `\stcname` **5082, 5086, 5114**
- `\stcoffset` (command) 30, 83, 350
- `\stcoffset` 2825, **4789, 7789**
- `\stcpagenumbers` (command) 45, 84
- `\stcpagenumbers` **3207, 3246, 3263, 7984**
- `\stcPfont` (command) 37, 39, 83
- `\stcPfont` **1, 937, 4709, 7937**
- `\stcpnumwidth` **5663, 5702**
- `\stcrule` (command) 45, 84
- `\stcrule` **5337, 7966**
- `\stcSPfont` (command) 37, 39
- `\stcSPfont` **1, 937, 4709, 7937**
- `\stcSSfont` (command) 30, 37, 39, 83
- `\stcSSfont` **1, 918, 4709, 7937**
- `\stcSSSfont` (command) 37, 39, 83
- `\stcSSSfont` **1, 937, 4709, 7937**
- `\stctitle` (command) 36, 39, 83, 465
- `\stctitle` **1, 4758, 4773, 6488, 7567, 8217, 8238, 8259, 8280, 8298, 8316, 8338, 8367, 8384, 8401, 8419, 8435, 8450, 8465, 8480, 8496, 8517, 8548, 8576, 8595, 8611, 8644, 8683, 8702, 8719, 8736, 8752, 8768, 8791, 8817, 8834, 8855, 8879, 8908, 8943, 8960, 8977, 8998, 9021, 9054, 9093, 9095, 9111, 9128, 9143, 9161, 9193, 9232, 9271, 9295, 9397, 9429, 9458, 9480, 9504, 9520, 9537, 9554, 9639, 9660, 9677, 9694, 9711, 9728, 9745, 9770, 9788, 9805, 9829, 9846, 9863, 9882, 9902, 9917, 9941, 9974, 9976, 10017, 10032, 10050, 10066, 10083, 10098, 10114, 10132, 10150, 10171, 10188, 10205, 10222, 10237, 10269, 10308, 10347, 10368, 10432, 10448, 10464, 10487, 10506, 10522, 10540, 10555, 10571, 10590, 10606, 10622, 10646, 10690, 10710, 10736, 10755, 10770, 10785, 10800**
- `\stctocrmarg` 5674, 5703
- `stdclsdv` (package) 237, 239, \hookrightarrow [\[361\]](#)
- STEINER, Arjen 259
- `\stepcounter` (command) 33, 282–284
- `\stepcounter` **3075, 3108, 3119, 3340, 3784, 3798, 3830, 3904, 3965, 4369, 4464, 4478, 4576, 4636, 5085, 5114, 5181, 5241**
- `\stifont` (command) 36, 39, 83
- `\stifont` **1, 4709, 4773, 4840, 4907, 7937**
- STORY, D. P. 259, \hookrightarrow [\[326\]](#)
- STREIT, Éric 259, \hookrightarrow [\[25\]](#)
- STUBNER, Ralf 259
- subappendices (environment) 210
- subf.tex (old example document) 616, 619
- subfig (package) 33, 87, 150, 212, 230, 239, 392, \hookrightarrow [\[116\]](#)
- `\subfigbottomskip` **2459, 2489**
- `\subfigcapskip` 2779
- `\subfigtopskip` **2459, 2489**
- subfigure (package) 33, 87, 143, 230, 239, \hookrightarrow [\[114\]](#)
- `\subfigure` 2487, 2490, 2492, 2732, 2737, 2742, 2747, 2752, 2757, 2762, **3917, 4589, 5194**
- `\subfigure@mtcck` 5489, 5494, 5504, 5511, 5527, 5535, 5553
- `\subparagraph` (command) 216, 238
- `\subparagraph` 1041, 1063, 1083, 1119, 1389, **3812, 4492, 5098**
- `\subparagraph@mtcck` 5486
- SUBRAMANIAM, K. K. 259, 514, \hookrightarrow [\[376\]](#)
- `\subref` 2772–2775
- `\subsection` (command) 216, 238, 359, 591
- `\subsection` 367, 654, 663, 713, 722, 740, 749, 802, 811, 834, 843, 856, 865, 961, 963, 965, 967, 970, 972, 974, 976, 978, 980, 982, 984, 986, 988, 990, 992, 994, 996, 998, 1000, 1002, 1004, 1006, 1008, 1010, 1012, 1014, 1016, 1018, 1020, 1028, 1050, 1057, 1065, 1077, 1093, 1105, 1121, 1136, 1138, 1140, 1149, 1157, 1159, 1161, 1163, 1282, 1309, 1329, 1350, 1376, 1593, 1598, 1610, 1615, 1650, **1777, 1833,**

- 1835, 1839, 1841, **2029**, **2662**, **3812**,
4492, **5098**
- `\subsection*` **2029**
- `\subsection@mtcck` 5483
- `\subsubsection (command)` 216, 238
- `\subsubsection` . . 731, 732, 1037, 1059, 1079,
1107, 1311, 1332, 1352, 1378, **2029**,
2662, **3812**, **4492**, **5098**
- `\subsubsection@mtcck` 5484
- `\subtable` **3978**, **4649**, **5254**
- `\subtable@mtcck` . . . 5490, 5496, 5500, 5513,
5520, 5537, 5545
- Suffixes *see* Extensions
- SUTOR, Robert S. 259, \hookrightarrow [155]
- `\sv@chapter` **3627**
- `\SV@endmtc@verse` 330, 334
- `\sv@minilof@` **3668**
- `\sv@minilot@` **3668**
- `\sv@minitoc@` **3668**
- `\SV@mtc@verse` 329, 331
- `\sv@part` **4369**
- `\sv@partlof@` **3678**
- `\sv@partlot@` **3678**
- `\sv@parttoc@` **3678**
- `\sv@sect` 4948, 4954
- `\sv@sectlof@` **3688**
- `\sv@sectlot@` **3688**
- `\sv@secttoc@` **3688**
- `\sv@spart` **4369**
- swedish (language option) 38, 546
- swedish.dtx (file) 546
- swedish.mld (file) 244, 245, 546
- swedish2 (language option) 38, 547
- swedish2.mld (file) 244, 245, 547, 613
- SWOYER, Chris 259
- SYROPOULOS, Apostolos 259, 497, \hookrightarrow [27, 89, 327]
- T**
- `\taa` 8935–8937, 8939–8941, 8943–8945
- TABACCO, Raffaella 259, 514, 515
- tabbing (environment) 57
- `\table (command)` 321
- table (environment) 212, 239, 241
- `\table` **3978**, **4649**, **5254**
- `\table@mtcck` . . 5488, 5495, 5499, 5512, 5519,
5536, 5544
- `\tableofcontents (command)` . 21, 28, 30, 32,
49, 52, 58, 62, 64, 77, 80–83, 183, 184,
251, 286, 293, 418, 423, 598, 602
- `\tableofcontents` . 1, 11, 214, 237, 339, **431**,
639, **876**, 951, **1211**, **1627**, **1678**, **1747**,
1757, **1804**, **1950**, **2029**, 2180, 2226,
2238, **2320**, **2363**, **2475**, **2515**, **2576**,
2602, **3102**, **6961**, 7179, 7214, 7249
- `\tableofcontents* (command)` 135
- `\tableofcontents*` **2179**, **2224**
- tabular (environment) . 57, 300, 303, 306, 330,
332, 335, 352, 354, 357
- TALBOT, Nicola L. C. . 87, 259, \hookrightarrow [143, 328–335]
- TAUPIN[†], Daniel 52, 72, 87, 260, \hookrightarrow [336]
- `\tav` . 9383, 9385, 9387, 9388, 9390, 9392, 9394,
9395, 9397, 9399, 9401, 9402
- TAYLOR, Philip 260, \hookrightarrow [143]
- tbi.tex (old example document) . . . 616, 619
- TDS . . . 227, 239, 240, 245–247, 255, 620, 621
- `\testtemp` 2692, 2694–2697, 2700
- `\tet` 9388, 9395, 9402
- `\textbf (command)` 233
- textcase (package) \hookrightarrow [106]
- `\textheight` **2653**
- `\textit (command)` 233
- `\textit` 1497
- `\textmd (command)` 233
- `\textrm (command)` 233
- `\textsc (command)` 233
- `\textsc` 463, 673, 760, 2028, 2041, 2043, 2098,
2109, 2245
- `\textsf (command)` 233
- `\textsf` 460, 591, 599, 607
- `\textsl (command)` 233
- `\textsl` 463, 673, 760
- `\textsuperscript` 2018
- `\texttt (command)` 233
- `\texttt` 487, 695, 784
- `\textup (command)` 233
- `\textwidth (command)` 617
- `\textwidth` **2653**
- `\tf@mtc (command)` 267, 286, 437
- `\tf@mtc` . . **2792**, **3043**, **3141**, **3771**, **3781**, **3785**,
3797, **3830**, **3877**, **3905**, **3942**, **3966**,
4003, **4019**, **4039**, **4454**, **4462**, 4488,
4489, 4562, 4563, **4574**, 4586, 4587,
4622, 4623, **4634**, 4646, 4647, 4682,
4683, **5074**, **5082**, 5095, 5096, 5126,
5127, 5166, 5167, **5178**, 5191, 5192,
5226, 5227, **5238**, 5251, 5252, 5286,
5287, **7600**, **7903**
- thai (language option) 38, 547
- thai.ldf (file) 547
- thai.mld (file) 244, 245, 547, 600
- thai.mlo (file) 244, 245, 547
- thaicjk.ldf (file) 547
- thailatex (package) 240, 547, 615, \hookrightarrow [250]
- `\The@chapter (command)` 597
- `\The@mtc (command)` 296, 597

- `\The@mtc` . **3366**, 3423, 3425, 3493, 3495, 3561, 3563
- `thebibliography` (environment) . . . 138, 149
- `\thechapter` 1470, 1551, 8203, 8206
- `\themtc` (command) 296
- `\themtc` . . **3366**, **3781**, **3785**, **3797**, **3830**, 3902, **3905**, 3963, **3966**
- `\Thepart` (command) 324
- `\Thepart` **4054**, **4150**, **4216**, **4290**
- `\theptc` (command) 324
- `\theptc` . . **4054**, **4462**, 4481, 4482, 4485, 4486, **4574**, 4579, 4580, 4583, 4584, **4634**, 4639, 4640, 4643, 4644
- `\thesection` 1550, 1551, **2019**
- `\thestc` . . **4743**, **4810**, **4877**, 4932, **5082**, 5088, 5089, 5092, 5093, **5114**, **5178**, 5184, 5185, 5188, 5189, **5238**, 5244, 5245, 5248, 5249
- THIELE, Christina 260, ⇨[143, 296]
- `\thispageminilofstyle` (command) . . 47, 85, 303
- `\thispageminilofstyle` . . **3307**, **3503**, **8017**
- `\thispageminilotstyle` (command) . . 47, 85, 306
- `\thispageminilotstyle` . . **3307**, **3571**, **8017**
- `\thispageminitocstyle` (command) . . 47, 85, 299
- `\thispageminitocstyle` . . **3307**, **3433**, **8017**
- `\thispagepartlofsty` (command) . . 47, 85, 597
- `\thispagepartlofsty` . . **3307**, **4230**, **8002**
- `\thispagepartlotstyle` (command) . . 47, 85, 597
- `\thispagepartlotstyle` . . **3307**, **4305**, **8002**
- `\thispageparttocstyle` (command) . . 47, 85, 291, 597
- `\thispageparttocstyle` . . **3307**, **4164**, **8002**
- `\thispagesectlofsty` (command) . . 47, 85
- `\thispagesectlofsty` . . **3307**, **4823**, **8032**
- `\thispagesectlotstyle` (command) . . 47, 85
- `\thispagesectlotstyle` . . **3307**, **4890**, **8032**
- `\thispagesecttocstyle` (command) . . 47, 85
- `\thispagesecttocstyle` . . **3307**, **4756**, **8032**
- `\thispagestyle` (command) . . 47, 48, 85, 291
- `\thispagestyle` **1**, **3307**
- THORUP, Kresten Krab 260, ⇨[337]
- THUREAU, Aurélien 260
- `tight` (option) . . 40, 61, 79, 145, 223, 224, 240, 250, 274, 298, 327, 350, 403, 596, 598
- `\tightmtcfalse` (command) 40, 80
- `\tightmtcfalse` **1**, 2939, 6384, 8048
- `\tightmtctrue` (command) 40, 80
- `\tightmtctrue` **1**, 6383
- TINNEFELD, Karsten 53, 74, 87, 260, ⇨[338]
- `\tiny` (command) 233
- `\title` 2027
- `titlesec` (package) 52, 87, 240, ⇨[40]
- `titletoc` (package) . . 52, 87, 177, 240, 412, ⇨[40]
- `titletoc.sty` (file) 240
- 'T LAM, Ton 260
- `tlc.tex` (old example document) . . . 616, 619
- `tmk` (script) 240, 244–247, 255, 620
- `tocbibind` (package) . . 49, 52, 64, 87, 95, 97, 98, 100, 104, 145, 147–149, 165, 228, 230, 240, 251, 411, 597, ⇨[366]
- `tocdepth` (depth counter) 33, 62, 70, 81–83, 217, 240, 296, 300, 304, 395, 591, 603
- `toch` (package) 592
- `\toclevel@chapter` 2951
- `\toclevel@paragraph` 2955
- `\toclevel@part` 2950
- `\toclevel@section` 2952
- `\toclevel@starchapter` 2951
- `\toclevel@starparagraph` 2955
- `\toclevel@starpart` 2950
- `\toclevel@starsection` 2952
- `\toclevel@starsubparagraph` 2956
- `\toclevel@starsubsection` 2953
- `\toclevel@starsubsubsection` 2954
- `\toclevel@subparagraph` 2956
- `\toclevel@subsection` 2953
- `\toclevel@subsubsection` 2954
- `\toclevel@xchapter` 2947
- `\toclevel@xpart` 2946
- `\toclevel@xsect` 2948
- `\toclevel@xsection` 2949
- `tocloft` (package) 52, 63–65, 70, 77, 78, 87, 117, 118, 132, 165, 229, 230, 240, 412, ⇨[363]
- `tocloft.pdf` (file) 77
- `tocvsec2` (package) ⇨[367]
- `TODD` (file) 240, 244, 245
- TOLUŠIS, Sigitas 260, 518, 519
- Tools
 - `newcommand` ⇨[285]
 - `rubber` 60, 237, 605, ⇨[28]
 - `urlbst` . . 217, 220, 241, 254, 612, ⇨[158]
 - `xargs` 51, 606
- `\topsep` (command) 298, 327
- `\topsep` **3408**, **4137**, 4732
- TORDELLA, Laurent 260
- TRETTIN, Mark 260, ⇨[339, 340]
- `trivfloat` (package) 53, 87, 166, 241, 256, 271, 279, 432, 623, ⇨[375]
- TRUU, Ahto 260
- `tsfc.tex` (old example document) . . 616, 619
- TSOLOMITIS, Antonis 260, ⇨[327]

\ttfamily (command) 233
\ttfamily 1775, 1778, 1823, 1826
turkish (language option) 38, 548
turkish.dtx (file) 548
turkish.mld (file) 244, 245, 548
TWS-TDS, \hookrightarrow [341, 342]
txfonts (package) 35, 241, \hookrightarrow [312]
\typeout (command) 600

U

u8hangul.mld (file) 611
u8hangul.mlo (file) 611
u8hangul.tex (file) 503
u8hanja.mld (file) 611
u8hanja.mlo (file) 611
u8hanja.tex (file) 504
uighur (language option) 38, 548
uighur.mld (file) 244, 245, 548, 615
uighur2 (language option) 38, 548
uighur2.mld (file) 244, 245, 548, 615
uighur3 (language option) 38, 549
uighur3.mld (file) 244, 245, 549, 615
UKenglish (language option) 38, 549
UKenglish.mld (file) 244, 245, 549, 604
ukraineib (language option) 38, 549, 550
ukraineib.dtx (file) 550
ukraineib.mld (file) 244, 245, 549
ukrainian (language option) 38, 549, 550
ukrainian.mld (file) 244, 245, 549, 550, 610
ULRICH, Stefan 35, 260, 597, \hookrightarrow [20]
UMEKI, Hideo 260, \hookrightarrow [343]
undotted (option) 46, 61, 79, 250, 403, 596
\undottedmtcfalse (command) 80
\undottedmtcfalse 3181, 6390, 8050
\undottedmtctrue (command) 80
\undottedmtctrue 6389
\unhcopy 3133, 3137
\unitlength 1031, 1044, 1086, 1112, 1143,
1297, 1303, 1316, 1357, 1381, 1406
\unpenalty 3140
\unskip 332, 422, 631
unsrt 51
uppersorbian (language option) 38, 550, 551
uppersorbian.mld (file) 244, 245, 550, 551, 610
\upshape (command) 233
\upshape 933, 1772, 1775, 1778, 1820, 1823,
1826, 2465, 2467, 2469, 2472, 2474,
3389, 3390, 3395, 4078, 4079, 4088,
4091–4093, 4102, 4709, 4710, 4718
url (package) \hookrightarrow [16]
\url 593, 594, 601, 602, 609, 610
urlbst (tool) 217, 220, 241, 254, 612, \hookrightarrow [158]

USenglish (language option) 38, 551
USenglish.mld (file) 244, 245, 551, 604
\usepackage (command) 27–30, 32, 77, 205,
209, 235, 236, 443, 465
\usepackage 1,
5–7, 56, 119, 180, 183, 184, 208, 209,
229–231, 233, 283–288, 318–321, 324,
414–416, 424, 425, 625, 633, 634, 880–
883, 926–928, 1179–1182, 1434, 1436–
1438, 1448, 1449, 1455–1459, 1631,
1683–1686, 1741, 1742, 1761–1763,
1801–1803, 1850, 1851, 1899, 1900,
1947, 1948, 2011–2017, 2172–2175,
2177, 2207, 2213, 2214, 2242, 2244,
2316, 2317, 2350–2354, 2358, 2401–
2405, 2453, 2457, 2458, 2512–2516,
2559, 2602, 2603, 2657, 2689–2691,
8066
usorbian (language option) 38, 550, 551
usorbian.dtx (file) 550
usorbian.mld (file) 244, 245, 551, 612
UYAR, Turgut 260, 548, \hookrightarrow [59]

V

VAARIO, Jari 260
\value 2922, 7278, 8777, 8780, 8783, 8800,
9007, 9010, 9013, 9030, 9040, 9043,
9046
VAN OOSTRUM, Piet 260, \hookrightarrow [345]
VAN OUDENHOVE DE SAINT GÉRY, Thomas 260,
 \hookrightarrow [25, 346]
VAN ZANDT, Timothy 260, \hookrightarrow [347]
VAQUIN, Vincent 260
varioref (package) 143, \hookrightarrow [256]
varsects (package) 52, 72, 87, 176, 242, 253, 270,
275, 427, 608, \hookrightarrow [336]
\vav . 9383, 9386, 9388, 9390, 9393, 9395, 9397,
9400, 9402
\ vbox 2488, 2491, 2493, 2706, 2713
VENKATESAN, Suki K. 260, \hookrightarrow [348]
verbose (option of placeins) 29, 436
VERNA, Didier 61, 226, 250, 260, 313, 317,
 \hookrightarrow [349]
verse (environment) 34, 298, 327, 350, 591
VESCO, Sylvain 260
VEYTSMAN, Boris 260, \hookrightarrow [350, 351]
\vfil 2488, 2491, 2493, 2707, 2712
\vfll 1498, 1515
VIAL, Alexandre 260
vietnam (package) 43, 551, \hookrightarrow [235]
vietnam (language option) 38, 551, 552
vietnam.mld (file) 244, 245, 551, 552, 596

- vietnamese (language option) 38, 552
 - vietnamese.mld (file) 244, 245, 552
 - VIOLANTE, André 260, ⇔[352]
 - VOEGELIN, Carl F. 260, ⇔[353]
 - VOEGELIN, Florence M. 260, ⇔[353]
 - VOGEL, Martin 260, ⇔[182]
 - VOLOVICH, Vladimir 260, 477, 525, 537,
⇔[75, 354]
 - VON BECHTOLSHEIM, Stephan P. . . . 260, 280, 597,
⇔[355, 356]
 - Voss, Herbert 260, ⇔[154]
 - \vref 2502, 2503
 - \vrule (command) 598
 - \vrule 2698, 2699, 2701
 - vruler (package) 76, ⇔[195]
 - \vskip 333, 1473, 1480, 3184, 3467, 3483, 3487,
3539, 3555, 3607, 3623, 3645, 3657,
4117, 4124, 4131, 4193, 4212, 4270,
4286, 4345, 4361, 4790, 4807, 4860,
4874, 4927, 4942
 - \vspace 1466, 1476, 1502, 1526,
1530, 1533, **2249**, 2359, 2360, 2407,
2497, 3400, 3401, 3477, 3484, 3488,
3549, 3556, 3617, 3624, 4073, 4108,
4109, 4111, 4115, 4122, 4129, 4206,
4213, 4280, 4287, 4355, 4362, 4707,
4722, 4723, 4801, 4808, 4875, 4943,
5343–5345, 5352–5354, 5361–5363
 - \vspace* (command) 593
- W**
- W0001 (message) 167
 - W0002 (message) 167
 - W0003 (message) 167, 296
 - W0004 (message) 167, 324
 - W0005 (message) 168, 349
 - W0006 (message) 168
 - W0007 (message) 168
 - W0008 (message) 168
 - W0009 (message) 168
 - W0010 (message) 169
 - W0011 (message) 169
 - W0012 (message) 169
 - W0013 (message) 169
 - W0014 (message) 169
 - W0015 (message) 170
 - W0016 (message) 170
 - W0017 (message) 58, 170
 - W0018 (message) 170
 - W0019 (message) 170
 - W0020 (message) 171, 238, 404
 - W0021 (message) 59, 171
 - W0022 (message) 59, 171
 - W0023 (message) 173
 - W0024 (message) 173
 - W0025 (message) 173, 210
 - W0026 (message) 173, 210
 - W0027 (message) 174, 210
 - W0028 (message) 174
 - W0029 (message) 174, 222
 - W0030 (message) 174
 - W0031 (message) 175
 - W0032 (message) 175
 - W0033 (message) 175, 212, 430
 - W0034 (message) 175, 212, 430, 465
 - W0035 (message) 176, 213, 430
 - W0036 (message) 176, 225, 431
 - W0037 (message) 52, 69, 176, 238, 427
 - W0038 (message) 52, 72, 176, 242, 253, 427, 608
 - W0039 (message) 176
 - W0040 (message) 177
 - W0041 (message) 177, 433
 - W0042 (message) 177, 433
 - W0043 (message) 177, 433
 - W0044 (message) 178, 433
 - W0045 (message) 178, 433
 - W0046 (message) 178, 432
 - W0047 (message) 178, 434
 - W0048 (message) 179, 434
 - W0049 (message) 179, 434
 - W0050 (message) 179, 435
 - W0051 (message) 179, 434
 - W0052 (message) 179, 435
 - W0053 (message) 180
 - W0054 (message) 180
 - W0055 (message) 180
 - W0056 (message) 29, 52, 180, 222, 419
 - W0057 (message) 181
 - W0058 (message) 181
 - W0059 (message) 181
 - W0060 (message) 181
 - W0061 (message) 181
 - W0062 (message) 182
 - W0063 (message) 182
 - W0064 (message) 182
 - W0065 (message) 182
 - W0066 (message) 182
 - W0067 (message) 183
 - W0068 (message) 183
 - W0069 (message) 183
 - W0070 (message) 183
 - W0071 (message) 184
 - W0072 (message) 184
 - W0073 (message) 184
 - W0074 (message) 184
 - W0075 (message) 185

- W0076 (message) 185
 W0077 (message) 185
 W0078 (message) 185
 W0079 (message) 185
 W0080 (message) 186
 W0081 (message) 186
 W0082 (message) 186
 W0083 (message) 186
 W0084 (message) 186
 W0085 (message) 187
 W0086 (message) 52, 74, 187, 220, 427, 614
 W0087 (message) 53, 74, 187, 237, 428, 614
 W0088 (message) 53, 75, 187, 237, 428, 614
 W0089 (message) 53, 75, 188, 238, 429, 614
 W0090 (message) 53, 75, 188, 210, 429, 614
 W0091 (message) 53, 75, 188, 212, 429
 W0092 (message) 52, 78, 188, 221, 255, 428, 592,
 620
 W0093 (message) 171
 W0094 (message) 172
 W0095 (message) 172
 W0096 (message) 172
 W0097 (message) 172, 220, 256, 623
 WAGNER, Zdeněk 260, 483, 507, ↪[288]
 WALDEN, David 260, ↪[143]
 WARD, Nigel 25, 248, 260, 591
 WARNOCK, John 260, ↪[152]
 WAUD, Douglas 260, ↪[357]
 \waw 8310, 8314, 8318, 8937, 8941, 8945
 WAWRYKIEWICZ, Staszek 260, ↪[358]
 WEBANCK, Stephan B. 260
 welsh (language option) 38, 552
 welsh.dtx (file) 552
 welsh.mld (file) 244, 245, 552
 WERNER, Eduard 260, 519, 550, ↪[90, 91]
 WEST, Daphne 260, ↪[359]
 WETTL, Ferenc 260, ↪[97, 98]
 while.tip (file) 280
 \widowpenalty (command) 593
 WIJNHOUT, Jeroen 260, ↪[292–294]
 WILLIAMS, Graham 260, ↪[360]
 WILSON, Peter R. 49, 52, 53, 63, 64,
 69, 71, 75, 87, 209, 210, 225, 260, 280,
 ↪[361–373, 373, 374]
 win-gn.def (file) 500
 WOLIŃSKI, Marcin 260, 531, ↪[259, 281]
 WOLKOWSKI, Élisabeth 260
 WOODING, Mark 260, ↪[259]
 wrapfig (package) 137, 229, 242, ↪[14]
 wrapfigure (environment) 137, 229, 242
 wraptable (environment) 242
 WRIGHT, Joseph A. 87, 241, 260, ↪[375]
 WRIGHT, Tim 260
 \write 2929, 2932, 3067, **3141**, **4019**, **4039**, 7610
 WUJASTYK, Dominik 260, 483, 507, ↪[288]
 WYART, Damien 260, ↪[25]
- ## X
- xalx (language option) 38, 514, 553, 554
 \xalx . . . 10360–10362, 10364–10366, 10368–
 10370, 10792–10794, 10796–10798,
 10800–10802
 xalx.mld (file) 244, 245, 514, 553, 607
 xalx2 (language option) 38, 553
 xalx2.mld (file) 244, 245, 553, 613
 xalx3 (language option) 38, 554
 xalx3.mld (file) 244, 245, 554, 613
 xargs (tool) 51, 606
 \xchapter (command) 318, 321
 \xchapter **3625**, **3901**, **3962**, **7903**
 \xdef (command) 395
 xmk (script) 242, 244–247, 616
 \xpart **4054**, 4575, 4635, **7903**
 xr (package) 27, 242, 313, 591, 592, 608, ↪[101]
 xr-hyper (package) 242, ↪[104]
 \xssect **4944**, 5180, 5240, **7903**
 \xsection **4944**
- ## Y
- \ya 8936, 8937, 8940, 8941, 8944, 8945
 \yahamza . 8309, 8310, 8313, 8314, 8317, 8318
 \ychapter (command) 602
 \yod 9384–9387, 9391–9394, 9398–9401
 YOGANANDA, C. S. 260, 514, ↪[376]
 \ypart (command) 602
 \ysection (command) 602
- ## Z
- \z@ (command) 598
 ZAIMI, Adi 260, 467, ↪[92]
 ZAMENOF, Lejzer Ludwig 260, 486
 ZAVRTANIK, Danilo 260, 544, ↪[93]
 ŻELECHOWSKI, Krzysztof Konrad . . 260, 514–516,
 ↪[56]
 ZENDER, Charlie S. 260, ↪[377]
 ZENITH, Federico 260, ↪[292–294]
 ZHYTNIKOV, Vadim V. 260, 539, 540, ↪[177, 378]
 ZIEGENHAGEN, Uwe 260
 ŽLAJPAH, Leon 260, 544, ↪[93]